



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



LIBRARY  
OF THE  
UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA.  
GIFT OF

*Miss M. W. Shinn.*

Received *Mar.* 1895.

Accessions No. *59456.* Class No. *760.*  
*A566*

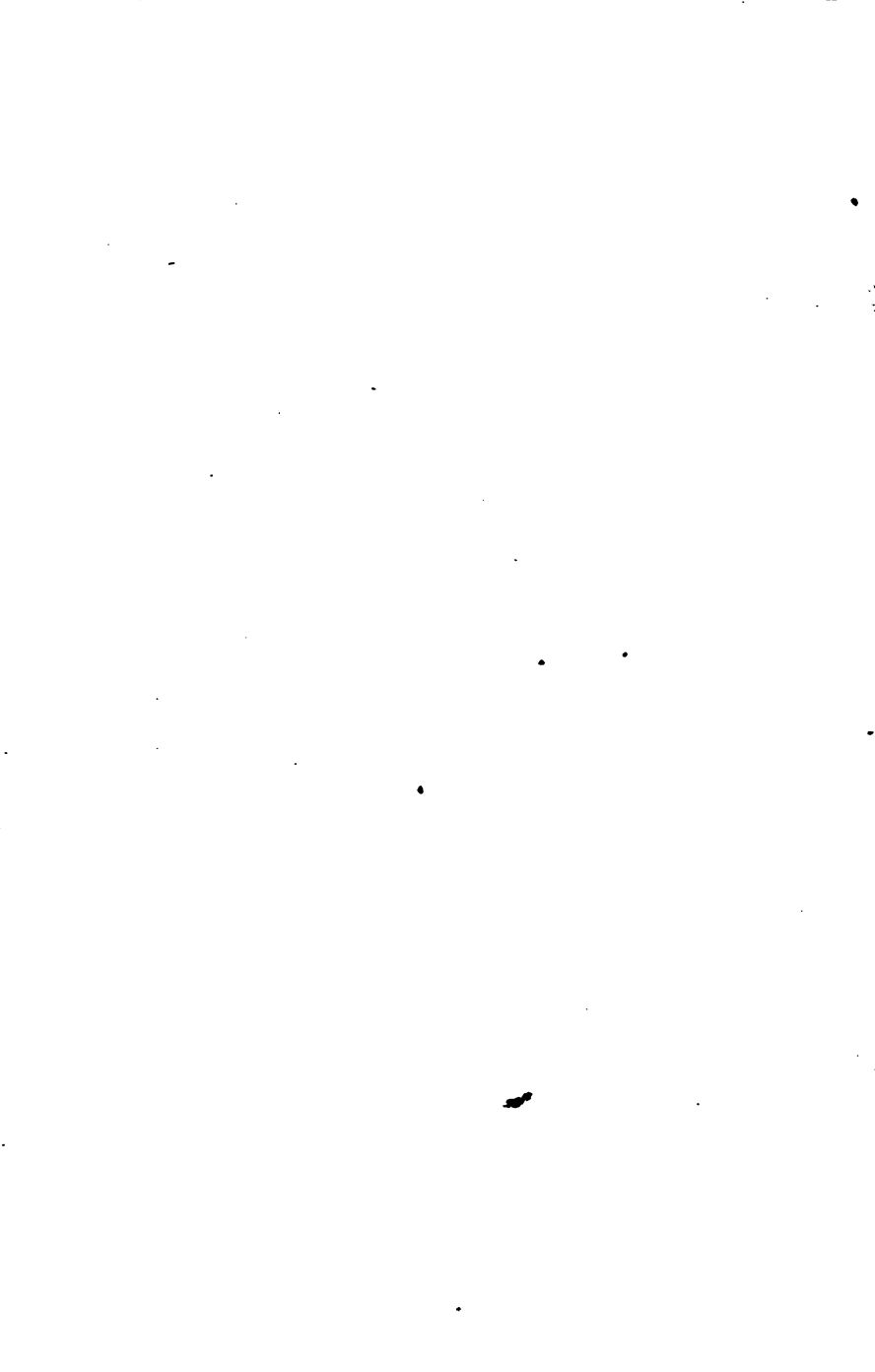
*9*  
*1864*

Chas. H. Shinn.



1000





# Andrews' Series of Latin School Books.

PUBLISHED BY CROCKER AND BREWSTER,  
51 WASHINGTON STREET, BOSTON.

THE LATIN SCHOOL BOOKS prepared by Prof. E. A. ANDREWS, exclusive of his Latin-English Lexicon, founded on the Latin-German Lexicon of Dr. Freund, constitute two distinct series, adapted to different and distinct purposes. The basis of the First Series is Andrews' First Latin Book; of the Second, Andrews and Stoddard's Latin Grammar.

## FIRST SERIES.

This Series is designed expressly for those who commence the study of Latin at a very early age, and for such as intend to pursue it to a limited extent only, or merely as subsidiary to the acquisition of a good English education. It consists of the following works, viz.:—

**1. Andrews' First Latin Book; or Progressive Lessons in Reading and Writing Latin.** This small volume contains most of the leading principles and grammatical forms of the Latin language, and, by the logical precision of its rules and definitions, is admirably fitted to serve as an introduction to the study of general grammar. The work is divided into lessons of convenient length, which are so arranged that the student will, in all cases, be prepared to enter upon the study of each successive lesson, by possessing a thorough knowledge of those which preceded it. The lessons generally consist of three parts:—1st. The statement of important principles in the form of rules or definitions, or the exhibition of orthographical or etymological forms; 2d. Exercises, designed to illustrate such principles or forms; and 3d. Questions, intended to assist the student in preparing his lesson. In addition to the grammatical lessons contained in this volume, a few pages of Reading Lessons are annexed, and these are followed by a Dictionary comprising all the Latin words contained in the work. This book is adapted to the use of all schools above the grade of primary schools, including also Academies and Female Seminaries. It is prepared in such a manner that it can be used with little difficulty by any intelligent parent or teacher, with no previous knowledge of the language.

**2. The Latin Reader, with a Dictionary and Notes,** containing explanations of difficult idioms, and numerous references to the Lessons contained in the First Latin Book.

**3. The Viri Romæ, with a Dictionary and Notes,** referring, like those of the Reader, to the First Latin Book. This series of three small volumes, if faithfully studied according to the directions contained in them, will not only render the student a very tolerable proficient in the principles of the Latin language and in the knowledge of its roots, from which so many words of his English language are derived, but will constitute the best preparation for a thorough study of the English grammar.

## SECOND SERIES.

**NOTE.**—The "Latin Reader" and the "Viri Romæ," in this series, are the same as in the first series.

This Series is designed more especially for those who are intending to become thoroughly acquainted with the Latin language, and with the principal classical authors of that language. It consists of the following works:—

**1. Latin Lessons.** This small volume is designed for the younger classes of Latin students, who intend ultimately to take up the larger Grammar, but to whom that work would, at first, appear too formidable. It contains the prominent principles of Latin grammar, expressed in the same language as in the larger Grammar, and likewise Reading and Writing Lessons, with a Dictionary of the Latin words and phrases occurring in the Lessons.

## NEW SERIES OF LATIN SCHOOL BOOKS.

**2. Latin Grammar.** Revised, with Corrections and Additions. A Grammar of the Latin Language, for the use of Schools and Colleges. By Professors E. A. ANDREWS and S. STODDARD. This work, which for many years has been the text-book in the department of Latin Grammar, claims the merit of having first introduced into the schools of this country the subject of grammatical analysis, which now occupies a conspicuous place in so many grammars of the English language. More than twenty years have elapsed since the first publication of this Grammar, and it is hardly necessary to say that its merits—placing it in a practical view, preëminently above every other Latin Grammar—have been so fully appreciated that it has been adopted as a Text Book in nearly every College and Seminary in the country. The present edition has not only been *thoroughly revised and corrected* (two years of continuous labor having been devoted to its careful revision and to the purpose of rendering it conformable in all respects to the advanced position which it aims to occupy,) but it contains at least one third more matter than the previous editions. To unite the acknowledged excellencies of the older English manuals, and of the more recent German grammars, was the special aim of the authors of this work; and to this end particular attention was directed:—1st. *To the preparation of more extended rules for the pronunciation of the language*; 2d. *To a clear exposition of its inflectional changes*; 3d. *To a proper basis of its syntax*; and 4th. *To greater precision in rules and definitions.*

**3. Questions on the Grammar.** This little volume is intended to aid the student in preparing his lessons, and the teacher in conducting his recitations.

**4. A Synopsis of Latin Grammar,** comprising the Latin Paradigms, and the Principal Rules of Latin Etymology and Syntax. The few pages composing this work contain those portions of the Grammar to which the student has occasion to refer most frequently in the preparation of his daily lessons.

**5. Latin Reader.** The Reader, by means of two separate and distinct sets of notes, is equally adapted for use in connection either with the First Latin Book or the Latin Grammar.

**6. Viri Romæ.** This volume, like the Reader, is furnished with notes and references, both to the First Latin Book and to the Latin Grammar. The principal difference in the two sets of notes found in each of these volumes consists in the somewhat greater fulness of those which belong to the smaller series.

**7. Latin Exercises.** This work contains exercises in every department of the Latin Grammar, and is so arranged that it may be studied in connection with the Grammar through every stage of the preparatory course. It is designed to prepare the way for original composition in the Latin language, both in prose and verse.

**8. A Key to Latin Exercises.** This Key, in which all the exercises in the preceding volume are fully corrected, is intended for the use of teachers only.

**9. Cæsar's Commentaries** on the Gallic War, with a Dictionary and Notes. The text of this edition of Cæsar has been formed by reference to the best German editions. The Notes are principally grammatical. The Dictionary, which, like all the others in the series, was prepared with great labor, contains the usual significations of the words, together with an explanation of all such phrases as might otherwise perplex the student.

**10. Sallust.** Sallust's Jugurthine War and Conspiracy of Cataline, with a Dictionary and Notes. The text of this work, which was based upon that of Cortius, has been modified by reference to the best modern editions, especially by those of Kritz and Gerlach; and its orthography is, in

## NEW SERIES OF LATIN SCHOOL BOOKS.

general, conformed to that of Pottier and Planche. The Dictionaries of Cæsar and Sallust connected with this series are original works, and, in connection with the Notes in each volume, furnish a very complete and satisfactory apparatus for the study of these two authors.

**11. Ovid.** Selections from the *Metamorphoses* and *Heroides* of Ovid, with Notes, Grammatical References, and Exercises in Scanning. These selections from Ovid are designed as an introduction to Latin poetry. They are accompanied with numerous brief notes explanatory of difficult phrases, of obscure historical or mythological allusions, and especially of grammatical difficulties. To these are added such Exercises in Scanning as serve fully to introduce the student to a knowledge of Latin prosody, and especially of the structure and laws of hexameter and pentameter verse.

**12. Virgil.** The *Eclogues* and *Georgics* of Virgil, with Notes and a Metrical Key. The text of this edition is, in general, that of Heyne as revised by Wagner. Particular attention has been given to the orthography and punctuation. The orthography has been made to conform to the standard of prevalent usage, discarding the forms *is* for *es*, in the terminations of some accusatives plural, *cum* for *quum*, and the like, as they tend to embarrass the learner, while they give but a very imperfect idea of the peculiarities of the author's orthography, as will be seen by examination of the *Orthographia Vergiliana*, at the end of this edition. The notes are very numerous, and in their preparation the editor has drawn freely from the best commentaries on Virgil, both German and English, including those of Heyne, Wagner, Forbiger, Ladewig, Martyn, Keightley, Bryce, Conington and others. The notes contain many references to the Grammar, which will be found useful.

In announcing the Revised Edition of ANDREWS and STODDARD'S LATIN GRAMMAR, the Publishers believe it to be quite unnecessary to speak of the merits of the work. The fact that in the space of about *Twenty Years*, SIXTY-FIVE EDITIONS, numbering above **Two Hundred Thousand Copies**, have been required for the purpose of meeting the steadily increasing demand for the work, sufficiently evinces the estimation in which it has been held. In preparing this Revised and Enlarged Edition, every portion of the original work has been reconsidered in the light of the experience of twenty years spent by the present editor in studies connected with this department of education, and with the aid of numerous publications in the same department, which, during this period, have issued from the European press. The results of this labor are apparent on almost every page, in new modifications of the old materials, and especially in such additional information in regard to its various topics as the present advanced state of classical education in this country seemed obviously to demand. The publishers commend this new edition to the attention of Teachers throughout the country, and express the hope that in its present form it will be deemed worthy of a continuance of the favor which it has so long received.

The following are extracts from a few of the many letters the Publishers have received from teachers from all parts of the country in commendation of this work:—

The revised edition of Andrews and Stoddard's Latin Grammar is without doubt the best published in America. I have no doubt that the time is near at hand when this series of works will, by all lovers of the classica, be considered as the 'National Series.' The pronunciation is now by the same class considered the American Standard. I will hail with joy the day when every college and school in our country shall have adopted Prof. Andrews' series as the foundation of true classic knowledge. As such I consider it, and for that reason have I used it since I first knew its existence.—*Martin Armstrong, Potomac Seminary, Romney, Va.*

Allow me to say, after a careful examination, that, in my judgment, it is the best manual of Latin Grammar to be found in the English language. In revising it the author has preserved the happy medium between saying too much and too little, so desirable for a Latin text-book for this country. In philosophical arrangement, simplicity of expression, and for brevity and fulness, it must entitle the author to the first rank in American classical scholarship. I shall use it in my classes, and recommend it to all teachers of Latin in this country.—*N. E. Cobleigh, Professor of Ancient Languages and Literature, in Lawrence University, Appleton, Wis.*

## NEW SERIES OF LATIN SCHOOL BOOKS.

I have reason to believe that the improvements, introduced into the last edition of Andrews and Stoddard's Latin Grammar by my respected and lamented friend Dr. Andrews, a little before his death, add very decidedly to the value of a work, which has done more to give the knowledge of that language to the youth of this country than any, perhaps than all others.—*Theodore W. Woolsey, President of Yale College, New Haven.*

No book, probably, has done more to improve classical training in American schools than Andrews and Stoddard's Latin Grammar. Its use is almost universal; and where it has not itself been adopted as a manual, it has made grammars of similar excellence necessary. The last edition, the sixty-fifth, was carefully revised by the lamented Dr. Andrews, not long before his death, by whom it was greatly enlarged by the incorporation of much valuable information, derived mainly from the last edition of the Latin Grammar of Professor Zumpt. It will therefore be found to be much improved as a repository of the principles and facts of the Latin language.—*Thomas A. Thacher, Professor of Latin in Yale College, New Haven.*

It is unnecessary to commend a Latin Grammar, which has been for twenty years in common use in our Colleges, and has generally superseded all others. The Revised Edition contains the results of the labors of Dr. Andrews, during all that time, on various Latin Classics, and on his great Latin Lexicon; and cannot, therefore, but be greatly improved.—*Edward Robinson, D. D., LL. D., Prof of Biblical Literature in Union Theol. Seminary, New York City.*

I regard Andrews' and Stoddard's new Latin Grammar, as an exceedingly valuable work. It evidently contains the results of the Author's careful and long continued investigation, and from its fulness, clearness, and accuracy, will undoubtedly become the Standard Latin Grammar of this Continent. In Western New York, we have for a long time been using the earlier editions, and they have rapidly won upon the public regard. This new edition will give it a stronger claim upon our favor. It must rapidly supersede all others. I can unhesitatingly recommend the New Grammar as the best in use.—*Lewis H. Clark, Principal of Sodus Academy, Wayne Co., N. Y.*

I have looked over the new edition of the Grammar with great interest. It is now eighteen years since I introduced it into this college, and I have never felt inclined to change it for any other. The revision, without changing its general character, has added greatly to its fulness and completeness. It is now fully equal to Zumpt's in these respects, and far superior to it in adaptation to the class room. There is no other school grammar that can pretend to compare with it. I have introduced the new edition here, and have no idea I shall ever wish to substitute another. The services of Prof. Andrews in the cause of classical learning in the United States cannot be over estimated.—*M. Sturgis, Professor in Hanover College, Indiana.*

I am willing to say that I am decidedly in favor of Andrews' Latin Series.—*Geo. Gale, Galesville University, Wisconsin.*

Andrews and Stoddard's Latin Grammar I consider decidedly the best Latin Grammar ever published.—*Ransom Norton, North Livermore, Maine.*

Such a work as Andrews and Stoddard's Revised Latin Grammar needs no recommendation, it speaks for itself.—*A. A. Keen, Professor of Greek and Latin, Tufts College, Medford, Ms.*

I have examined the revised edition of Andrews and Stoddard's Latin Grammar, and think it a complete success. I see it has all of Zumpt's merits and none of his defects, and welcome its advent with great pleasure.—*James M. Whilton, Hopkins Grammar School, New Haven, Conn.*

I have examined Andrews and Stoddard's Latin Grammar, and say, without hesitation, that the principles of the Latin language can be more easily and systematically acquired from it than any work I have ever seen. The arrangement and simplicity of its terms are such as to make it easily comprehended by the beginner, while, at the same time, its copiousness is sufficient for the most advanced student. The author has evidently noted and profited by the defects in this respect of most of the Latin Grammars now in use.—*C. W. Field, Mauch Chunk, Pa.*

The superior merits of the original work are too well known and appreciated to need any commendation from me. I have had some means of knowing how great pains and labor Dr. Andrews has bestowed upon this final revision and improvement of the work, and, therefore, was not unprepared to find its acknowledged excellence materially increased, and I do not hesitate to say, that its value has been greatly enhanced, and that it has been brought as near as practicable to the present state of philological science.—*John D. Philbrick, Superintendent of Public Schools, city of Boston.*

I have looked the Grammar through with much care and a great degree of satisfaction, and I unhesitatingly pronounce it superior to any Latin Grammar in method and manner of discussion, and happily adapted to the wants of both teachers and pupils.—*J. W. Simonds, Principal of New England Christian Institute, Andover, N. H.*

## NEW SERIES OF LATIN SCHOOL BOOKS.

We have lately introduced the Revised Edition, and regard it as a great improvement upon former editions. We shall use it exclusively in future.—*E. Flint, Jr., Principal of Lee High School.*

After a due examination, I am happy to state that the Author has admirably accomplished the objects which he aimed at in making this last revision. He has added much that is in the highest degree valuable without materially changing the arrangement of the original work. The work appears to me well adapted to the daily use of our Classical Schools, and I shall hereafter direct my classes to use it.—*C. L. Cushman, Principal of Peabody High School, South Danvers, Ms.*

The Revised Grammar seems to me greatly improved and to be every thing a scholar could wish.—*Z. B. Sturgis, Charlestown, Indiana.*

I have subjected the Revised Edition to the test of actual use in the recitation room, and am persuaded that in its present form it decidedly surpasses every other Latin Grammar in point of adaptation to the wants of students in our Academies, High Schools and Colleges.—*William S. Palmer, Central High School, Cleveland, Ohio.*

I think Andrews' Series of Latin Works the most systematic and best arranged course I have ever seen,—and believe if our pupils would use them altogether, we should find them much better scholars. I shall use them wholly in my school.—*A. C. Stockin, Principal of Monmouth Academy, Maine.*

The examination of the Revised Edition has afforded me very great pleasure, and leads me to express the deep and sincere conviction that it is the most complete Grammar of the Latin language with which I am acquainted, and best adapted for ready consultation upon any subject connected with the study of Latin Authors. The paper, the typography, and the binding,—the whole style of publication—are such as to commend the good taste and judgment of the Publishers.—*J. R. Boyd, Principal of Maplewood Young Ladies Institute, Pittsfield, Mass.*

I find the Revised Edition to be just what is needed for a Latin Grammar,—clear, comprehensive, yet concise, in the subject matter. I shall introduce it as a permanent textbook.—*B. F. Duke, Principal of Clyde High School, Wayne Co., N. Y.*

I have carefully examined your Revised Edition throughout, particularly the Corrections and Additions. It now appears to me all that can be desired. It seems like parting with a familiar friend to lay aside the *old* edition, with its many excellencies, and adopt the *new*, but I shall cheerfully make the sacrifice for the greater benefit that will accrue to those commencing the study of Latin from time to time.—*J. H. Graham, Principal of Northfield Institution, Vermont.*

I thought before that the *old* edition was entitled to the appellation of "*The Latin Grammar*," but I perceive its value has been much increased by the numerous emendations and additions of Prof. Andrews. The Grammar is now fitted to be a complete hand-book for the Latin scholar during his whole course.—*E. W. Johnson, Canton Academy, Canton, N. Y.*

I unhesitatingly pronounce the Revised Edition of Andrews and Stoddard's Latin Grammar the best Grammar of the Latin Language, and shall certainly use my influence in its behalf.—*H. E. J. Clute, Edinboro', Pa.*

After a thorough examination, I have no hesitation in pronouncing it the best Latin Grammar for the purposes of the recitation room that I have ever examined. In its present form it ought certainly to displace a large majority of the Grammars in common use. Its rules of Syntax are expressed with accuracy and precision, and are in fact, what all rules ought to be, reliable guides to the learner.—*James W. Andrews, Principal of Hopewell Academy, Penn.*

Andrews and Stoddard's Latin Grammar, in the arrangement and adaptation to the learner, has excelled all others, and the revised edition is certainly a great improvement, and I do believe is better adapted to the wants of the student than any other. The whole seems to be critically revised and corrected. Prof. Andrews was truly the student's benefactor.—*M. L. Severance, North Troy, Vermont.*

It gives me great pleasure to bear my testimony to the superior merits of the Latin Grammar edited by Professor Andrews and Mr. Stoddard. I express most cheerfully, unhesitatingly, and decidedly, my preference of this Grammar to that of Adam, which has, for so long a time, kept almost undisputed sway in our schools.—*Dr. C. Beck, Cambridge.*

I know of no Grammar published in this country, which promises to answer so well the purposes of elementary classical instruction, and shall be glad to see it introduced into our best schools.—*Charles K. Dillaway, Boston.*

Your new Latin Grammar appears to me much better suited to the use of students than any other grammar I am acquainted with.—*Prof. Wm. M. Holland, Hartford, Ct.*



## NEW SERIES OF LATIN SCHOOL BOOKS.

I have adopted the Latin Grammar of Andrews and Stoddard in the school under my charge, believing it better adapted, upon the whole, for elementary instruction than any similar work which I have examined. It combines the improvements of the recent German works on the subject with the best features of that old favorite of the schools, Dr. Adam's Latin Grammar.—*Henry Drisler, Professor of Latin in Columbia College.*

A careful review of the Revised Edition of Andrews and Stoddard's Latin Grammar, shows that this favorite text-book still continues to deserve the affections and confidence of Teachers and Pupils, incorporating as it does the results of Prof. Andrews' own constant study for many years with the investigations of English and German Philologists. No other Grammar is now so well fitted to meet the wants of the country as the rapid demand for it will show beyond doubt.—*A. S. Hartwell, University of St. Louis.*

This Grammar of the Latin Language, now universally pronounced *the very best*, is greatly improved by the corrections, revisions and additions of this revised edition. We do not believe a text-book was ever written which introduced so great an improvement in the method of teaching Latin, as this has done. We wish the revised edition the greatest success, which we are sure it merits.—*Rhode Island Schoolmaster.*

I have examined your revised edition with considerable care, and do not hesitate to pronounce it a great improvement upon the old editions, and as near perfection as we are likely to have. I have no doubt it will come into general use.—*A. Williams, Professor of Latin, Jefferson College, Canonsburg, Pa.*

I have been much interested in the Revised Edition. The improvement is very striking, and I shall no longer think of giving it up and putting Zumpt in its place. I am much pleased with the great improvement in the typography. You have given to our schools a book fifty per cent better in every respect, and I trust you will have your reward in largely increased sales.—*William J. Rolfe, Master of Oliver High School, Lawrence, Ms.*

I can with much pleasure say that your Grammar seems to me much better adapted to the present condition and wants of our schools than any one with which I am acquainted, and to supply that which has long been wanted—a good Latin Grammar for common use.—*F. Gardner, Principal of Boston Latin School.*

The Latin Grammar of Andrews and Stoddard is deserving, in my opinion, of the approbation which so many of our ablest teachers have bestowed upon it. It is believed that, of all the grammars before the public, this has greatly the advantage, in regard both to the excellence of its arrangement, and the accuracy and copiousness of its information.—*H. B. Hackett, Prof. of Biblical Literature in Newton Theological Seminary.*

The universal favor with which this Grammar is received was not unexpected. It will bear a thorough and discriminating examination. In the use of well-defined and expressive terms, especially in the syntax, we know of no Latin or Greek grammar which is to be compared to this.—*American Quarterly Register.*

These works will furnish a series of elementary publications for the study of Latin altogether in advance of any thing which has hitherto appeared, either in this country or in England.—*American Biblical Repository.*

I cheerfully and decidedly bear testimony to the superior excellence of Andrews and Stoddard's Latin Grammar to any manual of the kind with which I am acquainted. Every part bears the impress of a careful compiler. The principles of syntax are happily developed in the rules, whilst those relating to the moods and tenses supply an important deficiency in our former grammars. The rules of prosody are also clearly and fully exhibited.—*Rev. Lyman Coleman, Manchester, Vt.*

This work bears evident marks of great care and skill, and ripe and accurate scholarship in the authors. We cordially commend it to the student and teacher.—*Biblical Repository.*

Andrews and Stoddard's Latin Grammar is what I expected it would be—an excellent book. We cannot hesitate a moment in laying aside the books now in use, and introducing this.—*Rev. J. Penney, D. D., New York.*

Andrews and Stoddard's Latin Grammar bears throughout evidence of original and thorough investigation and sound criticism. It is, in my apprehension, so far as simplicity is concerned, on the one hand, and philosophical views and sound scholarship on the other, far preferable to other grammars; a work at the same time highly creditable to its authors and to our country.—*Professor A. Packard, Bowdoin College, Maine.*

I do not hesitate to pronounce Andrews and Stoddard's Latin Grammar superior to any other with which I am acquainted. I have never seen, any where, a greater amount of valuable matter compressed within limits equally narrow.—*Hon. John Hall, Principal of Ellington School, Conn.*

We have no hesitation in pronouncing this Grammar decidedly superior to any now in use.—*Boston Recorder.*

## Dr. Robinson's Gesenius.

**Robinson's Hebrew Lexicon.** Sixth Edition, Revised and Stereotyped. A Hebrew and English Lexicon of the Old Testament, including the Biblical Chaldee. Translated from the Latin of William Gesenius, late Professor of Theology in the University of Halle-Wittenberg. By EDWARD ROBINSON, D. D., LL. D., Professor of Biblical Literature in the Union Theological Seminary, New York. A new edition, with corrections and large additions, partly furnished by the author in manuscript, and partly condensed from his larger Thesaurus, as compiled by Roediger. These corrections and additions were made by Dr. Gesenius, during an interval of several years, while carrying his Thesaurus through the press, and were transcribed and furnished by him expressly for this edition. They will be found to be very numerous, every page having been materially corrected and enlarged, and a large number of articles having been re-written. It is printed on a new type, the face and cut of which is very beautiful, and has been highly commended and approved.

Dr. Robinson had already been trained to the business of lexicographical labor, when he began the translation of the present work. He is, in an uncommon degree, master of his own native tongue. He has diligence, patience, perseverance—yea, the iron diligence of Gesenius himself. For aught that I have yet been able to discover, all that can reasonably be expected or desired, has been done by the translator; not only as to rendering the work into English, but as to the manner and the accuracy of printing. The work will speak for itself, on the first opening. It does honor, in its appearance, to editor, printers, and publishers. I have only to add my hearty wish, that its beautiful white pages may be consulted and turned over, until they become thoroughly worn with the hands of the purchasers.—*Prof. Stuart, in the Biblical Repository.*

There is no lexicon in English that can be put on a level with Robinson's. I recommend the present as the best Lexicon of the Hebrew and Biblical Chaldee which an English scholar can have.—*Rev. Dr. Samuel Davidson, of London.*

Gesenius' Lexicon is known wherever Hebrew is studied. On the merits of this work criticism has long ago pronounced its verdict of approval.—*London Jewish Chronicle.*

This is a very beautiful and complete edition of the best Hebrew Lexicon ever yet produced. Gesenius, as a Hebrew philologist, is unequalled.—*London Clerical Journal.*

This is decidedly the most complete edition of Gesenius' Manual Hebrew Lexicon.—*London Journal of Sacred Literature.*

## Robinson's Harmony of the Gospels, in Greek.

**A Harmony of the Four Gospels,** in Greek, according to the text of Hahn. Newly arranged, with Explanatory Notes, by EDWARD ROBINSON, D. D., LL. D., Professor of Biblical Literature in the Union Theological Seminary, New York. Revised Edition.

This work of L. Robinson confines itself to the legitimate sphere of a Harmony of the Gospels; and we do not hesitate to say that in this sphere it will be found to be all that a Harmony need or can be. The original text is printed with accuracy and elegance. It is a feast to the eyes to look upon a page of so much beauty. Its arrangement is distinguished for simplicity and convenience. No one will ever be able to comprehend the relations of the Gospels to each other, or acquire an exact knowledge of their contents, unless he studies them with the aid of a Harmony. The present work furnishes in this respect just the facility which is needed; and we trust that among its other effects, it will serve to direct attention more strongly to the importance of this mode of study.—*Prof. Hackett, of Newton Theological Seminary.*

## Palmer's Arithmetic.

**Arithmetic,** Oral and Written, practically applied by means of Suggestive Questions. By THOMAS H. PALMER, Author of the Prize Essay on Education, entitled the "Teacher's Manual," "The Moral Instructor," etc.

## Robinson's Harmony of the Gospels, in English.

**A Harmony of the Four Gospels**, in English, according to the common version; newly arranged, with Explanatory Notes. By EDWARD ROBINSON, D. D., LL. D.

The object of this work is to obtain a full and consecutive account of all the facts of our Lord's life and ministry. In order to do this, the four gospel narratives have been so brought together, as to present as nearly as possible the true chronological order, and where the same transaction is described by more than one writer, the different accounts are placed side by side, so as to fill out and supply each other. Such an arrangement affords the only full and perfect survey of all the testimony relating to any and every portion of our Lord's history. The evangelists are thus made their own best interpreters; and it is shown how wonderfully they are supplementary to each other in minute as well as in important particulars, and in this way is brought out fully and clearly the fundamental characteristics of their testimony, unity in diversity. To Bible classes, Sabbath schools, and all who love and seek the truth in their closets and in their families, this work will be found a useful assistant.

I have used "Robinson's English Harmony" in teaching a Bible Class. The result, in my own mind, is a conviction of the great merits of this work, and its adaptation to impart the highest life and interest to Bible Class exercises, and generally to the diligent study of the Gospel. It is much to be desired that every one accustomed to searching the Scriptures should have this invaluable aid.—*Rev. Dr. Skinner, New York.*

## Robinson's Dictionary of the Bible.

**Robinson's Bible Dictionary.** A Dictionary for the use of Schools and Young Persons. By EDWARD ROBINSON, D. D., LL. D. Illustrated with Engravings on wood, and Maps of Canaan, Judea, Asia Minor, and the Peninsula of Mount Sinai. Idumea, etc.


## Elements of Astronomy.

**The Elements of Astronomy;** or The World as it is and as it Appears. By the author of "Theory of Teaching," "Edward's First Lessons in Grammar," etc. Revised in manuscript by George P. Bond, Esq., of the Cambridge Observatory, to whom the author is also indebted for superintending its passage through the press.

## Scott's Family Bible.

**Scott's Family Bible.** Boston Stereotype Edition. 6 vols. royal 8vo., containing all the Notes, Practical Observations, Marginal References, and Critical Remarks, as in the most approved London edition, with a line engraved likeness of the Author, Family Record, etc.

This Edition is the only one that has, or can have, the benefit of the final Additions and Emendations of the Author. The extent of these may be judged from the fact that upwards of *Four Hundred Pages of letter-press were added*; and as they consist chiefly of Critical Remarks, their importance to the Biblical student is at once apparent. The Preface to the entire work contains an elaborate and compendious view of the evidences that the Holy Scriptures were given by inspiration of God. Prefixed to each Book, both in the Old and New Testament, is an Introduction, or statement of its purport and intent. There are also copious Marginal References, with various Tables, a Chronological Index, and a copious Topical Index.

 Orders solicited.

A  
GRAMMAR  
OF THE  
LATIN LANGUAGE;  
FOR THE  
USE OF SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES.

BY  
E. A. ANDREWS AND S. STODDARD.

---

THE SIXTY-FIFTH EDITION.

REVISED WITH CORRECTIONS AND ADDITIONS,

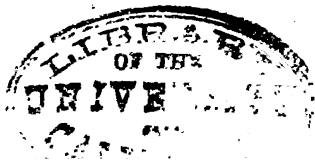
BY E. A. ANDREWS, LL. D.

---

BOSTON:  
PUBLISHED BY CROCKER AND BREWSTER,

51 Washington Street.

1864.



59456

---

Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1857,  
BY CROCKER AND BREWSTER,  
In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of Massachusetts.

---

PA 2087

A57

1864

MAIN

## P R E F A C E.

As more than twenty years have elapsed, since the first publication of this Grammar, it can scarcely be necessary, in offering to the public a revised edition of the work, to make more than a passing allusion to its original plan or to the circumstances to which it owed its origin.

For some years previous to the date of its publication, the progress of classical learning in Europe, and particularly in Germany, had been such, as plainly to indicate the necessity of a corresponding advance in the manuals of Latin grammar employed in the schools of this country. Their deficiencies had indeed become so apparent, that various attempts had already been made to furnish a remedy by means of translations of German grammars; but none of these, however excellent in many respects, had seemed to be fully adapted to the purpose for which they were intended.

To unite the acknowledged excellencies of the older English manuals and of the more recent German grammars was the special aim of the authors of this work; and to this end their attention was directed, first to the preparation of more extended rules for the pronunciation of the language, secondly to a clearer exposition of its inflectional changes, thirdly to the proper basis of its syntax, and fourthly to greater precision in its rules and definitions.

The system of rules for the division and accentuation of Latin words, prepared in pursuance of the plan which has just been specified, was accordingly more copious than any previously found in the Latin grammars in common use in this country. For the purpose also of preventing the formation of erroneous habits of pronunciation in the early part of the student's course, the penultimate quantities of all Latin words occurring in the Grammar were carefully marked, unless determinable by some general rule, and the paradigms were divided and accented in such a manner as to indicate their true pronunciation.

In their treatment of Latin etymology, the authors aimed to render its study less a mere exercise of memory, and in a greater degree an efficient aid in the general cultivation of the mental powers. The principal means adopted for this purpose consisted in the practical distinction, every where made in treating inflected words, between the root, or ground-form, and the termination.

The third prominent peculiarity of the original work was its direct derivation of the rules of Syntax from the logical analysis of sentences, and its distinct specification of the particular use of each of the several words of which a sentence is composed. This method of treating syntax—a method previously unknown in the schools of this country—has, since that period, been extensively adopted, and in some instances greatly extended, particularly in a portion of the English grammars recently published in this country, and has probably contributed more to the advancement of grammatical science, than any other innovation of modern times.

The errors noticed in the original work have been corrected, as successive editions have issued from the press, but no opportunity has occurred, until the present, of thoroughly revising it in every part. Two years of continuous labor have now been devoted to its revision, and to the purpose of rendering it conformable in all respects to the advanced position which it originally aspired to occupy.

In all the modifications which have now been made, I have aimed to accomplish these two purposes—to preserve, as far as possible, the identity of the work, and at the same time to bring it as near, as should be practicable, to the present state of philological science. Hence, while I have made no changes either in language or arrangement, but such as appeared to me quite necessary, I have omitted none which logical accuracy or requisite fulness of explanation seemed to demand. In doing even this it soon became evident, that the changes and additions must be more numerous, than would well consist with the convenient use of the old and the new editions in the same classes. Though not insensible of the trouble occasioned to the teacher by alterations in a familiar text-book, I could not but suppose, that such modifications as the progress of the last twenty years had rendered necessary, would still be welcomed by him, notwithstanding the personal inconvenience arising from the disturbance of his previous associations. To his pupils, who will have known no other form of the Grammar, than that in which it now appears, the work, it is believed, will not only be as easy of comprehension in its new, as in its old form, but in its practical application far more satisfactory.

Of the minor changes and additions occurring on almost every page, and even of the occasional rearrangement of small portions of the materials, it is unnecessary to speak particularly. The student familiar with former editions will at once detect these slight modifications, and note them in his memory for future use; and though he may fail to find a rule, exception, or remark on the page where he has been wont to see it, he will still meet with it in the same relative position,—in the same section and subdivision of the section in which it formerly appeared.

In the department of Orthœpy will now be found some account of the Continental mode of pronouncing Latin; and, by means of the joint exhibition of

this and of the English methods, the student will be able to use the Grammar with equal facility, whether choosing to adhere to the usual pronunciation of English and American scholars, or preferring that of the continental schools.

In the Etymology of nouns, no other alteration need be specified, except the introduction, in the third declension, of "Rules for forming the nominative singular from the root." These are copied, in a modified form, from the editor's First Latin Book. In themselves they are of considerable utility in showing the mutual relations between the sounds of certain letters, and they are also closely connected with corresponding changes in some of the verbal roots. In the Etymology of adjectives, besides the minor modifications already alluded to, a few changes in arrangement have been made in those sections which relate to Comparison. To pronouns have been added some remarks on Pronominal Adjectives, which seemed to require a more particular notice, than they had heretofore received, both in their relation to each other and to the Adverbial Correlatives. The Etymology of particles has been treated somewhat more fully than in former editions—a fulness especially observable in relation to adverbs and conjunctions, and which was rendered necessary by the more extended treatment of those particles in the revised Syntax.

In almost every section of the Syntax the student will meet with modifications and especially with additions, which, as in other parts of the work, are introduced in such a manner as seldom to interfere with the references made to former editions in the series based upon this Grammar. The principal exception to the latter remark is to be found in sections 247—251, which relate to certain uses of the ablative.

A comparison of the Prosody in the present and former editions will show, that it has been revised with minute care in every part. Similar attention has also been given to the Appendix, in which will be found some additions relating to Roman Money, Weights and Measures. For the greater convenience of the student the Index in this edition has been much enlarged.

In conclusion, I would briefly indicate the principal sources from which have been derived the various additions and corrections, to which allusion has been made. In preparing the original work, the earlier editions of Zumpt's Grammar were consulted at almost every step, and while frequent use was made of the grammars of Scheller, Grant, Adam, Ruddiman, Hickie and others, the treatises of Zumpt were even then regarded as the most valuable embodiment of the principles of Latin philology. It was therefore natural and almost unavoidable, in revising a work which had in so many points received both its form and its substance from the earlier labors of that distinguished grammarian, to look to his maturer works for many of the materials by means of which our original sketch should be made more complete. Accordingly I have constantly consulted the last edition of his Grammar, translated by Dr. Schmitz, and have freely incorporated in this edition such



of its materials, as were suited to my purpose. In most cases his ideas have been either expressed in my own language, or in language so modified as to suit the general plan of my work. In the Etymology, and not unfrequently in the Syntax also, the copious Grammar of Ramshorn has furnished valuable materials; and the Grammars of Key and of Kühner, the latter translated by Prof. Champlin, have been consulted with profit and satisfaction. In the sections comprising conjunctions, and especially in those relating to grammatical analysis, I am happy to acknowledge my indebtedness to Prof. S. S. Greene of Brown University. To the sources already specified I must add the Latin Lexicon of Dr. Freund, in editing a translation of which I had frequent occasion to note such matters as promised to be of utility in the revision of this Grammar. The additions in the Appendix relating to Roman money, etc., are taken principally from Dr. Riddle's translation of Dr. Freund's School Dictionary. To these references I will only add, that such other notes relating to Latin philology, as I have made during the past twenty years, so far as they were adapted to my purpose, have either been used in my former occasional corrections, or are incorporated in the present edition.

In taking a final leave of the earliest of the elementary Latin works with which my name has been associated, and with which, in my own mind, must ever be connected the pleasant memory of my early friend and associate, Prof. Stoddard, I trust I shall be pardoned in commending it once more to the kind indulgence of the teachers of this country, and in expressing the hope that, in its present form, it will be deemed not altogether unworthy of a continuance of the favor which it has so long received. I cannot indeed venture to indulge the hope, that all the imperfections of the work have even now been removed, or that, in my attempts to render it more perfect, I may not sometimes have fallen into new errors; but this I can truly say, that since its first publication I have devoted much time to its revision, and have sought to manifest my sense of the kindness with which it has been received, by doing all in my power to render it less unworthy of public favor.

E. A. ANDREWS.

*New Britain, Conn., Oct., 1857.*

# CONTENTS.

	Page.		Page.
<b>ORTHOGRAPHY.</b>		<b>Irregular adjectives</b> . . . . . 69	
Letters . . . . .	9	Defective adjectives. . . . .	69
Division of letters. . . . .	10	Redundant adjectives. . . . .	69
Diphthongs . . . . .	10	Numeral adjectives. . . . .	70
Punctuation . . . . .	10	Comparison of adjectives. . . . .	74
<b>ORTHOËPY.</b>		Irregular comparison. . . . .	75
Continental pronunciation . . . . .	11	Defective comparison . . . . .	76
English pronunciation. . . . .	11	Derivation of adjectives. . . . .	78
Sounds of the letters . . . . .	11	Composition of adjectives. . . . .	81
— of the vowels. . . . .	11	<b>PRONOUNS.</b> . . . .	82
— of the diphthongs. . . . .	12	Substantive pronouns. . . . .	82
— of the consonants. . . . .	13	Adjective pronouns. . . . .	83
Quantity of syllables. . . . .	14	Demonstrative pronouns . . . . .	83
Accentuation. . . . .	15	Intensive pronouns. . . . .	85
Latin accents. . . . .	15	Relative pronouns. . . . .	86
English accents. . . . .	16	Interrogative pronouns . . . . .	87
Division of words into syllables. . . . .	16	Indefinite pronouns. . . . .	88
<b>ETYMOLOGY.</b>		Possessive pronouns. . . . .	89
<b>Nouns</b> . . . . .	19	Patrial pronouns. . . . .	90
Gender. . . . .	20	Pronominal adjectives. . . . .	90
Number. . . . .	22	<b>VERBS.</b> . . . .	91
Cases . . . . .	23	Voices . . . . .	91
Declensions. . . . .	23	Moods . . . . .	92
First declension. . . . .	25	Tenses. . . . .	93
Greek nouns. . . . .	26	Numbers. . . . .	95
Second declension. . . . .	26	Persons. . . . .	95
Greek nouns. . . . .	29	Participles, gerunds, and supines	95
Third declension. . . . .	29	Conjugation. . . . .	96
Formation of nom. sing. . . . .	30	Table of terminations. . . . .	98
Rules for the gender. . . . .	33	Sum . . . . .	100
— oblique cases. . . . .	38	<i>Prosum, Possum</i> , etc. . . . .	102
Greek nouns. . . . .	45	First conjugation. . . . .	103
Fourth declension. . . . .	45	Second conjugation. . . . .	108
Fifth declension. . . . .	47	Third conjugation. . . . .	111
Declension of compound nouns. . . . .	47	Fourth conjugation. . . . .	116
Irregular nouns. . . . .	48	Deponent verbs. . . . .	120
Variable nouns . . . . .	48	Remarks on the conjugations. . . . .	121
Defective nouns. . . . .	49	Periphrastic conjugations. . . . .	123
Redundant nouns . . . . .	54	General rules of conjugation . . . . .	124
Derivation of nouns. . . . .	56	Formation of second and third	
Composition of nouns. . . . .	60	roots: . . . . .	125
<b>ADJECTIVES.</b> . . . .	61	First conjugation . . . . .	125
Adjectives of the first and second		Second conjugation . . . . .	129
declensions. . . . .	62	Third conjugation. . . . .	131
Adjectives of the third declension	64	Fourth conjugation. . . . .	139
Rules for the oblique cases. . . . .	67	Irregular verbs. . . . .	140
		Defective verbs. . . . .	145
		Impersonal verbs. . . . .	147

	Page.		Page.
Redundant verbs.....	150	Protasis and apodosis.....	268
Derivation of verbs.....	152	Subjunctive after particles.....	269
Composition of verbs.....	154	— after <i>qui</i> .....	275
Particles.....	155	— in indirect questions.....	278
ADVERBS.....	155	— in inserted clauses.....	279
Derivation of adverbs.....	160	Imperative mood.....	261
Composition of adverbs.....	162	Infinitive mood.....	282
Comparison of adverbs.....	163	Participles.....	292
PREPOSITIONS.....	163	Gerunds and gerundives.....	296
Prepositions in composition.....	167	Supines.....	299
CONJUNCTIONS.....	170	Adverbs.....	300
INTERJECTIONS.....	176	Prepositions.....	303
		Conjunctions.....	304
		Interjections.....	306
		Arrangement.....	306
		Arrangement of words.....	306
		— of clauses.....	310
		Analysis.....	312
		Parsing.....	313
SYNTAX.		PROSODY.	
Sentences and Propositions.....	177	Quantity.....	319
Subject.....	178	General rules.....	319
Predicate.....	181	Special rules.....	322
Apposition.....	183	First and middle syllables.....	322
Adjectives.....	184	Derivative words.....	322
Relatives.....	189	Compound words.....	324
Demonstratives, etc.....	193	Increment of nouns.....	325
Reflexives.....	198	Increment of verbs.....	329
Nominative.....	200	Penults and antepenults.....	331
Subject-nominative and verb.....	200	Final syllables.....	336
Predicate-nominative.....	205	Versification.....	341
Genitive.....	206	Feet.....	341
Genitive after nouns.....	206	Metre.....	342
— after partitives.....	211	Verses.....	342
— after adjectives.....	214	Figures of prosody.....	343
— after verbs.....	216	Arsis and thesis.....	346
— of place.....	221	Cæsura.....	347
— after particles.....	222	Different kinds of metre.....	347
Dative.....	222	Dactylic metre.....	347
Dative after adjectives.....	222	Anapaestic metre.....	350
— after verbs.....	225	Iambic metre.....	351
— after particles.....	230	Trochaic metre.....	353
Accusative.....	231	Choriambic metre.....	354
Accusative after verbs.....	231	Ionic metre.....	355
— after prepositions.....	237	Compound metres.....	356
— of time and space.....	239	Combination of verses.....	356
— of place.....	240	Horatian metres.....	357
— after adjectives, ad- verbs and interjections.....	241	Key to the odes of Horace.....	359
Subject-accusative.....	242		
Vocative.....	243		
Ablative.....	243		
Ablative after prepositions.....	243		
— after certain nouns, adjectives and verbs.....	244		
— of cause, etc.....	246		
— of price.....	252		
— of time.....	252		
— of place.....	254		
— after comparatives.....	255		
— absolute.....	258		
Connection of tenses.....	261		
Indicative mood.....	263		
Subjunctive mood.....	265		
		APPENDIX.	
		Grammatical figures.....	361
		Tropes and figures of rhetoric.....	363
		Roman mode of reckoning time.....	367
		— money, weight, etc.....	370
		Abbreviations.....	374
		Different ages of Roman literature.....	374
		Writers of the different ages.....	375
		INDEX.....	378



## LATIN GRAMMAR.

---

X § 1. The Latin language is the language spoken by the ancient Romans. Latin Grammar teaches the principles of the Latin language. These relate,

1. To its written characters;
2. To its pronunciation;
3. To the classification and derivation of its words;
4. To the construction of its sentences;
5. To the quantity of its syllables, and its versification.

The first part is called Orthography; the second, Orthoëpy; the third, Etymology; the fourth, Syntax; and the fifth, Prosody.

---

### ORTHOGRAPHY.

X § 2. Orthography treats of the letters, and other characters of written language, and the proper mode of spelling words.

1. The Latin alphabet consists of twenty-five letters. They have the same names as the corresponding characters in English. They are A, a; B, b; C, c; D, d; E, e; F, f; G, g; H, h; I, i; J, j; K, k; L, l; M, m; N, n; O, o; P, p; Q, q; R, r; S, s; T, t; U, u; V, v; X, x; Y, y; Z, z.

2. The Romans used only the capital letters.

3. *I* and *j* were anciently but one character, as were likewise *u* and *v*.

4. *W* is not found in Latin words, and *k* occurs only at the beginning of a few words before *a*, and even in these *c* is commonly used, except in their abbreviated form; as, *K* or *Kal.* for *Kalendæ* or *Calendæ*, the Calends.

5. *Y* and *z* are found only in words derived from the Greek.

6. *H*, though called a letter, only denotes a breathing, or aspiration.

## DIVISION OF LETTERS.

§ 3. Letters are divided into *vowels* and *consonants*.

1. The vowels are . . . . . *a, e, i, o, u, y*.

The consonants are  
divided into

{	Liquids, . . . . .	<i>l, m, n, r.</i>	
	Mutes, {	Labials, . . . . .	<i>p, b, f, v.</i>
		Palatals, . . . . .	<i>c, g, k, q, j.</i>
		Linguals, . . . . .	<i>t, d.</i>
	Sibilant, . . . . .	<i>s.</i>	
Double consonants, . . . . .		<i>x, z.</i>	
Aspirate, . . . . .		<i>h.</i>	

2. *X* is equivalent to *cs* or *gs*; *z* to *ts* or *ds*; and, except in compound words, the double consonant is always written, instead of the letters which it represents. In some Greek words *x* is equivalent to *chs*.

## DIPHTHONGS.

§ 4. Two vowels, in immediate succession, in the same syllable, are called a *diphthong*.

The diphthongs are *ae, ai, au, ei, eu, oe, oi, ua, ue, ui, uo, uu, and yi*. *Ae* and *oe* are frequently written together, *æ, œ*.

## PUNCTUATION.

§ 5. The only mark of punctuation used by the ancients was a point, which denoted pauses of different length, according as it was placed at the top, the middle, or the bottom of the line. The moderns use the same marks of punctuation, in writing and printing Latin, as in their own languages, and assign to them the same power.

Marks of *quantity* and of *accent* are sometimes found in Latin authors, especially in elementary works:—

1. There are three marks of quantity, viz.  $\breve$ ,  $-$ ,  $\circ$ ; the first denotes that the vowel over which it stands is short; the second, that it is long; the third, that it is doubtful, that is, sometimes long and sometimes short.

2. There are also three written accents—the acute ( $\acute{}$ ), the grave ( $\grave{}$ ), and the circumflex ( $\circ$ ). These were used by the old grammarians to denote the rising and sinking of the voice in the Roman mode of pronouncing words. (See §§ 14 and 15.) In modern elementary Latin works, the acute marks the emphatic syllable of a word, (§ 16), the grave distinguishes certain particles from other words spelled in the same manner; as, *quòd*, because; *quod*, which; and the circumflex is placed over certain penultimate and final syllables that are formed by contraction.

The diæresis ( $\ddot{}$ ) denotes that the vowel over which it stands does not form a diphthong with the preceding vowel; as, *aër*, the air. It is used principally with *ae, ai, and œ*.

## ORTHOËPY.

### § 6. Orthoëpy treats of the right pronunciation of words.

The ancient pronunciation of the Latin language being in a great measure lost, the learned, in modern times, have applied to it those principles which regulate the pronunciation of their own languages; and hence has arisen, in different countries, a great diversity of practice.

The various systems now prevalent in Europe, may, however, be reduced to two—the *Continental* and the *English*—the former prevailing, with only slight diversities, in most of the countries of continental Europe, and the latter in England. Their principal difference is found in the pronunciation of the vowels and diphthongs, since, in both methods, the consonants are pronounced in nearly the same manner.

#### THE CONTINENTAL METHOD.

[According to this system, each of the vowels, when standing at the end of a syllable, is considered as having but one sound, which, however, may be either short or long. Thus,

Short <i>â</i> , as in hat.	Long <i>ô</i> , as in no.
Long <i>ā</i> , as in father.	Short <i>ū</i> , as in tub.
Short <i>ĕ</i> , as in met.	Long <i>û</i> , as in full.
Long <i>ē</i> , as in there.	<i>æ</i> or <i>œ</i> , as <i>e</i> in there.
Short <i>i</i> , as in sit.	<i>au</i> , as <i>ou</i> in our.
Long <i>ī</i> , as in machine.	<i>eu</i> , as in feudal.
Short <i>ō</i> , as in not.	<i>ei</i> , as <i>i</i> in ice.

REMARK. These sounds are sometimes slightly modified when followed by a consonant in the same syllable.]

#### THE ENGLISH METHOD.

In the following rules for dividing and pronouncing Latin words, regard has been had both to English analogy and to the laws of Latin accentuation. See § 14 and 15. The basis of this system is that which is exhibited by Walker in his "Pronunciation of Greek and Latin Proper Names." To pronounce correctly, according to this method, a knowledge of the following particulars is requisite:—

1. Of the *sounds* of the letters in all their combinations.
2. Of the *quantities* of the penultimate and final syllables.
3. Of the place of the *accent*, both primary and secondary.
4. Of the mode of dividing words into *syllables*.

### OF THE SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS.

#### I. OF THE VOWELS.

§ 7. A vowel, when ending an accented syllable, has always its long English sound; as,

*pæ-ter*, *dé-ât*, *vî-ous*, *tó-lus*, *tú-ba*, *Ty'-rus*; in which the accented vowels are pronounced as in *fatal*, *metre*, *vital*, *total*, *tutor*, *tyrant*.

1. *A*, at the end of an unaccented syllable, has nearly the sound of *a* in *father* or in *ah*, but less distinct or prolonged; as, *mu'-sa*, *e-pis'-tō-la*, *a-cer'-bus*, *Pal-a-mē'-des*; pronounced *mu'-zah*, etc.

2. *E*, *o*, and *u*, at the end of an unaccented syllable, have nearly the same sound as when accented, but shorter and less distinct; as, *re'-te*, *vo'-lo*, *u'-su-i*.

3. (a.) *I* final has always its long sound; as, *qui*, *au'-di*, *le-gā'-ti*.

REM. 1. The final *i* of *tibi* and *sibi* has its short sound.

(b.) *I*, at the end of an unaccented syllable not final, has an indistinct sound like short *e*; as, *Fa'-bi-us* (*fa'-be-us*), *phi-los'-ō-phus* (*phē-los'-o-phus*).

Exc. *I* has its long sound in the first syllable of a word the second of which is accented, when it either stands alone before a consonant, as in *i-dō'-ne-us*, or ends a syllable before a vowel, as in *fi-ē'-bam*.

REM. 2. *Y* is always pronounced like *i* in the same situation.

§ 8. A vowel has always its *short* English sound, when followed by a consonant in the same syllable; as,

*mag'-nus*, *reg'-num*, *fin'-go*, *hoc*, *fus'-tis*, *cyg'-nus*, in which the vowels are pronounced as in *magnet*, *seldom*, *finish*, *copy*, *lustre*, *symbol*.

EXCEPTION 1. *A*, when it follows *qu* before *dr* and *rt*, has the sounds of *a* in *quadrant* and in *quart*; as, *qua'-dro*, *quad-ra-gin'-ta*, *quar'-tus*. In other connections *a* before *r* has the sound of *a* in *part*; as, *par-ti'-ceps*, *ar'-ma*; except when followed by another *r*, as in *par-ri-ci'-da*.

Exc. 2. *Es*, at the end of a word, is pronounced like the English word *ease*; as, *ig'-nes*, *au'-des*.

Exc. 3. *Os*, at the end of plural cases, is pronounced like *ose* in *dose*; as, *nos*, *il'-los*, *dom'-i-nos*.

Exc. 4. *Post* is pronounced like the same word in English; so also are its compounds; as, *post'-quam*, *post'-e-a*; but not its derivatives; as, *pos-trē'-mus*.

Exc. 5. *E*, *i* and *y* before final *r*, or before *r* in a syllable not final, when followed in the next syllable by any other consonant, except *r*, have the sound of *e* and *i* in the English words *her* and *fir*; as, *fer*, *fert*, *fer'-ti-lis*; *hir*, *hir'-cus*, *myr'-tus*.

## II. OF THE DIPHTHONGS.

§ 9. *Æ* and *œ* are always diphthongs unless separated by diseresis. They are pronounced as *e* would be in the same situation; as, *æ'-tas*, *æ'-tas*, *pæ'-na*, *æ'-trum*.

1. *Ai*, *ei*, *oi*, and *yi*, usually have the vowels pronounced separately. When they are accented, and followed by another vowel, the *i* is pronounced like initial *y*, and the vowel before it has its long sound; as, *Maia*, *Pompeius*, *Troia*, *Harpyia*; pronounced *Mā'-ya*, *Pom-pe'-yus*, *Tro'-ya*, *Har-py'-ya*.

REMARK 1. *Æ*, when a diphthong and not followed by another vowel, is pronounced like *i*; as in *hæi*, *om'neis*.

2. *Au*, when a diphthong, is pronounced like *aw*; as, *laus*, *au'-rum*, pronounced *laws*, etc.

REM. 2. In the termination of Greek proper names, the letters *au* are pronounced separately; as, *Men-e-lā-us*.

3. *Eu*, when a diphthong, is pronounced like long *u*; as, *heu*, *Orpheus* (or'-phuse), *Eu-phrā-tes*.

REM. 3. The letters *eu* are pronounced separately in the terminations *eus* and *eum* of Latin nouns, and of all adjectives, whether Greek or Latin, except *neuter*; as, *ur'-ce-us*, *me'-us*, *me'-um*, *e'-um*. In other situations they form a diphthong; as, *Eu-rō'-pa*, *Thē'-seus*, *e'-heu*.

4. *Ua*, *ue*, *ui*, *uo*, *uu*, when diphthongs, are pronounced like *wa*, *we*, etc.; as, *lin'-gua*, *quē'-ror*, *sua'-de-o*, *quō'-tus*, *ē'-guus*. They are always diphthongs after *q*, usually also after *g*, and often after *s*.

5. *Ui* in *cui* and *huic*, when monosyllables, is pronounced like *wi*, and by some like long *i*.

### III. OF THE CONSONANTS.

§ 10. The consonants have, in general, the same power in Latin as in English words.

The following cases, however, require particular attention.

#### C.

*C* has the sound of *s* before *e*, *i*, and *y*, and the diphthongs *æ*, *æ*, and *eu*; as, *cē'-do*, *cī'-bus*, *Cæ'-sar*, *cæ'-lum*, *ceu*, *Cy'-rus*. In other situations, it has the sound of *k*; as, *Ca'-to*, *cru'-dus*, *lac*.

1. *Ch* has always the sound of *k*; as, *charta* (kar'-tah), *machīna* (mak'-ē-nah).

Exc. *C*, following or ending an accented syllable, before *i* followed by a vowel, and also before *eu* and *yo*, has the sound of *sh*; as, *socia* (so'-she-ah), *caduceus* (ca-du'she-us), *Sicyon* (sish'-e-on).

REMARK. In the pronunciation of the ancient Romans, the hard sound of *c* and *g* seems to have been retained in all their combinations.

#### G.

*G* has its soft sound, like *j*, before *e*, *i*, and *y*, and the diphthongs *æ* and *æ*; as *ge'-nus*, *ag'-y-lis*, *Gy'-ges*, *Gæ-tū'-li*. In other situations, it has its hard sound, as in *bag*, *go*.

Exc. When *g* comes before *g* soft, it coalesces with it in sound; as, *agger* (aj'-er), *exaggeratio* (ex-aj-e-ra'-she-o).

#### S.

§ 11. *S* has generally its hissing sound, as in *so*, *thus*.

Exc. 1. (*a*.) When *s* followed by a vowel is immediately preceded by a consonant in an accented syllable, the *s* has the sound of *sh*; as, *Per'-si-a* (per'-she-a).



## 14 QUANTITIES OF PENULTIMATE AND FINAL SYLLABLES.

(b.) But when *si* or *si* followed by a vowel is immediately preceded by an accented vowel, the *s* or *z* has the sound of *zh*; as, *As-pa'-si-a* (as-pa'-zhe-ah), *Sa-ba'-zi-a* (sa-ba'-zhe-ah).

NOTE. In a few proper names, *s* preceded by a vowel in an accented syllable and followed by *i* before another vowel, has the sound, not of *zh*, but of *sh*; as, *A'-si-a* (a'-she-a): so *Sasia*, *Theodosia*, *Lysias*.

Exc. 2. *S*, at the end of a word, after *e*, *æ*, *au*, *b*, *m*, *n*, and *r*, has the sound of *z*; as, *res*, *æs*, *laus*, *trabs*, *hi'-oms*, *lens*, *Mars*.

English analogy has also occasioned the *s* in *Cæ'-sar*, *cæ-si'-ra*, *mi'-ser*, *ma'-sa*, *re-si'-u-um*, *cau'-sa*, *ro'-sa*, and their derivatives, and in some other words, to take the sound of *z*. *Cæ-sa-re'-a*, and the oblique cases of *Cæsar*, retain the hissing sound; so likewise the compounds of *trans*; as, *trans'-e-o*.

### T.

§ 12. 1. *T*, following or ending an accented syllable before *i* followed by a vowel, has the sound of *sh*; as, *ratio* (ra'-she-o), *Sulpi-tius* (sul-pish'-e-us).

Exc. *T*, in such case, retains its hard sound (*a*) after *s*, *t*, or *x*; as, *Sal-lus-tius*, *Brut'-ti-us*, *Sex'-ti-us*: (*b*) in proper names in *tion* and *tyon*; as, *Fu-ryt'-i-on*, *Am-phic'-ty-on*; and (*c*) in old infinitives in *er*; as, *flec'-ti-er*, for *flec'-ti*.

### X.

2. *X*, at the beginning of a syllable, has the sound of *z*; at the end, that of *ks*; as, *Xenôphon* (zen'-o-phon); *axis* (ak'-sis).

Exc. 1. When *ex* or *ux* is followed by a vowel in an accented syllable, *x* has the sound of *gz*; as, *exemplum* (eg-zem'-plum), *ux-o'-ri-us* (ug-zo'-re-us), *inexhaustus* (in-eg-zaus'-tus).

Exc. 2. *X*, ending an accented syllable before *i* followed by a vowel, and before *u* ending a syllable, has the power of *ksh*; as, *noxius* (nok'-she-us), *perui* (pek'-shu-i).

REMARK. *Ch* and *ph*, before *th*, in the beginning of a word, are silent; as, *Chthonia* (tho'-ni-a). *Phthia* (thi'-a). Also in the following combinations of consonants, in the beginning of words of Greek origin, the first letter is not sounded:—*mne-mon'-i-ca*, *gna'-vus*, *ime'-sis*, *Cte'-si-as*, *Ptol-e-mæ'-us*, *psal'-lo*.

## OF THE QUANTITIES OF THE PENULTIMATE AND FINAL SYLLABLES.

§ 13. 1. The *quantity* of a syllable is the relative time occupied in pronouncing it.

2. A *short* syllable requires, in pronunciation, half the time of a *long* one.

REM. The *penultimate* syllable, or *penult*, is the last syllable but one. The *antepenult* is the last syllable but two.

The quantity of a syllable is generally to be learned from the rules of prosody, §§ 282—301; but for the convenience of the student, the following general rules are here inserted:—

3. A vowel before another vowel or *h* is short.

4. Diphthongs, not beginning with *u*, are long.

5. A vowel before *x, z, j*, or any two consonants, except a mute followed by a liquid, is long by *position*, as it is called.

6. A vowel naturally short before a mute followed by a liquid is common, *i. e.* either long or short.

In this Grammar, when the quantity of a penult is determined by one of the preceding rules, it is not marked; in other cases, except in dissyllables, the proper mark is written over its vowel.

To pronounce Latin words correctly, it is necessary to ascertain the quantities of their last two syllables only; and the rules for the quantities of final syllables would, for this purpose, be unnecessary, but for the occasional addition of enclitics. As these are generally monosyllables, and, for the purpose of accentuation, are considered as parts of the words to which they are annexed, they cause the final syllable of the original word to become the penult of the compound. But as the enclitics begin with a consonant, the final vowels of all words ending with a consonant, if previously short, are, by the addition of an enclitic, made long by position. It is necessary, therefore, to learn the quantities of those final syllables *only* which end with a vowel.

## OF ACCENTUATION.

### I. OF LATIN ACCENTS.

§ 14. 1. Accent, in Latin, signifies the rising and falling of the voice in pronouncing the syllables of a Latin word. It is a general rule of the Latin language, that every word has its accent. The enclitics, however, have no accent of their own, but they modify the accent of the words to which they are annexed, and prepositions lose their accent, when they precede the cases which they govern.

2. The Latin language has three accents, the acute (´), or rising tone, the grave (`), or falling tone, and the circumflex (˘), composed of the acute and the grave, *i. e.* of the rising and the falling tone.

3. A monosyllable, when short by nature, takes the acute, when long by nature, the circumflex accent; as, *piz*, *ét*, *párs*; *dös*, *jús*, *spés*.

4. In words of two syllables, the penult is always accented; as, *pá'ter*, *mā'ter*, *pen'-na*.

REM. 1. Words of two syllables have the circumflex accent, when the vowel of the penult is naturally long and that of the last syllable short; as, *Rō-mā*, *mā-sā*, *lā-cē*, *jū-ris*; if otherwise, they have the acute; as, *hō-mō*, *dē'as*, *Rō-mā* (abl.), and *ar'-tē*, in which a is long only by position.

5. In words of more than two syllables, if the penult is long, it is accented; but if it is short, the accent is on the antepenult; as, *a-mī'-cus*, *dom'-i-nus*.

REM. 2. When the accent of a word of more than two syllables falls upon the penult, it may be either the circumflex or the acute according as the last syllable is short or long. The antepenult can take no accent except the acute, and in no case can the accent be drawn farther back than to the antepenult.

EXC. Vocatives of the second declension in *i*, instead of *ie*, from nominatives in *ius*, and genitives in *i*, instead of *ii*, are accented as they would be, if the rejected letters were annexed, *i. e.* with the acute upon the penult, even when it is short; as, *Vir-gil-i*; *Va-lē-rī*, *in-gē-ni*. So, also, the compounds of *facio* with words which are not prepositions; as, *cal-e-fā'-cūt*, *tep-e-fū'-cūt*.

§ 15. If the penult is common, the accent, in prose, is upon the antepenult; as, *vol'-ū-cris*, *phar'-ē-tra*, *ib'-i-que*: but genitives in *ius*, in which *i* is common, accent their penult in prose; as *u-nū'-us*, *is-ti'-us*.

**REMARK.** 8. All the syllables of a Latin word, except that on which the acute or circumflex accent falls, are supposed to have the grave accent, and were pronounced with the lower tone.

1. The rules for the *accentuation* of compound and simple words are the same; as, *se'-cum, sub'-e-o*.

2. In accentuation, the enclitics *que, ne, ve*, and also those which are annexed to pronouns,\* are accounted constituent parts of the words to which they are subjoined; as, *i'-ta, i'-ā-que; vi'-rum, vi-rum'-que*.

## II. OF ENGLISH ACCENTS.

**§ 16.** Accent, in English, is a particular stress of voice upon certain syllables of words. Cf. § 5, 2.

According to the English method of pronouncing Latin, a word may have two, three, or even four accents. That accent which is nearest to the termination of the word, and which always corresponds in position with the Latin accent, is called the *primary* or *principal* accent, and the *secondary* accent is that which next precedes the primary. The *third* and *fourth* accents, in like manner, precede the secondary, and are subject in all respects to the same rules; as, *pá-ter, má-ter, ser-mó-nes, dom'-i-nus; pe-ri'-t-um, con'-ju-ra'-ti-o, op'-por-tu'-ni-tá-tes, ex-er'-ci-ta'-ti-on'-i-bus-que*.

1. If only two syllables precede the primary accent, the secondary accent is on the first; as, *mod''-e-rā-tus, tol''-e-rab'-i-lis*.

2. If three or four syllables stand before the primary accent, the secondary accent is placed, sometimes on the first, and sometimes on the second syllable; as, *de-mon''-stra-ban'-tur, ad''-o-les-cen'-ti-a*.

3. Some words which have only four syllables before the primary accent, and all which have more than four, have *three* accents; as, *mod''-e-ra'-ti-ō-nis, tol''-e-ra-bil'-i-ō-rem, ex-er''-ci-ta'-ti-ō-nis*.

## DIVISION OF WORDS INTO SYLLABLES.

### VOWELS.

**§ 17.** Every Latin word is to be divided into as many syllables, as it has separate vowels and diphthongs.

**REMARK.** In the following rules, the term *vowel* includes not only single vowels, but diphthongs; and when a particular vowel is mentioned, a diphthong, also, ending with that vowel is intended.

### CONSONANTS.

#### SPECIAL RULES.

**§ 18. REMARK.** The following special rules, relating to particular letters or to particular combinations of letters, are in all cases to be regarded rather than the general rules, §§ 19-23, when the latter are inconsistent with the former.

1. *H*, when standing alone between two vowels, is always joined to the vowel that follows it.

Thus, *mi'-hi, tra'-hē-re, co'-hors, co''-hor-ta'-ti-o*.

\*These are *te, me, te, ce, cine, and dem*; as, *tute, egomet, meapte, hicc, hiccine, idem*.

2. *Ch*, *ph*, and *th*, in the division of words into syllables, are considered, not as separate letters, but as single aspirated mutes, and hence are never separated.

Thus, *A-chil'-les*, *Ach''-ra-dl'-na*, *Neph'-ē-le*, *Te'-thys*.

3. *Gl*, *tl*, and *thl*, when standing alone between any two vowels, unless the first be *u*, and *bl* after *u* are always separated.

Thus, *Ag'-le*, *Ag-lau'-rus*, *At'-las*, *ath-let'-i-cus*;—*Pub'-li-us*, *Pub'-lic'-ō-la*, *re-pub'-li-ca*.

4. In writing syllables, *x*, when standing alone between two vowels, is united to the vowel before it, but, in pronouncing such syllables, its elementary sounds are separated.

Thus, *sax'-um* (sak'-sum); *ax-il'-la* (ak-sil'-lah); *ex-em'-plum* (eg-zem'-plum); *ux-ō'-ri-us* (ug-zō'-re-us).

#### GENERAL RULES.

#### I. SIMPLE WORDS.

#### § 19. A.—A single Consonant between two Vowels.

1. A single consonant, or a mute with *l* or *r*, between the *last two vowels* of a word, or between the vowels of any two *unaccented syllables*, must be joined to the latter vowel.

Thus, *t* in *pt'-ter* and *au'-tem*; *th* in *ō'-ther*; *cl* in *Hi-er'-ō-cles*; *q* in *d'-qua*; *cr* in *d'-cris* and *vol'-ū-cris*; *chr* in *α'-chras*; *r* in *tol''-ē-ra-bil'-i-us*; *m* in *ei''-g-mo-l'-gi-a*; *l* in *am''-bu-lā-lō'-ri-us*; and *gr* in *per''-e-gri-na'-ti-o*. Respecting *ck* and *th* cf. § 18, 2.

Exc. *Tib'-i* and *sib'-i* are commonly excepted.

§ 20. 2. A single consonant, or a mute with *l* or *r*, *before* the vowel of an accented syllable, must be joined to the accented vowel.

Thus, *t* in *i-tin'-ē-ra*; *d* in *vi-dē'-to*; *th* in *α-the'-ri-us*; *cl* in *Eu-clī'-des* and *Her''-a-clē'-a*; *gr* in *a-gres'-tis* and *a-gric'-ō-la*; *pr* in *ca-pre'-ō-lus*; *q* in *a-qua'-ri-us*; and *phr* in *Eu-phrā'-tes*.

§ 21. 3. A single consonant *after* the vowel of any accented syllable, except a penult, must be joined to the accented vowel.

Thus, *m* in *dom'-i-nus* and *dom''-i-na'-ti-o*; *t* in *pat'-ē-ra*; *th* in *Scyth'-i-a*; and *q* in *aq'-ui-la* (ak'-we-lah), and *Aq''-ui-ta'-ni-a* (ak''-we-ta'-ne-ah).

4. When a mute with *l* or *r* follows the vowel of any accented syllable, except the penult, the mute is to be joined to the accented vowel.

Thus, *cr* in *ac'-ri-ter*, *ac''-ri-mō'-ni-a*; *tr* in *det''-ri-men'-tum*; *pr* in *cap'-ri-tes*, *cap''-ri-mul'-gus*, *phl* in *Paph''-la-go'-ni-a*; and *phr* in *Aph''-ro-dis'-i-a*. Respecting *phl* and *phr* cf. § 18, 2.

#### EXCEPTIONS TO THE 3D AND 4TH RULES.

← Exc. 1. A single consonant, or a mute with *l* or *r*, after an accented *a*, *e*, or *o*, and before two vowels the first of which is *e*, *i*, or *y*, must be joined to the syllable following the accent.

Thus, *d* in *ra'-d-us*, *ta'-d-am*, *ma'-d-a-tor*; *r* in *ha'-re-o*, *Ca'-ry-a'-tes*; *ch* in *bra'-chi-um*; *q* in *re'-qui-es*, *re'-qui-es-co*; *tr* in *pa'-tri-us*, *(E)-no'-tri-a*; and *r* and *l* in *ce'-re'-d-li-a*.

EXC. 2. A single consonant or a mute with *l* or *r*, after an accented *u*, must be joined to the vowel following it.

Thus, *r* in *lu'-ri-dus*, *au'-re-us*; *cr* in *Eu'-cri-tus*; *gl* in *ju'-glans*; and *pl* in *Nau'-pli-us*, *du'-pli-co*, and *du'-pli-ca'-ti-o*. Cf. § 18, 8.

## § 22. B.—Two Consonants between two Vowels.

Any two consonants, except a mute followed by *l* or *r* in the cases before mentioned, when standing between two vowels, must be separated.

Thus, *rp* in *cor'-pus*, *rm* in *for'-ma* and *ger-mā-nus*; *rv* in *ca-ter'-va*; *sc* in *ad-o-les'-cens*; *nn* in *an'-nus*; *phth* in *aph'-tha*; *cch* in *Bac'-chus* and *Bac'-cha-na'-li-a*; and *thl* in *ath-lē'-ta*.

## C.—Three or four Consonants between two Vowels.

1. When three consonants stand between any two vowels, the last, or, if that be *l* or *r* after a mute, the two last, are joined to the latter vowel.

Thus, *mpt* in *emp'-tor*, *ad-emp'-ti-o*; *str* in *fe-nes'-tra*; *mpl* in *ex-em'-plum*; *rthr* in *ar-thri'-tis*.

2. When four consonants stand between two vowels, two are joined to each vowel; as, *nstr* in *trans-trum*.

## II. COMPOUND WORDS.

§ 23. 1. In dividing a compound word into syllables the component parts are to be separated, if the former part ends with a consonant; as, *ab-es'-se*, *in'-ers*, *cir'-cum-er'-ro*, *su'-për-est*, *sub'-i-tus*, *præ-ter'-e-a*, *trans'-i-tur*, *sub'-stru-o*. So, also, if a consonant is inserted to prevent hiatus, it is joined to the preceding vowel; as, *prod'-e-o*, *red'-e-o*, *sed'-it'-i-o*.

2. But if the former part either ends with a vowel, or has dropped its termination, it is to be divided like a simple word; as, *def'-e-ro*, *dil'-i-gens*, *be-nev'-o-lus*, *præs'-to*, *eg'-ō-met*;—*po'-tes*, *po-tes'-tis*, *an'-i-mad-ver'-to*, *ve'-ne-o* (from *venum*, *eo*), *mag-nan'-i-mus*, *am-bā-ges*, *lon-gæ'-vus*.

## ETYMOLOGY.

§ 24. 1. Etymology treats of the different classes of words, their derivation, and their various inflections.

2. The classes, into which words are divided in reference to their signification, are called *Parts of Speech*.

3. The parts of speech in Latin are eight—*Substantive or Noun, Adjective, Pronoun, Verb, Adverb, Preposition, Conjunction, and Interjection.*

4. The first four are *inflected*; the last four, which are sometimes called *Particles*, are *not inflected*, except that some adverbs change their termination to express comparison.

REM. Substantives, pronouns, and adjectives are often included by grammarians under the general term *nouns*; but, in this Grammar, the word *nouns* is used as synonymous with *substantives* only.

§ 25. 1. To verbs belong *Participles, Gerunds, and Supines*, which partake of the meaning of the verb, and the inflection of the noun.

2. *Inflection*, in Latin grammar, signifies a change in the termination of a word. It is of three kinds—*declension, conjugation, and comparison.*

3. Nouns, adjectives, pronouns, participles, gerunds, and supines, are *declined*; verbs are *conjugated*, and adjectives and adverbs are *compared*.

## NOUNS.

§ 26. 1. A substantive or noun is the *name* of an object.

2. A *proper* noun is the name of an individual object; as, *Cæsar*; *Rōma*, Rome; *Tibēris*, the Tiber.

3. A *common* or *appellative* noun is the name of a class of objects, to each of which it is alike applicable; as, *hōmo*, man or a man; *avis*, a bird; *quercus*, an oak; *leo*, a lion; *mendacium*, a falsehood.

4. A *collective* noun is one which, in the singular number, denotes a collection of individuals; as, *exercitus*, an army.

REM. 1. The following are examples of nouns used as collectives, viz. *exercitus, gens, juvenus, multitudo, nobilitas, plebs, populus, turba, vis, and vulgus.*

5. An *abstract* noun is the name of a quality, action, or other attribute; as, *bonitas*, goodness; *gaudium*, joy; *festinatio*, haste.

REM. 2. A *concrete*, in distinction from an abstract noun, is one which denotes an object that has an actual and independent existence; as, *Rōma, hōmo, populus, ferrum.*

6. A *material* noun is the name of a substance considered in the gross; as, *lignum*, wood; *ferrum*, iron; *cibus*, food.

REM. 3. Proper, abstract, and material nouns become common, when employed to denote one or more of a class of objects. A verb in the infinitive mood is often used as an abstract noun.

7. To nouns belong *gender, number, and case.*

REM. 4. Adjectives and participles have likewise different genders, numbers, and cases, corresponding to those of nouns.

## GENDER.

§ 27. 1. The gender of a noun is its distinction in regard to sex.

2. Nouns have three genders—the *masculine*, the *feminine*, and the *neuter*.

3. The gender of Latin nouns is either *natural* or *grammatical*.

4. Those nouns are naturally masculine or feminine, which are used to designate the sexes; as, *vir*, a man; *mulier*, a woman.

5. Those are grammatically masculine or feminine, which, though denoting objects that are neither male nor female, take adjectives of the form appropriated to nouns denoting the sexes.

Thus, *dominus*, a lord, is naturally masculine, because it denotes a male; but *sermo*, speech, is grammatically masculine, because, though not indicative of sex, it takes an adjective of that form which is appropriated to nouns denoting males.

6. The grammatical gender of Latin nouns depends either on their signification, or on their declension and termination. The following are the general rules of gender, in reference to *signification*. Many exceptions to them, on account of *termination*, occur: these will be specified under the several declensions.

§ 28. MASCULINES. 1. Names, proper and appellative, of all male beings are masculine; as, *Homērus*, Homer; *pāter*, a father; *consul*, a consul; *ēquus*, a horse.

As proper names usually follow the gender of the general name under which they are comprehended; hence,

2. Names of rivers, winds, and months, are masculine, because *fluvius*, *ventus*, and *mensis*, are masculine; as, *Tibēris*, the Tiber; *Aquilo*, the north wind; *Aprilis*, April.

Exc. *Styx* and some names of rivers in *a* and *e* are feminine. §§ 62, and 41, 1.

3. Names of mountains are sometimes masculine, because *mons* is masculine; as, *Othrys*, a mountain of Thessaly; but they usually follow the gender of their termination; as, *hic\* Atlas*, *hæc Ida*, *hoc Soracte*.

§ 29. FEMININES. 1. Names, proper and appellative, of all female beings are feminine; as, *Helēna*, Helen; *māter*, a mother; *juvenca*, a heifer.

2. Names of countries, towns, trees, plants, ships, islands, poems, and gems, are feminine; because *terra*, *urbs*, *arbor*, *planta*, *nāvis*, *insula*, *fabula*, and *gemma*, are feminine; as,

*Ægyptus*, Egypt; *Corinthus*, Corinth; *pirus*, a pear-tree; *nardus*, spikenard; *Centaurus*, the ship Centaur; *Sāmos*, the name of an island; *Eunūchus*, the Eunuch, a comedy of Terence; *amethystus*, an amethyst.

Exc. Names of countries and islands in *um*, *i*, and (plur.) *a*, *trum*, are neuter.—Names of towns in *i*, *trum*; four in *o*, *nis*, viz. *Trusino*, *Hippo*, *Narbo*, and *Sulmo*, with *Tunes*, *Turus*, and *Cunūpus*, are masculine. Names of towns in *um* or *on*, *i*, and (plur.) *a*, *trum*; those in *e* and *ur* of the third declension, indeclinable nouns in *i* and *y*, and some barbarous names, as *Suthul*, *Hispul* and *Gadir* are neuter.—Names of trees and plants in *er* of the third declension, (§ 60), with *baccar* and *ribur* are neuter. A few names in *us*, *i*, (§ 50), with *oleaster*, *pinaster*, *Styrax* and *unedo* are masculine.—A few names of gems in *us*, *i*, are also masculine.

\* To distinguish the gender of Latin nouns, grammarians write *hic* before the masculine, *hæc* before the feminine, and *hoc* before the neuter.

§ 30. COMMON AND DOUBTFUL GENDER. Some words are either masculine or feminine. These, if they denote things animate, are said to be of the *common* gender; if things inanimate, of the *doubtful* gender.

Of the former are *pārens*, a parent; *bos*, an ox or cow: of the latter, *finis*, an end.

The following nouns are of the common gender:—

Adolescens, a youth.	Exsul, an exile.	Palumbes, a wood-pigeon.
Affinis, a relative by marriage.	Grus, a crane.	Pārens, a parent.
Ales, a bird.	Hospes, a guest, a host.	Par, a male.
Antistes, a chief priest.	Hostis, an enemy.	Præses, a president.
Auctor, an author.	Index, an informer.	Præsul, a chief priest.
Augur, an augur.	Infans, an infant.	Princeps, a prince or princess.
Bos, an ox or cow.	Interpres, an interpreter.	Serpens, a serpent.
Cānis, a dog.	Jūdex, a judge.	Sacerdos, a priest or priestess.
Civis, a citizen.	Juvēnis, a youth.	Satelles, a life-guard.
Cōmes, a companion.	Martyr, a martyr.	Sus, a swine.
Conjux, a spouse.	Miles, a soldier.	Testis, a witness.
Consort, a consort.	Municeps, a burgess.	Vates, a prophet.
Conviva, a guest.	Mus, a mouse.	Verna, a slave.
Custos, a keeper.	Nemo, nobody.	Vindex, an avenger.
Dux, a leader.	Obses, a hostage.	
	Patruēlis, a cousin.	

The following hexameters contain nearly all the above nouns:—

Conjux, atque pārens, princeps, patruēlis, et infans,  
Affinis, vindex, jūdex, dux, miles, et hostis,  
Augur, et antistes, juvēnis, conviva, sacerdos,  
Muni-que-ceps, vātēs, adolescens, civis, et auctor,  
Custōs, nēmo, cōmes, testis, sus, bōs-que, cānis-que,  
Pro consorte tōri par, præsul, verna, satelles,  
Mus-que obses, consors, interprēs, et exsul, et hospēs.

§ 31. 1. When nouns of the common gender denote males, they take a masculine adjective; when they denote females, a feminine.

2. The following are either masculine or feminine in sense, but masculine only in grammatical construction:—

Artifex, an artist.	Fur, a thief.	Lātro, a robber.
Auspex, a soothsayer.	Hēres, an heir.	Libēri, children.
Eques, a horseman.	Hōmo, a man or woman.	Pēdes, a footman.

To these may be added personal appellatives of the first declension; as, *advēna*, a stranger; and some gentile nouns; as, *Persa*, a Persian.

§ 32. 1. The following, though masculine or feminine in sense, are feminine only in construction:—

Copis, troops.	Opēs, laborers.	Vigilīs, watchmen.
Custodiēs, guards.	Prōles, { offspring.	
Excubiēs, sentinels.	Subōles, {	



2. Some nouns, signifying persons, are neuter, both in their termination and construction; as,

Acroāma, a buffoon.	Mancipium, }	a slave.	Scortum, }	a prostitute.
Auxilia, auxiliaries.	Servitium, }		Prostibulum, }	

3. (a.) In some personal appellatives masculines and feminines are distinguished by different terminations affixed to the same root. The masculines end in *us, er, o, tor, etc.*; the feminines in *a* or *trix*; as, *cōquus, cōqua*; *magister, magistra*; *lēno, lēna*; *inventor, inventrix*; *tibicen, tibicinā*; *āvus, avia*; *rex, regina*; *poēta, poētria*.

(b.) So also in some names of animals; as, *ēquus, ēqua*; *gallus gallina*; *leo, lea* and *leāna*. Sometimes the words are wholly different; as, *taurus, vacca*.

4. Some names of animals are sometimes masculine and sometimes feminine without regard to difference of sex; as, *anguis, serpens, dāma, talpa, tigris, colūber* and *colūbra, etc.*

§ 33. EPICENES. Names of animals which include both sexes, but admit of an adjective of one gender only, are called *epicene*. These commonly follow the gender of their terminations.

Thus, *passer*, a sparrow, *corvus*, a raven, are masculine; *aquila*, an eagle, *vulpes*, a fox, are feminine; though each of them is used to denote both sexes.

NOTE. This class includes the names of animals, in which the distinction of sex is seldom attended to. When it is necessary to mark the sex, *mas* or *femina* is usually added.

§ 34. NEUTERS. Nouns which are neither masculine nor feminine, are said to be of the neuter gender; such are,

1. All indeclinable nouns; as, *fas, nefas, nihil, gummi, pondo*.

2. Names of letters; as, *o longum*, long *o*. But these are sometimes feminine, *litrā* being understood.

3. Words used merely as such, without reference to their meaning; as, *pater est dissyllābum*; *pater* is dissyllabic.

4. All infinitives, imperatives, clauses of sentences, adverbs, and other particles, used substantively; as *scire tuum*, your knowledge; *ultimum vale*, the last farewell; *hoc diu*, this (word) *diu*.

REMARK. 1. Words derived from the Greek retain the gender which they have in that language.

REM. 2. Some nouns have different genders in the singular and plural, and are called *heterogeneous* nouns. See § 92.

## NUMBER.

§ 35. 1. (a.) Number, in nouns, is the form by which they denote whether they represent one object or more than one.

(b.) Latin nouns have two numbers,—the *singular* and the *plural*,—which are distinguished by their terminations. The singular number denotes one object; the plural, more than one.

## PERSON.

2. The person of a noun or pronoun is the character sustained by the object which it represents, as being the speaker, the person addressed, or the person or thing spoken of.

Hence there are three persons. The speaker is of the *first* person, the person addressed is of the *second* person, and the person or thing spoken of is of the *third* person.

## CASES.

§ 36. Many of the relations of objects, which, in English, are denoted by prepositions, are, in Latin, expressed by a change of termination.

*Cases* are those terminations of nouns, which denote their relations to other words. Latin nouns have six cases; viz. *Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Vocative, and Ablative*.

REMARK. Though there are six cases in each number, no noun has in each number so many different terminations.

§ 37. 1. The nominative denotes the relation of a *subject* to a finite verb; as, ego *scribo*, I write. Caius *dicū*, Caius says.

2. The genitive denotes *origin, possession*, and many other relations, which, in English, are expressed by the preposition *of* or by the *possessive case*; as, *Vita Cæsaris*, the life of Cæsar, or *Cæsar's* life.

3. The dative denotes that *to* or *for* which any thing is, or is done; as, *Ille mihi librum dedit*, He gave the book to me.

4. The accusative is either the *object* of an active verb, or of certain prepositions, or the *subject* of an infinitive.

5. The vocative is the form appropriated to the name of any object which is addressed.

6. The ablative denotes *privation*, and many other relations, especially those expressed in English by the prepositions *with, from, in, or by*.

REMARK. The nominative and vocative are sometimes called *casus recti*, i. e. the uninflected cases; and the others, *casus obliqui*; i. e. the oblique or inflected cases.

## DECLENSIONS.

§ 38. The regular forming of the several cases in both numbers, by annexing the appropriate terminations to the root, is called *declension*.

The Latin language has five declensions or modes of declining nouns, distinguished by the termination of the genitive singular, which, in the first declension, ends in *æ*, in the second in *i*, in the third in *is*, in the fourth in *us*, and in the fifth in *ei*.

§ 39. The following table exhibits a comparative view of the terminations or case-endings of the five declensions.

## TERMINATIONS.

<i>Singular.</i>								
	I.	II.		III.		IV.		V.
		<i>M.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>N.</i>	
<i>Nom.</i>	ā,	ūs,	ēr, ūm,	ōr, etc.	ē, etc.	ūs,	ū,	ēs,
<i>Gen.</i>	æ,	i,		is,		ūs,		eī,
<i>Dat.</i>	æ,	ō,		i,		uī,	ū,	eī,
<i>Acc.</i>	ām,	ūm,		ēm, (īm),	ē, etc.	ūm,	ū,	ēm,
<i>Voc.</i>	ā,	ēr,	ūm,	ōr, etc.	ē, etc.	ūs,	ū,	ēs,
<i>Abl.</i>	ā.	ō.		ē, (i.)		ū.		ē.

<i>Plural.</i>								
<i>Nom.</i>	ae,	i,	ā,	ēs,	ā, (iā),	ūs,	uā,	ēs,
<i>Gen.</i>	ārūm,	ōrūm,		ūm,	(iūm),	uūm,		ērūm,
<i>Dat.</i>	is,	is,		ibūs,		ibūs,	(ūbūs),	ēbūs,
<i>Acc.</i>	ās,	ōs,	ā,	ēs,	ā, (iā),	ūs,	uā,	ēs,
<i>Voc.</i>	ae,	i,	ā,	ēs,	ā, (iā),	ūs,	uā,	ēs,
<i>Abl.</i>	is.	is.		ibūs.		ibūs,	(ūbūs).	ēbūs.

*Remarks.*

§ 40. 1. The terminations of the nominative, in the third declension, are very numerous. See §§ 55, 58, 62, 66.

2. The accusative singular of masculines and feminines, always ends in *m*.

3. The vocative singular is like the nominative in all Latin nouns, except those in *us* of the second declension.

4. The nominative and vocative plural always end alike.

5. The genitive plural always ends in *um*.

6. The dative and ablative plural always end alike;—in the 1st and 2d declensions, in *is*; in the 3d, 4th, and 5th, in *būs*.

7. The accusative plural of masculines and feminines, always ends in *s*.

8. Nouns of the neuter gender have the accusative and vocative like the nominative, in both numbers; and these cases, in the plural, always end in *a*.

9. The 1st and 5th declensions contain no nouns of the neuter gender, and the 4th and 5th contain no proper names.

10. Every inflected word consists of two parts—a *root*, and a *termination*. The root or *crude form*, is the part which is not changed by inflection. The termination is the part annexed to the root. The root of a *declined* word may be found by removing the termination of any of its oblique cases. The case commonly selected for this purpose is the genitive singular.

11. The preceding table exhibits terminations only. In the fifth declension, the *e* of the final syllable, though unchanged, is considered as belonging to the termination.

## FIRST DECLENSION.

† § 41. Nouns of the first declension end in *ā*, *ē*, *ās*, *ēs*. Those in *a* and *e* are feminine; those in *as* and *es* are masculine.

Latin nouns of the first declension end only in *a*. They are thus declined:—

Singular.		Plural.	
Nom.	mū'-sā, a muse;	Nom.	mu'-sæ, muses;
Gen.	mu'-sæ, of a muse;	Gen.	mu-sā'-rūm, of muses,
Dat.	mu'-sæ, to a muse;	Dat.	mu'-sīs, to muses
Acc.	mu'-sām, a muse;	Acc.	mu'-sās, muses.
Voc.	mu'-sā, O muse;	Voc.	mu'-sæ, O muses;
Abl.	mu'-sā, with a muse.	Abl.	mu'-sīs, with muses.

In like manner decline

Au'-la, a hall.	Lit'-ē-ra, a letter.	Sa-git'-ta, an arrow.
Cu'-ra, care.	Lus-cin'-i-a, a nightingale.	Stel'-la, a star.
Ga'-le-a, a helmet.	Mach'-ī-na, a machine.	Tō'-ga, a gown.
In'-sū-la, an island.	Pen'-na, a feather, a quill.	Vī'-a, a way.

NOTE. As the Latin language has no article, appellative nouns may be rendered either with or without the English articles *a*, *an*, or *the*, according to their connection.

## EXCEPTIONS IN GENDER.

§ 42. 1. Names proper and appellative of men, as, *Sulla*, *Cinna*; *poëta*, a poet; *nauta*, a sailor; and names of rivers, though ending in *a*, are masculine: § 28, 1 and 2. But the following names of rivers have been used as feminine: viz. *Albula*, *Allia*, *Druentia*, *Garumna*, *Himëra*, *Matrōna*, *Mosella*, *Trebia*. *Lēthe* is always feminine.

*Ossa* and *Cēta*, names of mountains, are masculine or feminine.

2. *Hadria*, the Adriatic sea, *dāma* in Virgil and Statius, and *talpa* in Virgil, are masculine.

## EXCEPTIONS IN DECLENSION.

§ 43. *Genitive singular*. 1. The poets sometimes formed the genitive singular in *ā*; as, *aula*, gen. *aulā*.

2. *Famīlia*, after *pāter*, *māter*, *filius*, or *filia*, usually forms its genitive in *as*; as, *mater-famīlias*, the mistress of a family; gen. *matris-famīlias*; nom. plur. *matres-famīlias* or *famīliārum*. Some other words anciently formed their genitive in the same manner.

*Genitive plural*. The genitive plural of patronymics in *es*, of several compounds in *cōla* and *gēna*, and of some names of nations, is sometimes, especially in poetry, formed in *um* instead of *ārum*; as, *Æneādum*, *Cœlicōlum*, *terrigēnum*, *Lapīthum*. So *amphōrum*, *drachmum*, for *amphorārum*, *drachmārum*.

*Dative and Ablative plural*. The following nouns have sometimes *ābus* instead of *īs*, in the dative and ablative plural, especially when it is necessary to distinguish them from the same cases of masculines in *us* of the second declension having the same root; as, *filiis et filiābus*, to sons and daughters.

Dea, a goddess.  
Filia, a daughter.

Equa, a mare.  
Mūla, a she mule.

The use of a similar termination in *anima*, *asina*, *liberta*, *nāta*, *conserva*, and some other words, rests on inferior authority.

### GREEK NOUNS.

§ 44. Nouns of the first declension in *ē*, *ās*, and *ēs*, and some also in *ā*, are Greek. Greek nouns in *ā* are declined like *musa*, except that they sometimes have *ān* in the accusative singular; as, *Ossa*; acc. *Ossam*, or *Ossan*.

Greek nouns in *e*, *as*, and *es*, are thus declined in the singular number:—

N. Pe-nel'-ō-pē,	N. E-nē'-ās,	N. An-chī'-ēs,
G. Pe-nel'-ō-pēs,	G. E-nē'-æ,	G. An-chī'-æ,
D. Pe-nel'-ō-pæ,	D. E-nē'-æ,	D. An-chī'-æ,
Ac. Pe-nel'-ō-pēn,	Ac. E-nē'-ām or ān,	Ac. An-chī'-sēn,
V. Pe-nel'-ō-pē,	V. E-nē'-ā,	V. An-chī'-sē or ā,
Ab. Pe-nel'-ō-pē.	Ab. E-nē'-ā.	Ab. An-chī'-sā or ē.

§ 45. In like manner decline

Al'-o-e, aloe.	Ti-ā'-ras, a turban.
E-pit'-ō-me, an abridgment.	Co-mē'-tes, a comet.
This'-be.	Dy-nas'-tes, a ruler.
Bo'-rē-as, the north wind.	Pri-am'-i-des, a son of Priam.
Mī'-das.	Py-rī'-tes, a kind of stone.

1. Most proper names in *es*, except patronymics, follow the third declension; but in the accusative they often have both *em* and *en*, and in the vocative both *es* and *e*. See §§ 80, IV, and 81.

2. Greek nouns of the first declension, which admit of a plural, are declined in that number like the plural of *musa*.

3. The Latins frequently change the terminations of Greek nouns in *ēs* and *ē* into *ā*; as, *Atrides*, *Atrida*, a son of Atreus; *Perses*, *Persa*, a Persian; *geomētres*, *geomētra*, a geometrician; *Circe*, *Circa*; *epitōme*, *epitōma*; *grammatica*, *grammatica*, grammar; *rhetorice*, *rhetorica*, oratory.—So also *tiāras*, *tiāra*.

### SECOND DECLENSION.

§ 46. Nouns of the second declension end in *ēr*, *ir*, *ūs*, *ūm*, *os*, *on*. Those ending in *um* and *on* are neuter; the rest are masculine.

Nouns in *er*, *us*, and *um*, are thus declined:—

#### SINGULAR.

<i>A lord.</i>	<i>A son-in-law.</i>	<i>A field.</i>	<i>A kingdom.</i>
N. dōm'-i-nūs,	gē'-nēr,	ā'-gēr,	reg'-nūm,
G. dom'-i-nī,	gen'-ē-rī,	ā'-grī,	reg'-nī,
D. dom'-i-nō,	gen'-ē-rō,	ā'-grō,	reg'-nō,
Ac. dom'-i-nūm,	gen'-ē-rūm,	ā'-grūm,	reg'-nūm,
V. dom'-i-nē,	gē'-nēr,	ā'-gēr,	reg'-nūm,
Ab. dom'-i-nō.	gen'-ērō.	ā'-grō.	reg'-nō.

## PLURAL.

N. dom'-i-nī,	ger'-ĕ-rī,	a'-grī,	reg'-nā,
G. dom-i-nō-rūm,	gen-e-rō-rūm,	a'-grō-rūm,	reg-nō-rūm,
D. dom'-i-nis,	gen'-ĕ-ris,	a'-gris,	reg'-nis,
Ac. dom'-i-nōs,	gen'-ĕ-rōs,	a'-grōs,	reg'-nā,
V. dom'-i-nī,	gen'-ĕ-rī,	a'-grī,	reg'-nā,
Ab. dom'-i-nis.	gen'-ĕ-ris.	a'-gris.	reg'-nis.

Like *dominus* decline

An'-i-mus, <i>the mind.</i>	Fō'-cus, <i>a hearth.</i>	Nu'-mē-rus, <i>a number.</i>
Clip'-e-us, <i>a shield.</i>	Gla'-di-us, <i>a sword.</i>	O-ce'-ā-nus, <i>the ocean.</i>
Cor'-vus, <i>a raven.</i>	Lū'-cus, <i>a grove.</i>	Trō'-chus, <i>a trundling-hoop.</i>

NOTE. Nouns in *us* of the second declension are the only Latin nouns, whose nominative and vocative singular differ in form. See § 40, R. 8.

§ 47. A few nouns in *er*, like *gener*, add the terminations to the nominative singular, as a root. They are the compounds of *gēro* and *fēro*; as, *armiger*, -ĕri, an armor-bearer; *Lucifer*, -ĕri, the morning star; and the following:—

A-dul'-ter, <i>an adulterer.</i>	Li'-ber, <i>Bacchus.</i>	Pa'-er, <i>a boy.</i>
Cel'-ti-bēr, <i>a Celtiberian.</i>	Lib'-ĕ-ri, ( <i>plur.</i> ), <i>children.</i>	Sō'-cer, <i>a father-in-law.</i>
Y'-ber, <i>a Spaniard.</i>	Pres'-bĭ-ter, <i>an elder.</i>	Ves'-per, <i>the evening.</i>

*Mul'-ci-ber*, Vulcan, sometimes has this form.

§ 48. 1. All other nouns in *er* reject the *e* in adding the terminations, (§ 322, 4), and are declined like *ager*; thus,

A'-per, <i>a wild boar.</i>	Li'-ber, <i>a book.</i>	Al-ex-an'-der.
Aus'-ter, <i>the south wind.</i>	Ma-gis'-ter, <i>a master.</i>	Is'-ter.
Fā'-ber, <i>a workman.</i>	On'-ā-ger, <i>a wild ass.</i>	Teu'-cer.

2. *Vir*, a man, with its compounds, and the patritial *Trēvir*, (the only nouns in *ir*,) are declined like *gener*.

Like *regnum* decline

An'-trum, <i>a cave.</i>	Ex-em'-plum, <i>an example.</i>	Præ-sid'-i-um, <i>a defence.</i>
A'-tri-um, <i>a hall.</i>	Ne-go'-ti-um,* <i>a business.</i>	Sax'-um, <i>a rock.</i>
Bel'-lum, <i>war.</i>	Ni'-trum, <i>natron.</i>	Scep'-trum, <i>a sceptre.</i>

## EXCEPTIONS IN GENDER.

§ 49. 1. The following nouns in *us* and *os* are feminine:—

Abyssus, <i>a bottomless pit.</i>	Dialectos, <i>a dialect.</i>	Miltos, <i>vermilion.</i>
Alvus, <i>the belly.</i>	Diphthongus, <i>a diphthong.</i>	Phārus(os), <i>a light-house.</i>
Antidōtus, <i>an antidote.</i>	Dōmus, <i>a house, home.</i>	Plinthus, <i>the base of a column.</i>
Arctos(us), <i>the Northern Bear.</i>	Erēmus, <i>a desert.</i>	Vannus, <i>a corn-fan.</i>
Carbāsus, <i>a sail.</i>	Hūmus, <i>the ground.</i>	

2. Greek nouns in *odus* (ὁδος), and *mētros*, are likewise feminine; as, *synōdus*, an assembly; *diāmētros*, a diameter.

\* Pronounced ne-go'-she-um. See § 12.

§ 50. Names of countries, towns, trees, plants, etc. are feminine. See § 29, 2.

Yet the following names of plants are masculine:—

<i>Acanthus</i> , bear's-foot.	<i>Ebūlus</i> , an elder.	<i>Rūbus</i> , a blackberry-bush.
<i>Amarantus</i> , <i>amaranth</i> .	<i>Hellebōrus</i> , <i>hellebore</i> .	<i>Tribūlus</i> , a <i>caltrop</i> .
<i>Asparāgus</i> , <i>asparagus</i> .	<i>Intūbus</i> , <i>endive</i> .	
<i>Calānus</i> , a reed.	<i>Juncus</i> , a bulrush.	And sometimes
<i>Carduus</i> , a <i>thistle</i> .	<i>Raphānus</i> , a radish.	<i>Amarācus</i> , <i>marjoram</i> .
<i>Dūmus</i> , a <i>bramble</i> .	<i>Rhamnos</i> , <i>buck-thorn</i> .	<i>Cytisus</i> , <i>snail-clover</i> .

*Oleaster* and *pinaster*, names of trees, are also masculine.

The following names of gems are also masculine:—

<i>Beryllus</i> , a <i>beryl</i> .	<i>Chrysoprāsus</i> , <i>chrysoprase</i> .	So also,
<i>Carbuncūlus</i> , a <i>carbuncle</i> .	<i>Opālus</i> , <i>opal</i> .	<i>Pyrōpus</i> , <i>gold-bronze</i> .

*Chrysolithus*, *chrysolite*, and *smaragdus*, an *emerald*, are doubtful.

Names of females in *um* are feminine: § 29, 1; as, *mea Glycerium*, Ter.

Names of trees and plants in *um* are generally neuter; as, *apium*, parsley; *aconitum*, wolf's bane.

*Canōpus*, *Pontus*, *Hellespontus*, *Isthmus*, and all plural names in *i* of countries and towns are masculine. *Abūdus(ōs)* is doubtful.

Names of countries and towns ending in *um*, or, if plural, in *a*, are neuter; as, *Ilium* or *Iliōn*; *Ecbātāna*, *ōrum*.

§ 51. The following are doubtful, but more frequently masculine:—

<i>Balānus</i> , a <i>date</i> .	<i>Grossus</i> , an <i>unripe fig</i> .	<i>Phasēlus</i> , a <i>light vessel</i> .
<i>Barbitos</i> , a <i>tute</i> .	<i>Pampīnus</i> , a <i>vine-leaf</i> .	

*Atōmus*, an atom, and *cōlus*, a distaff, are doubtful, but more frequently feminine.

*Pelāgus*, the sea, and *vīrus*, poison, are neuter.

*Vulgus*, the common people, is neuter, and rarely masculine.

### EXCEPTIONS IN DECLENSION.

§ 52. *Genitive singular*. When the genitive singular ends in *ii*, the poets frequently contract it into *i*; as, *ingēnti*, for *ingenīi*.

*Vocative singular*. The vocative of nouns in *us* is sometimes like the nominative, especially in poetry; as, *fluviū*, *Latīnus*, in Virgil. So, *audi tu*, *popūlus Albānus*. Liv.

Proper names in *tus* omit *e* in the vocative; as, *Horatius*, *Horāti*; *Virgilius*, *Virgili*.

*Filius*, a son, and *genius*, a guardian angel, make also *fili* and *geni*. Other nouns in *tus*, including patris and possessives derived from proper names, form their vocative regularly in *e*; as, *Delius*, *Delie*; *Tirynthius*, *Tirynthie*; *Laertius*, *Laertie*.

§ 53. *Genitive plural*. The genitive plural of some nouns of the second declension, especially of those which denote money, weight and measure, is commonly formed in *um*, instead of *ōrum*: § 322, 4.

Such are particularly *nummum*, *sestertium*, *denarium*, *medimnum*, *jugērum*, *modium*, *talentum*. The same form occurs in other words, especially in poetry; as, *deum*, *libērum*, *Danaum*; etc., and sometimes *om* is found instead of *um*; as, *Achioom*. Virg. Cf. § 322, 8.

*Deūs, a god, is thus declined :—*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> de'-us,	<i>N.</i> di'-i, di, or de'-i,
<i>G.</i> de'-i,	<i>G.</i> de-ō-rum,
<i>D.</i> de'-o,	<i>D.</i> di'-is, dis, or de'-is,
<i>Ac.</i> de'-um,	<i>Ac.</i> de'-os,
<i>V.</i> de'-us,	<i>V.</i> di'-i, di, or de'-i,
<i>Ab.</i> de'-o.	<i>Ab.</i> di'-is, dis, or de'-is.

*Jēsus, or Iēsus, the name of the Savior, has um in the accusative, and u in all the other oblique cases.*

### GREEK NOUNS.

§ 54. 1. *Os* and *on*, in the second declension, are Greek terminations, and are commonly changed, in Latin, into *us* and *um*; but sometimes both forms are in use; as, *Alphēos*, and *Alphēus*; *Ilion* and *Ilium*. Greek names in *ros* after a consonant commonly change *ros* into *er*; as, *Alexandros*, *Alexander*; *Teucros*, *Teucer*. In a few words *ros* is changed to *rus*; as, *Codrus*, *hydrus*, and once in Virgil, *Teucrus*.

Greek nouns are thus declined in the singular number :—

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Barbiton, a lyre.</i>
<i>N.</i> Dō'-lōs,	<i>N.</i> bar'-bi-tōn,
<i>G.</i> De'-lī,	<i>G.</i> bar'-bi-tī,
<i>D.</i> De'-lō,	<i>D.</i> bar'-bi-tō,
<i>Ac.</i> De'-lōn or ūm,	<i>Ac.</i> bar'-bi-tōn,
<i>V.</i> De'-lē,	<i>V.</i> bar'-bi-tōn,
<i>Ab.</i> De'-lō.	<i>Ab.</i> bar'-bi-tō.

2. The plurals of Greek nouns in *os* and *on* are declined like those of *dominus* and *regnum*; but the nominative plural of nouns in *os* sometimes ends in *es*, as, *canephōres*.

3. In early writers some nouns in *os* have a genitive in *ē* (*ou*); as, *Menandra*. Ter.

4. A genitive plural in *ōn*, instead of *ōrum*, occurs in the titles of books and in some names of places; as, *Georgicōn*; *Philōnōn aræ*. Sall.

5. Greek proper names in *eus* (see § 9, R. 3), are declined like *dominus*, except that the vocative ends in *eu*; but sometimes in the genitive, dative, and accusative also, they retain the Greek form, viz. gen. *ēos*, dat. *ēi* (contracted *ēi*), acc. *ēd* or *ēdā*, and are of the third declension. See §§ 86, and 306, (1.) So in Lucretius the neuter *pelāgus* (Greek *πῆλαγος*, *es*) has an accusative plural *pelāgē* for *pelagea* after the third declension. § 83, 1.—See also respecting a genitive in *i* of some proper nouns in *es*, § 73, Rem.—*Panthū* occurs in Virgil, A. 2, 822, as the vocative of *Panthūs*. Cf. § 81.

### THIRD DECLENSION.

§ 55. The number of final letters, in this declension, is twelve. Five are vowels—*a, e, i, o, y*; and seven are consonants—*c, l, n, r, s, t, x*. The number of its final syllables exceeds fifty.

REM. The following terminations belong exclusively to Greek nouns; viz. *ma, i, y, ān, ōn, ōs, gn, ōr, gr, ye, eus, yw, ōux, yux*, and plurals in *e*.



*Mode of declining Nouns of the Third Declension.*

To decline a word properly, in this declension, it is necessary to know its gender, its nominative singular, and one of its oblique cases; since the root of the cases is not always found entire and unchanged in the nominative. The case usually selected for this purpose is the genitive singular. The formation of the accusative singular, and of the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural, depends upon the gender: if it is masculine or feminine, these cases have one form; if neuter, another.

§ 56. The student should first fix well in his memory the terminations of one of these forms. He should next learn the nominative and genitive singular of the word which is to be declined. If *is* be removed from the genitive, the remainder will always be the root of the oblique cases, and by annexing their terminations to this root, the word is declined; thus, *rupes*, genitive (found in the dictionary) *rupis*, root *rup*, dative *rupi*, etc.: so *ars*, gen. *artis*, root *art*, dat. *arti*, etc.; *opus*, gen. *opëris*, root *opër*, dat. *opëri*, etc.

RULES FOR FORMING THE NOMINATIVE SINGULAR OF THE  
THIRD DECLENSION FROM THE ROOT.

I. Roots ending in *c, g; b, m, p; u, t, d*, and some in *r*, add *s* to form the nominative; as, *trābis*, *trabs*; *hiëmis*, *hiems*; *gruis*, *grus*.

REMARK 1. *T, d* and *r* before *s* are dropped; as, *nepôtis*, *nepos*; *laudis*, *laus*; *floris*, *flor*. So *bovis*, *bos*, drops *v*.

REM. 2. *C* and *g* before *s* form *x*; as, *vocis*, *vox*; *regis*, *rex*. So *vs* forms *x* in *nivis*, *nix*. Cf. §§ 8, 2, and 171, 1.

REM. 3. Short *i* in the root before *c, b, p, t*, is commonly changed to *ë*; as, *pollicis*, *pollex*; *caëbis*, *caëbs*; *principis*, *princeps*; *comitis*, *comës*. So *ä* is changed to *ë* in *aucipis*, *auceps*.

REM. 4. Short *ë* or *ö* before *r* in neuters is changed to *ä*; as, *genëris*, *genüs*; *tempöris*, *tempüs*.

REM. 5. Short *ë* before *r* is changed to *t* in the masculines *cinëris*, *ctnis*; *cucumëris*, *cucümis*; *puloëris*, *pulvis*; *vomëris*, *vömis*.

REM. 6. A few and those mostly monosyllabic roots of masculines and feminines, not increasing in the genitive, add *es* or *is*, instead of *s* alone; as, gen. *rūpis*, nom. *rūpes*; gen. *auris*, nom. *auris*.

REM. 7. A few neuters add *ë* to the root to form the nominative; as, *rëtis*, *rëtë*; *māris*, *mārë*.

II. To roots ending in *l* and *n*, to some in *r* and *s*, and to those of most neuters in *t*, no addition is made in forming the nominative; as, *animālis*, *animal*; *canōnis*, *cānon*; *honōris*, *hōnor*; *assis*, *as*.

REMARK 1. Final *ön* and *in* in the roots of masculines and feminines, become *o* in the nominative; as, *sermōnis*, *sermo*; *arundënis*, *arundo*.

REM. 2. Final *in* in the roots of neuters becomes *ën* in the nominative; as, *fluminis*, *flümën*. So also in the masculines, *oscen*, *pecten*, *tübicen* and *tubicen*.

REM. 3. *Tr* and *br* at the end of a root, take *ë* between them in the nominative; as, *patrië*, *pāter*; *imbris*, *imber*. Cf. §§ 108, 48, and 106.

REM. 4. Short *ö* is changed to *ä* in *ebōris*, *ëbär*; *femōris*, *fëmär*; *jecōris*, *jëcär*; and *robōris*, *röbär*.

REM. 5. In the roots of neuters *at* drops *t*, and *üt* becomes *ut* in the nominative; as, *poëmätis*, *poëma*; *capütis*, *caput*.

REM. 6. Roots of this class ending in repeated consonants drop one of them in the nominative; as, *fellis*, *fel*; *farris*, *far*; *assis*, *as*; *bessis*, *bes*.

The following are the two forms of termination in this declension:—

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural</i>	
<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i> *	*	<i>N.</i> ēs,	ā, (iā),
<i>G.</i> īs,	īs,	<i>G.</i> ūm, (iūm),	ūm, (iūm),
<i>D.</i> ī,	ī,	<i>D.</i> ībūs,	ībūs,
<i>Ac.</i> ēm, (īm),	*	<i>Ac.</i> ēs,	ā, (iā),
<i>V.</i> *	*	<i>V.</i> ēs,	ā, (iā),
<i>Ab.</i> ě, (ī).	ě, (ī).	<i>Ab.</i> ībūs.	ībūs.

The asterisk stands for the nominative, and for those cases which are like it.

§ 57. The following are examples of the most common forms of nouns of this declension, declined through all their cases.

*Hōnor, honor; masc.*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> ho'-nor,	ho-nō'-res,
<i>G.</i> ho-nō'-ris,	ho-nō'-rum,
<i>D.</i> ho-nō'-ri,	ho-nor'-i-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> ho-nō'-rem,	ho-nō'-res,
<i>V.</i> ho'-nor,	ho-nō'-res,
<i>Ab.</i> ho-nō'-re.	ho-nor'-i-bus.

*Rūpes, a rock; fem.*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> ru'-pes,	ru'-pes,
<i>G.</i> ru'-pis,	ru'-pi-um,
<i>D.</i> ru'-pi,	ru'-pi-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> ru'-pem,	ru'-pes,
<i>V.</i> ru'-pes,	ru'-pes,
<i>Ab.</i> ru'-pe.	ru'-pi-bus.

*Ars, art; fem.*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> ars,	ar'-tes,
<i>G.</i> ar'-tis,	ar'-ti-um,*
<i>D.</i> ar'-ti,	ar'-ti-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> ar'-tem,	ar'-tes,
<i>V.</i> ars,	ar'-tes,
<i>Ab.</i> ar'-te.	ar'-ti-bus.

*Sermo, speech; masc.*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> ser'-mo,	ser-mō'-nes,
<i>G.</i> ser-mō'-nis,	ser-mō'-num,
<i>D.</i> ser-mō'-ni,	ser-mon'-i-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> ser-mō'-nem,	ser-mō'-nes,
<i>V.</i> ser'-mo,	ser-mō'-nes,
<i>Ab.</i> ser-mō'-ne.	ser-mon'-i-bus.

*Turris, a tower; fem.*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> tur'-ris,	tur'-res,
<i>G.</i> tur'-ris,	tur'-ri-um,
<i>D.</i> tur'-ri,	tur'-ri-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> tur'-rim, rem,	tur'-res,
<i>V.</i> tur'-ris,	tur'-res,
<i>Ab.</i> tur'-ri, or re.	tur'-ri-bus.

*Nox, night; fem.*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> nox,	noc'-tes,
<i>G.</i> noc'-tis,	noc'-ti-um,*
<i>D.</i> noc'-ti,	noc'-ti-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> noc'-tem,	noc'-tes,
<i>V.</i> nox,	noc'-tes,
<i>Ab.</i> noc'-te.	noc'-ti-bus.

*Miles, a soldier; com. gen.*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> mi'-les,	mil'-i-tes,
<i>G.</i> mil'-i-tis,	mil'-i-tum,
<i>D.</i> mil'-i-ti,	mi-lit'-i-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> mil'-i-tem,	mil'-i-tes,
<i>V.</i> mi'-les,	mil'-i-tes,
<i>Ab.</i> mil'-i-te.	mi-lit'-i-bus.

*Pāter, a father; masc.*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> pa'-ter,	pa'-tres,
<i>G.</i> pa'-tris,	pa'-trum,
<i>D.</i> pa'-tri,	pat'-ri-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> pa'-trem,	pa'-tres,
<i>V.</i> pa'-ter,	pa'-tres,
<i>Ab.</i> pa'-tre.	pat'-ri-bus.

\* Pronounced ar'-she-um, noc'-she-um. See § 12.

## Sedile, a seat; neut.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> se-di'-le,	se-dil'-i-a,
<i>G.</i> se-di'-lis,	se-dil'-i-um,
<i>D.</i> se-di'-li,	se-dil'-i-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> se-di'-le,	se-dil'-i-a,
<i>V.</i> se-di'-le,	se-dil'-i-a,
<i>Ab.</i> se-di'-li.	se-dil'-i-bus.

## Carmen, a verse; neut.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> car'-men,	car'-mī-na,
<i>G.</i> car'-mī-nis,	car'-mī-num,
<i>D.</i> car'-mī-ni,	car-min'-i-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> car'-men,	car'-mī-na,
<i>V.</i> car'-men,	car'-mī-na,
<i>Ab.</i> car'-mī-ne.	car-min'-i-bus.

## Iter, a journey; neut.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> i'-ter,	i-tin'-ē-ra,
<i>G.</i> i-tin'-ē-ris,	i-tin'-ē-rum,
<i>D.</i> i-tin'-ē-ri,	it-i-ner'-i-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> i'-ter,	i-tin'-ē-ra,
<i>V.</i> i'-ter,	i-tin'-ē-ra,
<i>Ab.</i> i-tin'-ē-re.	it-i-ner'-i-bus.

## Lāpis, a stone; masc.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> la'-pis,	lap'-i-des,
<i>G.</i> lap'-i-dis,	lap'-i-dum,
<i>D.</i> lap'-i-di,	la-pid'-i-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> lap'-i-dem,	lap'-i-des,
<i>V.</i> la'-pis,	lap'-i-des,
<i>Ab.</i> lap'-i-de.	la-pid'-i-bus.

## Virgo, a virgin; fem.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> vir'-go,	vir'-gi-nes,
<i>G.</i> vir'-gi-nis,	vir'-gi-num,
<i>D.</i> vir'-gi-ni,	vir-gin'-i-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> vir'-gi-nem,	vir'-gi-nes,
<i>V.</i> vir'-go,	vir'-gi-nes,
<i>Ab.</i> vir'-gi-ne.	vir-gin'-i-bus.

## Animāl, an animal; neut.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> ān'-i-mal,	an-i-mā'-li-a,
<i>G.</i> an-i-mā'-lis,	an-i-mā'-li-um,
<i>D.</i> an-i-mā'-li,	an-i-mal'-i-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> an'-i-mal,	an-i-mā'-li-a,
<i>V.</i> an'-i-mal,	an-i-mā'-li-a,
<i>Ab.</i> an-i-mā'-li.	an-i-mal'-i-bus.

## Opus, work; neut.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> ō'-pus,	op'-ē-ra,
<i>G.</i> op'-ē-ris,	op'-ē-rum,
<i>D.</i> op'-ē-ri,	o-per'-i-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> o'-pus,	op'-ē-ra,
<i>V.</i> o'-pus,	op'-ē-ra,
<i>Ab.</i> op'-ē-re.	o-per'-i-bus.

## Cāput, a head; neut.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> ca'-put,	cap'-i-ta,
<i>G.</i> cap'-i-tis,	cap'-i-tum,
<i>D.</i> cap'-i-ti,	ca-pit'-i-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> ca'-put,	cap'-i-ta,
<i>V.</i> ca'-put,	cap'-i-ta,
<i>Ab.</i> cap'-i-te.	ca-pit'-i-bus.

## Poëma, a poem; neut.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> po-ē'-ma,	po-em'-ā-ta,
<i>G.</i> po-em'-ā-tis,	po-em'-ā-tum,
<i>D.</i> po-em'-ā-ti,	po-e-mat'-i-bus, or po-em'-ā-tis,
<i>Ac.</i> po-ē'-ma,	po-em'-ā-ta,
<i>V.</i> po-ē'-ma,	po-em'-ā-ta,
<i>Ab.</i> po-em'-ā-te.	po-e-mat'-i-bus, or po-em'-ā-tis.

## RULES FOR THE GENDER OF NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

§ 58. Nouns whose gender is determined by their signification, according to the general rules, § 28-34, are not included in the following rules and exceptions.

## MASCULINES.

Nouns ending in *o*, *er*, *or*, *es* increasing in the genitive, *os*, and *n*, are masculine; as,

*sermo*, speech; *dolor*, pain; *flos*, a flower; *carcer*, a prison; *pes*, a foot; *canon*, a rule.

## Exceptions in O.

§ 59. 1. Abstract and collective nouns in *io* are feminine; as, *ratio*, reason; *legio*, a legion.

REM. 1. But numerals in *io*; as, *binio*, *trinio*, etc., except *unio*, unity, are masculine.

2. Nouns in *do* and *go*, of more than two syllables, are feminine; as, *arundo*, a reed; *imago*, an image. So also *grando*, hail. But *comedo*, a glutton; *unedo*, the arbuté tree; and *harpago*, a grappling-hook, are masculine.

REM. 2. *Margo*, the brink of a river, is doubtful. *Cupido*, desire, is often masculine in poetry, but in prose is always feminine.

3. *Citro*, flesh, and Greek nouns in *o*, are feminine; as, *echo*, an echo. *Bubo*, the owl, is once feminine, Virg. A. 4, 462.

## Exceptions in ER.

§ 60. 1. *Laver*, a water plant, and *tuber*, the tuber tree, are feminine, but when the latter denotes the fruit, it is masculine. *Linter*, a boat, is feminine, and once, in Tibullus, masculine. *Siser*, skirret, is neuter in the singular, but masculine in the plural.

2. The following, in *er*, are neuter:—

Acer, a maple-tree.	Papaver, a poppy.	Tuber, a swelling.
Cadaver, a dead body.	Piper, pepper.	Uber, a teat.
Cicer, a vetch.	Siler, an osier.	Ver, the spring.
Iter, a journey.	Spinther, a clasp.	Verber, a scourge.
Laser, assafetida.	Süber, a cork-tree.	Zingiber, ginger.

## Exceptions in OR.

§ 61. *Arbor*, a tree, is feminine: *ador*, spelt; *aquor*, the sea; *marmor*, marble; and *cor*, the heart, are neuter.

## Exceptions in ES increasing in the genitive.

1. The following are feminine:—

Compes, a fether.	Quies, and Requies, rest.	Tëges, a mat.
Merces, a reward.	Inquies, restlessness.	
Merges, a sheaf of corn.	Sëges, growing corn.	

2. *Ales*, a bird; *cômes*, a companion; *hospes*, a guest; *interprez*, an interpreter; *miles*, a soldier; *obses*, a hostage; *præses*, a president; and *satelles*, a life-guard, are common, § 30. *Æs*, brass, is neuter.

*Exceptions in OS.*

3. *Arbor*, a tree; *cos*, a whetstone; *dos*, a dowry; *eos*, the morning; and rarely *nepos*, a grandchild, are feminine: *sacerdos*, *custos*, and *bos* are common, § 80: *os*, the mouth, and *os*, a bone, are neuter; as are also the Greek words *epos*, epic poetry; and *mēlos*, melody.

*Exceptions in N.*

4. Nouns in *men* with four in *n* are neuter—*gluten*, glue; *inguen*, the groin; *pollen*, fine flour; and *ungen*, ointment.

5. Four nouns in *on*, are feminine—*aëdon*, a nightingale; *halcyon*, a kingfisher; *icon*, an image; and *sindon*, muslin.

## FEMININES.

§ 62. Nouns ending in *as*, *es* not increasing in the genitive, *is*, *ys*, *aus*, *s* preceded by a consonant, and *x*, are feminine; *as*,

*etas*, age; *nubes*, a cloud; *avis*, a bird; *chlamys*, a cloak; *laus*, praise; *trabe*, a beam; *pax*, peace.

*Exceptions in AS.*

1. *Mas*, a male, *vas*, a surety, and *as*, a piece of money, or any unit divisible into twelve parts, are masculine. Greek nouns in *as*, *antis*, are also masculine; as, *adamas*, adamant. So also *Mēlas*, the name of a river, § 28, 2. *Arcas* and *Nōmas* are common.—2. *Vas*, a vessel, the indeclinable nouns, *fas* and *nēfas*, and Greek nouns in *as*, *dis*, are neuter; as, *artocreas*, a meat-pie; *bucēras*, a species of herb.

*Exceptions in ES not increasing in the genitive.*

3. *Acināces*, a scimitar, and *cōles* or *cōlis*, a stalk, are masculine. *Antistes*, *palambes*, *vātes*, and *vepres*, are masculine or feminine. *Cacoēthes*, *hippomānes*, *nepenthes*, and *panāces*, Greek words, are neuter.

*Exceptions in IS.*

§ 63. 1. Latin nouns in *nis* are masculine or doubtful.

(1.) Masc. *Crinis*, hair; *ignis*, fire; *pānis*, bread; *mānes*, (plur.), departed spirits.—(2.) Masc. or fem. *Amnis*, a river; *crinis*, ashes; *fīnis*, an end; *clānis*, the haunch; *cānis*, a dog; *fūnis*, a rope. The plurals, *cinēres*, the ashes of the dead, and *fīnes*, boundaries, are always masculine.

2. The following are common or doubtful:—

*Anguis*, a snake.

*Callis*, a path.

*Canālis*, a conduit pipe.

*Contubernālis*, a comrade.

*Corbis*, a basket.

*Pollis*, fine flour.

*Pulvis*, dust.

*Scrōbis*, a ditch.

*Tigris*, a tiger.

*Torquis*, a chain.

3. The following are masculine:—

*Axis*, an axle.

*Aquālis*, a water-pot.

*Cassia*, a net.

*Caulis*, or } a stalk.

*Cōlis*,

*Cenchris*, a serpent.

*Collis*, a hill.

*Cucūmis*, a cucumber.

*Ensis*, a sword.

*Fascis*, a bundle.

*Follis*, a pair of bellows.

*Fustia*, a club.

*Glis*, a dormouse.

*Lāpis*, a stone.

*Lemūres*, pl., spectres.

Mensis, a month.  
 Mngilis, a mullet.  
 Orbis, a circle.  
 Piscis, a fish.  
 Postis, a post.  
 Qutris, a Roman.  
 Samnis, a Samnite.

Sanguis, blood.  
 Sēmis, or  
 Semissis, } compounds  
 Bessis, } of as.  
 Centussis,  
 Decussis,  
 Tressis, }

Sentis, a brier.  
 Sodālis, a companion.  
 Torris, a firebrand.  
 Unguis, a nail.  
 Vectis, a lever.  
 Vernis, a worm.  
 Vomis, a ploughshare.

4. Names of male beings, rivers, and months in *is* are masculine; as, *Dis*, Pluto; *Anūbis*, an Egyptian deity; *Tigris*, the river Tigris; *Aprilis*, April. See § 28.

### Exceptions in *YS*.

Names of rivers and mountains in *ys* are masculine; as, *Hūlys*, *Othrys*. See § 28, 2 and 3

### Exceptions in *S* preceded by a consonant.

§ 64. 1. *Dens*, a tooth; *fons*, a fountain; *mons*, a mountain; and *pons*, a bridge, are masculine. So also are *auceps*, a bird-catcher; *chālybs*, steel; *cliens*, a client; *elops*, a kind of fish; *ēpops*, a hoopoe; *gryps*, a griffin; *hydrope*, the dropsy; *mērops*, a kind of bird. *Rūdens*, a rope, is masculine and very rarely feminine.

2. The following nouns also are masculine, viz. (a.) these which are properly adjectives—*confluens* and *torrens*, scil. *amnis*; *occidens* and *oriens*, scil. *sol*; (b.) compounds of *dens*—*tridens*, a trident, and *bidens*, a two-pronged mattock;—but *bidens*, a sheep, is feminine; (c.) the parts of *as* ending in *ns*; as, *sextans*, *quadrans*, *triens*, *dodrans*, and *dextans*.

3. The following are common or doubtful:—

Adeps, grease.	Seps, a kind of serpent.	Serpens, a serpent.
Forceps, pincers.	Scrobs, a ditch.	Stirps, the trunk of a tree.

*Animans* an animal, which is properly an adjective, is masculine, feminine, or neuter.

### Exceptions in *X*.

§ 65. 1. *AX*. *Anthrax*, cinnabar; *cōraz*, a raven; *cordax*, a kind of dance; *drōpax*, an ointment; *stīraz*, a kind of tree; *thōraz*, a breast-plate; and *Atax*, the river Aude, are masculine; *limax*, a snail, is common.

2. *EX*. Nouns in *ex* are masculine, except *fax*, *forfex*, *lex*, *nex*, *prex*, (obsolete in nom. and gen. sing.), and *supellex*, which are feminine; to which add (§ 29) *cārex*, *ilex*, *mūrex*, *pellex*, and *vilex*. *Atriplex* is neuter and very rarely masculine or feminine. *Alex*, a fish-pickle; *cortex*, bark; *imbrex*, a gutter-tile; *ōbez*, a bolt; and *silex*, a flint, are doubtful: *sēnex*, an old person; *grex*, a herd; *rūmex*, sorrel; and *pūmex*, pumice-stone, are masculine and very rarely feminine.

3. *IX*. *Cūlix*, a cup; *fornix*, an arch; *phomix*, a kind of bird; and *spādix*, a palm-branch, are masculine: *lūrix*, the larch-tree; *perdix*, a partridge; and *vārix*, a swollen vein, are masculine or feminine.

4. *OX*. *Box* and *ēsox*, names of fishes, are masculine.

5. *UX*. *Trādux*, a vine-branch, is masculine.

6. *YX*. *Bombyx*, a silk-worm; *cālyx*, the bud of a flower; *coccyx*, a cuckoo; *dryx*, a wild goat, and names of mountains in *yx*, as *Eryx*, are masculine. *Onyx*, a box made of the onyx-stone, and *sardōnyx*, a precious stone; also, *calx*, the heel, and *calx*, lime; *lynx*, a lynx, and *sandyx*, a kind of color, are masculine or feminine.

NOTE. *Bombyx*, when it signifies silk, is doubtful.

7. *Quincunx*, *septunx*, *dēcunx*, *dena*, parts of *as*, are masculine.

## NEUTERS.

§ 66. Nouns ending in *a, e, i, y, c, l, t, ar, ur, us*, and *men*, are neuter; as,

*diadēma*, a crown; *rēte*, a net; *hydromēli*, mead; *lac*, milk; *vectigal*, revenue; *caput*, the head; *calcar*, a spur; *guttur*, the throat; *pectus*, the breast; and *flumen*, a river.

## Exceptions in L, C, and E.

*Mugil*, a mullet, and *sol*, the sun, are masculine. *Sal*, salt, is masculine or neuter, in the singular; but, in the plural, it is always masculine. *Lac* is neuter and rarely masculine. *Fransie* is neuter, and once in Virgil feminine.

## Exceptions in AR and UR.

§ 67. *Furfur*, bran; *silur*, a trout; *turtur*, a turtle dove; and *vultur*, a vulture, are masculine.

## Exceptions in US.

1. *Lēpus*, a hare; and Greek nouns in *pus* (*πῶς*), are masculine; as, *tripus*, a tripod; but *lagopus*, a kind of bird, is feminine.

2. Nouns in *us*, having *utis*, or *ūdis*, in the genitive, are feminine; as, *juventus*, youth; *incus*, an anvil.

3. *Pecus*, *-ūdis*, a brute animal, and *tellus*, the earth, are feminine. *Pessinus*, and *Selinus*, names of towns, are also feminine. See § 29.

4. *Grus*, a crane; *mus*, a mouse; and *sus*, a swine, are masculine or feminine.

5. *Rhus*, sumach, is masculine, and rarely feminine.

## RULES FOR THE OBLIQUE CASES OF NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

## GENITIVE SINGULAR.

§ 68. 1. The genitive singular of the third declension of *Latin* nouns always ends in *is*, in *Greek* nouns it sometimes ends in *os* and *us*.

## A.

2. Nouns in *a* form their genitive in *ātis*; as, *di-a-dē-ma*, *di-a-dem'-ā-tis*, a crown; *dog'-ma*, *dog'-mā-tis*, an opinion.

## E.

3. Nouns in *e* change *e* into *is*; as, *rē-te*, *rē-tis*, a net; *se-dī-le*, *se-dī-lis*, a seat.

## I.

4. Nouns in *i* are of Greek origin, and are generally indeclinable; but *hydrom'-ē-ī*, mead, has *hyd-ro-mel'-i-tis* in the genitive.

## O.

§ 69. Nouns in *o* form their genitive in *ōnis*; as, *ser'-mo*, *ser-mō-nis*, speech; *pā'-vo*, *pa-vō'-nis*, a peacock.

REMARK. Patrials in *o* have *ōnis*; as, *Macēdo*, *ōnis*; but some have *ōnis*, as, *Eburōnes*, etc. See 8d exception to increments in *O*, § 287.

EXC. 1. Nouns in *do* and *go* form their genitive in *īnis*; as, *a-run'-do*, *a-run'-dī-nis*, a reed; *i-mā'-go*, *i-mag'-ī-nis*, an image.

But four dissyllables—*cūdo*, *ūdo*, *līgo* and *mango*; and three trisyllables—*comēdo*, *unēdo*, and *harpāgo*, have *ōnis*.

EXC. 2. The following nouns, also, have *īnis*:—*Apollo*; *hōmo*, a man; *nēmo*, nobody; and *turbo*, a whirlwind.

*Cīro*, flesh, has, by syncope, *carnis*. *Anio*, the name of a river, has *Aniēnis*; *Nerio*, the wife of Mars, *Neriēnis*; from the old nominatives, *Anien*, and *Neriēnes*.

EXC. 3. Some Greek nouns in *o* form their genitive in *ās*, and their other cases singular, in *o*; as, *Dido*, gen. *Didus*, dat. *Dido*, etc.; *Argo*, *-as*; but they are sometimes declined regularly; as, *Dido*, *Didōnis*.

## Y.

Greek nouns in *y* have their genitive in *yos*; as, *misy*, *misjos*, or, by contraction, *misys*.

## C.

§ 70. The only nouns in *c* are *ā'-lec*, *a-lē'-cis*, fish-brine, and *lac*, *lac'-tis*, milk.

## L. N. R.

Nouns in *l*, *n*, and *r*, form their genitive by adding *is*; as, *con'-sul*, *con'-sū-lis*, a consul; *cā'-non*, *can'-ō-nis*, a rule; *hō'-nor*, *ho-nō-ris*, honor.

So, *An'-i-mal*, *an-i-mā'-lis*, an animal.

*Vi'-gil*, *vig'-i-lis*, a watchman.

*Ti'-tan*, *Ti-tā'-nis*, *Titan*.

*Si'-ren*, *Si-rē'-nis*, a Siren.

*Del'-phin*, *del-phī'-nis*, a dolphin.

*Cal'-car*, *cal-cā'-ris*, a spur.

*Car'-cer*, *car'-cē-ris*, a prison.

*A'-mor*, *a-mō'-ris*, love.

*Gut'-tur*, *gut'-tū-ris*, the throat.

*Mar'-tyr*, *mar'-tī-ris*, a martyr.

## Exceptions in L.

*Fel*, gall, and *mel*, honey, double *l* before *is*, making *fellis* and *mellis*.

## Exceptions in N.

§ 71. 1. Neuters in *en* form their genitive in *īnis*; as, *flū'-men*, *flū'-mī-nis*, a river; *glū'-ten*, *glū'-tī-nis*, glue.

The following masculines, also, form their genitive in *īnis*:—*pecen*, a bird which foreboded by its notes; *pecten*, a comb; *tibicen*, a piper; and *tubicen*, a trumpeter.

2. Some Greek nouns in *ōn* form their genitive in *ontis*; as, *Laomēdon*, *Laomedontis*. Some in *tn* and *gn* add *is* or *os*; as, *Trāchin*, or *Trāchyn*, *Trachinis* or *Trachynos*.

## Exceptions in R.

1. Nouns in *ter* drop *e* in the genitive; as, *pā'-ter*, *pa'-tris*, a father. So also *imber*, a shower, and names of months in *ber*; as, *Octōber*, *Octōbris*.



But *crâter*, a cup; *sôter*, a savior; and *lâter*, a brick, retain *e* in the genitive.

2. *Far*, a kind of corn, has *farris*; *hëpar*, the liver, *hepâtis*; *Lar* or *Lars*, *Lartis*; *itër*, a journey, has *itinëris* from the old nominative *itiner*; *Jupiter*, *Jôvis*; and *cor*, the heart, *cordis*.

3. These four in *ur* have *ôris* in the genitive:—*ëbur*, ivory; *fëmur*, the thigh; *jëcur*, the liver; *rôbur*, strength.

*Fëmur* has also *fëminis*, and *jëcur*, *jecinôris*, and *jocinôris*.

## AS.

§ 72. Nouns in *as* form their genitive in *âtis*; as, *æ'-tas*, *æ-tâ'-tis*, age; *pi'-ë-tas*, *pi-e-tâ'-tis*, piety.

Exc. 1. *As* has *assis*; *mâs*, a male, *mâris*; *vas*, a surety, *vâdis*; and *väs*, a vessel, *vâsis*. *Anas*, a duck, has *anâtis*.

Exc. 2. Greek nouns in *as* form their genitive according to their gender; the masculines in *antis*, the feminines in *âdis* or *âdos*, and the neuters in *âtis*; as, *adâmas*, *-antis*, adamant; *lampas*, *-âdis*, a lamp; *Pallas*, *-âdis* or *-âdos*; *bucêras*, *-ëtis*, a species of herb. *Arcas*, an Arcadian, and *Nômas*, a Numidian, which are of the common gender, form their genitive in *âdis*. *Mêlas*, the name of a river, has *Mêlânis*.

## ES.

§ 73. 1. Nouns in *es* form their genitive by changing *es* into *is*, *tis*, *ëtis*, or *ëtis*; as, *ru'-pes*, *ru'-pis*, a rock; *mi'-les*, *mi'-t-tis*, a soldier; *së'-ges*, *seg'-ë-tis*, growing corn; *qui'-es*, *qui'-ë-tis*, rest.

REMARK. A few Greek proper names in *es* (gen. *is*) sometimes form their genitive in *ei*, or, by contraction, *i*, after the second declension; as, *Achilles*, *is*, *ei* or *-i*: and a few in *æ* after the first declension; as, *Orestes*, *is* or *æ*.

2. Those which make *tis* are,

<i>Ales</i> , a bird.	<i>Gurges</i> , a whirlpool.	<i>Poples</i> , the ham.
<i>Ames</i> , a fowler's staff.	<i>Hospes</i> , a guest.	<i>Satelles</i> , a lifeguard.
<i>Antistes</i> , a priest.	<i>Limes</i> , a limit.	<i>Stipes</i> , the stock of a tree.
<i>Cæspes</i> , a turf.	<i>Merges</i> , a sheaf of corn.	<i>Termes</i> , an olive bough.
<i>Cômes</i> , a companion.	<i>Miles</i> , a soldier.	<i>Trâmes</i> , a by-path.
<i>Eques</i> , a horseman.	<i>Palmes</i> , a vine-branch.	<i>Vêles</i> , a skirmisher.
<i>Fômes</i> , touchwood.	<i>Pêdes</i> , a foot-soldier.	

3. The following have *ëtis*:—*abies*, a fir-tree; *aries*, a ram; *inâges*, a man deified; *interpres*, an interpreter; *paries*, a wall; *sêges*, a corn-field; and *têges*, a mat.

4. The following have *ëtis*:—*Obes*; *Ores*, a Cretan; *lêbes*, a caldron; *magnes*, a loadstone; *quies* and *requies*, rest; *inquiries*, restlessness; and *tâpes* (used only in acc. and abl.), tapestry.—Some Greek proper names have either *ëtis* or *is* in the genitive; as, *Chrêmes*, *-ëtis*, or *-is*. *Dâres*, *-ëtis*, or *-is*.

Exc. 1. *Obses*, a hostage, and *præses*, a president, have *tâdis*. *Hêres*, an heir, and *merces*, a reward, have *ëtis*; *pes*, a foot, and its compounds, have *ëtis*.

Exc. 2. *Cêres* has *Cerëris*; *bes*, *bësis*; *præs*, *prâdis*; and *as*, *aris*.

## IS.

§ 74. Nouns in *is* have their genitive the same as the nominative; as, *au'-ris*, *ar-ris*, the ear; *â-vis*, *ã-vis*, a bird.

Exc. 1. The following have the genitive in *ēris*:—*cīnis*, ashes; *pūbis*, dust; *vōmis* or *vōmer*, a ploughshare. *Cucūmis*, a cucumber, has *ēris* and rarely *is*.

Exc. 2. The following have *īdis*:—*cāpis*, a cup; *cassis*, a helmet; *cuspis*, a point; *lāpis*, a stone; and *prōmulsis*, an antepast.

Exc. 3. Two have *inis*:—*pollis*, finé flour, and *sanguis* or *sanguen*, blood.

Exc. 4. Four have *itis*:—*Dis*, Pluto; *lis*, strife; *Quiris*, a Roman; and *Samnis*, a Samnite.

Exc. 5. *Gūs*, a dormouse, has *glūris*.

## GREEK NOUNS.

1. Greek nouns in *is*, whose genitive ends in *ios* or *eos*, (*ios* or *eos*), form their genitive in Latin in *is*; as (a.) verbals in *is*; as, *basis*, *mathēsis*, etc. (b.) compounds of *polis* (*πόλις*); as, *metropōlis*, *Neapōlis*, etc.; and (c.) a few other proper names, as *Charybdīs*, *Lachēsīs*, *Syrītis*, etc. In some nouns of this class the Greek genitive is sometimes found; as, *Nemēsīs*, *Nemesios*.

2. Greek nouns in *is*, whose Greek genitive is in *idos* (*ιδος*), form their Latin genitive in *īdis*; as, *agīs*, *aspis*, *ephēmēris*, *pyrāmis*, *tyrannis*, *Enēis*, *Iris*, *Nerēis*, etc. *Tigris* has both *is* and *īdis*; and in some other words of this class later writers use *is* instead of *īdis*.

3. *Chāris* has *Charītis*; *Salāmis*, *Salamīnis*, and *Sīmōis*, *Simoentis*.

## OS.

§ 75. Nouns in *os* form their genitive in *ōris* or *ōtis*; as, *flos*, *flō-ris*, a flower; *nē-pos*, *ne-pō-tis*, a grandchild.

The following have *ōris*:—

*Flos*, a flower.

*Lābos* or *lābor*, labor.

*Os*, the mouth.

*Glos*, a husband's sister.

*Lēpos* or *lēpor*, wit.

*Ros*, dew.

*Hōnos* or *hōnor*, honor.

*Mos*, a custom.

*Arbos* or *arbor*, a tree, has *ōris*.

The following have *ōtis*:—

*Cos*, a whetstone.

*Monocēros*, a unicorn.

*Nēpos*, a grandchild.

*Dos*, a dowry.

*Rhinocēros*, a rhinoceros.

*Sacerdos*, a priest.

Exc. 1. *Custos*, a keeper, has *custōdīs*; *bos*, an ox, *bōvis*; and *os*, a bone, *ossis*.

Exc. 2. Some Greek nouns in *os* have *ōis* in the genitive; as, *hēros*, a hero; *Mīnos*; *Tros*, a Trojan; and some Greek neuters in *os* are used in the third declension in the nominative and accusative only; as, *Argos*, *cētos*, *ēpos*, *mētos*.

## US.

§ 76. 1. Nouns in *ūs* form their genitive in *ēris* or *ōris*; as, *gē-nus*, *gen'-ē-ris*, a kind; *tem'-pus*, *tem'-pō-ris*, time.

2. Those which make *ēris* are, *ācus*, (chaff), *fāctus*, *fūnus*, *gēnus*, *glōmus*, *lātus*, *mānus*, *ōlus*, *ōnus*, *opus*, *pondus*, *rūdus*, *scēlus*, *sidus*, *ulcus*, *vellus*, *viscus* and *vulnus*. In early writers *pignus* has sometimes *pignēris*.

3. Those which make *ōris* are, *corpus*, *dēcus*, *dedēcus*, *facinus*, *fēnus*, *frigus*, *lēpus*, *litus*, *nēmus*, *pectus*, *pēcus*, *pignus*, *stercus*, *tempus*, and *tergus*.

Exc. 1. These three in *ūs* have *ūdis*:—*incūs*, an anvil; *pālūs*, a morass; and *subcūs*, a dove-tail. *Pēcūs*, a brute animal, has *pecūdīs*.

Exc. 2. These five have *ūtis*:—*juventūs*, youth; *sālūs*, safety; *senectūs*, old age; *servitūs*, slavery; *virtūs*, virtue.

Exc. 3. Monosyllables in *us* have *aris*; as, *crus*, the leg; *jus*, right; *jus*, broth; *mus*, a mouse; *pus*, matter; *rus*, the country; *tus*, frankincense; except *grus*, and *sus*, which have *gruis*, and *suis*; and *rhus*, which has *rhois* or *roris*. *Tellus*, the earth, has *telluris*; and *Ligus* or *Ligur*, a Ligurian, has *Ligūris*.

Exc. 4. *Fraus*, fraud, and *laus*, praise, have *fraudis*, *laudis*.

Exc. 5. Greek nouns in *pūs* (πυς) have *ōdis*; as, *tripus*, *tripōdis*, a tripod; *Edipus*, *-ōdis*; but this is sometimes of the second declension.

Exc. 6. Some Greek names of cities in *us* have *untis*; as, *Amāthus*, *Amathuntis*. So *Trapēzus*, *Opus*, *Pessinus*, and *Selinus*.

Exc. 7. Greek nouns ending in *eus* are all proper names, and have their genitive in *eos*; as, *Orpheus*, *-eos*. But these nouns are found also in the second declension; as, *Orpheus*, *-ē* or *-i*. Cf. § 64, 5.

## YS.

§ 77. 1. Nouns in *ys* are Greek, and make their genitive in *ŷis* (contracted *ys*), or, as in Greek, *ŷos* (*vos*); as,

*Otyis*, gen. *Otyis* or *Otyōs*; *Tēlyis*, *-ŷis* or *ŷos*. So *Atys*, *Atŷys*, *Erinnys*, *Hēlyis*, *Othrys*. A few have *ŷdis*; as, *chlamys*, *chlamydis*.

## S preceded by a consonant.

2. Nouns in *s*, with a consonant before it, form their genitive by changing *s* into *is* or *tis*; as, *trabs*, *trā-bis*, a beam; *hi-ems*, *hī-ē-mis*, winter; *pars*, *par-tis*, a part; *frons*, *fron-tis*, the forehead.

(1.) Those in *bs*, *ms*, and *ps*; as, *scrobs*, *hiems*, *stirps*, change *s* into *is*; except *gryps*, a griffin, which has *grŷphis*.

REMARK. Compounds in *ceps* from *cāpio* have *tpis*; as, *princeps*, *principis*, a prince. But *auceps* has *aucŷpis*.

(2.) Those in *ls*, *ns*, and *rs*, as, *puls*, *gens*, *ars*, change *s* into *tis*.

Exc. 1. The following in *ns* change *s* into *dis*:—*frons*, foliage; *glans*, an acorn; *juglans*, a walnut; *lens*, a nit; and *libripens*, a weigher.

Exc. 2. *Tiryns*, a town of Argolis, has *Tirynthis* in the genitive.

## T.

§ 78. 1. Nouns in *t* form their genitive in *tis*. They are, *cāput*, the head, gen. *cap-tis*; and its compounds, *occŷput* and *sinctŷput*.

## X.

2. Nouns in *x* form their genitive by resolving *x* into *cs* or *gs*, and inserting *i* before *s*; as, *vox* (*vocs*) *vō-cis*, the voice; *lex* (*legs*) *lē-gis*, a law.

(1.) Latin nouns in *ax* have *ācis*; as, *forax*, *forācis*, except *fax*, *fācis*. Most Greek nouns in *ax* have *ācis*; as, *thōrax*, *thorācis*; a few have *ācis*; as, *cōrax*, *corācis*; and Greek names of men in *nax* have *nactis*; as, *Astynax*, *Astyanactis*.

(2.) Nouns in *ex* have *tcis*; as, *jūdex*, *judicis*; *obex* has *obtcis* or *objtcis*; and *vibex*, *vibicis*. *Nex*, *prex*, (nom. obs.), *rēnex* and *fenisēx* have *ēcis*; *ālex*, *narthez*, and *vervea* have *ēcis*, and *fax*, *fācis*. *Lex* and *rex* have *ēgis*; *aquilex* and *grex* have *ēgis*; *rēmex* has *remigis*; *sēnex*, *sēnis*; and *supellea*, *supellecūā*.

(8.) Nouns in *ix* have *icis*; as, *cervix*, *cervicis*; and less frequently *icis*; as, *collis*, *collis*. But *nix* has *nivis*; *strix*, foreign names of men, and gentile nouns in *rix* have *igis*; as, *Bitūrix*, *Dumetrix*, etc.

(4.) Nouns in *ox* have *ocis*; as, *vox*, *vocis*; but *Cappadox* has *Cappadocis*; *Allobrox*, *Allobrogis*; and *nox*, *noctis*.

(5.) Of nouns in *ux*, *cruux*, *dux*, *trādux*, and *nux* have *ucis*; *lux* and *Pollux*, *ucis*.—*Conjux* has *conjūgis*, *frux* (nom. obs.) *frūgis*, and *fauz*, *faucis*.

(6.) *Yx*, a Greek termination, has *ycis*, *ycis*, or *ygis*, *ygis*. *Onyx* and *sardonyx*, in which *x* is equivalent to *chs* (§ 8, 2) have *ychis*; as, *onyx*, *onjchis*.

#### DATIVE SINGULAR.

§ 79. The dative singular ends in *i*; as, *sermo*, dat. *sermōni*.

Anciently it also ended in *e*; as, *morte datus*. Varro in Gellius. So *ore* for *eri*, Cic. and Liv.; and *jure* for *jūri*. Liv.

#### ACCUSATIVE SINGULAR.

(a.) The accusative singular of all neuter nouns is like the nominative.

(b.) The accusative singular of masculines and feminines, ends in *em*. Yet some Latin nouns in *is*, which do not increase in the genitive, have *im*, and some Greek nouns have *im*, *in*, or *a*.

1. Many proper names in *is*, denoting places, rivers, or gods, have the accusative singular in *im*; as, *Hispālis*, *Tibēris*, *Anābis*; so also *Albis*, *Athēsis*, *Batis*, *Arar* or *Arāris*, *Biblis*, *Apis*, *Osiris*, *Syrus*, etc. These sometimes, also, make the accusative in *in*; as, *Albin*. *Scaldis* has *in* and *em*, and *Liris*, *im*, *in*, and *em*. *Liger* has *Ligērim*.

2. The following also have the accusative in *im*:—

Amussis, a mason's rule.	Mephitis, fowl air.	Sināpis, mustard.
Būris, a plough-tail.	Pelvis, a basin.	Sitis, thirst.
Cannābis, hemp.	Rāvis, hoarseness.	Tussis, a cough.
Cucūmis, (gen. -is), a cucumber.	Secūris, an axe.	Vis, strength.

3. These have *im*, and sometimes *em*:—

Febris, a fever. Puppis, the stern. Restis, a rope. Turris, a tower.

But these have *em*, and rarely *im*:—

Bipennis, a battle-axe.	Nāvis, a ship.	Sementis, a sowing.
Clāvis, a key.	Præsēpis, a stall.	Strigilis, a flesh-brush.
Messis, a harvest.		

4. *Lens* and *pars* have rarely *lentim* and *partim*; and *crātum* from *crates*, is found in Plautus.

5. Early writers formed the accusative of some other nouns in *im*.

#### Accusative of Greek Nouns.

§ 80. The accusative singular of masculine and feminine Greek nouns sometimes retains the Greek terminations *in* and *a*, but often ends, as in Latin, in *em* or *im*.

I. Masculine and feminine Greek nouns, whose genitive increases in *is* or *os*, impure, that is, with a consonant going before, have their accusative in *em* or *a*; as, *lampas*, *lampādīs* (Greek -δός), *lampāda*; *chlāmyna*, *chlāmýdis*, *chlāmýdem*, or *-yda*; *Helicon*, *Helicōnis*, *Helicōna*.

REMARK. In like manner these three, which have *is* pure in the genitive—*Trôs*, *Trôis*, *Trôem*, and *Trôa*, a Trojan; *hêros*, a hero; and *Mînos*, a king of Crete.—*Aër*, the air; *âther*, the sky; *delphîn*, a dolphin; and *paean*, a hymn, have usually *a*; as, *âëra*, *âëthëra*, *delphîna*, *paëana*. *Pan*, a god, has only *a*.

EXC. 1. Masculines in *is*, whose genitive increases in *is* or *os* impure, have their accusative in *im* or *in*; sometimes in *idem*; *Pâris*, *Parîdis*; *Parim*, or *Paridem*.

EXC. 2. Feminines in *is*, increasing impurely in the genitive, though they usually follow the rule, have sometimes *im* or *in*; as, *Elîs*, *Elîdis*; *Elin* or *Elîdem*. So *tigris*, gen. *is* or *idîs*; acc. *tigrim* or *tigrin*.

II. Masculine and feminine Greek nouns in *is* not increasing, and in *ys*, gen. *os*, form their accusative by changing the *s* of the nominative into *m* or *n*; as, *Charybdîs*, (gen. Lat. *-is*, Gr. *-ος*), acc. *Charybdîm* or *-in*; *Hâlÿs*, *-ÿis* or *-ÿos*, *Hâlÿm* or *-ÿn*. So *rhûs*, gen. *rhois*, has *rhûm* or *rhûm*.

III. Proper names ending in the diphthong *eus*, gen. *êi* and *êos*, have the accusative in *ea*; as, *Thêseus*, *Thesea*; *Tÿdeus*, *Tÿdea*. See § 54, 5.

IV. Some Greek proper names in *es*, whose genitive is in *is*, have in Latin, along with the accusative in *em*, the termination *en*, as if of the first declension; as, *Achilles*, *Achillen*; *Xerxes*, *Xerxen*; *Sophôcles*, *Sophôclen*. Cf. § 45, 1. Some also, which have either *êtis* or *is* in the genitive, have, besides *êtem*, *êta*, or *em*, the termination *en*; as, *Chrêmes*, *Thêles*.

## VOCATIVE SINGULAR.

§ 81. The vocative is like the nominative.

REMARK. Many Greek nouns, however, particularly proper names, drop *s* of the nominative to form the vocative; as, *Daphnis*, *Daphni*; *Têthÿs*, *Têthy*; *Melampus*, *Melampu*; *Orpheus*, *Orphu*. Proper names in *es* (gen. *is*) sometimes have a vocative in *i*, after the first declension; as, *Socrâtes*, *Socrâte*. § 45, 1.

## ABLATIVE SINGULAR.

§ 82. The ablative singular commonly ends in *e*.

EXC. 1. (a.) Neuters in *e*, *al*, and *ar*, have the ablative in *i*; as, *sedîle*, *sedîli*; *animâl*, *animâli*; *calcar*, *calcârî*.

(b.) But names of towns in *e*, and the following neuters in *ar*, have *e* in the ablative; viz. *baccar*, an herb; *far*, corn; *hêpar*, the liver; *jûbar*, a sunbeam; *nectar*, nectar; *par*, a pair; *sal*, salt. *Rête*, a net, has either *e* or *i*; and *mâre*, the sea, has sometimes in poetry *mare* in the ablative.

EXC. 2. (a.) Nouns which have *im* alone, or both *im* and *in* in the accusative, and names of months in *er* or *is*, have *i* in the ablative; as, *vis*, *vim*, *vi*; *Tibêris*, *-im*, *i*; *December*, *Decembri*; *Aprilis*, *Aprîli*.

(b.) But *Betis*, *cannâbis*, and *sindâpis*, have *e* or *i*. *Tigris*, the tiger, has *tigrîde*; as a river it has both *Tigrîde* and *Tigri*.

EXC. 3. (a.) Nouns which have *em* or *im* in the accusative, have their ablative in *e* or *i*; as, *turris*, *turre* or *turri*.

(b.) So *Elîs*, acc. *Elîdem* and *Elin*, has *Elîde* or *Elî*. But *restis*, and most Greek nouns with *idîs* in the genitive, have *e* only; as, *Pâris*, *-idîs*, *-ide*.

EXC. 4. (a.) Adjectives in *is*, used as nouns, have commonly *i* in the ablative, but sometimes *e*; as, *famîliâris*, a friend; *natâlis*, a birthday; *sodâlîs*, a companion; *trîrêmîs*, a trireme.—Participles in *as*, used as nouns, have commonly *e* in the ablative, but *contînens* has *i*.

(b.) When adjectives in *is* become proper names, they always have *e*; as, *Juvenālis*, *Juvenāle*. *Affinis* and *edilis* have generally *e*; as have always *juvenis*, a youth; *rūdis*, a rod; and *volūcris*, a bird.

Exc. 5. (a.) The following, though they have only *em* in the accusative, have *e* or *i* in the ablative, but most of them have oftener *e* than *i*:—

Amnis,	Collis,	Ignis,	Pars,	Supellex,
Anguis,	Convallis,	Imber,	Postis,	Tridens,
Avis,	Corbis,	Mugilis,	Pūgil,	Unguis,
Bilis,	Finis,	Orbis,	Sordes,	Vectis,
Civis,	Fustis,	Ovis,	Sors,	Vesper.
Classis,				

(b.) *Occiput* has only *i*, and *rus* has either *e* or *i*; but *rure* commonly signifies from the country, and *ruri*, in the country. *Mel* has rarely *i*.

(c.) So also names of towns, when denoting the place where any thing is said to be, or to be done, have the ablative in *i*; as, *Carthagini*, at Carthage; so, *Anzuri* and *Lacedæmoni*, and, in the most ancient writers, many other nouns occur with this termination in the ablative. *Canalis* has *i*, and very rarely *e*.

Exc. 6. Nouns in *ys*, which have *ym* or *yn* in the accusative, have their ablative in *ye* or *y*; as, *Atys*, *Atye*, or *Aty*.

#### NOMINATIVE PLURAL.

§ 83. I. The nominative plural of masculines and feminines ends in *es*; as, *sermōnes*, *rūpes*:—but neuters have *a*, and those whose ablative singular ends in *i* only, or in *e* and *i*, have *ia*; as, *cūptū*, *capitū*; *sedūle*, *sedilia*; *rēte*, *retia*. *Aplustre* has both *a* and *ia*.

1. Some Greek neuters in *os* have *ē* in the nominative plural; as, *mēlos*; nom. plural, *mele*; (in Greek μέλας, by contraction μέλη). So *Tempe*.

#### GENITIVE PLURAL.

II. The genitive plural commonly ends in *um*; sometimes in *ium*.

1. Nouns which, in the ablative singular, have *i* only, or both *e* and *i*, make the genitive plural in *ium*; as, *sedūle*, *sedili*, *sedilium*; *turris*, *turre* or *turri*, *turrium*.

2. Nouns in *es* and *is*, which do not increase in the genitive singular, have *ium*; as, *nūbes*, *nubium*; *hostis*, *hostium*.

Exc. *Cānis*, *juvénis*, *fōris*, *mugilis*, *prōles*, *strues*, and *vātes*, have *um*; so oftener have *apis*, *strigilis*, and *volūcris*; less frequently *mensis*, *sēdes*, and, in the poets only, *ambāges*, *cadēs*, *clādes*, *vepres*, and *caelestis*.

3. Monosyllables ending in two consonants have *ium* in the genitive plural; as, *urbs*, *urbium*; *gens*, *gentium*; *arx*, *arcium*.

Exc. *Lynx*, *sphinx*, and *ops* (nom. obsolete) have *um*.

Most monosyllables in *s* and *x* pure have *um*, but the following have *ium*; *dos*, *mas*, *glis*, *lis*, *os* (*ossis*), *fauz*, (nom. obs.) *niz*, *nox*, *strix*, *vis*, generally *fraus* and *mus*; so also *fur* and *ren*, and sometimes *lar*.

4. Nouns of two or more syllables, in *ns* or *rs*, and names of nations in *as*, have commonly *ium*, but sometimes *um*; as, *cliens*, *clientium* or *clientum*; *Arpinas*, *Arpinatium*.

(1.) Other nouns in *us* generally have *um*, but sometimes *ium*; as, *celas*, *celātum* or *celatium*. *Pendēs* and *optimātes* have usually *ium*.

5. The following have *ium*:—*cāro*, *compes*, *jinter*, *imber*, *ūter*, *venter*, *Samnis*, *Quiris*, and usually *Insūber*. *Fornax* and *pālus* have sometimes *ium*.

6. Greek nouns have generally *um*; as, *gigas*, *gigantum*; *Arabs*, *Arabum*; *Thrax*, *Thracum*;—but a few, used as titles of books, have sometimes *on*; as, *Epigramma*, *epigrammatōn*; *Metamorphōsis*, *-eōn*. The patrician *Maleōn* also is found in Curtius, 4, 13.

REMARK 1. *Bos* has *boum* in the genitive plural.

REM. 2. Nouns which want the singular, form the genitive plural as if they were complete; as, *mānes*, *manum*; *celites*, *celitum*; *ilia*, *ilium*; as if from *mānis*, *celēs*, and *ile*. So also names of feasts in *alia*; as, *Saturnalia*, *Saturnaliūm*; but these have sometimes *orum* after the second declension. *Ales* has sometimes, by epenthesis, *alitiūm*. See § 322, 3.

## DATIVE AND ABLATIVE PLURAL.

§ 84. The dative and ablative plural end in *ibus*.

Exc. 1. *Bos* has *bōbus* and *bābus*, by contraction, for *bovibus*; *sus* has *sibus* by syncope, for *sūbus*. § 322, 5, and 4.

Exc. 2. Greek nouns in *ma* have the dative and ablative plural more frequently in *is* than in *ibus*; as, *poēma*, *poemātis*, or *poematibus*.

Exc. 3. The poets sometimes form the dative plural of Greek nouns, that increase in the genitive, in *is*, and, before a vowel, in *isin*; as, *herōis*, *heroidis*; *herōisin*, or *herōisin*. Ovid. So in Quintilian, *Metamorphōsēis*.

## ACCUSATIVE PLURAL.

§ 85. The accusative plural ends, like the nominative, in *ēs*, *īā*.

Exc. 1. The accusative plural of masculines and feminines, whose genitive plural ends in *ium*, anciently ended in *is* or *ēs*, instead of *ēs*; as, *partes*, gen. *partium*, acc. *partēs* or *partēs*.

Exc. 2. Greek masculines and feminines, whose genitive increases in *is* or *os* impure, have their accusative in *as*; as, *lampas*, *lampādīs*, *lampādas*. So also *hēros*, *herōis*, *herōas*, and some barbarian names of nations have a similar form; as, *Brigantās*, *Allobrogas*.

*Juplter*, and *vis*, strength, are thus declined:—

Singular.	Singular.	Plural.
N. Ju'-pī-ter,	N. vis,	vī'-res,
G. Jō'-vis,	G. vis,	vir'-i-um,
D. Jō'-vi,	D. —	vir'-ī-bus,
Ac. Jō'-vem,	Ac. vim,	vī'-res,
V. Ju'-pī-ter,	V. vis,	vī'-res,
Ab. Jō'-ve.	Ab. v.	vir'-ī-bus.

§ 86. The following table exhibits the principal forms of Greek nouns of the third declension :—

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Voc.	Abl.
S.	Lampas,	{ -adis, -ados, }	-adi,	{ -adem, -ada, }	-as,	-ade.
Pl.	-ades,	-adum,	-adibus,	{ -ades, -adas, }	-ades,	-adibus.
S.	Hēros,	-ōis,	-ōi,	{ -oem, -ōa, }	-os,	-ōe.
Pl.	-oes,	-oūm,	-oibus,	{ -oes, -ōas, }	-oes,	-oibus.
	Chēlys,	{ -ŷis, -ŷos, }	-ŷi,	{ -ym, -yn, }	-y,	-ŷe or y.
	Poēsis,	{ -is, -ios, -ēos, }	-i,	{ -im, -in, }	-i,	-i.
	Achilles,	{ -is, -ei, -i, -ēos, }	-i,	{ -em, -ēa, -ēn, }	-es, -ē,	-e or -i.
	Orpheus,	-ēos,	-ēi,	-ēa,	-eu,	See § 54.
	Aēr,	-ēris,	-ēri,	-ēra,	-er,	-ēre.
	Didō,	-ūs,	-ō,	-ō,	-ō,	-ō.

## FOURTH DECLENSION.

§ 87. Nouns of the fourth declension end in *us* and *u*. Those in *us* are masculine; those in *u* are neuter, and, except in the genitive, are indeclinable in the singular.

Nouns of this declension are thus declined :—

Fructus, a fruit.		Cornu, a horn.	
Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
N. fruc'-tūs,	fruc'-tūs,	N. cor'-nū,	cor'-nu-ā,
G. fruc'-tūs,	fruc'-tu-ūm,	G. cor'-nūs,	cor'-nu-ūm,
D. fruc'-tu-i,	fruc'-tī-būs,	D. cor'-nū,	cor'-nī-būs,
Ac. fruc'-tūm,	fruc'-tūs,	Ac. cor'-nū,	cor'-nu-ā,
V. fruc'-tūs,	fruc'-tūs,	V. cor'-nū,	cor'-nu-ā,
Ab. fruc'-tū.	fruc'-tī-būs.	Ab. cor'-nū.	cor'-nī-būs.

In like manner decline

Can'-tus, a song.	Fluc'-tus, a wave.	Se-nā'-tus, the senate.
Cur'-rus, a chariot.	Luc'-tus, grief.	Gē'-lu, ice. (in sing.)
Ex-er'-ci-tus, an army.	Mō'-tus, motion.	Vē'-ru, a spit.

## EXCEPTIONS IN GENDER.

§ 88. 1. The following are feminine :—

Acus, a needle.	Ficus, a fig.	Porticus, a gallery.
Dōmus, a house.	Mānus, a hand.	Tribus, a tribe.



*Ōlus*, a distaff, and the plurals *Quinquātrus*, a feast of Minerva, and *Idus*, the Ides, are also feminine. So *noctu*, by night, found only in the ablative singular. *Pénus*, a store of provisions, when of the fourth declension, is masculine or feminine. *Sécus*, sex, is neuter; see § 94. *Spécus*, a den, is masculine and rarely feminine or neuter.

2. Some personal appellatives, and names of trees, are feminine by signification; as,

*Anus*, *nérus*, *socrus*;—*cornus*, *laurus*, and *quercus*. *Myrtus* also is feminine and rarely masculine. See § 29, 1 and 2.

### EXCEPTIONS IN DECLENSION.

§ 89. *Dŏmus*, a house, is partly of the fourth declension, and partly of the second. It is thus declined:—

Singular.	Plural.
N. <i>do'-mūs</i> ,	<i>do'-mūs</i> ,
G. <i>do'-mūs</i> , or <i>do'-mī</i> ,	<i>dom'-n-ūm</i> , or <i>do-mō'-rūm</i> ,
D. <i>dom'-u-i</i> , or <i>do'-mō</i> ,	<i>dom'-i-būs</i> ,
Ac. <i>do'-mūm</i> ,	<i>do'-mūs</i> , or <i>do'-mōs</i> ,
V. <i>do'-mūs</i> ,	<i>do'-mūs</i> ,
Ab. <i>do'-mō</i> .	<i>dom'-i-būs</i> .

(a.) *Domūs*, in the genitive, signifies, of a house; *domi* commonly signifies, at home. The ablative *domu* is found in Plautus, and in ancient inscriptions. In the genitive and accusative plural the forms of the second declension are more used than those of the fourth.

(b.) *Cornus*, a cornel-tree; *ficus*, a fig, or a fig-tree; *laurus*, a laurel; and *myrtus*, a myrtle, are sometimes of the second declension. *Pénus* is of the second, third or fourth declension.

(c.) Some nouns in *u* have also forms in *us* and *um*; as, *cornu*, *cornus*, or *cornum*. Adjectives, compounds of *manus*, are of the first and second declensions.

REMARK 1. Nouns of this declension anciently belonged to the third, and were formed by contraction, thus:—

Singular.	Plural.
N. <i>fructūs</i> ,	<i>frutuēs</i> , <i>ūs</i> ,
G. <i>fructuīs</i> , <i>-ūs</i> ,	<i>fructuūm</i> , <i>-ūm</i> ,
D. <i>fructui</i> , <i>-ū</i> ,	<i>fructuībūs</i> , <i>-ūbūs</i> , or <i>-ībūs</i> ,
Ac. <i>fructuēm</i> , <i>-ūm</i> ,	<i>fructuēs</i> , <i>ūs</i> ,
V. <i>fructūs</i> ,	<i>fructuēs</i> , <i>-ūs</i> ,
Ab. <i>fructuē</i> , <i>-ū</i> .	<i>fructuībūs</i> , <i>-ūbūs</i> , or <i>-ībūs</i> .

2. The genitive singular in *i* is sometimes found in ancient authors; as, *amīis*, Ter. A genitive in *i*, after the second declension, also occurs; as, *senātus*, *senātī*; *tumultus*, *tumultī*. Sall.

3. The contracted form of the dative in *u* is not often used; yet it sometimes occurs, especially in Cæsar, and in the poets.

4. The contracted form of the genitive plural in *um* rarely occurs.

5. The following nouns have *ūbus* in the dative and ablative plural:—

<i>Acus</i> , a needle.	<i>Artus</i> , a joint.	<i>Partus</i> , a birth.	<i>Spécus</i> , a den.
<i>Arcus</i> , a bow.	<i>Lacus</i> , a lake.	<i>Pecu</i> , a flock.	<i>Tribus</i> , a tribe.

*Genu*, a knee; *portus*, a harbor; *tonitrus*, thunder; and *vēru*, a spit, have *ūbus* or *ūbus*.

## FIFTH DECLENSION.

§ 90. Nouns of the fifth declension end in *ēs*, and are of the feminine gender.

They are thus declined:—

Res, a thing.		Dies, a day.	
Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
N. <i>rēs</i> ,	<i>rēs</i> ,	N. <i>dī'-ēs</i> ,	<i>dī'-ēs</i> ,
G. <i>rē'-ī</i> ,	<i>rē'-rūm</i> ,	G. <i>dī'-ē'-ī</i> ,	<i>dī'-ē'-rūm</i> ,
D. <i>rē'-ī</i> ,	<i>rē'-būs</i> ,	D. <i>dī'-ē'-ī</i> ,	<i>dī'-ē'-būs</i> ,
Ac. <i>rēm</i> ,	<i>rēs</i> ,	Ac. <i>dī'-ēm</i> ,	<i>dī'-ēs</i> ,
V. <i>rēs</i> ,	<i>rēs</i> ,	V. <i>dī'-ēs</i> ,	<i>dī'-ēs</i> ,
Ab. <i>rē</i> .	<i>rē'-būs</i> .	Ab. <i>dī'-ē</i> .	<i>dī'-ē'-būs</i> .

REMARK. Nouns of this declension, like those of the fourth, seem to have belonged originally to the third declension.

## EXCEPTIONS IN GENDER.

1. *Dies*, a day, is masculine or feminine in the singular, and always masculine in the plural; *meridies*, mid-day, is masculine only.

NOTE. *Dies* is seldom feminine, in good prose writers, except when it denotes duration of time, or a day fixed and determined.

## EXCEPTIONS IN DECLENSION.

2. The genitive and dative singular sometimes end in *ē* or in *i*, instead of *ei*; as, gen. *ciē* for *ciēi*, Virg.; *fidei* for *fidei*, Hor.; *acie* for *aciēi*, Cæs.—gen. *plebī* for *plebēi*, Liv.—dat. *fidei* for *fidei*, Hor., *perniciē*, Liv., and *perniciū*, Nep., for *perniciēi*. The genitive *rabīēs* contracted for *rabieis*, after the third declension, is found in Lucretius.

REMARK 1. There are only about eighty nouns of this declension, and of these only two, *res* and *dies*, are complete in the plural. *Acies*, *effigies*, *cluvies*, *facies*, *glacies*, *progenies*, *series*, *species*, *spes*, want the genitive, dative, and ablative plural, and the rest want the plural altogether.

REM. 2. All nouns of this declension end in *ies*, except four—*fides*, faith; *res*, a thing; *spes*, hope; and *plēbes*, the common people;—and all nouns in *ies* are of this declension, except *abies*, *aries*, *paries*, *quies*, and *requies*, which are of the third declension.

## DECLENSION OF COMPOUND NOUNS.

§ 91. When a compound noun consists of two nominatives, both parts are declined; but when one part is a nominative, and the other an oblique case, the nominative only is declined. Of the former kind are *respublica*, a commonwealth, and *jusjurandum*, an oath; of the latter, *mater-familias*, a mistress of a family. Cf. § 43, 2.

Singular.	Plural.
N. V. <i>res-pūb'-li-ca</i> ,	N. V. <i>res-pūb'-li-caē</i> ,
G. D. <i>re-i-pūb'-li-caē</i> ,	G. <i>re-rum-pūb'-li-cā'-rum</i> ,
Ac. <i>rem-pūb'-li-ca-ŕ</i> ,	D. Ab. <i>re-bus-pūb'-li-cis</i> ,
Ab. <i>re-pūb'-li-cā</i> .	Ac. <i>res-pūb'-li-caē</i> .

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular.</i>
N. jus-ju-ran'-dum,	ju-ra-ju-ran'-da,	N. ma-ter-fa-mil'-i-as,
G. ju-ris-ju-ran'-di,		G. ma-tris-fa-mil'-i-as,
D. ju-ri-ju-ran'-do,		D. ma-tri-fa-mil'-i-as,
Ac. jus-ju-ran'-dum,	ju-ra-ju-ran'-da,	Ac. ma-trem-fa-mil'-i-as,
V. jus-ju-ran'-dum,	ju-ra-ju-ran'-da,	V. ma-ter-fa-mil'-i-as,
Ab. ju-re-ju-ran'-do.		Ab. ma-tre-fa-mil'-i-as, etc.

NOTE. The preceding compounds are divided and pronounced like the simple words of which they are compounded.

## IRREGULAR NOUNS.

§ 92. Irregular nouns are divided into three classes—*Variable, Defective, and Redundant.*

### I. VARIABLE NOUNS.

A noun is variable, which, in some of its parts, changes either its gender or declension or both.

Nouns which vary in gender are called *heterogeneous*; those which vary in declension are called *heteroclites*.

#### *Heterogeneous Nouns.*

1. Masculine in the singular, and neuter in the plural; as, *Avernus, Dindymus, Ismdrus, Massicus, Mædhus, Pangæus, Taridrus, Taggæus*; plur. *Averna*, etc.

2. Masculine in the singular, and masculine or neuter in the plural; as,

*jocus*, a jest; plur. *joci*, or *joca*;—*lucus*, a place; plur. *luci*, passages in books, topics, places; *lœca*, places;—*sibitus*, a hissing; plur. *sibila*, rarely *sibila*;—*intûbus*, endive; plur. *intûbi* or *intûba*.

3. Feminine in the singular, and neuter in the plural; as, *carbæsus*, a species of flax; plur. *carbæsa*, very rarely *carbæsi*, sails, etc., made of it;—*Hierosolyma*, -æ, Jerusalem; plur. *Hierosolyma*, -*trum*.

4. Neuter in the singular, and masculine in the plural; as, *calum*, heaven; plur. *celi*;—*Elysium*; plur. *Elysii*;—*Argos*; plur. *Argi*. So *siser*, neut., plur. *sisêres*, masc.

5. Neuter in the singular, and masculine or neuter in the plural; as,

*frënum*, a bridle; plur. *frëni* or *frëna*;—*rastrum*, a rake; plur. *rastri*, or, more rarely, *rastra*;—*pugillar*, a writing tablet; plur. *pugillares* or *pugillaria*.

6. Neuter in the singular, and feminine in the plural; as, *epûlum*, a feast; plur. *epûla*;—*balneum*, a bath; plur. *balnea* or *balnea*;—*nundinum*, a market-day; plur. *nundinae*, a fair.

7. Feminine or neuter in the singular, and feminine in the plural; as,

*delicia* or *delicium*, delight; plur. *delicia*.

*Heteroclites.*

§ 93. 1. Second or third declension in the singular, and third in the plural; as,

nom. and acc. *jugērum*, an acre; gen. *jugēri* or *jugēris*; abl. *jugēro* and *jugēre*; plur., nom., and acc. *jugēra*; gen. *jugērum*; abl. *jugēris* and *jugeribus*.

2. Third declension in the singular, and second in the plural; as, *vās*, a vessel; plur. *vāsa*, *ōrum*. *Ancile*, a shield, has sometimes *anciliōrum*, in the genitive plural.

Noms. Variable nouns seem anciently to have been redundant, and to have retained a part of each of their original forms. Thus, *vāsa*, *-ōrum*, properly comes from *vāsum*, -i, but the latter, together with the plural of *vas*, *vās*, became obsolete.

## II. DEFECTIVE NOUNS.

§ 94. Nouns are defective either in case or in number.

1. Nouns defective in case may want either one or more cases. Some are altogether indeclinable, and are called *aptotes*.

Such are *pondo*, a pound; most nouns in *i*; as, *gummi*, gum; foreign words; as, *Aaron*, *Jacob*: *sēmis*, a half; *gīt*, a kind of plant; the singular of *mille*, a thousand; words put for nouns; as, *velle suum*, for *sua voluntas*, his own inclination; and names of the letters of the alphabet.

A noun which is found in one case only, is called a *Monoptote*; if found in two cases, a *Diptote*; if in three, a *Triptote*; if in four, a *Tetraptote*; and if in five, a *Pentaptote*.

The following list contains most nouns defective in case. Those which occur but once in Latin authors are distinguished by an asterisk:—

\**Abactus*, acc. pl.; a driving away.

*Accitu*, abl.; a calling for.

*Admissu*, abl.; admission.

*Admonitu*, abl.; admonition.

*Es*, not used in gen. pl.

*Affātu*, abl.; an addressing;—pl. *affātus*, -ibus.

*Algu*, nom.; *algum*, acc.; *algu*, abl.; cold.

*Ambāge*, abl.; a going around;—pl. entire.

\**Amissum*, acc.; a loss.

*Aplustre*, nom. and acc.; the flag of a ship;—pl. *aplustria*, or *aplustra*.

*Arbitrātus*, nom.; -um, acc.; -u, abl.; judgment.

*Arcessitu*, abl.; a sending for.

*Astu*, nom., acc.; a city.

*Astus*, nom.; *astu*, abl.; craft;—*astus*, acc. pl.

*Cacoēthes*, nom., acc.; an evil custom;—*cacoētae*, nom. pl.; -e, and

-es, acc. pl.

*Canities*, nom. -em, acc.; -e, abl.

*Cētos*, acc.; a whale;—*cēte*, nom. and acc. pl.; *cetis*, dat.

*Chāos*, nom. acc.; *chao*, abl.; chaos.

*Cassem*, acc.; *casse*, abl.; a net;—pl. entire.

*Circumspectus*, nom.; -um; -u; a looking around.

*Coactu*, abl.; constraint.

*Cœllite*, abl.; pl. entire; inhabitants of heaven.

\**Commūtātum*, acc.; an alteration.

*Compēdis*, gen.; *compēde*, abl.; a fetter;—pl. *compēdes*, -ium, -ibus.

*Concessu*, abl.; permission.

*Condiscipulātu*, abl.; companionship at school.

*Crātim*, or -em, acc.; -e, abl.; a hurdle;—pl. *crātes*, -ium, -ibus.

*Cupressu*, abl.; a cypress.

*Daps*, nom., scarcely used; *dāpis*, gen. etc. pl. *dapes*, -ibus; a feast.

\**Dātu*, abl.; a giving.

*Derisus*, -ui, dat.; -um, acc.; -u, abl.; ridicule.

Despicatui, *dat.*; contempt.  
 Dica, *nom.*; dicam, *acc.*; a legal process;—dicas, *acc. pl.*  
 Dicis, *gen.*; as, dicis gratiā, for form's sake.  
 Ditiōnis, *gen.*; -i, *dat.*; -em, *acc.*; -e, *abl.*; power.  
 Diu, *abl.*; in the day time.  
 Divisui, *dat.*; a dividing.  
 Ebur, ivory;—not used in the plural.  
 \*Efflagitātu, *abl.*; importunity.  
 \*Ejectus, *nom.*; a throwing out.  
 Epos, *nom.* and *acc.*; an epic poem.  
 Ergo, *abl.* (or *adv.*); for the sake.  
 Essēdas, *acc. pl.*; war chariots.  
 Evectus, *nom.*; a carrying out.  
 Fæx, dregs, wants *gen. pl.*  
 Fāmē, *abl.*; hunger.  
 Far, corn, not used in the *gen.*, *dat.*, and *abl. pl.*  
 Fas, *nom.*; *acc.*; right.  
 Fauce, *abl.*; the throat;—*pl. entire.*  
 Fax, a torch, wants *gen. pl.*  
 Fel, gall, wants *gen. pl.*  
 Feminis, *gen.*; -i, *dat.*; -e, *abl.*; the thigh;—*pl. femina, -ibus.*  
 Flictu, *abl.*; a striking.  
 Fōris, *nom.* and *gen.*; -em, *acc.*; -e, *abl.*; a door;—*pl. entire.*  
 Fors, *nom.*; -tis, *gen.*; -tem, *acc.*; -te, *abl.*; chance.  
 \*Frustratui, *abl.*; a deceiving.  
 Frux, fruit, *nom.* scarcely used;—frūgis, *gen.*, etc.  
 Fulgetras, *acc. pl.*; lightning.  
 Gausāpe, *nom.*, *acc.*, *abl.*; a rough garment;—gausāpa, *acc. pl.*  
 Glos, *nom.*; a husband's sister.  
 Grātes, *acc. pl.*;—gratibus, *abl.*; thanks.  
 Hebdomādā, *acc.*; a week.  
 Hiems, winter, not used in *gen.*, *dat.*, and *abl. pl.*  
 Hippomānes, *nom.* and *acc.*  
 \*Hir, *nom.*; the palm of the hand.  
 Hortātu, *abl.*; an exhorting;—*pl. hortatibus.*  
 Impētis, *gen.*; -e, *abl.*; a shock;—*pl. impetibus.*  
 Incētas, or -as, *acc. pl.*; as, ad incētas redactus, reduced to a strait.  
 \*Inconsultui, *abl.*; without advice.  
 \*Indultui, *abl.*; indulgence.  
 Inferiæ, *nom. pl.*; -as, *acc.*; -is, *abl.*; sacrifices to the dead.  
 Infītas, *acc. pl.*; a denial; as, ire infītas, to deny.  
 Ingratiis, *abl. pl.* (used adverbially); against one's will.  
 Injussu, *abl.*; without command.  
 Inquires, *nom.*; restlessness.  
 Instar, *nom.*, *acc.*; a likeness.

Interdiu, *abl.* (or *adv.*); in the day time.  
 \*Invitātu, *abl.*; an invitation.  
 Irrisui, *dat.*; -um, *acc.*; -u, *abl.*; derision.  
 Jōvis, *nom.*, rarely used;—*pl. Joves.*  
 Jugēris, *gen.*; -e, *abl.*; an acre;—*pl. jugēra, -um, -ibus.*  
 Jussu, *abl.*; command.  
 Lābes, a spot, wants *gen. pl.*  
 Lūcu, *abl.*; day-light.  
 \*Ludificatui, *dat.*; a mockery.  
 Lux, light, wants the *gen. pl.*  
 Mandātu, *abl.*; a command.  
 Māne, *nom.*, *acc.*; mane, or rarely -i, *abl.*; the morning.  
 Mel, honey, not used in *gen.*, *dat.*, and *abl. pl.*  
 Mēlos, *nom.*, *acc.*; melo, *dat.*; melody;—mēle, *nom.*, *acc. pl.*  
 Mētus, fear, not used in *gen.*, *dat.*, and *abl. pl.*  
 Missu, *abl.*; a sending;—*pl. missus, -ibus.*  
 Monitui, *abl.*; admonition;—*pl. monitus.*  
 Nātu, *abl.*; by birth.  
 Nauci, *gen.*, with non; as, homo non nauci, a man of no account.  
 Nēfas, *nom.*, *acc.*; wickedness.  
 Nēmo, nobody, wants the *voc.* and the *pl.*  
 Nepenthes, *nom.*, *acc.*; an herb.  
 Nex, death, wants the *voc.*;—nēces, *nom.*, *acc. pl.*  
 Nihil, or nihilum, *nom.* and *acc.*; -i, *gen.*; -o, *abl.*; nothing.  
 Noctu, *abl.*; by night.  
 Nuptui, *dat.*; -um, *acc.*; -u, *abl.*; marriage.  
 Obex, *nom.*; -icem, *acc.*; -ice, or -jice, *abl.*; a bolt;—*pl. obices, -jicibus.*  
 Objectum, *acc.*; -u, *abl.*; an interposition;—*pl. objectus.*  
 Obtentui, *dat.*; -um, *acc.*; -u, *abl.*; a pretext.  
 Opis, *gen.*; ōpem, *acc.*; ōpe, *abl.*; help;—*pl. entire.*  
 Oppositu, *abl.*; an opposing;—*pl. oppositus, acc.*  
 Opus, *nom.*, *acc.*; need.  
 Os, the mouth, wants the *gen. pl.*  
 Panāces, *nom.*; -is, *gen.*; -e, *abl.*; an herb.  
 Pax, peace, wants *gen. pl.*  
 Peccātu, *abl.*; a fault.  
 Pecūdis, *gen.*; -i, *dat.*; -em, *acc.*; -e, *abl.*;—*pl. entire.*  
 Pelāge, *acc. pl.* of pelāgus; the sea.  
 Permissu, *abl.*; -um, *acc.*; permission.  
 Piscātus, *nom.*; -i, *gen.*; -um, *acc.*; -u, *abl.*; a fishing.

Pix, *pitch*; pices, *acc. pl.*  
 Pondo, *abl.*; in *weight*. Cf. § 94, 1.  
 Præci, *dat.*; -em, *acc.*; -e, *abl.*; *prayer*;  
 —*pl. entire.*  
 Pröcer, *nom.*; -em, *acc.*; a *peer*;—*pl.*  
*entire.*  
 Promptu, *abl.*, *readiness.*  
 Pus wants *gen. dat. and abl. pl.*  
 Relätum, *acc.*;—u, *abl.*; a *recital.*  
 Repetundärum, *gen. pl.*; -is, *abl.*;  
*money taken by extortion.*  
 Rogätu, *abl.*; a *request.*  
 Ros, *dew*, wants *gen. pl.*  
 Rus, *the country*, wants *gen., dat., and*  
*abl. pl.*  
 Satias, *nom.*; -ätem, *acc.*; äte, *abl.*;  
*satiety.*  
 Sécus, *nom., acc.; sex.*  
 Situs, *nom.*; -um, *acc.*; -u, *abl.*; *situ-*  
*ation*;—situs, *nom. and acc. pl.*  
 Situs, *nom.*; -üs, *gen.*; -um, *acc.*; -u,  
*abl.*; rust;—situs, *acc. pl.*  
 Sol, *the sun*, wants *gen. pl.*  
 Sordis, *gen.*; -em, *acc.*; -e and -i, *abl.*;  
*filth*;—*pl. sordes, -ium, etc.*  
 Spontis, *gen.*; -e, *abl.*; of *one's own*  
*accord.*  
 Suböles, *offspring*, wants *gen. pl.*

Suppetis, *nom. pl.*; -as, *acc.*; *sup-*  
*plies.*  
 Täbum, *nom.*; -i, *gen.*; -o, *abl.*; *cor-*  
*rupt matter.*  
 Tempe, *nom. acc. voc. pl.*; a *vale in*  
*Thessaly.*  
 Tus wants *gen., dat., and abl. pl.*  
 Vénui and -o, *dat.*; um, *acc.*; -o, *abl.*;  
*sale.*  
 Veprem, *acc.*; -e, *abl.*; a *brier*;—*pl.*  
*entire.*  
 Verbëris, *gen.*; -e, *abl.*; a *stripe*;—*pl.*  
*verbëra, um, ibus.*  
 Vesper, *nom.*; -um, *acc.*; -e, -i, or -o,  
*abl.*; *the evening.*  
 Vespëra, *nom.*; -am, *acc.*; -ä, *abl.*; *the*  
*evening.*  
 Vicis, *gen.*; -i, *dat.*; -em, *acc.*; -e,  
*abl.*; *change*;—*pl. entire, except gen.*  
 Virus, *nom.*; -i, *gen.*; -us, *acc.*; -o, *abl.*;  
*poison.*  
 Vis, *gen. and dat. rare*; *strength*; *pl.*  
*vires, -ium, etc.* See § 85.  
 Viscus, *nom.*; -ëris, *gen.*; -ëre, *abl.*;  
*an internal organ. pl. viscëra, etc.*  
 Vocätu, *abl.*; a *calling*;—vocätus, *acc.*  
*pl.*

REMARK 1. To these may be added nouns of the fifth declension, which either want the plural, as most of them are abstract nouns, or have in that number only the nominative, accusative, and vocative. *Res* and *dies*, however, have the plural entire. Cf. § 90, R. 1.

REM. 2. For the use of the vocative, also, of many nouns, no classical authority can be found.

§ 95. 2. Nouns defective in number, want either the plural or the singular.

(a) Many nouns want the plural from the nature of the things which they express. Such are generally names of persons, most names of places (except those which have only the plural), the names of herbs, of the arts, most material and abstract nouns; but these may have a plural when used as common nouns, (§ 26, R. 3.), and many others.

REM. In Latin the plural of abstract nouns is often used to denote the existence of the quality, attribute, etc. in different objects, or the repetition of an action; and in poetry such plurals are used for the sake of emphasis or metre. See § 98.

The following list contains many of the nouns which want the plural, and also some, marked *p*, which are included in the above classes, but are sometimes used in the plural.

Aconitum, <i>wolfbane, p.</i>	Ævum, <i>age, lifetime, p.</i>	Balaustium, <i>the flower of</i> <i>the pomegranate.</i>
Adorea, <i>a military re-</i> <i>ward.</i>	Album, <i>an album.</i>	Balsänum, <i>balsam, p.</i>
Aër, <i>the air, p.</i>	Allium, <i>garlic, p.</i>	Barathrum, <i>a gulf.</i>
Æs, <i>brass, money, p.</i>	Amicitia, <i>friendship, p.</i>	Callum, <i>hardened skin, p.</i>
Æther, <i>the sky.</i>	Argilla, <i>white clay.</i>	Cälör, <i>heat, p.</i>
	Avëna, <i>oats, p.</i>	

Carduus, <i>a thistle</i> , p.	Lao, <i>milk</i> .	Purpura, <i>purple</i> , p.
Cāro, <i>flesh</i> , p.	Lætitia, <i>joy</i> , p.	Quies, <i>rest</i> , p.
Cāra, <i>wax</i> , p.	Languor, <i>faintness</i> , p.	Ros, <i>dew</i> , p.
Cestus, <i>a girdle</i> .	Lardum, <i>bacon</i> , p.	Rūbor, <i>redness</i> , p.
Cicūta, <i>hemlock</i> , p.	Lātex, <i>liquor</i> , p.	Sabūlo and
Cœnum, <i>mud</i> .	Lētum, <i>death</i> .	Sabūlum, <i>gravel</i> .
Contagium, <i>contagion</i> , p.	Lignum, <i>wood</i> , p.	Sal, <i>salt</i> .
Crōcum, <i>saffron</i> .	Linus, <i>mud</i> .	Sālum, <i>the sea</i> .
Crōcus, <i>saffron</i> , p.	Liquor, <i>liquor</i> , p.	Sālus, <i>safety</i> .
Cruor, <i>blood</i> , p.	Lues, <i>a plague</i> .	Sanguis, <i>blood</i> .
Cūtis, <i>the skin</i> , p.	Lūtum, <i>clay</i> , p.	Scrupulum, <i>a scruple</i> , p.
Dilucūlum, <i>the dawn</i> .	Lux, <i>light</i> , p.	Senium, <i>old age</i> .
Ebur, <i>ivory</i> .	Macellum, <i>the shambles</i> .	Siler, <i>an osier</i> .
Electrum, <i>amber</i> , p.	Māne, <i>the morning</i> .	Sināpi, <i>mustard</i> .
Far, <i>corn</i> , p.	Marmor, <i>marble</i> , p.	Siser, <i>skirret</i> , p.
Fel, <i>gall</i> , p.	Mel, <i>honey</i> , p.	Sitis, <i>thirst</i> .
Fervor, <i>heat</i> , p.	Meridies, <i>mid-day</i> .	Sol, <i>the sun</i> , p.
Fides, <i>faith</i> .	Mors, <i>death</i> , p.	Sopor, <i>sleep</i> , p.
Fimus, <i>dung</i> .	Munditia, <i>neatness</i> , p.	Specimen, <i>an example</i> .
Fūga, <i>flight</i> , p.	Mundus, <i>female ornaments</i> .	Spūma, <i>foam</i> , p.
Fūmus, <i>smoke</i> , p.	Musculus, <i>moss</i> .	Sulfur, <i>sulphur</i> , p.
Fūr, <i>madness</i> , p.	Nectar, <i>nectar</i> .	Supellex, <i>furniture</i> .
Galla, <i>an oak-apple</i> , p.	Nemo, <i>no man</i> .	Tābes, <i>a consumption</i> .
Gēla, <i>frost</i> .	Nequitia, <i>wickedness</i> , p.	Tābum, <i>corrupt matter</i> .
Glarea, <i>gravel</i> .	Nihilum, <i>nothing</i> , or nil, <i>nothing</i> .	Tellus, <i>the earth</i> .
Gloria, <i>glory</i> , p.	Nitrum, <i>natron</i> .	Terror, <i>terror</i> , p.
Glastum, <i>wood</i> .	Oblivio, <i>forgetfulness</i> , p.	Thymum, <i>thyme</i> , p.
Glūten, <i>or</i>	Omāsum, <i>bullock's tripe</i> .	Tribulus, <i>a thistle</i> , p.
Glutnum, <i>glue</i> .	Opium, <i>opium</i> .	Tristitia, <i>sadness</i> .
Gypsum, <i>white plaster</i> .	Palea, <i>chaff</i> , p.	Ver, <i>spring</i> .
Hēpar, <i>the liver</i> .	Pax, <i>peace</i> , p.	Vespēra, <i>the evening</i> .
Hespērus, <i>the evening star</i> .	Pēnum, <i>and</i>	Veternus, <i>lethargy</i> .
Hilum, <i>a little thing</i> .	Pēnus, <i>provisions</i> , p.	Vigor, <i>strength</i> , p.
Hordeum, <i>barley</i> , p.	Piper, <i>pepper</i> .	Vinum, <i>wine</i> , p.
Hūmus, <i>the ground</i> .	Pix, <i>pitch</i> , p.	Virus, <i>poison</i> .
Indōles, <i>native quality</i> , p.	Pontus, <i>the sea</i> .	Viscum, <i>and</i>
Ira, <i>anger</i> , p.	Prolubium, <i>desire</i> .	Viscus, <i>bird-lime</i> .
Jūbar, <i>radiance</i> .	Pūbes, <i>the youth</i> .	Vitrum, <i>wood</i> .
Jus, <i>justice, law</i> , p.	Pulvis, <i>dust</i> , p.	Vulgus, <i>the common people</i> .
Justitium, <i>a law vacation</i> .		Zingiber, <i>ginger</i> .

§ 96. (b). The names of festivals and games, and several names of places and books, want the singular; as, *Bacchanalia*, a festival of Bacchus; *Olympia*, the Olympic games; *Bucolica*, a book of pastorals; and the following names of places:—

Acroceraunia,	Baiaæ,	Fundi,	Locri,	Susa,
Amyclæ,	Ceraunia,	Gabii,	Parisi,	Syracussæ,
Artaxāta,	Ecbatāna,	Gādes,	Philippi,	Thermopylæ,
Athēnæ,	Esquilæ,	Gemoniæ,	Puteoli,	Veii.

NOTE. Some of those in *i* properly signify the people.

The following list contains most other nouns which want the singular, and also some, marked *s*, which are rarely used in that number:—

Acta, <i>records</i> .	Alpes, <i>the Alps</i> , s.	Apinæ, <i>trifles</i> .
Adversaria, <i>a memorandum-book</i> .	Annāles, <i>annals</i> , s.	Argutisæ, <i>whitticisms</i> , s.
Æstiva, <i>sc. castra, summer quarters</i> .	Antæ, <i>door-posts</i> .	Arma, <i>arms</i> .
	Antes, <i>rows</i> .	Artus, <i>the joints</i> , s.
	Antisæ, <i>a foreloc</i> .	Bellaris, <i>sweetmeats</i> .

Bīgæ, a two-horse chariot, s.	Indutivæ, clothes.	Palearia, the dewlap, s.
Braccæ, breeches.	Ineptiæ, fooleries, s.	Pandectæ, the pandects.
Branchiæ, the gills of fishes.	Infèri, the dead.	Parietinæ, old walls.
Brevia, shallow places.	Inferiæ, sacrifices in honor of the dead.	Partes, a party, s.
Calendæ, the Calends.	Insecta, insects.	Pascua, pastures, s.
Cancelli, balustrades.	Insidiæ, an ambushade, s.	Penâtes, household gods, s.
Câni, gray hairs.	Iusta, funeral rites.	Phalæreæ, trappings.
Casses, a hunter's net, s.	Lactes, small entrails, s.	Philtra, love potions.
Caulæ, sheep-folds.	Lamenta, lamentations.	Pleiâdes, the Pleiads or seven stars, s.
Celères, the body-guard of the Roman kings.	Lapidinæ, a stone quarry.	Postèri, posterity.
Cibaria, victuals, s.	Latebræ, a hiding place, s.	Præbia, an amulet.
Clitellæ, a pack-saddle.	Laurices, young rabbits.	Præcordia, the diaphragm, the entrails.
Codicilli, a writing.	Lautia, presents to foreign ambassadors.	Primitiæ, first fruits.
Cœlites, the gods, s.	Lemûres, hobgoblins.	Procères, nobles, s.
Crepundia, a rattle.	Lendes, nits.	Pugillaria, or -ares, writing-tablets, s.
Cunabûla, and	Libèri, children, s.	Quadrigæ, a team of four horses, s.
Cûnæ, a cradle.	Lucères, a division of the Roman cavalry.	Quirites, Roman citizens, s.
Cyclâdes, the Cyclades, s.	Magalia, cottages.	Quisquiliæ, refuse.
Declinæ, tithes, s.	Majores, ancestors.	Reliquiæ, the remains, s.
Dîræ, the Furies, s.	Mânes, the shades, s.	Salebræ, rugged roads, s.
Divitiæ, riches.	Manubiæ, spoils of war.	Salinæ, salt pits.
Druides, the Druids.	Mapalia, huts, s.	Scâlæ, a ladder, s.
Dryâdes, the Dryads, s.	Minaciæ, and	Scatebræ, a spring, s.
Epulæ, a banquet, s.	Minæ, threats.	Scôpæ, a broom.
Eumenides, the Furies, s.	Minôres, posterity.	Scrûti, old stuff.
Excubiæ, watches.	Moenia, the walls of a city, s.	Sentes, thorns, s.
Exsequiæ, funeral rites.	Multitiæ, garments finely wrought.	Sponsalia, espousals.
Extæ, entrails.	Munia, official duties.	Stativa, sc. castra, a stationary camp.
Exuviæ, spoils.	Naiâdes, water-nymphs, s.	Supèri, the gods above.
Facetiæ, pleasantry, s.	Nâres, the nostrils, s.	Talaria, winged shoes.
Feriæ, holidays, s.	Natâles, parentage.	Tenebræ, darkness, s.
Fides, a stringed instrument, s.	Nâtes, the haunches, s.	Tesca, rough places.
Flabra, blasts.	Nômæ, corroding sores or ulcers, s.	Thermæ, warm baths.
Frâces, the lees of oil.	Nônæ, the nones of a month. § 226, 1.	Tormina, colic-pains.
Frâga, strawberries, s.	Nûgæ, jests, nonsense.	Transtra, seats for rowers, s.
Gemîni, twins, s.	Nundinæ, the weekly market.	Tricæ, trifles, toys.
Gênæ, cheeks, s.	Nuptiæ, a marriage.	Utensilia, utensils.
Gerræ, trifles.	Obliuia, forgetfulness, s.	Valvæ, folding doors, s.
Grâtes, thanks.	Officiæ, cheats, s.	Vepres, brambles, s.
Habênæ, reins, s.	Optimâtes, the aristocratic party, s.	Vergiliæ, the seven stars.
Hiberna, sc. castra, winter quarters.		Vindiciæ, a legal claim, s.
Hyâdes, the Hyades, s.		Virgulta, bushes.
Idus, the ides of a month.		
Ilia, the flank.		
Incunabûla, a cradle.		
Indutiæ, a truce.		

§ 97. The following usually differ in meaning in the different numbers.

Ædes, -is, a temple.	Bönum, a good thing.	Castra, a camp.
Ædes, -ium, a house.	Böna, property.	Comitum, a part of the Roman forum.
Aqua, water.	Carcer, a prison.	Comitia, an assembly for election.
Aquæ, medicinal springs.	Caroères, the barriers of a race-course.	Copia, plenty.
Auxilium, aid.	Castrum, a castle.	
Auxilia, auxiliary troops.		



Copias, *troops, forces.*  
 Cupedia, -æ, *daintiness.*  
 Cupediæ, -arum, *and*  
 Cupedia, -orum, *dainties.*  
 Facultas, *ability.*  
 Facultates, *property.*  
 Fastus, -ūs, *pride.*  
 Fastus, -uum, *and*  
 Fasti, -orum, *a calendar.*  
 Fortūna, *Fortuna.*  
 Fortunæ, *wealth.*  
 Furfur, *bran.*  
 Furfures, *dandruff.*  
 Gratia, *favor.*  
 Gratiæ, *thanks.*

Impedimentum, *a hinder-*  
*ance.*  
 Impedimenta, *baggage.*  
 Littera, *a letter of the al-*  
*phabet.*  
 Litteræ, *an epistle.*  
 Ludus, *pastime.*  
 Ludi, *public games.*  
 Lustrum, *a morass.*  
 Lustra, *a haunt or den of*  
*wild beasts.*  
 Mos, *custom.*  
 Mores, *manners.*  
 Nāris, *a nostril.*  
 Nāres, *the nose.*

Natālis, *a birthday.*  
 Natāles, *birth, lineage.*  
 Opēra, *work, labor.*  
 Opēræ, *workmen.*  
 Opis, *gen. power.*  
 Opes, -um, *means, wealth.*  
 Plāga, *a region, tract.*  
 Plāgæ, *nets, tails.*  
 Principium, *a beginning.*  
 Principia, *the general's*  
*quarters.*  
 Rostrum, *a beak, prom.*  
 Rostra, *the Rostra.*  
 Sal, *salt.*  
 Sāles, *witticisms.*

§ 98. The following plurals, with a few others, are sometimes used in poetry, especially in the nominative and accusative, instead of the singular, for the sake of emphasis or metre.

Æquora, *the sea.*  
 Alta, *the sea.*  
 Animi, *courage.*  
 Auræ, *the air.*  
 Carinæ, *a keel.*  
 Cervices, *the neck.*  
 Colla, *the neck.*  
 Cômæ, *the hair.*  
 Connubia, *marriage.*  
 Corda, *the heart.*  
 Corpōra, *a body.*  
 Crepusculā, *twilight.*  
 Currūs, *a chariot.*  
 Exsilia, *banishment.*  
 Frigōra, *cold.*  
 Gaudia, *joy.*  
 Gramina, *grass.*  
 Gutturā, *the throat.*

Hymenæi, *marriage.*  
 Ignes, *love.*  
 Inguina, *the groin.*  
 Iræ, *anger.*  
 Jejunia, *fasting.*  
 Jūbæ, *a mane.*  
 Limina, *a threshold.*  
 Litōra, *a shore.*  
 Mensæ, *a service or courses*  
*of dishes.*  
 Nenix, *a funeral dirge.*  
 Numina, *the divinity.*  
 Odiā, *hatred.*  
 Ora, *the mouth, the coun-*  
*tenance.*  
 Oræ, *confines.*  
 Ortus, *a rising, the east.*  
 Otia, *ease, leisure.*

Pectōra, *the breast.*  
 Reditūs, *a return.*  
 Regna, *a kingdom.*  
 Rictūs, *the jaws.*  
 Robōra, *strength.*  
 Silentia, *silence.*  
 Sinūs, *the bosom of a Ro-*  
*man garment.*  
 Tædæ, *a torch.*  
 Tempōra, *time.*  
 Terga, *the back.*  
 Thalāmi, *marriage or*  
*marriage-bed.*  
 Tōri, *a bed, a couch.*  
 Tūra, *frankincense.*  
 Viæ, *a journey.*  
 Vultus, *the countenance.*

### III. REDUNDANT NOUNS.

§ 99. Nouns are redundant either in termination, in declension, in gender, or in two or more of these respects.

1. In termination: (a.) of the nominative; as, *arbor*, and *arbores*, a tree: (b.) of the oblique cases; as, *tigris*; gen. *tigris*, or *-idis*; a tiger.
2. In declension; as, *laurus*; gen. *-i*, or *-is*; a laurel.
3. In gender; as, *vulgus*, masc. or neut.; the common people.
4. In termination and declension; as, *senecta*, -æ, and *senectus*, -ātis; old age.
5. In termination and gender; as *pileus*, masc., and *pileum*, neut.; a hat.
6. In declension and gender; as *pēnus*, -i or *ūs*, masc. or fem., and *pēnus*, -ōris, neut.; a store of provisions. *Spēcus*, -ūs or -i, masc. fem. or neut.; a cave.
7. In termination, declension, and gender; as, *menda*, -æ, fem. and *mendum*, -i, neut.; a fault.

The following list contains most *Redundant Nouns* of the above classes:—

- Acinus, -um, and -a, a berry.  
 Adagium, and -io, a proverb.  
 Admonitio, -um, and -us, *is*, a reminding.  
 Æthra, and æther, the clear sky.  
 Affectio, and -us, *is*, affection.  
 Agamemno, and -on, Agamemnon.  
 Alabaster, tri, and pl. -tra, *trun*, an alabaster box.  
 Alimonia, and -um, aliment.  
 Alluvio, and -es, a flood.  
 Alvearium, and -ære, a bee-hive.  
 Amaracus, and -um, marjoram.  
 Amygdala, and -um, an almond.  
 Anfractum, and -us, *is*, a winding.  
 Angiportum, and -us, *is*, a narrow lane or alley.  
 Antidôtus, and -um, an antidote.  
 Aranea, and -us, *i*, a spider.  
 Arar, and Arâris, the river Arar.  
 Arbor, and -os, a tree.  
 Architectus, and -on, an architect.  
 Arcus, -us, and *i*, a bow.  
 Attagæna, and -gen, a moor-hen.  
 Avaritia, and -ies, avarice.  
 Augmentum, and -men, an increase.  
 Baccar, and -âris, a kind of herb.  
 Baculus, and -um, a staff.  
 Balteus, and -um, a belt.  
 Barbaria, and -ies, barbarism.  
 Barbitus, and -on, a harp.  
 Batillus, and -um, a fire-shovel.  
 Blanditia, and -ies, flattery.  
 Buccina, and -um, a trumpet.  
 Bûra, and -is, a plough-tail.  
 Buxus, and -um, the box-tree.  
 Cæpa, and cæpe, an onion.  
 Calamister, tri, and -trum, a crisping-pin.  
 Callus, and -um, hardened skin.  
 Cancer, cri, or êris, a crab.  
 Canitia, and -ies, hoariness.  
 Cæpus, and cæpo, a capon.  
 Carrus, and -um, a kind of waggon.  
 Cassida, and -cassis, a helmet.  
 Catinus, and -um, a bowl, dish.  
 Chirogrâphus, and -um, a hand-writing.  
 Cingula, -us, and -um, a girdle.  
 Clipeus, and -um, a shield.  
 Cochlearium, -ar, and -ære, a spoon.  
 Colluvio, and -ies, filth.  
 Commentarius, and -um, a journal.  
 Compâges, and -go, a joining.  
 Conâtum, and -us, *is*, an attempt.  
 Concinnitas, and -tûdo, neatness.  
 Consortium, and -io, partnership.  
 Contagium, -io, and -es, contact.  
 Cornum, -us, *i*, or *is*, a cornel tree.  
 Costus, *i*, and -um, a kind of shrub.  
 Cratæra, and crâter, a bowl.  
 Crœcus, and -um, saffron.  
 Crystallus, and -um, crystal.  
 Cubitus, and -um, the elbow.  
 Cupiditas, and -pido, desire.  
 Cupressus, *i*, or *is*, a cypress-tree.  
 Delicia, and -um, delight.  
 Delphinus, and delphin, a dolphin.  
 Dictamnus, and -um, dittany.  
 Diluvium, -o, and -ies, a deluge.  
 Dômus, *i*, or *is*, a house.  
 Dorsus, and -um, the back.  
 Duritia, and -ies, hardness.  
 Effigia, and -ies, an image.  
 Elegia, and -on, *i*, an elegy.  
 Elephantus, and -phas, an elephant.  
 Epitôma, and -e, an abridgment.  
 Essêda, and -um, a chariot.  
 Evander, dri, and -drus, Evander.  
 Eventum, and -us, *is*, an event.  
 Exemplar, and -ære, a pattern.  
 Ficus, *i*, or *is*, a fig-tree.  
 Fimûs, and -um, dung.  
 Frêtum, and -us, *is*, a strait.  
 Fulgetra, and -um, lightning.  
 Galêrus, and -um, a hat, cap.  
 Ganea, and -um, an eating-house.  
 Gausâpa, -es, -e, and -um, frieze.  
 Gibba, -us, and -er, *eri*, a hump.  
 Glutinium, and -ten, glue.  
 Gobius, and -io, a gudgeon.  
 Grammatica, and -e, grammar.  
 Grus, gruis, and gruis, *is*, a crane.  
 Hebdomâda, and -mas, a week.  
 Hellebôrus, and -um, hellebore.  
 Hônor, and hônos, honor.  
 Hyssôpus, and -um, hyssop.  
 Ilios, -um, and -on, Troy.  
 Incestum, and -us, *is*, incest.  
 Intûbus, and -um, endive.  
 Jugûlus, and -um, the throat.  
 Juventa, -us, *utis*, and -as, youth.  
 Lâbor, and lâbos, labor.  
 Lacerta, and -us, a lizard.  
 Laurus, *i*, or *is*, a laurel.  
 Lëpor, and lëpos, wit.  
 Ligur, and -us, *âris*, a Ligurian.  
 Lupinus, and -um, a lupine.  
 Luxuria, and -ies, luxury.  
 Mæander, -dros, and -drus, Mæander.  
 Margarita, and -um, a pearl.  
 Materia, and -ies, materials.  
 Medimnus, and -um, a measure.  
 Menda, and -um, a fault.  
 Modius, and -um, a measure.  
 Mollitia, and -ies, softness.  
 Momentum, and -men, influence.  
 Mûgil, and -ilis, a mullet.  
 Mulciber, *eri*, or *êris*, Vellum.

Mulctra, and -um, a milk-pail.  
 Munditia, and -ies, neatness.  
 Muria, and -ies, brine or pickle.  
 Myrtus, i or ūs, a myrtle.  
 Nardus, and -um, nard.  
 Nāsus, and -um, the nose.  
 Necessitas, and -ūdo, necessity.  
 Nequitia, and -ies, worthlessness.  
 Notitia, and -ies, knowledge.  
 Oblivium, and -io, forgetfulness.  
 Obsidium, and -io, a siege.  
 Œdipus, i, or ōdis, Œdipus.  
 Ostrea, and -um, an oyster.  
 Palātus, and -um, the palate.  
 Palumba, -us, and -es, a pigeon.  
 Papyrus, and -um, papyrus.  
 Paupertas, and -ies, poverty.  
 Pāvus, and pāvo, a peacock.  
 Pēnus, i, -ōris, or ūs, and pēnum, provisions.  
 Peplus, and -um, a veil.  
 Perseus, ei, or eos, Perseus.  
 Pileus, and -um, a hat.  
 Pinus, i, or ūs, a pine-tree.  
 Pistrina, and -um, a bake-house.  
 Planitia, and -ies, a plain.  
 Plāto, and Plāton, Plato.  
 Plebs, and plēbes, ei, the common people.  
 Porrus, and -um, a leak.  
 Postulātum, and -io, a request.  
 Præsēpia, -ium, -es, or -is, and -e, a stable.  
 Prætextum, and -us, ūs, a pretext.  
 Prosapia, and -ies, lineage.  
 Rāpa, and -um, a turnip.  
 Requies, ētis or ēt, rest.  
 Rēte, and rētis, a net.  
 Reticūlus, and -um, a small net.

Rictum, and -us, ūs, the open mouth.  
 Sævitia, -ūdo and -ies, ferocity.  
 Sāgus, and -um, a military cloak.  
 Sanguis, and sanguen, blood.  
 Satrāpes, and satraps, a satrap.  
 Scabritia, and -ies, roughness.  
 Scorpīus, -os, and -io, a scorpion.  
 Segmentum, and -men, a piece.  
 Seguitia, and -ies, sloth.  
 Senecta, and -us, old age.  
 Sequester, tri, or tris, a trustee.  
 Sesāma, and -um, sesame.  
 Siblus, and -a, ōrum, a hissing.  
 Sināpi, and -is, mustard.  
 Sinus, and -um, a goblet.  
 Spārus, and -a, ōrum, a spear.  
 Spurcitia, and -ies, filthiness.  
 Stramentum, and -men, straw.  
 Suffimentum, and -men, fumigation.  
 Suggestus, and -um, a pulpit, stage.  
 Suppārus, and -um, a linen garment.  
 Supplicium, -icamentum, and -icatio, a public supplication.  
 Tapētum, -ēte, and -es, tapestry.  
 Tenērītas, and -tūdo, softness.  
 Tergum, and -us, ōris, the back.  
 Tiāra, and -as, a turban.  
 Tignus, and -um, a beam, timber.  
 Tigris, is, or idis, a tiger.  
 Titānus, and Titan, Titan.  
 Tonitruum, and -trus, ūs, thunder.  
 Torāle, and -al, a bed-covering.  
 Trābes, and trabs, a beam.  
 Tribūla, and -um, a threshing sled.  
 Vespēra, -per, ēri and ēris, the evening.  
 Vinacēus, and -a, ōrum, a grape-stone.  
 Viscus, and -um, the mistletoe.  
 Vulgus, masc. and neut., the common people.

REMARK 1. To these may be added some other verbals in *us* and *io*, and Greek nouns in *o* and *on*; as, *Dio* and *Dion*; also some Greek nouns in *es* and *e*, which have Latin forms in *a*; as, *Atrides* and *Atrida*. See § 45.

REM. 2. Some proper names of places also are redundant in number; as, *Argos* and *Argi*; *Fidēna* and *Fidēns*; *Thēbe* and *Thēbe*.

NOTE. The different forms of most words in the above list are not equally common, and some are rarely used, or only in particular cases.

## DERIVATION OF NOUNS.

† § 100. Nouns are derived from other nouns, from adjectives, and from verbs.

### I. FROM NOUNS.

From nouns are derived the following classes:—

1. A *patronymic* is the name of a person, derived from that of his father or other ancestor, or of the founder of his nation.

NOTE 1. Patronymics are properly Greek nouns, and have been borrowed from that language by the Latin poets.

(a.) Masculine patronymics end in *ides*, *ides*, *ādes*, and *īdes*.

(1.) Nouns in *us* of the second declension, and those nouns of the third declension, whose root ends in a short syllable, form their patronymics in *ides*; as, *Priānus*, *Priamīdes*; *Agamemnōn*, gen. *ōnis*, *Agamemnōnides*.

(2.) Nouns in *ūs* and *cles* form their patronymics in *ides*; as, *A-trēus*, *Atrides*; *Hēracles* (i. e. *Hercules*), *Heraclides*.

REM. 1. *Ēnides*, in Virg. A. 9, 653, is formed in like manner, as if from *Ēnēus*, instead of *Ēnēas*.

(3.) Nouns in *ās* and *ēs* of the first declension form their patronymics in *ādes*, as *Ēnēas*, *Ēnēādes*; *Hippōtēs*, *Hippōtādes*.

(4.) Nouns in *ius* of the second declension, and those nouns of the third declension, whose root ends in a long vowel, form their patronymics in *īdes*; as, *Thestius*, *Thestīādes*; *Amphitryō* (gen. *ōnis*), *Amphitryoniādes*.

REM. 2. A few nouns also of the first declension have patronymics in *īdes*; as, *Anchises*, *Anchistīādes*.

(b.) Feminine patronymics end in *is*, *ēs*, and *ias*, and correspond in termination to the masculines, viz. *is* to *ides*, *ēs* to *ides*, and *ias* to *īdes*; as, *Tyndārus*, masc. *Tyndarīdes*, fem. *Tyndāris*; *Nēreus*, masc. *Nereīdes*, fem. *Nerēs*; *Thestius*, masc. *Thestīādes*, fem. *Thestias*.

REM. 3. A few feminines are found in *ine*, or *iōne*; as, *Nerine*, *Acrisiōne*, from *Nereus* and *Acrisius*.

NOTE 2. Patronymics in *des* and *ne* are of the first declension; those in *is* and *as*, of the third.

2. A *patrial* or *gentile* noun is derived from the name of a country; and denotes an inhabitant of that country; as,

*Trōs*, a Trojan man; *Trōas*, a Trojan woman; *Macēdo*, a Macedonian; *Samnis*, a Samnite; from *Trōja*, *Macedonia*, and *Samnium*.

NOTE 3. Most patrials are properly adjectives, relating to a noun understood; as, *hōmo*, *civis*, etc. See § 128, 6.

3. A *diminutive* signifies a small thing of the kind denoted by the primitive; as, *liber*, a book; *libellus*, a little book.

Diminutives generally end in *ūlus*, *ūla*, *ūlum*, or *cūlus*, *cūla*, *cūlum*, according as the primitive is masculine, feminine, or neuter.

A. 1. If the primitive is of the first or second declension, or its root ends in *c*, *g*, *d*, or *t* after a vowel, the diminutive is formed by annexing *ūlus*, *a*, *um* to the root; as, *arūla*, *servūlus*, *puerūlus*, *scūtūlum*, *cornicūla*, *regūlus*, *capitūlum*, *mercedūla*; from *āra*, *servus*, *puer*, *scūtum*, *cornū*, (*-icis*), *rex*, (*regis*), *caput*, (*-itis*), *merces*, (*-edis*).

2. Primitives of the first or second declension whose root ends in *e* or *i*, instead of *ūlus*, *a*, *um*, add *ōlus*, *a*, *um*; as, *filīōlus*, *gloriōla*, *horreōlum*; from *filius*, *gloria*, *horreum*.

3. Primitives of the first or second declension whose root ends in *l*, *n*, or *r*, form diminutives by contraction in *ellus*, *a*, *um*, and some in *illus*, *a*, *um*; as, *ocellus*, *asellus*, *libellus*, *lucellum*; from *oculus*, *asina*, *liber*, *lucrum*; and *sigillum*, *tigillum*, from *signum*, *tignum*.

B. 1. If the primitive is of the third, fourth, or fifth declension, the diminutive is formed in *cūlus*, (or *icūlus*), *a*, *um*.

2. Primitives of the third declension whose nominative ends in *r*, or in *os* or *us* from roots ending in *r*, annex *cūlus* to the nominative; as, *fratercūlus*, *soror-*

*cūla, oscūlum, corpuscūlum*; from *j-āter, āror, ōs, (ōris), corpus, (-ōris)*.—So also primitives in *es* and *is*, but these drop the *s* of the nominative; as, *ignicūlus, nūbecūla, diecūla*; from *ignis, nubes, dies*.

3. Primitives of other terminations of the third declension, and those of the fourth, add *icūlus* to the root; as, *ponticūlus, coticūla, ossicūlum, versicūlus, cornicūlum*; from *pons, cos, ōs, (ossis), versus, cornu*.

4. Primitives in *o, (inis or ōis)*, in adding *cūlus, a, um*, change the final vowel of the root (*i* or *o*) into *u*; as, *homuncūlus, sermuncūlus*; from *hōmo* and *sermo*; and a few primitives of other terminations form similar diminutives; as, *avuncūlus, domuncūla*; from *avus* and *dōmus*.

C. 1. A few diminutives end in *uleus*, as, *equuleus, aculeus*; from *ēquus* and *ācus*; and a few also in *io*; as, *homuncio, senectio*, from *hōmo* and *senex*.

2. Diminutives are sometimes formed from other diminutives; as, *asellūlus*, from *asellus*; sometimes two or more diminutives with different terminations are formed from the same primitive, as, *homuncūlus, homullus, and homuncio*; from *hōmo*; and sometimes the primitive undergoes euphonic changes; as *rumuscūlus*, from *rūmor*.

REM. Some diminutives differ in gender from their primitives; as *ranuncūlus, scamillus*, from *rāna* and *scamnum*.

4. (a.) An amplificative is a personal appellation denoting an excess of that which is expressed by its primitive; as,

*Cupito*, one who has a large head: so *nāso, labeo, bucco, fronto, mento*, one who has a large nose, lips, or cheeks, a broad forehead or long chin; from *cāpus, nāsus, labia, bucca, frons, and mentum*.

(b.) A few personal appellatives in *io* denote the trade or profession to which a person belongs; as, *ludio*, an actor; *pellio*, a furrier; from *ludus*, and *pellis*.

5. The termination *ium* added to the root of a noun, indicates the office or condition, and often, derivatively, an assemblage of the individuals denoted by the primitive; as, *collegium*, collegueship, and thence an assembly of colleagues; *servitium*, servitude, and collectively the servants; so *sacerdotium*, and *ministerium*; from *collēga, servus, sacerdos*, and *minister*.

6. The termination *ionium* is added to the root of a few nouns, denoting something derived from the primitives, or imparting to it its peculiar character; as, *testimonium*, testimony; so *vadimonium, patrimonium, matrimonium*; from *testis, vās (vādīs), pāter*, and *māter*.

7. The termination *etum*, added to the root of names of plants, denotes a place where they grow in abundance; as, *quercetum, laurētum, olivetum*, from *quercus, laurus*, and *oliva*.

So, also, *asculetum, dumētum, myrtetum*, and by analogy *saxetum*. But some drop *e*; as, *carectum, salictum, virgultum*, and *arbutum*.

8. The termination *arium*, added to the root of a noun, denotes a receptacle of the things signified by the primitive; as, *aviarium*, an aviary; *plantarium*, a nursery; from *avis*, a bird, and *planta*, a plant.

9. The termination *ile*, added to the root of names of animals, marks the place where they are kept; as, *bovile*, a stall for oxen; so *caprile, ovile*; from *bōs*, an ox, *cāper*, a goat, and *ōvis*, a sheep.

NOTE 1. This class and the preceding are properly neuter adjectives.

NOTE 2. Abstract nouns are derived either from adjectives or from verbs. See § 26, 5.



## II. FROM ADJECTIVES.

§ 101. 1. Abstract nouns are formed by adding the termination *itas, itudo, ia, itia* or *ities, edo*, and *imōnia* to the root of the primitive.

2. Abstracts in *itas*, (equivalent to the English *ty* or *ity*), are formed from adjectives of each declension ; as, *cupīditas*, *teneritas*, *celeritas*, *crudelitas*, *feicitas* ; from *cupīdus*, *tēner*, *cēler*, *crudelis*, and *feīcīa*.

(1.) When the root ends in *i*, the abstract is formed in *itas* ; as, *pietas*, from *pius* ; and when it ends in *t*, as only *is* is added ; as, *honestas* from *honestus*.

(2.) In a few abstracts *i* before *tas* is dropped ; as, *libertas*, *juventas*, from *liber*, *juvēnis*. In *facultas* and *difficultas*, from *facilis*, *difficilis*, there is a change also in the root-vowel from *i* to *u*.

(3.) A few abstracts are formed in *itus* or *tus*, instead of *itas* ; as, *servitus*, *juventus*, from *servus* and *juvēnis*. See § 76, Exc. 2.

3. Abstracts in *itudo* are formed from adjectives in *us*, and some from adjectives of the third declension of two or three terminations ; as, *magnitudo*, *altitudo*, *fortitudo*, *acritudo*, from *magnus*, *altus*, *fortis*, *acer*. Polysyllabic adjectives in *tus*, generally form their abstracts by adding *udo* instead of *itudo* to their root ; as, *consuetudo*, from *consuetus*.

4. Abstracts in *ia* (equivalent to the English *ce* or *cy*), are for the most part formed from adjectives of one termination ; as, *clementia*, *constantia*, *impudentia*, from *clemens*, *constans*, *impudens*. But some adjectives in *us* and *er*, including verbals in *cundus*, likewise form their verbals in *ia* ; as, *miseria*, *angustia*, *facundia*, from *miser*, *angustus*, *facundus*.

5. Abstracts in *itia* and *ities* are formed from adjectives in *us* and *is* ; as, *justitia*, *tristitia*, *duritia*, and *durities*, *segnitia* and *segnities*, from *justus*, *tristis*, *dūrus*, and *segnis*.

6. A few abstracts are formed in *ēdo*, and a few in *imōnia* ; and sometimes two or more abstracts of different terminations are formed from the same adjective ; as, *acritas*, *acritudo*, *acrēdo*, and *acrimonia*, from *acer*. In such case those in *itudo* and *imonia* seem to be more intensive in signification than those in *itas*.

REMARK. Adjectives, as distinguished from the abstracts which are formed from them, are called *concretes*.

### III. FROM VERBS.

#### § 102. Nouns derived from verbs are called *verbal nouns*.

The following are the principal classes :—

1. Abstract nouns expressing the action or condition denoted by a verb, especially by a neuter verb, are formed by annexing *or* to their first root ; as, *amor*, love ; *fāvor*, favor ; *māror*, grief ; *splendor*, brightness ; from *āmo*, *fāveo*, *māreo*, and *splendeo*.

2. (a.) Abstracts are also formed from many verbs by annexing *ium* to the first or to the third root ; as, *colloquium*, a conference ; *gaudium*, joy ; *exordium*, a beginning ; *exitium*, destruction ; *solatium*, consolation ; from *colloquor*, *gaudeo*, *exordior*, *exeo* and *solor*.

3. Some verbal abstracts are formed by annexing *ēla*, *imōnia*, or *imōnium*, to the first root of the verb ; as, *querēla* and *querimonia*, a complaint ; *suadēla*, persuasion ; from *quēror* and *suadeo*.

4. (a.) The terminations *men* and *mentum*, added to the first root of the verb, generally with a connecting vowel, denote the thing to which the action belongs, both actively and passively, or a means for the performance of the action ; as, *fulmen* from *fulgeo*, *flumen* from *fluo*, *agmen* from *āgo*, *solāmen* from *solor*, *documentum* from *dōceo*, *blandimentum* from *blandior*.

(b.) The final consonant of the root is often dropped, and the preceding and connecting vowels contracted into one syllable ; as, *āgo*, (*āgtmen*,) *agmen* ; *fāveo*, (*fāvitmentum*,) *fāmentum*.

(c.) Some words of this class have no primitive verb in use ; as, *atramentum*, ink ; but, in this case, the connecting vowel seems to imply its reference to such a verb as *aträre*, to blacken.

5. (a.) The terminations *ilum*, *bilum*, *cilum* ; *brum*, *crum*, *trum*, annexed to the first root of a verb, denote an instrument for performing the act expressed by the verb, or a place for its performance ; as, *cingulum*, *operculum*, *venabulum*, *ventilabrum*, *fulcrum*, *spectrum*, from *cingo*, *opërio*, *vënor*, *ventilo*, *fulcio*, *spëcio*.

(b.) Sometimes *cilum* is contracted into *clum* ; as, *vinculum* for *vinculum*. Sometimes, also, *s* is inserted before *trum* ; as, *rostrum*, from *rôdo*, and a connecting vowel is placed before this and some of the other terminations ; as, *arâtrum*, *stabulum*, *cubiculum*, from *âro*, *sto*, and *cûbo*.

(c.) Some words of this kind are formed from nouns ; as, *acetabulum*, a vinegar cruet ; *turibulum*, a censer ; from *acëtum* and *tus*.

6. (a.) Nouns formed by adding *or* and *rix* to the third root of the verb, denote respectively the male and female agent of the action expressed by the verb ; as, *adjutor*, *adjutrix*, an assistant ; *fautor*, *fautrix*, a favorer ; *victor*, *victrix*, a conqueror ; from *adjûto* (*adjût-*), *fâveo* (*faut-*), *vinco* (*vict-*). They are often likewise used as adjectives. The feminine form is less common than the masculine, and when the third root of the verb ends in *s*, the feminine is sometimes formed in *trix* ; as, *tondeo* (*tons-*) *tonstrix*.

(b.) Some nouns in *or* are formed immediately from other nouns ; as, *viator*, a traveller ; *janitor*, a door-keeper ; from *via* and *janua*. In *meretrix* from *mereo*, *i* of the third root becomes *e*.

(c.) The agent of a few verbs is denoted by the terminations *a* and *o* annexed to the first root ; as, *conviva*, a guest ; *advëna*, a stranger ; *scriba*, a scribe ; *erro*, a vagrant ; *bïbo*, a drunkard ; *comedo*, a glutton, from *convivo*, *advënio*, etc.

7. Many abstract nouns are formed by annexing *io* and *us* (gen. *ûs*) to the third root of a verb ; as, *actio*, an action ; *lectio*, reading ; from *âgo* (*act-*), *lëgo* (*lect-*) ; — *cantus*, singing ; *visus*, sight ; *ûsus*, use ; from *câno* (*cant-*), *video* (*vis-*), *ûtor* (*ûs-*).

REMARK 1. Nouns of both forms, and of like signification, are frequently derived from the same verb ; as, *concurso* and *concurvus*, a running together ; *môtio* and *môtus*, etc.

REM. 2. Nouns formed by adding the termination *ûra* to the third root of a verb, sometimes have the same signification as those in *io* and *us*, and sometimes denote the result of an action ; as, *positûra*, position ; *vincitûra*, a binding together ; from *pôno*, and *vincio* ; and the termination *ëla* has sometimes the same meaning ; as, *querëla*, complaint ; *loquëla*, speech, from *quëror* and *loquor*.

NOTE. One of these forms is generally used to the exclusion of the others, and when two or more are found, they are usually employed in somewhat different senses.

8. The termination *ôrium*, added to the third root of a verb, denotes the place where the action of the verb is performed ; as, *auditiôrium*, a lecture-room ; *conditiôrium*, a repository ; from *audîo* and *condo*.

## COMPOSITION OF NOUNS.

### § 103. Compound nouns are formed variously :—

1. Of two nouns ; as, *rupicapra*, a wild goat, of *rûpes* and *capra*. In some words, compounded of two nouns, the former is a genitive ; as, *senatûsconsultum*, a decree of the senate ; *jurisconsultus*, a lawyer ; in others, both parts are declined ; as, *respublica*, *jusjurandum*. See § 91.

2. Of a noun and a verb ; as, *artifex*, an artist, of *ars* and *fâcio* ; *fidicœn*, a harper, of *fides* and *câno* ; *agricôla*, a husbandman, of *âger* and *côlo*.

3. Of an adjective and a noun; as, *æquinoctium*, the equinox, of *æquus* and *nox*; *millepæda*, a millepede, of *mille* and *pæd*.

In *duumvir*, *triumvir*, *decemvir*, *centumvir*, the numeral adjective is in the genitive plural.

REMARK 1. When the former part of a compound word is a noun or an adjective, it usually ends in *t*; as, *artífex*, *rupicapra*, *agricôla*, etc. If the second word begins with a vowel, an elision takes place; as, *quingennium*, of *quingus* and *annus*; *magnanimus*, of *magnus* and *animus*.

4. Of an adverb and a noun; as, *nēfas*, wickedness; *nēmo*, nobody; of *ne*, *fas*, and *hōmo*. So *biduum*, of *bis* and *dies*.

5. Of a preposition and a noun: as, *incuria*, want of care, of *in* and *cara*. So *intervallum*, an interval; *præcordia*, the diaphragm; *proverbium*, a proverb; *subsellium*, a low seat; *superficies*, a surface.

REM. 2. When the former part is a preposition, its final consonant is sometimes changed, to adapt it to that which follows it: as, *ignobilis*, *illeptus*, *imprudens*, *irumpo*, of *in* and *nobilis*, *leptus*, etc. See § 196.

## ADJECTIVES.

§ 104. An adjective is a word which qualifies or limits the meaning of a substantive.

Adjectives may be divided, according to their *signification*, into various classes; as denoting,

1. Character or quality; as, *bōnus*, good; *albus*, white; *amicus*, friendly.
2. State or condition; as, *felix*, happy; *dives*, rich.
3. Possession; as, *herilis*, a master's; *patrius*, a father's.
4. Quantity; as, *magnus*, great; *tōtus*, entire; *parvus*, small.
5. Number; as, *ūnus*, one; *secundus*, second; *tot*, so many; *quot*, as many. These are called *numerals*.
6. Time; as, *annuus*, yearly; *hesternus*, of yesterday; *biannus*, of two years; *trimestris*, of three months.
7. Place; as, *altus*, high; *vicinus*, near; *aërius*, aerial; *terrestre*, terrestrial.
8. Material; as, *aureus*, golden; *fagineus*, beechen; *terrēus*, earthen.
9. Part; as, *nullus*, no one; *aliquis*, some one. These are called *partitives*.
10. Country; as, *Romānus*, Roman; *Arpinas* of *Arpinum*. These are called *patrials*.
11. Diminution; as, *parvulus*, from *parvus*, small; *misellus*, from *misere*, miserable. These are called *diminutives*.
12. Amplification; as, *vinosus* and *vinolentus*, much given to wine; *auritus*, having long ears. These are called *amplificatives*.
13. Relation; as, *avidus*, desirous of; *mémor*, mindful of; *insuetus*. These are called *relatives*.
14. Interrogation; as, *quantus*? how great; *qualis*? of what kind; *quot*? how many? *quotus*? of what number? These are called *interrogatives*; and, when not used interrogatively, they are called *correlatives*.
15. Specification; as, *tālis*, such; *tantus*, so great; *tot*, so many. These are called *demonstratives*.



## DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.

§ 105. 1. Adjectives are declined like substantives, and are either of the first and second declensions, or of the third only.

## ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

2. The masculine of adjectives belonging to the first and second declensions, ends either in *us* or in *er*. The feminine and neuter are formed respectively by annexing *a* and *um* to the root of the masculine. The masculine in *us* is declined like *dominus*; that in *er* like *gēner* or *āger*; the feminine always like *māsa*; and the neuter like *regnum*.

REMARK 1. The masculine of one adjective, *ātur*, *-āra*, *-ārum*, full, ends in *ur*, and is declined like *gēner*.

*Bōnūs, good.*

*Singular.*

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i>	bo'-nūs,	bo'-nā,	bo'-nūm,
<i>G.</i>	bo'-nī,	bo'-næ,	bo'-nī,
<i>D.</i>	bo'-nō,	bo'-næ,	bo'-nō,
<i>Ac.</i>	bo'-nūm,	bo'-nām,	bo'-nūm,
<i>V.</i>	bo'-nē,	bo'-nā,	bo'-nūm,
<i>Ab.</i>	bo'-nō.	bo'-nā.	bo'-nō.

*Plural.*

<i>N.</i>	bo'-nī,	bo'-næ,	bo'-nā,
<i>G.</i>	bo-nō'-rūm,	bo-nā'-rūm,	bo-nō'-rūm,
<i>D.</i>	bo'-nīs,	bo'-nīs,	bo'-nīs,
<i>Ac.</i>	bo'-nōs,	bo'-nās,	bo'-nā,
<i>V.</i>	bo'-nī,	bo'-næ,	bo'-nā,
<i>Ab.</i>	bo'-nīs.	bo'-nīs.	bo'-nīs.

In like manner decline

<i>Al'-tus, high.</i>	<i>Fī'-dus, faithful.</i>	<i>Lon'-gus, long.</i>
<i>A-vā'-rus, covetous.</i>	<i>Im'-prō-bus, wicked.</i>	<i>Plē'-nus, full.</i>
<i>Be-nig'-nus, kind.</i>	<i>In-ī'-quus, unjust.</i>	<i>Tac'-i-tus, silent.</i>

REM. 2. Like *bōnus* are also declined all participles in *us*; as,

*A-mā'-tus. Am-a-tū'-rus. A-man'-dus.*

Rem. 3. The masculine of the vocative singular of adjectives in *us* is sometimes like the nominative; as, *O vir fortis atque amicus*. Hor. *Meus* has both *mi* and *meus*.

REM. 4. The genitive plural of distributive numerals ends commonly in *ān* instead of *ōrum*; as, *crassitudo binām digitorūm*. Plin.

3. Tēner, *tender*.

*Singular.*

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i>	te'-nēr,	ten'-ē-rā,	ten'-ē-rūm,
<i>G.</i>	ten'-ē-rī,	ten'-ē-ræ,	ten'-ē-rī,
<i>D.</i>	ten'-ē-rō,	ten'-ē-ræ,	ten'-ē-rō,
<i>Ac.</i>	ten'-ē-rūm,	ten'-ē-rām,	ten'-ē-rūm,
<i>V.</i>	te'-nēr,	ten'-ē-rā,	ten'-ē-rūm,
<i>Ab.</i>	ten'-ē-rō.	ten'-ē-rā.	ten'-ē-rō.

*Plural.*

<i>N.</i>	ten'-ē-rī,	ten'-ē-ræ,	ten'-ē-rā,
<i>G.</i>	ten-e-rō'-rūm,	ten-e-rā'-rūm,	ten-e-rō'-rūm,
<i>D.</i>	ten'-ē-rīs,	ten'-ē-rīs,	ten'-ē-rīs,
<i>Ac.</i>	ten'-ē-rōs,	ten'-ē-rās,	ten'-ē-rā,
<i>V.</i>	ten'-ē-rī,	ten'-ē-ræ,	ten'-ē-rā,
<i>Ab.</i>	ten'-ē-rīs.	ten'-ē-rīs.	ten'-ē-rīs.

In like manner are declined

As'-per, <i>rough</i> .	Lā'-cer, <i>torn</i> .	Pros'-per, <i>prosperous</i> .
Ex'-ter, <i>foreign</i> .	Li'-ber, <i>free</i> .	Sā'-tur, <i>full</i> .
Gib'-ber, <i>crook-backed</i> .	MI'-ser, <i>wretched</i> .	

So also *alter*, except in the genitive and dative singular (see § 107), *semifer*, and the compounds of *gēro* and *fēro*; as, *laniger*, *opifer*.

NOTE. *Prosper* is less frequent than *prospērus*, and *exter* is scarcely used in the nominative singular masculine.

§ 106. The other adjectives in *er* drop *e* in declension; as,

*Piger, slothful.*

*Singular.*

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i>	pi'-gēr,	pi'-grā,	pi'-grūm,
<i>G.</i>	pi'-grī,	pi'-græ,	pi'-grī,
<i>D.</i>	pi'-grō,	pi'-græ,	pi'-grō,
<i>Ac.</i>	pi'-grūm,	pi'-grām,	pi'-grūm,
<i>V.</i>	pi'-gēr,	pi'-grā,	pi'-grūm,
<i>Ab.</i>	pi'-grō.	pi'-grā.	pi'-grō.

*Plural.*

<i>N.</i>	pi'-grī,	pi'-græ,	pi'-grā,
<i>G.</i>	pi-grō'-rūm,	pi-grā'-rūm,	pi-grō'-rūm,
<i>D.</i>	pi'-gris,	pi'-gris,	pi'-gris,
<i>Ac.</i>	pi'-grōs,	pi'-grās,	pi'-grā,
<i>V.</i>	pi'-grī,	pi'-græ,	pi'-grā,
<i>Ab.</i>	pi'-gris.	pi'-gris.	pi'-gris.

## In like manner decline

<i>Æ'-ger, sick.</i>	<i>Mā'-cer, lean.</i>	<i>Scā'-ber, rough.</i>
<i>A'-ter, black.</i>	<i>Nī'-ger, black.</i>	<i>Si-nis'-ter, left.</i>
<i>Crā'-ber, frequent.</i>	<i>Pul'-cher, fair.</i>	<i>Tē'-ter, foul.</i>
<i>Glā'-ber, smooth.</i>	<i>Rū'-ber, red.</i>	<i>Vā'-fer, crafty.</i>
<i>In'-tē-ger, entire.</i>	<i>Sā'-cer, sacred.</i>	

*Dexter, right, has -tra, -trum, and less frequently -tēra, -tērum.*

§ 107. Six adjectives in *us*, and three in *er*, have their genitive singular in *tus*, and their dative in *i*, in all the genders:—

<i>Alius, another.</i>	<i>Tōtus, whole.</i>	<i>Alter, -tēra, -tērum, the other.</i>
<i>Nullus, no one.</i>	<i>Ullus, any.</i>	<i>Uter, -tra, -trum, which of the two.</i>
<i>Sōlus, alone.</i>	<i>Unus, one.</i>	<i>Neuter, -tra, -trum, neither.</i>

To these may be added the other compounds of *uter*,—namely, *uterque*, each of two; *uterumque*, *uterlibet*, and *uteruis*, which of the two you please; gen. *utriusque*, etc.—also, *alteruter*, one of two; gen. *alterutrius*, and sometimes *alterius utrius*; dat. *alterutri*. So *alteruterque*, and *unusquisque*. See § 188, 4.

*Nullus, sōlus, tōtus, ullus*, and *unus* are thus declined:—

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Singular.</i> <i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i>	<i>ū-nūs,</i>	<i>ū-nā,</i>	<i>ū-nūm,</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>u-nī'-ūs,*</i>	<i>u-nī'-ūs,</i>	<i>u-nī'-ūs,</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>u'-nī,</i>	<i>u'-nī,</i>	<i>u'-nī,</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>u'-nūm,</i>	<i>u'-nām,</i>	<i>u'-nūm,</i>
<i>V.</i>	<i>u'-nē,</i>	<i>u'-nā,</i>	<i>u'-nūm,</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>u'-nō.</i>	<i>u'-nā.</i>	<i>u'-nō.</i>

The plural is regular, like that of *bōnus*.

REMARK 1. *Alius* has *aliud* in the nominative and accusative singular neuter, and in the genitive *alius*, contracted for *alius*.

REM. 2. Except in the genitive and dative singular, *alter* is declined like *tēner*, and *uter* and *neuter* like *piger*.

REM. 3. Some of these adjectives, in early writers, and occasionally even in Cicero, Cæsar, and Nepos, form their genitive and dative regularly, like *bōnus*, *tēner*, or *piger*.

## ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

§ 108. Some adjectives of the third declension have three terminations in the nominative singular; some two; and others only one.

I. Those of three terminations end in *er*, masc.; *is*, fem.; and *e*, neut.; and are thus declined:—

*Acer, sharp.*

*Singular.*

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i>	<i>ā'-cēr,</i>	<i>ā'-crīs,</i>	<i>ā'-crē,</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>a'-crīs,</i>	<i>a'-crīs,</i>	<i>a'-crīs,</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>a'-crī,</i>	<i>a'-crī,</i>	<i>a'-crī,</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>a'-crēm,</i>	<i>a'-crēm,</i>	<i>a'-crē,</i>
<i>V.</i>	<i>a'-cēr,</i>	<i>a'-crīs,</i>	<i>a'-crē,</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>a'-crī.</i>	<i>a'-crī.</i>	<i>a'-crī.</i>

\* See § 15.

*Plural.*

<i>N.</i>	a'-crēs,	a'-crēs,	a'-cri-ā,
<i>G.</i>	a'-cri-ūm,	a'-cri-ūm,	a'-cri-ūm,
<i>D.</i>	ac'-rī-būs,	ac'-rī-būs,	ac'-rī-būs,
<i>Ac.</i>	a'-crēs,	a'-crēs,	a'-cri-ā,
<i>V.</i>	a'-crēs,	a'-crēs,	a'-cri-ā,
<i>Ab.</i>	ac'-rī-būs.	ac'-rī-būs.	ac'-rī-būs.

In like manner are declined the following;—

Al'-ācer, <i>cheerful.</i>	Pa-lus'-ter, <i>marshy.</i>	Sil-ves'-ter, <i>woody.</i>
Cam-pes'-ter, <i>champaign.</i>	Pe-des'-ter, <i>on foot.</i>	Ter-res'-ter, <i>terrestrial.</i>
Cel'-ē-ber, <i>famous.</i>	Pū'-ter, <i>rotten.</i>	Vol'-ū-cer, <i>winged.</i>
E-ques'-ter, <i>equestrian.</i>	Sa-lū'-ber, <i>wholesome.</i>	

To these add names of months in *-ber*, used as adjectives; as, *October*, etc. (cf. § 71), and *cēler*, swift, which has *celēris*, *celēre*; gen. *celēris*, etc.

REMARK 1. The termination *er* was anciently sometimes feminine; as, *volūcer fama*. Petr.: and, on the other hand, the masculine often ends in *is*; as, *collis silvestris*, Cæs.

REM. 2. *Volūcer* has *um* in the genitive plural.

§ 109. II. Adjectives of two terminations end in *is* for the masculine and feminine, and *e* for the neuter, except comparatives, which end in *or* and *us*.

Those in *is*, *e*, are thus declined:—

*Mitis mild.*

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
<i>M. &amp; F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M. &amp; F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N.</i> mī'-tis,	mī'-tē,	<i>N.</i> mī'-tēs,	mīt'-i-ā,*
<i>G.</i> mī'-tis,	mī'-tis,	<i>G.</i> mīt'-i-ūm,*	mīt'-i-ūm,
<i>D.</i> mī'-ti,	mī'-ti,	<i>D.</i> mīt'-i-būs,	mīt'-i-būs,
<i>Ac.</i> mī'-tēm,	mī'-tē,	<i>Ac.</i> mī'-tēs,	mīt'-i-ā,
<i>V.</i> mī'-tis,	mī'-tē,	<i>V.</i> mī'-tēs,	mīt'-i-ā,
<i>Ab.</i> mī'-ti.	mī'-ti.	<i>Ab.</i> mīt'-i-būs.	mīt'-i-būs.

In like manner decline

Ag'-i-lis, <i>active.</i>	Dul'-cis, <i>sweet.</i>	In-col'-ū-mis, <i>safe.</i>
Brē'-vis, <i>short.</i>	For'-tis, <i>brave.</i>	Mi-rab'-i-lis, <i>wonderful.</i>
Crū-dē'-lis, <i>cruel.</i>	Grā'-vis, <i>heavy.</i>	Om'-nis, <i>all.</i>

*Tres*, three, is declined like the plural of *mitis*.

NOTE. Several adjectives of this class have forms also in *us*, *a*, *um*. See § 118.

§ 110. (a.) All comparatives, except *plus*, more, are thus declined:—

\* Pronominali *utis*/'-e-a, etc. See § 12.

Mitior,\* *milder*.*Singular.*

	<i>M. &amp; F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N.</i>	mit'-i-ōr,	mit'-i-ūs,
<i>G.</i>	mit-i-ō'-rīs,	mit-i-ō'-rīs,
<i>D.</i>	mit-i-ō'-rī,	mit-i-ō'-rī,
<i>Ac.</i>	mit-i-ō'-rēm,	mit'-i-ūs,
<i>V.</i>	mit'-i-ōr,	mit'-i-ūs,
<i>Ab.</i>	mit-i-ō'-rē, or -rī.	mit-i-ō'-rē, or -rī.

*Plural.*

	<i>M. &amp; F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N.</i>	mit-i-ō'-rēs,	mit-i-ō'-rā,
<i>G.</i>	mit-i-ō'-rūm,	mit-i-ō'-rūm,
<i>D.</i>	mit-i-or'-ī-būs,	mit-i-or'-ī-būs,
<i>Ac.</i>	mit-i-ō'-rēs,	mit-i-ō'-rā,
<i>V.</i>	mit-i-ō'-rēs,	mit-i-ō'-rā,
<i>Ab.</i>	mit-i-or'-ī-būs.	mit-i-or'-ī-būs.

## In like manner decline

A'-ti-or, <i>higher</i> .	Dul'-ci-or, <i>sweeter</i> .	Gra'-vi-or, <i>heavier</i> .
A i-da'-ci-or, <i>bolder</i> .	Fe-lī'-i-or, <i>happier</i> .	Pru-den'-ti-or, <i>more prudent</i> .
Br'-vi-or, <i>shorter</i> .	Fe-ro'-ci-or, <i>fiercer</i> .	U-be'-ri-or, <i>more fertile</i> .
Cru-de'-li-or, <i>more cruel</i> .	For'-ti-or, <i>braver</i> .	

Plūs, *more*, is thus declined :—

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i>	<i>M. &amp; F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N.</i> plus,	<i>N.</i> plū'-rēs,	plū'-rā, <i>rarely plu-ri-ā,</i>
<i>G.</i> plū'-rīs,	<i>G.</i> plu'-ri-ūm,	plū'-ri-ūm,
<i>D.</i> ———,	<i>D.</i> plu'-ri-būs,	plū'-ri-būs,
<i>Ac.</i> plus,	<i>Ac.</i> plū'-rēs,	plū'-rā,
<i>V.</i> ———,	<i>V.</i> ———,	plū'-rā,
<i>Ab.</i> (plū'-rē, <i>obs.</i> )	<i>Ab.</i> plu'-ri-būs.	plū'-ri-būs.

So, but in the plural number only, *complēres*, a great many.

§ 111. III. Other adjectives of the third declension have but one termination in the nominative singular for all genders. They all end in *l*, *r*, *s*, or *x*, and increase in the genitive.

They are thus declined :—

Fēlix, *happy*.*Singular.*

<i>M. &amp; F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N.</i> fe'-lix,	fe'-lix,
<i>G.</i> fe-li'-cīs,	fe-li'-cīs,
<i>D.</i> fe-li'-cī,	fe-li'-cī,
<i>Ac.</i> fe-li'-cēm,	fe'-lix,
<i>V.</i> fe'-lix,	fe'-lix,
<i>Ab.</i> fe-li'-cē, or -cī.	fe-li'-cē, or -cī.

\* Pronounced *mish'-e-or*, etc. See § 12.

## Plural.

M. & F.		N.
N.	fe-li'-cēs,	fe-lic'-i-ā,*
G.	fe-lic'-i-ūm,*	fe-lic'-i-ūm,
D.	fe-lic'-i-būs,	fe-lic'-i-būs,
Ac.	fe-li'-cēs,	fe-lic'-i-ā,
V.	fe-li'-cēs,	fe-lic'-i-ā,
Ab.	fe-lic'-i-būs.	fe-lic'-i-būs.

## Præsens, present.

## Singular.

M. & F.		N.
N.	præ'-sens,	præ'-sens,
G.	præ-sen'-tis,	præ-sen'-tis,
D.	præ-sen'-ti,	præ-sen'-ti,
Ac.	præ-sen'-tēm,	præ'-sens,
V.	præ'-sens,	præ'-sens,
Ab.	præ-sen'-tē, or -ti.	præ-sen'-tē, or -ti.

## Plural.

N.	præ-sen'-tēs,	præ-sen'-ti-ā,†
G.	præ-sen'-ti-ūm,	præ-sen'-ti-ūm,
D.	præ-sen'-ti-būs,	præ-sen'-ti-būs,
Ac.	præ-sen'-tēs,	præ-sen'-ti-ā,
V.	præ-sen'-tēs,	præ-sen'-ti-ā,
Ab.	præ-sen'-ti-būs.	præ-sen'-ti-būs.

## In like manner decline

Au'-dax, -ācis, <i>bold</i> .	Par'-ti-ceps, -ipis, <i>participant</i> .	Sol'-lers, -tis, <i>shrewd</i> .
Com'-pos, -ōtis, <i>master of</i> .	Præ'-pes, -ētis, <i>swift</i> .	Sos'-pes, -itis, <i>safe</i> .
Fē'-rox, -ōcis, <i>fierce</i> .	Prū'-dens, -tis, <i>prudent</i> .	Sup'-plex, -icis, <i>suppliant</i> .
In'-gens, -tis, <i>huge</i> .		

REMARK. All present participles are declined like *præsens*; as,

A'-mans. Mō'-nens. Rē'-gens. Ca'-pi-ens. Au'-di-ens.

NOTE. A few adjectives of one termination have redundant forms in *us*, *a*, *um*; see § 116.

## RULES FOR THE OBLIQUE CASES OF ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

## GENITIVE SINGULAR.

§ 112. Most adjectives of the third declension form their genitive singular like nouns of the same termination.

The following may here be specified:—

1. Of those in *es* (cf. § 73) some have *-ētis*; as, *hēbes*, *perpes*, *præpes*, and *tēres*—*inquies* and *locuples* have *-ētis*;—some have *-itis*; as, *dives*, *sopes*, and *superstes*;—some have *-idis*; as, *dēses*, and *rēses*;—*bipes*, and *tripes* have *-pēdis*;—*pūbes* has *pubēris*, and *impūbes*, *impubēris* and *impūbis*.

\* Pronounced *fe-līsh'-e-um*, etc. See § 10, EXX., and § 7., 3. (b.)

† Pronounced *præ-sen'-shē-a*, etc.

2. *Compos* and *impos* have -*ditis*, and *exos*, *exossis*.—*Exlex* has *exlēgis*, *pernoxa* has *pernoctis* (§ 78), *præcox*, *præcōcis*, and *redux*, *redūcis*.—*Calebs* has *calēbis*, (§ 77); *intercus*, *intercūtis*, and *vētus*, *vetētis*. Those in *ceps* which are compounds of *cāpit*, have -*cipitis*; as, *anceps*, *præceps* (§ 78, 1); but the compounds of *ceps* from *cāpio* have -*tipis*; as, *particeps*, *participis*.—Those in *cors*, compounds of *cor*, have -*cordis*; as, *concors*, *concordis* (§ 71, Exc. 2).—*Mēmor* and *immēmor* have -*ditis*.

### ABLATIVE SINGULAR.

† § 113. 1. Adjectives which have *e* in the nominative singular neuter have only *i* in the ablative.

Exc. 1. The ablatives *bimestre*, *caleste*, and *perenne* are found in Ovid, and *cognomine* in Virgil.

2. Comparatives and participles in *ns*, when used as participles, especially in the ablative absolute, have rather *e* than *i*; but participial adjectives in *ns* have rather *i* than *e*.

3. Adjectives of one termination have either *e* or *i* in the ablative.

Exc. 2. The following adjectives of one termination have only *e* in the ablative:—

*Bicorpor*, *hīpes*, *cælebs*, *compos*, *dæses*, *discolor*, *hospes*, *impos*, *impūbes*, *juvénis*, *locuples*, *pauper*, *princeps*, *pūber* or *pūbes*, *sénex*, *sospes*, *superstes*, *tricorpor*, *tricuspis*, and *trīpes*.

Exc. 3. The following adjectives of one termination have only *i* in the ablative:—

*Anceps*, *concors*, *discors*, *hēbes*, *immēmor*, *iners*, *ingens*, *inops*, *mēmor*, *par*, *præceps*, *récens*, *rēpens*, *vigil*, and most adjectives in *x*, especially those in *plex*.

REM. 1. *Inerte* occurs in Ovid, *recente* in Ovid and Catullus, and *præcipe* in Ennius.

REM. 2. *Præsens*, when used of things, makes the ablative in *i*; when used of persons, it has *e*.

### NOMINATIVE, ACCUSATIVE, AND GENITIVE PLURAL.

† § 114. 1. The neuter of the nominative and accusative plural ends in *ia*, and the genitive plural of all genders in *ium*; but comparatives in *or*, with *vētus*, old, and *ūber*, fertile, have *a*, and *um*.

2. The accusative plural of masculine and feminine adjectives, whose genitive plural ends in *ium*, anciently ended in *is* or *ēs*, instead of *ēs*. Cf. § 85, Exc. 1.

Exc. 1. Those adjectives that have only *e* in the ablative singular, have *um* in the genitive plural.

Exc. 2. Compounds of *fācio*, *cāpio*, and of such nouns as make *um* in their genitive plural, with *cēler*, *compar*, *cicur*, *dives*, *mēmor*, *immēmor*, *præpes*, *supplex*, and *vigil*, make their genitive plural in *um*.

Exc. 3. *Dis*, *locuples*, *sons*, and *insons* have either *um* or *ium*. The poets and the later prose writers sometimes form the genitive plural of other adjectives and of participles in *ns*, by syncope, in *um*, instead of *ium*; as, *caelestum*, Virg. Ovid, etc.

## IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES.

§ 115. Some adjectives are defective, others redundant.

## DEFECTIVE ADJECTIVES.

1. (a.) Many adjectives denoting personal qualities or attributes want the neuter gender, unless when occasionally joined to a neuter substantive used figuratively. Such are the following:—

Bicorpor, bipes, cælebs, compos, consors, degēner, dives, impos, impubes, industrius, inops, insons, invitus, juvenis, locuples, mēmor, pauper, particeps princeps, pūber, or pūbes, rēdux, sēnex, sons, sospes, superstes, supplex, tri-corpor, vigil.

(b.) *Victrix* and *ultrix* are feminine in the singular, seldom neuter; in the plural, they are feminine and neuter. Such verbals partake of the nature both of substantives and adjectives, and correspond to masculines in *tor*. See § 102, 6, (a.)

2. The following want the genitive plural, and are rarely used in the neuter gender:—

Concōlor, dēses, hēbes, perpes, rēses, tēses, versicōlor.

3. The names of months, which are properly adjectives, have only the masculine and feminine genders.

4. Some adjectives are wholly indeclinable.

Such are *frūgi*, temperate; *nēquam*, worthless; *sāt* or *sātis*, sufficient; the plurals *aliquot*, *idē*, *quōt*, *totidē*, *quotquot*; and the cardinal numbers from *quatuor* to *centum* inclusive, and also *mille*. Cf. § 118, 1, and 6, (b.)

5. The following adjectives are used only in certain cases:—

*Bifcem*, acc.; *doubly-tissued*. *Cetēra*, *cetērum*, the rest, wants the nom. sing. masc. *Decemplicem*, acc.; *tenfold*. *Exspes*, nom.; *hopeless*. *Inquies*, nom.; *-stem*, acc.; *-ēte*, abl.; *restless*. *Mactus*, and *macte*, nom.; *macte*, acc.; *honored*; *-macti*, nom. plur. *Necesse*, and *necessum*, nom., acc.; *necessary*. *Plus*, nom., acc.; *plūris*, gen.; *more*; *-pl. plūres*, -a, nom. acc.; *-ium* gen.; *ibus*, dat., abl. Cf. § 110. *Postēra*, *postērum*, coming after, wants the nom. sing. masc. *Pōtis*, nom. sing. and pl., all genders; *able*. *Pōte*, nom. sing., for *potest*; *possible*. *Sep-templēcia*, gen.; *-ce*, abl.; *seven-fold*. *Siremps*, and *sirempse*, nom. and acc.; *alike*. *Tantundem*, nom. acc.; *tantidē*, gen.; *tantandē*, acc.; *so much*. *Trilicem*, acc.; *trebly-tissued*; *trilices*, nom. and acc. pl.

## REDUNDANT ADJECTIVES.

§ 116. The following adjectives are redundant in termination and declension. Those marked *r* are more rarely used.

*Acclivis*, and *-us*, *r*, ascending.  
*Auxiliāris*, and *-ius*, auxiliary.  
*Bijūgis*, and *-us*, yoked two together.  
*Declivis*, and *-us*, *r*, descending.  
*Exanimis*, and *-us*, *r*, lifeless.  
*Hilāris*, and *-us*, cheerful.  
*Imbecillis*, *r*, and *-us*, weak.  
*Impubes*, and *-is*, *r*, *-is* or *-tris*, not grown up.  
*Inermis*, and *-us*, *r*, unarmed.  
*Infrēnis*, and *-us*, unbridled.

*Inquies*, and *-stus*, restless.  
*Joculāris*, and *-ius*, *r*, laughable.  
*Multijūgis*, *r*, and *-us*, yoked many together.  
*Opulens*, and *-lentus*, rich.  
*Præcox*, *-cōquis*, and *-cōquus*, early ripe.  
*Proclivis*, and *-us*, *r*, sloping.  
*Quadrijūgis*, and *-us*, yoked four together.  
*Semianimis*, and *-us*, half alive.



Semiermis, and -us, *half armed*.  
 Semisomnis, and -us, r, *half asleep*.  
 Singularis, and -ius, *single*.

Sublimis, and -us, r, *high*.  
 Unanimis, r, and -us, *unanimous*.  
 Violens, r, and -lentus, *violent*.

To these may be added some adjectives in *er* and *is*; as, *saluber* and -*bris*,  
*celiber* and -*bris*. Cf. § 108, R. 1.

## NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

✱ § 117. Numeral adjectives are divided into three principal classes—*Cardinal*, *Ordinal*, and *Distributive*.

✱ I. Cardinal numbers are those which simply denote the number of things, in answer to the question *Quot?* 'How many?' They are,

1. Unus,	<i>one.</i>	I.
2. Duo,	<i>two.</i>	II.
3. Tres,	<i>three.</i>	III.
4. Quattuor,	<i>four.</i>	III. or IV.
5. Quinque,	<i>five.</i>	V.
6. Sex,	<i>six.</i>	VI.
7. Septem,	<i>seven.</i>	VII.
8. Octo,	<i>eight.</i>	VIII.
9. Nōvem,	<i>nine.</i>	VIII. or IX.
10. Dēcem,	<i>ten.</i>	X.
11. Undēcim,	<i>eleven.</i>	XI.
12. Duodēcim,	<i>twelve.</i>	XII.
13. Tredēcim,	<i>thirteen.</i>	XIII.
14. Quatuordēcim,	<i>fourteen.</i>	XIII. or XIV.
15. Quindēcim,	<i>fifteen.</i>	XV.
16. Sedēcim, or sexdēcim,	<i>sixteen.</i>	XVI.
17. Septendēcim,	<i>seventeen.</i>	XVII.
18. Octodēcim,	<i>eighteen.</i>	XVIII.
19. Novendēcim,	<i>nineteen.</i>	XVIII. or XIX.
20. Viginti,	<i>twenty.</i>	XX.
21. Viginti unus, or unus et viginti, }	<i>twenty-one.</i>	XXI.
22. Viginti duo, or duo et viginti, etc., }	<i>twenty-two.</i>	XXII.
30. Triginta,	<i>thirty.</i>	XXX.
40. Quādrāginta,	<i>forty.</i>	XXXX. or XL.
50. Quinquaginta,	<i>fifty.</i>	L.
60. Sexaginta,	<i>sixty.</i>	LX.
70. Septuaginta,	<i>seventy.</i>	LXX.
80. Octoginta, or octuaginta,	<i>eighty.</i>	LXXX.
90. Nōnāginta,	<i>ninety.</i>	LXXXX. or XQ.
100. Centum,	<i>a hundred.</i>	C.
101. Centum unus, or centum et unus, etc., }	<i>a hundred and one.</i>	CI.
200. Dūcenti, -ae, a,	<i>two hundred.</i>	CC.
300. Trēcenti, etc.,	<i>three hundred.</i>	CCC.
400. Quādringenti,	<i>four hundred.</i>	CCCC. or CD.
500. Quingenti,	<i>five hundred.</i>	ID. or D.
600. Sexcenti,	<i>six hundred.</i>	IOCC. or DC.
700. Septingenti,	<i>seven hundred.</i>	IDCC. or DCC.
800. Octingenti,	<i>eight hundred.</i>	IDCCC. or DCCC.
900. Nongenti,	<i>nine hundred.</i>	IDCCCC. or DCCCC.
1000. Mille,	<i>a thousand.</i>	CID. or M.
2000. Duo millia, or bis mille, }	<i>two thousand.</i>	CIOCIO, or MM.

5000. Quinque millia, or quinqüies mille,	five thousand.	IDD.
10000. Decem millia, or decies mille,	ten thousand.	CCIDD.
50000. Quinquaginta millia, or quinquagies mille,	fifty thousand.	IDDD.
100000. Centum millia, or centies mille,	a hundred thousand.	CCCCIDD.

§ 118. 1. The first three cardinal numbers are declined; from four to a hundred inclusive they are indeclinable; those denoting hundreds are declined like the plural of *bōnus*.

For the declension of *ūnus* and *tres*, see §§ 107 and 109.

*Duo* is thus declined:—

Plural.

M.	F.	N.
N. dū'-o,	du'-æ,	du'-o,
G. du-ŏ'-rum,	du-ŏ'-rum,	du-ŏ'-rum,
D. du-ŏ'-bus,	du-ŏ'-bus,	du-ŏ'-bus,
Ac. du'-os, or du'-o,	du'-as,	du'-o,
V. du'-o,	du'-æ,	du'-o,
Ab. du-ŏ'-bus.	du-ŏ'-bus.	du-ŏ'-bus.

REMARK 1. *Duōrum*, *duōrum*, are often contracted into *duōm*, especially in compounds; as, *duōmivus*, and when joined with *millium*.—*Ambo*, both, which partakes of the nature of a numeral and of a pronoun, is declined like *duo*.

2. The cardinal numbers, except *ūnus* and *mille*, are used in the plural only.

REM. 2. The plural of *unus* is used with nouns which have no singular, or whose singular has a different sense from the plural; as, *una nuptia*, one marriage; *una castra*, one camp. It is used also with nouns denoting several things considered as one whole; as, *una vestimenta*, one suit of clothes. So also, when it takes the signification of "alone" or "the same"; as, *unī Ūbī*, the Ūbians alone; *unīs moribus vivere*,—with the same manners.

3. (a.) Thirteen, sixteen, seventeen, eighteen, and nineteen, are often expressed by two numbers, the greater of which usually precedes, united by *et*; thus, *dēcem et tres*, *dēcem et nōvem*, or, omitting *et*, *dēcem nōvem*. *Octodēcim* has no good authority. See *infra*, 4.

(b.) From twenty to a hundred, the smaller number with *et* is put first, or the greater without *et*; as, *unus et viginti*, or *viginti unus*. Above one hundred, the greater precedes, with or without *et*; as, *centum et unus*, or *centum unus*, *trecenti sexaginta sex*, or *trecenti et sexaginta sex*. *Et* is never twice used, but the poets sometimes take *ac*, *atque*, or *que*, instead of *et*.

4. For eighteen, twenty-eight, etc., and for nineteen, twenty-nine, etc. (excepting sixty-eight, sixty-nine, and ninety-eight), a subtractive expression is more frequent than the additive form; as, *duodeviginti*, two from twenty; *undeviginti*, one from twenty; *duodetriginta*, *undetriginta*, etc. Neither *un* (*unus*) nor *duo* can be declined in these combinations. The additive forms for thirty-eight, etc. to ninety-eight, and for forty-nine, etc. to ninety-nine, except those for sixty-nine, seem not to occur.

5. (a.) Thousands are generally expressed by prefixing the smaller cardinal numbers to *millia*; as, *dēcem millia*, ten thousand; *ducenta millia*, two hundred thousand. As there is in Latin no unit above *mille*, a thousand, the higher units of modern numeration are expressed by prefixing the numeral adverbs to the

combination *centēna millia*; as, *decies centēna millia*, a million; *centies centēna millia*, ten millions. In such combinations *centēna millia* is sometimes omitted; as, *decies*, *scil. centēna millia*.

(b.) The poets sometimes make use of numeral adverbs in expressing smaller numbers; as, *bis sex* for *duodēcim*; *bis centum* for *ducenti*, etc.

✱ 6. *Mille* is used either as a substantive or as an adjective.

(a.) When taken substantively, it is indeclinable in the singular number, and, in the plural, has *millia*, *millium*, *millibus*, etc.; as, *mille hominum*, a thousand men; *duo millia hominum*, two thousand men, etc. When *mille* is a substantive, the things numbered are put in the genitive, as in the preceding examples, unless a declined numeral comes between; as, *habuit tria millia trecentos milites*.

(b.) As an adjective, *mille* is plural only, and indeclinable: as, *mille homines*, a thousand men; *cum bis mille hominibus*, with two thousand men.

7. Capitals were used by the Romans to mark numbers. The letters employed for this purpose were C. I. L. V. X., which are, therefore, called *Numeral Letters*. I. denotes *one*; V. *five*; X. *ten*; L. *fifty*; and C. *a hundred*. By the various combinations of these five letters, all the different numbers are expressed.

(a.) The repetition of a numeral letter repeats its value. Thus, II. signifies *two*; III. *three*; XX. *twenty*; XXX. *thirty*; CC. *two hundred*, etc. But V. and L. are never repeated.

(b.) When a letter of a less value is placed before a letter of a greater value, the less takes away its value from the greater; but being placed after, it adds its value to the greater; thus,

IV. Four.	V. Five.	VI. Six.
IX. Nine.	X. Ten.	XI. Eleven.
XL. Forty.	L. Fifty.	LX. Sixty.
XC. Ninety.	C. A hundred.	CX. A hundred and ten.

(c.) A *thousand* was marked thus, CIO, which, in later times, was contracted into M. *Five hundred* is marked thus, IO, or, by contraction, D.

(d.) The annexing of the *apostrophus* or inverted C (O) to IO makes its value ten times greater; thus, IOO marks *five thousand*; and IOOO, *fifty thousand*.

(e.) The prefixing of C, together with the annexing of O, to the number CIO, makes its value ten times greater; thus, CCIOO denotes *ten thousand*; and CCCIOOO, *a hundred thousand*. The Romans, according to Pliny, proceeded no further in this method of notation. If they had occasion to express a larger number, they did it by repetition; thus, CCCIOOOO, CCCIOOOO, signified *two hundred thousand*, etc.

(f.) We sometimes find *thousands* expressed by a straight line drawn over the top of the numeral letters. Thus,  $\overline{\text{III}}$ . denotes *three thousand*;  $\overline{\text{X}}$ ., *ten thousand*.

✱ § 119. II. *Ordinal numbers* are such as denote order or rank, and answer to the question, *Quotus?* Which of the numbers? They all end in *us*, and are declined like *bōnus*; as, *primus*, first; *secundus*, second.

III. *Distributive numbers* are those which indicate an equal division among several persons or things, and answer to the question, *Quotēni?* How many apiece? as, *singūli*, one by one, or, one to each; *binī*, two by two, or two to each, etc. They are always used in the plural, and are declined like the plural of *bōnus*, except that they usually have *um* instead of *orum* in the genitive plural. Cf. § 105, R. 4.

The following table contains the ordinal and distributive numbers, and the corresponding numeral adverbs, which answer to the question, *Quoties? How many times?* —

<i>Ordinal.</i>	<i>Distributive.</i>	<i>Numeral Adverbs.</i>
1. Primus, <i>first.</i>	Singŭli, <i>one by one.</i>	Sēmel, <i>once.</i>
2. Sēcundus, <i>second.</i>	Bini, <i>two by two.</i>	Bis, <i>twice.</i>
3. Tertius, <i>third.</i>	Terni, <i>or trīni.</i>	Ter, <i>thrice.</i>
4. Quartus, <i>fourth.</i>	Quaterni.	Quāter, <i>four times.</i>
5. Quintus, <i>fifth.</i>	Quīni.	Quinquies.
6. Sextus, <i>sixth.</i>	Sēni.	Sexies.
7. Septimus, <i>seventh.</i>	Septēni.	Septies.
8. Octāvus, <i>eighth.</i>	Octōni.	Octies.
9. Nōnus, <i>ninth.</i>	Novēni.	Novies.
10. Dēcimus, <i>tenth, etc.</i>	Dēni.	Dēcies.
11. Undecimus.	Undēni.	Undecies.
12. Duodecimus.	Duodēni.	Duodecies.
13. Tertius decimus.	Terni dēni.	Terdecies.
14. Quartus decimus.	Quaterni dēni.	Quatuordecies.
15. Quintus decimus.	Quīni dēni.	Quindecies.
16. Sextus decimus.	Sēni dēni.	Sedecies.
17. Septimus decimus.	Septēni dēni.	Decies et septies.
18. Octāvus decimus.	Octōni dēni.	Duodevicies.
19. Nōnus decimus.	Novēni dēni.	Undevicies.
20. { Vicēsīmus, or } vigesīmus. }	Vicēni.	Vicies.
21. Vicesīmus primus.	Vicēni singŭli.	Semel et vices.
22. Vicesīmus secundus.	Vicēni bini, etc.	Bis et vices, etc.
30. { Tricesīmus, or } trigesīmus. }	Tricēni.	Tricies.
40. Quādrāgesīmus.	Quadrāgēni.	Quadrages.
50. Quinquagesīmus.	Quinquagēni.	Quinquagies.
60. Sexagesīmus.	Sexagēni.	Sexagies.
70. Septuagesīmus.	Septuagēni.	Septuagies.
80. Octogesīmus.	Octogēni.	Octogies.
90. Nonagesīmus.	Nonagēni.	Nonagies.
100. Centesīmus.	Centēni.	Centies.
200. Dūcentesīmus.	Ducēni.	Ducenties.
300. Trēcentesīmus.	Trecēni, or trecentēni.	{ Trecenties, or } tricenties. }
400. Quadrīngentesīmus.	{ Quadrīgēni, or } quadrīgēntēni. }	Quadrīngenties.
500. Quīngentesīmus.	Quīgēni.	Quīngenties.
600. Sexcentesīmus.	Sexcēni, or sexcentēni.	Sexcenties.
700. Septīngentesīmus.	Septīgēni.	Septīngenties.
800. Octīngentesīmus.	Octīgēni.	Octīngenties.
900. Nongentesīmus.	Nongēni.	Nonīngenties.
1000. Millesīmus.	{ Millēni, or } singŭla millia.	Millies.
2000. Bis millesīmus,	{ Bis millēni, or } bīna millia. }	Bis millies.

§ 120. 1. In the ordinals, instead of *primus*, *prior* is used, if only two are spoken of. *Alter* is often used for *secundus*.

2. (a.) From thirteenth to nineteenth, the smaller number is usually put first, without *et*; as, *tertius decimus*, but sometimes the greater with or without *et*; as, *decimus et tertius*, or *decimus tertius*.

(b.) Twenty-first, thirty-first, etc., are often expressed by *unus et vicesīmus*, *unus et tricesīmus*, etc., one and twentieth, etc.; and twenty-second, etc., by *duo*, or *alter et vicesīmus*, etc., in which *duo* is not changed. In the other compound numbers, the larger precedes without *et*, or the smaller with *et*; as, *vicesīmus quartus*, or *quartus et vicesīmus*.

(c.) For eighteenth, etc., to fifty-eighth, and for nineteenth, etc. to fifty-ninth, the subtractive forms, *duodevicesimus*, etc., and *undevicesimus*, etc., are often used.

3. In the distributives, eighteen, thirty-eight, forty-eight, and nineteen and twenty-nine, are often expressed by the subtractives *duodevicensi*, etc., *undevicensi*, etc.

4. (a.) Distributives are sometimes used by the poets for cardinal numbers; as, *binæ spicula*, two darts. Virg. So likewise in prose, with nouns that want the singular; as, *binæ nuptiæ*, two weddings.

(b.) The singular of some distributives is used in the sense of multiplicatives; as, *binus*, twofold. So *ternus*, *quinus*, *septēnus*.

5. In the numeral adverbs, for the intermediate numbers 21, 22, etc., the larger number also may be put first, either with or without *et*; and for twenty-eight times and thirty-nine times, *duodetrices* and *undequadrages* are found.

§ 121. To the preceding classes may be added the following:—

1. *Multiplicatives*, which denote how many fold, in answer to the question, *quotiuplex*? They all end in *plex*, and are declined like *fēlix*; as,

Simplex, *single*.

Quincuplex, *fivefold*.

Dūplex, *twofold, or double*.

Septemplex, *sevenfold*.

Triplex, *threefold*.

Decemplex, *tenfold*.

Quadrūplex, *fourfold*.

Centūplex, *a hundred fold*.

2. *Proportionals*, which denote how many times one thing is greater than another; as, *dūplus, a, um*, twice as great; so *trīplus, quadrūplus, octūplus, decūplus*. They are generally found only in the neuter.

3. *Temporals*, which denote time; as, *binus, a, um*, two years old; so *trīmus, quadrīmus*, etc. Also, *biennis*, lasting two years, biennial; so *quadrīennis, quinquennis*, etc. So also, *bimestris*, of two months' continuance; *trimestris*, etc., *biuus*, etc. To these may be added certain nouns, compounds of *annus* and *dies* with the cardinal numbers; as, *biennium, triennium*, etc., a period of two, etc. years; *biduum, triduum*, etc., a period of two, etc. days.

4. Adjectives in *arius*, derived from the distributives, and denoting of how many equal parts or units a thing consists; as, *binarius*, of two parts; *ternarius*, etc.

5. *Interrogatives*; as, *quot*, how many? *quōtus*, of what number? *quotēni*, how many each? *quoties*, how many times? Their correlatives are *tot, totidem*, so many; *aliquot*, some; which, with *quot*, are indeclinable; and the adverbs, *toties*, so often; *aliquoties*, several times.

6. *Fractional expressions*, which denote the parts of a thing. These are expressed in Latin by *pars* with *dimidia, tertia, quarta*, etc. Thus,  $\frac{1}{2}$ , *dimidia pars*;  $\frac{1}{3}$ , *tertia pars*, etc. When the number of parts into which a thing is divided exceeds by one only the parts mentioned, as in  $\frac{1}{3}$ ,  $\frac{1}{2}$ , etc. the fraction is expressed simply by *duas, tres*, etc. *partes*, denoting two out of three, three out of four, etc.

## COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

§ 122. 1. Adjectives may be divided into two classes—those which denote a *variable*, and those which denote an *invariable*, quality or limitation.

Thus, *bōnus*, good, *altus*, high, and *opācus*, dark, denote variable attributes; but *ceneus*, brazen, *triplex*, threefold, and *dīurnus*, daily, do not admit of different degrees in their signification.

2. The *comparison* of an adjective is the expression of its quality in different degrees.

3. There are three degrees of comparison—the *positive*, the *comparative*, and the *superlative*.

4. The positive simply denotes a quality, without reference to other degrees of the same quality; as, *altus*, high; *mitis*, mild.

5. The comparative denotes that a quality belongs to one of two objects, or sets of objects, in a greater degree than to the other; as, *altior*, higher; *mitior*, milder.

6. The superlative denotes that a quality belongs to one of several objects, or sets of objects, in a greater degree than to any of the rest; as, *altissimus*, highest; *mitissimus*, mildest.

REM. 1. Sometimes also the comparative denotes that a quality, at different times or in other circumstances, belongs in different degrees to the same object; as, *est sapientior quam fuit*, he is wiser than he was.

REM. 2. The comparative sometimes expresses the proportion between two qualities of the same object; as, *est doctior quam sapientior*, he is more learned than wise; that is, his learning is greater than his wisdom.

REM. 3. The comparative is also used elliptically instead of our 'too' or 'rather'; as, *vivit liberius*, he lives too freely, or, rather freely. Cf. § 256, R. 9.

REM. 4. The superlative, like the positive with *per*, (cf. § 127, 2), often indicates a high degree of a quality without direct comparison with the same quality in other objects; as, *amicus carissimus*, a very dear friend.

✱ § 123. 1. Degrees of a quality *inferior* to the positive may be denoted by the adverbs *minus*, less; *minime*, least, prefixed to the positive; as, *jucundus*, pleasant; *minus jucundus*, less pleasant; *minime jucundus*, least pleasant.

2. A small degree of a quality is indicated by *sub* prefixed to the positive; as, *amārus*, bitter; *subamārus*, bitterish, or, somewhat bitter.

3. An *equal* degree of a quality may be denoted by *tam* followed by *quam*, *æque* followed by *ac*, *sic* followed by *ut*, etc.; as, *hæbes, æque ac pēcus*, as stupid as a brute.

§ 124. 1. The comparative and superlative in Latin, as in English, are denoted either by peculiar terminations, or by certain adverbs prefixed to the positive. Cf. § 127, 1.

✱ 2. The terminational comparative ends in 

Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
<i>ior</i> ,	<i>ior</i> ,	<i>ius</i> ;

 the terminational superlative in *issimus*, *issima*, *issimum*.

✱ 3. These terminations are added to the root of the positive; as, *altus*, *altior*, *altissimus*; high, higher, highest.  
*mitis*, *mitior*, *mitissimus*; mild, milder, mildest.  
*felix*, (gen. *felīcis*), *felīcior*, *felīcissimus*; happy, happier, happiest.

In like manner compare

Arc'-tus, <i>strait</i> .	Cru-dē'-lis, <i>cruel</i> .	Cā'-pax, <i>capacious</i> .
Cā'-rus, <i>dear</i> .	Fer'-til-lis, <i>fertile</i> .	Clē'-mens, (gen. -tis) <i>merciful</i> .
Doc'-tus, <i>learned</i> .	Lē'-vis, <i>light</i> .	In'-ers, (gen. -tis), <i>sluggish</i> .

# IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

✱ § 125. 1. Adjectives in *er* form their superlative by adding *rīmus* to that termination; as, *ācer*, active; gen. *acris*; comparative, *acrior*; superlative, *acerrīmus*.

In like manner, *pauper*, *pauperrimus*. *Vetus* has a similar superlative, *veterinus*, from the old collateral form *veter*.

2. Six adjectives in *lis* form their superlative by adding *lissimus* to the root:—

Facilis,	facilior,	facillimus,	easy.
Difficilis,	difficilior,	difficillimus,	difficult.
Gracilis,	gracilior,	gracillimus,	slender.
Humilis,	humilior,	humillimus,	low.
Similis,	similior,	simillimus,	like.
Dissimilis,	dissimilior,	dissimillimus,	unlike.

*Imbecillus* or *imbecillius*, weak, has two forms, *imbecillissimus* and *imbecillimus*.

3. (a.) Five adjectives in *ficus* (from *facio*) derive their comparatives and superlatives from supposed forms in *ens*:—

Beneficus,	beneficentior,	beneficentissimus,	beneficent.
Honorificus,	honorificentior,	honorificentissimus,	honorable.
Magnificus,	magnificentior,	magnificentissimus,	splendid.
Munificus,	munificentior,	munificentissimus,	liberal.
Maleficus,	maleficentior,	maleficentissimus,	hurtful.

(b.) Adjectives in *dicens* and *völens* form their comparatives and superlatives regularly; but instead of those positives, forms in *dicus* and *völus* are more common; as,

*Maledicens* or *dicus*, *maledicentior*, *maledicentissimus*, *slanderosus*.

*Benevölens*, or *-völus*, *benevolentior*, *benevolentissimus*, *benevolent*.

4. These five have regular comparatives, but irregular superlatives:—

Dexter,	dexterior,	dextimus,	right.
Extëra, (fem.)	exterior,	extrëmus, or extimus,	outward.
Postëra, (fem.)	posterior,	postrëmus, or postumus,	hind.
Inferus,	inferior,	infimus, or imus,	below.
Supërus,	superior,	suprëmus, or summus,	above.

REMARK 1. The nominative singular of *postëra* does not occur in the masculine, and that of *extëra* wants good authority.

5. The following are very irregular in comparison:—

Bonus,	mellior,	optimus,	good,	better,	best.
Malus,	pëjor,	pessimus,	bad,	worse,	worst.
Magnus,	mājor,	maximus,	great,	greater,	greatest.
Parvus,	minor,	minimus,	little,	less,	least.
Multus,	—	plurimus,	much, more, most.		
Multa,	—	plurima,			
Multum,	plus,*	plurimum,			
Nëquam,	nequior,	nequissimus,	worthless, etc.		
Frūgi,	frugalior,	frugalissimus,	frugal, etc.		

REM. 2. All these, except *magnus*, whose regular forms are contracted, either form their comparatives and superlatives from obsolete adjectives, or take them from other words of similar signification.

## DEFECTIVE COMPARISON.

- § 126. 1. Seven adjectives want the positive:—

Citior, citissimus, nearer.	Prior, primus, former.
Deterior, deterrimus, worse.	Propior, proximus, nearer.
Interior, intimus, inner.	Uterior, ultimus, farther.
Ociior, ocissimus, swifter.	

## 2. Eight want the terminational comparative :—

Consultus, consultissimus, *skilful*.  
 Inclutus, inclutissimus, *renowned*.  
 Invictus, invictissimus, *invincible*.  
 Inventus, invitissimus, *unwilling*.  
 Meritus, meritissimus, (very rare,) *deserving*.

Par, parissimus, (very rare), *equal*.  
 Persuāsus, persuasissimus (neuter), *persuaded*.  
 Sacer, sacerissimus, *sacred*.

## 3. Eight have very rarely the terminational comparative :—

Apricus, apricissimus, *sunny*.  
 Bellus, bellissimus, *fine*.  
 Cōmis, comissimus, *courteous*.  
 Diversus, diversissimus, *different*.

Falsus, falsissimus, *false*.  
 Fidus, fidissimus, *faithful*.  
 Nōvus, novissimus, *new*.  
 Vētus, veterrimus, *old*.

## 4. The following want the terminational superlative :—

Adolescens, adolescentior, *young*.  
 Agrestis, agrestior, *rustic*.  
 Alācer, alacrior, *active*.  
 Ater, atrior, *black*.  
 Cæcus, cæcior, *blind*.  
 Dēs, desidior, *inactive*.  
 Diuturnus, diuturnior, *lasting*.  
 Infinitus, infinitior, *unlimited*.  
 Ingens, ingentior, *great*.  
 Jejūnus, jejunior, *fasting*.  
 Juvēnis, junior, *young*.  
 Licens, licentior, *unrestrained*.  
 Longinquus, longinquior, *distant*.  
 Optimus, optimior, *rich*.

Proclivis, proclivior, *sloping*.  
 Prōnus, pronior, *bending down*.  
 Proturvus, proturvior, *violent*.  
 — sequior, *worse*.  
 Propinquus, propinquior, *near*.  
 Salutāris, salutariior, *salutary*.  
 Sātis, sufficient; satius, *preferable*.  
 Sātur, saturior, *full*.  
 Sēnex, senior, *old*.  
 Silvestris, silvestrior, *woody*.  
 Sinister, sinisterior, *left*.  
 Supīnus, supinior, *lying on the back*.  
 Surdus, surdior, *deaf*.  
 Tēres, teretior, *round*.

REMARK 1. The superlative of *juvēnis* and *adolescens* is supplied by *minimus nātū*, youngest; and that of *sēnex* by *maximus nātū*, oldest. The comparatives *minor nātū* and *māior nātū* sometimes also occur.

REM. 2. Most adjectives also in *ilis*, *ilīs*, *ālis*, and *bilis*, have no terminational superlative.

5. Many variable adjectives have no terminational comparative or superlative. Such are,

(a.) Adjectives in *bundus*, *imus*, *inus* (except *divinus*), *orus*, most in *ivus*, and in *us* pure (except *-quus*.) Yet *arduus*, *assiduus*, *egregius*, *exiguus*, *industrius*, *perpetuus*, *pius*, *strenuus*, and *vacuus*, have sometimes a terminational comparison. So, dropping *i*, *noxior*, *innoxior*, *sobrior*.

(b.) The following—*almus*, *calvus*, *cānus*, *cicur*, *claudus*, *degēner*, *delirus*, *dispar*, *egenus*, *impar*, *impięer*, *invidus*, *lācer*, *mēmor*, *mirus*, *nūdus*, *præcox*, *præcūsus*, *rūdis*, *salvus*, *sospes*, *superstes*, *vulgāris*, and some others.

§ 127. 1. The comparative and superlative may also be formed by prefixing to the positive the adverbs *māgis*, more, and *maxime*, most; as, *idoneus*, fit; *magis idoneus*, *maxime idoneus*.

2. Various degrees of a quality above the positive are expressed by *admōdum*, *aliquanto*, *apprīme*, *bēne*, *imprimis*, *multum*, *ppido*, *perquam*, and *valde*, and also by *per* compounded with the positive; as, *difficilis*, difficult; *perdifficilis*, very difficult. To a few adjectives *præ* is in like manner prefixed; as, *prædūrus*, very hard.

3. The force of the comparative is increased by prefixing *etiam*, even, still, or yet; and that of both comparative and superlative, by



prefixing *longe* or *multo*, much, far; as, *longe nobilissimus*; *longe melior*, *iter multo facilius*; *multo maxima pars*.

4. *Vel*, 'even', and *quam*, with or without *possum*, 'as much as possible', before the superlative, render it more emphatic; as, *Cicero vel optime oratorum Romanorum*. *Quam maximum potest militum numerum colligit*; *quam doctissimus*, extremely learned; *quam celerrime*, as speedily as possible.

NOTE 1. Instead of *quam* with *possum*, *quantus* is sometimes used, in the same case as the superlative; as, *Quantis maximis potuit itineribus contendit*.

NOTE 2. *Unus*, with or without *omnium*, is sometimes added to superlatives to increase their force; as, *Hoc ego uno omnium plurimum uitor*. Cic. *Urbem unam mihi amicissimam declinavi*, Id. It is used in like manner with *excello*.

5. All adjectives whose signification admits of different degrees, if they have no terminational comparison, may be compared by means of adverbs.

6. Instead of the comparative and superlative degrees, the positive with the prepositions *prae*, *ante*, *præter*, or *supra*, is sometimes used; as, *præ nobis beatius*, happier than we. Cic. *Ante alias pulchritudine insignis*, most beautiful. Liv. Sometimes the preposition is used in connection with the superlative; as, *Ante alios pulcherrimus omnes*. Virg.

7. Among adjectives which denote an invariable quality or limitation, and which, therefore, cannot be compared, are those denoting matter, time, number, possession, country, part, interrogation; also compounds of *jugum*, *somnus*, *gæro*, and *færo*, and many others.

## DERIVATION OF ADJECTIVES.

§ 128. Derivative adjectives are formed chiefly from nouns, from other adjectives, and from verbs.

I. Those derived from nouns and adjectives are called *denominatives*. The following are the principal classes:—

1. (a.) The termination *ëus*, added to the root, denotes the material of which a thing is made, and sometimes similarity; as, *aureus*, golden; *argenteus*, of silver; *ligneus*, wooden; *vitreus*, of glass; *virgineus*, maidenly; from *aurum*, *argentum*, etc. See § 2, Rem. 3.

(b.) Some adjectives of this kind have a double form in *neus* and *nus*; as, *eburneus* and *eburnus*, of ivory.

(c.) The termination *inus* has the same meaning; as, *adamantinus*, of adamant; *cedrinus*, of cedar; from *adamas* and *cedrus*. So, also, *ënus*; as, *terrënus*, of earth, from *terra*.

(d.) The termination *ëus* or *ius* (Greek *uoc*), and also *icus*, belong to adjectives formed from Greek names of men, and denote 'of' or 'pertaining to'; as, *Achilleus*, *Sophocleus*, *Aristotelius*, *Platonius*; *Pythagoreus* and *Pythagoricus*; *Homerius* and *Homericus*. Names in *ias* make adjectives in *iëus*; as, *Archias*, *Archieus*. Sometimes, though rarely in the purest Latin authors, adjectives in *ëus* or *ius* are formed from Latin names; as, *Marcellia* or *-ëa*, a festival in honor of the Marcelli.

2. (a.) The terminations *alis*, *aris*, *arius*, *ilis*, *atilis*, *icius*, *icus*, *ius*, *ëus*, and *inus*, denote 'belonging', 'pertaining', or 'relating to'; as, *capitalis*, relating to the life; from *caput*.

So *comitális*, *regális*; *Apollināris*, *consulāris*, *populāris*; *argentārius*; *civilis*, *hostilis*, *juvenilis*; *aquatilis*, *fluviatilis*; *tribunicus*, *phricticus*; *bellicus*, *civicus*, *Germanicus*; *accusatorius*, *imperatorius*, *regius*; *Hectorēus*; *caninus*, *equinus*, *ferinus*, *masculinus*; from *comitia*, *rex*, *Apollo*, *consul*, *populus*, *argentum*, *civis*, etc.

(b.) The termination *ilis* sometimes expresses character; as, *hostilis*, hostile; *puerilis*, boyish; from *hostis* and *puer*.

(c.) The termination *inus* belongs especially to derivatives from names of animals, and other living beings.

3. The termination *arius*, as a substantive, scil. *fāber*, etc., generally denotes profession or occupation; as, *argentarius*, a silversmith; from *argentum*;—*coriarius*, *statuarius*; from *corium* and *statua*. When added to numeral adjectives, it denotes how many equal parts a thing contains. See § 121, 4.

4. The terminations *osus* and *lentus* denote abundance, fullness; as, *animosus*, full of courage; *fraudentus*, given to fraud; from *animus* and *fraus*. So *lapideus*, *vinosus*, *portuosus*, *turbulentus*, *sanguinolentus*, *violentus*. Before *lentus*, a connecting vowel is inserted, which is commonly *u*, but sometimes *o*.

NOTE.—Adjectives of this class are called *amplificatives*. See § 104, 12.

5. From adjectives are formed *diminutives* in *ulus*, *cūlus*, etc., in the same manner as from nouns; as, *dulcicūlus*, sweetish; from *dulcis*. So *lentulus*, *micellus*, *parvulus*, etc. See § 100, 8, and § 104, 11. Diminutives are sometimes formed from comparatives; as, *majuscūlus*, *duriuscūlus*, somewhat great, somewhat hard, etc. Double diminutives are formed from *paucus*, viz *paucillus* and *paucillulus*; and from *bonus*, (*bēnus*) are formed *bellus* and *bellulus*.

6. (a.) From the names of places, and especially of towns, are derived *patrial* adjectives in *ensis*, *inus*, *as*, and *ānus*, denoting of or belonging to such places.

(b.) Thus from *Cannæ* is formed *Cannensis*; from *Sulmo*, *Sulmonensis*. In like manner, from *castra* and *circus* come *castrensis*, *circensis*. But *Athēnae* makes *Athenensis*; and some Greek towns in *ia* and *ea* drop *i* and *e* in their adjectives; as, *Antiochensis*, *Nicomedensis*.

(c.) Those in *inus* are formed from names of places ending in *ia* and *ium*; as, *Aricia*, *Arictānus*; *Caudium*, *Caudinus*; *Capitolium*, *Capitolinus*; *Latium*, *Latīnus*. Some names of towns, of Greek origin, with other terminations, also form adjectives in *inus*; as, *Tarentum*, *Tarentinus*.

(d.) Most of those in *as* are formed from nouns in *um*; some from nouns in *a*; as, *Arpinum*, *Arpinas*; *Cypēna*, *Capēnas*.

(e.) Those in *ānus* are formed from names of towns of the first declension, or from certain common nouns; as, *Alba*, *Albānus*; *Rōma*, *Romānus*; *Cūma*, *Cumānus*; *Thebae*, *Thebānus*; also from some of the second declension; as, *Tusculum*, *Tusculānus*; *Fundī*, *Fundānus*;—*fons*, *fontānus*; *mons*, *montānus*; *urbs*, *urbānus*; *oppidum*, *oppidānus*.

(f.) Adjectives with the terminations *ānus*, *iānus*, and *inus* are formed from names of men; as, *Sulla*, *Sullānus*; *Tullius*, *Tullīānus*; *Jugurtha*, *Jugurthinus*.

(g.) Greek names of towns in *pōlis* form *patrial* adjectives in *politanus*; as, *Neapōlis*, *Neapolitānus*.

(h.) Greek names of towns generally form *patrials* in *tus*; as, *Rhodus*, *Rhodius*; *Lacedaemon*, *Lacedaemonius*;—but those in *a* form them in *aeus*; as, *Larissa*, *Larissaeus*; *Smyrna*, *Smyrnaeus*.

(i.) From many *patrials*; as, *Britannus*, *Gallus*, *Afer*, *Persa*, *Arabs*, etc., adjectives are formed in *teus* and *ius*; as, *Britannicus*, *Gallicus*, *Africus*, *Persicus*, *Arabicus*; so *Syrus*, *Syrius*; *Thrax*, *Thracius*.

7. A large class of derivative adjectives, though formed from nouns, have the terminations of perfect participles. They generally signify *wearing* or *furnished with*; as,

*alātus*, winged; *barbātus*, bearded; *galeātus*, helmeted; *auritus*, long-eared; *turritus*, turreted; *cornātus*, horned; from *ala*, *barba*, *galea*, *auris*, etc.

8. The termination *angus*, annexed to the root of an adjective or participle in *us*, expresses a resemblance to the quality denoted by the primitive; as, *supervacaneus*, of a superfluous nature.

✶ § 129. II. Adjectives derived from verbs are called *verbal* adjectives. Such are the following classes:—

1. The termination *bundus*, added to the first root of the verb, with a connecting vowel, which is commonly that of the verb, (see § 150, 5,) has the general meaning of the present participle; as,

*errābundus*, *moribundus*, from *erro*, *morior*, equivalent to *errans*, *moriens*.

(a.) In many the meaning is somewhat strengthened; as, *gratulābundus*, full of congratulations; *lacrimābundus*, weeping profusely.

(b.) Most verbals in *bundus* are from verbs of the first conjugation, a few from those of the third, and but one from the second and fourth respectively, viz. *puclbundus* and *lascivibundus*.

(c.) Some verbal adjectives in *cundus* have a similar sense; as, *rubicundus*, *verecundus*, from *rubeo* and *vereor*.

2. The termination *idus*, added to the root, especially of neuter verbs, denotes the quality or state expressed by the verb; as,

*algidus*, cold; *calidus*, warm; *madidus*, moist; *rapidus*, rapid; from *algeo*, *caleo*, *madeo*, *rapio*.

3. The termination *uus*, also, denotes the quality expressed by the verb; and adjectives in *uus* derived from active verbs take a passive meaning; as,

*congruus*, agreeing, from *congruo*; so, *assiduus*, *nocuus*, *innocuus*:—*irriguus*, well watered; *conspiciuus*, visible; from *irrigo*, *conspicio*.

4. (a.) The terminations *ilis* and *bilis*, added to the root of a verb, with its connecting vowel, denote passively, capability, or desert; as,

*amabilis*, worthy to be loved; *credibilis*, deserving credit; *placabilis*, easy to be appeased; *agilis*, active; *ductilis*, ductile; from *amo*, *credo*, *placo*; *ago*, *duco*. They are rarely active; as, *horribilis*, *terribilis*, *fertilis*; *aër per cuncta meabilis*. Plin.

(b.) In adjectives of these forms, derived from verbs of the third conjugation, the connecting vowel is *t*; sometimes, also, in those from verbs of the second conjugation, in these and other forms, *t* is used instead of *e*; as, *horribilis*, *terribilis*, from *horreo* and *terreo*.

(c.) These terminations, with the connecting vowel, are sometimes added to the third root; as, *flexilis*, *flexibilis*; *coctilis*, *coctibilis*, from *flecto* (*flex-*), etc.

5. The termination *icius* or *itius*, added to the third root of the verb, has a passive sense; as, *fictitius*, feigned; *conductitius*, to be hired; from *finco* (*fict-*), etc.

6. The termination *ax*, added to the root of a verb, denotes an inclination, often one that is faulty; as,

*audax*, audacious; *loquax*, talkative; *rapax* rapacious; from *audeo*, *loquor*, *rapio*.

7. The termination *ivus*, annexed to the third root of a verb, denotes fitness or ability to produce the action expressed by the verb; as, *disjunctivus*, disjunctive, from *disjungo*.

8. Verbals in *tor* and *trix*, (see § 102, 6, (a.)), are often used as adjectives, especially in poetry; as, *victor exercitus*, *victrices littorē*. In the plural they become adjectives of three terminations; as, *victōres*, *victrices*, *victricia*. So also *hospes*, especially by the later poets, is used as an adjective, having *hospita* in the feminine singular and also in the neuter plural.

§ 130. III. Adjectives derived from participles, and retaining their form, are called *participial adjectives*; as, *amans*, fond of; *doctus*, learned.

IV. Some adjectives are derived from adverbs; as, *crastinus*, of to-morrow; *hodiernus*, of this day; from *cras* and *hodie*.

V. Some adjectives are derived from prepositions; as, *contrarius*, contrary, from *contra*; *posterus*, subsequent, from *post*.

## COMPOSITION OF ADJECTIVES.

§ 131. Compound adjectives are formed variously:—

1. Of two nouns; as, *capripes*, goat-footed—of *caper* and *pes*; *ignicollis*, having fiery hair—of *ignis* and *collis*.

NOTE.—See, respecting the connecting short *i*, in case the first part of the compound is a noun or an adjective, § 103, Rem. 1.

2. Of a noun and an adjective; as, *noctivagus*, wandering in the night—of *nox* and *vagus*. So *lucifugus*, shunning the light—of *lux* and *fugax*.

3. Of a noun and a verb; as, *corniger*, bearing horns—of *cornu* and *gero*; *letifer*, bringing death—of *letum* and *fero*. So *carnivorus*, *causidicus*, *ignivomus*, *lucifugus*, *particeps*.

4. Of an adjective and a noun; as, *aequus*, of the same age—of *aequus* and *ævum*; *celeripes*, swift-footed—of *celer* and *pes*. So *centimanus*, *decennis*, *magnanimus*, *misericors*, *unanimis*.

5. Of two adjectives; as, *centumgeminus*, a hundred-fold; *multicollis*, having many cavities; *quintusdecimus*, the fifteenth.

6. Of an adjective and a verb; as, *breviloquens*, speaking briefly—of *brevis* and *loquor*; *magnificus*, magnificent—of *magnus* and *facio*.

7. Of an adjective and a termination; as, *qualicumque*, *quocumque*, *uterque*.

8. Of an adverb and a noun; as, *bicorpor*, two-bodied—of *bis* and *corpus*.

9. Of an adverb and an adjective; as, *maledicax*, slanderous—of *male* and *dīcax*. So *antemeridianus*, before mid-day.

10. Of an adverb and a verb; as, *beneficus*, beneficent—of *bene* and *facio*; *malevolus*, malevolent—of *male* and *volo*.

11. Of a preposition and a noun; as, *amens*, mad—of *a* and *mens*. So *consors*, *decolor*, *deformis*, *implumis*, *inermis*.

12. Of a preposition and an adjective; as, *concavus*, concave; *infidus*, unfaithful. So *improvidus*, *periculus*, *prædices*, *eubalidus*.

13. Of a preposition and a verb; as, *continuus*, uninterrupted—of *con* and *teneo*; *insciens*, ignorant—of *in* and *scio*. So *præcipuus*, *promiscuus*, *subtilis*, *superstes*.

REMARK. When the former part is a preposition, its final consonant is sometimes changed, to adapt it to the consonant which follows it; as, *imprudens*—of *in* and *prædens*. See § 136; and cf. § 103, R. 2.

## PRONOUNS.

§ 132. 1. A pronoun is a word which supplies the place of a noun.

2. There are eighteen simple pronouns:—

Ego, <i>I</i> .	Hic, <i>this, the latter</i> .	Suus, <i>his, hers, its, etc.</i>
Tu, <i>thou</i> .	Is, <i>that or he</i> .	Cujus? <i>whose?</i>
Sui, <i>of himself, etc.</i>	Quis? <i>who?</i>	Noster, <i>our</i> .
Ille, <i>that, the former</i> .	Qui, <i>who</i> .	Vester, <i>your</i> .
Ipse, <i>himself</i> .	Meus, <i>my</i> .	Nostras, <i>of our country</i> .
Iste, <i>that, that of yours</i> .	Tuus, <i>thy</i> .	Cujas? <i>of what country?</i>

3. *Ego*, *tu*, and *sui*, and commonly also *quis* and its compounds, are substantives: the other pronouns, both simple and compound, are adjectives, but are often by ellipsis used as substantives.

4. *Ego*, *tu*, and *sui* are commonly called *personal pronouns*. They are a species of appellatives (§ 26, 3,) of general application. *Ego* is used by a speaker to designate himself; *tu*, to designate the person whom he addresses. Hence *ego* is of the first person, *tu* of the second. (§ 35, 2.) *Sui* is of the third person, and has always a reflexive signification, referring to the subject of the sentence. The oblique cases of *ego* and *tu* are also used reflexively, when the subject of the proposition is of the first or second person.

5. The remaining pronouns, except *quis* and its compounds, are adjectives, as they serve to limit the meaning of substantives; and they are pronouns, because, like substantive pronouns, they may designate any object in certain situations or circumstances.

6. *Meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, *noster*, *vester*, and *cujus*, have the same extent of signification as the pronouns from which they are derived, and are equivalent to the genitive cases of their primitives.

7. Pronouns, like substantives and adjectives, are declined; but most of them want the vocative. *Sui*, from the nature of its signification, wants also the nominative in both numbers.

8. The substantive pronouns take the gender of the objects which they denote. The adjective pronouns, like adjectives, have three genders.

## SUBSTANTIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 133. The substantive pronouns are thus declined:—

*Singular.*

N. ě-ĝǫ, <i>I</i> .	tū, <i>thou</i> .	
G. me'-ī, <i>of me</i> .	tu'-ī, <i>of thee</i> .	{ su'-ī, <i>of himself, her-</i>
D. mī'-hī, <i>to me</i> .	tib'-ī,* <i>to thee</i> .	self, <i>itself</i> .
Ac. mē, <i>me</i> .	tē, <i>thee</i> .	sib'-ī,* <i>to himself, etc.</i>
V. _____	tū, <i>O thou</i> ,	sē, <i>himself, etc.</i>
Ab. mē, <i>with me</i> .	tē, <i>with thee</i> .	sē, <i>with himself, etc.</i>

\* See § 19, 1, Exc.

## Plural.

N.	nōs, <i>we.</i>	vōs, <i>ye or you.</i>	
G.	{ nos'-trum or nos'-trī, } <i>of us.</i>	{ ves'-trum or ves'-trī, } <i>of you.</i>	su'-ī, <i>of themselves.</i>
D.	nō'-bis, <i>to us.</i>	vō'-bis, <i>to you.</i>	sīb'-i, <i>to themselves.</i>
Ac.	nōs, <i>us.</i>	vōs, <i>you.</i>	sē, <i>themselves.</i>
V.		vōs, <i>O ye or you.</i>	
Ab.	nō'-bis, <i>with us.</i>	vō'-bis, <i>with you.</i>	sē, <i>with themselves.</i>

REMARK 1. *Mē* and *mī* are ancient forms for *mīhi*. So *min'* for *mīhine*, Pers. 1, 2.

REM. 2. The syllable *met* is sometimes annexed to the substantive pronouns, in an intensive sense, either with or without *ipse*; as, *egōmet*, I myself; *mīhi-met ipsi*, for myself. It is not annexed, however, to the genitives plural, nor to *tu* in the nominative or vocative. In these cases of *tu*, *tūē* or *tūēmet* is used. In the accusative and ablative the reduplicated forms *mēmē* and *tētē* in the singular, and *sēsē* in both numbers, are employed intensively. *Mepte*, intensive, *med* and *ted*, for *me* and *te*, and *mis* and *tis* for *mei* and *tui*, occur in the comic writers.

3. *Nostrum* and *vestrum* are contracted from *nostrōrūm*, *nostrārūm*, and *vestrōrūm*, *vestrārūm*. Respecting the difference in the use of *nostrum* and *nostrī*, *vestrum* and *vestrī*, see § 212, R. 2, N. 2.

4. The preposition *cum* is affixed to the ablative of these pronouns in both numbers; as, *mēcum*, *nobiscum*, etc. Cf. § 136, R. 1.

## ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 134. Adjective pronouns may be divided into the following classes:—*demonstrative*, *intensive*, *relative*, *interrogative*, *indefinite*, *possessive*, and *patrial*.

NOTE. Some pronouns belong to two of these classes.

## DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

Demonstrative pronouns are such as specify what object is meant.

They are *ille*, *iste*, *hic*, and *is*, and their compounds, and are thus declined:—

Singular.			Plural.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. il'-lē,	il'-lā,	il'-lūd,	il'-lī,	il'-lā,	il'-lā,
G. il'-lī-us,*	il'-lī-us,	il'-lī-us,	il'-lō'-rum,	il'-lā'-rum,	il'-lō'-rum,
D. il'-lī,	il'-lī,	il'-lī,	il'-lis,	il'-lis,	il'-lis,
Ac. il'-lum,	il'-lam,	il'-lūd,	il'-lōs,	il'-lās,	il'-lā,
V. il'-lē,	il'-lā,	il'-lūd,	il'-lī,	il'-lā,	il'-lā,
Ab. il'-lō.	il'-lā.	il'-lō.	il'-lis.	il'-lis.	il'-lis.

\* See § 15, 1.

*Iste* is declined like *ille*.

Singular.			Plural.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. hic,	hæc,	hœc,	hi,	hæ,	hæc,
G. hū-jūs,	hū-jūs,	hū-jūs,	hō-rum,	hā-rum,	hō-rum,
D. huic*,	huic,	huic,	his,	his,	his,
Ac. hunc,	hanc,	hœc,	hōs,	hās,	hæc,
V. hfc,	hæc,	hœc,	hi,	hæ,	hæc,
Ab. hœc.	hæc.	hœc.	his.	his.	his.

Singular.			Plural.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. is,	e'-ā,	īd,	ī'-ī,	e'-æ,	e'-ā,
G. ē'-jūs,	ē'-jūs,	ē'-jūs,	e-ō'-rum,	e-ā'-rum,	e-ō'-rum,
D. e'-i,	e'-i,	e'-i,	ī'-is or e'-is,	ī'-is or e'-is,	ī'-is or e'-is,
Ac. e'-um,	e'-am,	īd,	e'-ōs,	e'-ās,	e'-ā,
V. —	—	—	—	—	—
Ab. e'-ō.	e'-ā.	e'-ō.	ī'-is or e'-is.	ī'-is or e'-is.	ī'-is or e'-is.

REMARK 1. Instead of *ille*, *ollus* was anciently used; whence *olli* masc. plur. in Virgil. *Illus* fem., for *illius* and *illi*, is found in Lucretius and Cato, as also in Cato, *hæ* for *huic* fem.; *hice* for *hi*, and *hæc* for *hæ* in Plautus and Terence. *Im* for *eum*, is found in the Twelve Tables; *eii* for *ei*, and *ibus* and *ibus* for *is*, in Plautus; *ea*, fem., for *ei*, and *eibus* for *tis*, in Cato.

REM. 2. From *ecce*, lo! with *ille*, *iste*, and *is*, are formed, in colloquial language, nom., *ecce*; *ecceilla*, *eccillud*; acc. sing., *ecceum*, *eccam*; *eccillum* (by syncope *ellum*), *eccillam*; *eccistam*; acc. plur., *eccos*, *ecce*.

REM. 3. *Istic* and *illic* are compounded of *iste* *hic*, and *ille* *hic*; or, as some say, of *iste* *ce*, and *ille* *ce*. The former sometimes retains the aspirate, as *isthic*. They are more emphatic than *ille* and *iste*.

*Istic* is thus declined:—

Singular.			Plural.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. is'-tic,	is'-tæc,	is'-tœc, or is'-tūc,	N. —	is'-tæc,	—
Ac. is'-tunc,	is'-tanc,	is'-tœc, or is'-tūc,	Ac. —	—	is'-tæc.
Ab. is'-tœc.	is'-tæc.	is'-tœc.			

*Illic* is declined in the same manner.

REM. 4. *Ce*, intensive, is sometimes added to the several cases of *hic*, and rarely to some cases of the other demonstrative pronouns; as, *hujusce*, *huncce*, *hancce*, *hocce*, *hice*, *hæce* or *hæc*, *horunc*, *harunce*, *harunce*, or *harunc*, *hosce*, *hasce*, *hisce*; *illiusce*, *illæce*, *illosce*, *illasce*, *illisce*; *istæce*, *istisce*; *ejusce*, *iisce*. When *ne*, interrogative, is also annexed, *ce* becomes *ci*; as, *hæccine*, *hoscine*, *hiscine*; *istuccine*, *istaccine*, *istoscine*; *illiccine*, *illanccine*.

REM. 5. *Mōdi*, the genitive of *mōdus*, annexed to the genitive singular of demonstrative and relative pronouns, imparts to them the signification of adjectives of quality; as, *hujusmōdi* or *hujuscemōdi*, like *talis*, of this sort, such; *illiusmōdi* and *istiusmōdi*, of that sort; *cujusmōdi*, of what sort, like *qualis*; *cu-*

\* See § 9, 5.

*juscemōdī, cujusquemōdī, cujusedūcumque*, of what kind soever; *cujusedūmōdī*, of some kind. So also *istemōdī, cuimōdī* and *cuiusmōdī*, instead of *istiusmōdī, cujusedūmōdī*, etc.

REM. 6. The suffix *dem* is annexed to *is*, forming *idem*, "the same," which is thus declined:—

			Singular.			
	M.		F.		N.	
N.	i'-dem,		e'-ā-dem,		i'-dem,	
G.	e-o-run'-dem,		e-jus'-dem,		e-jus'-dem,	
D.	e-i'-dem,		e-i'-dem,		e-i'-dem,	
Ac.	e-un'-dem,		e-an'-dem,		i'-dem,	
V.						
Ab.	e-ō'-dem.		e-ā'-dem.		e-ō'-dem.	
			Plural.			
	M.		F.		N.	
N.	i-i'-dem,		e-ā'-dem,		e'-ā-dem,	
G.	e-o-run'-dem,		e-a-run'-dem,		e-o-run'-dem,	
D.	e-is'-dem, or i-is'-dem,		e-is'-dem, or i-is'-dem,		e-is'-dem, or i-is'-dem,	
Ac.	e-os'-dem,		e-as'-dem,		e'-ā-dem,	
V.						
Ab.	e-is'-dem, or i-is'-dem.		e-is'-dem, or i-is'-dem.		e-is'-dem, or i-is'-dem.	

NOTE 1. In compound pronouns, *m* before *d* is changed into *n*; as, *eundem*, *eorundem*, etc.

NOTE 2. In Sallust *isdem*, and in Palladius *hisdem* occur for *iisdem*; and Ennius in Cicero has *eademmet* for *eadem*.

## INTENSIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 135. Intensive pronouns are such as serve to render an object emphatic.

To this class belong *ipse*, and the intensive compounds already mentioned. See §§ 133, R. 2, and 134, R. 4.

*Ipsē* is compounded of *is* and the suffix *pse*, and is thus declined:—

			Singular.			
	M.		F.	N.		Plural.
	M.		F.	N.		
N.	ip'-sē,		ip'-sā,	ip'-sum,		ip'-sī,
G.	ip'-sī-us,		ip'-sī-us,	ip'-sī-us,		ip'-sō-rum,
D.	ip'-sī,		ip'-sī,	ip'-sī,		ip'-sīs,
Ac.	ip'-sum,		ip'-sam,	ip'-sum,		ip'-sōs,
V.	ip'-sē,		ip'-sā,	ip'-sum,		ip'-sī,
Ab.	ip'-sō.		ip'-sā.	ip'-sō.		ip'-sīs.

REMARK 1. *Ipsē* is commonly subjoined to nouns or pronouns; as, *Jupiter ipse, tu ipse*, Jupiter himself, etc.; and hence is sometimes called the *adjunctive* pronoun.

REM. 2. A nominative *ipsus*, occurs in early writers, and a superlative *ipsissimus*, his very self, is found in Plautus.

REM. 3. In old writers the *is* of *ipse* is declined, while *pse* remains undeclined; as, *capse*, (nom. and abl.), *campse*, and *ecpse*, instead of *ipsa, ipsam*, and *ipso*. So also *reapse*, . e. *re capse*, "in fact."



## RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 136. Relative pronouns are such as relate to a preceding noun or pronoun.

1. They are *qui*, who, and the compounds *quicumque* and *quisquis*, whoever. The latter are called *general* relatives.

2. In a general sense, the demonstrative pronouns are often relatives; but the name is commonly appropriated to those above specified. They serve to introduce a proposition, limiting or explaining a preceding noun or pronoun, to which they relate, and which is called the *antecedent*.

*Qui* is thus declined:—

Singular.			Plural.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. <i>qui</i> ,	<i>quæ</i> ,	<i>quod</i> ,	<i>qui</i> ,	<i>quæ</i> ,	<i>quæ</i> ,
G. <i>cū</i> - <i>jūs</i> ,	<i>cū</i> - <i>jūs</i> ,	<i>cū</i> - <i>jūs</i> ,	<i>quō</i> - <i>rum</i> ,	<i>quā</i> - <i>rum</i> ,	<i>quō</i> - <i>rum</i> ,
D. <i>cui</i> ,*	<i>cui</i> ,	<i>cui</i> ,	<i>quī</i> - <i>būs</i> ,	<i>quī</i> - <i>būs</i> ,	<i>quī</i> - <i>būs</i> ,
Ac. <i>quem</i> ,	<i>quam</i> ,	<i>quod</i> ,	<i>quōs</i> ,	<i>quās</i> ,	<i>quæ</i> ,
V. —	—	—	—	—	—
Ab. <i>quō</i> .	<i>quā</i> .	<i>quō</i> .	<i>quī</i> - <i>būs</i> .	<i>quī</i> - <i>būs</i> .	<i>quī</i> - <i>būs</i> .

REMARK 1. *Qui* is sometimes used for the ablative singular, in all genders and rarely also for the ablative plural. To the ablatives *quo*, *qua*, *qui*, and *quibus*, *cum* is commonly annexed, cf. § 138, 4. Cicero uses *quicum* for *quodcum*, when an indefinite person is meant.

REM. 2. *Queis* (monosyllabic, § 9, R. 1), and *quis* are sometimes used in the dative and ablative plural for *quibus*. *Cujus* and *cui* were anciently written *quijus* and *quoi*: and, instead of the genitive *cujus*, a relative adjective *cujus*, a, um, very rarely occurs.

3. *Quicumque*, (or *quicunque*), is declined like *qui*.

REM. 3. *Qui* is sometimes separated from *cumque* by the interposition of one or more words; as, *quæ mæ cumque vocant terras*. Virg. A similar separation sometimes occurs in the other compounds of *cumque*.

4. *Quisquis* is thus declined:—

Singular.			Plural.
M.	F.	N.	M.
N. <i>quis</i> - <i>quis</i> ,	<i>quis</i> - <i>quis</i> ,†	<i>quid</i> - <i>quid</i> ,	N. <i>quī</i> - <i>quī</i> ,
Ac. <i>quem</i> - <i>quem</i> ,		<i>quid</i> - <i>quid</i> ,	D. <i>quī</i> - <i>būs</i> - <i>quī</i> - <i>būs</i> ,
Ab. <i>quō</i> - <i>quō</i> .	<i>quā</i> - <i>quā</i> .	<i>quō</i> - <i>quō</i> .	

REM. 4. *Quicquid* is sometimes used for *quidquid*. *Quisquis* for *quisquis* occurs in Plautus; and *quidquid* is used adjectively in Cato R. R. 48.

\* See § 9, 5; and cf. § 306, (1.)

† Cf. § 137, R. (1.)

## INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 137. Interrogative pronouns are such as serve to inquire which of a number of objects is intended.

They are

Quis?	} <i>who? what?</i>	Ecquis?	} <i>is any one?</i>	Cūjus? <i>whose?</i>
Quisnam?		Ecquisnam?		Cūjas? <i>of what</i>
Qui?		Numquis?		<i>country?</i>
Quinam?		Numquisnam,		

1. *Quis* is commonly used substantively; *qui*, adjectively. The interrogative *qui* is declined like *qui* the relative.

*Quis* is thus declined:—

Singular.			Plural.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. quis, -	quæ,	quid,	qui,	quæ,	quæ,
G. cū-jūs,	cū-jūs,	cū-jūs,	quō-rum,	quā-rum,	quō-rum,
D. cui,	cui,	cui,	quī-būs,	quī-būs,	quī-būs,
Ac. quem,	quam,	quid,	quōs,	quās,	quæ,
V. —	—	—	—	—	—
Ab. quō.	quā.	quō.	quī-būs.	quī-būs.	quī-būs.

REMARK (1.) *Quis* is sometimes used by comic writers in the feminine, and even in the neuter. *Quisnam*, *quisque* and *quisquam* also occur as feminine.

REM. (2.) *Qui* is used for the ablative of *quis* in all genders, as it is for that of the relative *qui*. Cf. § 136, R. 1.

REM. (3.) *Quis* and *qui* have sometimes the signification of the indefinite pronoun *aliquis* (some one, any one), especially after the conjunctions *ec* (for *en*), *si*, *ne*, *neu*, *nisi*, *num*; and after relatives, as *quo*, *quanto*, etc. Sometimes *quis* and *qui* are used in the sense of *quālis*? what sort?

2. The compounds *quisnam* and *quinam* have respectively the signification and declension of the interrogatives *quis* and *qui*. In the poets *nam* sometimes stands before *quis*. Virg. G. 4, 445.

3. *Ecquis* and *numquis* are declined and used like *quis*; but are sometimes adjectives. Virg. Ecl. 10, 28: Cic. Att. 13, 8.

REM. (4.) *Ecqua* is sometimes found in the nominative singular feminine; and the neuter plural of *numquis* is *numqua*.

REM. (5.) *Ecqui* and *numqui* also occur, declined like the interrogative *qui*, and, like that, used adjectively.

4. *Ecquisnam* and *numquisnam* are declined like *ecquis*; but are found only in the singular;—the former in the nominative in all genders, and in the ablative masculine; the latter in the nominative masculine and accusative neuter. In the nominative feminine and in the ablative, the former is used adjectively.

5. The interrogative *cujus* is also defective:—

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>F.</i>
<i>N.</i> cū'-jūs,	cū'-jā,	cū'-jum,	<i>N.</i> cū'-jās,
<i>Ac.</i> cū'-jum,	cū'-jam,	_____	<i>Ac.</i> cū'-jās.
<i>Ab.</i> _____	cū'-jā.	_____	

6. *Cūjās* is declined like an adjective of one termination; *cūjas*, *cujātis*. See § 139, 4.

NOTE. The interrogative pronouns are used not only in direct questions but in such dependent clauses also, as contain only an indirect question; as, e. g. in the direct question, *quis est?* who is he? in the indirect, *nescio quis sit*, I know not who he is. *Qui*, in this sense, is found for *quis*; as, *qui sit apertū*, he discloses who he is. Cf. § 265, N.

### INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

§ 138. Indefinite pronouns are such as denote an object in a general manner, without indicating a particular individual. They are

<i>Aliquis, some one.</i>	<i>Quisquam, any one.</i>	<i>Quidam, a certain one.</i>
<i>Siquis, if any.</i>	<i>Quispiam, some one.</i>	<i>Quilibet, } any one you</i>
<i>Nēquis, lest any.</i>	<i>Unusquisque, each.</i>	<i>Quivis, } please.</i>
<i>Quisque, every one.</i>	<i>Alloquiam, any, some.</i>	<i>Quis and qui, § 187, R. (8.)</i>

NOTE. *Siquis* and *nēquis* are commonly written separately, *si quis* and *nē quis*: so also *unus quisque*.

1. *Aliquis* is thus declined:—

<i>Singular.</i>		
	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>
<i>N.</i>	al'-i-quis,	al'-i-qua,
<i>G.</i>	al-i-cū'-jus,	al-i-cū'-jus,
<i>D.</i>	al'-i-cui,	al'-i-cui,
<i>Ac.</i>	al'-i-quem,	al'-i-quam,
<i>V.</i>	_____	_____
<i>Ab.</i>	al'-i-quo.	al'-i-quā.
<i>Plural.</i>		
	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>
<i>N.</i>	al'-i-qui,	al'-i-quæ,
<i>G.</i>	al-i-quō'-rum,	al-i-quā'-rum,
<i>D.</i>	a-liq'-ui-bus,*	a-liq'-ui-bus,
<i>Ac.</i>	al'-i-quos,	al'-i-quas,
<i>V.</i>	_____	_____
<i>Ab.</i>	a-liq'-ui-bus.	a-liq'-ui-bus.

\* Pronounced a-lik'-wē-bus. See §§ 9, 4, and 21, 8.

2. *Siquis* and *nēquis* are declined in the same manner; but they sometimes have *quæ* in the fem. singular and neut. plural.

(a.) *Aliquis*, in the nominative singular masculine, is used both as a substantive and as an adjective;—*aliqui*, as an adjective, but is nearly obsolete. *Aliquæ* in the fem. sing. occurs as an adjective in Lucretius, 4, 2, 64. *Siqui*, and *nēqui*, which are properly adjectives, are used also substantively for *siquis* and *nēquis*, and in the nominative singular masculine these two forms are equivalent. The ablatives *aliqui* and *siqui* also occur.

(b.) *Aliquid*, *siquid*, and *nēquid*, like *quid*, are used substantively; *aliquid*, etc., like *quod*, are used adjectively.

3. *Quisque*, *quisquam*, and *quispiam*, are declined like *quis*.

(a.) In the neuter singular, however, *quisque* has *quodque*, *quidque*, or *quicque*; *quisquam* has *quidquam* or *quicquam*; and *quispiam* has *quodpiam*, *quidpiam*, or *quippiam*. The forms *quidque* or *quicque*, *quidpiam* or *quippiam* are used substantively.

(b.) *Quisquam* wants the feminine (except *quamquam*, Plant. Mil. 4, 2, 68), and also the plural, and, with a few exceptions in Plautus, it is always used substantively, its place as an adjective being supplied by *ultus*. *Quispiam* is scarcely used in the plural, except in the nominative feminine, *quepiam*.

4. *Unusquisque* is compounded of *unus* and *quisque*, which are often written separately, and both words are declined.

Thus *unusquisque*, *uniuscujusque*, *unicuique*, *unumquemque*, etc. The neuter is *unumquodque*, or *unumquidque*. It has no plural. *Unumquidquid* for *unumquidque* occurs in Plautus and Lucretius.

5. *Quidam*, *quilibet*, and *quīvis*, are declined like *qui*, except that they have both *quod* and *quid* in the neuter, the former used adjectively, the latter substantively.

NOTE. *Quidam* has usually *n* before *d* in the accusative singular and genitive plural; as, *quendam*, *quorundam*, etc. Cf. § 184, NOTE 1.

## POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 139. 1. The possessive are derived from the genitives of the substantive pronouns, and of *quis*, and designate something belonging to their primitives.

They are *meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, *noster*, *vester*, and *cujus*. *Meus*, *tuus*, and *suus*, are declined like *bōnus*; but *meus* has in the vocative singular masculine *mi*, and very rarely *meus*. Cf. § 105, R. 3. In late writers *mi* occurs also in the feminine and neuter.

2. *Cujus* also is declined like *bōnus*; but is defective. See § 137, 5. It occurs only in early Latin and in legal phraseology.

3. *Noster* and *vester* are declined like *pīger*. See § 106.

REMARK 1. The terminations *pte* and *met* intensive are sometimes annexed to possessive pronouns, especially to the ablative singular; as, *suapte pondère*, by its own weight; *suapte manu*, by his own hand. So *nostrapte culpā*; *suapte amicum*; *meamet culpā*. The suffix *met* is usually followed by *ipse*; as, *Hannibal suamet ipse fraude captus abiit*. Liv.; but Sallust has *meamet facta dicere*.

REM. 2. *Suus*, like its primitive *sui*, has always a reflexive signification, referring to the subject of the sentence. *Meus*, *tuus*, *noster*, and *vester*, are also used reflexively, when the subject of the proposition is of the first or second person. See § 182, 4.

## PATRIAL PRONOUNS.

4. (a.) These are *nostras* and *cūjas*. See §§ 100, 2, and 128, 6. They are declined like adjectives of one termination; as, *nostras*, *nostrātis*, but both are defective.

(b.) *Nostras* is found in the nominative and genitive singular, in the nominative plural, (masc. and fem., *nostrātes*, neut. *nostratia*), and in the ablative, (*nostratibus*). *Cūjas* or *quōjas* occurs in the nominative, genitive and accusative (*cujātem* masc.) singular, and in the nominative plural, masc. (*cujātes*). Cf. § 137, 6.—*Nostrātis* and *cujātis* (or *quojātis*) also occur in the nominative.

## PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

5. To the adjective pronouns may be added certain adjectives of so general a meaning, that they partake, in some degree, of the character of pronouns. Of this kind are:—

(1.) (a.) *Alius*, *ullus*, *nullus*, and *nonnullus*, which answer to the question, who?

(b.) *Alter*, *neuter*, *alterūter*, *utervis*, and *uterlibet*, which answer to the question, *ūter*? which of two?

(2.) Adjectives denoting quality, size, or number, in a general way. These stand in relation to one another, and are hence called *correlatives*.

REMARK. The *relatives* and *interrogatives* of this class begin with *qu*, and are alike in form. The *indefinites* are formed from the relatives by prefixing *ali*. The *demonstratives* begin with *t*, and are sometimes strengthened by *dem*. A *general relative*, having a meaning more general than the relative, is formed by doubling the simple relative, or by affixing to it the termination *cumque*. A *general indefinite* is formed by annexing *libet* or *vis* to the relative.

(3.) Their mutual relation is denoted by the following table, with which may be compared the *adverbial correlatives*, § 191, R. 1.

Interrog.	Demonstr.	Relat.	Relat. general.	Indefin.	Indef. general.
quālis?	tālis,	quālis,	{ quālis-quālis, quālis-cumque,	———	quālislibet,
quantus?	{ tantus, tantundem,	quantus,	{ quantus-quantus, quantus-cumque,	aliquantus,	quantuslibet,
quōt?	tōt, totīdem,	quōt,	{ quot-quot, quote-cumque,	aliquot,	quotlibet,
quōtus?	tōtus,	quōtus,	quotus-cumque,	(aliquōtus),	———.

## Diminutives.

quantūlus?	tantūlus.	———.	quantuluscumque.	aliquantūlum.	———.
------------	-----------	------	------------------	---------------	------

NOTE 1. The suffix *cumque*, which is used in forming general relatives, is composed of the relative adverb *cum* (*quum*) and the suffix *que*, expressive of universality, as in *quasque* and in adverbs, (see § 191). *Cumque*, therefore, originally signified 'whenever.' When attached to a relative, whether a pronoun, adjective, or adverb, it renders the relative meaning more general; as, *quī*, who; *quicumque*, whoever; or, every one who.

NOTE 2. *Cujusmodi* is sometimes used for *quālis*, and *hujusmodi*, *istiusmodi*, *eiusmodi*, and *ejusdemmodi* for *tālis*. Cf. § 134, R. 5.

## VERBS.

§ 140. A verb is a word by which something is affirmed of a person or thing.

1. That of which any thing is affirmed is called the *subject* of the verb. (2.) That which is affirmed of the subject is called the *predicate*. Cf. § 201.

3. A verb either expresses an action or state; as, *puer legit*, the boy reads; *aqua calet*, the water is warm;—or it connects an attribute with a subject; as, *terra est rotunda*, the earth is round.

4. All verbs belong to the former of these classes, except *sum*, I am, the most common use of which is, to connect an attribute with a subject. When so used, it is called the *copula*.

§ 141. Verbs are either *active* or *neuter*.

NOTE. Active and neuter verbs are sometimes called *transitive* and *intransitive*; and verbs of motion are by some grammarians divided into *active-transitive* and *active-intransitive*, according as they require, or do not require, an object after them.

I. An *active* or *transitive verb* expresses such an action as requires the addition of an object to complete the sense; as, *amo te*, I love thee; *sequitur consulem*, he follows the consul.

II. A *neuter* or *intransitive verb* expresses such an action or state, as does not require the addition of an object to complete the sense; as, *equus currit*, the horse runs; *gradior*, I walk.

REMARK 1. Many verbs, in Latin, are considered as neuter, which are usually translated into English by active verbs. Thus *indulgeo*, I indulge, *noceo*, I hurt, *pareo*, I obey, are reckoned among neuter verbs. In strictness, such Latin verbs denote rather a state than an action, and their sense would be more exactly expressed by the verb *to be* with an adjective; as, 'I am indulgent, I am hurtful,' etc. Some verbs in Latin, which do not usually take an object after them, are yet active, since the object is omitted by ellipsis. Thus *credo* properly signifies *to intrust*, and, in this sense, takes an object; as, *credo tibi salutem meam*, I intrust my safety to you; but by ellipsis it usually means *to believe*; as, *crede mihi*, believe me.

To verbs belong *voices*, *moods*, *tenses*, *numbers*, and *persons*.

## VOICES.

(a.) Voice, in verbs, is the form by which they denote the relation of the agent to the action of the verb.

(b.) Most active Latin verbs have, for this purpose, two forms, which are called the *active* and *passive voices*.

1. A verb in the *active voice* represents the agent as *acting* upon some person or thing, called the *object*; as, *puer legit librum*, the boy is reading a book.

2. A verb in the *passive voice* represents the object as *acted upon* by the agent; as, *liber legitur a puëro*, a book is read by the boy.

REM. 2. By comparing the two preceding examples, it will be seen that they have the same meaning. The passive voice may thus be substituted at pleasure for the active, by making the object of the active the subject of the passive, and placing the subject of the active in the ablative case, with or without the preposition *a* or *ab*, according as it is a voluntary or involuntary agent. The active form is used to direct the attention especially to the agent as acting; the passive, chiefly to exhibit the object as acted upon. In the one case the object, in the other the agent, is frequently omitted, and left indefinite; as, *puer legit*, the boy is reading, scil. *librum, lîtras*, etc., a book, a letter, etc.; *virtus laudîtur*, virtue is praised, scil. *ab hominibus*, by men.

The two voices are distinguished from each other by peculiar terminations. Cf. § 152.

§ 142. 1. Neuter verbs have, in general, only the form of the active voice. They are, however, sometimes used impersonally in the passive voice. See § 184, 2.

2. The neuter verbs *audeo*, I dare, *fido*, I trust, *gaudeo*, I rejoice, and *soleo*, I am wont, have the passive form in the perfect and its cognate tenses; as, *ausus sum*, I dared. Hence these verbs are called *neuter passives*, or *semi-deponents*.

3. The neuter verbs *vapûlo*, I am beaten, and *vêneo*, I am sold, have an active form, but a passive meaning, and are hence called *neutral passives*.

4. (a.) *Deponent* verbs have a transitive or intransitive signification with only the passive form. They are called *deponent verbs*, from *depôno*, to lay aside, as having laid aside their active form, and their passive signification; as, *sêquor*, I follow; *môrior*, I die.

(b.) Some deponent verbs have both an active and a passive signification, especially in the perfect participle. These are sometimes called *common verbs*. Cf. § 162, 17.

## MOODS.

§ 143. (a.) Moods (or modes) are forms of the verb, which denote the relation of the action or state, expressed by the verb, to the mind of the speaker or to some other action.

(b.) Latin verbs have four moods—the *indicative*, the *subjunctive*, the *imperative*, and the *infinitive*.

1. The *indicative* mood is used in independent and absolute assertions and inquiries; as, *amo*, I love; *audisne?* dost thou hear?

2. The *subjunctive* mood is used to express an action or state simply as conceived by the mind; as, *si me obsêcret*, *redîbo*; if he entreat me, I will return.

3. The *imperative* mood is used in commanding, exhorting, or entreating; as, *ama*, love thou; *amanto*, they shall love.

4. The *infinitive* mood is used to denote an action or state in definitely, without limiting it to any person or thing as its subject; as, *virtus est vitium fugere*, to shun vice is a virtue.

## TENSES.

† § 144. Tenses are forms of the verb, denoting the *time* of the action or state expressed by the verb.

1. Time admits of a threefold division, into present, past, and future; and, in each of these times, an action may be represented either as going on, or as completed. From these two divisions arise the six tenses of a Latin verb, each of which is distinguished by its peculiar terminations.

✕ 2. They are called the *present, imperfect, future, perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect* tenses.

Present	{ action	{ <i>amo</i> , I love, or am loving; <i>Present tense</i> .
Past	{ not com-	{ <i>amābam</i> , I was loving; <i>Imperfect tense</i> .
Future	{ pleted;	{ <i>amābo</i> , I shall love, or be loving; <i>Future tense</i> .
Present	{ action	{ <i>amāvi</i> , I have loved; <i>Perfect tense</i> .
Past	{ com-	{ <i>amavēram</i> , I had loved; <i>Pluperfect tense</i> .
Future	{ pleted;	{ <i>amavēro</i> , I shall have loved; <i>Future perfect tense</i> .

✕ 3. There is the same number of tenses in the passive voice, in which actions not completed are represented by simple forms of the verb, and those which are completed by compound forms.

Present	{ action	{ <i>amor</i> , I am loved; <i>Present tense</i> .
Past	{ not com-	{ <i>amābar</i> , I was loved; <i>Imperfect tense</i> .
Future	{ pleted;	{ <i>amābor</i> , I shall be loved; <i>Future tense</i> .
Present	{ action	{ <i>amātus sum</i> , or <i>fui</i> , I have been loved; <i>Perfect tense</i> .
Past	{ com-	{ <i>amātus eram</i> , or <i>fuēram</i> , I had been loved; <i>Pluperfect</i> .
Future	{ pleted;	{ <i>amātus ero</i> , or <i>fuēro</i> , I shall have been loved; <i>Future Perfect</i> .

✕ § 145. I. The *present tense* represents an action as now going on, and not completed; as, *āmo*, I love, or am loving.

1. Any existing custom, or general truth, may be expressed by this tense; as, *apud Parthos, signum datur tympano*; among the Parthians, the signal is given by a drum. A general truth is sometimes also expressed by the perfect.

2. The present tense may also denote an action which has existed for some time, and which still exists; as, *tot annos bella gero*; for so many years I have waged, and am still waging war.

3. The present tense is often in narration used for the perfect indefinite. It is then called the *historical present*; as, *desiliunt ex equis, provolant in primum*; they dismount, they fly forward to the front.

✕ II. The *imperfect tense* represents an action as going on at some past time, but not then completed; as, *amābam*, I was loving.

1. The imperfect sometimes denotes repeated or customary past action; as, *legēbam*, I was wont to read.

2. It may also denote an action which had existed for some time, and which was still existing at a certain past time; as, *audiebat jamdudum verba*; he had long heard, and was still hearing the words.



3. In letters, and with reference not to the time of their being written, but to that of their being read, the imperfect is sometimes used for the present; as, *expectābam*, I was expecting, (i. e. when I wrote).

4. The imperfect also sometimes denotes the *intending*, *preparing*, or *attempting* to act at a definite past time.

III. The *future tense* denotes that an action will be going on hereafter, but without reference to its completion; as, *amābo*, I shall love, or shall be loving.

IV. The *perfect tense* represents an action either as just completed, or as completed in some indefinite past time; as, *amāvi*, I have loved, or I loved.

REMARK. In the former sense, it is called the *perfect definite*; in the latter, the *perfect indefinite*, *historical perfect*, or *aorist*.

V. The *pluperfect tense* represents a past action as completed, at or before the time of some other past action or event; as, *litteras scripsēram*, *quum nuncius vēnit*; I had written the letter, when the messenger arrived.

VI. The *future perfect tense* denotes that an action will be completed, at or before the time of some other future action or event; as, *quum cōnavēro*, *proficiscar*; when I shall have supped, I will go.

NOTE 1. This tense is often, but improperly, called the *future subjunctive*. It has the signification of the indicative mood, and corresponds to the *second future* in English.

NOTE 2. The imperfect, historical perfect, and pluperfect tenses are sometimes called *preterites* or the *preterite tenses*.

NOTE 3. The present, imperfect, and future tenses passive, in English, do not express the exact sense of those tenses in Latin, as denoting an action which is, was, or will be, going on at a certain time. Thus *laudor* signifies, not 'I am praised,' but 'I am in the act of being praised,' or, if such an expression is admissible, 'I am being praised.'

REMARK 1. The six tenses above enumerated are found only in the indicative mood.

REM. 2. The subjunctive mood, in the regular conjugation, has the present and past, but no future tenses.

NOTE 4. The tenses of the subjunctive mood have less definiteness of meaning, in regard to time, than those of the indicative. Thus the present and perfect, besides their common signs, *may* or *can*, *may have* or *can have*, must, in certain connections, be translated by *might*, *could*, *would*, or *should*; *might have*, *could have*, etc. The tenses of this mood must often, also, be translated by the corresponding tenses of the indicative. For a more particular account of the signification of each of the tenses of the subjunctive mood, see § 260.

REM. 3. The imperative mood has two tenses—a present and a future; the former for that which is to be done at once, and the latter for that which is to be done in future.

REM. 4. The infinitive mood has three tenses—the present, the perfect, and the future; the first of which denotes an incomplete, the second a completed action, and the last an action to be performed.

## NUMBERS.

§ 146. Number, in verbs, is the form by which the *unity* or *plurality* of their subject is denoted. Hence verbs, like nouns, have two numbers—the *singular* and the *plural*. Cf. § 35, 1.

## PERSONS.

§ 147. Person, in verbs, is the form by which they denote the person of their subject. Hence in each number there are three persons—the *first*, *second*, and *third*. Cf. § 35, 2.

1. The imperative *present* has only the *second* person in both numbers. The imperative *future* has in each number the *second* and *third* persons, but in the *singular* they have both the same form, *-to* in the *active*, and *-tor* in the *passive* voice.

2. As the signification of the infinitive mood is not limited to any subject, it admits no change to express either number or person.

3. The following are the terminations of the different persons of each number, in the *indicative* and *subjunctive* moods, in both voices:—

	Active.			Passive.		
Person.	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
Singular.	o, i, or m,	s,	t;	r,	ris,	tur;
Plural.	mus,	tis,	nt.	mur,	mini,	ntur.

These may be called *personal* terminations.

REMARK 1. The perfect indicative active is irregular in the *second* person singular and plural, which end in *sti* and *stis*, and in one of the forms of the *third* person plural, which ends in *re*.

REM. 2. The passive form above given belongs to the simple tenses only.

REM. 3. The pronouns of the first and second persons, *ego*, *nos*; *tu* and *vos*, are seldom expressed in Latin as subjects of a finite verb, the several persons being sufficiently distinguished by the terminations of the verb.

## PARTICIPLES, GERUNDS, AND SUPINES.

§ 148. 1. A participle is a word derived from a verb, and partaking of its meaning, but having the form of an adjective.

(1.) Like a verb, it has different *voices* and *tenses*; like an adjective, it has *declension*\* and *gender*; and like both, it has two *numbers*.

(2.) Active verbs have usually *four* participles—two in the *active* voice, a *present* and a *future*; as, *amans*, loving; *amaturus*, about to love;—and two in the *passive* voice, a *perfect* and a *future*; as, *amatus*, loved, or having been loved; *amandus*, to be loved.

\* See §§ 105, R. 2: and 111, R.

(3.) Neuter verbs have usually only the participles of the active voice.

(4.) Deponent verbs, both active and neuter, may have the participles of both voices.

2. (a.) *Gerunds* are verbal nouns, used only in the oblique cases, and expressing the action or state of the verb; as, *amandī*, of loving, etc.

(b.) Like other abstract nouns, they are found only in the singular number, and by their cases supply the place of a declinable present infinitive active.

3. *Supines* also are verbal nouns of the fourth declension in the accusative and ablative singular; as, *amātum*, to love; *amātu*, to be loved.

REMARK. These also serve in certain connections to supply the place of the infinitive present both active and passive. The supine in *um* is called the *former* supine; that in *u*, the *latter*. The former is commonly used in an active, the latter in a passive sense.

## CONJUGATION.

§ 149. 1. The conjugation of a verb is the regular formation and arrangement of its several parts, according to their voices, moods, tenses, numbers, and persons.

2. There are four conjugations, which are characterized by the vowel before *re* in the present of the infinitive active.

In the first conjugation, it is *a* long;  
 In the second, . . . . . *e* long;  
 In the third, . . . . . *ē* short;  
 In the fourth, . . . . . *i* long.

EXCEPTION. *Do*, *dāre*, to give, and such of its compounds as are of the first conjugation, have *d* short before *re*.

§ 150. A verb, like a noun, consists of two parts—the *root*, and the *termination*. Cf. § 40, R. 10.

1. The *first* or *general* root of a verb consists of those letters that are found in every part. This root may always be found by removing the termination of the present infinitive.

2. There are also two special roots, the first of which is found in the perfect, and is called the *second* root; the other, found in the supine or perfect participle, is called the *third* root.

3. In regular verbs of the first, second, and fourth conjugations, the *second* root is formed by adding, respectively, *āv*, *u*, and *iv*, to the *general* root; and the *third* root by a similar addition of *āt*, *it*, and *it*.

REMARK. Many verbs, in each of the conjugations, form their second and third roots irregularly.

4. In the third conjugation, the second root either is the same as the first, or is formed from it by adding *s*; the third root is formed by adding *t*. See § 171.

NOTE. In the second and fourth conjugations, *e* and *i* before *o* are considered as belonging not to the root, but to the termination. In verbs whose second or third roots are formed irregularly, the general root often undergoes some change in the parts derived from them.

5. The vowel which unites the general root with the remaining letters of the verb, is called the *connecting* vowel. Each conjugation, except the third, is, in a great degree, distinguished by a peculiar connecting vowel, which is the same as characterizes the infinitives. See § 149, 2.

(a.) In the third conjugation, the connecting vowel is generally *ē* or *i*. In the second and fourth conjugations, and in verbs in *io* of the third, a second connecting vowel is sometimes added to that which characterizes the conjugation; as, *a* in *doceant*, *u* in *capiant*, etc.

(b.) In verbs whose second and third roots are formed irregularly, the connecting vowel often disappears, or is changed in the parts derived from those roots; but it is almost always found in the parts derived from the first root.

§ 151. 1. From the *first* root are derived, in each voice, the present, imperfect, and future indicative; the present and imperfect subjunctive; the imperative, and the present infinitive. From this root are derived also the present participle, the gerund, and the future participle passive.

2. From the *second* root are derived, in the active voice, the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative; the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive, and the perfect infinitive.

3. (a.) From the *third* root are derived, in the active voice, the supine in *um*, and the future participle; the latter of which, with the verb *esse*, constitutes the future infinitive active.

(b.) From this root are derived, in the passive voice, the supine in *u*, and the perfect participle; from the latter of which, with the verb *sum*, are formed all the tenses which in the active are derived from the second root. The future infinitive passive is formed from the supine in *um*, and *iri*, the present infinitive passive of the verb *eo*, to go.

4. The present and perfect indicative, the supine in *um*, and the present infinitive, are called the *principal parts* of the verb, because from the first three the several roots are ascertained, and from the last, the characteristic vowel of the conjugation. In the passive voice, the principal parts are the present indicative and infinitive, and the perfect participle.

NOTE. As the supine in *um* is wanting in most verbs, the third root must often be determined from the perfect participle, or the future participle active.

§ 152. The following table exhibits a connected view of the verbal terminations, in all the conjugations. By annexing these to the several roots, all the parts of a verb may be formed.

*Terminations added to the First Root.*

## ACTIVE VOICE.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.				SINGULAR.				FLURAL.			
				Persons.				Persons.			
				1.	2.	3.	3.	1.	2.	3.	3.
Conjugation	1.	-o,	-ās,	-ātis,	-ātis,	-ātis,	-ātis,	-āmūr,	-amini,	-antūr.	-antūr.
	2.	-eo,	-ēs,	-ētis,	-ētis,	-ētis,	-ētis,	-ēmūr,	-emini,	-entūr.	-entūr.
	3.	-o,	-is,	-itis,	-itis,	-itis,	-itis,	-imūr,	-imini,	-untūr.	-untūr.
	4.	-io,	-is,	-itis,	-itis,	-itis,	-itis,	-imūr,	-imini,	-iuntūr.	-iuntūr.
				IMPERFECT.							
	1.	-ābam,	-ābās,	-ābātis,	-ābātis,	-ābātis,	-ābātis,	-ābamūr,	-abamini,	-ābantūr.	-ābantūr.
	2.	-ēbam,	-ēbās,	-ēbātis,	-ēbātis,	-ēbātis,	-ēbātis,	-ēbamūr,	-ebamini,	-ēbantūr.	-ēbantūr.
	3.	-ībam,	-ībās,	-ībātis,	-ībātis,	-ībātis,	-ībātis,	-ībamūr,	-iebamini,	-ībāntūr.	-ībāntūr.
	4.	-ībam,	-ībās,	-ībātis,	-ībātis,	-ībātis,	-ībātis,	-ībamūr,	-iebamini,	-ībāntūr.	-ībāntūr.
				FUTURE.							
	1.	-ābo,	-ābis,	-ābitis,	-ābitis,	-ābitis,	-ābitis,	-ābimūr,	-abimini,	-ābuntūr.	-ābuntūr.
	2.	-ēbo,	-ēbis,	-ēbitis,	-ēbitis,	-ēbitis,	-ēbitis,	-ēbimūr,	-ebimini,	-ēbuntūr.	-ēbuntūr.
	3.	-ā,	-is,	-itis,	-itis,	-itis,	-itis,	-āmūr,	-emini,	-entūr.	-entūr.
	4.	-iam,	-iēs,	-iētis,	-iētis,	-iētis,	-iētis,	-iāmūr,	-iemini,	-ientūr.	-ientūr.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.							
				1.	2.	3.	3.
	1.	-em,	-ēs,	-ētis,	-ētis,	-ētis,	-ētis,
	2.	-eam,	-eās,	-eātis,	-eātis,	-eātis,	-eātis,
	3.	-am,	-ās,	-ātis,	-ātis,	-ātis,	-ātis,
	4.	-iam,	-iās,	-iātis,	-iātis,	-iātis,	-iātis,

IMPERFECT.

1. -ārem,	-āres,	-āret,	-arēmūs,	-arētūs,	-arētū;	-arēmūr,	-arēmī,	-arentūr.
2. -ārem,	-āres,	-āret;	-arēmūs,	-arētūs,	-arētū;	-arēmūr,	-arēmī,	-arentūr.
3. -ārem,	-āres,	-āret;	-arēmūs,	-arētūs,	-arētū;	-arēmūr,	-arēmī,	-arentūr.
4. -ārem,	-āres,	-āret;	-arēmūs,	-arētūs,	-arētū;	-arēmūr,	-arēmī,	-arentūr.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

1. -ā;	-ā;	-ā;	-ā;	-ā;	-ā;	-ā;	-ā;	-ā;
2. -ā;	-ā;	-ā;	-ā;	-ā;	-ā;	-ā;	-ā;	-ā;
3. -ā;	-ā;	-ā;	-ā;	-ā;	-ā;	-ā;	-ā;	-ā;
4. -ā;	-ā;	-ā;	-ā;	-ā;	-ā;	-ā;	-ā;	-ā;

NOTE. Verbs in *io* of the third conjugation have two connecting vowels in all the parts in which they occur in verbs of the fourth conjugation, and these vowels are the same in both.

Terminations added to the Second and Third Roots.

The terminations of the tenses which are formed from the second and third roots, are the same in all the conjugations. Thus:—

ACTIVE VOICE.—SECOND ROOT.				PASSIVE VOICE.—THIRD ROOT.			
INDICATIVE MOOD.				INDICATIVE MOOD.			
<i>Singular.</i>				<i>Singular.</i>			
Perf.	-i,	-i;	-i;	Perf.	-is sum	or fui,	-is es or fuisti, etc.
Plup.	-eram,	-erāt;	-erāt;	Plup.	-is eram	or fuēram,	-is erās or fuērās, etc.
Fut. perf.	-ero,	-erit;	-erit;	Fut. perf.	-is ero	or fuēro,	-is eris or fuēris, etc.
<i>Plural.</i>				<i>Plural.</i>			
Perf.	-erim,	-eritis;	-eritis;	Perf.	-is sim	or fuērim,	-is sis or fuēris, etc.
Plup.	-issem,	-isset;	-isset;	Plup.	-is essem	or fuissem,	-is essēs or fuissēs, etc.
<i>Infinitive.</i>				<i>Infinitive.</i>			
Perf.	-isse,	-isse;	-isse;	Perf.	-us esse	or fuisset.	
Plup.	-issem,	-issem;	-issem;	Plup.	-us essem	or fuissem.	
Third Root.	INF. Fut. -ūrus esse.	PART. Fut. -ūrus.	F. SUP. -um.	PART. Perf. -us.	INF. Fut. -um iri.	L. SUP. -a.	

**REMARK 1.** In analyzing a verb, the voice, person, and number, are ascertained by the *personal* terminations. See § 147, 3. The conjugation, mood, and tense, are, in general, determined by the letter or letters which intervene between the root of the verb and the personal terminations. Thus in *amabamus*, *mus* denotes that the verb is of the active voice, plural number, and first person; *ba* denotes that it is of the indicative mood, imperfect tense; and the connecting vowel *a* determines it to be of the first conjugation. So in *amarentini*, *mini* denotes the passive voice, plural number, and second person; *re*, the subjunctive mood, imperfect tense; and *a*, as before, the first conjugation.

**REM. 2.** Sometimes, the part between the root of the verb and the personal termination, does not precisely determine the conjugation, mood, and tense, but only within certain limits. In such cases, the conjugation may be learned, by finding the present tense in the dictionary, and if two forms are alike in the same conjugation, they can only be distinguished by the sense. Thus *amēmus* and *doctēmus* have the same termination; but, as *amo* is of the first, and *doceo* of the second conjugation, the former is determined to be the subjunctive, the latter the indicative, present. *Regar* may be either the future indicative, or the present subjunctive—*vidēmus* either the present or the perfect indicative.

**§ 153.** SUM, I am, is called an *auxiliary* verb, because it is used, in conjunction with participles, to supply the want of simple forms in other verbs. From its denoting existence, it is sometimes called the *substantive* verb.

**REMARK.** *Sum* is very irregular in those parts which, in other verbs, are formed from the first root. Its imperfect and future tenses, except in the third person plural of the latter, have the form of a pluperfect and future perfect. It is thus conjugated:—

#### PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Indic.	Pres. Infin.	Perf. Indic.	Fut. Part.
Sum,	es'-sē,	fu'-ī,	fū'-tū'-rūs.

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

##### • Present Tense.

##### SINGULAR.

Person.	1. sum, I am,
	2. es, thou art,*
	3. est, he is;

##### PLURAL.

sū'-mūs, we are,
es'-tis, ye† are,
sunt, they are.

#### Imperfect.

1. ē'-ram, I was,	ē'-rā'-mūs, we were,
2. ē'-rās, thou wast,	ē'-rā'-tis, ye were,
3. ē'-rāt, he was;	ē'-rant, they were.

#### Future. shall, or will.

1. ē'-rō, I shall be,	ēr'-ī-mūs, we shall be,
2. ē'-ris, thou wilt be,	ēr'-ī-tis, ye will be,
3. ē'-rit, he will be;	ēr'-runt, they will be.

\* In the second person singular in English, the plural form *you* is commonly used except in solemn discourse; as, *tu es*, you are.

† The plural pronoun of the second person is either *ye* or *you*.

Perfect. *have been, or was.*

- |                                      |   |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| 1. fu'-i, <i>I have been,</i>        | fu'-i-mūs, <i>we have been,</i>         |
| 2. fu-is'-ti, <i>thou hast been,</i> | fu-is'-tis, <i>ye have been,</i>        |
| 3. fu-it, <i>he has been;</i>        | fu-ē-runt or rē, <i>they have been.</i> |

## Pluperfect.

- |                                       |                                   |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. fu'-ē-ram, <i>I had been,</i>      | fu-e-rā'-mūs, <i>we had been,</i> |
| 2. fu'-ē-rās, <i>thou hadst been,</i> | fu-e-rā'-tis, <i>ye had been,</i> |
| 3. fu'-ē-rāt, <i>he had been;</i>     | fu'-ē-rant, <i>they had been.</i> |

Future Perfect. *shall or will have.*

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. fu'-ē-rō, <i>I shall have been,</i>    | fu-er'-i-mūs, <i>we shall have been,</i> |
| 2. fu'-ē-rīs, <i>thou wilt have been,</i> | fu-er'-i-tis, <i>ye will have been,</i>  |
| 3. fu'-ē-rīt, <i>he will have been;</i>   | fu'-ē-rint, <i>they will have been.</i>  |

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. *may; or can.*

- |                               |                            |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. sim, <i>I may be,</i>      | si'-mūs, <i>we may be,</i> |
| 2. sis, <i>thou mayst be,</i> | si'-tis, <i>ye may be,</i> |
| 3. sit, <i>he may be;</i>     | sint, <i>they may be.</i>  |

Imperfect. *might, could, would, or should.*

- |                                     |                                 |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. es'-sem, <i>I would be,</i>      | es-sē'-mūs, <i>we would be,</i> |
| 2. es'-sēs, <i>thou wouldst be,</i> | es-sē'-tis, <i>ye would be,</i> |
| 3. es'-sēt, <i>he would be;</i>     | es'-sent, <i>they would be.</i> |

## Perfect.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. fu'-ē-rim, <i>I may have been,</i>      | fu-ēr'-i-mus, <i>we may have been,</i> |
| 2. fu'-ē-rīs, <i>thou mayst have been,</i> | fu-ēr'-i-tis, <i>ye may have been,</i> |
| 3. fu'-ē-rīt, <i>he may have been;</i>     | fu'-ē-rint, <i>they may have been.</i> |

Pluperfect. *might, could, would, or should have.*

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. fu-is'-sem, <i>I would have been,</i>      | fu-is-sē'-mūs, <i>we would have been,</i> |
| 2. fu-is'-sēs, <i>thou wouldst have been,</i> | fu-is-sē'-tis, <i>ye would have been,</i> |
| 3. fu-is'-sēt, <i>he would have been;</i>     | fu-is'-sent, <i>they would have been.</i> |

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

- |                                       |                                |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Pres. 1. ēs, <i>be thou,</i>          | es'-tē, <i>be ye.</i>          |
| Fut. 2. es'-tō, <i>thou shalt be,</i> | es-tō'-tē, <i>ye shall be,</i> |
| 3. es'-tō, <i>let him be;</i>         | sun'-tō, <i>let them be.</i>   |

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. es'-sē, *to be.*Perfect. fu-is'-sē, *to have been.*Future. fū-tū'-rūs (ā, um), es'-sē, or fō'-rē, *to be about to be.*



## PARTICIPLE.

*Future.* fū-tū'-rus, a, um, about to be.

§ 154. REMARK 1. A present participle *ens* seems to have been anciently in use, and is still found in the compounds *absens*, *præsens*, and *pôtens*.

REM. 2. The perfect *fui*, and its derivative tenses, are formed from an obsolete *fuo*, whence come also the participle *futūrus*, an old subjunctive present *fuiam*, *fuias*, *fuiat*; —, —, *fuiant*, and the forms *fuiimus*, perf. ind., *fuiērint*, perf. subj., and *fuiisset*, plup. subj.

REM. 3. From *fuo* appear also to be derived the following:—

*Subj. imperf.* fō'-rem, fō'-rēs, fō'-rēt; —, —, fō'-rent.  
*Inf. pres.* fō'-rē.

These forms seem to have been contracted from *fuērem*, etc., and *fuēre*. *Fōrem* is equivalent in meaning to *essem*, but the infinitive *fōre* has, in most cases, acquired a future signification, equivalent to *futūrus esse*.

REM. 4. *Siem*, *sies*, *siet*, *sient*, for *sim*, *sis*, *sit*, *sint*, are found in ancient writers, as are also *escū* for *erit*, *escunt* for *erunt*, *ese*, *esētis*, and *esent*, for *esse*, *essētis*, and *essent*.

REM. 5. Like *sum* are conjugated its compounds, *absum*, *adsum*, *dēsum*, *insum*, *intersum*, *obsum*, *præsum*, *subsum*, and *supersum*.

REM. 6. *PROSUM*, from the old form *prōd* for *prō*, and *sum*, has *d* after *pro*, when the simple verb begins with *e*; as,

*Ind. pres.* prō'-sum, prōd'-es, prōd'-est, etc.  
— *imperf.* prōd'-ē-ram, prōd'-ē-rās, etc.

REM. 7. (a.) *POSSUM* is compounded of *pōtis*, able, and *sum*. They are sometimes written separately, and then *pōtis* is the same in all genders and numbers.

(b.) In composition, *is* is omitted in *pōtis*, and *t*, as in other cases, coming before *s*, is changed into *s*. In the infinitive, and imperfect subjunctive, *es* of the simple verb is dropped, as is also *f* at the beginning of the second root. In every other respect *possum* is conjugated like *sum*, wherever it is found; but the imperative, and the parts derived from the third root, are wanting.

*Pres. Indic.* *Pres. Infin.* *Perf. Indic.*  
Pos'-sum, pos'-sē, pōt'-u-I, I can, or I am able.

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

*Present.*

pos'-sum, pō'-tēs, pō'-test;  
pos'-sū-mūs, pō'-tes'-tis, pos'-sunt. pos'-sim, pos'-sis, pos'-sit;  
pos'-sī-mūs, pos'-sī-tis, pos'-sint.

*Imperfect.*

pōt'-ē-ram, pōt'-ē-rās, pōt'-ē-rāt;  
pōt'-ē-rā-mūs, -ē-rā'-tis, -ē-rant. pos'-sem, pos'-sēs, pos'-sēt;  
pos'-sē-mūs, -sē'-tis, pos'-sent.

*Future.*

pōt'-ē-rō, pōt'-ē-ris, pōt'-ē-rīt;  
pōt'-ēr'-ī-mūs, po-tēr'-ī-tis, pot'-ē-runt.

*Perfect.*

pōt'-u-I, pōt'-u-is'-ti, pōt'-u-īt;  
pōt'-u-ī-mūs, -is'-tis, -ē-rant or -ē-rō. pōt'-u'-ē-rim, -ē-rīs, -ē-rīt;  
pōt'-u-ēr'-ī-mūs, -ī-tis, -ē-rint.

*Pluperfect.*

pō-tu'-ē-ram, ē-rās, ē-rāt;      pōt-u-is'-sem, -is'-ēs, -is'-ēt;  
 pōt-u-ē-rā'-mūs, ē-rā'-tis, ē-rant.      pōt-u-is-ēs'-mūs, -is-ēs'-tis, -is'-cent.

*Future Perfect.*

pō-tu'-ē-rō, pō-tu'-ē-rīs, pō-tu'-ē-rīt;  
 pōt-u-ēr'-ī-mūs, pōt-u-ēr'-ī-tis, pō-tu'-ē-rint.

(No Imperative.)

## INFINITIVE.

## PARTICIPIAL ADJECTIVE.

Pres. pos'-sē. Perf. pōt-u-is'-sē.

pō'-tens, able.

NOTE. The following forms are also found; *potissum* for *possum*, *potissunt* for *possunt*, *potissim* and *possim* for *possim*, *possies*, *possiet* and *potessit* for *possis* and *possit*, *potessem* for *possem*, *potesse* for *posse*, and before a passive infinitive the passive forms *potetur* for *potest*, *poterātur* for *poterat*, and *possētur* for *possent*.—*Potis* and *pote* without *est* are sometimes used for *potest*.

## § 155. FIRST CONJUGATION.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	<i>Perf. Ind.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>
A'-mō,	ā-mā'-rē,	ā-mā'-vī,	ā-mā'-tum.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. *love, do love, am loving.*

<i>Sing.</i>	ā'-mō, ā'-mās, ā'-māt,	<i>I love, thou lovest, he loves;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ā-mā'-mūs, ā-mā'-tis, ā'-mant,	<i>we love, ye love, they love.</i>

Imperfect. *was loving, loved, did love.*

<i>Sing.</i>	ā-mā'-bam, ā-mā'-bās, ā-mā'-bāt,	<i>I was loving, thou wast loving, he was loving;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ām-ā-bā'-mūs, ām-ā-bā'-tis, ā-mā'-bant,	<i>we were loving, ye were loving, they were loving.</i>

Future. *shall, or will.*

<i>Sing.</i>	ā-mā'-bō, ā-mā'-bis, ā-mā'-bit,	<i>I shall love, thou wilt love, he will love;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ā-māb'-ī-mūs, ā-māb'-ī-tis, ā-mā'-bunt,	<i>we shall love, ye will love, they will love.</i>

Perfect. *loved, or have loved.*

<i>Sing.</i>	ǎ-mǎ'-vī, ǎm-ǎ-vis'-tī, ǎ-mǎ'-vīt,	<i>I have loved, thou hast loved, he has loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ǎ-māv'-ī-mūs, ǎm-ǎ-vis'-tis, ǎm-ǎ-vē'-runt or -rē,	<i>we have loved, ye have loved, they have loved.</i>

Pluperfect. *had.*

<i>Sing.</i>	ǎ-māv'-ě-ram, ǎ-māv'-ě-rās, ǎ-māv'-ě-rāt,	<i>I had loved, thou hadst loved, he had loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ǎ-māv'-ě-rā'-mūs, ǎ-māv'-ě-rā'-tis, ǎ-māv'-ě-rant,	<i>we had loved, ye had loved, they had loved.</i>

Future Perfect. *shall, or will have.*

<i>Sing.</i>	ǎ-māv'-ě-rō, ǎ-māv'-ě-rīs, ǎ-māv'-ě-rīt,	<i>I shall have loved, thou wilt have loved, he will have loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ǎm-ǎ-vēr'-ī-mūs, ǎm-ǎ-vēr'-ī-tis, ǎ-māv'-ě-rint,	<i>we shall have loved, ye will have loved, they will have loved.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD,

Present. *may, or can.*

<i>Sing.</i>	ǎ'-mem, ǎ'-mēs, ǎ'-mēt,	<i>I may love, thou mayst love, he may love;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ǎ-mē'-mūs, ǎ-mē'-tis, ǎ'-ment,	<i>we may love, ye may love, they may love.</i>

Imperfect. *might, could, would, or should.*

<i>Sing.</i>	ǎ-mǎ'-rem, ǎ-mǎ'-rēs, ǎ-mǎ'-rēt,	<i>I would love, thou wouldst love, he would love;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ǎm-ǎ-rē'-mūs, ǎm-ǎ-rē'-tis, ǎ-mǎ'-rent,	<i>we would love, ye would love, they would love.</i>

Perfect. *may, or can have.*

<i>Sing.</i>	ǎ-māv'-ě-rim, ǎ-māv'-ě-rīs, ǎ-māv'-ě-rīt,	<i>I may have loved, thou mayst have loved, he may have loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ǎm-ǎ-vēr'-ī-mūs, ǎm-ǎ-vēr'-ī-tis, ǎ-māv'-ě-rint,	<i>we may have loved, ye may have loved, they may have loved.</i>

Pluperfect. *might, could, would, or should have.*

<i>Sing.</i> ā-m-ā-vis'-sem,	<i>I would have loved,</i>
ā-m-ā-vis'-sēs,	<i>thou wouldst have loved,</i>
ā-m-ā-vis'-sēt,	<i>he would have loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> ā-m-ā-vis-sē'-mūs,	<i>we would have loved,</i>
ā-m-ā-vis-sē'-tis,	<i>ye would have loved,</i>
ā-m-ā-vis'-sent,	<i>they would have loved.</i>

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres. Sing.</i> ā'-mā,	<i>love thou ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> ā-mā'-tē,	<i>love ye.</i>
<i>Fut. Sing.</i> ā-mā'-tō,	<i>thou shalt love,</i>
ā-mā'-tō,	<i>he shall love ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> ā-m-ā-tō'-tē,	<i>ye shall love,</i>
ā-man'-tō,	<i>they shall love.</i>

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i> ā-mā'-rē,	<i>to love.</i>
<i>Perfect.</i> ā-m-ā-vis'-sē,	<i>to have loved.</i>
<i>Future.</i> ā-m-ā-tū'-rūs, (ā, um,) es'-sē,	<i>to be about to love.</i>

## PARTICIPLES.

<i>Present.</i> ā'-mans,	<i>loving.</i>
<i>Future.</i> ā-m-ā-tū'-rūs, ā, um,	<i>about to love.</i>

## GERUND.

<i>G.</i> ā-man'-dī,	<i>of loving,</i>
<i>D.</i> ā-man'-dō,	<i>for loving,</i>
<i>Ac.</i> ā-man'-dum,	<i>loving,</i>
<i>Ab.</i> ā-man'-dō,	<i>by loving.</i>

## SUPINE.

<i>Former.</i> ā-mā'-tum,	<i>to love.</i>
---------------------------	-----------------

## § 156. PASSIVE VOICE.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Pres. Infin.</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>
Ā'-mor,	ā-mā'-rī,	ā-mā'-tūa.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. *am.*

<i>Sing.</i>	ă-mŏr, ă-mă'-rŭs or -rě, ă-mă'-tŭr,	<i>I am loved, thou art loved, he is loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ă-mă'-mŭr, ă-măm'-i-nŭ, ă-man'-tŭr,	<i>we are loved, ye are loved, they are loved.</i>

Imperfect. *was.*

<i>Sing.</i>	ă-mă'-băr, ăm-ă-bă'-rŭs or -rě, ăm-ă-bă'-tŭr,	<i>I was loved, thou wast loved, he was loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ăm-ă-bă'-mŭr, ăm-ă-băm'-i-nŭ, ăm-ă-ban'-tŭr,	<i>we were loved, ye were loved, they were loved.</i>

Future. *shall, or will be.*

<i>Sing.</i>	ă-mă'-bŏr, ă-măb'-ě-rŭs or -rě, ă-măb'-i-tŭr,	<i>I shall be loved, thou wilt be loved, he will be loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ă-măb'-i-mŭr, ăm-ă-bŭm'-i-nŭ, ăm-ă-bun'-tŭr,	<i>we shall be loved, ye will be loved, they will be loved.</i>

Perfect. *have been, or was.*

<i>Sing.</i>	ă-mă'-tŭs sum or fu'-i, ă-mă'-tŭs ęs or fu-is'-tŭ, ă-mă'-tŭs est or fu'-it,	<i>I have been loved, thou hast been loved, he has been loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ă-mă'-tŭ sŭ'-mŭs or fu'-i-mŭs, ă-mă'-tŭ es'-tŭs or fu-is'-tŭs, ă-mă'-tŭ sunt, fu'ě'-runt or -rě,	<i>we have been loved, ye have been loved, they have been loved.</i>

Pluperfect. *had been.*

<i>Sing.</i>	ă-mă'-tŭs ế'-ram or fu'-ě-ram, ă-mă'-tŭs ế'-răs or fu'-ě-răs, ă-mă'-tŭs ế'-răt or fu'-ě-răt,	<i>I had been loved, thou hadst been loved, he had been loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ă-mă'-tŭ ế'-ră'-mŭs or fu'-ě-ră'-mŭs, ă-mă'-tŭ ế'-ră'-tŭs or fu'-ě-ră'-tŭs, ă-mă'-tŭ ế'-rant or fu'-ě-rant,	<i>we had been loved, ye had been loved, they had been loved.</i>

Future Perfect. *shall have been.*

<i>Sing.</i>	ă-mă'-tŭs ế'-rŏ or fu'-ě-rŏ, ă-mă'-tŭs ế'-rŭs or fu'-ě-rŭs, ă-mă'-tŭs ế'-rŭt or fu'-ě-rŭt,	<i>I shall have been loved, thou wilt have been loved, he will have been loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ă-mă'-tŭ ế'-rŭ'-mŭs or fu'-ěr'-i-mŭs, ă-mă'-tŭ ế'-rŭ'-tŭs or fu'-ěr'-i-tŭs, ă-mă'-tŭ ế'-runt or fu'-ě-rŭnt,	<i>we shall have been loved, ye will have been loved, they will have been loved.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. *may, or can be.*

<i>Sing.</i> ă-měr,	<i>I may be loved,</i>
ă-mě'-rīs or -rě,	<i>thou mayst be loved,</i>
ă-mě'-tūr,	<i>he may be loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> ă-mě'-mūr,	<i>we may be loved,</i>
ă-mēm'-i-nī,	<i>ye may be loved,</i>
ă-men'-tūr,	<i>they may be loved.</i>

Imperfect. *might, could, would, or should be.*

<i>Sing.</i> ă-mă'-rēr,	<i>I would be loved,</i>
ăm-ă-rē'-rīs or -rě,	<i>thou wouldst be loved,</i>
ăm-ă-rē'-tūr,	<i>he would be loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> ăm-ă-rē'-mūr,	<i>we would be loved,</i>
ăm-ă-rēm'-i-nī,	<i>ye would be loved,</i>
ăm-ă-ren'-tūr,	<i>they would be loved.</i>

Perfect. *may have-been.*

<i>Sing.</i> ă-mă'-tūs sim or fu'-ě-rim,	<i>I may have been loved,</i>
ă-mă'-tūs sis or fu'-ě-rīs,	<i>thou mayst have been loved,</i>
ă-mă'-tūs sīt or fu'-ě-rīt,	<i>he may have been loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> ă-mă'-tī sī'-mūs or fu-er'-ī-mūs,	<i>we may have been loved,</i>
ă-mă'-tī sī'-tīs or fu-er'-ī-tīs,	<i>ye may have been loved,</i>
ă-mă'-tī sint or fu'-ě-rint,	<i>they may have been loved.</i>

Pluperfect. *might, could, would, or should have been.*

<i>Sing.</i> ă-mă'-tūs es'-sem or fu-is'-sem,	<i>I would have been loved,</i>
ă-mă'-tūs es'-sēs or fu-is'-sēs,	<i>thou wouldst have been loved,</i>
ă-mă'-tūs es'-sēt or fu-is'-sēt,	<i>he would have been loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> ă-mă'-tī es-sē'-mūs or fu-is-sē'-mūs,	<i>we would have been loved,</i>
ă-mă'-tī es-sē'-tīs or fu-is-sē'-tīs,	<i>ye would have been loved,</i>
ă-mă'-tī es'-sent or fu-is'-sent,	<i>they would have been loved.</i>

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres. Sing.</i> ă-mă'-rě,	<i>be thou loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> ă-mām'-i-nī,	<i>be ye loved.</i>
<i>Fut. Sing.</i> ă-mă'-tōr,	<i>thou shalt be loved,</i>
ă-mă'-tōr,	<i>he shall be loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> (ăm-ă-bīm-i-nī,	<i>ye shall be loved),</i>
ă-man'-tōr,	<i>they shall be loved.</i>

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i> ă-mă'-rī,	<i>to be loved.</i>
<i>Perfect.</i> ă-mă'-tūs es'-sē or fu-is'-sē,	<i>to have been loved.</i>
<i>Future.</i> ă-mă'-tum ī'-rī,	<i>to be about to be loved.</i>

## PARTICIPLES.

*Perfect.* ā-mā'-tūs,      loved, or having been loved.  
*Future.* ā-man'-dūs,      to be loved.

## SUPINE.

*Latter.* ā-mā'-tū,      to be loved.

## FORMATION OF THE TENSES.

From the first root, <i>am</i> , are derived			From the second root, <i>amao</i> , are derived		From the third root, <i>amat</i> , are derived	
	<i>Active.</i>	<i>Passive.</i>		<i>Active.</i>		<i>Passive.</i>
<i>Ind. pres.</i>	amo,	amor.	<i>Ind. perf.</i>	amāvi,	amātus sum,	etc.
— <i>imperf.</i>	amābam,	amābar.	— <i>plup.</i>	amavēram,	amātus eram,	etc.
— <i>fut.</i>	amābo,	amābor.	— <i>fut. perf.</i>	amavēro,	amātus ero,	etc.
<i>Subj. pres.</i>	amem,	amer.	<i>Subj. perf.</i>	amavērim,	amātus sim,	etc.
— <i>imperf.</i>	amārem,	amārer.	— <i>plup.</i>	amavissem,	amātus essem,	etc.
<i>Imperat. pres.</i>	amā,	amāre.	<i>Inf. perf.</i>	amavisse,	amātus esse,	etc.
— <i>fut.</i>	amāto,	amātor.	From the third root,			
<i>Inf. pres.</i>	amāre,	amāri.	<i>Inf. fut.</i>	amatūrus esse,	amātum iri.	
<i>Part. pres.</i>	amans,		<i>Part. fut.</i>	amatūrus.		
— <i>fut.</i>		amandus.	— <i>perf.</i>		amātus.	
<i>Gerund.</i>	amandū.		<i>Form. sup.</i>	amātum.	<i>Lat. sup.</i>	amātu.

## § 157. SECOND CONJUGATION.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

*Pres. Ind.* mō'-ne-ō.  
*Pres. Inf.* mō-nē'-rē.  
*Perf. Ind.* mōn'-u-i.  
*Supine.* mōn'-i-tum.

*Pres. Ind.* mō'-ne-ōr.  
*Pres. Inf.* mō-nē'-rī.  
*Perf. Part.* mōn'-i-tūs.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*I advise.*  
*Sing.* mō'-ne-ō,  
           mō'-nēs,  
           mō'-nēt;  
*Plur.* mō-nē'-mūs,  
           mō-nē'-tīs,  
           mō'-nent.

*I am advised.*  
*Sing.* mō'-ne-ōr,  
           mō-nē'-rīs or -rē,  
           mō-nē'-tūr;  
*Plur.* mō-nē'-mūr,  
           mō-nēm'-i-nī,  
           mō-nen'-tūr.

## Imperfect.

*I was advising.*  
*S.* mō-nē'-bam,  
       mō-nē'-bās,  
       mō-nē'-bāt;  
*P.* mōn-ē-bā'-mūs,  
       mōn-ē-bā'-tīs,  
       mō-nē'-bant.

*I was advised.*  
*S.* mō-nē'-bār,  
       mōn-ē-bā'-rīs or -rē,  
       mōn-ē-bā'-tūr;  
*P.* mōn-ē-bā'-mūr,  
       mōn-ē-bām'-i-nī,  
       mōn-ē-ban'-tūr.

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## Future.

*I shall or will advise.*

- S.* mō-nē'-bǝ,  
mō-nē'-bīs,  
mō-nē'-bīt;  
*P.* mō-nēb'-i-mūs,  
mō-nēb'-i-tīs,  
mō-nē'-bunt.

*I shall or will be advised.*

- S.* mō-nē'-bǝr,  
mō-nēb'-ē-rīs or -rē,  
mō-nēb'-i-tūr;  
*P.* mō-nēb'-i-mūr,  
mōn-ē-bīm'-i-nī,  
mōn-ē-bun'-tūr.

## Perfect.

*I advised or have advised.*

- S.* mōn'-u-i,  
mōn-u-is'-tī,  
mōn'-u-īt;  
*P.* mō-nu'-i-mūs,  
mōn-u-is'-tīs,  
mōn-u-ē'-runt or -rē.

*I was or have been advised.*

- S.* mōn'-i-tūs sum or fu'-i,  
mōn'-i-tūs es or fu-is'-tī,  
mōn'-i-tūs est or fu-īt;  
*P.* mōn'-i-tī sū-mūs or fu'-i-mūs,  
mōn'-i-tī es'-tīs or fu-is'-tīs,  
mōn'-i-tī sunt, fu-ē'-runt or -rē-

## Pluperfect.

*I had advised.*

- S.* mō-nu'-ē-ram,  
mō-nu'-ē-rās,  
mō-nu'-ē-rāt;  
*P.* mōn-u-ē-rā-mūs,  
mōn-u-ē-rā'-tīs,  
mō-nu'-ē-rant.

*I had been advised.*

- S.* mōn'-i-tūs ē'-ram or fu'-ē-ram,  
mōn'-i-tūs ē'-rās or fu'-ē-rās,  
mōn'-i-tūs ē'-rāt or fu'-ē-rāt;  
*P.* mōn'-i-tī ē-rā-mūs or fu-e-rā'-mūs,  
mōn'-i-tī ē-rā'-tīs or fu-e-rā'-tīs,  
mōn'-i-tī ē'-rant or fu'-ē-rant.

## Future Perfect.

*I shall have advised.*

- S.* mō-nu'-ē-rǝ,  
mō-nu'-ē-rīs,  
mō-nu'-ē-rīt;  
*P.* mōn-u-ēr'-i-mūs,  
mōn-u-ēr'-i-tīs,  
mō-nu'-ē-riunt.

*I shall have been advised.*

- S.* mōn'-i-tūs ē'-rǝ or fu'-ē-rǝ,  
mōn'-i-tūs ē'-rīs or fu'-ē-rīs,  
mōn'-i-tūs ē'-rīt or fu'-ē-rīt;  
*P.* mōn'-i-tī ēr'-i-mūs or fu-ēr'-i-mūs,  
mōn'-i-tī ēr'-i-tīs or fu-ēr'-i-tīs,  
mōn'-i-tī ē'-runt or fu'-ē-runt.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*I may or can advise.*

- S.* mǝ'-ne-am,  
mǝ'-ne-ās,  
mǝ'-ne-āt;  
*P.* mǝ-ne-ā'-mūs,  
mǝ-ne-ā'-tīs,  
mǝ'-ne-ant.

*I may or can be advised.*

- S.* mǝ'-ne-ār,  
mǝ-ne-ā'-rīs or -rē,  
mǝ-ne-ā'-tūr;  
*P.* mǝ-ne-ā'-mūr,  
mǝ-ne-ām'-i-nī,  
mǝ-ne-an'-tūr.



## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## Imperfect.

*I might, could, would, or should advise.*

- S. mǒ-ně'-rem,  
mǒ-ně'-rēs,  
mǒ-ně'-rēt;  
P. mǒn-ē-rē'-mūs,  
mǒn-ē-rē'-tīs,  
mǒ-ně'-rent.

*I might, could, would, or should be advised.*

- S. mǒ-ně'-rēr,  
mǒn-ē-rē'-rīs or -ré,  
mǒn-ē-rē'-tūr;  
P. mǒn-ē-rē'-mūr,  
mǒn-ē-rēm'-i-nī,  
mǒn-ē-ren'-tūr.

## Perfect.

*I may have advised.*

- S. mǒ-nu'-ē-rim,  
mǒ-nu'-ē-rīs,  
mǒ-nu'-ē-rīt;  
P. mǒn-u-ēr'-ī-mūs,  
mǒn-u-ēr'-ī-tīs,  
mǒ-nu'-ē-rint.

*I may have been advised.*

- S. mǒn'-ī-tūs sim or fu-ē-rim,  
mǒn'-ī-tūs sis or fu'-ē-rīs,  
mǒn'-ī-tūs sit or fu'-ē-rīt;  
P. mǒn'-ī-ti sī'-mūs or fu-ēr'-ī-mūs,  
mǒn'-ī-ti sī'-tīs or fu-ēr'-ī-tīs,  
mǒn'-ī-ti sint or fu'-ē-rint.

## Pluperfect.

*I might, could, would, or should have advised.*

- S. mǒn-u-is'-sem,  
mǒn-u-is'-sēs,  
mǒn-u-is'-sēt;  
P. mǒn-u-is-sē'-mūs,  
mǒn-u-is-sē'-tīs,  
mǒn-u-is'-sent.

*I might, could, would, or should have been advised.*

- S. mǒn'-ī-tūs es'-sem or fu-is'-sem,  
mǒn'-ī-tūs es'-sēs or fu-is'-sēs,  
mǒn'-ī-tūs es'-sēt or fu-is'-sēt;  
P. mǒn'-ī-ti es-sē'-mūs or fu-is-sē'-mūs,  
mǒn'-ī-ti es-sē'-tīs or fu-is-sē'-tīs,  
mǒn'-ī-ti es'-sent or fu-is'-sent.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Pres. S. mǒ'-ně, advise thou;*

*P. mǒ-ně'-tē, advise ye.*

*Fut. S. mǒ-ně'-tǒ, thou shalt advise,*

*mǒ-ně'-tǒ, he shall advise;*

*P. mǒn-ē-tǒ'-tē, ye shall advise,*

*mǒ-nēn'-tǒ, they shall advise.*

*Pres. S. mǒ-ně'-rē, be thou advised;*

*P. mǒ-nēm'-ī-nī, be ye advised.*

*Fut. S. mǒ-ně'-tǒr, thou shalt be advised,*

*mǒ-ně'-tǒr, he shall be advised:*

*P. (mǒn-ē-bim'-ī-nī, ye shall be advised,)*

*mǒ-nēn'-tǒr, they shall be advised.*

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Pres. mǒ-ně'-rē, to advise.*

*Perf. mǒn-u-is'-sē, to have advised.*

*Fut. mǒn-i-tū'-rūs es'-sē, to be about to advise.*

*Pres. mǒ-ně'-rī, to be advised.*

*Perf. mǒn'-ī-tūs es'-sē or fu-is'-sē, to have been advised.*

*Fut. mǒn'-ī-tum i'-rī, to be about to be advised.*

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## PARTICIPLES.

*Pres.* mǒ'-nens, *advising.**Perf.* mǒn'-i-tūs, *advised.**Fut.* mǒn-i-tū-rūs, *about to advise.**Fut.* mǒ-nen'-dūs, *to be advised.*

## GERUND.

*G.* mǒ-nen'-di, *of advising,**D.* mǒ-nen'-dō, *etc.**Ac.* mǒ-nen'-dum,*Ab.* mǒ-nen'-dō.

## SUPINES.

*Former.* mǒn'-i-tum, *to advise.* | *Latter.* mǒn'-i-tū, *to be advised.*

## FORMATION OF THE TENSES.

From the first root, *mon*, are derived,

	Active.	Passive.
<i>Ind. pres.</i>	moneo, moneor.	
— <i>imperf.</i>	monēbam, monēbar.	
— <i>fut.</i>	monēbo, monēbor.	
<i>Subj. pres.</i>	moneam, monear.	
— <i>imperf.</i>	monērem, monērer.	
<i>Imperat. pres.</i>	mone, monēre.	
— <i>fut.</i>	monēto, monētor.	
<i>Inf. pres.</i>	monēre, monēri.	
<i>Part. pres.</i>	monens,	
— <i>fut.</i>	monendus.	
<i>Gerund.</i>	monendū.	

From the second root, *monu*, are derived,

	Active.	Passive.
<i>Ind. perf.</i>	monui,	monitus sum, etc.
— <i>plup.</i>	monuēram,	monitus eram, etc.
— <i>fut. perf.</i>	monuēro,	monitus ero, etc.
<i>Subj. perf.</i>	monuērim,	monitus sim, etc.
— <i>plup.</i>	monuissē,	monitus essem, etc.
<i>Inf. perf.</i>	monuisse,	monitus esse, etc.
From the third root,		
<i>Inf. fut.</i>	monitūrus esse,	monitum iri.
<i>Part. fut.</i>	monitūrus,	
— <i>perf.</i>		monitus.
<i>Form. Sup.</i>	monitum.	<i>Lat. Sup.</i> monitus.

## § 158. THIRD CONJUGATION.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

*Pres. Ind.* rě'-gǒ.  
*Pres. Inf.* rěg'-ě-rě.  
*Perf. Ind.* rex'-i.  
*Supine.* rec'-tum.

*Pres. Ind.* rě'-gǒr.  
*Pres. Inf.* rě'-gī.  
*Perf. Part.* rec'-tūs.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*I rule.*  
*Sing.* rě'-gǒ,  
 rě'-gīs,  
 rě'-gīt;  
*Plur.* rěg'-i-mūs,  
 rěg'-i-tīs,  
 rě'-gunt.

*I am ruled.*  
*Sing.* rě'-gǒr,  
 rěg'-ě-rīs or -rě,  
 rěg'-i-tūr;  
*Plur.* rěg'-i-mūr,  
 rěgīm'-i-ni,  
 rě-gun'-tūr.

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## Imperfect.

*I was ruling.*

- S. rě-gē'-bam,  
rě-gē'-bās,  
rě-gē'-bāt;  
P. rěg-ē-bā'-mūs,  
rěg-ē-bā'-tis,  
rě-gē'-bant.

*I was ruled.*

- S. rě-gē'-bār,  
rěg-ē-bā'-ris or -rě,  
rěg-ē-bā'-tūr;  
P. rěg-ē-bā'-mūr,  
rěg-ē-bām'-i-nī,  
rěg-ē-ban'-tūr.

## Future.

*I shall or will rule.*

- S. rě'-gam,  
rě'-gēs,  
rě'-gēt;  
P. rě-gē'-mūs,  
rě-gē'-tis,  
rě-gent.

*I shall or will be ruled.*

- S. rě'-gār,  
rě-gē'-ris or -rě,  
rě-gē'-tūr;  
P. rě-gē'-mūr,  
rě-gēm'-i-nī,  
rě-gen'-tūr.

## Perfect.

*I ruled or have ruled.*

- S. rex'-ī,  
rex-is'-tī,  
rex-it-;  
P. rex-ī'-mūs,  
rex-is'-tis,  
rex-ē'-runt or -rě.

*I was or have been ruled.*

- S. rec'-tūs sum or fu'-ī,  
rec'-tūs es or fu-is'-tī,  
rec'-tūs est or fu-it-;  
P. rec'-tī sū'-mūs or fu-ī'-mūs,  
rec'-tī es'-tis or fu-is'-tis,  
rec'-tī sunt, fu-ē'-runt or -rě

## Pluperfect.

*I had ruled.*

- S. rex'-ē-ram,  
rex'-ē-rās,  
rex'-ē-rāt;  
P. rex-ē-rā'-mūs,  
rex-ē-rā'-tis,  
rex-ē'-rant.

*I had been ruled.*

- S. rec'-tūs ē'-ram or fu'-ē-ram,  
rec'-tūs ē'-rās or fu'-ē-rās,  
rec'-tūs ē'-rāt or fu'-ē-rāt;  
P. rec'-tī ē-rā'-mūs or fu-ē-rā'-mūs,  
rec'-tī ē-rā'-tis or fu-ē-rā'-tis,  
rec'-tī ē'-rant or fu'-ē-rant.

## Future Perfect.

*I shall have ruled.*

- S. rex'-ē-rō,  
rex'-ē-rīs,  
rex'-ē-rīt;  
P. rex-ēr'-ī-mūs,  
rex-ēr'-ī-tis,  
rex-ē'-rint.

*I shall have been ruled.*

- S. rec'-tūs ē'-rō or fu'-ē-rō,  
rec'-tūs ē'-rīs or fu'-ē-rīs,  
rec'-tūs ē'-rīt or fu'-ē-rīt;  
P. rec'-tī ēr'-ī-mūs or fu-ēr'-ī-mūs,  
rec'-tī ēr'-ī-tis or fu-ēr'-ī-tis,  
rec'-tī ē'-runt or fu'-ē-rint.

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*I may or can rule.*

S. rě-gam,  
rě-gas,  
rě-gāt;  
P. rě-gā'-mūs,  
rě-gā'-tis,  
rě-gant.

*I may or can be ruled.*

S. rě-gār,  
rě-gā'-ris or -rě,  
rě-gā'-tūr;  
P. rě-gā'-mūr,  
rě-gām'-i-nī,  
rě-gan'-tūr.

## Imperfect.

*I might, could, would, or should rule.*

S. rěg'-ě-rem,  
rěg'-ě-rēs,  
rěg'-ě-rēt;  
P. rěg'-ě-rē-mūs,  
rěg'-ě-rē-tis,  
rěg'-ě-rent.

*I might, could, would, or should be ruled.*

S. rěg'-ě-rēr,  
rěg'-ě-rē'-ris or -rě,  
rěg'-ě-rē'-tūr;  
P. rěg'-ě-rē-mūr,  
rěg'-ě-rēm'-i-nī,  
rěg'-ě-ren'-tūr.

## Perfect.

*I may have ruled.*

S. rex'-ě-rim,  
rex'-ě-ris,  
rex'-ě-rit;  
P. rex'-ēr'-i-mūs,  
rex'-ēr'-i-tis,  
rex'-ě-rint.

*I may have been ruled.*

S. rec'-tūs sim or fu'-ě-rim,  
rec'-tūs sis or fu'-ě-ris,  
rec'-tūs sit or fu'-ě-rit;  
P. rec'-ti sī'-mūs or fu'-ēr'-i-mūs,  
rec'-ti sī'-tis or fu'-ēr'-i-tis,  
rec'-ti sint or fu'-ě-rint.

## Pluperfect.

*I might, could, would, or should have ruled.*

S. rex-is'-sem,  
rex-is'-sēs,  
rex-is'-sēt;  
P. rex-is-sē-mūs,  
rex-is-sē-tis,  
rex-is-sent.

*I might, could, would, or should have been ruled.*

S. rec'-tūs es'-sem or fu-is'-sem,  
rec'-tūs es'-sēs or fu-is'-sēs,  
rec'-tūs es'-sēt or fu-is'-sēt;  
P. rec'-ti es-sē-mūs or fu-is-sē-mūs,  
rec'-ti es-sē-tis or fu-is-sē-tis,  
rec'-ti es-sent or fu-is-sent.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Pres. S. rě-gě, rule thou,**P. rěg'-i-tě, rule ye.**Fut. S. rěg'-i-tō, thou shalt rule,**rěg'-i-tō, he shall rule;*

*P. rěg'-i-tō-tě, ye shall rule,  
rě-gun'-tō, they shall rule.*

*Pres. S. rěg'-ě-rě, be thou ruled;**P. rě-gīm'-i-nī, be ye ruled.**Fut. S. rěg'-i-tōr, thou shalt be ruled,**rěg'-i-tōr, he shall be ruled;*

*P. (rě-gīm'-i-nī, ye shall, etc.)  
rě-gun'-tōr, they shall, etc.*

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Pres.* rēg'-ē-rē, to rule.*Perf.* rex-is'-ēē, to have ruled.*Fut.* rec-tū-rūs es-se, to be about to rule.*Pres.* rē'-gī, to be ruled.*Perf.* rec'-tūs es'-sē or fu-is'-ēē, to have been ruled.*Fut.* rec'-tum ī-rī, to be about to be ruled.

## PARTICIPLES.

*Pres.* rē'-gens, ruling.*Fut.* rec-tū-rūs, about to rule.*Perf.* rec'-tūs, ruled.*Fut.* rē-gen'-dūs, to be ruled.

## GERUND.

*G.* rē-gen'-dī, of ruling.*D.* rē-gen'-dō, etc.*Ac.* rē-gen'-dum,*Ab.* rē-gen'-dō.

## SUPINES.

*Former.* rec'-tum, to rule.*Latter.* rec'-tū, to be ruled.

## FORMATION OF THE TENSES.

From the first root, *reg*, are derived,

	Active.	Passive.
<i>Ind. pres.</i>	rego,	regor.
— <i>imperf.</i>	regēbam,	regēbar.
— <i>fut.</i>	regam,	regar.
<i>Subj. pres.</i>	regam,	regar.
— <i>imperf.</i>	regērem,	regērer.
<i>Imperat. pres.</i>	rege,	regere.
— <i>fut.</i>	regito,	regitor.
<i>Inf. pres.</i>	regere;	regi.
<i>Part. pres.</i>	regens,	
— <i>fut.</i>		regendus.
<i>Gerund.</i>	regendū.	

From the second root, *rex*, are derived,

	Active.	Passive.
<i>Ind. perf.</i>	rexī,	rectus sum, etc.
— <i>plup.</i>	rexēram,	rectus eram, etc.
— <i>fut. perf.</i>	rexēro,	rectus ero, etc.
<i>Subj. perf.</i>	rexērim,	rectus sim, etc.
— <i>plup.</i>	rexissem,	rectus essem, etc.
<i>Inf. perf.</i>	rexisse.	rectus esse, etc.

From the third root,

<i>Inf. fut.</i>	rectūrus esse,	rectum iri.
<i>Part. fut.</i>	rectūrus.	
— <i>perf.</i>		rectus.
<i>Form. Sup.</i>	rectum.	<i>Lat. Sup.</i> rectu.

§ 159. VERBS IN *IO* OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

Verbs in *io* of the third conjugation, in tenses formed from the first root, have, as connecting vowels, *ia*, *ie*, *io*, or *iu*, wherever the same occur in the fourth conjugation; but where they have only a single connecting vowel, it is the same which characterizes other verbs of the third conjugation. They are all conjugated like *cāpio*.

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

*Pres. Ind.* că'-pi-ŏ, *to take.**Pres. Inf.* căp'-ē-rē.*Perf. Ind.* cē'-pi.*Supine.* cap'-tum.*Pres. Ind.* că'-pi-ŏr, *to be taken.**Pres. Inf.* că'-pi.*Perf. Part.* cap'-tūa.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*S.* că'-pi-ŏ,  
că'-pīs,  
că'-pīt;  
*P.* căp'-ī-mūs,  
căp'-ī-tīs,  
că'-pi-unt.

*S.* că'-pi-ŏr,  
căp'-ē-rīs *or* -rē,  
căp'-ī-tūr;  
*P.* căp'-ī-mūr,  
că-pīm'-ī-nī,  
că'-pi-un-tūr.

## Imperfect.

*S.* că'-pi-ē'-bam,  
că'-pi-ē'-bās,  
că'-pi-ē'-bāt;  
*P.* că'-pi-ē'-bā'-mūs,  
că'-pi-ē'-bā'-tīs,  
că'-pi-ē'-bant.

*S.* că'-pi-ē'-bār,  
că'-pi-ē'-bā'-rīs *or* -rē,  
că'-pi-ē'-bā'-tūr;  
*P.* că'-pi-ē'-bā'-mūr,  
că'-pi-ē'-bām'-ī-nī,  
că'-pi-ē'-ban-tūr.

## Future.

*S.* că'-pi-am,  
că'-pi-ēs,  
că'-pi-ēt;  
*P.* că'-pi-ē'-mūs,  
că'-pi-ē'-tīs,  
că'-pi-ent.

*S.* că'-pi-ār,  
că'-pi-ē'-rīs *or* -rē,  
că'-pi-ē'-tūr;  
*P.* că'-pi-ē'-mūr,  
că'-pi-ēm'-ī-nī,  
că'-pi-en-tūr.

The parts formed from the second and third roots being entirely regular, only a synopsis of them is given.

*Perf.* cē'-pi.  
*Plup.* cēp'-ē-ram.  
*Fut. perf.* cēp'-ē-rō.

*Perf.* cap'-tūs *sum or fu'*-ī.  
*Plup.* cap'-tūs ē'-ram *or fu'*-ē-ram.  
*Fut. perf.* cap'-tūs ē'-rō *or fu'*-ē-rō.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*S.* că'-pi-am,  
că'-pi-ās,  
că'-pi-āt;  
*P.* că'-pi-ā'-mūs,  
că'-pi-ā'-tīs,  
că'-pi-ant.

*S.* că'-pi-ār,  
că'-pi-ā'-rīs *or* -rē,  
că'-pi-ā'-tūr;  
*P.* că'-pi-ā'-mūr,  
că'-pi-ām'-ī-nī,  
că'-pi-an-tūr.

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## Imperfect.

*S.* cǎp'-ě-rem,  
cǎp'-ě-rēs,  
cǎp'-ě-rēt;  
*P.* cǎp'-ě-rē-mūs,  
cǎp'-ě-rē-tīs,  
cǎp'-ě-rent.

*S.* cǎp'-ě-rēr,  
cǎp'-ě-rē-rīs or -rē,  
cǎp'-ě-rē-tūr;  
*P.* cǎp'-ě-rē-mūr,  
cǎp'-ě-rēm'-ī-nī,  
cǎp'-ě-ren'-tūr.

*Perf.* cēp'-ě-rim.  
*Plup.* cē-pis'-sem.

*Perf.* cap'-tūs sim or fu'-ě-rim.  
*Plup.* cap'-tūs es'-sem or fu-is'-sem.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Pres.* 2. *S.* cǎ'-pě; *P.* 2. cǎp'-ī-tě. | *S.* cǎp'-ě-rě; *P.* cǎ-pīm'-ī-nī.  
*Fut.* 2. cǎp'-ī-tǔ, cǎp'-ī-tǔ-tě, | cǎp'-ī-tǔr, (cǎ-pī-ēm'-ī-nī),  
— 3. cǎp'-ī-tǔ; cǎ-pi-un'-tǔ. | cǎp'-ī-tǔr; cǎ-pi-un'-tǔr.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Pres.* cǎp'-ě-rě.  
*Perf.* cē-pis'-sě.  
*Fut.* cap-tū-rūs es'-sě.

*Pres.* cǎ'-pī.  
*Perf.* cap'-tūs es'-sě or fu-is'-sě.  
*Fut.* cap'-tum ī-rī.

## PARTICIPLES.

*Pres.* cǎ'-pi-ens.  
*Fut.* cap-tū-rūs.

*Perf.* cap'-tūs.  
*Fut.* cǎ-pi-en'-dūs.

## GERUND.

*G.* cǎ-pi-en'-dī, etc.

## SUPINES.

*Former.* cap'-tum.

*Latter.* cap'-tū.

## § 160. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

*Pres. Ind.* au'-dī-ō.  
*Pres. Inf.* au-dī'-rě.  
*Perf. Ind.* au-dī'-vī.  
*Supine.* au-dī'-tum.

*Pres. Ind.* au'-dī-ōr.  
*Pres. Inf.* au-dī'-rī.  
*Perf. Part.* au-dī'-tūs.

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*I hear.*

S. au'-di-ō,  
au'-dis,  
au'dit;  
P. au-di'-mūs,  
au'-di'-tis,  
au'-di-unt.

*I am heard.*

S. au'-di-ōr,  
au-di'-ris or -rē,  
au-di'-tūr;  
P. au-di'-mūr,  
au-dim'-i-nī,  
au-di-un'-tūr.

## Imperfect.

*I was hearing.*

S. au-di-ē'-bam,  
au-di-ē'-bās,  
au-di-ē'-bāt;  
P. au-di-ē-bā'-mūs,  
au-di-ē-bā'-tis,  
au-di-ē-bant.

*I was heard.*

S. au-di-ē'-bār,  
au-di-ē-bā'-ris or -rē,  
au-di-ē-bā'-tūr;  
P. au-di-ē-bā'-mūr,  
au-di-ē-bām'-i-nī,  
au-di-ē-ban'-tūr.

## Future.

*I shall or will hear.*

S. au'-di-am,  
au'-di-ēs,  
au'-di-ēt;  
P. au-di-ē'-mūs,  
au-di-ē'-tis,  
au'-di-ent.

*I shall or will be heard.*

S. au'-di-ār,  
au-di-ē'-ris or -rē,  
au-di-ē'-tūr;  
P. au-di-ē'-mūr,  
au-di-ēm'-i-nī,  
au-di-en'-tūr.

## Perfect.

*I heard or have heard.*

S. au-di'-vī,  
au-di-vis'-tī,  
au-di'-vīt;  
P. au-div'-i-mūs,  
au-di-vis'-tis,  
au-di-vē'-runt or -rē.

*I have been or was heard.*

S. au-di'-tūs sum or fu'-ī,  
au-di'-tūs es or fu-is'-tī,  
au-di'-tūs est or fu-it;  
P. au-di'-tī sū'-mūs or fu'-i-mūs,  
au-di'-tī es'-tis or fu-is'-tis,  
au-di'-tī sunt, fu-ē'-runt or -rē.

## Pluperfect.

*I had heard.*

S. au-div'-ē-ram,  
au-div'-ē-rās,  
au-div'-ē-rāt;  
P. au-div'-ē-rā'-mūs,  
au-div'-ē-rā'-tis,  
au-div'-ē-rant.

*I had been heard.*

S. au-di'-tūs ē'-ram or fu'-ē-ram,  
au-di'-tūs ē'-rās or fu'-ē-rās,  
au-di'-tūs ē'-rāt or fu'-ē-rāt;  
P. au-di'-tī ē-rā'-mūs or fu'-ē-rā'-mūs,  
au-di'-tī ē-rā'-tis or fu'-ē-rā'-tis,  
au-di'-tī ē'-rant or fu'-ē-rant.



## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## Future Perfect.

*I shall have heard.*

S. au-div'-č-rō,

au-div'-č-rīs,

au-div'-č-rīt;

P. au-di-vēr'-ī-mūs,

au-di-vēr'-ī-tīs,

au-div'-č-rint.

*I shall have been heard.*

S. au-di'-tūs č'-rō or fu'-č-rō,

au-di'-tūs č'-rīs or fu'-č-rīs,

au-di'-tūs č'-rīt or fu'-č-rīt;

P. au-di'-tī č'-ī-mūs or fu'-č'-ī-mūs,

au-di'-tī č'-ī-tīs or fu'-č'-ī-tīs,

au-di'-tī č'-runt or fu'-č-rint.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*I may or can hear.*

S. au'-di-am,

au'-di-ās,

au'-di-ūt;

P. au-di-ā'-mūs,

au-di-ā'-tīs,

au'-di-ant.

*I may or can be heard.*

S. au'-di-ār,

au-di-ā'-rīs or -rē,

au-di-ā'-tūr;

P. au-di-ā'-mūr,

au-di-ām'-ī-nī,

au-di-an'-tūr.

## Imperfect.

*I might, could, would, or should hear.*

S. au-di'-rem,

au-di'-rēs,

au-di'-rēt;

P. au-di-rē'-mūs,

au-di-rē'-tīs,

au-di'-rent.

*I might, could, would, or should be heard.*

S. au-di'-rēr,

au-di-rē'-rīs or -rē,

au-di-rē'-tūr;

P. au-di-rē'-mūr,

au-di-rēm'-ī-nī,

au-di-ren'-tūr.

## Perfect.

*I may have heard.*

S. au-div'-č-rim,

au-div'-č-rīs,

au-div'-č-rīt;

P. au-di-vēr'-ī-mūs,

au-di-vēr'-ī-tīs,

au-div'-č-rint.

*I may have been heard.*

S. au-di'-tūs sim or fu'-č-rim,

au-di'-tūs sis or fu'-č-rīs,

au-di'-tūs sīt or fu'-č-rīt;

P. au-di'-tī sī'-mūs or fu'-č'-ī-mūs,

au-di'-tī sī'-tīs or fu'-č'-ī-tīs,

au-di'-tī sint or fu'-č-rint.

## Pluperfect.

*I might, could, would, or should have heard.*

S. au-di-vis'-sem,

au-di-vis'-sēs,

au-di-vis'-sēt;

P. au-di-vis-sē'-mūs,

au-di-vis-sē'-tīs,

au-di-vis'-sent.

*I might, could, would, or should have been heard.*

S. au-di'-tūs es'-sem or fu-is'-sem,

au-di'-tūs es'-sēs or fu-is'-sēs,

au-di'-tūs es'-sēt or fu-is'-sēt;

P. au-di'-tī es-sē'-mūs or fu-is-sē'-mūs,

au-di'-tī es-sē'-tīs or fu-is-sē'-tīs,

au-di'-tī es'-sent or fu-is'-sent.

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Pres. S.* au-di'-rē, hear thou;  
*P.* au-di'-tē, hear ye.  
*Fut. S.* au-di'-tō, thou shalt hear,  
 au-di'-tō, he shall hear;  
*P.* au-di-tō'-tē, ye shall hear,  
 au-di-un'-tō, they shall  
 hear.

*Pres. S.* au-di'-rē, be thou heard;  
*P.* au-dim'-i-nī, be ye heard.  
*Fut. S.* au-di'-tōr, thou shalt be  
 heard,  
 au-di'-tōr, he shall be  
 heard;  
*P.* (au-di-ēm'-i-nī, ye shall  
 be heard,)  
 au-di-un'-tōr, they shall  
 be heard.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Pres.* au-di'-rē, to hear.  
*Perf.* au-di-vis'-sē, to have heard.  
*Fut.* au-di-tū'-rūs es-sē, to be  
 about to hear.

*Pres.* au-di'-rī, to be heard.  
*Perf.* au-di'-tūs es'-sē or fu-is'-  
 sē, to have been heard.  
*Fut.* au-di'-tum ī-rī, to be about  
 to be heard.

## PARTICIPLES.

*Pres.* au-di-ēns, hearing.  
*Fut.* au-di-tū'-rūs, about to hear.

*Perf.* au-di'-tūs, heard.  
*Fut.* au-di-en'-dūs, to be heard.

## GERUND.

*G.* au-di-en'-dī, of hearing.  
*D.* au-di-en'-dō, etc.  
*Ac.* au-di-en'-dum,  
*Ab.* au-di-en'-dō.

## SUPINES.

*Former.* au-di'-tum, to hear.

*Latter.* au-di'-tū, to be heard.

## FORMATION OF THE TENSES.

From the first root, *aud*, are derived

	Active.	Passive.
<i>Ind. pres.</i>	audio,	audior.
— <i>imperf.</i>	audiēbam,	audiēbar.
— <i>fut.</i>	audiam,	audiar.
<i>Subj. pres.</i>	audiam,	audiar.
— <i>imperf.</i>	audirem,	audirer.
<i>Imperat. pres.</i>	audi,	audire.
— <i>fut.</i>	audito,	auditor.
<i>Inf. pres.</i>	audire,	audiri.
<i>Part. pres.</i>	audiens,	
— <i>fut.</i>		audiendus.
<i>Gerund.</i>	audiendū.	

From the second root, *audī*, are derived,

	Active.	Passive.
<i>Ind. perf.</i>	audīvi,	auditus sum, etc.
— <i>plup.</i>	audivēram,	auditus eram, etc.
— <i>fut. perf.</i>	audivēro,	auditus ero, etc.
<i>Subj. perf.</i>	audivērim,	auditus sim, etc.
— <i>plup.</i>	audivissem,	auditus essem, etc.
<i>Inf. perf.</i>	audivisse,	auditus esse, etc.

From the third root,  
*Inf. fut.* auditūrus esse, auditum iri.

*Part. fut.* auditūrus.

— *perf.*

*Form. sup.* auditum.

auditus.

*Lat. sup.* audita.

## DEPONENT VERBS.

✕ § 161. Deponent verbs are conjugated like the passive voice, and have also all the participles and participial formations of the active voice. Neuter deponent verbs, however, want the future passive participle, except that the neuter in *dum* is sometimes used impersonally. See § 184, 3.

The following is an example of an active deponent verb of the first conjugation :—

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Mi'-rör, mi-rä'-rī, mi-rä'-tūs, to admire.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i>	mi'-rör, mi-rä'-rīs, etc.	<i>I admire, etc.</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	mi-rä'-bär, etc.	<i>I was admiring.</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	mi-rä'-bör,	<i>I shall admire.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	mi-rä'-tūs sum or fu'-ī,	<i>I have admired.</i>
<i>Plup.</i>	mi-rä'-tūs ē'-ram or fu'-ē-ram,	<i>I had admired.</i>
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	mi-rä'-tūs ē'-ro or fu'-ē-ro,	<i>I shall have admired.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i>	mi'-rēr, mi-rē'-rīs, etc.	<i>I may admire, etc.</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	mi-rä'-rēr,	<i>I would admire.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	mi-rä'-tūs sim or fu'-ē-rim,	<i>I may have admired.</i>
<i>Plup.</i>	mi-rä'-tūs es'-sem or fu-is'-sem,	<i>I would have admired.</i>

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres. S.</i>	mi-rä'-rē, admire thou ;	<i>P. mi-rām'-ī-nī, admire ye.</i>
<i>Fut. S.</i>	mi-rä'-tör, thou shalt admire, mi-rä'-tör, he shall admire ;	<i>P. (mī-rā-bīm'-ī-nī, ye shall, etc.) mī-ran'-tör, they shall, etc.</i>

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i>	mi-rä'-rī,	<i>to admire.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	mi-rä'-tūs es'-sē or fu-is'-sē,	<i>to have admired.</i>
<i>Fut. Act.</i>	mī-rā-tū'-rūs es'-sē,	<i>to be about to admire.</i>
<i>Fut. Pass.</i>	mī-rā'-tum ī'-rī,	<i>to be about to be admired.</i>

## PARTICIPLES.

<i>Pres.</i>	mī'-rans,	<i>admiring.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	mī-rä'-tūs,	<i>having admired.</i>
<i>Fut. Act.</i>	mī-rā-tū'-rūs,	<i>about to admire.</i>
<i>Fut. Pass.</i>	mī-ran'-dūs,	<i>to be admired.</i>

## GERUND.

G. mī-ran'-dī, of admiring, etc.

## SUPINES.

Former mī-rä'-tum, to admire. | Latter. mī-rä'-tū, to be admired.

## REMARKS ON THE CONJUGATIONS.

*Of the Tenses formed from the First Root.*

§ 162. 1. A few words in the present subjunctive of the first and third conjugations, in the earlier writers and in the poets, end in *im, is, it, etc.*; as, *edim, edis, edit, edimus*; *comedim, comedis, comedint*; for *edam, etc. comedam, etc.*; *duam, duis, duit, duint*; and *perduam, perduis, perduit, perduint*; for *dem, etc. perdam, etc.* from old forms *duo* and *perduo*, for *uo* and *perdo*: so *credis, creduit*, and also *creduam, creduas, creduat*, for *credam, etc.* from the old form *creduo*, for *credo*. The form in *im, etc.* was retained as the regular form in *sim* and *velim*, from *sum* and *volo*, and in their compounds.

2. The imperfect indicative in the fourth conjugation, sometimes, especially in the more ancient writers, ends in *ibam* and *ibar*, for *iëbam* and *iëbar*, and the future in *ibo* and *ibor*, for *iam* and *iar*; as, *vestibat*, Virg., *largibar*, Propert., for *vestiebat, largiebar*; *scibo, opperibor*, for *sciam, opperiar*. *Ibam* and *ibo* were retained as the regular forms of *eo, queo*, and *nequeo*. Cf. § 182.

3. The termination *re*, in the second person singular of the passive voice, is rare in the present, but common in the other simple tenses.

4. The imperatives of *dico, dūco, fācio*, and *fēro*, are usually written *dic, duc, fac*, and *fer*; in like manner their compounds, except those compounds of *fācio* which change *a* into *i*; as, *effice, confice*; but *calfice* also is found in Cicero; and in old writers *dice, edice, addice, indice, dūce, abduce, reduce, traduce*, and *fāce*. *Inger* for *ingere* is rare. *Scio* has not *sci*, but its place is supplied by *scito*, and *scitūle* is preferred to *scite*.

5. In the imperative future of the passive voice, but especially of deponents, early writers and their imitators sometimes used the active instead of the passive form; as, *arbitrāto, amplexāto, utito, nitito*, for *arbitrātor, etc.*; and *censento, utunto, tuento, etc.* for *censor, etc.*—In the second and third persons singular occur, also, forms in *-mino*; as, *hortamino, veremino, fruimino*; for *hortātor, etc.*

6. The syllable *er* was often added to the present infinitive passive by early writers and especially by the poets; as, *amarier* for *amāri*, *dicier* for *dicti*.

*Of the Tenses formed from the Second Root.*

7. (a.) When the second root ends in *v*, a syncopation and contraction often occur in the tenses formed from it, by omitting *v*, and sinking the first vowel of the termination in the final vowel of the root, when followed, in the fourth conjugation, by *s*, and in the other conjugations, by *s* or *r*; as, *audissem* for *audivissem*, *amasti* for *amavisti*, *implērent* for *impleverunt*, *nōram* and *nosse* for *noveram* and *novisse*.

(b.) When the second root ends in *iv*, *v* is often omitted without contraction; as, *audivēro* for *audivēro*; *audivisse* for *audivisse*.

(c.) When this root ends in *s* or *x*, especially in the third conjugation, the syllables *is, iss*, and *sis*, are sometimes omitted in the termination of tenses derived from it; as, *evasti* for *evasisi*, *extinxi* for *extinxisti*, *divisse* for *divisisse*; *extinxiem* for *extinxissem*, *surrexi* for *surrexisse*; *accessi* for *accessisisti*, *iusti* for *iussisti*; *dicti* for *didisti*. So *fāxiem* for (*facissem*, i. e.) *fecissem*.

(d.) In the perfect of the first, second, and fourth conjugations, a syncope sometimes occurs in the last syllable of the root and the following syllable of the termination, especially in the third person singular; as, *fūmāt*, *audī*, *cūpīt*; for *fūmāvit*, *audīvit*, *cūpīvit*. So, also, but rarely, in the first person; as, *sepēh*, *enarrāmus*; for *sepeliv*, *enarrāvimus*.

8. In the third person plural of the perfect indicative active, the form in *ēre* is less common than that in *ērunt*, especially in prose.

9. Ancient forms of a future perfect in *so*, a perfect and pluperfect subjunctive in *sim* and *sem*, and a perfect infinitive in *se* sometimes occur. They may, in general, be formed by adding these terminations to the second root of the verb: as, *recepto*, *emissim*, *ausim* from the obsolete perfect, *ausi*, from *audeo*, *confecim* and *promissem*: *divisse* and *promisse*. But when the root ends in *x*, and frequently when it ends in *s*, only *o*, *im*, *em*, and *e*, etc. are added; as, *jusso*, *dixis*; *intellexe*, *percepset*; *surrexe*, *sumse*. *V*, at the end of the root, in the first conjugation, is changed into *s*; as, *levasso*, *locassim*. *U*, at the end of the root, in the second conjugation, is changed into *es*; as, *habesso*, *licessit*. Sometimes the vowel of the present is retained in these forms, though changed in the other parts derived from the second root; as, *capso*, *fuxo* (*facso*), *fazim* (*facsim*).

NOTE. *Fazo* expresses determination, 'I will,' or, 'I am resolved, to make, cause,' etc. The subjunctive *fazit*, etc., expresses a solemn wish; as, *dii immortales fazint*. *Ausim*, etc. express doubt or hesitation, 'I might venture,' etc. The perfect in *sim* is used also in connection with the present subjunctive; as, *quæso uti tu calamitâtes prohibeas, defendas, averruncesque*. Cato.

10. In the ancient Latin a few examples occur of a future passive of similar form; as, *turbassitur*, *jussitur*, instead of *turbâtum fuêrit*, and *jussus fuêrit*.—A future infinitive active in *sêre* is also found, in the first conjugation, which is formed by adding that termination to the second root, changing, as before, *v* into *s*; as, *expugnassêre*, *impetrassêre*, for *expugnâtûrum esse*, etc.

### Of the Tenses formed from the Third Root.

11. The supine in *um*, though called one of the principal parts of the verb, belongs in fact to very few verbs, the whole number which have this supine not amounting to three hundred. The part called in dictionaries the supine in *um* must therefore, in most cases, be considered as the neuter gender of the perfect participle.

12. In the compound tenses of the indicative and subjunctive moods, the participle is always in the nominative case, but it is used in both numbers, and in all genders, to correspond with the number and gender of the subject of the verb; as, *amâtus*, -a, -um, *est*; *amâti*, -æ, -a, *sunt*, etc.

(1.) *Fui*, *fuêram*, *fuêrim*, *fuissem*, and *fuisse*, are seldom used in the compound tenses of deponent verbs, and not so often as *sum*, etc., in those of other verbs, but when used they have generally the same sense. It is to be remarked, however, that *fui* with the perfect participle usually denotes that which has been, but which no longer exists. In the pluperfect subjunctive, *fôrem*, etc., for *essem*, etc., are sometimes found.

(2.) But as the perfect participle may be used in the sense of an adjective, expressing a permanent state, (see § 162, 22), if then connected with the tenses of *sum* its meaning is different from that of the participle in the same connection; *epistôla scripta est*, when *scripta* is a participle, signifies, the letter *has been* written, but if *scripta* is an adjective, the meaning of the expression is, the letter *is* written, and *epistôla scripta fuit*, in this case, would signify, the letter *has been* written, or, *has existed* as a written one, implying that it no longer exists.

13. The participles in the perfect and future infinitive, are used only in the nominative and accusative, but in all genders and in both numbers; as, *amâtus*, -a, -um, *esse* or *fuisse*; *amâtum*, -am, -um, *esse* or *fuisse*; *amâti*, -æ, -a, *esse* or *fuisse*; *amâtos*, -as, -a, *esse* or *fuisse*; and so of the others. With the infinitive *fuisse*, *amâtus*, etc. are generally to be considered as participial adjectives.

(1.) These participles in combination with *esse* are sometimes used as indeclinable; as, *cohortes ad me missum facias*. Cic. *Ad me, mea Terentiâ, scribis, te vicum venditurum*. Id.

*Periphrastic Conjugations.*

14. The participle in *rus*, joined to the tenses of the verb *sum*, denotes either *intention*, or *being upon the point* of doing something. This form of the verb is called the *active periphrastic conjugation*.

REMARK 1. As the performance of the act depends either on the will of the subject, on that of others, or upon circumstances, we may say, in English, in the first case, 'I intend,' and in the others, 'I am to,' or 'I am about to' (be or do any thing).

## INDICATIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>amatūrus sum,</i>	<i>I am about to love.</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>amatūrus eram,</i>	<i>I was about to love.</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>amatūrus ero,</i>	<i>I shall be about to love.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>amatūrus fui,</i>	<i>I was or have been about to love.</i>
<i>Plup.</i>	<i>amatūrus fuēram,</i>	<i>I had been about to love.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>amatūrus sim,</i>	<i>I may be about to love.</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>amatūrus essem,</i>	<i>I would be about to love.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>amatūrus fuērim,</i>	<i>I may have been about to love.</i>
<i>Plup.</i>	<i>amatūrus fuisset,</i>	<i>I would have been about to love.</i>

## INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>amatūrus esse,</i>	<i>to be about to love.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>amatūrus fuisse,</i>	<i>to have been about to love.</i>

REM. 2. *Fuēro* is scarcely used in connection with the participle in *rus*.

REM. 3. *Amatūrus sim* and *amatūrus essem* serve also as subjunctives to the future *amābo*. The infinitive *amatūrus fuisse* answers to the English, 'I should have loved,' so that in hypothetical sentences it supplies the place of an infinitive of the pluperfect subjunctive.

REM. 4. In the passive, the fact that an act is about to be performed is expressed by a longer circumlocution; as, *in eo est*, or *futūrum est*, *ut epistola scribatur*, a letter is about to be written. So *in eo erat*, etc., through all the tenses.

15. The participle in *dus*, with the verb *sum*, expresses *necessity* or *propriety*; as, *amandus sum*, I must be loved, or deserve to be loved. With the various moods and tenses of *sum*, it forms a *passive periphrastic conjugation*;—thus :

## INDICATIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>amandus sum,</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>amandus eram,</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>amandus ero,</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>amandus fui,</i>
<i>Plup.</i>	<i>amandus fuēram,</i>
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	<i>amandus fuēro.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>amandus sim,</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>amandus essem,</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>amandus fuērim,</i>
<i>Plup.</i>	<i>amandus fuisset.</i>

## INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>amandus esse,</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>amandus fuisse.</i>

REM. 5. The neuter of the participle in *dus* with *est* and the dative of a person, expresses the necessity of performing the action on the part of that person; as, *mihi scribendum est*, I must write, etc., and so through all the tenses.

### Participles.

16. The following perfect participles of neuter verbs, like those of active deponents, are translated by active participles:—*cenātus*, having supped; *pōtus*, having drunk; *pransus*, having dined; and sometimes *jurātus*, having sworn. So also *adultus*, *coalitus*, *conspirātus*, *interitus*, *occāsus*, *obsoletus*, and *cretus*.

For the active meaning of *usus* and its compounds, see § 183, 1.

17. (a.) The perfect participles of some deponent verbs have both an active and a passive sense; as, *adeptus libertatem*, having obtained liberty, or *adeptā libertatē*, liberty having been obtained. Cf. § 142, 4, (b.)

So *abominātus*, *comitātus*, *commentātus*, *complexus*, *confessus*, *contestātus*, *delestātus*, *dignātus*, *dimensus*, *effātus*, *emensus*, *ementitus*, *emeritus*, *expertus*, *exsecrātus*, *interpretātus*, *largitus*, *machinātus*, *mediātus*, *mercātus*, *meātus*, *oblitus*, *opinātus*, *orsus*, *pactus*, *partitus*, *perfunctus*, *periclitātus*, *pollicitus*, *populātus*, *depopulātus*, *stipulātus*, *testātus*, *ultus*, *venerātus*.

(b.) The participle in *dus*, of deponent verbs, is commonly passive.

18. The perfect participles of neuter passive verbs have the signification of the active voice; as, *gavisus*, having rejoiced. But *ausus* is used both in an active and a passive sense.

19. The genitive plural of participles in *rus* is seldom used, except that of *futūrus*. *Venturōrum* is found in Ovid, *exiturārū*, *transiturārū* and *periturōrum* in Seneca, and *moriturōrum* in Augustine.

20. In the third and fourth conjugations, the gerund and future passive participle (including deponents) sometimes end in *undum* and *undus*, instead of *endum* and *endus*, especially when *i* precedes; as, *faciundum*, *audiundum*, *scribundus*. *Potior* has usually *potiundus*.

21. Many present and perfect participles are compounded with *in*, signifying *not*, whose verbs do not admit of such composition; they thus become adjectives; as, *insciens*, ignorant; *imparātus*, unprepared.

22. Participles, when they do not express distinctions of time, become adjectives, and as such are compared; as, *amans*, loving; *amantior*, *amantissimus*. They sometimes also become substantives; as, *præfectus*, a commander; *assum*, an attempt; *commissum*, an offence.

NOTE. Many words derived from substantives, with the terminations of participles, *ātus*, *ītus*, and *ūtus*, are yet adjectives; as, *alātus*, winged; *turritus*, turreted, etc. See § 128, 7.

### GENERAL RULES OF CONJUGATION.

§ 163. 1. Verbs which have *a* in the first root have it also in the third, even when it is changed in the second; as, *fācio*, *factum*; *hābeo*, *habītum*.

2. The connecting vowel is often omitted in the second root, and in such cases, if *v* follows, it is changed into *u*. This happens in most verbs of the second conjugation.

REMARK. Some verbs of the first, second, and third conjugations prefix to the second root their initial consonant with the vowel which follows it, or with *ē*; as, *curro, cūcurri; fallo, fēfelli*. This prefix is called a *reduplication*.

NOTE 1. *Spondeo* and *sto* lose *s* in the second syllable, making *spōpondi* and *stēti*. For the verbs that take a reduplication, see §§ 165, R. 2; 168, N. 2; 171, Exc. 1, (b.)

3. Verbs which want the second root commonly want the third root also.

4. Compound verbs form their second and third roots like the simple verbs of which they are compounded; as, *audio, audīvi, audītum; exaudio, exaudīvi, exaudītum*.

NOTE 2. Some compound verbs, however, are defective, whose simples are complete, and some are complete, whose simples are defective.

Exc. 1. Compound verbs omit the reduplication; but the compounds of *do, sto, disco, posco*, and some of those of *curro*, retain it.

Exc. 2. Verbs which, in composition, change *a* into *e* in the first root, (see § 189, 1,) retain *e* in the second and third roots of the compound; as, *scando, scandi, scansum; descendo, descendi, descensum*.

Exc. 3. (a.) When *a, æ, or e*, in the first root of the simple verb, is changed in the compound into *i*, (see § 189, 2,) the same is retained in the second and third roots, in case the third root of the simple verb is a dissyllable; as, *habeo, hābui, hābitum; prohibeo, prohibui, prohibūtum*.

(b.) But if the third root is a monosyllable, the second root of the compound has usually the same vowel as that of the simple, but sometimes changes *a* or *e* into *i*, and the third root has *e*; as, *fācio, fēci, factum; confācio, confēci, confectum; tēneo, tēnui, tentum; retēneo, retēnui, retentum; rāpio, rāpui, raptum; abrāpio, abrāpui, abreptum*.

NOTE 3. The compounds of *cādo, āgo, frango, pango*, and *tango*, retain *a* in the third root. See § 172.

Exc. 4. The compounds of *pārio, (ēre)*, and some of the compounds of *do* and *cūbo*, are of different conjugations from their simple verbs. See *do, cūbo* and *pārio* in §§ 165 and 172.

A few other exceptions will be noticed in the following lists.

## FORMATION OF SECOND AND THIRD ROOTS.

### FIRST CONJUGATION.

✠ § 164. In regular verbs of this conjugation, the second root ends in *āv*, and the third in *āt*; as, *amo, amāvi, amātum*.

The following list contains such regular verbs of this conjugation as are of most frequent occurrence.



NOTE. In this and subsequent lists, those verbs which are marked \* are said to have no perfect participle; those marked † to have no present participle. A dash (—) after the present, denotes that there is no second root. The participles in *rus* and *dus*, and the supines in *un* and *u* which are in use, are indicated respectively by the letters *r.*, *d.*, *m.*, and *u.* *Abundo*, for example, has no perfect participle, no supine, no participle in *dus*; but it has a present participle, and a participle in *rus*.

In the lists of irregular verbs, those compounds only are given, whose conjugation differs from that of their simples.

When *p.* is subjoined to a deponent verb, it denotes that some of the parts which have commonly an active meaning, are used either actively and passively, or passively alone. Such verbs are by some grammarians called *common*. Cf. § 142, 4, (b.)

\**Abundo*, *r.* to overflow.

*Accuso*, *m. r. d.* to accuse.

†*Adumbro*, *r. d.* to delineate.

*Edifico*, *r. d.* to build.

*Equo*, *r. d.* to level.

*Estimo*, *r. d.* to value.

\**Ambulo*, *m. d.* to walk.

*Amo*, *r. d.* to love.

†*Amplio*, *d.* to enlarge.

*Appello*, *d.* to call.

*Apto*, *d.* to fit.

*Aro*, *r. d.* to plough.

\*†*Ausculco*, *to listen*.

\*†*Autumo*, *to assert*.

†*Basio*, —, *d.* to kiss.

\**Bello*, *m. r. d.* to wage war.

†*Beo*, *to bless*.

\**Boo*, *to bellow*.

†*Brivio*, *to shorten*.

†*Cæco*, *to blind*.

†*Cælo*, *to carve*.

†*Calceo*, *d.* to shoe.

\*†*Calcitro*, *to kick*.

*Canto*, *m.* to sing.

*Capto*, *m. r. d.* to seize.

†*Castigo*, *m. d.* to chastise.

*Celëbro*, *d.* to celebrate.

*Cêlo*, *d.* to conceal.

*Cesso*, *d.* to cease.

*Certo*, *r. d.* to strive.

*Clamo*, *d.* to shout.

*Cogito*, *d.* to think.

*Concilio*, *r. d.* to conciliate.

*Considëro*, *r. d.* to consider.

*Crëmo*, *d.* to burn.—con-

*crëmo*, *r.*

†*Creo*, *r. d.* to create.

*Crucio*, *d.* to torment.

*Culpo*, *r. d.* to blame.

†*Cuneo*, *d.* to wedge in.

*Curo*, *r. d.* to care for.

*Damno*, *m. r. d.* to condemn.

*Decoro*, *d.* to adorn.

\*†*Declinco*, *to incline*.

*Desidëro*, *r. d.* to desire

*Destino*, *d.* to design.

*Dico*, *m. r. d.* to dedicate.

*Dicto*, *to dictate*.

†*Dôlo*, *to hew*.

*Dôno*, *r. d.* to bestow.

*Duplico*, *r. d.* to double.

*Dûro*, *r.* to harden.

†*Effigio*, *to portray*.

†*Enucleo*, *to explain*.

*Equito*, *to ride*.

*Erro*, *to wander*.

*Existimo*, *u. r. d.* to think.

*Explôro*, *m. d.* to search.

*Exsûlo*, *m. r.* to be ban-

*ished*.

*Fabrico*, *d.* to frame.

†*Fatigo*, *r. d.* to weary.

*Festino*, *r.* to hasten.

*Firmo*, *r. d.* to strengthen.

*Flagito*, *m. d.* to demand.

\**Flagro*, *r.* to be on fire.—

*conflagro*, *r.*—*deflagro*.

*Flo*, *d.* to blow.

*Formo*, *r. d.* to form.

*Fôro*, *d.* to bore.

†*Fraudo*, *d.* to defraud.

†*Frëno*, *to bridle*.

†*Frio*, —, *to crumble*.

*Fûgo*, *r. d.* to put to flight.

†*Fundo*, *r.* to found.

†*Fûrio*, —, *to madden*.

†*Galeo*, —, *to put on a*

*helmet*.

*Gesto*, *d.* to bear.

*Glácio*, —, *to congeal*.

*Grävo*, *d.* to weigh down.

*Gusto*, *d.* to taste.

*Habito*, *m. d.* to dwell.

\**Hälo*, —, *to breathe*.

*Hiëmo*, *m.* to winter.

\**Hio*, *d.* to gape.

†*Humo*, *r. d.* to bury.

*Ignôro*, *r. d.* to be ignorant of.

*Impero*, *r. d.* to command.

†*Impetro*, *r. d.* to obtain.

*Incho*, —, *to begin*.

*Indägo*, *r. d.* to trace out.

*Indico*, *m. r. d.* to show.

†*Inëbrio*, —, *to inebriate*.

*Initio*, *to initiate*.

*Inquino*, *to pollute*.

*Instauro*, *d.* to renew.

*Intro*, *r. d.* to enter.

*Invito*, *d.* to invite.

*Irrito*, *r. d.* to irritate.

*Itëro*, *u. d.* to do again.

*Jacto*, *r. d.* to throw.

*Judico*, *r. d.* to judge.

*Jûgo*, *d.* to couple.

*Jugûlo*, *m. d.* to butcher

*Jûro*, *d.* to swear.

*Labôro*, *r. d.* to labor.

*Lacëro*, *d.* to tear.

\**Lucto*, *to suckle*.

†*Länio*, *d.* to tear in pieces.

*Lätro*, *to bark*.

*Laudo*, *r. d.* to praise.

*Laxo*, *d.* to loose.

†*Lëgo*, *to depute*.

*Lëvo*, *r. d.* to lighten.

*Libëro*, *r. d.* to free.

*Libo*, *d.* to pour out.

*Ligo*, *to bind*.

†*Liquo*, *d.* to melt.

*Lito*, *to appease*.

*Lôco*, *r. d.* to place.

*Lustro*, *d.* to survey.

*Luxûrio*, *to be luxurious*.

*Macto*, *d.* to sacrifice.

*Macûlo*, *to spot, stain*.

*Mando*, *r. d.* to command.

*Mandûco*, *to chew*.

\**Mäno*, *to flow*.

*Matûro*, *d.* to ripen.

*Memôro*, *u. d.* to tell.

\**Meo*, *to go*.

\**Migro*, *u. r. d.* to depart

\**Minto*, *m. r.* to serve as

*a schlier*

†*Minio*, *d.* to paint red.

*Ministro*, *d.* to serve.

*Mitigo*, *d.* to pacify.

*Monstro*, *r.* to show—

†*demonstro*, *d.*

*Mûto*, *r. d.* to change

Narro, r. d. to tell.  
 Nāto, m. r. to swim.  
 \*Nauseo, to be sea-sick.  
 †Navigo, r. d. to sail.  
 Nāvo, r. d. to perform.  
 Nēgo, m. r. d. to deny.  
 \*No, to swim.  
 Nomino, r. d. to name.  
 Nōto, d. to mark.  
 Nōvo, r. d. to renew.  
 Nūdo, d. to make bare.  
 Nunchūpo, r. d. to name.  
 Nuntio, m. r. to tell.—  
 renuntio, d.  
 \*Nūto, r. to nod.  
 Obsecro, m. r. d. to be-  
 seech.  
 Obtrunco, r. to kill.  
 Onēro, r. d. to load.  
 Opto, d. to wish.  
 †Orbo, r. to bereave.  
 Orno, r. d. to adorn.  
 Oro, m. r. d. to beg.  
 Pāco, r. d. to subdue.  
 Pāro, r. d. to prepare.  
 compāro, d. to compare.  
 Patro, r. d. to perform.  
 \*Pecco, r. d. to sin.  
 †Pio, d. to propitiate.  
 Plāco, r. d. to appease.  
 Plōro, m. d. to bewail.  
 Porto, u. r. d. to carry.  
 Postūlo, m. r. d. to de-  
 mand.  
 Privo, d. to deprive.  
 Prōbo, m. u. r. d. to ap-  
 prove.—comprōbo, m.  
 Profligo, d. to rout.  
 Propēro, d. to hasten.  
 \*†Propino, to drink to.  
 Propitio, d. to appease.  
 Pugno, r. d. to fight.  
 Pulso, d. to beat.  
 Purgo, u. r. d. to cleanse.

Pūto, d. to reckon.  
 Quasso, d. to shake.  
 Rādio, to emit rays.  
 Rapto, d. to drag away.  
 Recupēro, m. r. d. to re-  
 cover.  
 Recūso, r. d. to refuse.  
 Redundo, to overflow.  
 Regno, r. d. to rule.  
 †Repūdīo, r. d. to reject.  
 Resēro, d. to unlock.  
 \*†Retālio, —, to retaliate.  
 Rigo, to water.  
 Rōgo, m. r. d. to ask.  
 Rōto, to whirl around.  
 Sacrificio, m. to sacrifice.  
 Sacro, d. to consecrate.  
 †Sagīno, d. to fatten.  
 Salto, r. to dance.  
 Salūto, m. r. d. to salute.  
 Sāno, r. d. to heal.  
 Sātio, to satiate.  
 †Satūro, to fill.  
 Saucio, d. to wound.  
 \*Secundo, to prosper.  
 Sēdo, m. d. to allay.  
 Servo, r. d. to keep.  
 \*†Sibilo, to hiss.  
 Sicco, d. to dry.  
 Signo, r. d. to mark out.—  
 assigno, m.  
 Simūlo, r. d. to pretend.  
 Sōcio, d. to associate.  
 \*Somnio, to dream.  
 Specto, m. r. d. to behold.  
 Spēro, r. d. to hope.  
 \*Spiro, to breathe.—con-  
 spiro. — exspiro, r. —  
 suspiro, d.  
 Spōlio, m. d. to rob.  
 Spūmo, to foam.  
 Stillo, to drop.  
 Stimūlo, to goad.  
 Stīpo, to stuff.

Sūdo, to sweat.  
 Suffūco, to strangle.  
 Sugillo, d. to taunt.  
 Supēro, r. d. to overcome.  
 Suppedito, to afford.  
 \*Supplicio, m. to suppli-  
 cate.  
 \*Susurro, to whisper.  
 Tardo, to delay.  
 Taxo, d. to rate.  
 Temēro, r. d. to defile.  
 Tempēro, r. d. to temper.  
 —obtempēro, r. to obey.  
 Tento, m. r. d. to try.  
 Terebro, to bore.  
 Termino, r. d. to limit.  
 Titūbo, to stagger.  
 Tolēro, u. r. d. to bear.  
 Tracto, u. d. to handle.  
 \*†Tripūdīo, to dance.  
 Triumpho, r. to triumph.  
 Trucido, r. d. to kill.  
 Turbo, d. to disturb.  
 \*Vāco, to be at leisure.  
 \*Vapūlo, m. d. to be beat-  
 en. Cf. § 142, 3.  
 Vārio, to diversify.  
 Vasto, d. to lay waste.  
 Vellico, to pluck.  
 Verbēro, r. d. to beat.  
 \*Vestigo, to search for.  
 Vexo, d. to tease.  
 Vibro, d. to brandish.  
 Vigilo, to watch.  
 Violo, m. r. d. to violate.  
 Vitio, d. to vitiate.  
 Vito, u. d. to shun.  
 Ulūlo, to howl.  
 Umbro, r. to shade.  
 Vōco, r. d. to call.  
 \*Vōlo, to fly.  
 Vōro, r. to devour.  
 Vulgo, r. d. to publish.  
 Vulnēro, d. to wound.

§ 165. The following verbs of the first conjugation are either irregular or defective.

\*Crēpo, crepui, to make a noise. \*dis-  
 crēpo, -ui, or -āvi. incrēpo, -ui or  
 -āvi, -itum or -ātum. \*†percrēpo, —.  
 \*†recrēpo, —.  
 \*Cūbo, cubui, (perf. subj. cubāris; inf.  
 cubasse), cubitum (sup.), to recline.  
 incūbo, -ui or -āvi, d. Those com-  
 pounds of cubo which take m before  
 b, are of the third conjugation.  
 Do, dēdi, dātum, m. r. d. to give.—  
 So circumdo, pessumdo, satūdo, and

venumdo; the other compounds of do  
 are of the third conjugation. See  
 § 163, Exc. 1.  
 Dōmo, domui, domitum, r. d. to tame.  
 Frico, fricui, frictum or fricatū, d.  
 to rub. confrico, —, -ātum. So in-  
 frico, defrico, —, -ātum or -ctum.  
 Jūvo, jūvi, jūtum, r. d., also juvatū-  
 rus, to help. adjūvo, -jūvi, -jūtum,  
 m. r. d. also adjuvatūrus.  
 \*Lābo, labasse, to totter.

Lāvo, lāvi, *rar.* lāvāvi, lavātum, lautum or lōtum; (*sup.*) lautum or lavātum, lavātūrus, d. *to wash*. Lāvo is also sometimes of the third conjugation.

\*Mico, micui, d. *to glitter*. dimico, -āvi or -ui, -atūrus. \*emico, -ui, -atūrus. \*intermico, —. \*promico, —, d.

Neco, necāvi or necui, necātum, r. d. *to kill*. eneco, -āvi or -ui, -ātum, or -ctum, d. †interneco, —, -ātum.

\*†Nexo, —, *to tie*.

Plico, —, plicātum, *to fold*. duplico, -āvi, -ātum, r. d. multiplico and replico have -āvi, -ātum. \*supplico, -āvi, m. r. applico, -āvi or -ui, -ātum or -itum, -itūrus. So implico. —complico, -ui, -itum or -itum, explico, -āvi or -ui, -ātum or -itum, -atūrus or -itūrus.

Pōto, potāvi, potātum or pōtum, r. r. m. m. d. *to drink*. †epōto, -āvi, -um. —\*perpōto, -āvi.

Seco, secui, sectum, secatūrus, d. *to*

cut.—\*circumsēco, —. \*intersēco, —, d. \*persēco, -ui. praesēco, -ui, -tum or -ātum. So resēco, d.

\*Sōno, sonui, -atūrus, d. *to sound*. \*consōno, -ui. So ex-, in-, per-, praesōno. \*resōno, -āvi. \*assōno, —. So circumsōno and dissōno.

\*Sto, stēti, stātūrus, *to stand*. \*antesto, -stēti. So circumsto, intersto, supersto.—Its compounds with monosyllabic prepositions have stitī; as, \*consto, -stīti, -stātūrus. So exsto, insto, obsto, persto. \*praesto, -stīti, -stātūrus, d. \*adsto or asto, -stīti, -stītūrus. \*prosto, -stīti. So resto, restīti: *but subj. perf.* restāverit, Propert, 2, 34, 53. \*disto, —. So substo and supersto.

\*Tōno, tonui, *to thunder*. So circumtōno. attōno, -ui, -itum. intōno, -ui, -ātum. \*retōno, —.

Vēto, vetui, *rarely* āvi, vetitum, *to forbid*.

REMARK 1. The principal irregularity, in verbs of the first and second conjugations, consists in the omission of the connecting vowel in the second root, and the change of the long vowels *ā* and *ē* in the third root into *i*. The *v* remaining at the end of the second root, when it follows a consonant, is pronounced as *u*; as, *cubo*, (*cubāvi*, by syncope *cubvi*), i. e. *cubui*; (*cubātum*, by change of the connecting vowel,) *cubitum*. Sometimes in the first conjugation, and very frequently in the second, the connecting vowel is omitted in the third root also; as, *juvo*, (*āre*) *jūvi*, *jūtum*; *tēneo*, (*ēre*) *tēnuī*, *tentum*. In the second conjugation several verbs whose general root ends in *d* and *g*, and a few others of different terminations, form either their second or third root or both, like verbs of the third conjugation, by adding *s*; as, *rideo*, *risi*, *risum*.

REM. 2. The verbs of the first conjugation whose perfects take a reduplication are *do*, *sto*, and their compounds.

REM. 3. The following verbs in *eo* are of the first conjugation, viz. *beo*, *calceo*, *creo*, *cūneo*, *enucleo*, *illāqueo*, *collīneo*, *delīneo*, *meo*, *nauseo*, *screeo*; *eo* and its compounds are of the fourth.

§ 166. All deponent verbs, of the first conjugation, are regular, and are conjugated like *mitror*, § 161; as,

Abominor, d. *to abhor*.

Adūlor, d. *to flatter*.

Emūlor, d. *to rival*.

Ancillor, *to be a handmaid*.

\*Apricor, *to bask in the sun*.

Arbitror, r. d. *to think*.

Asperror, d. p. *to despise*.

Aucūpor, r. p. *to hunt after*.

Auxilior, p. *to help*.

Aversor, d. *to dislike*.

Bacchor, p. *to revel*.

Calumnior, *to censure unfairly*.

Causor, *to allege*.

\*Comissor, m. *to revel*.

Comitor, p. *to accompany*.

Conciōnor, *to harangue*.

\*Confābūlor, m. *to converse together*.

Cōnor, d. *to endeavor*.

†Conspicor, *to see*.

Contemplor, d. p. *to view attentively*.

Criminor, m. p. *to complain of*.

Cunctor, d. p. *to delay*.

Deprēcor, m. r. d. p. *to deprecate*.

\*†Diglādiōr, *to fence*.

Dignor, d. p. *to deem worthy*.

Domīnor, p. *to rule*.

Epūlor, r. d. *to feast*.

\*Famūlor, m. *to wait on*.

Fātūr, (defect.) n. d. p. *to speak*. See § 183, 6.

†Fērior, r. *to keep holiday*.

\*Frumentor, m. *to forage*.

Fūrōr, m. *to steal*.

Glōrior, r. d. *to boast*.

Gratūlor, m. d. *to congratulate*.

Hariölör, <i>to practise sooth-saying.</i>	Modölör, d. p. <i>to modulate.</i>	*Rusticör, <i>to live in the country.</i>
Hortör, d. <i>to encourage.</i>	Mörör, r. d. <i>to delay.</i>	Scisceltör, m. p. <i>to inquire.</i>
Imitor, u. r. d. <i>to imitate.</i>	†Mütuör, p. <i>to borrow.</i>	*Scitor, m. <i>to ask.</i>
Indignör, d. <i>to disdain.</i>	Negötior, r. <i>to traffic.</i>	Scrütör, p. <i>to search.</i>
Inftior, d. <i>to deny.</i>	*†Nägör, <i>to trifle.</i>	Sölör, d. <i>to comfort.</i>
Insector, <i>to pursue.</i>	Obsönör, m. <i>to cater.</i>	Spätior, <i>to walk about.</i>
Instilor, r. d. <i>to lie in wait for.</i>	Obtestör, p. <i>to beseech.</i>	Specülör, m. r. d. <i>to spy out.</i>
Interpretör, p. <i>to explain.</i>	Opörör, <i>to work.</i>	†Stipülör, p. <i>to bargain, stipulate.</i>
Jacülör, p. <i>to hurl.</i>	Opinör, u. r. d. <i>to think.</i>	†Suävior, d. <i>to kiss.</i>
Jöör, <i>to jest.</i>	Opitülör, m. <i>to help.</i>	Suspicör, <i>to suspect.</i>
Lætor, r. d. p. <i>to rejoice.</i>	†Ötior, <i>to be at leisure.</i>	Testificör, p. <i>to testify.</i>
Lamerter, d. p. <i>to bewail.</i>	Pabülör, m. d. <i>to graze.</i>	Testör, d. p. <i>to testify. So</i>
*†Lignor, m. <i>to gather wood.</i>	Pälör, <i>to wander about.</i>	detestör.
Luctor, d. <i>to wrestle.</i>	Percontör, m. <i>to inquire.</i>	Tütör, <i>to defend.</i>
Medicör, r. d. p. <i>to heal.</i>	Pericltör, d. p. <i>to try.</i>	Vägör, <i>to wander.</i>
Meditor, p. <i>to meditate.</i>	†Piscör, m. <i>to fish.</i>	Venëror, d. p. <i>to venerate, worship.</i>
Mercör, m. r. d. p. <i>to buy.</i>	Popülör, r. d. p. <i>to lay waste.</i>	Vënör, m. p. <i>to hunt.</i>
Mfnör, <i>to threaten.</i>	Prædör, m. p. <i>to plunder.</i>	Versör, <i>to be employed.</i>
Mirör, u. r. d. <i>to admire.</i>	Prëcor, m. u. r. d. <i>to pray.</i>	Vociferör, <i>to bawl.</i>
Misörör, d. <i>to pity.</i>	Praelior, <i>to fight.</i>	
Modëror, u. d. <i>to govern.</i>	Recordör, d. <i>to recollect.</i>	
	Rimör, d. <i>to search.</i>	
	Rixör, <i>to quarrel.</i>	

NOTE. Some deponents of the first conjugation are derived from nouns, and signify *being or practising* that which the noun denotes; as, *ancilläri*, to be a handmaid; *hariöläri*, to practise soothsaying; from *ancilla* and *hariöläs*.

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

§ 167. Verbs of the second conjugation end in *eo*, and form their second and third roots in *u* and *it*; as, *moneo*, *monui*, *monitum*.

The following list contains most of the regular verbs of this conjugation, and many also which want the second and third roots:—

*Aceo, <i>to be sour.</i>	*Cläreo, —, <i>to be bright.</i>	*†perhibeo, d. <i>to report.</i>
*Agrego, —, <i>to be sick.</i>	*Clueo, —, <i>to be famous.</i>	†posthabeo, <i>to postpone.</i>
*Albeo, —, <i>to be white.</i>	*Denseo, —, <i>to thicken.</i>	præbeo, ( <i>for præhibeo</i> ), r. d. <i>to afford.</i>
*Arceo, d. <i>to drive away; part. adj. arcetus or artus. The compounds change a into e; as, coerceo, d. to restrain.</i>	*Diribeo, —, <i>to sort the voting tablets.</i>	*præhibeo, —, <i>dëbeo, (for dehabeo), r. d. to owe.</i>
*Arceo, d. <i>to drive away; part. adj. arcetus or artus. The compounds change a into e; as, coerceo, d. to restrain.</i>	*Dôleo, r. d. <i>to grieve.</i>	*Hëbeo, —, <i>to be dull.</i>
*Arceo, d. <i>to drive away; part. adj. arcetus or artus. The compounds change a into e; as, coerceo, d. to restrain.</i>	*Egeo, r. <i>to want.</i>	*Horreo, d. <i>to be rough.</i>
*Arceo, d. <i>to drive away; part. adj. arcetus or artus. The compounds change a into e; as, coerceo, d. to restrain.</i>	*Emineo, <i>to rise above.</i>	*Hümeo, —, <i>to be moist.</i>
*Arceo, d. <i>to drive away; part. adj. arcetus or artus. The compounds change a into e; as, coerceo, d. to restrain.</i>	*Flacceo, <i>to droop.</i>	*Jaceo, r. <i>to lie.</i>
*Arceo, d. <i>to drive away; part. adj. arcetus or artus. The compounds change a into e; as, coerceo, d. to restrain.</i>	*Fläveo, —, <i>to be yellow.</i>	*Lacteo, —, <i>to suck.</i>
*Arceo, d. <i>to drive away; part. adj. arcetus or artus. The compounds change a into e; as, coerceo, d. to restrain.</i>	*Flöreo, <i>to blossom.</i>	*Langueo, —, <i>to be faint.</i>
*Arceo, d. <i>to drive away; part. adj. arcetus or artus. The compounds change a into e; as, coerceo, d. to restrain.</i>	*Fæteo, —, <i>to be fetid.</i>	*Läteo, <i>to be hid.</i>
*Arceo, d. <i>to drive away; part. adj. arcetus or artus. The compounds change a into e; as, coerceo, d. to restrain.</i>	*Frigeo, —, <i>to be cold.</i>	*Lenteo, —, <i>to be slow.</i>
*Arceo, d. <i>to drive away; part. adj. arcetus or artus. The compounds change a into e; as, coerceo, d. to restrain.</i>	*Frondeo, —, <i>to bear leaves.</i>	*Liceo, <i>to be valued.</i>
*Arceo, d. <i>to drive away; part. adj. arcetus or artus. The compounds change a into e; as, coerceo, d. to restrain.</i>	Häbeo, r. d. <i>to have. The compounds, except posthabeo, change ä into i; as, ad-, ex-, pro-hibeo.</i>	*Liveo, —, <i>to be tired.</i>
*Arceo, d. <i>to drive away; part. adj. arcetus or artus. The compounds change a into e; as, coerceo, d. to restrain.</i>	cohibeo, d. <i>to restrain.</i>	*Mäceo, —, <i>to be lean.</i>
*Arceo, d. <i>to drive away; part. adj. arcetus or artus. The compounds change a into e; as, coerceo, d. to restrain.</i>	inhibeo, d. <i>to hinder.</i>	*Mädeo, <i>to be wet.</i>
*Arceo, d. <i>to drive away; part. adj. arcetus or artus. The compounds change a into e; as, coerceo, d. to restrain.</i>		*Märeo, —, <i>to grieve.</i>
*Arceo, d. <i>to drive away; part. adj. arcetus or artus. The compounds change a into e; as, coerceo, d. to restrain.</i>		Mëreo, r. <i>to deserve.</i>

- †commēreo, to *fully deserve*. †dēmēreo, d. to *earn*. †emēreo, to *serve out one's time*. \*†permēreo, —, to *go through service*. promēreo, to *deserve*.  
 Mōneo, m. r. d. to *advise*. admōneo, m. r. d. to *remind*. commūneo, to *impress upon*. prāmōneo, to *forewarn*.  
 \*Mūceo, —, to *be mouldy*.  
 \*Nigreo, —, to *be black*.  
 \*Niteo, to *shine*.  
 Nāceo, m. r. to *hurt*.  
 \*Oleo, to *smell*.  
 \*Palleo, to *be pale*.  
 \*Pāreo, m. r. d. to *obey*.  
 \*Pāteo, to *be open*.  
 Plāceo, to *please*.  
 \*Polleo, —, to *be able*.  
 \*Pūteo, to *stink*.  
 \*Putreo, to *be putrid*.  
 \*Rēnideo, —, to *glitter*.  
 \*Rigeo, to *be stiff*.  
 \*Rūbeo, to *be red*.  
 \*Scāteo, —, to *gush forth*.  
 \*Sēneo, —, to *be old*.  
 \*Sileo, d. to *be silent*.  
 \*Sordeo, —, to *be filthy*.  
 \*Splendeo, —, to *shine*.  
 \*Squaleo, —, to *be foul*.  
 \*Strideo, —, to *creak*.  
 \*Stūdeo, d. to *study*.  
 \*Stūpeo, to *be amazed*.  
 \*Sueo, —, to *be w. nt*.  
 Tāceo, r. d. to *be s. lent*.  
 \*Tēpeo, to *be warr. i*.  
 Terreo, d. to *terrify*. So deterreo, to *deter*. †absterreo, to *deter*. †conterreo, †exterreo, †perterreo, to *frighten*.  
 \*Timeo, d. to *fear*.  
 \*Torpeo, —, to *be stiff*.  
 \*Tūmeo, to *swell*.  
 \*Valeo, r. to *be able*.  
 \*Vergeo, —, to *arouse*.  
 \*Vieo, —, to *plait*. Pa. viētus, *shriveled*.  
 \*Vigeo, to *flourish*.  
 \*Vireo, to *be green*.  
 \*Uveo, —, to *be moist*.

§ 168. The following verbs of the second conjugation are irregular in their second or third roots or in both.

NOTE 1. As the proper form of verbs of the first conjugation is *o, āvi, ātum*, of the fourth *io, iui, iūtum*, so that of the second would be *eo, ēvi, ētum*. Very few of the latter conjugation, however, retain this form, but most of them, as noticed in § 165, Rem. 1, drop in the second root the connecting vowel, *ē*, and those in *reo* drop *rē*; as, *cāreo*, (*cāvēri*) *cāvi*, (*cāvētum* or *cāvitum*) *cautum*. Others, imitating the form of those verbs of the third conjugation whose general root ends in a consonant, add *s* to form the second and third roots. Cf. § 165, Rem. 1, and § 171.

NOTE 2. Four verbs of the second conjugation take a reduplication in the parts formed from the second root, viz. *mordeo*, *pendeo*, *spondeo*, and *tondeo*. See § 163, Rem.

- Abōleo, —ēvi, —itum, r. d. to *efface*.  
 \*Algeo, alsī, to *be cold*.  
 Ardeo, arsi, arsum, r. to *burn*.  
 Audeo, ausus sum, (rarely ausi, whence ausim, § 183, R. 1.) r. d. to *dare*.  
 Augeo, auxi, auctum, r. d. to *increase*.  
 Cāveo, cāvī, cautum, m. d. to *beware*.  
 Censeo, censui, censum, d. to *think*.  
 recenseo, —ui, —um or —itum. \*per-  
 censeo, —ui. \*succenseo, —ui, d.  
 Cieo, civi, citum, to *excite*. There is a cognate form, cio, of the fourth conjugation, both of the simple verb and of its compounds. The penult of the participles excitus and concitus is common, and that of accitus is always long.  
 \*Conniveo, —nīvi, to *wink at*.  
 Dēleo, —ēvi, —ētum, d. to *blot out*.  
 Dūceo, docui, doctum, d. to *teach*.  
 \*Fāveo, fāvī, fāvitum, to *favor*.  
 \*Ferveo, ferui, to *boil*. Sometimes fervo, vi, of the third conjugation.  
 Fleo, flēvi, flētum, r. d. to *weep*.  
 Fōveo, fōvi, fōtum, d. to *cherish*.  
 \*Fulgeo, fulsi, to *shine*. Fulgo, of the third conjugation, is also in use.  
 Gaudeo, gavisus sum, r. to *rejoice*. § 142, 2.  
 \*Hāreo, hāsi, hāsūrus, to *stick*. So ad-, co-, in-, ob-hāreo; but \*subhāreo, —.  
 Indulgeo, indulsi, indultum, r. d. to *indulge*.  
 Jūbeo, jussi, jussum, r. d. to *order*.  
 \*Lūceo, luxi, to *shine*. pollūceo, —luxi, —luctum.  
 \*Lūgeo, luxi, d. to *mourn*.  
 \*Māneo, mansi, mansum, m. r. d. to *remain*.  
 Misceo, miscui, mistum or mixtum, mistūrus, d. to *mix*.  
 Mordeo, momordi, morsum, d. to *bite*. remordeo, —di, —morsum, r.  
 Mōveo, mōvi, mōtum, r. d. to *move*.  
 Mulceo, mulsi, mulsum, d. to *soothe*. permulceo, permulsi, permulsum and permulctum, to *rub gently*.  
 \*Mulgeo, mulsi or mulxi, to *milk*. emulgeo, —, emulsum, to *milk out*.

Neo, nēvi, nētum, to *spin*.

\*Pāveo, pāvi, d. to *fear*.

\*Pendeo, pependi, to *hang*. \*impendeo, —, propendo, —, propensum.

Pleo, (*obsolete*). compleo, -ēvi, -ētum, to *fill*. So the other compounds.

Prandeo, prandi, pransum, r. to *dine*.

Rideo, risi, risum, m. r. d. to *laugh*.

\*Sēdeo, sēdi, sessum, m. r. to *sit*.

The compounds with monosyllabic prepositions change ē into i, in the first root; as, insideo, insēdi, insessum.

\*dissideo, -sēdi. So præsideo, and rarely circumssideo.

Soleo, solitus sum and rarely solui, to be accustomed. § 142, 2.

\*Sorbeo, sorbui, to suck in. So \*exsorbeo: but \*resorbeo, —. \*absorbeo, -sorbui or -sorpsi.

Spondeo, sponendi, sponsum & *promise*. See § 163, Rem.

\*Strideo, idi, to *whiz*.

Suādeo, suāsi, suāsum, r. d. to *advise*.

Tēneo, tēnui, tentum, r. d. to *hold*. The compounds change ē into i in the first and second roots; as, defineo, detinui, detentum. \*attineo, -tinui. So pertineo.

Tergeo, tersi, tersum, to *wipe*. Tergo, of the third conjugation, is also in use.

Tondeo, tōtondi, tonsum, to *shear*. The compounds have the perfect tondi.

Torqueo, torsi, tortum, d. to *twist*.

Torreo, torruī, tostum, to *roast*.

\*Turgeo, tursi, to *swell*.

\*Urgeo or argueo, ursi, d. to *urge*.

Video, vidi, visum, m. u. r. d. to *see*.

Vōveo, vōvi, vōtum, d. to *vow*.

### § 169. Impersonal Verbs of the Second Conjugation.

Dēcet, decuit, it becomes.

Lībet, libuit or libitum est, it *pleases*, is agreeable.

Līcet, licuit or licitum est, it is *lawful*, or permitted.

Liquet, liquit, it is *clear*, evident.

Miscret, miseruit or miseritum est, it *moves to pity*; miscret me, I *pity*.

Oportet, oportuit, it behooves.

Piget, piguit or pigitum est, d. it *troubles*, grieves.

Poenitet, poenituit, poenitūrus, d. it *repents*; poenitet me, I *regret*.

Pūdet, puduit or puditum est, d.; it *shames*; pudet me, I *am ashamed*.

Tædet, tæduit or tæsum est, it *disgusts* or *wearies*. pertædet, pertæsum est.

NOTE. Lībet is sometimes written for libet, especially in the comic writers.

### § 170. Deponent Verbs of the Second Conjugation.

Fāteor, fassus, r. d. p. to *confess*. The compounds change ā into i in the first root, and into e in the third; as, confiteor, confessus, d. p. to *acknowledge*. \*diffiteor, to *deny*. profiteor, professus, d. p. to *declare*.

Līceor, licitus, to *bid a price*.

\*Mēdeor, d. to *cure*.

Mēreor, meritus, to *deserve*.

Misēreor, miseritus or misertus, to *pity*.

Polliceor, pollicitus, p. to *promise*.

Reor, ratus, to *think*, suppose.

Tueor, tultus, d. p. to *protect*.

Vēreor, veritus, d. p. to *fear*.

## THIRD CONJUGATION.

§ 171. In the third conjugation, when the first root ends with a consonant, the second root is regularly formed by adding *s*; when it ends with a vowel, the first and second roots are the same: the third root is formed by adding *t*; as, carpo, carpsi, carptum; arguo, argui, argūtum.

In annexing *s* and *t*, certain changes occur in the final consonant of the root:—

1. The palatals *c*, *g*, *gu*, and also *h*, at the end of the first root, form with *s* the double letter *x* in the second root; in the third root, *c* remains, and the others are changed into *c* before *t*; as, dico, (dixi, i. e.), dixi, dictum; rego, (regi, i. e.), rexi, rectum; vēho, venci, vectum; cōquo, cucui, coctum.

**NOTE.** *I'tuo* and *struo* form their second and third roots after the analogy of verbs whose first root ends in a palatal or *h*.

2. *B* is changed into *p* before *s* and *t*; as, *scribo*, *scripti*, *scriptum*.

3. *D* and *t*, before *s*, are either dropped, or changed into *s*; as, *claudio*, *clausi*; *cēdo*, *cessi*; *mitto*, *missi*. Cf. § 56, I, Rem. 1. After *m*, *p* is sometimes inserted before *s* and *t*; as, *sūmo*, *sumpsit*, *sumptum*. *R* is changed to *s* before *s* and *t* in *gēro* and *ūro*.

4. Some other consonants are dropped, or changed into *s*, in certain verbs.

**Exc. 1.** Many verbs whose first root ends in a consonant, do not add *s* to form the second root.

(a.) Of these, some have the second root the same as the first, but the vowel of the second root, if a monosyllable, is long; as,

Bibo,	Excūdo,	Ico,	Mando,	Scābo,	Solvo,	Verro,
Edo,	Fōdio,	Lambo,	Prehendo,	Scando,	Strido,	Verto,
Emo,	Fūgio,	Lēgo,	Psallo,	Sīdo,	Tollo,	Volvo;

to which add the compounds of the obsolete *cando*, *fendo*, and *nuo*.

(b.) Some make a change in the first root. Of these, some change a vowel, some drop a consonant, some prefix a reduplication, others admit two or more of these changes; as,

Ago, ēgi.	Cāpio, cāpi.	Fācio, fēci.
Fīndo, fīdi.	Frango, frēgi.	Fundo, fūdi.
Jācio, jēci.	Līquo, liqui.	Rumpo, rūpi.
Scīndo, scīdi.	Sisto, stīti.	Vīnco, vīci.

Those which have a reduplication are

Cādo, cēcīdi.	Cādo, cēcīdi.	Cāno, cēcīni.
Curro, cūcurri.	Disco, didīci.	Fallo, fēfelli.
Pāgo, (obs.) pēpigi	Parco, pēperci.	Pārio, pēpēri.
and pēgi.	Pādo, pēpēdi.	Pello, pēpūli.
Pendo, pēpendi.	Posco, pōposci.	Pungo, pūpūgi.
Tango, tētigi.	Tendo, tētēdi.	Tundo, tūtūdi.

**Exc. 2.** Some, after the analogy of the second conjugation, add *u* to the first root of the verb; as,

Alo, alui, etc.	Consūlo,	Gēmo,	Rāpio,	Trēmo,
Cōlo,	Depso,	Gēno, (obs.)	Strēpo,	Vōlo,
Compesco,	Frēmo,	Mōlo,	Texo,	Vōmo.

*Mēto*, *messui*; and *pōno*, *pōnui*; add *ui*, with a change in the root.

**Exc. 3.** The following, after the analogy of the fourth conjugation, add *iv* to the first root:—

Arcesso,	Cūpio,	Lācesso,	Rūdo,	Tēro, dropping ē.
Cāpesso,	Incasso,	Pēto,	Quāro, with a change of r into s.	

**Exc. 4.** The following add *v*, with a change in the root; those in *no* and *sco* dropping *n* and *sc*, and those having *er* before *n* changing it to *rē* or *rā*:—

Cresco,	Pasco,	Scisco,	Sperno,	Līno,	Sēro,
Nosco,	Quiesco,	Cerno,	Sterno,	Sīno,	to <i>sono</i> .

**Exc. 5.** (a.) The third root of verbs whose first root ends in *d* or *t*, and some in *g*, add *s*, instead of *t*, to the root, either dropping the *d*, *t*, and *g*, or changing them into *s*; as, *claudio*, *clausum*; *dēfendo*, *dēfensum*; *cēdo*, *cessum*; *flecto*, *flexum*; *figo*, *fixum*. But the compounds of *lo* add *ū*; as, *perdo*, *perdūtum*.

(b.) The following, also, add *s*, with a change of the root:—

Excello,	Fallo,	Pello,	Spargo,	Verro.
Percello,	Mergo,	Præmo,	Vello,	

Exc. 6. The following add *t*, with a change of the root; those having *n*, *nc*, *ng*, *nqu*, or *mp* at the end of the first root dropping *n* and *m* in the third:—

Cerno,	Fingo,	Gëro,	Sëro,	Sperno,	Stringo,	Uro,
Cólo,	Fraugo,	Rumpo,	Sisto,	Sternio,	Tëro,	Vinco;

to which add the compounds of *linguo*, and verbs in *sco* with the second root in *v*; the latter drop *sc* before *t*; as, *nosco*, *nōvi*, *nōtum*; except *pasco*, which drops *c* only.

Exc. 7. (a.) The following have *ŭ*:—

Bibo,	Ellicio,	Mōlo,	Pōno,	with a change of <i>ōn</i> into <i>ōs</i> .
Gëno, ( <i>obs. form of gigno</i> .)	Vōmo,	Sino,	dropping <i>n</i> .	

(b.) The following, like verbs of the fourth conjugation, add *u* to the first root:—

Arcesso,	Cūpio,	Pëto,	Tëro,	dropping <i>ë</i> .
Făcesso,	Lăcesso,	Quëro,	with a change of <i>r</i> into <i>s</i> .	

For other irregularities occurring in this conjugation, see § 172-174.

§ 172. The following list contains most of the simple verbs, both regular and irregular, in the third conjugation, with such of their compounds as require particular notice:—

Acuo, ācui, ācūtum, d. to sharpen.

Ago, ēgi, actum, r. d. to drive. So circumāgo, cūgo, and pārāgo. \*ambi-go, —, to doubt. So sātāgo. The other compounds change *ā* into *i*, in the first root; as, exāgo, exāgi, ex-actum, to drive out. \*prūdīgo, -ēgi, to squander. See § 169, 2.

Alō, ālui, altum, and later āltum, d. to nourish.

\*Ango, anxī, to strangle.

Arguo, argui, argūtum, r. d. to convict.

Arcesso, -cessivī, -cessitum, r. d. to call for. Pass. inf. arcessivī or arcessi.

\*Bātuo, bātui, d. to beat.

Bibo, bibi, bibitum, d. to drink.

\*Cādo, cēcidi, cāsūrus, to fall. The compounds change *ā* into *i*, in the first root, and drop the reduplication; as, occido, -cidī, -cāsūm, r. d. to set.

Crōdo, cēcidi, cāsūm, r. d. to cut. The compounds change *ā* into *i*, and drop the reduplication; as, occido, -cidī, -cāsūm.

Cando, (*obsolete*), synonymous with candeo of the second conjugation. Hence accendo, -cendi, -censum, d. to kindle. So incendo, succendo.

\*Cāno, cēcini, d. to sing. The compounds change *ā* into *i*; as, \*concino,

-cīnui. So occino, prēcino. \*accino, —. So incino, intercino, succino, recino.

\*Capesso, -ivi, r. d. to undertake.

Cāpio, cēpi, captum, r. d. to take. So antēcāpio. The other compounds change *ā* into *i*, in the first root, and into *e* in the third; as, dēcipio, dēcipi, dēceptum.

Carpo, carpsi, carptum, d. to pluck. The compounds change *a* into *e*; as, dēcervo, dēcervi, dēcerptum.

Cēdo, cessi, cessum, r. d. to yield.

Cello, (*obsolete*.) excello, -cellui, -culsum, to excel. \*antēcello, —. So prēcello, rēcello. percello, -cūli, -culsum, to strike.

Cerno, crēvi, crētum, d. to decrees.

\*Cerno, —, to see.

Cingo, cinxi, cinctum, d. to gird.

\*Clango, —, to clang.

Claudo, clausi, clausum, r. d. to shut. The compounds change *au* into *ū*; as, oclūdo, oclūsi, oclūsum, to shut up.

\*†Claudo, —, to limp.

\*†Clēpo, clēpsi, rarely clēpi, to steal.

Cōlo, cōlui, cultum, d. to till. tēcūlo,

-cūlui, -cultum, d. to hide.

Cōmo, compsi, comptum, to deck.

\*Compesco, -pescui, to restrain.



**Consûlo**, -sûlui, -sultum, m. r. d. *to consult.*

**Côquo**, coxi, coctum, m. d. *to cook.*

**Crêdo**, crêdidi, crêditum, r. d. *to believe.*

\***Cresco**, crêvi, *to grow.* conresco, -crêvi, -crêtum.

**Cûbo** is of the first conjugation. Cf. § 165. \***accumbo**, -cûbui, *to lie down.* So the other compounds which insert m.

\***Cûdo**, —, *to forge.* excûdo, -cûdi, -cûsum, d. *to stamp.*

**Cûpio**, cûplvi, cûpitum, d. *to desire.* Subj. imperf. cûpiret. *Lucr.* 1, 72.

\***Curro**, cûcurri, cursûrus, *to run.* concurro, succurro, and transcurro, drop the reduplication; the other compounds sometimes drop, and sometimes retain it; as, dêcurro, dêcurri, and dêcûcurri, dêcursum. \***antêcurro**, —. So circumcurro.

\***Dêgo**, dâgi, d. *to live.*

**Dêmo**, dempsi, demptum, r. d. *to take away.*

†**Depso**, depsui, depstum; *to knead.*

**Dico**, dixi, dictum, u. r. d. *to say.*

\***Disco**, didici, discitûrus, d. *to learn.*

\***Dispesco**, —, *to separate.*

**Divido**, divisi, divisum, r. d. *to divide.*

**Do** is of the first conjugation. abdo, -didi, -ditum, d. *to hide.* So condo, indo. addo, -didi, -ditum, r. d. *to add.* So dêdo, êdo, prôdo, reddo, trîdo, vendo. †**didico**, -didi, -ditum, *to distribute.* So abdo, subdo. perdo, -didi, -ditum, m. r. d. abscondo, -di or -didi, -ditum or -sum.

**Dûco**, duxi, ductum, m. r. d. *to lead.*

**Edo**, êdi, êsum, m. u. r. d. *to eat.*

**Exuo**, exui, exûtum, d. *to strip off.*

**Emo**, êmi, emptum, r. d. *to buy.* So coëmo. The other compounds change ê to i; as, exlmo, -êmi, -emptum.

**Fâcesso**, -cessi, -cessitum, *to execute.*

**Fâcio**, fêci, factum, m. u. r. d. *to do.* Compounded with a preposition, it changes â into i in the first root, and into e in the third, makes -fice in the imperative, and has a regular passive. Compounded with other words, it retains â when of this conjugation, makes fice in the imperative, and has the passive, fio, factum. See § 180.

**Fallo**, fêfelli, falsum, d. *to deceive.* \***rêfello**, -felli, d. *to refuse.*

**Fendo**, (obsolete.) **defendo**, -fendi, -fensum, m. u. r. d. *to defend.* offendo, -fendi, -fensum, d. *to offend.*

**Fêro**, tûli, lâtum, r. d. *to bear.* See § 179. A perfect têtuli is rare. Its compounds are affêro, attûli, allâtum;

aufêro, abstûli, ablâtum; diffêro, distûli, dilâtum; confêro, contûli, collâtum; infêro, intûli, illâtum; offêro, obtûli, oblâtum; effêro, extûli, elâtum; suffêro, sustûli, sublâtum; and circum-, per-, trans-, dê-, prô-, antê-, præfêro, -tûli, -lâtum.

\***Fervo**, vi, *to boil.* Cf. ferveo, 2d conj.

**Fido**, —, fîsus, *to trust.* See § 162, 18. confido, confîsus sum or confîdi, *to rely on.* diffido, diffîlus sum, *to distrust.*

**Figo**, fixi, fixum, r. rarely fîctum, *to fix.* Findo, fîdi, fîssum, d. *to leave.*

**Fingo**, fîuxi, fîctum, d. *to feign.*

**Flecto**, flexi, flexum, r. d. *to bend.*

\***Fligo**, flixi, *to dash.* So confliço. affligo, -flixi, -fîctum, *to afflict.* So infligo. prôfligo is of the first conjugation.

**Fluo**, fluxi, fluxum, (fluctum, obs.) r. *to flow.*

**Fôdio**, fôdi, fôssum, d. *to dig.* Old pres. inf. pass. fôdiri: so also effôdiri.

**Frango**, frêgi, fractum, r. d. *to break.* The compounds change a into i, in the first root; as, infringo, infrêgi, infractum, *to break in upon.*

\***Frêmo**, frêmui, d. *to roar, howl.*

**Frendo**, —, frêsum or fressum, *to gnash.*

**Frigo**, frixi, frictum, rarely frîxum, *to roast.*

\***Fûgio**, fûgi, fûgitûrus, d. *to flee.*

\***Fulgo**, —, *to flash.*

**Fundo**, fûdi, fûsum, r. d. *to pour.*

\***Fûro**, —, *to rage.*

\***Gêmo**, gêmui, d. *to groan.*

**Gêro**, gessi, gestum, r. d. *to bear.*

**Gigno**, (obsolete gêno,) gênuî, gênitum, r. d. *to beget.*

\***Glisco**, —, *to grow.*

\***Glûbo**, —, *to peel.* deglûbo, —, -gluptum.

**Gruo**, (obsolete.) \***congruo**, -grui, *to agree.* So ingruo.

**Ico**, ici, ictum, r. *to strike.*

**Imbuo**, imbui, imbûtum, d. *to imbue.*

\***Incesso**, -cessivi or -cessi, *to attack.*

†**Induo**, indui, indûtum, *to put on.*

**Jâcio**, jêci, jactum, d. *to cast.* The compounds change â into i in the first root, and into e in the third. (§ 163, Exc. 3); as, rejêcio, rejêci, rejectum.

**Jungo**, junxi, junctum, r. d. *to join.*

**Lâcesso**, -cessivi, -cessitum, r. d. *to provoke.*

**Lâcio**, (obsolete.) The compounds change â into i; as, allôcio, -lexi, -lectum, d. *to allure.* Sô illiccio, pelliccio. âlicio, -licui, -licitum, *to draw out.*

**Lædo**, læsi, læsum, m. r. *to hurt*. The compounds change æ into i; as, illido, illisi, illisum, *to dash against*.

\***Lambo**, lambi, *to lick*.

**Lêgo**, lêgi, lectum, r. d. *to read*. So allêgo, perlêgo, praelêgo, relêgo, sublêgo, and translêgo; the other compounds change ê into i; as, colligo, collêgi, collectum, *to collect*. But the following add s to form the second root; § 171, 1. diligo, -lexi, -lectum, *to love*. intelligo, -lexi, -lectum, u. r. d. *to understand*. negligo, -lexi, -lectum, r. d. *to neglect*.

**Lingo**, —, linctum, d. *to lick*. \*delingo, —, *to lick up*.

**Lino**, livi or lêvi, litum, d. *to daub*.

\***Linquo**, liqui, d. *to leave*. relinquo, -liqui, -lictum, r. d. delinquo, -liqui, -lictum. So derelinquo.

**Lûdo**, lûsi, lûsum, m. r. *to play*.

\***Luo**, lui, luitûrus, d. *to atone*. abluo, -lui, -lûtum, r. d. diluo, -lui, -lûtum, d. So eluo.

**Mando**, mandî, mansum, d. *to chew*.  
**Mergo**, mersi, mersum, r. d. *to dip*. So immergo; but pres. inf. pass. immergêri, Col. 5, 9, 3.

**Mêto**, messui, messum, d. *to reap*.

**Mêtuo**, metui, metûtum, d. *to fear*.

\***Mingo**, mîxi, mictum, (sup.) *to make water*.

**Mînuo**, mînuî, mînûtum, d. *to lessen*.

**Mitto**, mîsi, missum, r. d. *to send*.

**Môlo**, mólui, mólitum, *to grind*.

**Mungo**, (obsolete.) emungo, -munxi, -munctum, *to wipe the nose*.

**Necto**, nexi, nexum, d. *to knit*. innecto, -nexui, -nexum. So annecto, connecto.

\***Ningo** or -guo, ninxi, *to snow*.

**Nosco**, nôvi, nôtum, d. *to learn*. agnosco, -nôvi, -nîtum, d. *to recognize*.

cognosco, -nôvi, -nîtum, u. r. d. *to know*. So recognosco. \*internosco, nôvi, *to distinguish between*. præcognosco, —, præcognîtum, *to fore-know*.

\***dignosco**, —. So prænosco. ignosco, -nôvi, -nôtum, d. *to pardon*.

**Nûbo**, nupsi, or nupta sum, nuptum, m. r. *to marry*.

**Nuo**, (obsolete.) *to nod*. \*abnuo, -nui, -nuitûrus, d. *to refuse*. \*annuo, -nui.

\*So innuo, renuo.

\***Olo**, ôlui, *to smell*.

**Pando**, —, passum or pansum, *to open*. So expando. dispano, —, -pansum.

**Pago**, (obs. the same as paco whence pascor,) pèpigi, pactum, *to bargain*: hence

**Pango**, panxi or pègi, pactum, panctû-

rus, d. *to drive in*. compingo, -pègi, -pactum. So impingo. \*oppango, -pègi. \*depango, —. So repango, suppingo.

\***Parco**, pèpèri rarely parsi, parsûrus, *to spare*. Some of the compounds change a to e; as, \*comparco or comperco. \*imperco, —.

**Pàrio**, pèpèri, partum, pàritûrus, d. *to bring forth*. The compounds are of the fourth conjugation.

**Pasco**, pâvi, pastum, m. r. d. *to feed*.

**Pecto**, —, pexum, and pectitum, d. *to comb*. So depecto. repecto.

\***Pèdo**, pèpèdi. \*oppèdo, —.

**Pello**, pèpûli, pulsum, d. *to drive*. Its compounds are not reduplicated.

**Pendo**, pèpendi, pensum, r. *to weigh*. The compounds drop the reduplication. See § 163, Exc. 1.

**Pèto**, pètivi, pètîtum, m. u. r. d. *to ask*.

**Pingo**, pinxi, pictum, *to paint*.

**Pinso**, pinsi, pinsitum, pinsum or pistum, *to pound*.

\***Plango**, planxi, planetûrus, *to lament*.

**Plaudo**, plausi, plausum, d. *to clap, applaud*. So applaudo. \*circumplaudo, —. The other compounds change au into ô.

**Plecto**, —, plexum, d. *to twine*.

\***Pluo**, pluî or plûvi, *to rain*.

**Pôno**, pôsui, (anciently posîvi), pôstûm, r. d. *to place*.

\*†**Porricio**, —, *to offer sacrifice*.

\***Posco**, pôposci, d. *to demand*.

**Prehendo**, { -di, -sum, r. d. *to seize*.

**Prendo**, {

**Prêmo**, pressi, pressum, r. d. *to press*. The compounds change ê into i, in the first root; as, imprîmo, impressi, impressum, *to impress*.

**Prômo**, prompsi, promptum, r. d. *to bring out*.

\***Psallo**, psalli, *to play on a stringed instrument*.

**Pungo**, pûpûgi, punctum, *to prick*. compungo, -punxi, -punctum. So dispungo, expungo. interpungo, —, -punctum. \*repungo, —.

**Quæro**, quæsîvi, quæsîtum, m. r. d. *to seek*. The compounds change æ into i; as, requiro, requisîvi, requisîtum, *to seek again*.

**Quâtio**, —, quassum, *to shake*. The compounds change quâ into cû; as, concûtio, -cussi, -cussum, d. dis-cûtio, -cussi, -cussum, r. d.

**Quiesco**, quîêvi, quîêtum, r. d. *to rest*.

**Râdo**, râsi, râsum, d. *to shave*.

**Râpio**, râpui, reptum, r. d. *to snatch*.

The compounds change â into î in the

- first and second roots, and into e in the third; as, diripio, -ripui, -reptum, m. r. So eripio and præripio.*
- Rēgo, rexi, rectum, r. d. to rule.** *The compounds change e into i, in the first root; as, dirigo, direxi, directum.*
- \***pergo, (for perriego), perrexi, r. to go forward. surgo (for surriego), surrexi, surrectum, r. d. to rise. So porriego (for proriego), to stretch out.**
- \***Rēpo, repsi, to creep.**
- Rōdo, rōsi, rōsum, r. to gnaw. ab-, ar-, e-, ob-, præ-rōdo, want the perfect.**
- \***Rūdo, rudivi, to bray.**
- Rumpo, rūpi, ruptum, r. d. to break.**
- Ruo, rui, rūtum, ruiturus, to fall. diruo, -rui, -rūtum, d. So obruo.**
- \***corruo, -rui. So irruo.**
- \***Sāpio, sapivi, to be wise. The compounds change a into i; as, \*respio, -elpivi or -elpui. \*despio, —, to be silly.**
- \*†**Scābo, scābi, to scratch.**
- Scalpo, scalpsi, sculptum, to engrave. Sālo or sallo, — salsum, to salt.**
- \***Scando, —, d. to climb. The compounds change a into e; as, ascendo, ascendi, ascensum, r. d. descendo, descendi, (anciently descendidi,) descendum.**
- Scindo, scildi, (anciently sciscildi), scisum, d. to cut.**
- Seisco, scīvi, scitum, d. to ordain.**
- Scrībo, scripsi, scriptum, r. d. to write.**
- Sculpo, sculptsi, sculptum, d. to carve.**
- Sēro, sēvi, sātum, r. d. to sow. consēro, -sēvi, -sātum. So insēro, r., and obsēro.**
- Sēro, —, sertum, to entwine. Its compounds have -sēruī; as, assēro, -sēruī, -sertum, r. d.**
- \***Serpo, serpsi, to creep.**
- \***Sido, sidi, to settle. Its compounds have generally sēdi, sessum, from sedeo.**
- \***Sino, sivi, siturus, to permit. desino, desivi, desitum, r. § 284, R. 3, Exc. 2.**
- Sisto, stiti, stātum, to stop. \*absisto, -stiti. So the other compounds; but circumciso wants the perfect.**
- Solvo, solvi, sōlūtum, r. d. to loose.**
- Spargo, sparsi, sparsum, r. d. to spread. The compounds change a into e; as, respergo, -persi, -persum; but with circum and in, a sometimes remains.**
- Spēcio, (obsolete.) The compounds change e into i, in the first root; as, aspicio, aspexi, aspectum, d. to look at. inspicio, inspexi, inspectum, r. d.**
- Sperno, sprīvi, sprētum, d. to despise.**
- \*†**Spuo, spi, i, to spit. \*respuo, respuī, d.**
- Stātuo, stātui, stātūtum, d. to place. The compounds change a into i; as, instituo, institui, institūtum, to institute.**
- Sterno, strāvi, strātum, d. to strew.**
- \***Sternuo, sternui, to sneeze.**
- \***Sterto, —, to snore. \*desterto, do-sterui.**
- \***Stinguo, —, to extinguish. distinguo, distinxi, distinctum. So exstinguo, r. d.**
- \***Strēpo, strēpui, to make a noise.**
- \***Strido, stridi, to creak.**
- Stringo, strinxi, strictum, r. d. to bind or tie tight.**
- Struo, struxi, structum, d. to build.**
- Sūgo, suxi, suctum, to suck.**
- Sūmo, sumpsi, sumptum, r. d. to take.**
- Suo, —, sūtum, d. to sew. So consuo, dissuo. insuo, -sui, sūtum. \*asuo, —.**
- Tāgo, (very rare), to touch. Hence**
- Tango, tēgi, tactum, r. d. to touch. The compounds change a into i in the first root, and drop the reduplication; as, contingo, contigi, contactum, r.**
- Tēgo, texi, tectum, r. d. to cover.**
- \***Temno, —, d. to despise. contemno, -tempsi, -temptum, d.**
- Tendo, tētendi, tentum or tensum, to stretch. The compounds drop the reduplication; as, extendo, -tendi, -tentum or -tensum. So in-, os-, and re-tendo. detendo has tensum. The other compounds have tentum.**
- \*†**Tergo, tersi, tersum, to wipe. Tergo, of the second conjugation has the same second and third roots.**
- Tēro, trivi, tritum, d. to rub.**
- Texo, texui, textum, d. to weave.**
- Tingo or tinguo, tinxi, tinctum, r. d. to moisten, tinge.**
- \***Tollo, anciently tētūli, rarely tolli, d. to raise. The perfect and supine sustūli and sublātum from suffēro take the place of the perfect and supine of tollō and sustollō. \*sustollō, —, r. to raise up, to take away. \*attollō, —. So extollō.**
- Trāho, traxi, tractum, r. d. to draw.**
- \***Trēmō, trēmui, d. to tremble.**
- Tribuo, tribui, tribūtum, r. d. to ascribe.**
- Trūdo, trūsi, trūsium, to thrust.**
- Tundo, tātūdi, tunsium or tūsium, to beat. The compounds drop the reduplication, and have tūsium. Yet contunsium, detunsium, obtunsium, and retunsium, are also found.**
- Ungo, (or -guo), unxi, unctum, d. to anoint.**

Uro, ussi, ustum, d. to burn.

\*Vādo, —, to go. So supervādo. The other compounds have vāsi; as, \*evādo, evāsi, r. So pervādo; also invādo, r. d.

Vēho, vxi, vectum, r. to carry.

Vello, velli or vulsi, vulsum, d. to pluck. So avello, d., divello, evello, d., revello, revelli, revulsum. The other compounds have velli only, except intervello, which has vulsi.

\*Vergo, versi, to incline.

Verro, —, versum, d. to brush.

Verto, verti, versum, r. d. to turn. See § 174, Note.

Vinco, vici, victum, r. d. to conquer.

\*Viso, —, d. to visit.

\*Vivo, vixi, victurus, d. to live.

\*Volo, vōlui, velle (for vōlere), to be willing. See § 178.

Volvo, volvi, vōlūtum, d. to roll.

Vōmo, vōmui, vōmūtum, r. d. to vomit.

REMARK. Those verbs in *io* (and deponents in *ior*), of the third conjugation, which are conjugated like *capio* (page 115) are, *cāpio, cūpio, fūcio, fōdio, fūgio, jācio, pārio, quātio, rāpio, sūpio*, compounds of *lācio* and *spēcio*, and *grādiōr, mōdiōr, pātiōr*, and *mōriōr*: but compare *mōriōr* in § 174, and *ōriōr*, and *pōtiōr* in § 177.

### Inceptive Verbs.

§ 173. Inceptive verbs in general either want the third root, or adopt that of their primitives: (see § 187, II, 2). Of those derived from nouns and adjectives, some want the second root, and some form it by adding *u* to the root of the primitive.

In the following list, those verbs to which *s* is added, have a simple verb in use from which they are formed:—

\*Acesco, ācui, s. to grow sour.

\*Egresco, —, to grow sick.

\*Albesco, —, s. to grow white.

\*Alesco, —, s. to grow. coalesco, -alui,

-alitum, to grow together.

\*Ardesco, arsi, s. to take fire.

\*Aresco, —, s. to grow dry. \*exaresco,

-arui. So inaresco, peraresco.

\*Augesco, auxi, s. to increase.

\*Cālesco, cālui, s. to grow warm.

\*Calvesco, —, s. to become bald.

\*Candesco, candui, s. to grow white.

\*Cānesco, cānui, s. to become hoary.

\*Clāresco, clārui, s. to become bright.

\*Condormisco, -dormīvi, s. to go to sleep.

\*Conticesco, -tīcui, to become silent.

\*Crebresco, crebui and crebrui, to increase.

\*Crūdesco, crūdui, to become violent.

\*Ditesco, —, to grow rich.

\*Dulcesco, —, to grow sweet.

\*Dūresco, dūrui, to grow hard.

\*Evilesco, evilui, to become worthless.

\*Extimesco, -tīmui, to fear greatly.

\*Fātesco, —, to gape.

\*Flaccesco, flaccui, s. to wilt.

\*Fervesco, ferbui, s. to grow hot.

\*Flōresco, flōrui, s. to begin to flourish.

\*Frācesco, frācui, to grow rancid.

\*Frigesco, —, s. to grow cold. \*perfrigesco, -frixi. So refrigesco.

\*Frondesco, —, s. to put forth leaves.

\*Frūticesco, —, to put forth shoots.

\*Gēlasco, —, s. to freeze. So \*congē-

lasco, s. to congeal.

\*Gēmisco, —, s. to begin to sigh.

\*Gemmasco, —, to begin to bud.

\*Gēnērasco, —, s. to be produced.

\*Grandesco, —, to grow large.

\*Grāvesco, —, to grow heavy.

\*Hāresco, —, s. to adhere.

\*Hēbesco, —, s. to grow dull.

\*Horresco, horrui, s. to grow rough.

\*Hūmesco, —, s. to grow moist.

\*Ignesco, —, to become inflamed.

\*Indōlesco, -dōlui, d. to be grieved.

\*Insōlesco, —, to become haughty.

\*Intēgrasco, —, to be renewed.

\*Jūvēnesco, —, to grow young.

\*Languesco, langui, s. to grow languid.

\*Lāpidesco, —, to become stone.

\*Lātesco, —, to grow broad.

\*Lātesco, to be concealed. s. \*delītesco, -lītui; \*oblītesco, -lītui.

\*Lentescio, —, to become soft.

\*Liquesco, —, s. to become liquid.

\*dēliquesco, -lītui.

\*Lūcesco, —, s. to grow light, to dawn.

\*Lūtesco, —, s. to become muddy.

\*Mācesco, —, s. } to grow lean.

\*Macresco, — }

\*remacresco, -macrui.

\*Mādesco, mādui, s. to grow moist.

- \***Marcesco**, —, s. to pine away.  
 \***Māfuresco**, mātūri, s. to ripen.  
 \***Miscesco**, misērui, s. to pity.  
 \***Mitescō**, —, to grow mild.  
 \***Mollesco**, —, to grow soft.  
 \***Mītesco**, —, to become dumb. \*ob-  
 mītesco, obmūtui.  
 \***Nigresco**, nigrui, s. to grow black.  
 \***Nitescō**, nītui, s. to grow bright.  
 \***Nōtesco**, nōtui, to become known.  
 \***Obbrūtesco**, —, to become brutish.  
 \***Obdormisco**, —, s. to fall asleep.  
 \***Obsurdesco**, —, s. to grow deaf.  
 \***Occallesco**, —, callui, to become callous.  
 \***Olesco**, (scarcely used.) \***ābōlesco**,  
 —, s. to cease. **ādōlesco**, —, s. to  
 —, ultum, s. to grow up. **exōlesco**,  
 —, s. to grow out of date.  
 So **obsōlesco**. **inōlesco**, —, s. to  
 —, ultum, d. to grow in or on.  
 \***Pallesco**, pallui, s. to grow pale.  
 \***Pātesco**, pātui, s. to be opened.  
 \***Pāvesco**, pāvui, s. to grow fearful.  
 \***Pertimesco**, —, timui, d. to fear greatly.  
 \***Pinguesco**, —, to grow fat.  
 \***Pābesco**, —, to come to maturity.  
 \***Puērasco**, —, to become a boy.  
 \***Pūtesco**, —, s. } to become putrid.  
 \***Putresco**, —, s. }  
 \***Rāresco**, —, to become thin.  
 \***Rēspiscō**, —, s. to recover one's  
 senses.  
 \***Rigescō**, rigui, s. to grow cold.  
 \***Rūbesco**, rūbui, s. to grow red. \***ērū-**  
 besco, —, rūbui, d.  
 \***Sānescō**, —, to become sound. \***con-**  
 sānescō, —, s. to grow old. So  
 consēnescō.  
 \***Sentisco**, —, s. to perceive.  
 \***Siccesco**, —, s. to become dry.  
 \***Silesco**, siliui, s. to grow silent.  
 \***Sōlidesco**, —, to become solid.  
 \***Sordesco**, sordui, s. to become filthy.  
 \***Splendesco**, splēndui, s. to become  
 bright.  
 \***Spūmesco**, —, to begin to foam.  
 \***Stērilesco**, —, to become barren.  
 \***Stūpesco**, stūpui, s. to become aston-  
 ished.  
**Suesco**, suēvi, suētum, s. to become ac-  
 customed.  
 \***Tābesco**, tābui, s. to waste away.  
 \***Tēnēresco** and —, asco, —, to become  
 tender.  
 \***Tēpesco**, tēpui, s. to grow warm.  
 \***Torpesco**, torpui, s. to grow torpid.  
 \***Trēmisco**, —, s. to begin to tremble.  
 \***Tūmesco**, tūmui, s. } to begin to swell.  
 \***Turgesco**, —, s. }  
 \***Uvesco**, —, to become moist.  
 \***Vālesco**, —, s. to become strong.  
 \***Vānescō**, —, to vanish. \***ēvānescō**,  
 —, s. to grow old.  
 \***Viresco**, virui, s. to grow green.  
 \***Vivesco**, vixi, s. to come to life. \***rē-**  
 vivisco, —, vixi.

### § 174. Deponent Verbs of the Third Conjugation.

- Apiscor**, aptus, to get. The compounds  
 change ā into i in the first root, and  
 into e in the third; as, **ādīpiscor**,  
 adeptus. So **indīpiscor**.  
**Expergiscor**, experrectus, to awake.  
 \***Fātiscor**, to gape or crack open. The  
 compounds change ā into ē; as, **dēfē-**  
 tiscor, —, sessus.  
**Fruor**, fructus or fructus, fructūrus, d.  
 to enjoy.  
**Fungor**, functus, r. d. to perform.  
**Grādior**, gressus, to walk. The com-  
 pounds change ā into ē; as, **aggrēdior**,  
 aggressus, r. d. Inf. pres. **aggrēdi**  
 and **aggrēdiri**; so, **progrēdi** and **progrē-**  
 dir; and pres. ind. **egrēditur**, *Plaut.*  
 \***Irascor**, to be angry.  
**Lābor**, lapsus, r. to fall.  
 \***Liquor**, to melt, flow.  
**Lōquor**, locūtus, r. d. to speak.  
**Miniscor**, (obsolete.) **comminiscor**, com-  
 mentus, p. to invent. \***rēmīniscor**,  
 to remember.
- Mōrior**, (mōri, rarely mōriri,) mortuus,  
 mōritūrus, d. to die. So **ēmōriri**, *Plaut.*  
 for **emōri**.  
**Nanciscor**, nactus or nactus, to obtain.  
**Nascor**, nātus, nascitūrus, u. to be born.  
**Nitor**, nixus or nixus, nixūrus, to lean  
 upon.  
**Obliviscor**, oblitus, d. p. to forget.  
**Pāciscor**, pactus, d. to bargain. So  
**dēpāciscor**.  
**Pātor**, passus, r. d. to suffer. **perpētior**,  
 —, pessus.  
 From **plecto**, to twine, come, **amplec-**  
 tor, amplexus, d. p. **complector**, com-  
 plexus, p. So **circumplector**.  
**Prōfiscor**, profectus, r. to depart.  
**Quēror**, questus, m. u. d. to complain.  
 \***Ringor**, to snarl.  
**Sēquor**, sēcūtus, r. d. to follow.  
**Tuor**, tūtus, to protect.  
 \***Vescor**, d. to eat.  
**Ulciscor**, ultus, m. d. p. to avenge.  
**Utor**, ūsus, r. d. to use.

NOTE. *Dēvertor, prævortor, révertor*, compounds of *verto*, are used as deponents in the present and imperfect tenses; *révertor* also, sometimes, in the perfect.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

† § 175. Verbs of the fourth conjugation regularly form their second root in *iv*, and their third in *it*; as, *audio, audivi, auditum*.

The following list contains most regular verbs of this conjugation:—

*Audio*, -ivi or -ii, m. u. r. d. *to hear*.  
*\*Cio*, cīvi, *to excite*. Cf. *cio*, § 168.  
*Conodio*, -ivi or -ii, *to season*.  
*Custodio*, -ivi or -ii, d. *to guard*.  
*\*Dormio*, -ivi or -ii, m. r. d. *to sleep*.  
*Erudio*, -ivi or -ii, d. *to instruct*.  
*Expedio*, -ivi or -ii, d. *to disentangle*.  
*Finio*, -ivi or -ii, r. d. *to finish*.  
*\*Gestio*, -ivi or -ii, *to exult; desire*.  
*Impedio*, -ivi or -ii, r. d. *to entangle*.  
*Insanio*, -ivi or -ii, *to be mad*.  
*Irratio*, -ivi or -ii, *to ensnare*.  
*Lenio*, -ivi or -ii, d. *to mitigate*.  
*Mollio*, -ivi or -ii, d. *to soften*.

*\*Mugio*, -ivi or -ii, *to bellow*.  
*Munio*, -ivi or -ii, r. d. *to fortify*.  
*Mutio*, -ivi, *to mutter*.  
*Nutrio*, -ivi or -ii, d. *to nourish*.  
*Partio*, -ivi or -ii, r. *to divide*.  
*Polio*, -ivi, d. *to polish*.  
*Punio*, -ivi or -ii, d. *to punish*.  
*Rēdimio*, -ivi, *to crown*.  
*Scio*, -ivi, u. r. *to know*.  
*Servio*, -ivi or -ii, m. r. d. *to serve*.  
*Sōpio*, -ivi or -ii, *to lull asleep*.  
*Stābilio*, -ivi or -ii, *to establish*.  
*Tinnio*, -ivi or -ii, r. *to tinkle*.  
*Vestio*, -ivi or -ii, *to clothe*.

§ 176. The following list contains those verbs of the fourth conjugation which form their second and third roots irregularly, and those which want either or both of them.

REMARK. The principal irregularity in verbs of the fourth conjugation arises from following the analogy of those verbs of the third conjugation whose first root ends in a consonant; as, *sēpio, sepsi, septum*. A few become irregular by syncope; as, *vēnio, vēni, ventum*.

*Amicio*, -ui or -xi, *amictum*, d. *to clothe*.  
*\*Balbatio*, —, *to stammer*.  
*Bullio*, ii, *itum*, *to bubble*.  
*\*Cæcütio*, —, *to be dim-sighted*.  
*\*Cambio*, —, *to exchange*.  
*\*Dementio*, —, *to be mad*.  
*Effütio*, —, *to babble*.  
*Eo*, ivi or ii, *itum*, r. d. *to go*. The compounds have only ii in the perfect, except *öbeo, præeo*, and *sübeo*, which have ivi or ii. All the compounds want the supine and perfect participles, except *ädeo, ambio, inéo, öbeo, prætereó, sübeo, circümeó* or *circüeo*, *redeo*, *transeo*, and *\*tvēneo, vēnii*, r. (from *vēnum eo*), *to be sold*.  
*Farcio*, *farsi*, *fartum* or *fartum*, *to cram*. The compounds generally change a to e; as, *refercio*, -fersi, -fertum, but *con-* and *ef-*, *farcio* and -fercio.  
*Fastidio*, -ii, -itum, d. *to loathe*.  
*\*Ferio*, —, d. *to strike*.

*\*Fëröcio*, —, *to be fierce*.  
*Fulcio*, *fulsi*, *fultum*, d. *to prop up*.  
*\*Gannio*, —, *to yelp, bark*.  
*\*Glöcio*, —, *to cluck as a hen*.  
*\*Glütio*, ivi, or *glütii*, *to swallow*.  
*Grandio*, —, *to make great*.  
*\*Grunnio*, *grunnii*, *to grunt*.  
*Haurio*, *hausi*, *rar. haurii*, *haustum*, *rar. hausitum*, *hausturus*, *hausurus*, u. d. *to draw*.  
*\*Hinnio*, —, *to neigh*.  
*\*Ineptio*, —, *to trifle*.  
*\*Lascivio*, *lascivii*, *to be wanton*.  
*\*Ligürio*, *ligürii*, *to feed delicately*.  
*\*Lippio*, —, r. *to be blear-eyed*.  
*\*Obedio*, *obēdii*, r. *to obey*.  
*Pario* is of the third conjugation, but its compounds are of the fourth, changing ä to ë; as, *äpério*, *äpëriui*, *äpertum*, r. d. *to open*. So *öpério*, d. *compërio*, *compëri*, *compertum*, *rarely dep. compërior*, *to find out*. So *repério*, r. d.

**Pāvio**, —, *pāvītum*, to beat.

\***Prūrio**, —, to itch.

**Queo**, *quīvi* or *quīi*, *quītum*, to be able.

So \***nēqueo**.

\***Rancio**, —, *r.* to be hoarse.

\***Rūgio**, —, to roar as a lion.

**Sævio**, *sæviī*, *ītum*, *r.* to rage.

\***Sāgio**, —, to perceive keenly.

\***Salio**, *salui* or *sālīi*, to leap. The

compounds change *ā* into *i*; as, \***absal-**

**lio**, —. So **circumsalio**. \***assilio**, —*ui*.

So **disalio**, **insalio**. \***dēsalio**, —*ui* or —*il*.

So **exsalio**, **rēsalio**, **subsalio**. \***transsal-**

**io**, —*ui* or —*ivi*, *d.* So **prōsalio**.

**Sālio**, —, *ītum*, *r.* *d.* to salt.

**Sancio**, *sanxi*, *sancītum* or *sanctum*, *d.* to ratify, sanction.

**Sarcio**, *sarsi*, *sartum*, *d.* to patch.

**Sarrio**, —*ivi* or —*ui*, *sarrītum*, *d.* to weed, hoe.

\***Scātūrio**, —, to gush out.

**Sentio**, *sensi*, *sensum*, *r.* to feel.

**Sēpēlio**, *sēpēlivi* or —*ii*, *rar.* *sēpēli*, *sē-*

*pultum*, *r.* *d.* to bury.

**Sēpio**, *sepsi*, *septum*, *d.* to hedge in.

\***Singultio**, —, to sob, hiccup.

\***Sitio**, *sitii*, to thirst.

**Suffio**, —*ii*, —*ītum*, *d.* to fumigate.

\***Tussio**, —, to cough.

\***Vāgio**, *vāgii*, to cry.

**Vēnio**, *vāni*, *ventum*, *r.* to come.

**Vincio**, *vinxi*, *vinctum*, *r.* *d.* to bind.

**NOTE.** Desiderative verbs want both the second and third roots, except these three:—\***ēsūrio**, —, *ēsūritus*, *r.* to desire to eat; \***nuptūrio**, —*ivi*, to desire to marry; \***partūrio**, —*ivi*, to be in travail. See § 187, II. 3.

### § 177. Deponent Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation.

**Assentior**, *assensus*, *r.* *d.* *p.* to assent.

**Blandior**, *blanditus*, to flatter.

**Largior**, *largitus*, *p.* to give, bestow.

**Mentior**, *mentitus*, *r.* *p.* to lie.

**Mētor**, *mensus* or *mētītus*, *d.* *p.* to measure.

**Mōlior**, *mōlītus*, *d.* to strive, toil.

**Ordior**, *orsus*, *d.* *p.* to begin.

**Orior**, *ortus*, *ōritūrus*, *d.* to spring up.

Except in the present infinitive, this verb seems to be of the third conjugation.

**Pērior**, (*obs.* whence *pēritus*.) *ex-* *pērior*, *expertus*, *r.* *d.* to try. *oppē-* *rior*, *oppertus* or *oppēritus*, *d.* to wait for.

**Partior**, *partītus*, *d.* to divide.

**Pōtor**, *pōtītus*, *r.* *d.* to obtain, enjoy. In the poets the present indicative and imperfect subjunctive are sometimes of the third conjugation.

**Sortior**, *sortītus*, *r.* to cast lots.

## IRREGULAR VERBS.

§ 178. Irregular verbs are such as deviate from the common forms in some of the parts derived from the first root.

They are *sum*, *vōlo*, *fēro*, *ēdo*, *fio*, *eo*, *queo*, and their compounds.

*Sum* and its compounds have already been conjugated. See § 153. In the conjugation of the rest, the parts which are irregular are fully exhibited, but a synopsis only, of the other parts is, in general, given. Some parts of *volo* and of its compounds are wanting.

1. *Volo* is irregular only in the present of the indicative and infinitive, and in the present and imperfect of the subjunctive.

**REMARK.** It is made irregular partly by syncope, and partly by a change in the vowel of the root. In the present infinitive also and in the imperfect subjunctive, after *ē* was dropped, *r* following *l* was changed into *l*; as, *velre* (*velre*) *velle*; *velērem* (*velrem*) *vellem*.

*Pres. Indic.*

*vōl'-lō,*

*Pres. Infin.*

*vel'-lē,*

*Perf. Indic.*

*vōl'-u-i,*

*to be willing, to wish.*

## INDICATIVE.

<i>Pres. S.</i> vō'-lō, vīs, vult;	<i>Perf.</i> vōl'-u-i.
<i>P.</i> vōl'-ū-mūs, vul'-tīs, vō'-lunt.	<i>Plup.</i> vō-lu'-ē-ram.
<i>Imperf.</i> vō-lē'-bam, vō-lē'-bās, etc.	<i>Fut. perf.</i> vō-lu'-ē-rō.
<i>Fut.</i> vō'-lam, vō'-lēs, etc.	

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Pres. S.</i> vē'-lim, vē'-lis, vē'-lit;	<i>Perf.</i> vō-lu'-ē-rim.
<i>P.</i> vē-li'-mūs, vē-li'-tīs, vē'-lint.	<i>Plup.</i> vōl-u-is'-sem.
<i>Imperf. S.</i> vel'-lem, vel'-lēs, vel'-lēt;	
<i>P.</i> vel-lē'-mūs, vel-lē'-tīs, vel'-lent.	

## INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> vel'-lē.
<i>Perf.</i> vōl-u-is'-sē.

## PARTICIPLE.

<i>Pres.</i> vō'-lens.
------------------------

NOTE. *Vōl* and *vōlīs*, for *vult* and *vultīs*, and *vīs*, for *vis* are found in Plautus and other ancient authors.

2. *Nōlo* is compounded of the obsolete *nē* (for *non*) and *vōlo*. The *v* of *vōlo* after *nē* is dropped, and the vowels (*ē ō*) are contracted into *ō*.

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Pres. Infin.</i>	<i>Perf. Indic.</i>	
nō'-lō,	nol'-lē,	nōl'-u-i,	<i>to be unwilling.</i>

## INDICATIVE.

<i>Pres. S.</i> nō'-lō, non'-vīs, non'-vult;	<i>Perf.</i> nōl'-u-i.
<i>P.</i> nōl'-ū-mūs, non-vul'-tīs, nō'-lunt.	<i>Plup.</i> nō-lu'-ē-ram.
<i>Imperf.</i> nō-lē'-bam, -bās, -bāt, etc.	<i>Fut. perf.</i> nō-lu'-ē-rō.
<i>Fut.</i> nō'-lam, -lēs, -lēt, etc.	

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Pres. S.</i> nō'-lim, nō'-lis, nō'-lit;	<i>Perf.</i> nō-lu'-ē-rim.
<i>P.</i> nō-li'-mūs, nō-li'-tīs, nō'-lint.	<i>Plup.</i> nōl-u-is'-sem.
<i>Imperf. S.</i> nol'-lem, nol'-lēs, nol'-lēt;	
<i>P.</i> nol-lē'-mūs, nol-lē'-tīs, nol'-lent.	

## IMPERATIVE.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Future.</i>
<i>Sing. 2.</i> nō'-li; <i>Plur.</i> nō-li-tē.	<i>Sing. 2.</i> nō-li-tō; <i>Plur.</i> nōl-i-tō'-tē,
	3. nō-li'-tō; nō-lun'-tō.

## INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> nol'-lē.
<i>Perf.</i> nōl-u-is'-sē.

## PARTICIPLE.

<i>Pres.</i> nō'-lens.
------------------------

NOTE. In *non-vis*, *non-vult*, etc. of the present, *non* takes the place of *ne*, but *nōvis* and *nōvult* also occur in Plautus.



3. *Mālo* is compounded of *māgis* and *vōlo*. In composition *māgis* drops its final syllable, and *vōlo* its *v*. The vowels (*ā ō*) are then contracted into *ā*.

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	<i>Perf. Indic.</i>
mā'-lō,	mal'-lē,	māl'-u-i, to prefer.

## INDICATIVE.

<i>Pres. S.</i> mā'-lō, mā'-vis, mā'-vult;	<i>Perf.</i> māl'-u-i.
<i>P.</i> māl'-ū-mūs, mā'-vul'-tis, mā'-lunt.	<i>Plup.</i> mā-lu'-ē-ram.
<i>Imperf.</i> mā-lē'-bam, -bās, etc.	<i>Fut. perf.</i> mā-lu'-ē-rō.
<i>Fut.</i> mā'-lam, -lēs, etc.	

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Pres. S.</i> mā'-lim, mā'-lis, mā'-lit;	<i>Perf.</i> mā-lu'-ē-rim.
<i>P.</i> mā-lī'-mūs, mā-lī'-tis, mā'-lint.	<i>Plup.</i> māl-u-is'-sem.
<i>Imperf. S.</i> mal'-lem, mal'-lēs, mal'-lēt;	
<i>P.</i> mal-lē'-mūs, mal-lē'-tis, mal'-lert.	

## INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> mal'-lē.	<i>Perf.</i> māl-u-is'-sē.
-----------------------	----------------------------

NOTE. *Māvōlo, māvōlunt; māvōlet; māvōlim, māvōlis, māvōlii; and māvōllem;* for *mālo, mālunt, etc.*, occur in Plautus.

§ 179. *Fēro* is irregular in two respects:—1. Its second and third roots are not derived from the first, but from otherwise obsolete verbs, viz. *tūlo* for *tollo*, and *tlao*, sup. *tlātum*, by aphæresis, *lātum*:—2. In the present infinitive active, in the imperfect subjunctive, and in certain parts of the present indicative and imperative, of both voices, the connecting vowel is omitted. In the present infinitive passive, *r* is doubled.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

<i>Pres. Indic.</i> fē'-rō, (to bear.)	<i>Pres. Indic.</i> fē'-rōr, (to be borne.)
<i>Pres. Inf.</i> fer'-rē,	<i>Pres. Inf.</i> fer'-rī,
<i>Perf. Indic.</i> tū'-li,	<i>Perf. Part.</i> lā'-tūs.
<i>Supine.</i> lā'-tum.	

## INDICATIVE.

## Present.

<i>S.</i> fē'-rō, fers, fert;	fē'-rōr, fer'-ris or -rē, fer'-tūr;
<i>P.</i> fer'-i-mūs, fer'-tis, fē'-runt.	fēr'-i-mūr, fē-rim'-i-ni, fē-run'-tūr.

<i>Imperf.</i> fē-rē'-bam.	<i>Imperf.</i> fē-rē'-bār.
<i>Fut.</i> fē'-ram, -rēs, etc.	<i>Fut.</i> fē'-rār, -rē'-ris or -rē'-rē, etc.
<i>Perf.</i> tū'-li.	<i>Perf.</i> lā'-tūs sum or fu'-i.
<i>Plup.</i> tū'lē'-ram.	<i>Plup.</i> lā'-tūs ē'-ram or fu'-ē-ram.
<i>Fut. perf.</i> tū'lē'-rō	<i>Fut. perf.</i> lā'-tūs ē'-rō or fu'-ē-rō.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> fě'-ram, -rās, etc.	<i>Pres.</i> fě'-rār, -ra'-rīs or -r.ī'-rě, etc.
<i>Imperf.</i> fer'-rem, -rēs, etc.	<i>Imperf.</i> fer'-rēr, -rē'-rīs, etc.
<i>Perf.</i> tū'-lē-rim.	<i>Perf.</i> lā'-tūs sim or fu'-ě-rim.
<i>Plup.</i> tū'-lis'-sem.	<i>Plup.</i> lā'-tūs es'-sem or fu-is'-sem.

## IMPERATIVE.

<i>Pres. S.</i> fěr,	<i>P.</i> fer'-tě.	<i>Pres. S.</i> fer'-rě,	<i>P.</i> fě-rīm'-ī-nī.
<i>Fut. S.</i> fer'-tō,	<i>P.</i> fer-tō'-tě,	<i>Fut. S.</i> fer'-tōr,	<i>P.</i> (fě-rēm'-ī-nī.)
	fer-tō;		fer'-tōr.
	fě-run'-tō.		fě-run'-tōr.

## INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> fer'-rě.	<i>Pres.</i> fer'-rī.
<i>Perf.</i> tū'-lis'-sě.	<i>Perf.</i> lā'-tūs es'-sě or fu-is'-sě.
<i>Fut.</i> lā'-tū'-rūs es'-sě.	<i>Fut.</i> lā'-tum ī'-rī.

## PARTICIPLES.

<i>Pres.</i> fě'-rens.	<i>Perf.</i> lā'-tūs.
<i>Fut.</i> lā'-tū'-rūs.	<i>Fut.</i> fě-ren'-dūs.

## GERUND.

fě-ren'-dī, etc.

## SUPINES.

*Former.* lā'-tum. *Latter.* lā'-tū.

**NOTE.** In the comic writers the following reduplicated forms are found in parts derived from the second root, viz. *tetūli*, *tetulistī*, *tetūlit*, *tetulērunt*; *tetulēro*, *tetulērit*; *tetulisse*, and *tetulisse*.

§ 180. *Fio*, 'to become,' is properly a neuter verb of the third conjugation, having only the parts derived from the first root; but it is used also as a passive of *fācio*, from which it takes those parts of the passive which are derived from the third root, together with the participle in *dus*. The infinitive present has been changed from the regular form *fiēre* to *fiēri*.

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Pres. Infin.</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>
fī'-ō,	fī'-ē-rī,	fac'-tūs, to be made or to become.

## INDICATIVE.

<i>Pres. S.</i> fī'-ō, fīs, fīt;	<i>Perf.</i> fac'-tūs sum or fu'-ī.
<i>P.</i> fī-mūs, fī'-tis, fī'-unt.	<i>Plup.</i> fac'-tūs ē'-ram or fu'-ē-ram.
<i>Imperf.</i> fī-ē'-bam, fī-ē'-bās, etc.	<i>Fut. perf.</i> fac'-tūs ē'-rō or fu'-ē-rō.
<i>Fut.</i> fī'-am, fī'-ēs, etc.	

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> fī'-am, fī'-ās, etc.	<i>Perf.</i> fac'-tūs sim or fu'-ē-rim.
<i>Imp.</i> fī'-ē-rem, -ē'-rēs, etc.	<i>Plup.</i> fac'-tūs es'-sem or fu-is'-sem.

## IMPERATIVE.

*Pres. Sing.* fī; *Plur.* fī'-tě.

## INFINITIVE.

*Pres.* fī'-ě-ri.

*Perf.* fac'-tūs es'-sě or fu-is'-sě.

*Fut.* fac'-tum ī-ri.

## PARTICIPLES.

*Perf.* fac'-tūs.

*Fut.* fā-ci-en'-dūs.

## SUPINE.

*Latter.* fac'-tū.

**NOTE.** The compounds of *fācio* which retain *a*, have also *fīo* in the passive; as, *calefācio*, to warm; passive, *calefīo*; but those which change *a* into *i* form the passive regularly. (Cf. *fucio* in the list, § 172.) Yet *confīi*, *dēfīi*, and *infīi*, occur. See § 183, 12, 13, 14.

**§ 181.** *Edo*, to eat, is conjugated regularly as a verb of the third conjugation; but in the present of the indicative, imperative, and infinitive moods, and in the imperfect of the subjunctive, it has also forms similar to those of the corresponding tenses of *sum*.—**Thus.**

## INDICATIVE.

*Present.*

<i>S.</i> ē'-dē,	ē'-dīs,	ē'-dīt,
	(or ēs,	est);
<i>P.</i> ēd'-ī-mūs,	ēd'-ī-tīs,	ē'-dunt.
	(or es'-tīs),	

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

*Imperfect.*

<i>S.</i> ēd'-ě-rem,	ēd'-ě-rēs,	ēd'-ě-rēt,
(or es'-sem,	es'-sēs,	es'-sēt);
<i>P.</i> ēd'-ě-rē-mūs,	ēd'-ě-rē-tīs,	ēd'-ě-rent,
(or es'-sē-mūs,	es'-sē-tīs,	es'-sent).

## IMPERATIVE.

<i>Pres. S.</i> ē'-dē,	<i>P.</i> ēd'-ī-tě,
(or ēs;	es'-tē).
<i>Fut. S.</i> ēd'-ī-tě,	<i>P.</i> ēd'-ī-tō'-tě, ē-dun'-tě.
(or es'-tē,	es-tō'-tē).

## INFINITIVE.

*Pres.* ēd'-ě-rē, (or es'-sē).

## PASSIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> ēd'-ī-tūr,	(or es'-tūr).
<i>Imperf.</i> ēd'-ě-rē-tūr,	(or es'-sē-tūr).

**NOTE.** (a.) In the present subjunctive, *ēdīm*, *ēdīs*, etc., are found, for *ēdam*, *ēdās*, etc.

(b.) In the compounds of *ēdo*, also, forms resembling those of *sum* occur. *Ambēdo* has the participles *ambēns* and *ambēsus*; *comēdo* has *comēsus*, *comesūsus*, and rarely *comestus*; and *adēdo* and *exēdo* have *adēsus* and *exēsus*.

§ 182. *Eo* is irregular in the parts which, in other verbs are formed from the first root, except the imperfect subjunctive and the present infinitive. In these, and in the parts formed from the second and third roots, it is a regular verb of the fourth conjugation.

NOTE. *Eo* has no first root, and the parts usually derived from that root, consist, in this verb, of terminations only.

Pres. Indic.	Pres. Infin.	Perf. Indic.	Perf. Part.
e'-ō,	i'-rē,	i'-vī,	i'-tum, to go.

INDICATIVE.

Pres. S. e'-ō, is, it;	Fut. i'-bō, i'-bīs, i'-bīt, etc.
P. i'-mūs, i'-tīs, e'-unt.	Perf. i'-vī, i'-vis'-tī, i'-vīt, etc.
Imperf. S. i'-bam, i'-bās, i'-bāt;	Plup. iv'-ē-ram, iv'-ē-rās, etc.
P. i'-bā'-mūs, etc.	Fut. perf. iv'-ē-rō, iv'-ē-rīs, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres. e'-am, e'-ās, e'-āt, etc.	Perf. iv'-ē-rim, iv'-ē-rīs, etc.
Imperf. i'-rem, i'-rēs, i'-rēt, etc.	Plup. i-vis'-sem, i-vis'-sēs, etc.

IMPERATIVE.

Pres. S. i,	P. i'-tē.
Fut. 2. i'-tō,	i-tō'-tē,
3. i'-tō;	e-un'-tō.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. i'-rē.
Perf. i-vis'-sē.
Fut. i-tū'-rūs es'-sē.

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. i'-ens, (gen. e-un'-tīs.)
Fut. i-tū'-rūs, a, um.

GERUND.

e-un'-dī,
e-un'-dō, etc.

REMARK 1. In some of the compounds the forms *eam, ies, iet* occur, though rarely, in the future; as, *redeam, redies, exiet, prodient. Istis, issem, and isses*, are formed by contraction for *ivistis, ivissem, and ivisse*. See § 182, 7.

REM. 2. In the passive voice are found the infinitive *iri*, and the third persons singular *itur, ibitur, ibitur, itum est*, etc.; *editur, iritur, eundum est*, etc., which are used impersonally. See § 184, 2, (a.)

REM. 3. The compounds of *eo*, including *vēneo*, are conjugated like the simple verb, but most of them have *ii* in the perfect rather than *ivi*. See under *eo* in § 176. *Adeo, anteeo, inco, praeireo, subeo, and transeo*, being used actively, are found in the passive voice. *Iniitur* occurs as a future passive of *ineo*. *Ambio* is regular, like *audio*, but has either *ambibat* or *ambiēbat*.

NOTE. *Queo*, I can, and *nequeo*, I cannot, are conjugated like *eo*, but they want the imperative mood and the gerund, and their participles rarely occur. They are sometimes found in the passive voice, before an infinitive passive.

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

§ 183. (1.) Defective verbs are those which are not used in certain tenses, numbers, or persons.

REMARK. There are many verbs which are not found in all the tenses, numbers, and persons, exhibited in the paradigms. Some, not originally defective, are accounted so, because they do not occur in the classics now extant. Others are in their nature defective. Thus, the first and second persons of the passive voice must be wanting in many verbs, from the nature of their signification.

(2.) The following list contains such verbs as are remarkable for wanting many of their parts:—

- |                               |                              |                                    |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. Odi, <i>I hate.</i>        | 6. Fāri, <i>to speak.</i>    | 11. Cēdo, <i>tell, or give me.</i> |
| 2. Cœpi, <i>I have begun.</i> | 7. Quæso, <i>I pray.</i>     | 12. Confit, <i>it is done.</i>     |
| 3. Mēmīni, <i>I remember.</i> | 8. Ave, } <i>hail, or</i>    | 13. Dēfit, <i>it is wanting.</i>   |
| 4. Aio, }                     | 9. Salve, } <i>farewell.</i> | 14. Infīt, <i>he begins.</i>       |
| 5. Inquam, } <i>I say.</i>    | 10. Apāge, <i>begone.</i>    | 15. Ovat, <i>he rejoices.</i>      |

1. *Odi*, *cœpi*, and *mēmīni* are used chiefly in the perfect and in the other parts formed from the second root, and are thence called *preteritive* verbs. *Odi* has also a deponent form in the perfect:—  
Thus,

IND. *perf.* ō'-di or ō'-sus sum; *plup.* ōd'-ē-ram; *ful. perf.* ōd'-ē-ro.  
SUBJ. *perf.* ōd'-ē-rim; *plup.* ō-dis'-sem.  
INF. *perf.* ō-dis'-se; *ful.* ō-sū'-rum es'-se.  
PART. *ful.* ō-sū'-rus; *perf.* ō'-sus.

NOTE 1. *Exōsus* and *pēōsus*, like *ōsus*, are used actively. *Odīvit*, for *ōdīt*, oo cur, M. Anton. in Cic. Phil. 18, 19: and *odīendi* in Appuleius.

2. IND. *perf.* cœ'-pi; *plup.* cœp'-ē-ram; *ful. perf.* cœp'-ē-ro.  
SUBJ. *perf.* cœp'-ē-rim; *plup.* cœ-pis'-sem.  
INF. *perf.* cœ-pis'-se; *ful.* cœp-tū'-rum es'-se.  
PART. *ful.* cœp-tū'-rus; *perf.* cœp'-tus.

NOTE 2. In Plautus are found a present, *cœpio*, present subjunctive, *cœpiam*, and infinitive, *cœpere*. Before an infinitive passive, *cœptus est*, etc., rather than *cœpi*, etc., are commonly used.

3. IND. *perf.* mēm'-i-ni; *plup.* mē-mīn'-ē-ram; *ful. perf.* mē-mīn'-ē-ro.  
SUBJ. *perf.* mē-mīn'-ē-rim; *plup.* mēm-i-nis'-sem.  
INF. *perf.* mēm-i-nis'-se.  
IMPERAT. 2 pers. S. mē-men'-to; P. mēm-en-tō'-tē.

NOTE 3. *Odī* and *mēmīni* have, in the perfect, the sense of the present, and, in the pluperfect and future perfect, the sense of the imperfect and future; as, *fugiet atque odīrit*. Cic. In this respect, *nōvi*, I know, the perfect of *nosco*, to learn, and *consuevi*, I am wont, the perfect of *consuesco*, I accustom myself, agree with *ōdī* and *mēmīni*.

4. IND. *pres.* ai'-o,\* a'-is, a'-it; —, —, ai'-unt.\*  
— *imp.* ai-ē'-bam, ai-ē'-bās, ai-ē'-bāt; ai-ē-bā'-mūs, ai-ē-bā'-tis, ai-ē'-bant.  
SUBJ. *pres.* —, ai'-ās, ai'-āt; —, —, ai'-ant.  
IMPERAT. *pres.* a'-l. PART. *pres.* ai'-ens.

NOTE 4. *Ais* with *ne* is contracted to *ain'* like *viden'*, *ābin'*: for *videma*, *ābima*. The comic writers use the imperfect *aibas*, *aibat* and *aibant*, which are dissyllabic.

5. IND. *pres.* in'-quam, in'-quis, in'-quīt; in'-qui-mūs, in'-qui-tis, in'-qui-unt.  
— *imp.* —, —, in-qui-ē'-bāt, and in-qui-bāt; —, —, in-qui-ē'-bant.  
— *ful.* —, in'-qui-ēs, in'-qui-ēt; —, —, —.  
— *perf.* —, in-quis'-ti, in-quīt; —, —, —.  
SUBJ. *pres.* —, in'-qui-ās, in'-qui-āt; —, in-qui-ē'-tis, in'-qui-ant.  
IMPERAT. in'-quē, in'-qui-to.

6. IND. *pres.* —, —, fā'-tūr; *ful.* fā'-bōr, —, fāb'-i-tūr.  
— *perf.* fātus est; *plup.* fātus eram.  
IMPERAT. fā'-rē. PART. *pres.* fāns; *perf.* fā'-tūs; *ful.* fān'-dūs.  
INFIN. *pres.* fā'-rī or fā'-rī-ēr. GERUND. *gen.* fān'-dī; *abl.* fān'-dō.  
SUPINE, fā'-tū.

\* Pronounced a'-yo, a'-yunt, etc., wherever the diphthong ai is followed by a vowel. See § 9, 1.

*Interfari* has the forms *interfatur*, *interfata est*, *interfari*, *interfans*, and *interfatus*.—*Effari* has *effabor*, *effabere*, *effatus est*, *effati sunt*; imperat. *effare*; *effari*, *effatus*, *effandus*, *effando*; *effatu*.—*Præfari* occurs in the following forms, *præfatur*, *præfamur*; *præfabantur*; *præfärer*; *præfarentur*; *præfati sunt*; *præfatus fuero*; imperat. *præfatio*, *præfamino*; *præfans*, *præfatus*, *præfandus*; *præfando*.—*Pröfari* has *pröfatur*, *pröfata est*, *pröfata sunt*, *pröfatus* and *pröfans*.

7. IND. pres. *quæ'-so*, —, *quæ'-sit*; *quæ'-t-müs*, —, —.  
INF. pres. *quæ'-e-rë*.
8. IMPERAT. *ä'-vë*, *ä'-vë'-të*; *ä'-vë'-to*. INF. *ä'-vë'-rë*.  
NOTE. *Acëre* and *salvëre* are often used with *jæbo*.
9. IND. pres. *sal'-ve-o*; fut. *sal'-vë'-bis*. INF. pres. *sal'-vë'-rë*.  
IMPERAT. *sal'-vë*, *sal'-vë'-të*; *sal'-vë'-to*.
10. IMPERAT. *äp'-ä-gë*. So *äge* with a subject either singular or plural.
11. IMPERAT. sing. *cë'-do*; pl. *cet'-të* for *cëd'-i-të*. Hence *cëdodum*.
12. IND. pres. *con'-fit*; fut. *con'-fyt-et*.  
SUBJ. pres. *con'-fyt-ät*; imperf. *con'-fyt-ë-rët*. INF. pres. *con'-fyt-ë-rl*.
13. IND. pres. *dë'-fit*; pl. *dë'-fyt-unt*; fut. *dë'-fyt-ët*. SUBJ. pres. *dë'-fyt-ät*.  
INF. pres. *dë'-fyt-ë-rl*. So *ef-fyt-ë-rl*, and *in-ter-fyt-ë-rl*. *Plaut*; and *in-ter-fyt-at*. *Lucr*.
14. IND. pres. *in'-fit*; pl. *in'-fyt-unt*.
15. IND. pres. *ö'-vät*. SUBJ. pres. *ö'-vët*; imperf. *ö'-vë'-rët*.  
PART. pres. *ö'-vans*; perf. *ö'-vät-tüs*; fut. *öy-ä-tü'-rüs*. GERUND, *ö-van'-di*.

REMARK 1. Among defective verbs are sometimes, also, included the following:—*Förem*, *föres*, etc., *firë*, (see § 154, R. 8.) *Ausim*, *ausis*, *audt*; *ausint*. *Fazö* and *fazim*, *faxis*, *faxit*; *faximus*, *faxitis*, *faxint*. *Fazem*. The form in *o* is an old future perfect; that in *im* a perfect, and that in *em* a pluperfect subjunctive. See § 162, 7, (c.), and 9.

REM. 2. In the present tense, the first person singular, *füro*, to be mad, and *dor* and *der*, from *do*, to give, are not used. So in the imperative *sci*, *cäpe* and *polle*, from *scio*, *cäpio*, and *polleo*, do not occur.

REM. 3. A few words, sometimes classed with defectives, are formed by contraction from a verb and the conjunction *si*; as, *sis* for *si vis*, *sultis* for *si vultis*, *sides* for *si audes* (for *audies*.)

## IMPERSONAL VERBS.

§ 184. (a.) Impersonal verbs are those which are used only in the third person singular, and do not admit of a *personal* subject.

(b.) The subject of an impersonal verb in the active voice is, for the most part, either an infinitive, or an infinitive or subjunctive clause; but in English the neuter pronoun, *it*, commonly stands before the verb, and represents such clause; as, *me delectat scribëre*, *it* delights me *to write*. Sometimes an accusative depending on an impersonal verb takes, in English, the place of a subject; as, *me miseret tui*, I pity thee.

1. Impersonal verbs in the active voice are conjugated in the several conjugations like *delectat*, it delights; *dëcet*, it becomes; *contingit*, it happens; *evëniü*, it happens; thus:—

	1st Conj.	2d Conj.	3d Conj.	4th Conj.
IND. Pres.	delectat,	dēcet,	contingit,	venit,
Imp.	delectābat,	decēbat,	contingēbat,	veniebāt,
Fut.	delectābit,	decēbit,	continget,	veniet,
Perf.	delectāvit,	decuit,	contigit,	evēnit,
Plup.	delectāverat,	decuērat,	contigērat,	ovenērat,
Fut. perf.	delectāverit.	decuērit.	contigērit.	evenērit.
SUB. Pres.	delectet,	deceat,	contingat,	eveniat,
Imp.	delectāret,	decēret,	contingēret,	eveniret,
Perf.	delectāverit,	decuērit,	contigērit,	evenērit,
Plup.	delectāvisset.	decuisset.	contigiasset.	evenisset.
INF. Pres.	delectāre,	decēre,	contingēre,	evenire,
Perf.	delectāvisse.	decuisse.	contigiisse.	evenisse.

2. (a.) Most *neuter* and many *active* verbs may be used impersonally in the passive voice, by changing the personal subject of the active voice into an ablative with the preposition *a* or *ab*; as,

*Illī pugnant*; or *pugnātur ab illis*, they fight. *Illī quærunt*, or *quæritur ab illis*, they ask. Cf. § 141, Rem. 2.

(b.) In the passive form, the subject in English is, commonly, either the *agent*, expressed or understood, or an *abstract* noun formed from the verb; as,

*Pugnātum est*, we, they, etc. fought; or, the battle was fought. *Concurrūtur*, the people run together; or, there is a concourse.

(c.) Sometimes the English subject in the passive form is, in Latin, an oblique case dependent on the verb; as, *favētur tibi*, thou art favored.

The following are the forms of impersonal verbs in the several conjugations of the passive voice:—

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

Pres.	pugnātur,	favētur,	currūtur,	venītur,
Imp.	pugnabātur,	favebātur,	currebātur,	veniebātur,
Fut.	pugnabitur,	favebitur,	currētur,	veniētur,
Perf.	pugnātum est or fuit,	fautum est or fuit,	cursum est or fuit,	ventum est or fuit,
Plup.	pugnātum erat or fuērat,	fautum erat or fuērat,	cursum erat or fuērat,	ventum erat or fuērat,
Fut. p.	pugnātum erit or fuērit.	fautum erit or fuērit.	cursum erit or fuērit.	ventum erit or fuērit.

#### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Pres.	pugnētur,	faveātur,	currātur,	veniātur,
Imp.	pugnārētur,	faverētur,	currerētur,	venirētur,
Perf.	pugnātum sit or fuērit,	fautum sit or fuērit,	cursum sit or fuērit,	ventum sit or fuērit,
Plup.	pugnātum esset or fuisset.	fautum esset or fuisset.	cursum esset or fuisset.	ventum esset or fuisset.

#### INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres.	pugnāri,	favēri,	curri,	veniri,
Perf.	pugnātum esse or fuisse,	fautum esse or fuisse,	cursum esse or fuisse,	ventum esse or fuisse,
Fut.	pugnātum iri.	fautum iri.	cursum iri.	ventum iri.

3. In like manner, in the periphrastic conjugation, the neuter gender of the participle in *dus*, both of active and neuter verbs, is used impersonally with *est*, etc., and the *dative* of the person; as, *mihī scribendum fuit*, I have been obliged to write; *moriendum est omnibus*, all must die. See § 162, 15, R. 5.

REMARK 1. Grammarians usually reckon only ten real impersonal verbs, all of which are of the second conjugation, viz. *décet*, *libet*, *licet*, *liquet*, *misérêt*, *oportet*, *piget*, *pénitet*, *pūdet*, and *tadet*. (See § 169.) Four of these, *décet*, *libet*, *licet*, and *liquet* occur also in the third person plural, but without personal subjects. There seems, however, to be no good reason for distinguishing the verbs above enumerated from other impersonal verbs. The following are such other verbs as are most commonly used impersonally:—

(a.) In the first conjugation:—

Constat, it is evident.	Vācat, there is leisure.	Pugnātur, a battle is fought.
Jūvat, it delights.	Certātur, there is a contention.	Stātūr, they stand firm.
Præstat, it is better.	Peccātur, a fault is committed.	
Restat, it remains.		
Stat, it is resolved.		

(b.) In the second conjugation:—

Appāret, it appears.	Pertinet, it pertains.	Persuadētur, he, they, etc. are persuaded.
Attinet, it belongs to.	Plācet, it pleases.	Pertāsum est, he, they, etc. are disgusted with.
Displicet, it displeases.	Flētūr, we, etc. weep, or, there is weeping.	Silētūr, silence is maintained.
Dōlet, it grieves.	Noeētūr, injury is inflicted.	
Miserētūr, it distresses.		
Pātet, it is plain.		

(c.) In the third conjugation:—

Accidit, it happens.	Miserescit, it distresses.	Desinitūr, there is an end.
Conducit, it is useful.	Sufficit, it suffices.	Scribitūr, it is written.
Contingit, it happens.	Creditūr, it is believed.	Vivitur, we, etc. live.
Fallit, or } it escapes me;	Curritūr, people run.	
Fūgit me, } I do not know.		

(d.) In the fourth conjugation:—

Convēnit, it is agreed upon; it is fit.	Expēdit, it is expedient.	Scitur, it is known.
Evēnit, it happens.	Dormitūr, we, they, etc. sleep.	Itur, they, etc. go.
		Venitūr, they, etc. come.

(e.) Among irregular verbs:—

Fit, it happens.	Præterit me, it is unknown to me.	Rāfert, it concerns.
Intēret, it concerns.	Prōdest, it avails.	Sūbit, it occurs.
Obest, it is hurtful.		Supērest, it remains.

(f.) To these may be added verbs signifying the state of the weather, or the operations of nature. The subject of these may be *Jupiter*, *deus*, or *caelum*, which are sometimes expressed. Of this kind are the following:—

Fulget, } it lightens.	Lapidat, it rains stones.	Tōnat, it thunders.
Fulgurat, } it grows light.	Lucescit, } it grows light.	Vesperascit, } evening
Fulminat, } it grows light.	Illucescit, } it grows light.	Advesperascit, } ap-
Gelat, it freezes.	Ningit, it snows.	Invesperascit, } proaches.
Grandinat, it hails.	Pluit, it rains.	

*Lapidat*, *ningit*, and *pluit* are also used impersonally in the passive voice.



REM. 2. Impersonal verbs, not being used in the imperative, take the subjunctive in its stead; as, *delectet*, let it delight. In the passive voice, their perfect participles are used only in the neuter.

REM. 3. Most of the impersonal verbs want participles, gerunds, and supines; but *pondet* has a present participle, futures in *rus* and *dis*, and the gerund. *Pudet* and *piget* have also the gerund and future passive participle.

REM. 4. Most of the above verbs are also used personally, but frequently in a somewhat different sense; as, *ut Tibēris inter eos et pons interesset*, so that the Tiber and bridge were between them.

## REDUNDANT VERBS.

✕ § 185. Redundant verbs are those which have different forms to express the same meaning.

Verbs may be redundant in *termination*; as, *fabrīco* and *fabrīcor*, to frame;—in *conjugation*; as, *lāvo*, -āre, and *lūvo*, -ēre, to wash;—or in *certain tenses*; as, *ōdi* and *ōsus sum*, I hate.

1. The following deponent verbs, besides their passive form, have an active form in *o*, of the same meaning, but which is, in general, rarely used. A few, however, which are marked *r.*, occur more rarely than the corresponding forms in *o*.

Abominor, to <i>abhor</i> .	Fabrīcor, to <i>frame</i> .	Oscitor, to <i>gape</i> .
Adūlor, to <i>flatter</i> .	Fenēror, to <i>lend on interest</i> .	Paciflor, <i>r.</i> to <i>make a peace</i> .
Altercor, to <i>dispute</i> .	Fluctuor, to <i>fluctuate</i> .	Palpor, to <i>caress</i> .
Amplexor, to <i>embrace</i> .	Frustror, to <i>disappoint</i> .	Partior, to <i>divide</i> .
Arbitror, to <i>suppose</i> .	Fruticor, to <i>sprout</i> .	Popūlor, to <i>lay waste</i> .
Argūtor, to <i>prate</i> .	Impertior, <i>r.</i> to <i>impart</i> .	Pānior, to <i>punish</i> .
Assentior, to <i>assent</i> .	Jurgor, to <i>quarrel</i> .	Ruminor, to <i>ruminate</i> .
Auchpor, to <i>hunt after</i> .	Lacrimor, <i>r.</i> to <i>weep</i> .	Sciscitor, to <i>inquire</i> .
Angūror, to <i>foretell</i> .	Ludiflor, to <i>ridicule</i> .	Sortior, to <i>cast lots</i> .
Aurigor, to <i>drive a chariot</i> .	Luxtūrior, <i>r.</i> to <i>be rank</i> .	Stabūlor, to <i>stale</i> .
Auspīcor, to <i>take the auspices</i> .	Medīcor, to <i>heal</i> .	Tueor, to <i>defend</i> .
Cachinnor, <i>r.</i> to <i>laugh aloud</i> .	Mēreor, to <i>deserve</i> .	Tumultuor, to <i>be in confusion</i> .
Comītor, to <i>accompany</i> .	Mētor, to <i>measure</i> .	Tūtor, to <i>defend</i> .
Commentor, to <i>deliberate</i> .	Misēreor, to <i>commiserate</i> .	Ūtor, to <i>use</i> .
Convivor, to <i>feast together</i> .	Modēror, to <i>moderate</i> .	Ūrinor, to <i>div</i> .
Cunctor, (cont.), to <i>delay</i> .	Munēror, <i>r.</i> to <i>bestow</i> .	Velīfcor, to <i>set sail</i> .
Dignor, to <i>deem worthy</i> .	Nictor, <i>r.</i> to <i>wink</i> .	Venēror, to <i>reverence</i> .
Depascor, to <i>feed upon</i> .	Nūtrior, <i>r.</i> to <i>nourish</i> .	Vocīfēror, to <i>baud</i> .
Elucubror, to <i>elaborate</i> .	Obsōnor, to <i>cater</i> .	
	Opīnor, to <i>suppose</i> .	

### 2. The following verbs are redundant in conjugation:—

Boo, -āre, } to <i>roar</i> .	Fulgeo, -āre, } to <i>shine</i> .	Sōno, -āre, } to <i>sound</i> .
Boo, -ēre, <i>r.</i> }	Fulgo, -ēre, <i>r.</i> }	Sōno, -ēre, }
Bullo, -āre, } to <i>boil</i> .	Lāvo, -āre, } to <i>wash</i> .	Strideo, -ēre, } to <i>creak</i> .
Bullio, -īre, } }	Lāvo, -ēre, <i>r.</i> }	Strido, -ēre, }
Cieo, -ēre, } to <i>excite</i> .	Līno, -ēre, } to <i>anoint</i> .	Tergeo, -ēre, } to <i>wipe</i> .
Cio, -īre, <i>r.</i> }	Līnio, -īre, <i>r.</i> }	Tergo, -ēre, }
Denso, -āre, } to <i>thicken</i> .	Nicto, -āre, } to <i>wink</i> .	Tueor, -ēri, } to <i>protect</i> .
Denseo, -ēre, } }	Nicto, -ēre, }	Tuor, -ī, <i>r.</i> }
Ferveo, -ēre, } to <i>boil</i> .	Sālo, -ēre, } to <i>salt</i> .	
Fervo, -ēre, } }	Sālio, -īre, }	
Fōdio, -ēre, } to <i>dig</i> .	Scāteo, -ēre, } to <i>abound</i> .	
Fōdiō, -īre, <i>r.</i> }	Scāto, -ēre, <i>r.</i> }	

Those marked *r.* are rarely used.

*Mörör, örör, and pörör*, also, are redundant in conjugation in certain parts. See in lists §§ 174 and 177.

§ 186. 1. Some verbs are spelled alike, or nearly alike, but differ in conjugation, quantity, pronunciation, or signification, or in two or more of these respects.

Such are the following:—

Abdico, -äre, to abdicate.	Edo, -äre, to eat.	Nitor, -i, to strive.
Abdico, -äre, to refuse.	Edo, -äre, to publish.	Obsäro, -äre, to lock up.
Accido, -äre, to fall upon.	Edüco, -äre, to educate.	Obsäro, -äre, to sow.
Accido, -äre, to cut down.	Edüco, -äre, to draw out.	Occido, -äre, to fall.
Addo, -äre, to add.	Effäro, -äre, to make wild.	Occido, -äre, to kill.
Adeo, -äre, to go to.	Effäro, -äre, to carry out.	Opäro, -äre, to cover.
Aggäro, -äre, to heap up.	Excido, -äre, to fall out.	Opäror, -äri, to work.
Aggäro, -äre, to heap upon.	Excido, -äre, to cut off.	Oppärior, -äri, to wait for.
Allägo, -äre, to depute.	Färio, -äre, to strike.	Pando, -äre, to bend.
Allägo, -äre, to choose.	Färo, -äre, to bear.	Pando, -äre, to extend.
Appello, -äre, to call.	Färior, -äri, to keep holiday.	Päro, -äre, to prepare.
Appello, -äre, to drive to.	Frigeo, -äre, to be cold.	Päreo, -äre, to appear.
Cädo, -äre, to fall.	Frigo, -äre, to fry.	Pärio, -äre, to bring forth.
Cädo, -äre, to cut.	Fügo, -äre, to put to flight.	Pärio, -äre, to balance.
Cädo, -äre, to yield.	Fügio, -äre, to fly.	Pendeo, -äre, to hang.
Cäleo, -äre, to be hot.	Fundo, -äre, to found.	Pendo, -äre, to weigh.
Calleo, -äre, to be hard.	Fundo, -äre, to pour out.	Percölo, -äre, to filter.
Cäno, -äre, to sing.	Incido, -äre, to fall into.	Percölo, -äre, to adorn.
Cäneo, -äre, to be gray.	Incido, -äre, to cut into.	Permäneo, -äre, to remain.
Cäleo, -äre, to want.	Indico, -äre, to show.	Permäno, -äre, to flow through.
Cäro, -äre, to card wool.	Indico, -äre, to proclaim.	Prädico, -äre, to publish.
Cälo, -äre, to conceal.	Inficio, -äre, to stain.	Prädico, -äre, to foretell.
Cälo, -äre, to carve.	Infitor, -äri, to deny.	Prödo, -äre, to betray.
Censeo, -äre, to think.	Intercido, -äre, to happen.	Prödeo, -äre, to come forth.
Sentio, -äre, to feel.	Intercido, -äre, to cut asunder.	Recädo, -äre, to retire.
Claudo, -äre, to shut.	Jäceo, -äre, to lie.	Recido, -äre, to fall back.
Claudo, -äre, to be lame.	Jäcio, -äre, to throw.	Recido, -äre, to cut off.
Colligo, -äre, to bind together.	Läbo, -äre, to totter.	Reddo, -äre, to restore.
Colligo, -äre, to collect.	Läbor, -i, to glide.	Rädeo, -äre, to return.
Cölo, -äre, to strain.	Lacto, -äre, to suckle.	Refäro, -äre, to bring back.
Cölo, -äre, to cultivate.	Lacto, -äre, to deceive.	Refärio, -äre, to strike back.
Compello, -äre, to accost.	Lägo, -äre, to depute.	Relägo, -äre, to remove.
Compello, -äre, to force.	Lägo, -äre, to read.	Relägo, -äre, to read over.
Concido, -äre, to cut to pieces.	Liceo, -äre, to be lawful.	Sädo, -äre, to allay.
Concido, -äre, to fall.	Liceor, -äri, to bid for.	Sädeo, -äre, to sit.
Concindo, -äre, to embark.	Liquo, -äre, to melt.	Sido, -äre, to sink.
Concindo, -äre, to tear to pieces.	Liquo, -äre, to be manifest.	Säro, -äre, to sow.
Consterno, -äre, to terrify.	Liquor, -i, to melt.	Säro, -äre, to entwine.
Consterno, -äre, to strew over.	Mäno, -äre, to flow.	Succido, -äre, to fall under.
Decido, -äre, to fall down.	Mäneo, -äre, to stay.	Succido, -äre, to cut down.
Decido, -äre, to cut off.	Mando, -äre, to command.	Vädo, -äre, to go.
Decipio, -äre, to deceive.	Mando, -äre, to eat.	Vädor, -äri, to bind over by bail.
Despicio, -äre, to dote.	Mäto, -äre, to reap.	Väneo, -äre, to be sold.
Deligo, -äre, to tie up.	Mätor, -äri, to measure.	Vänio, -äre, to come.
Deligo, -äre, to choose.	Mätior, -äri, to measure.	Vänor, -äri, to hunt.
Dilligo, -äre, to love.	Mätuo, -äre, to fear.	Vincio, -äre, to bind.
Dico, -äre, to say.	Misäror, -äri, to pity.	Vinco, -äre, to conquer.
Dico, -äre, to dedicate.	Misäreo, -äri, to pity.	Völo, -äre, to fly.
	Mörör, -äri, to delay.	Völo, -äre, to be willing.
	Mörör, -i, to die.	
	Nitao, -äre, to glitter.	

## 2. Different verbs have sometimes the same perfect; as,

Aceo, acui, <i>to be sour.</i>	Fulcio, fulsi, <i>to prop.</i>	Pāveo, pāvi, <i>to fear.</i>
Acuo, acui, <i>to sharpen.</i>	Lūceo, luxi, <i>to shine.</i>	Pasco, pāvi, <i>to feed.</i>
Cresco, crēvi, <i>to grow.</i>	Lūgeo, luxi, <i>to mourn.</i>	Pendeo, pēpendi, <i>to hang.</i>
Cerno, crēvi, <i>to decree.</i>	Mulceo, mulsi, <i>to soothe.</i>	Pendo, pēpendi, <i>to weigh.</i>
Fulgeo, fulsi, <i>to shine.</i>	Mulgeo, mulsi, <i>to milk.</i>	

To these add some of the compounds of *sto* and *sisto*.

## 3. Different verbs have sometimes, also, the same supine or perfect participle; as,

Frīco, frictum, <i>to rub.</i>	Pango, pactum, <i>to drive</i>	Pātor, passus, <i>to suffer.</i>
Frigo, frictum, <i>to roast.</i>	in.	Tēneo, tentum, <i>to hold.</i>
Māneo, mansum, <i>to remain.</i>	Paciscor, pactus, <i>to bargain.</i>	Tendo, tentum, <i>to stretch.</i>
Mando, mansum, <i>to chew.</i>	Pando, passum, <i>to extend.</i>	Verro, versum, <i>to brush.</i>
		Verto, versum, <i>to turn.</i>

## DERIVATION OF VERBS.

✕ § 187. Verbs are derived either from nouns, from adjectives, or from other verbs.

I. Verbs derived from nouns or adjectives are called *denominatives*.

1. (a.) Active denominatives are generally of the first conjugation; those which are neuter, of the second. They are usually formed by adding respectively *o* and *eo* to the root; as,

## FROM NOUNS.

Actives.	Neuters.
Armo, <i>to arm, (arma.)</i>	Flōreo, <i>to bloom, (flos.)</i>
Fraudo, <i>to defraud, (fraus.)</i>	Frondeo, <i>to produce leaves, (frons.)</i>
Nomīno, <i>to name, (nomen.)</i>	Lūceo, <i>to shine, (lux.)</i>
Numēro, <i>to number, (numerus.)</i>	Vireo, <i>to flourish, (vis.)</i>

## FROM ADJECTIVES.

Albo, <i>to whiten, (albus.)</i>	Albeo, <i>to be white, (albus.)</i>
Celebro, <i>to frequent, (celēber.)</i>	Calveo, <i>to be bald, (calvus.)</i>
Libēro, <i>to free, (liber.)</i>	Flāveo, <i>to be yellow, (flāvus.)</i>

## (b.) Sometimes a preposition is prefixed in forming the derivative; as,

Coacervo, <i>to heap together, (acervus.)</i>	Exstirpo, <i>to extirpate, (stirps.)</i>
Excāvo, <i>to excavate, (cāvus.)</i>	Illāqueo, <i>to insmear, (lāqueus.)</i>

2. Many deponents of the first conjugation, derived from nouns, express the exercise of the character, office, etc., denoted by the primitive; as, *architector*, to build; *comitor*, to accompany; *fūror*, to steal; from *architectus*, *cōmes*, and *fūr*.

3. Such as denote resemblance or imitation are called *imitatives*; as, *cornīcor*, to imitate a crow, from *cornix*; *Grācor*, to imitate the Greeks. Some of these end in *isso*; as, *patriisso*, to imitate a father.

✕ II. Verbs derived from other verbs are either *frequentatives*, *inceptives*, *desideratives*, *diminutives*, or *intensives*.

1. *Frequentatives* express a repetition, or an increase of the action expressed by the primitive.

(a.) They are all of the first conjugation, and are formed by adding *o* to the third root; as, *dōmo*, (*dōmīt*-) *dōmīto*. So *adjūvo*, *adjūto*; *dico*, *dicto*; *gēro*, *gesto*. In verbs of the first conjugation, *āt* of the root is often changed into *ūt*; as, *clāmo*, to cry, (*clamāt*-) *clamīto*, to cry frequently.

(b.) A few frequentatives are formed by adding *ūto* to the first root of the primitive; as, *āgo* (*āg*-) *āgūto*. So *lūleo*, *lūlūto*; *nosco*, *noscūto*; *quæro*, *quæritūto*.

(c.) Frequentatives, from primitives of the second, third, and fourth conjugations, sometimes serve again as primitives, from which new frequentatives are formed; as, *dico*, *dicto*, *dictūto*; *curro*, *curso*, *curritūto*; *vēnio*, *venio*, *venitūto*. Sometimes the second or intermediate form is not in use.

(d.) Some frequentatives are deponent; as, *minītor*, from *minor* (*mināt*-); *versor*, from *verto* (*vers*-). So *amplexor*, *sector*, *loquītor*, from *amplector*, *sequor*, and *loquor*.

(e.) When verbs of this class express simply an increase of the action denoted by the primitive, they are, by some grammarians, called *intensives*.

2. *Inceptives*, or *inchoatives* mark the beginning of the action or state expressed by the primitive.

(a.) They all end in *sco*, and are formed by adding that termination to the root of the primitive, with its connecting vowel, which, in the third conjugation, is *i*; as, *cāleo*, to be hot; *cālesco*, to grow hot.

So *lābo*, (*āre*), *lābasco*; *ingēmo*, (*ēre*), *ingēmisco*; *obdormio*, (*ire*), *obdormisco*. *Hisco* is contracted for *hiasco*, from *hio*, (*āre*).

(b.) Most inceptives are formed from verbs of the second conjugation.

(c.) Some inceptives are formed from nouns and adjectives by adding *asco* or *esco* to the root; as, *puērasco*, from *puer*; *jūvenēscō*, from *jūvenis*.

NOTE. Inceptives are all neuter, and of the third conjugation. See § 173.

Some verbs in *sco*, which are not inceptives, are active; as, *disco*, *posco*.

3. *Desideratives* express a desire of doing the act denoted by the primitive.

(a.) They are formed from the third root, by adding *ūrio*; as, *cæno*, to sup, (*cændūt*-) *cændūtūrio*, to desire to sup.

(b.) Desideratives are all of the fourth conjugation. See § 176, Note.

(c.) Verbs in *ūrio*, having *u* long, are not desideratives; as, *prūrio*, *āgūrio*.

4. *Diminutives* denote a feeble or trifling action. They are formed by adding *illo* to the root of the primitive; as, *conscribillo*, to scribble, from *conscribo*.

They are few in number, and are all of the first conjugation.

5. *Intensives* denote eager action. They are usually formed by adding *so*, *esso*, or *isso* to the root of the primitive; as, *fācesso*, to act earnestly—from *fācio*.

So *cāpesso*, *incesso*, from *cāpio* and *incēdo*. *Concūpisco*, to desire greatly, though in form an inceptive, is, in its signification, an intensive.

NOTE. Verbs of all these classes have sometimes simply the meaning of their primitives.

## COMPOSITION OF VERBS.

## § 188. Verbs are compounded variously:—

1. Of a noun and a verb; as, *auxífcio, belligéro, lucrífacio*. See § 108, R. 1.
2. Of an adjective and a verb; as, *amplífico, múltiplo*.
3. Of two verbs; as, *caléfacio, madéfacio, patéfacio*.

REM. In verbs of this class, the first part, which is a verb of the second conjugation, loses its final *o*; the second part is always the verb *fácio*.

4. Of an adverb and a verb; as, *bénéfacio, maledico, sádago, nolo, negligo*.
5. Of a preposition and a verb; as, *adduco, excólo, pródigo, subrepto, discerno, sejungo*.
6. Of a preposition and a noun, as, *pernocto, irrético*.

§ 189. In composition with particles, the vowels *a* and *e* and the diphthong *æ* in the radical syllable of the simple verb are often changed in the compound.

1. The following simple verbs in composition change *a* into *e*:—

Arceo,	Carpo,	Farcio,	Jacto,	Pário,	Patro,	Spargo,
Candeo,	Damno,	Fátiscor,	Lacto,	Partio,	Sacro,	Tracto.
Capto,	Fallo,	Grádior,	Mando,	Pátior,	Scando,	

Exc. *A* is retained in *amando, pramando, desacro*, and *retracto*; *pradamno*, and *pertracto* sometimes also occur. *A* is also changed into *e* in *occulto* from *canto*, and *anhelo* from *halo*; *comperco* also is found.

2. The following, in the first root, change *ã* and *ẽ* into *ĩ*; viz.

*ãgo, cãdo, ẽgeo, ẽmo, frango, pango, prẽmo, rẽgo, sẽdeo, spẽcio, tango*.

3. These change *ã* and *ẽ*, in the first and second roots, into *ĩ*; viz.

*sãlio, to leap, sãpio, tãceo, and tẽneo*.

4. These change *ã* into *ĩ*, and *æ* into *ĩ*, in all the roots; viz.

*hãbeo, lãcio, lãteo, plãceo, stãtuo; cædo, lædo, and quæro*.

5. The following change *ã*, in the first root, into *ĩ*, and in the third root into *e*; viz.

*cãno, cãpio, fãteor, jãcio, rãpio, and ăpiscor*.

Exc. (a.) *A* is retained in *circumãgo, perãgo, sãdago; antẽhãbeo, posthãbeo, dẽpango, rẽpango, complãceo, and perplãceo*. *Occãno* and *ricãno* also sometimes occur. *E* is retained in *cõmo, circumsedeo, and supersedeo*. *Antẽcãpio* and *antẽcipo* are both used; so also are *superjãcio* and *superjicio*.

(b.) *Cgo* and *dẽgo* are formed, by contraction, from *con, de, and ãgo*; *dẽmo, prẽmo* and *sũmo*, from *de, pro, sub, and ẽmo*; *præbeo*, and perhaps *dẽbeo*, from *præ, de, and hãbeo*; *pergo* and *surgo*, from *per, sub, and rẽgo*.

NOTE 1. *Fácio*, compounded with a preposition, changes *ã* into *ĩ* in the first root, and into *e* in the third; as, *afficio, affeci, affectum*. Some compounds of *fácio* with nouns and adjectives, change *ã* into *ĩ*, and also drop *ĩ* before *o*, and are of the first conjugation; as, *signífico, latífico, magnífico*. *Spẽcio* forms some compounds in the same manner; as, *conspicor* and *suspicio*.

NOTE 2. *Lẽgo*, compounded with *con, de, ã, e, inter, nec, and se*, changes *ẽ* into *ĩ*, in the first root; as, *collẽgo, negligo*, etc.; but with *ad, præ, per, re, sub, and trans*, it retains *ẽ*; as, *allẽgo*.

NOTE 3. *Calco* and *sãlto*, in composition, change *a* into *u*; as, *incolco, insulto*. *Plaudo* changes *au* into *õ*; as, *explõdo*; except *applaudo*. *Audio* changes *au* into *ẽ* in *obẽdo*. *Crauso, claudio*, and *quãtio*, drop *a*; as, *accuso, reclãdo, percussio*. *Jũro* changes *ũ* into *ẽ* in *dẽjũro* and *pẽjũro*, but *dẽjũro*, also, is in use:

NOTE 4. In the compounds of *cæveo*, *mæneo*, and *træho*, *d* remains unchanged, and so also does *æ* in the compounds of *hæreo*.

NOTE 5. The simple verbs with which the following are compounded are not used:—

Dæfendo,	Impedio,	Confuto,	Instigo,	Conniveo,
Offendo,	Imbuo,	Réfuto,	Impleo,	Percello,
Expior,	Compello, (-ære,)	Ingruo,	Compleo,	Induo,
Expedio,	Appello, (-ære,)	Congruo,	Rénideo,	Exuo,
				and some others.

For the changes produced in prepositions by composition with verbs see § 196.

## PARTICLES.

§ 190. 1. *Particles* are those parts of speech which are neither declined nor conjugated. They are divided into four classes—*adverbs*, *prepositions*, *conjunctions*, and *interjections*.

NOTE. A word may sometimes belong to two or more of these classes, according to its connection.

## ADVERBS.

2. An adverb is a particle used to modify or limit the meaning of a verb, an adjective, or another adverb; as,

Bène et sapienter dixit, he spoke *well* and *wisely*; Cænis ægrégie fidélis, a remarkably faithful dog; Nimis valde laudare, to praise *too much*. Compare § 277, R. 1.

3. Adverbs, in regard to their *signification*, are divided into various classes; as, adverbs of *place*, *time*, *manner*, etc., and some belong to either class according to their connection.

4. In regard to their *etymology*, adverbs are either *primitive* or *derivative*.

REMARK. Among primitive adverbs are here classed not only such as cannot be traced to any more remote root, but also all which are not included in the regular classes of derivative adverbs hereafter mentioned.

### PRIMITIVE ADVERBS.

§ 191. The primitive adverbs are few in number, when compared with the derivatives, and most of them are contained in the following lists marked I, II, and III.

#### I. Adverbs of Place and Order.

ædeo, so far, as far.	ælcubi, somewhere.	ællquoversum, toward
ædhuc, to this place.	ælcundë, from some	some place.
adversus, } opposite,	place.	æliundë, from another
adversum, } over against,	æliö, to another place.	place.
exadversus,—um, } toward.	ællquã, in some way.	circã, } around.
æliã, by another way.	æliorsum, toward another	circum, } place.
æliãs, in another place.	place.	circiter, on every side.
æhbi, elsewhere.	ællquö, to some place.	circumcircf all around.

*citrâ, on this side.*  
*citro, hither.*  
*contrâ, over against.*  
*cōram, before.*  
*dēhinc, henceforth.*  
*deinceps, successively.*  
*deinde, after that.*  
*dēnlquē, finally.*  
*dēno, again.*  
*deorsum, downward.*  
*dextrorsum, toward the right.*  
*eâ, that way.*  
*eâdem, the same way.*  
*eô, to that place, thither.*  
*eôdem, to the same place.*  
*exiude, after that.*  
*extrâ, without.*  
*extrinsēcūs, from without.*  
*fōrâs, out of doors.*  
*fōris, without.*  
*hâc, this way.*  
*hactēnūs, thus far.*  
*hic, here.*  
*hinc, hence.*  
*hūc, hither.*  
*hūcuscquē, thus far.*  
*horsum, hitheward.*  
*ibi, there.*  
*ibidem, in the same place.*  
*illâc, that way.*  
*illîc, there.*  
*illinc, thence.*  
*illô, thither.*  
*illorsum, thitheward.*  
*illuc, thither.*  
*indē, thence.*  
*indidem, from the same place.*

*infrâ, below, beneath.*  
*inibi, in that place.*  
*intrinsēcūs, from within*  
*intrâ, intro, } within.*  
*introrsum, } within.*  
*intūs, } within.*  
*istâc, that way.*  
*istic, there.*  
*istinc, thence.*  
*istô, istuc, thither.*  
*juxtâ, near, alike.*  
*nēcūbi, lest any where.*  
*neutro, to neither side.*  
*neutrūbi, to neither place, to neither side.*  
*nullibi, } no where.*  
*nusquam, } no where.*  
*pēnitūs, within.*  
*pōnē, post, behind, back.*  
*porro, onward.*  
*prōcūl, far.*  
*prōpē, proptēr, near.*  
*prorsum, forward.*  
*prōtinūs, onward.*  
*quâ? in which way?*  
*quâquâ, } what way*  
*quâcumque, } soever.*  
*quâquē, wheresoever.*  
*quâlibēt, } in every way.*  
*quâvis, } in every way.*  
*quô? whither?*  
*quoad, } how far.*  
*quousquē, } how far.*  
*quōpiam, } to some place.*  
*quōquam, } to some place.*  
*quōquô, } whither.*  
*quōcumquē, } soever.*  
*quōquōversūs, toward every side.*

*quorsum? whitheward?*  
*quōvis, } to every place.*  
*quōlibēt, } to every place.*  
*retro, } backward,*  
*retrorsum, } back.*  
*russum, } back.*  
*sicūbi, if any where.*  
*sicundē, if from any place.*  
*sinistrorsum, toward the left.*  
*subtēr, beneath.*  
*sūpēr, suprà, above, on top.*  
*sursum, upward.*  
*tum, then, in the next place.*  
*ūbi? where?*  
*ūbicumquē, } wherever,*  
*ūbiūbi, } wheresoever.*  
*ūbilibēt, } any where,*  
*ūbiquē, } every where.*  
*ūbivis, } every where.*  
*ultrâ, ultro, beyond.*  
*undē? whence?*  
*undēlibēt, } from every*  
*undēvis, } where.*  
*undiquē, } whence.*  
*undeundē, } soever.*  
*undēcumquē, } soever.*  
*uspiam, } somewhere,*  
*usquam, } any where.*  
*usquē, all the way.*  
*usquēquâquē, in all ways.*  
*utrimquē, on both sides.*  
*utrô? which way?*  
*utrôbi? in which place?*  
*utrôbiquē, in both places.*  
*utrôquē, to both sides.*  
*utrôquēversum, toward both sides.*

REMARK 1. (a.) The interrogative adverbs of place, *ūbi?* where? *undē?* whence? *quô?* whither? and *quâ?* in what way? have relation to other adverbs formed in a similar manner, thus constituting a system of *adverbial correlatives* similar to that of the pronominal adjectives. See § 139, 5, (3.)

(b.) As in the case of the pronominal correlatives, the *interrogative* and *relative* forms are alike, beginning with *u* or *qu*. The *demonstratives* are formed from *is*, which is strengthened by *dem*, and the *indefinite* from *aliquis*. The *general relatives* and the *general indefinites* or *universals*, like those of the pronominal adjectives, are made, the former by doubling the simple relatives or by appending to them the termination *cumquē*, 'soever,' and the latter by adding *quē*, *vis*, or *libēt*. Thus:

Interrog.	Demonstr.	Relat.	Gen. Relat.	Indefin.	Gen. Indefin.
ūbi?	ibi, ibidem,	ūbi,	ūbiūbi, ūbicumquē,	ālicūbi,	ūbiquē, ūbivis, ūbilibēt.
undē?	indē, indidem,	undē,	undeundē, undēcumquē,	ālcundē,	undiquē, undēvis, undēlibēt.
quô?	eô, eôdem,	quô,	quôquô, quôcumquē,	āliquô,	quôvis, quôlibēt,
quâ?	eâ, eâdem.	quâ.	quâquâ, quâcumquē.	āliquâ.	quâvis, quâlibēt.

(c.) To those answering to *ubi*? may be added *adibi*, *nullibi*, and *inibi*, the latter being a strengthened form of *ibi*. In like manner *alitrinse*, *utrinque*, *intrinsecus*, and *extrinsecus* may be added to those answering to *undē*? and *alio* to those answering to *quō*? So also to *utrō*? answer *utroque* and *neutro*.

(d.) The demonstratives *ibi*, *indē*, and *eō* are used only in reference to relative sentences which precede; but more definite demonstratives are formed from the pronouns *hic*, *istē*, and *illē*, answering in like manner to *ubi*? *undē*? and *quō*? These together with the preceding correlatives are, in the following table, arranged respectively under their several interrogatives *ubi*? *undē*? *quō*? *quā*? and *quorsum*?—Thus:

<i>ubi</i> ?	<i>undē</i> ?	<i>quō</i> ?	<i>quā</i> ?	<i>quorsum</i> ?
<i>hic</i> ,	<i>hinc</i> ,	<i>hūc</i> ,	<i>hāc</i> ,	<i>horsum</i> ,
<i>istic</i> ,	<i>istinc</i> ,	<i>istūc</i> ,	<i>istāc</i> ,	<i>istorsum</i> ,
<i>illic</i> ,	<i>illinc</i> ,	<i>illūc</i> ,	<i>illāc</i> ,	<i>illorsum</i> ,
<i>ibi</i> ,	<i>indē</i> ,	<i>eō</i> ,	<i>eā</i> ,	_____
<i>ibidem</i> ,	<i>indidem</i> ,	<i>eōdem</i> ,	<i>eādem</i> ,	_____
<i>alibi</i> ,	<i>alitrundē</i> ,	<i>alio</i> ,	<i>aliā</i> ,	<i>aliorum</i> ,
<i>allicubi</i> .	<i>allicundē</i> .	<i>aliquō</i> .	<i>aliquā</i> .	<i>aliquoversum</i> .

(e.) *Hic*, *hinc*, *hūc*, refer to the place of the speaker; *istic*, *istinc*, *istāc*, to the place of the second person or person addressed; and *illic*, *illinc*, *illūc*, to that of the third person or the person or thing spoken of. Cf. § 207, R. 23, (a.) and (d.)

(f.) The interrogative adverbs *ubi*, *undē*, *quō*, *quā*, etc. are often used without a question, simply as adverbs of place; as, *In eam partem ituros, atque ibi futuros Helvetios, ubi eos Caesar constituisset.*

(g.) In consequence of a transfer of their meaning, some of the adverbs of place, as, *hic*, *ibi*, *ubi*, *hinc*, *indē*, *hactenus*, etc., become also adverbs of time, and some of them are used also as conjunctions.

## II. Adverbs of Time.

*actūtum*, immediately.  
*abhinc*, from this time.  
*adeo*, so long (as).  
*adhuc*, until now, still.  
*alias*, at another time.  
*aliquandiu*, for awhile.  
*aliquandō*, at some time.  
*aliquoties*, several times.  
*antē*, } before,  
*anteā*, } previously.  
*antehac*, formerly.  
*bis*, twice. (see § 119).  
*circiter*, about, near.  
*crās*, tomorrow.  
*cum* or *quum*, when.  
*deinceps*, in succession.  
*deinde* or *dein*, } thereupon,  
*exindē* or *exin*, } afterwards.  
*dēhinc*, from this time.  
*dēnum*, at length.  
*dēnique*, lastly.  
*diū*, long.  
*dūdum*, previously.  
*eousquē*, so long.  
*hērē* or *hēri*, yesterday.  
*hic*, here, hereupon.  
*hinc*, from this time, since.  
*hōdiē*, to-day.  
*ibi*, then, thereupon.  
*identidem*, now and then,  
*repeatedly.*

*illuc*, immediately.  
*indē*, after that, then.  
*interdum*, sometimes.  
*intērim*, meanwhile.  
*iterum*, again.  
*jam*, now, already.  
*jamdiū*, } long ago.  
*amdūdum*, }  
*jamjam*, presently.  
*jampridem*, long since.  
*mōdo*, just now.  
*mox*, soon after.  
*nondum*, not yet.  
*nonnumquam*, sometimes.  
*nūdiūs tertius*, three days ago.  
*nunc*, now.  
*numquam*, never.  
*nūpēr*, lately.  
*olim*, formerly.  
*pārumpēr*, } for a short  
*paulispēr*, } time.  
*pērendiē*, two days hence.  
*porro*, hereafter, in future.  
*post*, postea, afterwards.  
*posthac*, hereafter.  
*postridiē*, the day after.  
*pridem*, long since.  
*pridiē*, the day before.  
*prōtinūs*, instantly.

*quandiu*? how long?  
*quandō*? when?  
*quandocumquē*, whenever.  
*quandocquē*, at some time.  
*quātēr*, four times.  
*quoad*? } how long?  
*quousquē*? }  
*quondam*, formerly.  
*quōtidīē*, daily.  
*quōtiēs*? how often?  
*quum* or *cum*, when.  
*rursus*, again.  
*sæpē*, often.  
*sēmēl*, once.  
*sempēr*, always.  
*stātīm*, immediately.  
*sūbindē*, immediately, now and then.  
*tamdiū*, so long.  
*tandem*, at length.  
*tantispēr*, for so long.  
*tēr*, thrice.  
*tōtiēs*, so often.  
*tum*, tunc, then.  
*ubi*, when, as soon as.  
*umquam*, ever.  
*usquē*, until, ever.  
*ut* or *uti*, as, as soon as, when.



## III. Adverbs of Manner, Quality, Degree, etc.,

<i>adeo</i> , so, to that degree.	<i>nimis</i> , } too much.	<i>sane</i> , truly.
<i>admodum</i> , very much.	<i>nimum</i> , }	<i>sat</i> , enough.
<i>aliter</i> , otherwise.	<i>non</i> , not.	<i>satis</i> , rather.
<i>ceu</i> , as, like as.	<i>omnino</i> , altogether, only.	<i>scilicet</i> , truly, to wit.
<i>cūr</i> ? why?	<i>pene</i> , almost.	<i>secus</i> , otherwise.
<i>duntaxat</i> , only, at least.	<i>palam</i> , openly.	<i>seorsum</i> , } separately.
<i>etiam</i> , also, truly, yes.	<i>pariter</i> , equally.	<i>seorsus</i> , }
<i>etiannunc</i> , } also, besides.	<i>parum</i> , too little.	<i>sic</i> , so.
<i>etiamtum</i> , }	<i>paulatim</i> , by degrees.	<i>sicut</i> , } so as, as.
<i>ferē</i> , } almost, nearly.	<i>penitus</i> , wholly.	<i>sicūt</i> , }
<i>fermē</i> , }	<i>perinde</i> , } just as,	<i>simul</i> , together.
<i>fortasse</i> , perhaps.	<i>proinde</i> , } as though.	<i>singillatim</i> , one by one.
<i>frustra</i> , in vain.	<i>perquam</i> , very much.	<i>solum</i> , only, alone.
<i>gratis</i> , freely.	<i>plerumque</i> , for the most part, commonly.	<i>tam</i> , so, so much.
<i>haud</i> , not.	<i>potius</i> , rather.	<i>tamquam</i> , like, as if.
<i>haudququam</i> , by no means.	<i>porro</i> , moreover, then.	<i>tantopere</i> , so greatly.
<i>hucusque</i> , so far.	<i>praeter</i> , beyond, except.	<i>tantum</i> , so much, only.
<i>identidem</i> , constantly.	<i>praesertim</i> , particularly.	<i>tantummodo</i> , only.
<i>immō</i> , nay, on the contrary.	<i>profecto</i> , truly.	<i>temere</i> , at random.
<i>ita</i> , so.	<i>propē</i> , almost, near.	<i>una</i> , together.
<i>item</i> , just so, also.	<i>propemodum</i> , almost.	<i>usquequaque</i> , in all points, in all ways.
<i>itidem</i> , in like manner.	<i>prorsus</i> , wholly.	<i>ut</i> , } as.
<i>juxta</i> , equally, alike.	<i>quam</i> , how much, as.	<i>utū</i> , }
<i>magis</i> , more.	<i>quamobrem</i> , wherefore.	<i>utique</i> , at any rate, certainly.
<i>modo</i> , only.	<i>quare</i> ? why? wherefore?	<i>utpote</i> , as, inasmuch as.
<i>ne</i> or <i>nē</i> , truly, verily.	<i>quasi</i> , as if, as it were.	<i>valde</i> , very much.
<i>nē</i> , not.	<i>quemadmodum</i> , as.	<i>vel</i> , even.
<i>nēdum</i> , much less.	<i>quidem</i> , } indeed.	<i>velut</i> , } as, like as, for
<i>nempē</i> , truly, forsooth.	<i>equidem</i> , }	<i>velūtī</i> , } example.
<i>nēquāquam</i> , } by no means.	<i>quomodo</i> ? how? in what manner?	<i>vicissim</i> , in turn, again.
<i>neutiquam</i> , }	<i>quodque</i> , also.	<i>videlicet</i> , clearly, to wit.
<i>nimis</i> , certainly, to be sure.	<i>rite</i> , duly.	<i>vix</i> , scarcely.
	<i>saltem</i> , at least.	

REM. 2. Adverbs denoting quality, manner, etc., are sometimes divided into those of, 1. Quality; as, *bene*, *male*. 2. Certainty; as, *certe*, *plane*. 3. Contingence; as, *forte*. 4. Negation; as, *haud*, *non*, *nē*, *immō*. 5. Affirmation; as, *ne*, *quidem*, *utique*, *nempē*. 6. Swearing; as, *hercle*. 7. Explaining; as, *videlicet*, *utpote*. 8. Separation; as, *seorsum*. 9. Joining together; as, *simul*, *una*. 10. Interrogation; as, *cūr*? *quare*? 11. Quantity or degree; as, *satis*, *adeo*. 12. Excess; as, *perquam*, *maximē*. 13. Defect; as, *parum*, *pene*. 14. Preference; as, *potius*, *satiūs*. 15. Likeness; as, *ita*, *sic*. 16. Unlikeness; as, *aliter*. 17. Exclusion; as, *tantum*, *solum*.

REM. 3. *Non* is the ordinary Latin negation. *Haud* signifies either 'not at all,' or 'not exactly.' It is used by the comic and later writers in all combinations, but in the authors of the best age its use is more especially limited to its connection with adjectives and adverbs denoting a measure; as, *haud multum*, *haud magnum*, *haud parvus*, *haud mediocris*, *haud paulo*, *haud procul*, *haud longe*, especially *haud sane* in connection with other words; as, *haud sane facile*, *res haud sane diffictis*, *haud sane intelligo*; also *haud quisquam*, *haud umquam*, *haud quaquam*. With verbs *haud* is scarcely used until Livy and Tacitus, except in the common phrase *haud scio an*, which is equivalent to *nescio an*.—*Nē*, (or *nē*) is the primitive Latin negative particle, signifying *no* or *not*. It is used in this sense and as an adverb, (a) with *quidem* to make an emphatic negation of the word standing between them; as, *nē in oppidis quidem*, not even in the towns; (b) in composition as in *nefas*, *neuter*, etc.; (c) with imperatives and

subjunctives used as imperatives; as, *Nē puēri, nē tanta animie iussescite bella.* Virg. So, also, in wishes and asseverations; as, *Nē id Jupiter aenēret*, may Jupiter forbid it. Liv. *Ne vivam, si sciō*, may I die, if I know. Cic.; and in concessive and restrictive clauses; as, *Ne fuērit*, suppose there was not. Cic. *Sint misericordes in furibus aerarii, ne illis sanguinem nostram largiantur*, only let them not, etc. Cic. So *dum ne, dummodo ne, mōdo ne, dum quidem ne*; and in intentional clauses with *ut*.—*Immo*, as a negative, substitutes something stronger in the place of the preceding statement, which is denied; as, *Causa igitur non bona est? Immo optima, sed*, etc. Cic. It may often be translated by 'nay,' or 'nay even.'

REM. 4. *Quidem* gives particular emphasis to a word or an idea, and then answers to our 'certainly' or 'indeed,' but frequently, especially with a pronoun, it merely adds emphasis. *Equidem*, which is considered as a compound of *ego* and *quidem*, is used exclusively in this sense by Cicero, Virgil, and Horace, but by other and particularly by later writers it is used like *quidem*.—*Nempe*, 'surely,' is often used ironically, when we refute a person by concessions which he is obliged to make, or by deductions. In other connections it may be translated 'namely.'

REM. 5. *Sic, itā, tam*, as also *tantōpēre*, and *adeo* signify 'so.' *Sic* is more particularly the demonstrative 'so,' or 'thus'; as, *sic se res habet*. *Ita* defines or limits more accurately, and is equivalent to our 'in such a manner,' or 'only in so far'; as, *ita defendito, ut neminem laedas*. Frequently, however, *ita* has the signification of *sic*, but *sic* has not the limiting sense of *ita*.—*Tam*, 'so much,' generally stands before adjectives and adverbs, and increases the degree; before vowels *tantōpēre* is generally used instead of *tam*.—*Adeo*, 'to that degree' or 'point,' increases the expression to a certain end or result. Hence it forms the transition to the conclusion of an argument or to the essential part of a thing; and Cicero employs it to introduce the proofs of what he has previously alleged; as, *Id adeo ex ipso senātus consilio cognoscite*, and always in such case puts *adeo* after a pronoun.

REM. 6. *Umquam*, 'ever,' and *usquam*, 'somewhere,' like *quusquam*, require a negation in the sentence, and thus become equivalent to *numquam* and *nusquam*. A negative question, however, may supply the place of a negative proposition; as, *num tu eum umquam vidisti?*—*Uspiam*, like *quispiam*, is not negative, but is the same as *alīcubi*, but strengthened, just as *quispiam* is the same as *aliquis*. So, also, *quōpiam* is used affirmatively, and *quōquam* negatively.—*Jam*, with a negative, answers to our 'longer'; as, *Nihil jam spero*, I no longer hope for any thing. When used to connect sentences it signifies 'further,' or 'now.'—*Usque* is commonly accompanied by the prepositions *ad, in, ab, or ex*. It rarely signifies 'ever and anon'; as, *Natūram expellas furcā, tamen usque recurret*. Hor.—*Nūper, mōdo, and mox* are relative and indefinite.—*Dūdum*, 'previously,' or 'before,' in relation to a time which has just passed away, may often be translated 'just before.'—*Jamdūdum* signifies 'long before,' or 'long since.' With the poets *jamdūdum* contains the idea of impatience, and signifies 'without delay,' 'forthwith'; as, *Jamdūdum sumite penas*. Virg.—*Tandem*, 'at length,' also expresses the impatience with which a question is put.

REM. 7. *Tunc* is 'then,' 'at that time,' in opposition to *nunc*, 'now': *Tum* is 'then,' as the correlative of *quum*, 'when'; as, *quum omnes adessent, tum ille exorsus est dicere*, when all were present, then he began to speak. Without a relative sentence *tum* signifies 'hereupon,' or 'thereupon'; but a relative sentence may always be supplied. The same difference exists between *etiam nunc* and *etiam tum*, 'still,' or 'yet'; and between *nunc ipsum* and *tum ipsum*; *quummaxime* and *tummaxime*, 'just,' or 'even then'; for *etiam nunc, nunc ipsum* and *quummaxime* refer to the present; but *etiam tum, tum ipsum*, and *tummaxime*, to the past.

## DERIVATION OF ADVERBS.

§ 192. Adverbs are derived from nouns, adjectives, pronouns, and participles.

## I. From Nouns.

1. Of these a few end in *im* (generally *ātim*), and denote manner; as,

*gregātim*, in herds; *membrātim*, limb by limb; *viciātim*, or more frequently, *viciissim*, by turns; from *grex*, *membrum*, and *vici*.

2. Some end in *itus*, and denote origin or manner; as, *cælitus*, from heaven; *funditus*, from the bottom; *radicitus*, by the roots; from *calum*, *fundus*, and *radix*.

3. Some are merely the different cases of nouns used adverbially; as,

(a.) Some adverbs of time; as, *mānē*, *noctū*, *diū*, *temporē* or *tempōri*, *initio*, *principiō*, *mōdo*.—(b.) Adverbs of place; as, *fōris*, *fōrās*.—(c.) Adverbs of manner; as, *spontē*, *fortē*, *grātis* or *grātius*, *ingrātius*, *vulgō*, *partim*.

## II. From Adjectives and Participles.

By far the greater number of derivative adverbs come from adjectives and participles (present and perfect), and end in *ē* and *tēr*.

1. Adverbs derived from adjectives and participles of the second declension, are formed by adding *ē* to the root; as,

*ægrē*, scarcely; *altē*, high; *libērē*, freely; *longē*, far; *misērē*, miserably; *plēnē*, fully; *doctē*, learnedly; *ornātē*, elegantly; from *ægēr*, *altus*, *libēr*, *longūs*, *misēr*, *plēnūs*, *doctūs*, and *ornātūs*. *Bēnē*, well, is from *bōnūs*, or an older form *bēnūs*.

REMARK. A few adverbs in *e* differ in meaning from their adjectives; as, *sānē*, certainly; *valdē*, very; from *sānūs*, sound, well; and *valdūs*, strong.

Exc. 1. A few adverbs derived from adjectives and participles of the second declension, add *itēr*, *itūs*, *im*, or *ātim* to the root; as,

*nāvītēr*, actively; *antiquitūs*, anciently; *divinitūs*, divinely; *privātīm*, privately; *tuātīm*, after your manner; *singulātīm*, *singillātīm*, *sigillātīm*, or *singultīm*, severally; *cæsim*, *carptīm*, *sensīm*, *slūtīm*, etc. from *nāvūs*, *antiquūs*, *divinūs*, *privātūs*, *tuūs*, *singulī*, *cæsus*, *carptūs*, etc.

Exc. 2. Some adverbs are formed with two or more of the above terminations with the same meaning; as, *dūrē*, *dūritēr*; *firmē*, *firmitēr*; *nāvē*, *nāvītēr*; *largē*, *largitēr*; *lūcūlentē*, *lūcūlentēr*; *turbūlentē*, *turbūlentēr*: so *cautē* and *cautīm*; *hūmānē*, *hūmānitēr*, and *hūmānitūs*; *publicē* and *publicitūs*.

2. Adverbs derived from adjectives and participles of the third declension, are formed by adding *itēr* to the root, except when it ends in *t*, in which case *ēr* only is added; as,

*ācritēr*, sharply; *fēlicitēr*, happily; *turpitēr*, basely;—*ēlēgantēr*, elegantly; *prudentēr*, prudently; *amantēr*, lovingly; *prōperantēr*, hastily; from *ācēr*, *fēlix*, *turpis*, *ēlēgans*, *prūdēns*, *amans*, and *prōperans*. So also from the obsolete *alius* for *aliūs*, and *prōptis*, (neuter *prōpē*), come *ālītēr* and *prōptēr* for *prōptitēr*.

Exc. From *audax* comes by syncope *audactēr*; from *fortis* comes *fortitēr*; from *omnis*, *omnino*; from *uber*, *ubertīm*; and from *nēquam*, *nēquitēr*.

3. From the cardinal numerals are formed numeral adverbs in *ies*; as,

*quingües*, *décies*, from *quingus* and *décem*. So *toties* and *quoties*, from *tot* and *quot*. See § 119.

4. Some adverbs are merely certain cases of adjectives. Such are,

(a.) Ablatives in *o*, from adjectives and participles of the second declension; as, *cito*, quickly; *continuo*, immediately; *falso*, falsely; *crebro*, frequently; *merito*, deservedly; *inopinato*, unexpectedly; *fortuito*, by chance; *auspicio*, auspiciously; *consilio*, designedly; and a few in *a* from adjectives of the first declension; as, *recta*, straight on; *una*, together. In like manner, *repente*, suddenly, from *repens*; and *peregre* or *peregrin*, from *peregrer*.

(b.) Nominatives or accusatives of the third declension in the neuter singular; as, *facile*, *difficile*, *recens*, *sublime*, and *impune*; and some also of the second declension; as, *ceterum*, *plurimumque*, *multum*, *plurimum*, *potissimum*, *paulum*, *nimum*, *parum*, and the numeral adverbs, *primum*, *tertium*, *quartum*, etc. which have also the termination in *o*, and so also *postrimum* (*o*), and *ultimum* (*o*). The neuter plural sometimes occurs also, especially in poetry; as, *multa gemere*; *tristia ululare*; *crebra ferire*.

(c.) Accusatives of the first declension; as, *bifariam*, *trifariam*, *multifariam*, *omnifariam*, etc. scil. *partem*.

NOTE 1. The forms in *e* and *o* from adjectives of the second declension have generally the same meaning, but *vere* and *vero* have a somewhat different sense. *Vere*, truly, is the regular adverb of *verus*, true; but *vero* is used in answers, in the sense of 'in truth,' or 'certainly.' In this use it is added to the verb used in the question; as, *adfunctine hēri in convivio?* The affirmative answer is *ego vero adfui*, or without the verb, *ego vero*, and negatively, *minime vero*; and as *vero* thus merely indicates a reply, it is often untranslatable into English.—*Certe*, on the other hand, usually takes the meaning of the adjective *certus*, while *certe* often signifies 'at least'; as, *victi sumus, aut, si dignitas vinci non potest, fracti certe*; but *certe* is frequently used in the sense of 'certainly,' especially in the phrase *certe scio*.

NOTE 2. Some adjectives, from the nature of their signification, have no corresponding adverbs. Of some others, also, none occur in the classics. Such are *amens*, *dirus*, *discors*, *gnarus*, *rudis*, *trux*, *imbellis*, *immobilis*, and similar compounds. In place of the adverbs formed from *vetus* and *fidus*, *vetuste* and *antique* are used for the former, and *fideliter* for the latter, from *vetustus*, *antiquus*, and *fidelis*.

III. From the adjective pronouns are derived adverbs of place, etc. (See § 191, Rem. 1.)

REMARK. The terminations *o* and *uc* denote the place *whither*, instead of the accusative of the pronoun with a preposition; as, *eo* for *ad eum locum*; *huc* for *ad hunc locum*; the terminations *de* and *inc* denote the place *from which*; *i* and *ic*, the place *in which*; and *a* and *ac*, the place *by or through which*; as, *ea*; *via* or *parte* being understood.

IV. (a.) A few adverbs are derived from prepositions; as, *subtus*, beneath; from *sub*; *propter*, near; from *prope*. (b.) *Mordacis* and *versus* are derived from the verbs *mordeo* and *verto*.

REMARK. Diminutives are formed from a few adverbs; as, *clam*, *clanculum*; *primum*, *primulum*; *celerius*, *celeriuscule*; *sapius*, *sapiuscule*; *bene*, *belle*, *bellissime*.

## COMPOSITION OF ADVERBS.

## § 193. Adverbs are compounded variously:—

1. Of an adjective and a noun; as, *posteriore, quotidie, magnopere, maximopere, summopere, quantopere, tantopere, tantummodo, solummodo, multimodis, quitanis*—of *posterior die, magnò opere*, etc.
2. Of a pronoun and a noun; as, *hodie, quare, quomodo*—of *hòc diè, quò rē*, etc.
3. Of an adverb and a noun; as, *nuncius, expensivè*—of *nunc diès*, etc.
4. Of a preposition and a noun; as, *communi, emni, illico, obiter, extemplo, obviam, postmodò, admodum, propèdè*—of *con, e, and muni*; in and *locus*; etc.
5. Of an adjective and a pronoun; as, *aliquis or aliquis, ceteròque or ceteròquin*—of *alius and qui*, i. e. *aliò quò (modo)*, etc.
6. Of a pronoun and an adverb; as, *aliquandà, illicubi*—of *aliquis, dià, and ubi*; *nèquàquam* and *nèquicquam*—of *nè and quicquam*.
7. Of two verbs; as, *illicet, scilicet videlicet* of *irè, scire, vidèrè, and licet*.
8. Of an adverb and a verb; as, *quolibet, ubivis, undelibet*. So *deinceps*—from *dein* and *cópio*; *duntaxat*—from *dum* and *taxo*.
9. Of a participle with various parts of speech; as, *deorsum, dextrorsum, horsum, retrorsum, sursum*—of *dè, dextrè, hìc, retro, supèr, and versis*.
10. Of two adverbs; as, *jamdudum, quandà, tandà, cummaximè, tummaximè, quousque, sicut*.
11. Of a preposition and an adjective; as, *denuo, imprimis, cumprimis, ap-primè, incassum*—of *dè novò, in primis*, etc.
12. Of a preposition and a pronoun; as, *quapropter, postea, interea, praeterea, hacitè, quatenus, aliquatenus, eatenus*—of *propter quò, post ea* or *eam*, etc.
13. Of a preposition and an adverb; as, *abhinc, adhuc, dèrepentè, intèrbi, interdià, interdiu, perapè*.
14. Of two or three prepositions; as, *insuper, pròtinus, inde, dein, deinde, pròindè*.
15. Of a conjunction and an adverb; as, *necubi, sicubi*—of *nè, et, and àncubi*.
16. Of an adverb and a termination scarcely used except in composition; as, *ibidem, pròpter, quancumque, ubique, utcumque*.
17. Of three different parts of speech; as, *forsitan*—of *fors, est, an, quemadmodum, quamobrem*, etc.
18. Of an adverb and an adjective; as, *nimirum, utpòtè*.
19. Of an adjective and a verb; as, *quantumvis, quantumlibet*.

## Signification of certain Compound and Derivative Adverbs.

1. The adverbs *continuo, pròtinus, statim, confestim, subito, repente* and *dèrepente, actutum, illico, illicet, extemplo*, signify in general 'directly' or 'immediately'; but, strictly, *continuo* means, 'immediately after'; *statim*, 'without delay'; *confestim*, 'directly'; *subito*, 'suddenly, unexpectedly'; *pròtinus*, 'farther, viz. in the same direction, and hence, 'without interruption'; *repente* and *dèrepente*, 'at once,' opposed to *sensim*, 'gradually,' (see *Cic. Off.* 1, 38); *actutum*, 'instantaneously,' i. e. *eodem actù*; *illico*, and more rarely *illicet*, 'forthwith, the instant,' (*Virg. Aen.* 2, 424, *Cic. Mur.* 10); so also *extemplo*, (*Liv.* 41, 1).
2. *Præsertim, præcipue, imprimis, cumprimis, ap-primè*, are generally translated 'principally,' but, properly, *præsertim* is 'particularly,' and sets forth a particular circumstance with emphasis; *præcipue*, from *præcipio*, has reference to privilege, and signifies 'especially'; *imprimis* and *cumprimis*, signify 'principally,' or 'in preference to others'; and *ap-primè*, 'before all,' 'very,' is used

in pure Latin to qualify and strengthen only adjectives. *Admodum* properly signifies 'according to measure,' that is, 'in as great a measure as can be,' 'very, exceedingly.' With numerals it denotes approximation, 'about.' *Admodum nihil* and *admodum nullus* signify 'nothing at all' and 'no one at all.'

3. *Modo* is the usual equivalent for 'only.' *Solum*, 'alone,' 'merely,' points to something higher or greater. *Tantum*, 'only,' 'merely,' intimates that something else was expected. The significations of *solum* and *tantum* are strengthened by *modo*, forming *solummodo* and *tantummodo*. *Duntaxat*, 'only, solely,' is not joined with verbs. It also signifies 'at least,' denoting a limitation to a particular point. *Saltem* also signifies 'at least,' but denotes the reduction of a demand to a minimum; as, *Eripe mihi hunc dolorem, aut minus saltem*.

4. *Frustrā* implies a disappointed expectation; as in *frustra suscipere labres*. *Negucquam* denotes the absence of success, as in *Hor. Carm. 1, 3, 21. Incassum*, composed of *in* and *cassum*, 'hollow' or 'empty,' signifies 'to no purpose'; as, *illa incassum jacere*.

## COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

† § 194. 1. Adverbs derived from adjectives with the terminations *ē* and *ēr*, and most of those in *o*, are compared like their primitives.

2. The comparative, like the neuter comparative of the adjective, ends in *iūs*; the superlative is formed from the superlative of the adjective by changing *ūs* into *e*; as,

*āprē, dāriūs, dāriūsimē; faciļ, faciļiūs, faciļiūsimē; ācrtēr, ācrtiūs, ācrtērīsimē; rārū, rārīūs, rārīūsimē; mātūrē, mātūrīūs, mātūrīūsimē* or *mātūrīimē*.

3. Some adverbs have superlatives in *ō* or *um*; as, *mērtīūsimō, pīrīumum, primō* or *prīumum, pōtīūsimum*.

4. If the comparison of the adjective is irregular or defective, (see §§ 125, 126), that of the adverb is so likewise; as,

*bēnē, mēliūs, optīmē; mālē, pējūs, pessīmē; pārum, minūs, minimē; mutum, plūs, plūrīumum; —, priūs, primō* or *prīumum; —, ōciūs, ōcīssimē; —, dētēriūs, dētērīimē; —, pōtiūs, pōtiūsimē* or *pōtīūsimum; mērtiūs, —, mērtīūssimō; sctiūs, sctiūs, —. Māgis, maxīmē*, (from *magnūs*), has no positive; *nāpēr, nāpērīimē*, has no comparative. *Prōpē, prōpīūs, proxiimē*: the adjective *prōpēr* has no positive in use. The regular adverb in the positive degree from *ābēr* is wanting, its place being supplied by *ābertim*, but *ābēriūs* and *ābērīimē* are used. So instead of *tristīter*, *tristē*, the neuter of *tristis*, is used, but the comparative *tristīūs* is regular; and from *ādcors* only *ādcordiūs*, the comparative, is in use.

5. *Diū* and *sēpē*, though not derived from adjectives, are yet compared;—*diū, diūtīūs, diūtīūssimē; sēpē, sēpiūs, sēpiūssimē*. A comparative *tempōriūs*, from *tempēri* or *tempōri*, also sometimes occurs. So *sēctiūs, sēctiūs*.

6. Adverbs, like adjectives, are sometimes compared by prefixing *māgis* and *maxīmē*; as, *māgis āpertē, maxīmē accommōdātē*.

## PREPOSITIONS.

† § 195. 1. A preposition is a particle which expresses the relation between a noun or pronoun and some preceding word.

2. Prepositions express the relations of persons or things, either to one another, or to actions and conditions; as, *āmor meū erga te*, my love toward thee; *eo ad tā*, I go to thence.

3. Some prepositions have the noun or pronoun which follows them in the accusative, some, in the ablative, and some, in either the accusative or the ablative.

4. Twenty-six prepositions have an accusative after them:—

<i>ad</i> , to, towards, at, for.	<i>extrā</i> , without, beyond.	<i>post</i> , after, since, behind.
<i>adversus</i> , } against.	<i>infra</i> , under, beneath.	<i>præter</i> , past, before.
<i>adversum</i> , } towards.	<i>intē</i> , between, among,	against, beyond, besides.
<i>antē</i> , before.	during.	<i>propē</i> , near by, nigh.
<i>apud</i> , at, with, near, be-	<i>intrā</i> , within.	<i>propter</i> , near, on account
fore, in presence of.	<i>juxtā</i> , near to, next to.	of.
<i>circā</i> , } around, about.	<i>ob</i> , for, on account of,	<i>secundum</i> , after, behind,
<i>circum</i> , } around, about.	before.	along, next to, accord-
<i>circiter</i> , about, near.	<i>pēnēs</i> , in the power of,	ing to.
<i>cis</i> , } on this side, within.	with.	<i>suprā</i> , above, over.
<i>citrā</i> , } on this side, within.	<i>pēr</i> , through, throughout,	<i>trans</i> , over, beyond.
<i>contra</i> , against, opposite.	by, during.	<i>ultrā</i> , beyond.
<i>ergā</i> , towards, opposite.	<i>pōnē</i> , behind.	

5. Eleven prepositions have after them an ablative:—

<i>ā</i> , }	<i>dē</i> , from, down from, af-	<i>præ</i> , before, for, on ac-
<i>ab</i> , } from, after, by.	ter, of, concerning.	count of, in comparison
<i>abs</i> , }	<i>ē</i> , } out of, from, of, by,	with.
<i>absquē</i> , without, but for.	<i>ex</i> , } after.	<i>prō</i> , before, for, instead
<i>cōram</i> , before, in pres-	<i>pālam</i> , before, in pres-	of, according to.
ence of.	ence of.	<i>sine</i> , without.
<i>cum</i> , with.		<i>tēnūs</i> , as far as, up to.

6. Five prepositions take after them sometimes an accusative, and sometimes an ablative:—

<i>clam</i> , without the knowl-	<i>sub</i> , under, about, near.	<i>supr</i> , above, over; upon,
edge of.	<i>subtēr</i> , under, beneath.	concerning.
<i>in</i> , in, on; to, into, against.		

REMARK 1. Prepositions are so called, because they are generally placed before the noun or pronoun whose relation they express. They sometimes, however, stand after it. Cf. § 279, 10.

REM. 2. *A* is used only before consonants; *ab* before vowels, and frequently before consonants, though rarely before labials: *abs* is obsolete, except in the phrase *abs te*.

*E* is used only before consonants, *ex* before both vowels and consonants.

REM. 3. *Versus*, which follows its noun, (cf. § 235, R. 8), *usquē*, and *exadversus* (-um), sometimes take an accusative, *simul* and *procul*, an ablative, and are then by some called prepositions. *Secus*, with an accusative, occurs in Pliny and Cato.

REM. 4. Many of the prepositions, especially those which denote place, are also used as adverbs. Cf. § 191.

### Signification and Use of certain Prepositions.

REM. 5. (a.) *Ad* denotes direction, and answers to the questions Whither? and Till when? as, *Venio ad te*. *Sophocles ad summam senectutem tragicus ficit*. Cic. It also denotes a fixed time; as, *ad hōram*, at the hour; *ad tempus aliquid facere*,—at the right time. But sometimes *ad tempus* denotes 'for a time.' Sometimes, also, *ad* denotes the approach of time; as, *ad lucem*, *ad vesperam*, *ad extremum*, towards day-break, etc.; and also the actual arrival of a time; as, *ad prima signa vērīs profectus* at the first sign of Spring.

(b.) In answer to the question Where? *ad* signifies 'near' a place; as, *ad urbem esse*; *ad portas urbis*; *pugna navalis ad Tenedum*. It is used like *in*, 'at,' in such phrases as *ad adem Bellona*, or, without *adem*, *ad Opis*; *negotium habere ad portum*.—With numerals it may be rendered 'to the amount of' or 'nearly'; as, *ad ducentos*. It is also used like *circiter* without any case; as, *Occisus ad hominum millibus quatuor*.—The phrase *omnes ad unum* signifies, 'all without exception,' 'every one.'

(c.) *Ad* often denotes an object or purpose, and hence comes its signification of 'in respect to'; as, *homo ad labores belli impiger*. It is also used in figurative relations to denote a model, standard, or object of comparison, where we say 'according to,' or 'in comparison with'; as, *ad modum*, *ad effigiem*, *ad similitudinem*, *ad speciem alicujus rei*; *ad normam*, etc. *ad voluntatem alicujus facere aliquid*. *Ad verbum* signifies, 'word for word'; *nihil ad hanc rem*, 'nothing in comparison with this thing.'

REM. 6. *Apud* expresses nearness to, and was primarily used of persons as *ad* was applied to things. *Apud* also denotes rest, and *ad* direction, motion, etc. Hence it signifies 'with,' both literally and figuratively. With names of places it signifies 'near,' like *ad*; as, *Mile pugnatum est apud Caudium*. But in early writers, *apud* is used for *in*; as, *Augustus apud urbem Nolum extinctus est*,—at Nola.—With *me*, *te*, *se*, or the name of a person, it signifies 'at the house' or 'dwelling of'; as, *Fuisti apud Læcam illa nocte*.—Before appellatives of persons having authority in regard to any matter, it is translated 'before,' 'in the presence of'; as, *apud iudices*, *apud prætorem*, *apud populum*.—It is also used with names of authors, instead of *in* with the name of their works; as, *Apud Xenophontem*, but we cannot say *in Xenophonte*.

REM. 7. *Adversus*, *contra*, and *erga* signify 'opposite to.' *Contra* denotes hostility, like our 'against'; *erga*, a friendly disposition, 'towards'; and *adversus* is used in either sense. But *erga* sometimes occurs in a hostile sense.

REM. 8. *Intra* signifies 'within,' in regard both to time and place. In regard to place it is used in answer to both questions Where? and Whither?—It denotes time either as an entire period, when it is equivalent to 'during,' or as 'unfinished,' when it corresponds with 'under,' or 'before the expiration of.'

REM. 9. *Për*, denoting place, signifies, 'through,' and also 'in,' in the sense of 'throughout.'—With the accusative of persons it signifies 'through,' 'by the instrumentality of.' It often expresses the manner; as, *për litteras*, by letter; *për injuriam*, *për scelus*, with injustice, criminally; *për iram*, from or in anger; *për simulationem*, *për speciem*, *për causam*, under the pretext; *për occasionem*, on the occasion; *për ridiculum*, in a ridiculous manner.—It sometimes signifies 'on account of'; as, *për valetudinem*, on account of illness.—*Për me licet*,—so far as I am concerned.

REM. 10. *A* or *ab*, denoting time, is used with nouns, both abstract and concrete, with the same general meaning; as, *a primâ ætate*, *ab ineunte ætate*, *ab initio ætatis*, *ab infantia*, *a pueritia*, *ab adolescentiâ*; and, *a puero*, *a pueris*, *ab adolescentulo*, *ab infante*, all of which signify 'from an early age.' So also, *a parvis*, *a parvulo*, *a tenèro*, *a tenèris unguiculis*, which expressions are of Greek origin.—*Ab initio*, *a principio*, *a primo*, properly denote the space of time from the beginning down to a certain point; as, *Urbem Rômam a principio rëges habuere*, i. e. for a certain period after its foundation. But frequently *ab initio* is equivalent to *initio*, in the beginning.—The adherents or followers of a school are often named from its head; as, *a Platône*, *ab Aristotèle*, etc.—In comic writers *ab* is sometimes used instead of the genitive; as, *ancilla ab Andriâ*.—In a figurative sense it signifies 'with regard to'; as, *ab equitatu firmus*.—With names of persons it also denotes relationship, and signifies 'on the side of'; as, *Augustus a matre Magnum Pompeium artissimo contingebat grâtiâ*,—on his mother's side.—*Statim*, *confestim*, *recens ab aliquâ re*, 'immediately after.'—*Ab itinere aliquid facere*, to do a thing while on a journey.

REM. 11. *Cum* is used not only to designate accompanying persons but also accompanying circumstances; as, *cum aliquo ire*; *hostes cum detrimento suâ*



*deputi.* It signifies also 'in,' i. e. 'dressed in'; as, *cum tunica pullâ sedere.* With verbs implying hostility, it signifies 'with,' in the sense of 'against'; as, *cum aliquo bellum gerere; cum aliquo queri* to complain of or against.

REM. 12. *Dē* commonly signifies 'concerning,' 'about.' Hence *traditur dē Homēro* is very different from *traditur ab Homēro*; in the former, Homer is the object, in the latter the agent.—In the epistolary style, when a new subject is touched upon, *dē* signifies 'in regard to,' 'as respects'; as, *dē fratre, confido ita esse, ut semper volui.*—It often signifies 'down from'; and also 'of,' in a partitive sense; as, *homo dē plebe, unus dē populo.*—From its partitive signification arises its use in denoting time; as, *in comitium dē nocte venire*, i. e. even by night, or spending a part of the night in coming; hence *multa dē nocte, media dē nocte*, 'in the depth of night,' 'in the middle of the night.'—In other cases, also, it is used for *ex* or *ab*; as, *Audivi hoc dē parente meo puer.* Cic.; especially in connection with *emere, mercari, conducere.* *Triumphum agere dē Gallis* and *ex Gallis* are used indiscriminately.—Sometimes, like *secundum*, it signifies 'in accordance with,' 'after'; as, *dē consilio meo*:—sometimes it denotes the manner of an action; as, *denuo, dē integro*, afresh; *dē improvviso*, unexpectedly; *dē industriâ*, purposely:—*quâ dē re, quâ dē causâ, quibus dē causis*, for which reason or reasons.

REM. 13. *Ex*, 'from,' 'out of.' *Ex equo pugnare*, to fight on horseback; so *ex itinere scribere: ex adverso, ē regione*, opposite; *ex omni parte*, in or from all parts.—*Ex vino* or *ex aquâ coquere* or *bibere*, i. e. 'with wine,' etc. are medical expressions.—It sometimes denotes manner; as, *ex animo laudare*, to praise heartily; *ex sententiâ* and *ex voluntate*, according to one's wish.—It is also, like *dē*, used in a partitive sense; as, *unus ē plebe, unus ē multis.*

REM. 14. *In*, with the accusative, signifying 'to' or 'into,' denotes the point towards which motion proceeds; as, *in ædem ire*; or the direction in which a thing extends; as, *decem pedes in altitudinem*, in height; so, also, it denotes figuratively the object towards which an action is directed, either with a friendly or a hostile design; as, *amor in patriam, odium in malos cives, in milites liberalis; oratio in aliquem*, a speech against some one.—It also denotes a purpose; as, *pecunia data est in rem militarem. Pax data Philippo in has leges est*, on these conditions.—With words denoting time, it expresses a predetermination of that time, like 'for'; as, *invitare aliquem in postêrum diem*, for the following day. *In diem vivere*, to live only for the day; *in futurum, in postêrum, in reliquum*, for the future; *in æternum, in perpetuum*, forever; *in præsens*, for the present: with all these adjectives *tempus* may be supplied. *In* with *singuli*, expressed or understood, denotes a distribution, and may be translated 'to,' 'for,' 'on,' 'over.'—*In singulos dies*, or simply *in dies*, with comparatives and verbs denoting increase, signifies 'from day to day.'—In some phrases it denotes the manner of an action; as, *servilem in modum, nitrum in modum*; so *in universum*, in general; *in commune*, in common; *in vicem*, alternately, or, instead of; *in aliqujus locum aliquid petere*, in the place, or, instead of.

REM. 15. *In*, with the ablative, signifies 'in,' 'on,' 'upon,' and answers to the question, Where? When a number or quantity is indicated, it signifies 'among,' and is equivalent to *inter*. It may sometimes be translated 'with,' or 'notwithstanding'; as, *In summâ copiâ oratorum, nemo tamen Ciceronis laudem æquavit.*—With nouns which by themselves denote time, such as *seculum, annus, mensis, dies, nox, vesper*, etc., the time, in answer to the question When? is expressed by the simple ablative; but *in* is used with words which acquire the signification of time only by such connection; as, *in consulatu in principio, in bello*; but even with these *in* is sometimes omitted, but is usually retained in connection with the gerund or gerundive; as, *in legendo, in legendis libris. In præsenti, or in præsentiâ*, signifies 'at the present moment,' 'for the present,'—*Est in eo, ut aliquid fiat* signifies that something is on the point of happening.

## PREPOSITIONS IN COMPOSITION.

✱ § 196. Most of the prepositions are used also in forming compound words. In composition, they may be considered either in reference to their form, or their force.

I. (*u.*) Prepositions in composition sometimes retain their final consonants, and sometimes change them, to adapt them to the sounds of the initial consonants of the words with which they are compounded. In some words, both forms are in use; in others, the final consonant or consonants are omitted.

1. *A*, in composition, is used before *m* and *v*; as, *amoveo*, *avello*, and sometimes before *f* in *afui* and *afore*, for *abfui* and *abfore*. *Ab* is used before vowels, and before *d*, *f*, *h*, *j*, *l*, *n*, *r*, and *s*; as, *abjuro*, *abrogo*, etc. *Abs* occurs only before *c*, *g*, and *t*; as, *abscondo*, *absque*, *abstineo*. In *aspello*, *aspernor*, and *asporto*, the *b* of *abs* is dropped; in *aufero* and *aufugio*, it is changed into *u*.

2. *Ad* remains unchanged before vowels and before *b*, *d*, *h*, *m*, *v*. It often changes *d* into *c*, *f*, *g*, *l*, *n*, *p*, *r*, *s*, *t*, before those letters respectively; as, *accedo*, *affero*, *aggređior*, *allego*, *annitor*, *appono*, *arrigo*, *assequor*, *attollo*. Its *d* is usually omitted before *s* followed by a consonant, and before *gn*; as, *aspicio*, *agnosco*, *agnatus*. Before *g*, the *d* is changed into *c*; as, *acquirō*.

3. *Ante* remains unchanged, except in *anticipo* and *antisto*, where it changes *e* to *i*; but *antesto* also occurs.

4. *Circum* in composition remains unchanged, only in *circumeo* and its derivatives the *m* is often dropped; as, *circueo*, *circuitus*, etc.

5. *Cum* (in composition, *com*), retains *m* before *b*, *m*, *p*; as, *combibo*, *committo*, *compōno*: before *l*, *n*, *r*, its *m* is changed into these letters respectively; as, *colligo*, *conmitō*, *corripio*: before other consonants, it becomes *n*; as, *condico*, *conjungo*. Before a vowel, *gn* or *h*, *m* is commonly omitted; as, *coeo*, *coopio*, *cognosco*, *cohabito*; but it is sometimes retained; as, *comēdo*, *cōmes*, *cōmitō*. In *cōgo* and *cōgitō* a contraction also takes place; as, *cōāgo*, *cōgo*, etc. In *comburo*, *b* is inserted.

6. *Ex* is prefixed to vowels, and to *c*, *h*, *p*, *q*, *s*, *t*; as, *exeo*, *exigo*, *excurro*, *exhibeo*, *expedio*. Before *f*, *x* is assimilated, and also rarely becomes *ec*; as, *effero*, or *ecfēro*. *S* after *x* is often omitted; as, *exsequor*, for *exsequor*; in *excidium* (from *exscindo*), *s* is regularly dropped. *E* is prefixed to the other consonants; as, *ēbibo*, *ēdico*, except in *eclex*. Before these however, with the exception of *n* and *r*, *ex* is sometimes used; as, *examoveo*. *E* is sometimes used before *p*; as, *ēpōlo*.

7. *In* remains unchanged before a vowel. Before *b*, *m*, *p*, it changes *n* into *m*; as, *imbuo*, *immitto*, *impōno*: before *l* and *r*, *n* is assimilated; as, *illigo*, *irritio*: before *gn*, *n* is omitted; as, *ignarus*. Before the other consonants *n* is unchanged. In some compounds, *in* retains *d* before a vowel, from an ancient form *indu*; as, *indigēna*, *indigeo*, *indolesco*. So anciently *induperator*, for *imperator*.

8. *Inter* remains unchanged, except in *intelligo* and its derivatives, in which *r* before *l* is assimilated.

9. *Ob* remains unchanged before vowels and generally before consonants. Its *b* is assimilated before *c*, *f*, *g*, *p*; as, *occurro*, *officio*, *oggannio*, *oppeto*. In *ōmitto*, *b* is dropped. An ancient form *obs*, analogous to *abs* for *ab*, is implied in *obolesco*, from the simple verb *oleo*, and in *ostendo*, for *obstendo*.

10. *Per* is unchanged in composition, except in *pellicio* and sometimes in *pelluceo*, in which *r* is assimilated before *l*. In *pējero*, *r* is dropped.

11. *Post* remains unchanged, except in *pōmarium* and *pōmēricānus*, in which *st* is dropped.

12. *Pro* and *prater* in composition remain unchanged, except that *pro* is shortened before a vowel. Cf. § 288, II Exc. 1.

13. *Pro* has sometimes its vowel shortened, (cf. § 285, 2, Exc. 5) and, to avoid hiatus, it sometimes takes *d* before a vowel; as, *pròdeo*, *pròdesse*, *pròdigo*. Before verbs beginning with *r* and *l*, *pro* sometimes becomes *por* and *poi*; as, *porrigo*, *pollicor*.

14. *Sab* in composition remains unchanged before a vowel and before *b*, *d*, *j*, *l*, *n*, *s*, *t*, *v*. Before *c*, *f*, *g*, *m*, *p*, *r*, its *b* is regularly assimilated; as, *succèdo*, *suffèro*, *suggèro*, *summòveo*, *supplicio*, *surripio*. Before *c*, *p*, and *t*, it sometimes takes the form *sus* from *subs*, analogous to *abs* and *obs*; as, *suscipio*, *suspendo*, *eustollo*: *b* is omitted before *s*, followed by a consonant; as, *suspicio*.

15. *Subter* and *stiper* in composition remain unchanged.

16. *Trans* remains unchanged before a vowel. It omits *s* before *s*; as, *transcendo*: in *tràdo*, *tràduco*, *tràficio*, and *tràno*, *ns* is commonly omitted.

(b.) The following words are called *inseparable prepositions*, because they are found only in composition:—

*Ambi* or *amb*, (Greek ἀμφί), around, about. *Réd* or *rè*, again, back. *Vè*, not.  
*Dis* or *di*, asunder. *Sè*, apart, aside.

1. *Amb* is always used before a vowel; as, *ambàges*, *ambarràlis*, *ambèdo*, *ambigo*, *ambio*, *ambùro*: except *ampulla*, *amicio*, and *anhèlo*. Before consonants it has the forms *ambi*; as, *ambidens*, *ambisùriam*, *ambivium*: *am*; as, *amplector*, *ampulo*: or *an*; as, *anceps*, *anfractus*, *anquiro*.

2. *Dis* is prefixed to words beginning with *c*, *p*, *q*, *s* before a vowel, *t*, and *h*; as, *discutio*, *dispono*, *disquiro*, *distendo*, *dishiasco*: but *deserto* is formed from *dis-sèro*; before *f*, *s* is changed into *f*; as, *diffèro*: in *dirimo*, and *diribeo* (from *dis hibeo*), *s* becomes *r*. *Di* is prefixed to the other consonants, and to *s* when followed by a consonant; as, *diduco*, *dimitto*, *distinguo*, *dispicio*. But both *dis* and *di* are used before *j*; as, *disjungo*, *dijudico*, and before *r* in *rumpo*.

3. *Réd* is used before a vowel or *h*; *rè* before a consonant; as, *rédimo*, *rèdeo*, *rédhibeo*, *rédigo*, *rèdoleo*, *rèdundo*;—*rèficio*, *rèpono*, *rèvertor*. But *réd* is used before *do*; as, *reddo*. The connecting vowel *i* is found in *rèdivivus*; and in the poetical forms *reiligio*, *reliquia*, and sometimes in *reccido* the *d* is assimilated. In later writers *re* is sometimes found before a vowel or *h*.

4. *Sè* and *vè* are prefixed without change; as, *sècèdo*, *sècùrus*; *vègrandis*, *vècora*.

§ 197. II. Prepositions in composition usually add their own signification to that of the word with which they are united; but sometimes they give to the compound a meaning different from that of its simples. The following are their most common significations:—

1. *A*, or *ab*, away, from, down; entirely; un-. With verbs it denotes removal, disappearance, absence; as, *aufèro*, *abator*, *absum*. With adjectives it denotes absence, privation; as, *amens*, *absònus*.

2. *Ad*, to, toward; at, by. In composition with verbs *ad* denotes (a) motion to, (not into), as, *accèdo*; (b) addition, as, *ascribo*; (c) nearness, as, *assideo*; (d) assent, favor, as, *annuo*, *arrideo*; (e) repetition and hence intensity, as, *accido*; (f) at, in consequence of, as, *arriego*. It is sometimes augmentative, rarely inchoative.

3. *Ambi*, around, about, on both sides.

4. *Circum*, around, about, on all sides.

5. *Cum* or *côn*, together, entirely. In composition with verbs it denotes (a) union, as, *concurro*, *consùlo*; (b) completeness, as, *comburo*, *conficio*; (c) with effort, as, *conjicio*, *conclàmo*; (d) in harmony, as, *consòno*, *consentio*; (e) on or over, like the English *be-*, as, *collino*, to besmear.

6. *Contra*, against, opposite.

7. *Dē*, off, away, through, over, down; entirely; very, extremely. With verbs *dē* denotes (a) *down*; as, *dēmīto*; (b) *removal*; as, *dētondeo*; (c) *absence*; as, *dēsūm*, *dēhābeo*; (d) *prevention*; as, *dēhortor*; (e) *unfriendly feeling*; as, *despicio*, *dērideo*.—With adjectives *dē* denotes (a) *down*; as, *dēclivis*; (b) *without*; as, *dēmens*.

8. *Dis*, asunder, apart, in pieces, in two; dis-, un-; very greatly. With verbs *dis* denotes (a) *division*; as, *divido*, *dilābor*; (b) *difference*; as, *discrēpo*, *dissentio*; (c) *the reverse of the simple notion*; as, *displaceo*, *diffido*; (d) *intensity*; as, *dilaudo*.—With adjectives *dis* denotes *difference*; as, *discolor*, *discors*.

9. *E*, or *ex*, out, forth, away, upward, without, -less, un-; utterly, completely, very. With verbs it denotes (a) *out*; as, *exeo*, *eximo*, *ēlāboro*; (b) *moral of something*; as, *ēdormio*; (c) *publicity*; as, *ēdico*; (d) *ascent*; as, *exsisto*; (e) *completeness*; as, *ēdisco*, *exūro*; (f) with denominative verbs, *change of character*; as, *expio*, *effero* (*āre*); (g) *removal of what is expressed by the noun whence the verb is derived*; as *ēnōdo*; (h) *the reversal of the fundamental idea*; as, *explico*; (i) *distance*; as, *exaudio*.—With adjectives formed from substantives it denotes *absence*; as, *exsomnia*.

10. *In*, with verbs, signifies in, on, at; into, against; as, *inhābito*, *induo*, *ingamo*, *ineo*, *illido*. With adjectives, un-, in-, im-, il-, ir-, not; as, *ignōtus*, *inhospitālis*, *immortālis*. Some of its compounds have contrary significations, according as they are participles or adjectives; as, *inlectus*, *part.*, covered, *adj.*, uncovered.

11. *Inter*, between, among, at intervals.

12. *Ob*, with verbs, signifies to, towards; as, *obeo*, *ostendo*; against; as, *obluctor*, *obnutio*; at, before; as, *obambulo*, *obversor*; upon; as, *occulco*; over; as, *obduco*.

13. *Per*, with verbs, denotes, through, thoroughly, perfectly, quite; as, *perduco*, *perficio*, *perdo*; with adjectives, through, very; as, *peruox*, *perlēvis*.

14. *Post*, after, behind.

15. *Præ* in composition with verbs denotes (a) *before* in place; as, *præmitto*; (b) *by* or *past*; as, *præfluo*; (c) *in command*; as, *præsum*, *præficio*; (d) *superiority*; as, *præsto*; (e) *before* in time; as, *prædico*, *præcerpo*; at the extremity; as, *præduro*.—With adjectives, (a) *before* in place or time; as, *præceps*, *præscius*; (b) *very*; as, *præaltus*, *præclarus*.

16. *Præter*, past, by, beyond, besides.

17. *Prō*, before, forward, forth, away, down; for; openly; as, *prōludo*, *porrigo*, *prōterreo*, *prōtero*, *prōcuro*, *prōfiteor*.

18. *Rē*, again, against, back, re-, un-, away; greatly; as, *rēfloreſco*, *rēpendo*, *rēfērio*, *rēfigo*, *rēcondo*.

19. *Sē*, without, aside, apart; as, *sēcuro*, *sēpōno*, *sēcēdo*, *sēcūrus*.

20. *Sūb*, up, from below upwards, under. With verbs *sūb* also signifies (a) *assistance*; as, *subvenio*; (b) *succession*; as, *succino*; (c) *in place of*; as, *sufficio*; (d) *near*; as, *subsum*; (e) *secretly, clandestinely*; as, *surrupio*, *subduco*; (f) *somewhat, a little*; as, *subrideo*, *sūbaccūso*.—With adjectives it signifies, *slightly, rather*; as, *sūboscūrus*, *sūbabsurdus*, *sūbācidus*.

21. *Subter*, beneath, under, from under, secretly, privately.

22. *Sūper*, above, over, left over, remaining, super-; as, *sūpersēdeo*, *sūpernum*, *sūperstes*, *sūpervacāneus*.

23. *Trans*, over, across, through; beyond; as, *trādo*, *transeo*, *transfigo*, *transalpinus*.

24. *Vē*, not, without; very; as, *vēgrandis*, *vēcors*; *vēpallidus*.

REMARK. In composition the preposition seems often to add nothing to the signification of the word with which it is compounded.

## CONJUNCTIONS.

§ 198. A conjunction is a particle which connects words or propositions.

The most usual conjunctions are,

atque, } and, as; than.

ac,

ac si, as if.

adeo, so that, so.

an, } whether.

anne, }

annon, whether or not.

antequam, before.

at, ast, but.

at enim, but indeed.

atqui, but.

attamen, but yet.

aut, either, or.

aut...aut, either...or.

autem, but.

ceterum, but, however.

ceu, as, like as, as if.

cum or quum, since.

donec, as long as, until.

dum, provided, while, as

long as, until.

dummodo, if but, if only.

enimvero, in very deed.

enim, } for.

etenim, }

eū, therefore.

equidem, indeed.

ergo, therefore.

et, and.

et...et, } both...and;

et...quē, } as well...as.

et...neque or nec, on the  
one hand, but not on the  
other.

etiam, also.

etiamsi, } although,

etsi, } though.

iccirco, } therefore.

ideo, }

igitur, }

itaque, }

licet, though, although.

modo, provided.

nam, namque, for.

nē, lest, that not.

-nē, whether.

neque or nec, neither, nor.

neque...neque, }

nec...nec, } neither,

neque...nec, } ...nor.

nec...neque, }

necne, or not.

neque, neither, nor.

neque or nec...et, } not

neque or nec...quē, } on

the one hand, but on the

other.

neve or neu, nor, and not.

neve...neve, } neither...

neu...neu, } nor.

ni, nisi, unless.

num, whether.

prout, in comparison with.

prout, according as, just

as, as.

proinde, hence, therefore.

propterea, therefore, for

that reason.

postquam, after, since.

priusquam, before.

quam, as, than.

quamvis, although.

quando, quandoquidem,

whereas, since.

quamquam, although.

quapropter, }

quare, } wherefore.

quamobrem, }

quocirca, }

quantumvis, } although,

quamlibet, } however.

quasi, as if, just as.

-quē, and.

-quē...et, } both...and;

-quē...quē, } as well...as.

quia, because.

quā, but that, that not.

quippe, because.

quō, in order that.

quoad, as long as, until.

quod, because, but.

quodsi, but if.

quominus, that not.

quoniam, since, because.

quodquē, also.

quum or cum, when, since,

because.

quum...tum, both...and.

sed, but.

sicut, } so as, just as, as.

sicuti, }

si, if.

si modo, if only.

simul, }

simulac (-atque) } as.

sin, but if, if however.

sive or seu, or if.

sive...sive, } whether...or.

seu...seu, }

siquidem, if indeed, since.

tamen, however, still.

tametsi, although.

tamquam, as if.

tum...tum, both...and.

unde, whence.

ut, } that, as that, so that,

ut, } to the end that.

ut si, as if.

utrum, whether.

-vē, } either, or.

vēl, }

vēl...vēl, either...or.

vēlūt, } even as, just as,

vēlūtī, } like as.

vero, truly, but indeed.

verum, but.

veruntamen, yet, notwith-

standing.

verum-enim vero, but in-

deed.

Conjunctions, according to their different uses, are divided into two general classes,—coördinate and subordinate.

1. Coördinate conjunctions, are such as join coördinate or similar constructions; as,

*Luna et stellæ fulgebant.* The moon and the stars were shining. *Conclūdunt venti, fugiuntque nubes.* The winds subside, and the clouds disperse. *Difficile est, sed conabor tamen.* It is difficult to accomplish, but still I will try.

Coördinate conjunctions include the following subdivisions, viz. *copulative disjunctive, adversative, illative*, and most of the *causal* conjunctions.

✱ II. Subordinate conjunctions are such as join dissimilar constructions; as,

Edo, *ut vivam*, I eat that I may live. Pyrrhus rex in itinere incidit in canem, *qui interfecti hominis corpus custodiebat*. Mergi pullos in aquam jussit, *ut bibèrent*, quoniam esse nollent.

Subordinate conjunctions include all those connectives which unite subordinate or dependent clauses. These are the *concessive, illative, final, conditional, interrogative*, and *temporal* conjunctions, and the *causals quod, quum, quoniam*, etc. To these may be added also the relatives whether pronouns, adjectives, or adverbs.

The following paragraphs contain a specification of the several conjunctions comprised in each of the preceding subdivisions, and remarks respecting their particular import and use as connectives:

1. **COPULATIVE** conjunctions connect things that are to be considered jointly; as, *et, ac, atque*, the enclitic *que*, which, combined with the negation belonging to the verb, becomes *nèque* or *nec*, and, the negation being doubled, *nec non* or *nèque non*, it becomes again affirmative and equivalent to *et*. To these are to be added *etiam* and *quodque*, with the adverbials *item* and *etidem*.

REMARK. (a.) *Et* and *que* differ in this, *et* connects things which are conceived as different, and *que* adds what belongs to, or naturally flows from them. *Et*, therefore, is copulative and *que* adjunctive. Hence, in an enumeration of words, *que* frequently connects the last of the series, and by its means the preceding idea is extended without the addition of any thing which is generically different. In connecting propositions *que* denotes a consequence, and is equivalent to 'and therefore.'

(b.) *Ac* never stands before vowels, *atque* chiefly before vowels, but also before consonants.—*Atque*, being formed of *ad* and *que*, properly signifies 'and also,' 'and in addition,' thus putting things on an equality, but giving emphasis to the latter. In the beginning of a proposition, which is explanatory of that which precedes, *atque* or *ac* introduces a thing with great weight, and may be rendered 'now'; and in answers; as, *Cognoscite hos versus? Ac memoriter*, it is rendered 'yes, and that.' *Ac* being an abridged form of *atque* loses somewhat of its power in connecting single words, and its use alternates with that of *et*; it is preferred in subdivisions, whereas the main propositions are connected by *et*.

(c.) *Nèque*, compounded of the ancient *nè* for *nōn* and *que*, is used for *et nōn*. *Et nōn* itself is used, when only one idea or one word of a proposition is to be negated; as, *patior et non moleste fero*; and also when our 'and not' is used for 'and not rather' to correct an improper supposition; as, *Si quam Rubrius injuriam suo nomine ac non impulsu tuo fecisset*. Cic. *Et nōn* is commonly found also in the second clause of a sentence when *et* precedes, but *nèque*, also, is often used in this case. *Nec nōn* or *nèque nōn*, in classical prose, is not used like *et* to connect nouns, but only to join propositions, and the two words are separated. In later writers, however, they are not separated and are equivalent to *et*.

(d.) *Etiam* has a wider extent than *quodque*, for it contains the idea of our even, and it also adds a new circumstance, whereas *quodque* denotes the addition of a thing of a similar kind. Hence *etiam* is properly used to connect sentences, while *quodque* refers to a single word. *Etiam* signifies 'and further,' *quodque*, 'and so,' 'also.' *Quodque* always follows the word to which it refers, *etiam* in similar cases is usually placed before it, but when it connects propositions its place is arbitrary. *Et*, too, in classical prose, is sometimes used in the sense of 'also.' So often is *nōn modo—sed et*, 'not only—but also,' or 'but even.'

(c.) Copulative conjunctions are often repeated in the sense of 'both—and,' 'as well—as,' 'not only—but also.' *Et—et* is of common occurrence; so, in later writers, but rarely in Cicero, *et—quē*; *quē—et* connect single words, but not in Cicero; *quē—quē*, occur for the most part only in poetry, or in connection with the relative.—Negative propositions are connected in English by 'neither—nor,' and in Latin by *nēquē—nēquē*, *nēc—nēc*, *nēquē—nēc*, and rarely by *nēc—nēquē*. Propositions, one of which is negative and the other affirmative 'on the one hand—but not on the other,' or, 'not on the one hand—but on the other,' are connected by *et—nēquē* or *nēc*, *nēquē* or *nēc—et*, and occasionally by *nēc* or *nēquē—quē*.

2. DISJUNCTIVE conjunctions connect things that are to be considered separately; as, *aut*, *vēl*, the enclitic *vē*, and *sivē* or *seu*.

REMARK. (a.) *Aut* and *vēl* differ in this; *aut* indicates a difference of the object, *vēl*, a difference of expression, i. e. *aut* is objective, *vēl*, subjective. *Vēl* is connected with the verb *velle*, and is generally repeated, *vēl—vēl*, 'choose this or choose this,' and the single *vēl* is used by Cicero only to correct a preceding expression, and commonly combined with *dicam*, *pōtius*, or *etiam*.—Hence by ellipsis *vēl* has acquired the signification of the adverb, 'even,' and so enhances the signification of the word modified by it; as, *Quum Sophocles vel optime scripsit Electram*, where *bene* is to be supplied before *vēl*, and the latter is used for the purpose of correcting the preceding expression. Cf. § 127, 4. By means of its derivation from *velle* it has, also, the signification of 'for example' or 'to take a case,' for which *vēlūt* is more frequently used.—(b.) *Vē*, the apocopated *vēl*, leaves the choice free between two or more things, and in later but good prose *vēl* is used in the same manner.

(c.) *Sivē* commonly retains the meaning of *si*, and is then the same as *vēl si*, but sometimes loses it, and is then equivalent to *vēl*, denoting a difference of name; as, *Vocabulum sivē appellatio*. Quint. The form *seu* is rarely used by Cicero except in the combination *seu pōtius*.—(d.) *Aut* and *vē* serve to continue the negation in negative sentences, where we use 'nor'; as, *nōn—aut*, where *nōn—nēquē* also may be used. They are used also in negative questions; as, *Nun leges nostras moresvō nōviti?* Cic.; and after comparatives; as, *Doctrina paucō aspērior, quam veritas aut natūra patiātur*. Cic. It is only when both ideas are to be united into one that a copulative is used instead of *aut* and *vē*.—(e.) 'Either—or' is expressed in Latin by *aut—aut*, denoting an opposition between two things, one of which excludes the other, or by *vēl—vēl*, denoting that the opposition is immaterial in respect to the result, so that the one need not exclude the other; as, *Vēi imperatōre vel militē me utimini*. Sall.—*Sivē—sivē* is the same as *vēl si—vēl si*, and retains the meaning of *vēl—vēl*. If nouns only are opposed to each other, an uncertainty is expressed as to how a thing is to be called; as, *Crētum lēges, quas sive Jupiter sive Minos sanxit*; i. e. I do not know whether I am to say Jupiter or Minos.

3. COMPARATIVE conjunctions express a comparison. These are, *ūt* or *ūtī*, *sicūt*, *vēlūt*, *proūt*, *prout*, the poetical *ceu*, *quam*, *tamquam*, (with and without *si*), *quāsi*, *ūt si*, *ac si*, with *ac* and *atquē*, when they signify 'as.'

REMARK. *Ac* and *atquē* signify 'as' or 'than' after adverbs and adjectives which denote similarity or dissimilarity; as, *cogē, justā, par* and *pārītēr, pērindē* and *proindē, prō eō, similis* and *similiter, dissimilis, tālis, totidem, alius* and *aliū, contrā, sēcūs, contrārius*.—*Quam* is rarely used after these words, except when a negative particle is joined with *alius*; as, *Virtus nihil aliud est, quam*, etc.; and *et* and *quē* do not occur in this connection.—*Ac* is used for *quam*, after comparatives, in poetry and occasionally by late prose writers; as, *Artius atque hedera*. Hor. *Insānius ac si*. Id.

4. CONCESSIVE conjunctions express a concession, with the general signification 'although.' These are *etsi*, *etiāmsi*, *tāmsi*, or *tāmsēnetsi*, *quamquam*, *quāmvīs*, *quantumvis*, *quāmlibēt*, *licēt*, *ut* in the sense of 'even if' or 'although,' and *quum* when it signifies 'although.'

REMARK. *Tāmsēn* and other particles signifying 'yet,' 'still,' are the correlatives of the concessive conjunctions; as, *Ut desint vires, tāmsēn est laudanda*

*voluntas*. Ovid. The adverb *quidem* becomes a concessive conjunction, when it is used to connect propositions and is followed by *sed*.—*Quamquam* in absolute sentences, sometimes refers to something preceding, which it limits and partly nullifies; as, *Quamquam quid loquor?* Yet why do I speak?

5. **CONDITIONAL** conjunctions express a condition, their fundamental signification being 'if.' These are *si*, *sin*, *nisi* or *ni*, *si modo*, *dummodo*, 'if only,' 'if but,' (for which *dum* and *modo* are also used alone), *dummodo nē*, or simply *modo nē* or *dum nē*.

REMARK. (a.) In order to indicate the connection with a preceding proposition, the relative *quod*, which in such case loses its signification as a pronoun, and may be rendered, 'nay,' 'now,' 'and,' or 'then,' is frequently put before *si* and sometimes before *nisi* and *etsi*, so that *quodsi* may be regarded as one word, signifying 'now if,' 'but if,' or 'if then.' It serves especially to introduce something assumed as true, from which further inferences may be drawn. It sometimes signifies 'although.' *Quodnisi* signifies 'if then—not,' and *quodetsi*, 'nay, even if.' *Quod* is found also before *quum*, *ubi*, *quā*, *quoniam*, *nē*, *utnam*, and even before the relative pronoun.

(b.) *Ni* and *nisi* limit a statement by introducing an exception, and thus differ from *si nōn*, which introduces a negative case. It is often immaterial whether *nisi* or *si nōn* is used, but the difference is still essential. *Si nōn* is used when single words are opposed to one another, and in this case *si minus* may be used instead of *si nōn*.—If after an affirmative proposition its negative opposite is added without a verb, our 'but if not' is commonly expressed in prose by *si minus* or *sin minus* or *sin aliter*; as, *Educ tecum etiam omnes tuos*; *si minus*, *quam plurimos*. Cic.; rarely by *si nōn*.

6. **ILLATIVE** conjunctions express an inference or conclusion, with the general signification of 'therefore,' 'consequently.' These are *ergo*, *igitur*, *itāquē*, *ed*, *ideo*, *iccirco*, *proindē*, *propterea*, and the relative conjunctions, *quapropter*, *quārē*, *quamobrem*, *quodcirca*, *undē*, 'wherefore.'

REMARK. *Ergo* and *igitur* denote a logical inference.—*Itāquē*, 'and thus,' expresses the relation of cause in facts.—*Ideo*, *iccirco*, and *propterea*, 'on this account,' express the agreement between intention and action.—*Ed*, 'on this account,' or 'for this purpose,' is more frequently an adverb of place.—*Proindē*, 'consequently,' implies an exhortation.—*Undē*, 'whence,' is properly an adverb of place.—*Adeo*, 'so that,' or simply 'so,' is also properly an adverb. *Hinc*, 'hence,' and *indē*, 'thence,' continue to be adverbs.

7. **CAUSAL** conjunctions express a cause or reason, with the general signification of 'for' and 'because.' These are *nam*, *namquē*, *enim*, *etēnim*, *quā*, *quod*, *quoniam*, *quippe*, *quum*, *quando*, *quandōquidem*, *siquidem*; and the adverbs *nimirum*, *nempē*, *scilicet*, and *videlicet*.

REMARK. (a.) *Nam* is used at the beginning of a proposition, *enim*, after the first or second word. *Nam* introduces an objective reason, and *enim* merely a subjective one. There is the same difference between *namquē* and *etēnim*. *Namquē*, however, though constantly standing at the beginning of a proposition in Cicero, Cæsar, and Nepos, is in later writers often put after the beginning. *Enim* in the sense of *at enim* or *sed enim* is sometimes, by comic writers, put at the beginning of a proposition.—*Nam*, *enim*, and *etēnim* are often used in the sense of 'namely,' or 'to wit,' to introduce an explanation of something going before. *Nimirum*, *videlicet*, and *scilicet* likewise answer to our 'namely' or 'viz.' *Nimirum*, compounded of *ni* and *nirum*, and signifying 'a wonder if not,' is used as a connective in the sense of 'undoubtedly' or 'surely,' and implies strong confidence in the truth of the proposition with which it is connected.—*Videlicet* and *scilicet* introduce an explanation, with this difference that *videlicet* generally indicates the true, and *scilicet* a wrong explanation. Sometimes, however, *nam*, *enim*, *etēnim*, *nimirum*, and *videlicet* are used in an ironical sense, and *scilicet* introduces a true reason.—*Nempē*, 'scarcely,' often assumes a sarcastic meaning when another person's concession is taken for the purpose of refuting him.—(b.) *Quā* and *quod* indicate a defini-



nite and conclusive reason, *quoniam*, (i. e. *quum jam*), a motive.—*Ideo*, *idcirco*, *propterea quod*, and *quid*, are used without any essential difference, except that *quid* introduces a more strict and logical reason, whereas *quoniam*, signifying 'now as,' introduces important circumstances.—*Quinto*, *quandoguidem*, and *siquidem* approach nearer to *quoniam* than to *quid*, as they introduce only subjective reasons. *Quandoguidem* denotes a reason implied in a circumstance previously mentioned; *siquidem*, a reason implied in a concession. In *siquidem* the meaning of *si* is generally dropped, but it sometimes remains, and then *si* and *quidem* should be written as separate words; as, *O fortunatam rempublicam, si quidem hanc sententiam eiecérít*. Cic.—*Quippe*, with the relative pronoun or with *quum*, introduces a subjective reason. When used elliptically without a verb it signifies 'forsooth' or 'indeed.' Sometimes it is followed by a sentence with *enim*, and in this way gradually acquires the signification of *nam*.

8. FINAL conjunctions express a purpose, object, or result, with the signification of 'in order that,' or 'in order that not.' These are *ut* or *utí*, *quò*, *nè* or *ut nè*, *nēve* or *neu*, *quin* and *quominus*.

REMARK. *Ut*, as a conjunction, indicates either a result or a purpose, 'so that,' and 'in order that.' When indicating a result, if a negative is added to it, it becomes *ut nōn*; when indicating a purpose, if the negative is added, it becomes *nè* or *ut nè*, but *ut nōn* also is very rarely used for *nè*.—*Nēve* (i. e. *vēl nè*) signifies either 'or in order that not,' or 'and in order that not.' *Ut nè* is a pleonasm, not differing perceptibly from *nè*. It is used more frequently by Cicero than by other writers. *Quò nè* for *nè* occurs once in Horace.

9. ADVERSATIVE conjunctions, express opposition, with the signification of 'but.' These are *sēd*, *autem*, *vērūm*, *vēro*, *at* (poetical *ast*), *at enim*, *atqui*, *tāmen*, *attāmen*, *sedtāmen*, *vēruntāmen*, *at vērō*, (*enimvērō*), *vērūmēnim*, *vērūm*, *vērō*, *cēterūm*.

REMARK. (a.) *Sēd* denotes a direct opposition; and interrupts the narrative or argument; *autem* marks a transition, and denotes at once a connection and an opposition. *Porro*, 'further,' denotes progression and transition but not opposition, except in later authors.—*Vērūm* has a similar relation to *vērō* as *sēd* to *autem*. *Vērūm*, while it denotes opposition, contains also an explanation. *Vērō* connects things which are different, but denotes the point in favor of which the decision should be. It thus forms the transition to something more important, as in the phrase, *Illud vērō plane non est ferendum*, i. e. that which I am about to mention. In affirmative answers *vērō* is often added to the verb; as, *Dasne? Do vērō*. Hence, when the protasis supplies the place of a question, it is sometimes introduced into the apodosis merely to show that it contains an answer. Hence also *vērō* alone signifies 'yes,' like *sānē*, *itā*, and *etiam*.—*Enimvērō*, 'yes, truly,' 'in truth,' does not denote opposition. It sometimes, like *vērō*, forms the transition to that which is most important. The compound *vērūm enimvērō* denotes the most emphatic opposition.

(b.) *At* denotes that that which is opposed is equivalent to that which precedes. It frequently follows *si*, in the sense of 'yet,' or 'at least'; as, *etsi non sapientissimus, at amicissimus*. It is especially used to denote objections whether of the speaker himself or of others. *At enim* introduces a reason for the objection implied in *at*.—By *atqui*, 'but still,' 'but yet,' or 'nevertheless,' we admit what precedes, but oppose something else to it; as, *Magnum narros, vix credibile. Atqui sic habet*. Hor. So, also, when that which is admitted, is made use of to prove the contrary. Finally, *atqui* is used in syllogisms, when a thing is assumed which had before been left undecided; in this case it does not denote a direct opposition of facts, and may be translated by 'now,' 'but,' 'but now.'—*Cēterūm*, properly 'as for the rest,' is often used by later writers for *sēd*.—*Contra ea*, in the sense of 'on the other hand,' is used as a conjunction. So *adeo* with a pronoun, when it may be translated 'just,' 'precisely,' 'even,' 'indeed,' or an intensive 'and.'

10. TEMPORAL conjunctions, express time. These are *quum*, *quum primum*, *ut*, *ut primum*, *ubi*, *postquam*, *antēquam*, and *priusquam*, *quando*, *simulac* or *simulatque*, or *simul* alone, *cum*, *usque dum*, *dōnec*, *quoad*.

REMARK. *U* and *ubi*, as particles of time, signify 'when.' *Dum*, *dōnēc*, and *quōd* signify either 'as long as,' or 'until.' *Dum* often precedes *intēdē* or *intērim*, and both *dum* and *dōnēc* are often preceded by the adverbs *usquē*, *usquē* *ēō* or *usquē* *ādeo*.

11. INTERROGATIVE conjunctions indicate a question. These are, *num*, *utrum*, *an*, and the enclitic *nē*. This, when attached to the three preceding particles, forming *numnē*, *utrumnē*, and *annē*, does not affect their meaning. With *nōn* it forms a special interrogative particle *nonnē*. To these add *ec* and *en*, as they appear in *ecquis*, *ecquando*, and *enumquam*, and *numquid* and *ecquid*, when used simply as interrogative particles.

REMARK. (a.) The interrogative particles have no distinct meaning by themselves in direct questions, but only serve to give to a proposition the form of a question. In direct speech the interrogative particles are sometimes omitted, but in indirect questions they are indispensable, except in the case of a double question, where the first particle is sometimes omitted.—*Ecquid* and *numquid*, as interrogative particles, have the meaning of *num*, *quid* in this case having no meaning, but they must be carefully distinguished from the interrogative pronouns *ecquid* and *numquid*. *En*, or when followed by a *q*, *ec* is, like *num*, *nē*, and *an*, an interrogative particle, but is always prefixed to some other interrogative word.

(b.) In direct questions, *num* and its compounds *numnē*, *numnam*, *numquid*, *numquidnam*, and the compounds with *en* or *ec* suppose that the answer will be 'no'; as, *Num putas me tam dementem fuisse?* But *ecquid* is sometimes used in an affirmative sense. In general the negative sense of these particles does not appear in indirect questions.

(c.) *Nē* properly denotes simply a question, but it is used sometimes affirmatively and sometimes negatively. When *nē* is attached, not to the principal verb but to some other word, a negative sense is produced; as, *mene istud potuisse facere putas?* Do you believe that I would have done that? The answer expected is 'no.' When attached to the principal verb *nē* often gives the affirmative meaning, and the answer expected is 'yes.'—*Nonnē* is the sign of an affirmative question; as, *Canis nonne lupo similis est?*—*Utrum*, in accordance with its derivation from *iter*, which of two, is used only in double questions whether consisting of two or more. It is sometimes accompanied by *nē*, which is usually separated from it by one or more words; as, *Utrum, taceanne an praedicem?* In later writers, however, *utrumnē* is united into one word. *Nē* is rarely appended to interrogative adjectives, but examples of such use are sometimes found in poetry; as, *uternē*; *quōnē malo*; *quantanē*. In a few passages it is even attached to the relative pronoun.

(d.) *An* is not used as a sign of an indirect question before the silver age; when so used it answers to 'whether.' It is used by Cicero exclusively in a second or opposite question, where we use 'or'; as, *Si sitis, nihil interest utrum aqua sit, an vinum; nec refert, utrum sit aureum poculum, an vitreum, an manus concava*. Sen. In direct interrogations, when no interrogative clause precedes, *an*, *annē*, *an vērō* are likewise used in the sense of 'or,' that is in such a manner that a preceding interrogation is supplied by the mind; as, *Invitus te offendi, an putas me delectari laedendis hominibus?* Here we may supply before *an putas*, etc. the sentence, 'Do you believe this?'—*An*, after a preceding question, is rendered by 'not,' and it then indicates that the answer cannot be doubtful; as, *A rebus gerendis senectus abstrahit. Quibus? An his, quas geruntur juveniute ac viribus?* Is it not from those kinds of business, which? etc. Here we may suppose *aliisne* to be supplied before *an his*? Is it from other kinds of business, or from those? etc. Such questions may be introduced by *nonnē*, but without allusion to an opposite question, which is implied in *an*.

(e.) To the rule that *an*, in indirect questions, is used exclusively to indicate a second or opposite question, there is one great exception, for it is employed in single indirect questions after such expressions as *dubito*, *dubium est*, *incertum est*; *delibēro*, *hāsito*, and especially after *nescio* or *haud scio*, all of which denote uncertainty, but with an inclination to the affirmative; as, *Si per se citius sine*

*fortuna ponderanda sit dubito an hunc primum omnium ponam*, If virtue is to be estimated without reference to its success, I am not certain whether I should not prefer this man to all others. Nep. It is not Latin to say *dubito annon* for *dubito an*.—*Nescio an*, or *haud scio an* are used quite in the sense of 'perhaps,' so that they are followed by the negatives *nullus*, *nemo*, *numquam*, instead of *ullus*, *quisquam* and *umquam*. When the principal verb is omitted, *an* is often used in the sense of *aut*; as, *Themistocles, quum ei Simonides, an quis alius, artem memoriam polliceretur*, etc. In such cases *incertum est* is understood, and in Tacitus is often supplied.—The conjunction *si* is sometimes used in indirect interrogations instead of *num*, like the Greek *si*, and it is so used by Cicero after the verb *expetior*.

NOTE 1. The conjunctions *-ne*, *-que*, *-ve*, are not used alone, but are always affixed to some other word, and are hence called *enclitics*.

NOTE 2. Some words here classed with conjunctions are also used as adverbs, and many classed as adverbs are likewise conjunctions; that is, they at the same time qualify verbs, etc., and connect propositions; as, *Ceteris in rebus, quum venit calamitas, tum detrimentum accipitur*. In other concerns, when misfortune comes, then damage is received.

NOTE 3. Conjunctions, like adverbs, are variously compounded with other parts of speech, and with each other; as, *atque*, (i. e. *adque*), *iccirco* or *idcirco*, (i. e. *id-circa*), *ideo*, *namque*, etc. In some, compounded of an adverb and a conjunction, each of the simple words retains its meaning, and properly belongs to its own class; as, *etiam* (*et jam*) and now; *itaque*, and so; *neque* or *nec*, and not.

## INTERJECTIONS.

§ 199. An interjection is a particle used in exclamation, and expressing some emotion of the mind.

The most usual interjections are,

ah! ah! alas!  
 aha! aha! ah! haha!  
 apage! away! begone!  
 atāt! or atatte! oh! ah! alas! lo!  
 au! or han! oh! ah!  
 ecce! lo! see! behold!  
 ehem! ha! what!  
 ehē! ah! alas!  
 ehō! ehodum! ho! soho!  
 eiā! or heiā! ah! ah ha! indeed!  
 ēn! lo! see! behold!  
 eu! well done! bravo!  
 eugē! well done! good!  
 euax! } huzzah! hurrah!  
 euō! }  
 ha! hold! ho!  
 ha! ha! he! ha! ha!  
 hei! ah! wo! alas!

hem! oh! indeed! well! hah! alas! alack!  
 heu! oh! ah! alas!  
 heus! ho! ho there! hark! halloo!  
 hui! hah! ho! oh!  
 iō! ho! hurrah! huzzah!  
 ō! o! oh! ah!  
 ōh! oh! o! ah!  
 ōhē! ho! halloo! ho there!  
 ōho! oh! aha!  
 oi! hoy! alas!  
 pāpā! strange! wonderful!  
 phui! foh! fugh!  
 phy! pish! tush!  
 prō! or prōh! oh! ah!  
 st! hist! whist! hush!  
 tatæ! so! strange!  
 vā! ah! alas! woe!  
 vah! vaha! ah! alas! oh!

REMARK 1. An interjection sometimes denotes several different emotions. Thus *vah* is used to express wonder, grief, joy, and anger.

REM. 2. Other parts of speech may sometimes be regarded as interjections; as, *paz!* be still! So *indignum*, *infandum*, *mālum*, *miserum*, *miserabile*, *nefas*, when used as expressions of astonishment, grief, or horror; and *macte* and *macti*, as expressions of approbation. In like manner the adverbs *næ*, *profecto*, *cito*, *bene*, *belle*; the verbs *quæso*, *præcor*, *oro*, *obsecro*, *amābo*, *age*, *agite*, *cædo*, *audes*, (for *si audes*), *sis*, *vultis*, (for *si vis* and *si vultis*), *agēsīs*, *agēdum*, and *agite dum*, and the interrogative *quid?* what? used as exclamations.

REM. 3. With the interjections may also be classed the following invocations of the gods : *hercūles, hercūle, hercle* ; or *mehercūles, mehercūle, mehercle* ; *medius fidius, mecastor, ecastor, ectre, pol, edepol, equirine, per deum, per deum immortālem, per deos, per Jovem, prō (or prōh) Jūpter, prō dii immortāles, prō deum fidem, prō deum atque hominum fidem, prō deum immortālium* (scil. *fidem*), etc.

## SYNTAX.

† § 200. 1. Syntax treats of the construction of sentences.

2. A sentence is a thought expressed in words ; as, *Cānes latrant*, The dogs bark.

3. All sentences are either

(1.) DECLARATIVE ; as, *Venti spirant*, The winds blow :—

(2.) INTERROGATIVE ; as, *Spirantne venti?* Do the winds blow?—

(3.) EXCLAMATORY ; as, *Quam vehēmenter spirant venti!* How fiercely the winds blow!—OR

(4.) IMPERATIVE ; as, *Venti, spirāte*, Blow, winds.

4. The mood of the verb in the first three classes of sentences is either the indicative or the subjunctive ; in imperative sentences it is either the imperative or the subjunctive.

5. A sentence may consist either of one proposition or of two or more propositions connected together.

## PROPOSITIONS.

† § 201. 1. A proposition consists of a *subject* and a *predicate*.

2. The subject of a proposition is that of which something is affirmed.

3. The predicate is that which is affirmed of the subject.

Thus, in the proposition, *Equus currit*, The horse runs, *equus* is the subject and *currit* is the predicate.

NOTE. The word *affirm*, as here used, includes all the various significations of the verb, as expressed in the several moods.

4. Propositions are either *principal* or *subordinate*.

5. A principal proposition is one which makes complete sense by itself ; as,

*Phœcion fuit perpētuo pauper, quum ditissimus esse posset*, *Phœcion was always poor, though he might have been very rich.*

6. A subordinate proposition is one which, by means of a subordinate conjunction, is made to depend upon or limit some part of another proposition; as,

*Phœcion fuit perpetuo pauper, quum ditissimus esse posset*, Phœcion was always poor, though he might have been very rich.

7. Subordinate propositions are used either as *substantives*, *adjectives*, or *adverbs*, and are accordingly called *substantive*, *adjective* or *adverbial propositions* or *clauses*.

8. Substantive clauses are connected with the propositions on which they depend by means of the final conjunctions *ut*, *ne*, *quo*, *quin*, etc., sometimes by *quod*, and, in clauses containing an indirect question, by interrogative pronouns, adjectives, adverbs and conjunctions. See §§ 262 and 265.

REMARK. A dependent substantive clause often takes the form of the accusative with the infinitive, and in that case has no connective; as, *Gaudeo te valere*.

9. Adjective clauses are connected by means of relatives, both pronouns and pronominal adjectives; as, *qui*, *quâlis*, *quantus*, etc. Adverbial clauses are connected either by relative adverbs of place and time, (§ 191, R. 1, (b.)), or by temporal, conditional, concessive, comparative, and sometimes by causal conjunctions.

10. A sentence consisting of one proposition is called a *simple sentence*; as,

*Cadunt fôlia*, The leaves fall. *Semirâmis Bâbylônem condidit*.

11. A sentence consisting of a principal and one or more subordinate propositions is called a *complex sentence*; as,

*Qui fit, ut nemo contentus vivat?* How happens it, that no one lives content? *Quis ego sim, me rogitas*, You ask me, who I am.

12. A sentence consisting of two or more principal propositions, either alone or in connection with one or more subordinate propositions, is called a *compound sentence*; as,

*Spirant venti et cadunt fôlia*, The winds blow, and the leaves fall.

13. The propositions composing a complex or a compound sentence are called its *members* or *clauses*; the principal proposition is called the *leading clause*, its subject, the *leading subject*, and its verb, the *leading verb*.

## SUBJECT.

§ 202. 1. The subject also is either *simple*, *complex*, or *compound*.

2. The simple subject, which is also called the *grammatical subject*, is either a noun or some word standing for a noun; as,

*Aves volant*, Birds fly. *Tu lêgis*, Thou readest. *A est vocâlis*, A is a vowel. *Mentiri est turpe*, To lie is base.

3. The complex subject, called also the *logical subject*, consists of the simple subject with its modifications; as,

*Conscientia bene actæ vitæ est jucundissima*, The consciousness of a well spent life is very pleasant. Here *conscientia* is the grammatical, and *conscientia bene actæ vitæ* the complex, subject.

4. The compound subject consists of two or more simple or complex subjects to which a single predicate belongs; as,

*Luna et stellæ fulgebant.* The moon and stars were shining. *Grammaticæ ac mûsicæ junctas fuërant.* Grammar and music were united. *Semper hōnos nōmenque tuum laudesque manebunt.*

REMARK. Words are said to *modify* or *limit* other words, when they serve to explain, describe, define, enlarge, restrict, or otherwise qualify their meaning.

5. Every sentence must contain a subject and a predicate, called its *principal* or *essential* parts: any sentence may also receive additions to these, called its *subordinate* parts.

### *Complex or Modified Subject.*

6. The complex subject is formed by adding other words to the simple subject. All additions to the subject, like the subject itself, are either *simple*, *complex*, or *compound*.

I. *Simple additions.* The subject may be modified by adding:—

1. A *single word*:—

(1.) A noun in the same case; as,

*Nos consules dēsūmus.* We consuls are remiss. *Mucius augur multa narravit.* Mucius the augur related many things.

(2.) A noun or pronoun in an oblique case, modifying or limiting the subject; as,

*Amor multitudinis commōvêtur.* The love of the multitude is excited. *Cura mei.* Care for me. *Viribus usus.* Need of strength.

(3.) An adjective, adjective pronoun, or participle; as,

*Fugit invidia ætas.* Envious time flies. *Mea mātēr est bēnigna.* Dūcūt agmina Penhēsilæa fūrens. *Lit̄ra scripta manet.*

2. A *phrase* consisting of a preposition and its case; as,

*Sopor in grāmīne.* *Oppida sine præsīdio.* *Receptio ad te.*

3. A dependent adjective *clause* introduced by *qui*, *quālis*, *quantus*, etc.; as,

*Læve fit, quod bēne fertur, ōnus.* The burden, which is borne well, becomes light. *Lit̄ræ, quas scripsisti, acceptas sunt.* *Ut, quālis (ille) hābēri vellet, talis esset.* *Tanta est inter eos, quanta maxīma esse pōtest, mōrum distantia.*

II. *Complex additions.* The subject may be modified:—

1. By a *word* to which other words are added.

(1.) When the word to which other words are added is a noun or pronoun, it may be modified in any of the ways above mentioned.

(2.) When it is an adjective it may be modified:—

(a.) By an adverb either simple or modified; as,

*Erat expectatio valde magna.* *Præsidium non nimis firmum.*

(b.) By a noun in an oblique case; as,

*Major pietate,* Superior in piety. *Contentionis cupidus,* Fond of contention. *Patri similis,* Like his father. *Nudus membra.* *Juvenis patre digni.*

(c.) By an infinitive, a gerund, or a supine; as,

*Insuetus vinci*, Not accustomed to be conquered. *Vēnandi stūdēus*, Fond of hunting. *Mirābile dictu*, Wonderful to tell.

(d.) By a phrase consisting of a preposition and its case; as,

*Rudis in rēpublicā*, Unskilled in civil affairs. *Ab ēquiltātu firmus*. *Celer in pugnam*. *Pronus ad fidem*.

(e.) By a subordinate clause; as,

*Melior est certa pax*, quam spērāta victōria, A certain peace is better than an expected victory. *Dubius sum*, quid faciā.

(3.) When it is a participle, it may be modified like a verb. See § 203.

2. By a phrase consisting of a preposition and its case to which other words are added; as,

*De victōria Cæsaris fama perfertur*, A report concerning Cæsar's victory is brought.

REMARK 1. As the case following the preposition is that of a noun or pronoun, it may be modified like the subject in any of the foregoing ways.

REM. 2. The preposition itself may be modified by an adverb, or by a noun or adjective in an oblique case; as,

*Longe ultra*, Far beyond. *Multo ante noctem*, Long before night. *Sexennio post Vēios captos*, Six years after the capture of Veii.

3. By a subordinate clause, to whose subject or predicate other words are added.

REMARK. These additions may be of the same form as those added to the principal subject or predicate of the sentence.

III. Compound additions. The subject may be modified:—

1. By two or more nouns in the same case as the subject, connected by a coördinate conjunction; as,

*Consules, Brūtus et Collatinus*, The consuls, Brutus and Collatinus.

2. By two or more oblique cases of a noun or pronoun connected coördinately; as,

*Vitæque necisque potestas*. *Pēriculorum et librorum inclāmentum*.

3. By two or more adjectives, adjective pronouns, or participles, connected coördinately; as,

*Græve bellum perdiuturnumque*. *Animi tēnēri atque molles*.

4. By two or more adjective clauses connected coördinately; as,

*Et qui fecēre, et qui facta aliōrum scripsēre, multi laudantur*. Sall.

5. By two or more of the preceding modifications connected coördinately; as,

*Genus hominum agreste, sine legibus, sine imperio, liberum, atque solutum*.

REM. 1. A modified grammatical subject, considered as one complex idea, may itself be modified; as,

*Omnia tua consilia*, All thy counsels. Here *omnia* modifies, not *consilia*, but the complex idea expressed by *tua consilia*. So *Triginta naves longa*. *Præpōtens finitimus rex*.

REM. 2. An infinitive, with the words connected with it, may be the logical subject of a proposition ; as,

*Virtus est vitium fugere, To shun vice is a virtue.*

REM. 3. A clause, or any member consisting of two or more clauses, may be the logical subject of a proposition ; as,

*E celo descendit 'Nosce te ipsum.' Equum est, ut hoc facias.*

REM. 4. The noun or pronoun which is the subject of a proposition is put in the nominative, when the verb of the predicate is a finite verb ; but when the verb is in the infinitive, the subject is put in the accusative.

NOTE 1. A verb in any mood, except the infinitive, is called a *finite verb*.

NOTE 2. In the following pages, when the term *subject* or *predicate* is used alone, the grammatical subject or predicate is intended.

## PREDICATE.

§ 203. 1. The predicate, like the subject, is either *simple*, *complex*, or *compound*.

2. The simple predicate, which is also called the *grammatical* predicate, is either a single finite verb, or the copula *sum* with a noun, adjective, and rarely with an adverb ; as,

*Sol lucet, The sun shines. Multa animalia rēpunt, Many animals creep. Brevis est voluptas, Pleasure is brief. Eurōpa est pēninsula, Europe is a peninsula. Rectissime sunt apud te omnia.*

3. The complex predicate, called also the *logical* predicate, consists of the simple predicate with its modifications ; as,

*Scipio fudit Annibālis cōpias, Scipio routed the forces of Hannibal. Here fudit is the grammatical, and fudit Annibālis cōpias the logical predicate.—So, Rōmulus Rōmānzē conditor urbis fuit.*

4. The compound predicate consists of two or more simple or complex predicates belonging to the same subject ; as,

*Prōbitas laudātur et alget, Honesty is praised and neglected. Lēti vis rēpuit, rēpietque gentes. Lucius Cātīlina fuit magnā vi et animi et corpōris, sed ingenio malo pravōque.*

### Complex or Modified Predicate.

5. The complex predicate is formed by adding other words to the simple predicate. All additions to the predicate, like the predicate itself, are either simple, complex, or compound.

I. *Simple additions.* The predicate may be modified by adding:—

1. *A single word* ;—

(1.) A noun or adjective in the same case as the subject. This occurs after certain neuter verbs and passive verbs of naming, calling, etc. (See § 210, R. 3.) ; as,

*Servus fit libertinus, The slave becomes a freedman. Servius Tullius rex est declarātus. Aristides justus est appellātus. Incēdo regina.*

(2.) A noun or pronoun in an oblique case ; as,

*Spe vivimus, We live by hope. Deus rēgit mundum, God rules the world.*



(3.) An adverb either simple or modified; as,  
*Sæpe venit*, He came often. *Festina-lente*, Hasten slowly. *Litteræ facile discuntur*. *Chrêmes nimis graviter cruciatur adolescentulum*.

(4.) An infinitive mood; as,

*Cipit discere*, He desires to learn. *Audeo dicere*. *Ver esse cœperat*.

2. A phrase consisting of a preposition and its case; as, *Venit ad urbem*, He came to the city.

3. A dependent substantive or adverbial clause; as,

*Vereor ne reprehendar*, I fear that I shall be blamed. *Zênōnem*, quum Athēnis esset, *audiebam fręquenter*. *Fac cõgites*.

II. *Complex additions*. The predicate may be modified:—

1. By a word to which other words are added.

REMARK. These words are the same as in the corresponding cases of complex additions to the subject. See § 202, II.

2. By a phrase consisting of a preposition and its case, to which other words are added. See complex additions to the subject, § 202.

3. By a subordinate clause, to whose subject or predicate other words are added. See complex subject, § 202, II, 3.

REM. 2. Each of the words constituting a proposition may be modified by two or more additions not dependent on, nor connected with each other, and consisting either of single words, phrases, or dependent clauses; as, *Agamemnonis belli gloria*. *Paternum odium erga Rõmānos*. *Mens sibi conscia recti*. *Mea maxime interest, te valere*. *Ago tibi grãtias*. *Meipsum inertię condemnno*. *Eos hoc moneo*. In quo te *cõciso*. *Mõnet eum, ut suspiciõnes vitet*.

III. *Compound additions*. 1. The predicate may be modified by two or more words, phrases, or clauses, joined together by a coördinate conjunction. See Compound additions to the subject, § 202, III.

2. The leading verb is usually either in the indicative or imperative mood, but sometimes in the subjunctive or the historical infinitive.

3. The members of a compound sentence are connected by coördinate conjunctions; those of a complex sentence by some relative word, or by a subordinate conjunction.

4. Instead of a dependent clause connected by a conjunction, a noun and participle, or two nouns, sometimes stand as an abridged proposition; as,

*Bello confecto discessit*, i. e. *quum bellum confectum esset, discessit*, The war being finished, or when the war was finished, he departed. *Nil desperandum*, Teucro dũce.

5. An infinitive may be modified like the verb of a predicate.

6. *Agreement* is the correspondence of one word with another in gender, number, case, or person.

7. A word is said to govern another, when it requires it to be put in a certain case or mood.

8. A word is said to depend on another, when its case, gender, number, mood, tense, or person, is determined by that word.

9. A word is said to follow another, when it depends upon it in construction, whatever may be its position in the sentence.

## APPOSITION.

† § 204. A noun, annexed to another noun or to a pronoun, and denoting the same person or thing, is put in the same case; as,

*Urbs Rōma, The city Rome. Nos consules, We consuls. So Apud Herodotum, patrem historiarum, sunt innumerabiles fabulæ, In Herodotus, the father of history, etc. Cic. Lapides silices, flint stones. Liv. Ante me consulem, Before I was consul. Fons cui nomen Arethūsa est. Cic.*

REMARK 1. (a.) A noun, thus annexed to another, is said to be in *apposition* to it. It is generally added for the sake of explanation, identification, or description; sometimes it denotes character or purpose; as, *Ejus fugæ cœlitem me adjunxi*, I added myself, as a companion of his flight; and sometimes the time, cause, reason, etc., of an action; as, *Alexander puer, Alexander when a boy. Cito sēnex scribere historiam instituit. Suet.*

(b.) A noun in apposition, like an adjective used as an epithet, (§ 205, N. 2,) assumes the attribute denoted by it as belonging to the noun which it limits, while the predicate-nominative affirms it. Hence both nouns belong to the same part of the sentence, whether subject or predicate. In cases of apposition, there seems to be an ellipsis of the ancient participle *ens*, being; *qui est*, who is; *qui vocatur*, who is called; or the like.

REM. 2. If the annexed noun has a form of the same gender as the other noun, it takes that form; as, *Usus magister egrēgius. Plin. Philosophia magistra vitæ. Cic.* If the annexed noun is of the common gender, the adjective qualifying it takes the gender of the preceding noun; as, *Laurus fidissimæ custos.*

REM. 3. The annexed noun sometimes differs from the other in gender or in number; as, *Duo fulmina belli, Scipiadas, cladem Libyæ. Virg. Mitylenæ, urbs nobilis. Cic. Tulliola, deliciæ nostræ. Id.;—and sometimes in both; as, Næte, meæ vires. Virg. Nos, animæ viles, inhumata infletique turba. Id.*

REM. 4. The substantive pronoun is sometimes omitted before the word in apposition to it; as, *Consul dixi, scil. ego; (I) the consul said.* And instead of the substantive pronoun, a possessive adjective pronoun is sometimes used; as, *Tua domus, talis viri. Cic.* See § 211, R. 3, (b.)

REM. 5. A noun may be in apposition to two or more nouns, and, in such case, is usually put in the plural; as, *M. Antonius, C. Cassius, tribuni plebis, M. Antonius, C. Cassius, tribunes of the people. Cæs. Publius et Servius Sullæ, Servi filii. Sall. Tib. et Gaius Gracchi. Cic. Orationes L. et C. Aureliorum Orestarum. Id.* But sometimes in the singular; as, *Cn. et L. Domitius. Cic.*

(1.) So when the nouns are connected by *cum*, the annexed noun taking the case of the former; as, *Dicæarchum vëro cum Aristocæno, doctos sãne homines, omittamus. Cic.*

(2.) If the nouns are proper names of different genders, a masculine noun is annexed rather than a feminine, when both forms exist; as, *Ad Ptolemæum Cleopatramque rēges legati missi sunt. Liv.*

REM. 6. The annexed noun is sometimes in the genitive; as, *Urbem Patavī locavit, The city of Patavium. Virg. Plurimus Eridani amnis. Id. Arborem fici numquam vidērat. Cic. In oppido Antiochiæ. Id. Rupli et Persi par. Hor.*

REM. 7. The name of a town in the genitive occurs with an ablative in apposition to it; as, *Corinthis Achaia urbe; At Corinth, a city of Achaia. Tac. Antiochiæ, celebri urbe. Cic.* See § 221, Note, and § 254, Rem. 3.

REM. 8. (a.) A proper name, after *nomen* or *cognomen*, with a verb followed by a dative, is put in apposition either to *nomen*, etc., or to the dative, the latter by a species of attraction; as, *Fons, cui nomen Arethūsa est. Cic. Stirps virilis, cui Ascanium parentes dicere nomen. Liv. Nomen Arctūro est mihi, I have the*

name Arcturus. Plaut. *Cui nunc cognōmen Itō additur*. Virg. *Cui Egerio inditum nōmen*. Liv.—(b.) The name may also be put in the genitive; as, *Nōmen Mercūrii est mihi*. Plaut. *Q. Metellus, cui Macedonici nōmen inditum erat*. Vell. Cf. R. 6.—(c.) In *Illa atlas, cui fecimus Aurea nōmen*, Ov. Met. 15, 96, *Aurea* is used as an indeclinable noun, instead of *Auream* (scil. *atātem*); or *Aureæ*, dat. (scil. *atāti*.)

REM. 9. A clause may supply the place of one of the nouns; as, *Cogitet oratōrem institui—rem arduam*. Let him reflect that an orator is training—a difficult thing. Quint.—So also a neuter adjective used substantively; as, *Triste lūpus stabūlis*. The wolf, a sad thing to the folds. Virg. *Vārium et mutabile semper femina*. Id.

REM. 10. Sometimes the former noun denotes a whole, and its parts are expressed by nouns in apposition to it; as, *Onerāria, pars maxima ad Ægimūrum*,—*aliæ adversus urbem ipsam delātā sunt*. The ships of burden were carried, the greatest part, to Ægimurus,—others opposite to the city itself. Liv. *Pictōres et poetæ suum quisque opus a vulgo considerāri vult*. Cic. In the construction of the ablative absolute, *quisque* remains in the nominative, though the word to which it is in apposition is in the ablative; as, *Multis sibi quisque impērium petentibus*. Sall. J. 18. So also, in Liv. 26, 29, *quisque* remains in the nominative although the word to which it is in apposition is in the accusative with the infinitive.

To this rule may be subjoined that which relates to the agreement of interrogative and responsive words.

REM. 11. The principal noun or pronoun in the answer to a question, must be in the same case as the corresponding interrogative word; as,

*Quis hērus est tibi?* Amphitruo, scil. *est*. Who is your master? Amphitruo (is.) Plaut. *Quid quæris?* Librum, scil. *quæro*. What are you looking for? A book. *Quōtā hōrā venisti?* Sextā. At what hour did you come? At the sixth.

NOTE 1. Instead of the genitive of a substantive pronoun, the corresponding possessive pronoun is often used, agreeing with its noun; as, *Cūjus est liber?* Meus, (not *Mei*.) (See § 211, Rem. 3, (b.)) So *cūjum* for genitive *cūjus?* *Cūjum pēcus?* an *Melibœi?* Non; *vērūm Ægōnis*. Virg.

NOTE 2. Sometimes the rules of syntax require the responsive to be in a different case from that of the interrogative; as, *Quanti emisti?* *Viginti mīnis*. *Damnatus es furti?* *Imo alio crimine*. See §§ 214, R. 1, and 217, R. 2.

## ADJECTIVES.

§ 205. Adjectives, adjective pronouns, and participles, agree with their nouns, in gender, number, and case; as,

*Bōnus vir*, A good man.

*Benigna māter*, A kind mother.

*Triste bellum*, A sad war.

*Spe amissā*, Hope being lost.

*Bōnos viros*, Good men.

*Vānæ lēges*, Useless laws.

*Minācia verba*, Threatening words.

*Hæc res*, This thing.

So, *Mea māter est benigna*.

*Hæc lēges vānæ sunt*.

NOTE 1. Adjectives, according to their meaning, (§ 104), are divided into two classes—*qualifying* and *limiting*—the former denoting some *property* or *quality* of a noun; as, a *wise* man, lead is *heavy*; the latter *defining* or *restricting* its meaning; as, *this* man, *ten* cities. To the former class belong such adjectives as denote a property or quality, including all participles and participial adjectives; to the latter, the adjective pronouns, pronominal adjectives, and numerals.

NOTE 2. An adjective, participle, or pronoun, may either be used as an epithet to modify a noun, or, with the copula *sum*, may constitute a predicate. In the former case the quality is *assumed*, in the latter it is *asserted*. In both cases, the rule for their agreement is, in general, the same. See § 210, R. 1.

NOTE 3. Any word or combination of words added to a noun to modify or limit its meaning is of the nature of an adjective.

NOTE 4. In the following remarks, the word *adjective* is to be considered as including participles, either alone or combined with the auxiliary *sum*, and also adjective pronouns, unless the contrary is intimated.

REMARK 1. An adjective agrees also with a substantive pronoun, taking its gender from that of the noun for which the pronoun stands; as, *Ipse capellas æger ago*, scil. *ego*, *Melibeus*; Virg. *Fortunâte puer, tu nunc eris alter ab illo*. Id. *Ut se totum ei tradêret*. Nep. *O me miserum* (spoken by a man), *miseram me* (spoken by a woman). So *salvi sumus*, *salvæ sumus*, scil. *nos*, masculine or feminine.—In general propositions which include both sexes, the pronouns are considered masculine; as, *Nos fruges consumere nati*. Hor.

REM. 2. An adjective may belong to each of two or more nouns, and in such case is put in the plural. If the nouns are of the same gender, the adjective agrees with them in gender, as well as in number; as,

*Lupus et agnus siti compulsi*, A wolf and a lamb, constrained by thirst. Phæd. *Sicilia Saraniâque amissæ*. Liv.

When the nouns are of different genders,

(1.) If they denote living things, the adjective is masculine rather than feminine; as,

*Pater mihi et mater mortui sunt*, My father and mother are dead. Ter. So also *uterque* in the singular. *Procumbit uterque*, scil. *Deucalion et Pyrrha*. Ovid.

(2.) If they denote things without life, the adjective is generally neuter; as,

*His genus, ætas, eloquentia pròpe æquâlia fuêre*, Their family, age, and eloquence, were nearly equal. Sall. *Regna, impéria, nobilitates, honôres, divitiæ in casu sita sunt*. Cic. *Huc bella, rapinæ, discordia civilis, grâta fuêre*. Sall. *Anima atque animus, quamvis integra rêcens in corpus eunt*. Lucr.

NOTE. When nouns denoting things without life are of the same gender (either masculine or feminine), but of different numbers, the adjective is sometimes neuter; as, *Cræso et vita et patrimonii partes, et urbs Barce concessa sunt*. Just.; sometimes also when both nouns are in the singular number; as, *Plerosque velocitas et régio hostibus ignâra tutâta sunt*. Sall. *Nox atque præda remorâta sunt*. Id.

(3.) If one of the nouns denotes an animate, and another an inanimate thing, the adjective is sometimes neuter, and sometimes takes the gender of that which has life; as,

*Numidæ atque signa militaria obscurati sunt*, The Numidians and the military standards were concealed. Sall. *Romani regem regnumque Macedoniæ sua futura sciunt*. Liv. *Jâne; fac æternos pacem pacisque ministros*. Ovid.

EXC. to REM. 3. The adjective often agrees with the nearest noun, and is understood with the rest; as,

*Sociis et rege recepto*, Our companions and king having been recovered. Virg. *Agri omnes et maria*. Cic. *Cognitum est salutem, liberos, famam, fortunas esse carissimas*. Cic.

**NOTE.** A noun in the singular, followed by an ablative with *cum*, has sometimes a plural adjective, the gender being the same as if the nouns were connected by *et*; as, *Filiū cum filiō accitos*. Liv. *Iliū cum Lauso de Nūmītrō sāti*. Ovid. *Filiū Alexandri cum matrē in arcem custodiendos mittit*. Just.

**REM. 3. (1.)** An adjective qualifying a collective noun is often put in the plural, taking the gender of the individuals which the noun denotes; as,

*Pars certāre parāti*, A part, prepared to contend. Virg. *Pars per agros dilapsi. .... suam quisque spem exsēquentes*. Liv. *Supplex turba erant sine iudice tāti*. Ovid. This construction always occurs when the collective noun is the subject of a plural verb. See § 209, R. 11.

(2.) Sometimes, though rarely, an adjective in the singular takes the gender of the individuals; as, *Pars arduus alius pulvērulentus ēquis fārit*. Virg. *Pars āna dūcum—fractus morbo*. Ovid.

(3.) Sometimes other nouns, which only in a figurative sense denote human beings, have by *synēsis* an adjective of a different gender from their own, referring to the words which they include; as, *Lātium Cipudque agro mulctāti*, Latium and Capua were deprived of their land. Liv. *Cypria conjurātōnis virgis cāsi ac scāri percussi sunt*. Id. *Auzilia Irāti*. Id. So after *millia*; as, *Duo millia Tyrrīorum, crūctibus affixi*. Curt. Cf. § 823, 8, (4.)

**REM. 4.** Two adjectives in the singular are sometimes joined to a plural noun; as, *Māria Tyrrhēnum atque Adriaticum*, The Tuscan and Adriatic seas. Liv. *Cum legiōibus sēcundā et tertiā*. Liv. *Circa portas Collinam Esquilinamque*. Id. But sometimes the noun is in the singular; as, *Inter Esquilinam Collinamque portam*. Id. *Lēgio Martia et quarta*. In comic writers, an adjective or participle in the singular is sometimes used with a plural pronoun; as, *Nōbis prāsente*. Plaut. *Absente nōbis*. Ter.

**REM. 5.** A participle which should regularly agree with the subject of a proposition, when placed after the noun of the predicate, (a) sometimes takes the gender and number of the latter; as, *Non omnis error stultitia est dicenda*, Not every error is to be called folly. Cic. *Gens universa Vēndī appellāti*. Liv. (b.) Sometimes also it agrees with a noun following the subject and in apposition to it; as, *Orīnithum, patres vestri, tōtius Grāciæ lūmen*, extinctum esse vōluerunt. Cic.; or, (c) with the noun of a subordinate sentence; as, *Illorum urbem ut prōpugnāculū oppōsitū esse barbāris*. Nep.

**REM. 6.** When the subject of an infinitive is omitted after a dative of the same signification, (§ 239, R. 1,) an adjective in the predicate, belonging to that subject, is sometimes put in the dative; as, *Mīhi negligenti esse non licuit*, i. e. *me negligentem esse mihi non licuit*. Cic. *Da mihi justo sanctōque videri*. Hor. A noun is sometimes expressed with the adjective; as, *Vōbis nēcesse est fortibus esse viris*. Liv. But the adjective often agrees with the omitted subject; as, *Expēdit bonas esse vōbis*, scil. *vos*. Ter. *Si civi Rōmāno licet esse Gādītānum*. Cic.

**REM. 7. (1.)** An adjective is often used alone, especially in the plural, the noun, with which it agrees, being understood; as,

*Bōni sunt rārī*, scil. *hōmines*, Good (men) are rare. *Cesar suos misit*, scil. *milites*, Cæsar sent his (soldiers). *Dextra*, scil. *manus*, The right (hand). *Impletur pinguis fērīnæ*, scil. *carnis*. Virg. *Hiberna*, scil. *castra*. *Altum*, scil. *mare*. *Quartāna*, scil. *febris*. *Immortāles*, scil. *Dii*. Lucr. *Amantium*, scil. *hōmīnum*. Ter. *Illum indignantī similem, similemque minantī aspīcēs*, scil. *hōmīnī*. Virg. *Tibi primas dēfēro*, scil. *partes*. Cic. *Respice prætēritum*, scil. *tempus*, which is often omitted, as in *ex quo*, *ex eo*, and *ex illo*, scil. *tempore*. *Cognōn ex meōrum omnium litēris*, scil. *amicōrum*. Cic. So patrilial adjectives; as, *Missi ad Parthum Armēniūque legāt*, scil. *rēgem*. *In Tuscūlāno*, scil. *prædio*.

NOTE 1. The noun to be supplied with masculine adjectives is commonly *homines*, but when they are possessives, it is oftener *amici*, *milites*, *cives*, or *pro-pinqui*.

NOTE 2. The noun to be supplied is often contained in a preceding clause.

(2.) An adjective in the neuter gender, without a noun, is often used substantively, where, in English, the word *thing* or *things* is to be supplied; as,

*Bonum*, a good thing; *malum*, a bad thing, or, an evil. So *honestum*, *vetrum*, *turpe*; and in the plural, *bona*, *malia*, *turpia*, *levia*, *coelestia*, etc. *Labor omnia vincit*, Labor overcomes all things. Virg.

NOTE 1. The Latins generally preferred adding *res* to an adjective, to using its neuter as a substantive. But sometimes, when *res* is used, an adjective or pronoun referring to it is put in the neuter instead of the feminine; as, *Earum rerum utrumque*. Cic. *Humanarum rerum fortuna plerumque regit*. Sall. *Illud te rogo, sumptui ne parcas ulli in re, quod ad utilitatem opus sit*. Cic. *Omnium rerum mors est extremum*. Cic.

NOTE 2. Instead of *thing* or *things*, other words may sometimes be supplied, as the sense requires. With a preposition, neuter adjectives form adverbial phrases; as, *A primo*, At first. Plaut. *Per mutua*, Mutually. Virg. *In primis*, In the first place. *Ad hoc*, or *Ad haec*, Moreover, besides.

(3.) Adjectives used substantively often have other adjectives agreeing with them; as, *Alia omnia*, All other (things.) Plin. *Iniquissimi mei*, My greatest enemies. *Familiaris meus*. Cic. *Iniquus noster*. Id. *Iusta funebria*. Liv. *Jocis omnia plena*. scil. sunt. Virg.

REM. 8. (a.) Imperatives, infinitives, adverbs, clauses, and words considered merely as such, may be used substantively, and take a neuter adjective in the singular number; as, *Supremum vale dixit*, He pronounced a last farewell. Ovid. *Dulce et decorum est pro patria mori*. Hor. *Velle suum cuique est*. Pers. *Cras istud quando veni?* Mart. J. *Rebello actutum*. A. Id. *actutum diu est*. Plaut. *Excepto quod non simul esses, cetera latus*. Hor. (b.) In the poets and later prose writers the adjective, as in Greek, is sometimes in the neuter plural; as, *Ut Aeneas pelago jactetur*—nota tibi. Virg.

REM. 9. (a.) Adjectives and adjective pronouns, instead of agreeing with their nouns, are sometimes put in the neuter gender, with a partitive signification, and their nouns in the genitive; as, *Multum temporis*, for *multum tempus*; much time. Id. *rei*, for *ea res*; that thing. So, plus *eloquentiae*, the other form not being admissible with *plus*. (See § 110, (b).) Neuter adjectives are used in like manner in the plural; as, *Vana rerum*, for *vana res*. Hor. *Plerumque humanarum rerum*. Sall. Cf. § 212, R. 3, N. 4. But in some such examples, the adjective seems to be used substantively, according to Rem. 7, (2); as, *Acuta belli*. Hor. *Telluris aperta*. Virg. *Summa pectoris*.

NOTE. The adjectives thus used partitively in the singular, for the most part, signify quantity. See § 212, Rem. 3, Note 1.

REM. 10. A neuter adjective is sometimes used adverbially in the nominative or accusative, both singular and plural; as, *Dulce ridentem Liliagen amabo*, dulce loquentem. Hor. *Magnum stridens*. Virg. *Arma horrendum sonnere*. Id. *Multa deos venerati sunt*. Cic. *Hodie aut summum cras*. Id. See § 102, II. 4, (b.).

REM. 11. (a.) A noun is sometimes used as an adjective; as, *Nemo miles Romanus*, No Roman soldier. Liv. *Nemo fere adulescens*. Cic. *Vir nemo bonus*. Id. Cf. § 207, R. 31, (c.) *Tiberim accolis fluvii orbatum*. Tac. *Incola turba*. Ovid. The poets use in this manner the Greek patronymics in *as* and *is*; as, *Pelias hasta*. Ovid. *Laurus Parnasis*. Id. *Ursa Libystis*. Virg. Cf. also § 129, 8.

(b.) An adverb is also sometimes used as an adjective; as, *Neque enim ignari sumus ante malorum*; i. e. antiquorum or praeteritorum. Virg. *Nunc hominum mores*. Plaut.

REM. 12. (a.) An adjective or adjective pronoun, used partitively, stands alone, and commonly takes the gender of the genitive plural, which depends upon it; but when it is preceded by a noun of a different gender, to which it refers, it usually takes that gender, but sometimes that of the genitive; as, *Elephanto belluorum nulla est prudentior*, No beast is wiser than the elephant. Cic. *Indus, qui est omnium fluminum maximus*. Cic. *Velocissimum omnium animalium est delphinus*. Plin. See § 212, Rem. 2.—(b.) So also with *de*, *ex*, *in*, *apud*, *inter*, etc., with the ablative or accusative instead of the partitive genitive. See § 212, R. 2, N. 4.

(c.) When a collective noun follows in the genitive singular, (§ 212, R. 2.) the adjective takes the gender of the individuals which compose it; as, *Vir fortissimus nostrae civitatis*, The bravest man of our state. Cic. *Maximus stirpis*. Liv.

REM. 13. (a.) When a possessive pronoun or adjective is used instead of the genitive of its primitive or of its corresponding noun (see § 211, R. 3, (b.) and (c.) and R. 4), an adjective agreeing with that genitive is sometimes joined with such possessive; as, *Solius meum peccatum corrigi non potest*, The fault of me alone cannot be corrected. Cic. *Noster duorum eventus*. Liv. *Tuum ipsius studium*. Cic. *Pugna Romana stabilis suo pondere incumbentium in hostem*. Liv.

(b.) Sometimes a noun in the genitive is expressed, in apposition to the substantive pronoun for which the possessive stands; as, *Pectus tuum, hominis simplicis*. Cic.

REM. 14. An adjective, properly belonging to the genitive, is sometimes made to agree with the noun on which the genitive depends, and *vice versa*; as, *Aedificationis tuae consilium for tuum*, Your design of building. Cic. *Accusantes violati hospitii fœdus, for violatum*. Liv. *Ad majora initia rerum ducentibus fatis, for majorem*. Id. *Iis nominibus civitatum, quibus ex civitatibus, etc., for earum civitatum*. Cæsar.

REM. 15. (a.) An adjective agreeing with a noun is sometimes used, instead of an adverb qualifying a verb, especially in poetry; as, *Ecce venit Telamon propèrus*, Lo, Telamon comes in haste. Ovid. *Læti pacem agitabamus, for læte*. Sall. *Ænêas se matutinus agebat, for mâne*. Virg. *Nec lupo gregibus nocturnus obambulat, i. e. by night*. Id.

(b.) So *nullus* is used for *non*; as, *Mèmini tàmetsi nullus moneas*, Though you do not suggest it. Ter. *Sextus ab armis nullus discedit*. Cic. *Prior, primus, princeps, propior, proximus, solus, unus, ultimus, multus, totus*, and some others, are used instead of their neuters, adverbially; as, *Priori Rêmo augurium venisse fertur*. Liv. *Hispania postrêma omnium provinciârum perdomita est*. Liv. *Scævola solos novem menses Asia præfuit*, Only nine months. Cic. *Unum hoc dico*, This only I say. Id. This is sometimes done, for want of an adverb of appropriate meaning; as, *Pronus cecidit*. Ovid. *Frequentes conveniant*. Sall.

(c.) In such expressions, *tu*, in the nominative, sometimes takes an adjective in the vocative, and *vice versa*; as, *Sic venias hodiernæ*. Tibull. *Salve, primus omnium pater patriæ appellâte*. Plin.

REM. 16. (a.) A noun is often qualified by two or more adjectives; and sometimes the complex idea, formed by a noun with one or more adjectives, is itself qualified by other adjectives, which agree in gender, etc. with the noun.

(b.) When several adjectives, each independently of the other, qualify a noun, if they precede it, they are almost always connected by one or more conjunctions; as, *Multâ et variâ et copiosâ oratione*. Cic. If they follow it, the conjunction is sometimes expressed, and sometimes omitted; as, *Vir altus et excellens*. Cic. *Actio, varia, vehemens, plena veritatis*. Id.

(c.) But when one of the adjectives qualifies the noun, and another the complex idea formed by the first with the noun, the conjunction is always omitted; as, *Periculosissimum civile bellum*, A most dangerous civil war. Cic. *Mulam domesticam disciplinam*. Id. So with three or more adjectives; *Externos multos claros viros nominarem*. Cic. Cf. § 202, III., R. 1.

REM. 17. The first part, last part, middle part, etc., of any place or time are generally expressed in Latin by the adjectives *primus*, *mēdius*, *ultimus*, *extrēmus*, *intimus*, *infimus*, *imus*, *summus*, *suprēmus*, *rēliquus*, and *cētera*; as,

*Mēdia nox*, The middle of the night. *Summa arbor*, The top of a tree. *Suprēmos montes*, The summits of the mountains. But these adjectives frequently occur without this signification; as, *Ab extrēmo complexu*, From the last embrace. Cic. *Infimo loco natus*, Of the lowest rank. Id.

REM. 18. The participle of the compound tenses of verbs, used impersonally in the passive voice, is neuter; as, *Ventum est*. Cic. *Itum est in viscera terra*. Ovid. *Scribendum est mihi*. See § 184, 2 and 8.

## RELATIVES.

§ 206. REM. 19. (a.) Relatives agree with their antecedents in gender, number, and person, but their case depends on the construction of the clause to which they belong; as,

*Puer qui legit*, The boy who reads. *Ædificium quod extruxit*, The house which he built. *Litteras quas dedi*, The letter which I gave. *Non sum quālis eram*, I am not such as I was. Hor. So *Deus cūjus mūnere vivimus*, cui nullus est similis, quem cōlumus, a quo facta sunt omnia, est æternus. *Addictus Herminippo, et ab hoc ductus est*. *Aquilo, quantus frangit ilices*. Hor.

NOTE 1. This rule includes all adjectives and adjective pronouns which relate to a noun in a preceding clause. Its more common application, however, is to the construction of the demonstrative pronouns and the relative *qui*.

NOTE 2. When a pronoun refers to the mere words of a sentence, it is said to be used *logically*. *Qui* and *is* are so used, and sometimes also *hic* and *ille*.

(b.) The relative may be considered as placed between two cases of the same noun, either expressed or understood, with the former of which it agrees in gender, number, and person, and with the latter in gender, number, and case.

(1.) Sometimes both nouns are expressed; as,

*Erant omnino duo itinēra, quibus itinērībus dōmo exte possent*, There were only two routes, by which routes they could leave home. Cæs. *Crūdēlissimū bello, quāle bellum nulla umquam barbāria gessit*. Cic. But it is most frequent with the word *dies*; as, *Fōre in armis certo die, qui dies futūrus erat*, etc. Cic. The repetition of the substantive is necessary, when, for any reason, it becomes doubtful to which of two or more preceding substantives the relative refers.

(2.) Usually the antecedent noun only is expressed; as,

*Animum rēge, qui, nisi pāret, impērat*, Govern your passions, which rule unless they obey. Hor. *Tantæ multitudinis, quantam cōpit urbs nostra, concursus est ad me factus*. Cic. *Quot cōpitum vivunt, totidem studiōrum millia*. Hor.

(3.) Sometimes the latter noun only is expressed, especially when the relative clause, as is frequently the case, precedes that of the antecedent; as,

*Quibus de rēbus ad me scripsisti, cōram vidēbitur*; scil. *de rēbus*, In regard to the things of which you wrote to me, we will consider when we meet. Cic. *In quem primum ēgressi sunt locum, Trōja vocātur*; scil. *locus*. Liv. *Quantā vi expēlunt, tantā dēfēcunt*. Quālesque visus eram vidisse viros, ex ordine tāles aspicio. Ovid.



(a.) The place of the antecedent is sometimes supplied by a demonstrative pronoun; as, *Ad quas res aptissimi erimus, in iis potissimum elaborabimus.* Cic. But the demonstrative is often omitted when its case is the same as that of the relative, and not unfrequently, also, when the cases are different. When the relative clause precedes that of the antecedent, *is* is expressed only for the sake of emphasis. Hence we find such sentences as, *Maximam ornamentum amicitiae tollit, qui ex ea tollit verecundiam.* Cic. *Terra quod accepit, numquam sine usura reddit.* Id.—The demonstrative adjectives and adverbs are in like manner often omitted before their corresponding relatives; *tālis* before *quālis*, *tantus* before *quantus*, *inde* before *unde*, *ibi* before *ubi*, etc.

(b.) Sometimes the latter noun only is expressed, even when the relative clause does not precede; as, *Quis non malarum quas amor cūras habet, hæc inter obliviscitur?* Hor.

(4.) Sometimes neither noun is expressed; this happens especially when the antecedent is designedly left indefinite, or when it is a substantive pronoun; as,

*Qui bene latus, bene vixit.* soil. *homo*, (He) who has well escaped notice, has lived well. Ovid. *Sunt quos curriculo pulverem Olympicum colligisse juvat,* soil. *hōmīnes*, There are whom it delights, i. e. Some delight. Hor. *Non habeo quod te accusem,* soil. *id propter quod.* Cic. *Non solum sapiens videris, qui hinc abis, sed etiam beatus,* soil. *tu.* Cic.

(5.) The relative is sometimes either entirely omitted; as, *Urbs antiqua fuit; Tyrii tenuere colōni,* soil. *quam* or *eam*, There was an ancient city (which) Tyrian colonists possessed, Virg.; or, if once expressed, is afterwards omitted, even when, if supplied, its case would be different; as, *Bocchus cum peditibus, quos filius ejus adduxerat, neque in priore pugna adfuērant, Rōmānos invadunt, for et qui non in priore,* etc. Sall.

(6.) (a.) The relative sometimes takes the case of the antecedent, instead of its own proper case; as, *Quum scribas et aliquid agas eorum, quorum consuesti,* for *quæ.* Cic. *Raptim quibus quisque poterat elatis, exibant,* for *uis, quæ quisque efferre poterat, elatis.* Liv.

(b.) The antecedent likewise sometimes takes the case of the relative, the substantive either preceding or following the pronoun; as, *Urbem quam statuo vestra est, for urbs.* Virg. *Eunuchum quem dedisti nobis, quas turbas dedit!* for *Eunuchus.* Ter. *Naucratem quem convenire volui, in navi non erat.* Plaut. *Atque alii, quorum comædia prisca virorum est,* for *atque alii viri, quorum est.* Hor. *Illi, scripta quibus comædia prisca viris est, for illi viri, quibus.* Id. *Quos pueros miseram, epistolam mihi attulerunt.* Cic.

These constructions are said to occur by attraction.

(7.) (a.) An adjective, which properly belongs to the antecedent, is sometimes placed in the relative clause, and agrees with the relative; as, *Inter jocos, quos inconditos jaciunt, for jocos inconditos, quos,* etc. Amidst the rude jests which they utter. Liv. *Verbis, quæ magna volant.* Virg. *Calbre, quem multum habet.* Cic.

(b.) This is the common position of the adjective, when it is a numeral, a comparative, or a superlative; as, *Nocte quam in terris ultimam egit,* The last night which he spent upon earth. *Esculāpius, qui primus vulnus obligavisse dicitur.* Cic. *Consilii parere, quæ nunc pulcherrima Nautæ dat senior,* Listen to the excellent advice, which, etc. Virg. Some instances occur in which an adjective belonging to the relative clause, is placed in that of the antecedent; as, *Quum venissent ad vada Volaterrana, quæ nominantur,* Which are called Volaterran. Cic.

(8.) When to the relative or demonstrative is joined a noun explanatory of its antecedent, but of a different gender or number, the relative or demonstrative usually agrees with that noun; as,

*Santonēs non longe a Tolosātium finibus absunt, quæ civitas est in provincia.* The Santones are not far distant from the borders of the Tolosates, which state is in the province. Cæs. *Ante comitia, quod tempus haud longe aberrat.* Sall. *Romæ sanum Diænæ pöpuli Lätini cum pöpulo Romano fecerunt:* ea erat confessio caput rerum Romanæ esse; i. e. that thing or that act. Liv. *Si omnia faciendū sunt, quæ amici velint, non amicitia tales, sed conjurationes putandas sunt;* i. e. such things or such connections. Cic. So, *Ista quidem vis,* Surely this is force. *Ea ipsa causa belli fuit,* for *id ipsum.* Hither also may be referred such explanatory sentences as, *Qui meus amor in te est,* Such is my love for you. Cic.

(9.) If the relative refers to one of two nouns, denoting the same object, but of different genders, it agrees with either; as,

*Flūmen est Arar quod in Rhodānum influit.* Cæs. *Ad flūmen Oxum perventum est, qui turbidus semper est.*

(10.) When, in a relative clause containing the verb *sum* or a verb of naming, esteeming, etc., a predicate-noun occurs of a different gender from the antecedent, the relative commonly agrees with the latter; but when the preceding noun is to be explained and distinguished from another, the relative agrees with the former; as,

*Nātura vultus quem dicere Chaos,* The appearance of nature which they called chaos. Ovid. *Genus hominum quod Helotes vocatur.* Nep. *Animal, quem vocamus hominem,* The animal whom we call man. Cic. *Locus in carcere,* quod Tullianum appellatur. Sall. *Pecuniarum conquisitio;* eos esse belli civilis nervos dictitans Mucianus. Tac.

(11.) The relative sometimes agrees with a noun, either equivalent in sense to the antecedent, or only implied in the preceding clause; as,

*Abundantia eorum rerum, quæ mortales prima putant,* An abundance of those things, which mortals esteem most important. Sall. Cf. § 206, R. 7, (2.) N. 1. But sometimes when a neuter adjective used substantively has preceded, *res* with a relative follows; as, *Permulta sunt, quæ dici possunt, quæ re intelligatur.* Cic. *Fatale monstrum,* quæ, etc., scil. *Cleopatra.* Hor. Cf. § 323, 3, (4.)

(a.) A relative or demonstrative pronoun, referring to a collective noun, or to a noun which only in a figurative sense denotes a human being, sometimes takes the gender and number of the individuals which the noun implies; as, *Equitatum, quos.* Sall. *Genus, qui premuntur.* Cic. *Senatus*—ii. Sall.

(b.) A pronoun in the plural often follows a noun in the singular, referring not only to the noun but to the class of persons or things to which it belongs; as, *Democritum omittamus; nihil est enim apud istos, quod,* etc. i. e. with Democritus and his followers. Cic. *Dionysius negavit se jure illo nigro quod cænes caput erat, delectatum.* Tum is, qui illa coxerat, etc. Id.

(12.) The antecedent is sometimes implied in a possessive pronoun; as, *Omnes laudare fortunas meas, qui natum tali ingenio prædium habere;* scil. *mei.* All were extolling my fortune, who, etc. Ter. *Id mea minime refert, qui sum natus maximus.* Id. *Nostrum consilium laudandum est, qui noluerim,* etc. Cic.; or in a possessive adjective; as, *Servili tumultu, quos,* etc. Cæs.

(13.) (a.) Sometimes the antecedent is a proposition; the relative then is commonly neuter; as, *Postremo, quod difficillimum inter mortales, gloriā invictam vicisti,* Finally, you have overcome envy with glory, which, among men, is most difficult. Sall. *Egredem expectabam jam tuas litteras, idque cum multis.* Cic.

(b.) In such instances, *id* is generally placed before the relative pronoun, referring to the idea in the antecedent clause; as, *Sive, id quod constat, Platonis studiosus audiendi fuit.* Cic. *Diem consilium volebant, id quod fecerunt.* Id.

(c.) Sometimes *is*, referring to a clause, agrees with a noun following; as, *Idem velle atque idem nolle, ea demum firma amicitia est.* Sall.

(14.) *Quod*, relating to a preceding statement, and serving the purpose of transition, is often placed at the beginning of a sentence after a period, where it may be translated by 'nay,' 'now,' or 'and.' It is thus used especially before *si*, *etsi*, and *nam*; as, *Quodsi illinc inanis profugisses, tamen ista tua fuga nefaria iudicaretur*, i. e. and even if you had fled without taking any thing with you, still, etc. Cic. Verr. 1, 14. *Quodsi*, 'if then,' is especially used in introducing something assumed as true, from which further inferences may be drawn. Sometimes also it is equivalent to 'although.' *Quodnisi* signifies 'if then—not'; as, *Quodnisi ego meo adventu illius conditus aliquantulum repressissem, tam multos*, etc. *Quodetsi* is 'nay, even if'; as, *Quodetsi ingenuis magnis praediti quidam dicendi copiam sine ratione consequuntur, ars tamen est duz certior*.—*Quod* is found also before *quum*, *ubi*, *quia*, *quoniam*, *ne* and *utinam*, where the conjunction alone would seem to be sufficient; as, *Quod utinam illum, cuius impio facinore in has miseras projectus sum, eadem hac simulantem videam*. Sall. It is so used even before a relative in Cic. Phil. 10, 4, *fin.*—*Quod*, in such examples, seems to be an accusative, with *propter* or *ad* understood.

(15.) (a.) A relative is always plural, when referring to two or more nouns in the singular. If the nouns are of different genders, the gender of the relative is determined by Rem. 2, page 185; as, *Ninus et Semiramis, qui Babilona condiderant*, *Ninus* and *Semiramis*, who had founded Babylon. Vell. *Crebro funati et libidine, quæ sibi sumpterat*. Cic. *Ex summa lætitiâ atque lasciviâ, quæ diuturna quies pepererat*. Sall. *Naves et captivos quæ ad Chium capta erant*. Liv.

(b.) If the antecedents are of different persons, the relative follows the first person rather than the second or third, and the second rather than the third; as, *Tu et pater, qui in convivio eratis*. *Ego et tu, qui eramus*. Cf. § 209, R. 12, (7.)

(16.) The relative adjectives *quod*, *quantus*, *quidlis*, are construed like the relative *qui*. They have generally, in the antecedent clause, the corresponding demonstrative words, *tot*, *tantus*, *talis*; but these are also often omitted. Frequently also the order of the clauses is reversed, so that the relative clause precedes the demonstrative.

(17.) *Qui*, at the beginning of a sentence, is often translated like a demonstrative; as, *Quæ quum ita sint*, Since these (things) are so. Cic.

(18.) The relative *qui* with *sum* and either a nominative or the ablative of quality, is used in explanatory clauses, instead of *pro*, 'in accordance with,' or 'according to'; thus, instead of *Tu, pro tuâ prudentiâ, quid optimum factus sit, videbis*. Cic., we may say, *quæ tua est prudentia, or, quâ prudentiâ es*. So, *Velis tantummôdo, quæ tua virtus, expugnabis*. Hor. *Quâ prudentiâ es, nihil te fugiet*. Cic.

(19.) A relative clause is sometimes used for the purpose of denoting by circumlocution the person of the agent in a definite but not permanent condition; as, *Is, qui audiunt, or qui adsunt*, i. e. the hearers, the persons present. So, also, a relative clause is used for the English expression 'above mentioned'; as, *Ex libris quos dixi or quos ante (supra) laudavi*; and the English 'so called,' or 'what is called,' is expressed by *quem, quam, quod vocant*, or by *qui, quæ, quod vocatur, dicitur*, etc.; as, *Nec Hermas hos, quos vocant, imponi (Athenis) licebat*. Cic. *Vestra, quæ dicitur, vita, mors est*. Id.

(20.) Relative and demonstrative adverbs (see § 191, R. 1), are frequently used instead of relative and demonstrative pronouns with prepositions; as, *Is, unde te audisse dicis*, i. e. *a quo*. Cic. *Divitiæ apud illos sunt, aut ubi illi volunt*, i. e. *apud quos*. Sall. *Huic ab adolescentiâ bella intestina, cades, rapinæ, discordiâ civilis, grâta fuere*, *Ibique juventutem exercuit*, i. e. *in iis*, in these things. Sall.

(21.) With *quam qui*-and the superlative after *tam* the verb of the relative clause is sometimes omitted; as, *Tam mihi grâtum id erit, quam quod grâtissimum*. Cic. *Tam enim sum amicus republicæ, quam qui maxime*. Id. *Tam sum mitis, quam qui lenissimus*. Id. So also with *ut qui* without *tam*; as, *Te semper sic colam et tuabor, ut quem diligentissime*. Id.

## DEMONSTRATIVES.

§ 207. REM. 20. The oblique cases of the personal pronoun of the third person (*him, her, etc.*) are commonly expressed in prose by the oblique cases of *is, ea, id*. *Hic* and *ille*, however, being more emphatic, take the place of *is, ea, id*, in lyric poetry, and occasionally in prose also, when particular emphasis is intended. The cases of *ipse, ipsa, ipsum*, also, are employed for this purpose, when the individuality of the person is to be distinctly expressed. In reflexive sentences, the oblique cases of the pronoun of the third person, are regularly supplied by *sui, sibi, se*; and it is only when the person of the leading subject is to be referred to with particular emphasis, that *ipse* is used instead of *sui*.

REM. 21. The demonstrative pronouns, *is* and *ille*, are sometimes used, especially with *quidem*, where a corresponding word in English is unnecessary; as, *Sapientiae studium vetus id quidem in nostris, sed tamen, etc.* Cic. *O hominem semper illum quidem mihi aptum, nunc vero etiam suavem.* Id. *Quem neque fides, neque iurandum, neque illum misericordia, repressit,* Whom neither fidelity, nor an oath, nor pity, has restrained. Ter. *Is* when used for the sake of emphasis seems sometimes in English to be superfluous; as, *Male se res habet, quum, quod virtute effici debet, id tentatur pecuniâ.* Cic.

REM. 22. *Sic, ita, id, hoc, illud*, are often used redundantly as a preliminary announcement of a subsequent proposition, and are added to the verb on which this proposition depends; as, *Sic a maioribus suis acceptèrant, tanta populi Romani esse beneficia, ut, etc.* Cic. *Te illud admoneo, ut quotidianè meditare, resistendum esse iracundiæ.* Id. *Hoc tibi persuadeas velim, me nihil omisisse,* I wish you to be persuaded of this—that I have omitted nothing. These pleonastic additions have generally no influence on the construction of propositions, but in a few instances they are followed by *ut*; as, *De cuius dicendi copiam sic acceptum, ut, etc.* Cic. *Ita enim definit, ut perturbatio sit, etc.* Id. In the phrase *hoc, illud, or id agere ut*, the pronoun is established by custom and is necessary. See § 273, 1, (a.)

REM. 23. (a.) *Hic* 'this' refers to what is near to the speaker either in place or time, *ille* 'that' to what is more remote. Hence *hic* sometimes refers to the speaker himself, and *hic homo* is then the same as *ego*. On this account *hic* is sometimes called the demonstrative of the first person. When reference is made to two things previously mentioned, *hic* commonly refers to the latter, *ille* to the former, and the pronouns are arranged in the same order, as the objects to which they relate; as, *Ignavia corpus hebètat, labor firmat; illa matûram senectutem, hic longam adulescentiam reddit,* Sloth enervates the body, labor strengthens it; the former produces premature old age, the latter protracted youth. Cels.

(b.) But the order is often reversed, so that *hic* refers to the object first mentioned, and *ille* to the one mentioned last; as, *Sic deus et virgo est; hic spe celer, illa timore.* Ovid. So when *alter...alter*, 'the one...the other,' refer to two things mentioned before, the previous order is sometimes observed and sometimes reversed; but wherever there is ambiguity the order is reversed, so that the first *alter* refers to the last object. Sometimes *hic...hic* are used instead of *hic...ille*. So *ille...ille* sometimes denote 'the one...the other.'

(c.) *Hic* and *ille* have the same relation to time present and past as *nunc* and *tunc*, see § 277; and hence whatever, in speaking of present time, is expressed by *hic* and its derivative adverbs, *hic, hinc, huc, and adhuc*, is expressed by *ille* and its derivatives, when it is spoken of as belonging to past time.

REM. 24. *Ille*, when not in opposition to *hic*, is often used to denote that which is of general notoriety; as, *Magno illi Alexandro similis, Very like Alexander the Great. Vell. Mæda illa, The celebrated Medea.* Cic. Hence *ille* is sometimes added to other pronouns, to refer to something discussed before; as, *Avèbant visere, quis ille tot per annos opes nostras sprevisset.* Tac. *Ille* is sometimes translated *this*; as, *Unum illud dico, This only I say.* Cic. *Ille*

sometimes marks a change of persons, and may then be translated 'the other'; as, *Vercingetōrix obviam Cæsari præfiscitur*. Ille (scil. Cæsar) oppidum Noviodunum oppugnare instituerat. Cæsar.

REM. 25. *Iste* properly refers to the person addressed, and for this reason is called the demonstrative of the second person.—*Ille* refers to the person spoken of, and is hence called the demonstrative of the third person. Thus *iste liber* is thy book, but *ille liber* is the book of which we are speaking. Hence, in letters, *hic* and its derivatives are used of the writer; *iste* and its derivatives of the person addressed; *ille*, etc., of some other person or thing. See § 191. R. 1. (c.) *Iste* from its frequent forensic use, and its application to the opponent, often denotes contempt.

REM. 26. (a.) *Is* does not, like *hic*, *ille*, and *iste*, denote the place or order of the object to which it relates, but either refers without particular emphasis to something already mentioned or to something which is to be defined by the relative *qui*. *Hic*, *is*, or *ille*, may be used in this way before the relative, but only *hic* or *is* after it; as, *Qui docet, is discit*, or *hic discit*, but not *ille discit*, unless some individual is referred to.

(b.) *Is* before a relative or *ut* has sometimes the sense of *talis*, such, denoting a class; as, *Næque enim tu es, qui quid sis nescias*. Nor are you such a person, as not to know what you are. Cic.; sometimes it has the force of *idem*; as, *vos*—Cic. Manil. 12.

(c.) If the noun to which *is* refers is to receive some additional predicate, we must use *et is*, *atque is*, *isque*, *et is quidem*, and with a negative *nec is*; as, *Vincula vèro, et ea sempiterna*, etc. Cic. *Unā in dōmo, et ea quidem angusta*, etc. Id. *Adolescentes aliquot, nec ii tēni loco orti*, etc. Liv. *Sed is* is used when the additional predicate is opposed to the preceding; as, *Sévritatem in sēctūte prōbo*, sed eam, sicut alia, modicam. Cic. The neuter *et id*, or *idque*, serves to introduce an addition to the preceding proposition; as, *Quamquam te, Marce fili, annum jam audientem Cratippum, idque Athēnis*, etc.

(d.) *Is* is not expressed when it would be in the same oblique case as the preceding noun to which it refers; as, *Pater amat liberos et tamen castigat. Mullos illustrat fortuna, dum vexat*.

(e.) When in English 'that' or 'those' is used instead of the repetition of the preceding substantive, *is* is never used in Latin, and *ille* only in later authors. In such cases the noun is commonly not repeated in Latin, and no pronoun is used in its place; as, *Philippus hostium manus sæpe viderat, suorum effugere non valuit*, those of his own subjects. Curt. Sometimes the substantive is repeated; as, *Judicia civitatis cum judiciis principis certant*. Vell. Sometimes a possessive adjective is used instead of the genitive depending on the omitted substantive; as, *Tērentii fabulas studiōse lēgo*, *Plantinis minus delector*: and sometimes instead of the genitive or a possessive adjective the name of the person itself is put in the case which the verb governs; as, *Si cum Lycurgo et Dracōne et Sōlone nostras lēges conferre volueritis*. Cic.—In Cicero *hic* and *ille*, when the preceding substantive is understood, retain their demonstrative signification, and therefore do not merely supply the place of the omitted substantive; as, *Nullam enim virtus aliam mercēdem desiderat, præter hanc*, i. e. the one of which I am speaking. Cic.

REM. 27. (a.) *Idem*, as denoting a subject which stands in equal relations to two different predicates, often supplies the place of *item* or *etiam*, 'also,' 'at the same time,' or of *tamen*, 'yet,' if the things are apparently inconsistent; as, *Musici, qui erant quondam iudem poetas*, Musicians, who formerly were poets also. Cic. *Euphrates et Tigris magno aquarum divortio iter percurrunt; iudem (and yet) paulatim in arctius cōeunt*.

(b.) *Et ipse*, on the other hand, denotes that the same predicate belongs to two subjects. It is rendered by 'too' or 'also'; as, *Antoninus Commodus nihil paterum habuit, nisi quod contra Germanos feliciter et ipse pugnavit*, for *item* or *ipse quoque*. Eutr.—So, also, *nec ipse* is used in the sense of 'neither'; as, *Primis repulsis Maharbal cum majore robore virorum missus nec ipse eruptionem cohortum sustinuit*. Liv.

(c.) *Idem* is sometimes repeated in the sense of 'at once,' denoting the union of qualities which might be thought incompatible; as, *Fuere quidam qui idem ornate idem versute dicere.* There have been some who could speak at once elegantly and artfully. Cic.

(d.) 'The same as' is variously expressed in Latin, by *idem* with *qui*, *ac* or *atque*, *quam*, *quidam*, *ut* or *cum*; as, *Verres idem est qui fuit semper*, Verres is the same as he has always been. Cic. *Vita est eadem ac fuit*. Liv. *Disputationem exponimus iisdem fere verbis ut actum est*. Cic. *Eandem constituit potestatem quam si*, etc. Cic. *Eodem loco res est, quasi ea pecunia legata non esset*. Id. *Hunc ego eodem mecum patre gentium*, etc. So also poetically with the dative; as, *Eadem aliis sospita quiete est*. Lucr. Cf. § 222, R. 7.

### IPSE, INTENSIVE OR ADJUNCTIVE.

REM. 28. (a.) *Ipse*, when used with a substantive pronoun taken reflexively, agrees either with such pronoun or with the subject of the proposition, according as either is emphatic; as, *Agam per me ipse*, I will do it myself. Cic. *Non ego medicinā (i. e. ut alii me consolerentur); ne ipse consolor*. Cic. *Accusando eum, a cuius crudelitāte vosmet ipsi armis vindicastis*. Liv.—Ch. *Pompeium omnibus, Lentulum mihi ipsi antepōno*. Cic. *Fac ut te ipsum custodias*. Id. *Deforme est de se ipsum pradicare*. Id.—But Cicero often construes *ipse* as the subject, even where the emphasis belongs to the object; as, *Quid est negotiū continere eos, quibus præsis, si te ipse contineas?*

(b.) When *ipse* is joined with a possessive pronoun used reflexively, it usually takes the case of the subject; as, *Meam ipse legem negligo*; not *meam ipsius*, according to § 211, R. 8, (a). So, *Si ex scriptis cognosci ipsi suis potuissent*. Cic. *Eam fraudem vestrā ipsi virtute vitastis*. Liv. But the genitive is necessary when the possessive does not refer to the subject; as, *Tuā ipsius causā hoc feci*. And it is sometimes found where the case of the subject should be used; as, *Conjecturam de tuo ipsius studio cēperis*, instead of *ipse*.—(c.) *Ipse* is sometimes used as reflexive without *sui*; as, *Omnes boni, quantum in ipsis fuit, Cæsarem occiderunt*. Cic.

(d.) *Ipse*, with nouns denoting time or number, expresses exactness, and may be rendered, 'just,' 'precisely'; or 'very,' 'only'; as, *Dyrrhachio sum profectus ipso illo die, quo lex est data de nobis*, on the very day. Cic. *Triginta dies erant ipsi, quum has dabam literas, per quos nullas a vobis acceperam*, just thirty days. Id. *Et quisquam dubitabit—quam facile imperio atque exercitu socios et vectigalia conservaturus sit, qui ipso nomine ac rûmore defendērit*, by his very name, or, by his name only. Id.

### GENERAL RELATIVES.

REM. 29. *Quicumque*, *quisquis*, and the other general relatives (see § 139, 5, R.), are, in classical prose, always connected with a verb, and form the protasis. *Quicumque* is commonly used as an adjective, and *quisquis* as a substantive; but the neuter *quodcumque* is used as a substantive with a following genitive; as, *Quodcumque militum*; and, on the other hand, *quisquis* is rarely an adjective; as, *Quisquis erit vitæ color*. Hor.; and even the neuter *quidquid* is used in the same manner; as, *Quisquis hōnes timuli, quidquid solamen hūmandi est*. Virg. *Quicumque* seems sometimes even in Cicero equivalent to *omnis* or *quivis*; as, *Quæ sanari poterunt, quacumque ratione sanabo*, What can be cured, I will cure by every possible means. Cic. Yet *possum* is rather to be supplied;—'in whatever way I can.' But in later writers *quicumque* is frequently used in the absolute sense for *quivis* or *quilibet*; as, *Cicéronem cuicumque eorum fortiter opposuerim*. Quint. *Qualicumque* and *quantuscumque* are likewise used in an absolute sense by ellipsis; as, *Tu non concupisces quancumque ad libertatem pervenire?* At any price, be it ever so high. Sen. So *quisquis* is occasionally used, not as a relative, but as an indefinite pronoun.—*Siquis* often seems to stand as a relative, like the Greek *ὅστις* for *ὅστις*, 'whoever'; but it always contains the idea of 'perhaps'; as, *Nuda fere Alpium cacumina sunt, et si quid est pabuli, obruunt nives*. Liv.

## INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

REM. 30. (a.) *Aliquis* and *quispiam* are particular and affirmative, corresponding to the English *some one*; as, *Hæreditas est pecunia, quæ morte allicijus ad quempiam pervenit jure*. An inheritance is property which, at the death of some one, falls to some (other) one by law. Cic. *Multi sine doctrinâ aliquid omnium generum et artium consequuntur*. Id.

(b.) *Aliquis* is more emphatic than the indefinite pronoun *quis*. (See § 137, (3.)) Hence *aliquis* stands by itself, but *quis* is commonly connected with certain conjunctions or relative words, but these are sometimes separated from it by one or more words. Sometimes, however, *quis* is used without such conjunctions or relatives; as, *Morbus aut egestas aut quid ejusmodi*. Cic. *Detrahère quid de aliquo*. Id. *Injuriam cui facere*. Id. So, *Dixerit quis*, Some one might say. But even after those conjunctions which usually require *quis*, *aliquis* is used when employed antithetically and of course emphatically; as, *Timēbat Pompeius omnia, ne aliquid eos timērētis*. Cic. In English the emphasis of *aliquis* is sometimes expressed by 'really'; as, *Sensus moriendū, si aliquis esse potest, is ad exitum tempus datur*. Cic.—*Quispiam*, also, is sometimes used like *quis* after *si*, etc., and sometimes stands alone; as, *Queret fortasse quispiam*.

REM. 31. (a.) *Quisquam*, 'any one,' and *ullus*, 'any,' are universal. Like *umquam* and *usquam* they are used in propositions which involve a universal negative, or which express an interrogation with a negative force, or a condition (usually with *si* or *quasi*); also, after comparatives, after the adverb *vix*, and the preposition *sine*; as, *Næque ex castris Cætilina quisquam omnium discesserat*, Nor had any one departed from the camp of Catiline. Sall. *Nec ullo casu potest contingere, ut ulla intermissio fiat officii*. Cic. *An quisquam potest sine perturbatione mentis irasci?* Id. *Tetrior hic tyrannus Syracusanis fuit, quam quisquam superiorum*. Id. *Vix quidquam spei est*. Sen. But after the dependent negative particles *ne*, *nēve*, and the negative interrogative particle *num*, *quis* and not *quisquam* is used.

(b.) But *quisquam* and *ullus* after *si* are often used not in a negative sense, but instead of *aliquis* or *quis*, serving only to increase the indefiniteness which would be implied in the latter pronouns; as, *Aut enim nemo, quod quidem magis credere, aut, si quisquam, ille sapiens fuit*, if any man. Cic. Hence, ultimately, even without *si*, where the indefiniteness is to be made emphatic, *quisquam*, *ullus*, *umquam* and *usquam* were used; as, *Quamdiu quisquam erit, qui te defendere audent, vives*. Cic. *Bellum maxime omnium memorabile, quæ umquam gesta sunt, scripturus sum*. Tac.

(c.) *Ullus* is properly an adjective, but *quisquam* is commonly used without a noun, except it is a word denoting a person; as, *Quisquam civi*, To any citizen. *Cujusquam oratoris eloquentiam*. Hence *quisquam* corresponds to the substantive *nemo* and *ullus* to the adjective *nullus*. *Nemo* is often used with other substantives denoting male persons so as to become equivalent to the adjective *nullus*; as, *nemo pictor*, *nemo adolescens*, and even *homo nemo*. Cic. *Quisquam* is sometimes used in a similar manner: as, *quisquam homo*, *quisquam civis*. On the other hand *nullus* and *ullus* are used as substantives instead of *nemo* and *quisquam*, especially the genitive *nullius* and the ablative *nullo*.

REM. 32. (a.) *Alius*, like *ullus*, though properly an adjective, is sometimes used like a pronoun. It is often repeated, or joined with an adverb derived from it, in the same proposition, which may be translated by two separate propositions, commencing respectively with 'one...another'; as, *Aliud aliis videtur optimum*, One thing seems best to one, another to another. Cic. *Alii aliunde periculum est*, Danger threatens one from one source, another from another; or, Danger threatens different persons from different sources. Ter. *Dionysium aliter cum aliis de nobis locutum audiebam*. Cic.—*Alter* is used in the same manner when only two persons are spoken of, but there are no adverbs derived from it; as, *Alter in alterum causam conferunt*, They accuse each other.

(b.) *Alius*, repeated in different propositions, is also translated 'one...another'; as, *Aliud agitur, aliud simulatur*, One thing is done, another pretended. Cic. *Alter loquitur, alter scribit*, like *aliter ac* or *atque*, He speaks otherwise than he writes. So *Aliud loquitur, aliud scribit*.

(c.) *Uterque*, 'each of two,' is always used by Cicero in the singular number, when only two individuals are spoken of. Its plural, *utrique*, is used only when each of two parties consists of several individuals; as, *Macedonēs—Tyrī, utrique*. But in other good prose writers the plural *utrique* is occasionally used in speaking of only two; as, *Utrique Dionysii*. Nep. Cf. § 209, R. 11, (4.)

REM. 33. (a.) *Quidam* differs from *aliquis* by implying that a person or thing, though indefinitely described, is definitely known; as, *Quidam de collegis nostris*, A certain one of our colleagues. Cic. *Scis me quodam tempore Mithridatum venisse tecum*. Id.

(b.) *Quidam* is sometimes used for *some*, as opposed to *the whole*, or to *others*; as, *Excesserunt urbe quidam, alii mortem sibi consciverunt*, Some departed from the city, others destroyed themselves. Liv. Hence it is used to soften an expression, where in English we say 'so to speak,' etc.; as, *Milvo est quoddam bellum naturale cum corvo*, A kind of natural warfare. Cic. *Fuit enim illud quoddam cæcum tempus servitutis*. Id. *Etenim omnes artes quæ ad humanitatem pertinent, habent quoddam commune vinculum et quasi cognatione quâdam inter se continentur*. Id.—*Tamquam* is used for the same purpose, and also *ut ita dicam*.

REM. 34. *Quivis* and *quilibet*, 'any one,' and *quisque*, 'each,' are universal and absolute; as, *Omnia sunt ejusmodi quivis ut perspicere possit*, All are of such a nature that any one can perceive. Cic. *Hic opud majores nostros adhibebatur peritus, nunc quilibet*. Id. *Natura innumquemque trahit ad discendum*. A negative joined with them denies only the universality which they imply; as, *Non cuivis homini contingit dâre Crinithum*, i. e. not to every man without distinction. Hor. *Cuiquam* would have made the negation universal.

REM. 35. (a.) *Quisque* signifies *each*, *every one*, distributively or relatively, and generally stands without a noun; as, *Quod cuique obligit, id quisque teneat*, Let each one keep what has fallen to each. Cic. Hence it is used particularly after relative and interrogative pronouns and adverbs; as, *Scipio pollicetur sibi magnæ cære fore, ut omnia civitatibus, quæ cuiusque fuissent, restituerentur*. Cic. *Ut prædici posset, quid cuique eventurum, et quo quisque fâto natus esset*. Id. *Cur fiat quidque queris: recte omnino*. Id. *Quo quisque est solertior, hoc docet laboriosus*. Id. *Ut quisque optime dicit, ita maxime dicendi difficultatem amet*. Id. And hence the expression *quotusquisque* in the sense of 'how few among all.' It is also used distributively after numerals; as, *Décimus quisque sorte lectus*, Every tenth man. *Quinto quôque anno*, In every fifth year. So also after *suus*; as, *Sui cuique liberi carissimi: suum cuique placet*. (Respecting the order of the words, cf. § 279, 14: and respecting *quisque* in the nominative in apposition to a noun or pronoun in the ablative absolute or in the accusative with the infinitive, see § 204, R. 10.)

(b.) *Quisque* with a superlative, either in the singular or the plural, denotes universality, and is generally equivalent to *omnes* with the positive; as, *doctissimus quisque*, Every learned man, i. e. all the learned; but often, also, in connection with the verb, it retains the idea of a reciprocal comparison, and is to be rendered by the superlative; as, *In omni arte optimum quidque rarissimum*, The best is the rarest. Cic. *Altissima quæque flumina minimo sono labuntur*, The deepest rivers flow with the least sound. Curt. *With primus*, it denotes *the first possible*; as, *Primo quôque tempore*, As soon as possible. Cic.

#### POSSESSIVES.

REM. 36. (a.) The possessive pronouns *meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, *noster*, and *vester*, are joined to nouns, to indicate an action or possession of the persons denoted by their primitives; as, *Tutus amor meus est tibi*, My love is secure to you. Ovid. *Tuam vicem dolere soleo*. Cic.—These pronouns, as in English, when belonging to two substantives, are generally expressed but once, even when the substantives are of different genders; as, *amor tuus ac iudicium de me*.

(b.) But these pronouns are sometimes used when the persons to which they refer are the objects of an action, feeling, etc.; as, *Nam neque tuâ negligentia, neque odio id fecit tuo*, For he did it neither through neglect nor hatred of you. Ter. See § 211, R. 3.



(c.) The possessive pronouns, especially when used as reflexives, are often omitted; as, *Quo révertar? in patriam?* scil. *meam*. Whither shall I return? to (my) country? Ovid. *Dextrâ munera porrexit*, scil. *suâ*. Id. But they are expressed when emphasis or contrast is intended, where in English 'own' might be added to the pronoun; as, *Ego non dicam, tamen id poteritis cum animis vestris cogitare*. Cic.

(d.) When besides the person of the subject, that of a remote object also occurs in the proposition, the possessive pronoun will refer to the latter; as, *Patris æntum mihi reconciliasti*, i. e. *patris mei æntum* rather than *tui*.

(e.) As reflexives, *meus*, etc., are translated my, thy, his, her, its, our, your, their; or my own, thy own, his own, etc.

#### THE REFLEXIVES *SUI* AND *SUUS*.

§ 208. REM. 37. (a.) *Sui* and *suus* properly refer to the subject of the proposition in which they stand; as,

*Oppidâni factus in se ac suos fœdum consciunt*. The citizens decide on a foul crime against themselves and their friends. Liv.

(b.) They continue to be used in successive clauses, if the subject remains the same; as,

*Ipse se quisque diligit, non ut aliquam a se ipse mercēdem exigit caritatis suæ, sed quod per se sibi quisque carus est*. Cic.

(1.) In dependent clauses, in which the subject does not remain the same, the reflexives are commonly used in references to the leading subject, when the thoughts, language, purposes, etc., of that subject are stated; as,

*Ariovistus prædicavit, non sese Gallis, sed Gallos sibi bellum intulisse*, Ariovistus declared that he had not made war upon the Gauls, but the Gauls upon him. Cæs. *Homerum Colophoni civem esse dicunt suum*, The Colophonians say that Homer is their citizen. Cic. *Tyrannus petivit ut se ad amicitiam tertium ascriberent*. Id. But sometimes, to avoid ambiguity, the cases of *is* or *ille* are used in such clauses in references to the leading subject; as, *Helvetii sese Allobroges vi coacturos existimabant, ut per suos fines eos ire paterentur*. Cæs. Here *suos* refers to the subject of the dependent clause, and *eos* to *Helvetii*, the subject of the leading clause. And sometimes, even in the same dependent clause, two reflexive pronouns are used, referring to different persons; as, *Scythæ petebant, ut regis sui filiam matrimonio sibi jungeret*. Curt.

(2.) If, however, the leading subject, whose thoughts, etc., are expressed, is indefinite, the reflexives relate to the subject of a dependent clause; as,

*Medæam prædicant* (scil. *homines*) *in fugâ fratris sui membra in iis locis, quæ se parens persëqueretur, dissipavisse*. Cic. *Ipsum regem tradunt operatum his sacris se abdidisse*. Liv.

(3.) (a.) When the leading verb is in the passive voice, the reflexive often refers not to its subject, but to that which would be its subject in the active voice; as,

*A Cæsare invitator ut sim sibi legatus*, i. e. *Cæsar me invitât*, I am invited by Cæsar to become his lieutenant. Cic.

(b.) So when the subject is a thing without life, the reflexive may relate to some other word in the sentence, which denotes a thing having life; as,

*Canius tam fida custodia quid significat aliud, nisi se ad hominum commociones esse generatos?* Cic.

- (4.) Instead of *sui* and *suus*, whether referring to a leading or a subordinate subject, *ipse* is sometimes used, to avoid ambiguity from the similarity of both numbers of *sui*, and also to mark more emphatically than *suus*, the person to whom it relates; as,

*Jugurtha legatos misit, qui ipsi liberisque vitam peterent*, Jugurtha sent ambassadors to ask life for himself and his children. Sall. *Ea molestissime ferre homines debent, quæ ipsorum culpâ contracta sunt*.

- (5.) In the plural number, with *inter*, *se* only is used, if the person or thing referred to is in the nominative or accusative; *se* or *ipse*, if in any other case; as,

*Frâtes inter se quum formâ, tum moribus similes*, Brothers resembling each other both in person and character. Cic. *Feras inter sêse conciliat naturâ*. Cic. *Incidunt aliquæ a doctis etiam inter ipsos multo reprehensa*. Quint.

- (6.) (a.) When reference is made not to the subject of the proposition, but to some other person or thing, *hic*, *is*, or *ille*, is generally used, except in the cases above specified; as,

*Themistocles servum ad Xerxem misit, ut ei nuntiaret, suis verbis, adversarios ejus in fugâ esse*, Themistocles sent his servant to Xerxes, to inform him (Xerxes), in his (Themistocles') name, that his (Xerxes') enemies were upon the point of flight. Nep.

- (b.) But when no ambiguity would arise, and especially when the verb is of the first or second person, *sui* and *suus* sometimes take the place of the demonstrative pronouns; as,

*Suam rem sibi salvam sistam*, I will restore his property entire to him. Plant.

- (c.) On the contrary, the demonstratives are sometimes used for the reflexives; as,

*Helvetii persuadent Rauracis, ut unâ cum iis proficiscantur*, The Helvetii persuade the Rauraci to go with them. Cæs.—In some instances, a reflexive and a demonstrative are used in reference to the same person; as, *Ita se gessit* (scil. Ligarius) *ut ei pacem esse expeditet*. Cic. *C. Claudii orantis per sui fratris parentisque ejus mânes*. Liv.—Sometimes the reflexives refer to different subjects in the same sentence; as, *Ariovistus respondit, neminem secum sine suâ pernicie contendisse* (Cæs.); where *se* refers to Ariovistus, and *suâ* to *neminem*.

- (7.) (a.) *Suus* often refers to a word in the predicate of a sentence, and is then usually placed after it; as,

*Hunc cives sui ex urbe ejecerunt*, Him his fellow-citizens banished from the city. Cic. *Titurius quum procul Ambiorigem, suos cohortantem, conspexisset*. Cæs.

- (b.) *Suus*, and not *hujus*, is used when a noun is omitted; as,

*Octavius quem sui* (scil. amici) *Cæsarem salutabant*, Octavius, whom his followers saluted as Cæsar.

- (c.) *Suus* is also commonly used when two nouns are coupled by *cum* but not when they are connected by a conjunction; as,

*Ptolemæus amicos Demetrii cum suis rebus dimisit*, Ptolemy dismissed the friends of Demetrius with their effects. Just.

- (8.) *Suus* sometimes denotes *fit*, *favorable*; as,

*Sunt et sua dona parenti*, There are likewise for my father suitable presents. Virg. *Ut liberator ille populi Romani opprimeretur tempora sua*. Liv. *Alphænus utebatur populo sane suo*. Cic. Sometimes it signifies *peculiar*; as, *Molles sua tura Sabæ*, scil. *mittunt*, i. e. the frankincense for which their country was famous. Virg. *Fœdusque sopor suus occupat artus*. Pl.

## NOMINATIVE.

## SUBJECT-NOMINATIVE AND VERB.

- § 209. (a.) The noun or pronoun which is the subject of a finite verb is put in the nominative.

NOTE 1. (a.) A verb in any mood except the infinitive is called a finite verb. (b.) In historical writing the nominative is sometimes joined with the present infinitive instead of the imperfect indicative. Cf. R. 5.

- (b.) A verb agrees with its subject-nominative, in number and person; as,

*Ego lægo*, I read.

*Tu scribis*, Thou writest.

*Equus currit*, The horse runs.

*Nos lægimus*, We read.

*Vos scribitis*, You write.

*Equi currunt*, Horses run.

NOTE 2. The imperative singular is sometimes used in addressing several persons; as, *Huc nātas adjice septem*, scil. *vos*, *Thēbāides*. Ovid. Met. 6, 182. So *Adde defectionem Iliāz*, scil. *vos*, *mīlites*. Liv. 26, 41.

- REMARK 1. (a.) The nominatives *ēgo*, *tu*, *nos*, *vos*, are seldom expressed, the termination of the verb sufficiently marking the person; as,

*Cūpio*, I desire; *vivis*, thou livest; *hābēmus*, we have. See § 147, 3.

(b.) But when emphasis or opposition is intended, the nominatives of the first and second persons are expressed; as, *Ego rēges ējēcī*, *vos tyrānnos intrōdūcītis*, I banished kings, you introduce tyrants. Auct. ad Her. Nos, nos, *dīco āperte*, *consūles dēsūmus*. Cic. *Tu es patrōnus*, *tu pāter*. Ter. In indignant questions and addresses *tu* is expressed; as, *Tu in fōrum prōdīre*, *tu lucem conspīcēre*, *tu in hōrum conspectum vēire cōnāris?* Auct. ad Her.

REM. 2. The nominative of the third person is often omitted:—

- (1.) When it has been expressed in a preceding proposition:—

(a.) As nominative; as, *Mōsa prōfluit ex monte Vōsēgo*, *et in Oceānum influit*. Cæs.; or (b) in an oblique case; as, *Cursōrem misērunt*, *ut id nuntiāret*, scil. *cursor*. Nep.; or (c) in a possessive adjective; as, *Et vēreor quo se Jūnōnia vertant Hospitāz*; *haud tanto cessābit cardine rērum*, scil. *illa*, i. e. *Jūnō*. Virg. Æn. I. 672.

- (2.) When it is a general word for person or thing:—

Thus *hōmīnes* is often omitted before *aiunt*, *dicunt*, *fērunt*, etc.; as, *Ut aiunt*. As they say. Cic. *Maxime admirantur eum*, *qui pecūniā non mōvētur*. Id. So *bēne est*, *bēne hābet* or *bēne āgitur*, It is well; as, *Si vales*, *bēne est*, *ego valeo*. Cic. *Quum mēlius est*, *grātūlor dīs*. Afran. Optūme hābet, Nothing can be better. Plaut. *Bēne hābet*: *jacta sunt fundāmēnta dēfēnsiōis*. Cic. *Bēne āgitur pro noxia*. Plaut.

NOTE 3. This omission of the nominative is common in the clause preceding a relative; as, *Qui Bāvium non odit*, *amet tua carmīna*, *Mævi*, scil. *hōmo*, Let him who hates not Bavius, love your verses, Mævius. Virg. *Vastātūr agri quōd inter urbem ac Fidēnas est*, scil. *id spātium*. Liv. *Sunt quos jūvat*...scil. *hōmīnes*, There are (those) whom it delights. Hor. *Est qui nec vêtēris pōcula Massici spernit*, scil. *hōmo*. Hor. Here *sunt quos* and *est qui* are equivalent to *quidam*, *āliquis*, or *āliqui*. So, *Est quod gaudeas*, There is (reason) why you should rejoice. Cic. *Nēque erat cur fallēre vellēt*. Ovid. *Est ubi id vāleat*. Cic. *Est, quum non est sātus*, etc. Auct. ad Her. In the latter cases the adverbs are equivalent to *in quo*, scil. *hōco*, *tempōre*.

REM. 3. (1.) The nominative is *wanting* before verbs denoting the state of the weather, or the operations of nature; as,

*Fulgurat*, It lightens. Plin. *Ningit*, It snows. Virg. *Lucescēbat*, It was growing light. Liv. *Jam adesperascit*. Cic.

(2.) The nominative is also wanting before the third person singular of the passive of neuter verbs, and of active verbs used impersonally; as,

*Fāvētur tibi a me*, Thou art favored by me. *Ejus orātiōni vēhēmenter ab omnibus reclamātum est*. Cic. Proinde ut bene *vicitur*, diu *vicitur*. Plaut. *Ad exitum ventum est*. Sen. *Actum est de impērio*. See § 184, 2: and cf. § 229, R. 5, (b.)

NOTE 4. A nominative, however, is expressed before the passive of some neuter verbs, which, in the active voice, are followed by an accusative; as, *Pugna pugnata est*. Cic. See § 232, (1.)

(3.) It is wanting also before the neuter of the future passive participle with *est*; as,

*Si vis me flere* dōlendum est *primum ipsi tibi*, If you wish me to weep, you yourself must first grieve. Hor. *Orandum est, ut sit mens sana in corpore sano*. Juv. *Ad villam revertendum est*. Cic.

(4.) The nominative is also wanting before the impersonal verbs *miseret*, *pœnitet*, *pūdet*, *tædet*, and *pīget*; as,

*Eos inepitiūrum pœnitet*, They repent of their follies. Cic. *Miseret te aliōrum, tui te nec miseret nec pūdet*. Plaut. *Me civitatis mōrum pīget tædetque*. Sall.—In such examples, the sense will sometimes permit us to supply *fortūna*, *conditio*, *mēmōria*, etc. So in the expression, *Vēnit in mentem*, It came into mind; as, *In mentem vēnit de spēculo*, scil. *cōgitatō*, etc. Plaut.—An infinitive or a subjunctive clause sometimes forms the subject of these verbs; as, *Te id nullo mōdo pūduit facere*, To do that by no means shamed you. Ter. *Non pœnitent me, quantum profecerim*. Cic.

(5.) The subject of the verb is sometimes an infinitive or a neuter participle (either alone or with other words), one or more propositions, or an adverb. (Cf. § 202, R. 2 and 3: and § 274, R. 5, (b).) The verb is then in the third person singular; as,

*Vacare culpā magnū est solatium*, To be free from fault is a great consolation. *Nēque est te fallere quidquam*, To deceive you in any thing is not (possible). Virg. *Mentiri non est meum*. Plaut. *Te non istud audivisse mirum est*, That you have not heard that is wonderful. Cic. *Summum jus, summa injuria, factum est jam tritum sermōne proverbum*. Id. *Ni dēgenerātum in aliis huic quōque dēcōri offēscisset*. Liv. (Cf. § 274, R. 5, (b).) *Sin est ut vēlis manēre illam apud te*. Ter. *Nec profuit Hydrae crescere per damnum, geminasque resumere vires*. Ovid. *Dic mihi, cras istud, Postume, quando vēnit?* Tell me, Postumus, when does that to-morrow come? Mart. *Pārurne campis atque Neptūno super fūsum est Lātini sanguinis?* Hor.

(a.) This construction is especially common with impersonal verbs; as, *Oratorem irasci non dēet*, That an orator should be angry, is not becoming. Cic. *Hoc fieri et oportet et opus est*. Id. *Me pēdibus delectat claudere verba*, Hor. *Intērest omnium recte facere*. Cic. *Cūsu accedit*, ut, id quod Rōmæ audierat primus nuntiāret. Id. Sometimes a neuter pronoun is interposed between a proposition and its verb; as, *Impūne facere quæ libet*, id est *rēgem esse*. Sall. Cf. § 206, (13), (a.)

(6.) The nominative is also wanting before *pōtest*, *cæpit* or *cæptum est*, *incipiū*, *dēsīnūt*, *dēbet*, *sōlet*, and *vidētur*, when followed by the infinitive of an impersonal verb; as,

*Pigere eum facti cepit*, It began to repent him (i. e. he began to repent) of his conduct. Just. *Sapientia est una, quæ præceptrice, in tranquillitate vivi potest.* Cic. *Tædere solet avâros impendâ.* Quint.

REM. 4. The verb is sometimes omitted; as,

*Di meliôra piis*, scil. *dent* or *vêlunt*, May the gods grant better things to the pious. Virg. *Vêrum hæc hæc ténus*, scil. *diximus.* Cic. *Pertineo* is understood in such expressions as *nihil ad me*, *nihil ad rem*; *Quid hoc ad Epicûrum?* What does this concern Epicurus? *Quorsus hæc?* i. e. *quorsus hæc pertinent?* What is that for?—*Pârâbo* is to be supplied, in *Quo mihi hanc rem?* Of what use is this to me? and, *Unde mihi aliquam rem?* Whence am I to get any thing? as, *Quo mihi bibliôthecas?* Sen. *Unde mihi lâpidem?* Hor. A tense of *fâcio* is often to be supplied, as in *Recte ille*, *melius hi*; *Bene Chrÿsippus, qui docet.* Cic. *Nihil per vim unquam Clôdius, omnia per vim Milo.* Id. *Qua quum dixisset, Cotta finem.* Id. So, also in the phrases *nihil aliud quam*; *quid aliud quam*; *nihil præterquam*, which signify ‘merely’; as, *Tisaphernes nihil aliud quam bellum compâravit.* Nep. This verb is in like manner omitted with *nihil amplius quam*; *nihil minus quam*, and in the phrase *si nihil aliud.*—*At* or *inquit* is sometimes omitted in introducing the direct words of another, and more frequently in relating a connected conversation; as, *Tum ille*; *hic ego*; *huic ego.* *Dicit* is sometimes omitted in quoting a person’s words; as, *Scite Chrÿsippus: ut glâdiâ causâ vaginam, sic præter mundum cetera omnia dîorum causâ esse gênerâta.* Cic.—After *per* in adjurations *ôro*, *rôgo* or *prêcor* is often omitted; as, *Per ego vos deos patrios, vindicâte ab ultimo dedecore nomen gentemque Persarum*; i. e. *per deos patrios vos ôro, vindicâte.* Curt. This omission is most common with the copula *sum*; as, *Nam Polydorus ego*, scil. *sum.* For I am Polydorus. Virg. And so *est* and *sunt* are often omitted with predicate adjectives, and especially in proverbial phrases; as, *Quot homines tot sententia.* Ter. *Omnia præclara rara*, scil. *sunt.* Cic. So also *est* and *sunt* are often omitted in the compound tenses of the passive voice; as, *Agro multatâti*, scil. *sunt.* Liv. Cf. § 270, R. 3.

NOTE 5. In Latin, as in English, a verb is often joined to one of two connected nominatives and understood with the other, and that even when the persons are different; as, *mâgis ego te amo, quam tu me*, scil. *amas.* After a negative verb a corresponding positive verb is sometimes to be supplied; as, *after nêgo, dico*, *after vêtô, jûbeo*, and in this case *et* takes the signification of *sed.* Cf. § 323, 1, (2.), (b.)

NOTE 6. Sometimes, when the verb of an appended proposition is omitted, its subject is attracted to the case of a noun in the leading proposition with which is joined a participle of the omitted verb; as, *Hannibal Minûcium, mûgistrum equitum, pâri ac dictâtorem dôlo pôductum in prælium, fugâvit*, i. e. *pâri ac dictâtôr dôlo pôductus fuêrat.* Nep. Hann. 5. So Liv. 34, 32.

REM. 5. In the historic style the nominative is sometimes found with the present infinitive; as,

*Intêrim quôtidie Cæsar Eduos frûmentum flagitare*, Meanwhile Cæsar was daily demanding corn of the Edui. Cæs. *Nos pâvidi trêpidâre metu.* Virg. *Id horrendum ferri.* Id.

NOTE 7. The infinitive in this construction is called the *historical infinitive*, and is used instead of the imperfect indicative to express in a lively manner a continued or repeated action or condition.

REM. 6. The relative *qui* may refer to an antecedent either of the first, second, or third person; and its verb takes the person of the antecedent; as,

*Egc qui lêgo*, I who read. *Tu qui scribis*, Thou who writest. *Equus qui currit*, The horse which runs. *Vos qui quæritis*, You who ask.

REM. 7. (a.). Verbs in the first person plural, and the second person singular, are sometimes used to express general truths; as,

*Quam multa facimus causâ amicorum!* How many things we do (i. e. men do) for the sake of friends! Cic. *Si vis me flere, dolendum est primum ipsi tibi, Whoever wishes me, etc.* Hor.

(b.) *Nos* is often used for *ego*, and *noster* for *meus*; and even when the pronoun is not expressed, the verb is frequently put in the first person plural instead of the first person singular. The genitive *nostri* is used for *mei*, but *nostrum* always expresses a real plurality.

REM. 8. The accusative is sometimes used for the nominative by attraction. See § 208, (6.) (b.)

REM. 9. The verb sometimes agrees with the *predicate-nominative*, especially if it precedes the verb; as, *Amantium ira amoris integratio est*, The quarrels of lovers are a renewal of love. Ter. *Lôca, quæ proxima Carthâginem*, Nûmîdia appellâtur. Sall. And sometimes it agrees with the nearest subject of a subordinate sentence; as, *Sed ei cãriora semper omnia, quam decus atque pũdicitia fuit*. Sall. Cat. 25.

REM. 10. In cases of apposition, the verb commonly agrees with the noun which is to be explained; as, *Tulliolâ, deliciæ nostræ, flãgitat*. Cic. But sometimes the verb agrees, not with the principal nominative, but with a nearer noun in apposition to it; as, *Tungri, civitas Galliæ, fontem hæbet insignem*, The Tungri, a state of Gaul, has a remarkable fountain. Plin. *Côrîoli oppidum captum (est)*. Liv.

REM. 11. A collective noun has sometimes, especially in poetry, a plural verb; as,

*Pars epulis ònerant mensas*, Part load the tables with food. Virg. *Turba ruunt*. Ovid. *Atria turba tenent; veniunt læve vulgus euntque*. Id.

(1.) (a.) A plural verb, joined to a collective noun, usually expresses the action, etc., of the *individuals* which that noun denotes. In Cicero, Sallust, and Cæsar, this construction scarcely occurs in simple sentences; but it is often used, when the subject of the verb is expressed not in its own, but in a preceding clause; as, *Hoc idem gènèri hũmãno evénit, quod in terrâ collocãti sint*, because they (scil. *hómínes*) live on earth. Cic. In Livy it occurs more frequently; as, *Locros omnis multitudo abeunt*.

(b.) Abstract nouns are sometimes used collectively, instead of their *concretes*; as, *nóbilitas* for *nóbiles*, *jũventus* for *jũvènes*, *vicinia* for *vicini*, *servitium* for *servi*, *lævis armâtura* for *læviter armãti*, etc. (c.) *Miles*, *eq̃ues*, *pèdes*, and similar words are sometimes used collectively for the soldiery, the cavalry, etc.

(2.) When two or more clauses have the same collective noun as their subject, the verb is frequently singular in the former, and plural in the latter; as, *Jam ne nocte quidẽm turba ex eo loco dilãbẽbãtur, refractũrosque carcẽrem minãbantur*. Liv. *Gens eãdem, quæ te crudèli Daunia bello insẽquitur, nos si pellant, nihil abfòre credũt*. Virg.

(3.) *Tantum*, followed by a genitive plural, has sometimes a plural verb, like a collective noun; as, *Quid huc tantum hómĩnum incẽdunt?* Why are so many men coming hither? Plaut.

(4.) A plural verb is sometimes used, though not by Cicero, after *ut̃erque* and *quisque*, *pars...pars*, *alius...alius*, and *alter...alterum*, on account of the idea of plurality which they involve; as, *Uterque eòrum ex castris exercitum edũcunt*, Each of them leads his army from the camp. Cæs. *Intimus quisque libertòrum vincti abreptique (sunt.)* Tac. *Alius alium, ut prælium incĩpian, circumspectant*. Liv. Cf. § 207, R. 32, (c.)

NOTE 8. This construction may be explained by passages like the following, in which the plural is placed first, and then the singular, denoting its parts; *Citèri, suo quisque tempore, adèrunt*. Liv. *Decemviri perturbãti alius in aliam partem castròrum discurrunt*. Id. See § 204, R. 10.

REM. 12. Two or more nominatives singular, not in apposition, generally have a plural verb; as,

*Fūrīr Irāque mentem præcipient, Fury and rage hurry on (my) mind. Virg. Dum ætas, mētus, māgister, prohibebant. Ter.*

(1.) If the predicate belongs to the several nominatives jointly, the verb is always plural; as, *Grammaticæ quondam ac mūsicæ junctæ fuērunt. Quint.*

(2.) A verb in the singular is often used after several nominatives singular, especially if they denote things without life; as,

*Mens enim, et rātio et consilium in sēnibus est. Cic. Bēnēficientia, libērāltas, bōnitas, justitia funditus tollitur. Id.*

NOTE 9. This construction is most common when the several nominatives, as in the preceding examples, constitute, as it were, but one idea. So also the compound subject *Sēnātus pōpulusque Rōmānus* has always a predicate in the singular. The same construction sometimes, especially in the poets, occurs with names of persons; as, *Gorgias, Thrāsīmāchus, Prōtāgōras, Prōdicus, Hippias in hōnōre fuit. Cic. Quin et Prōmētheus et Pēlōpis pārens dulci labōrum decipitur sōno. Hor.* When the nominatives denote both persons and things, the verb is commonly plural; as, *Cōtīo consūlum et Pompeius obsunt. Liv.*

(3.) When one of the nouns is plural, the verb is generally so; but sometimes it is singular, when the plural noun does not immediately precede it; as, *Dii te pēnates patrique, et patris imāgo, et dōmus rēgia, et in dōmo rēgale sōlium, et nōmen Targūnium creat vōcatque rēgem. Liv.*

(4.) When each of the nominatives is preceded by *et* or *tum*, the verb agrees with the last; as, *Hoc et rātio doctis, et nēcēssitas barbāris, et mos gentibus, et fēris nātūra ipsa præscripsit.* This, reason has dictated to the learned, and necessity to barbarians, and custom to nations, and nature itself to wild beasts. *Cic. Et ego, et Cicerō meus flāgitābit. Id. Tum ætas viresque, tum ãvita glōria dūmum stimūlābat. Liv.* So when the subject consists of two infinitives; as, *Et faciēre, et pati fortia, Rōmānum est. Cic. Unus et alter* always takes a singular verb; as, *Dicit unus et alter breviter. Cic. Unus et alter assultur pannus. Hor.*

(5.) When the nominatives are connected by *aut*, sometimes the plural, but commonly the singular, is used; as,

*Si Socrātes aut Antisthēnes dicēret, If Socrates or Antisthenes should say. Cic. Ut quosque stūdiū privātum aut grātia occupāverunt. Liv.*

(a.) The plural is necessary with disjunctives, if the subject includes the first or second person; as, *Quod in Dēcēviris nēque ego nēque Cæsar hābiti esēmus. Cic.—(b.)* With *aut...aut* and *nec...nec* the singular is preferred, but with *seu...seu* and *tam...quam* the verb is in the plural.

(6.) A nominative singular, joined to an ablative by the preposition *cum*, sometimes has a singular but more frequently a plural verb; as, *Dōmītiū cum Messālā certus esse vidēbatur. Cic. Bocchus, cum pēditibus, postrēmam Rōmāndrum ãctem invādunt, Bocchus, with his foot-soldiers, attacks the rear of the Roman army. Sall. Ipse dux, cum ālīquot principibus, capiuntur. Liv.*

(7.) If the nominatives are of different persons, the verb is of the first person rather than the second or third, and of the second rather than the third; as,

*Si tu et Tullia vālētis, ego et Cicerō vālēmus, If you and Tullia are well, Cicero and I are well. Cic. Hæc nēque ego nēque tu fēcimus. Ter. Ego pōpulusque Rōmānus bellum iūdicō faciōque. Liv.*

(a.) Yet sometimes the verb agrees in number and person with the nearest nominative, and is understood with the other; as, *Vos ipsi et sēnātus frēquens restitit.* This is always the case when the action of the verb is qualified with reference to each nominative separately; as, *Ego misere tu fēliciter vivis.*

REM. 13. The interjections *en*, *ecce*, and *O*, are sometimes followed by the nominative; as,

*En Priāmus! Lo Priam! Virg. En ego, vester Ascānius. Id. Ecce hōmo Catīenus! Cic. Ecce tuā litterā. Id. O vir fortis atque āmicus! Ter.*

### PREDICATE-NOMINATIVE.

§ 210. A noun in the predicate, after a verb neuter or passive, is put in the same case as the subject, when it denotes the same person or thing; as,

(a.) When the subject is in the nominative; *Ira fūror brēvis est*, Anger is a short madness. Hor. *Ego vōcor Lyconides*, I am called Lyconides. Plaut. *Ego incēdo regīna*, I walk a queen. Virg. *Caius et Lūcius frātres fuērunt*. Cic.—So (b.) when the subject is in the accusative with the infinitive; *Jūdicem me esse vōlo*. Cic.

(c.) Sometimes also a dative, denoting the same object, both precedes and follows a verb neuter or passive. See § 227, N.—And (d.) a predicate ablative sometimes follows passive participles of *choosing*, *naming*, etc.; as, *Consūlūbus certioribus factis*. Liv. See § 257, R. 11.

(e.) If the predicate noun has a form of the same gender as the subject, it takes that form; as, *Licentia corruptrix est mōrum*. Cf. § 204, R. 2.—(f.) But if the subject is neuter, the noun of the predicate, if it has both a masculine and a feminine form, takes the former; as, *Tempus vitæ māgister est*.

(g.) An infinitive may supply the place of a predicate nominative. See § 269, R. 4.

REMARK 1. (a.) Adjectives, adjective pronouns, and participles, standing in the predicate, after verbs neuter or passive, and relating to the subject, agree with it in gender, number, and case.

(b.) When the subject consists of two or more nouns, the gender and number of such predicate adjectives are determined by § 205, R. 2.

REM. 2. (a.) The noun in the predicate sometimes differs in gender and number from the subject; as, *Sanguis ērant lacrimæ*, Her tears were blood. Ovid. *Captivi militum præda fuērunt*. Liv.

(b.) So when a subject in the singular is followed by an ablative with *cum*, the predicate is plural; as, *Exstiles esse jubet L. Tarquinius cum conjūge et libēris*. Liv.

REM. 3. The verbs which most frequently have a noun, etc., in the predicate agreeing in case, etc., with their subject, are:—

(1.) The copula *sum*; as, *Ego Jōvis sum filiū*. Plant. *Disce esse pāter*. Ter. The predicate with *sum* may be an adverb of place, manner, etc.; as, *Quod est longe ālter*. Cic. *Rectissime sunt apud te omnia*, Every thing with you is in a very good condition. Id.; or a noun in an oblique case; as, *Nūmen sine tūre est*. Ovid. *Sunt nobis mitia pōma*. Virg.

(2.) Certain neuter verbs denoting *existence*, *position*, *motion*, etc.; as, *vivo*, *exsisto*, *appāreo*, *cādo*, *eo*, *evādo*, *fūgio*, *incēdo*, *jāceo*, *māneo*, *sēdeo*, *sto*, *vēnio*, etc. Thus, *Rex circūbat pēdes*, The king went round on foot. Plin. *Quos jūdicābat non posse orātōres evādere*. Cic. *Ego huic causæ patrōnus exstīti*. Cic. *Qui fit, ut nemo contentus vivat?*

(3.) The passive of verbs denoting,

(a.) To *name* or *call*; as, *appellor*, *dicor*, *nōmīnor*, *nūnciōpor*, *perhibeor*, *adītor*, *scribōr*, *inscribōr*, *vōcor*. Thus, *Cognōmine Justus est appellātus*, He was called by the surname Just. Nep. *Aristotēs olīvæ dīctur inventor*. Cic.



(b.) To choose, render, appoint, or constitute; as, *constituor, creor, designor, designor, eligor, fio, reddor, renuncior*. Thus, *Dux a Rōmānis electus est Q. Fabius. Postquam ēphēbus factus est. Nep. Certior factus sum.*

(c.) To esteem or reckon; as, *censeor, cognoscor, crēdor, dēprēhendor, existimor, dīcor, fēror, habēor, iudīcor, mēmōror, nūmērōr, pūtor, repērior, videor*. Thus, *Crēdebār sanguinis auctor ego. Ovid. Mālim vidēri timīdus quam pārūm prūdēns. Cic.*

NOTE 1. With several passives of the last class, when followed by a predicate-nominative, etc., an infinitive of *sum* is expressed or understood; as, *Amens mihi fuisse videor*, I think I was beside myself. Cic. But the dative of the first person is sometimes omitted after *videor*; as, *Satis dēcuisse videor*. Id.—*Atikius prūdēns esse putābātur*. Id. So with *dīcor* (to be said), and *perhibeor*; as, *Vērus patriæ dicēris esse pāter*. Mart. *Hoc ne locūtus sine mercēde existimer*. Phæd.

NOTE 2. *Audīo* is sometimes used by the poets like *appellor*; as, *Tu rexque pāterque audisti cōram*. Hor.

REM. 4. A predicate-nominative is used after many other verbs to denote a purpose, time, or circumstance of the action; as, *Cōmes additus Œolides*, *Æolides* was added as a companion. Virg. *Lūpus obambulat nocturnus*. Id. *Appāret liquido sublimis in æthère Nisus*. Id. So with an active verb; *Audāci hoc puer*. Cic. *Stipiens nil faciū invitus*. Id. *Rempublicam dēfendī adōlescens*. Id. Cf. § 204, R. 1.

NOTE 3. Instead of the predicate-nominative, a dative of the end or purpose sometimes occurs (see § 227); sometimes an ablative with *pro*; as, *audācia pro mūro est*; and sometimes the ablatives *lōco* or *in nūmērō* with a genitive; as, *ille est mihi pārentis lōco*; *in hostium nūmērō habētur*.

REM. 5. The noun *opus*, signifying 'need,' is often used as a predicate after *sum*. It is, in such cases, translated by the adjectives *needful, necessary*, etc.; as, *Dux nobis et auctor opus est*. Cic. *Multi opus sunt dōves*. Varr. (*Dixit*) *aurum et ancillas opus esse*. Ter. *Urus* also is occasionally so construed.

REM. 6. When the pronoun, which is the subject of an infinitive, is omitted, the case of the predicate is sometimes, in the poets, attracted into that of the subject of the verb on which the infinitive depends; as, *Uxor inuicti Jōvis esse nescis*, i. e. *te esse uxōrem*. Hor. *Rētulit Ajax esse Jōvis prōnēpos*. Ovid.

## GENITIVE.

### GENITIVE AFTER NOUNS.

§ 211. A noun which limits the meaning of another noun, denoting a different person or thing, is put in the genitive; as,

*Amor glōria*, Love of glory; *Arma Achillis*, The arms of Achilles; *Pāter patriæ*, The father of the country; *Vitium iræ*, The vice of anger; *Nēmōrum custos*, The guardian of the groves; *Amor habēndi*, Love of possessing.

NOTE 1. In the first example, *amor* denotes love in general; *glōria* limits the affection to the particular object, glory. Such universally is the effect of the genitive, depending upon a noun. Hence the limitation of a noun by a genitive resembles that which is effected by an adjective. In each the noun limited constitutes with its limitation only a single idea.

REMARK 1. The genitive denotes various relations, the most common of which are those of *Source*; as, *Rādii solis*, The rays of the sun;—*Cause*; as, *Dōlor podagræ*, The pain of the gout;—*Effect*; as, *Artifex mundi*, The Creator of the world;—*Connection*; as, *Pāter consūlis*, The father of the consul;—*Possession*; as, *Dōmus Cæsaris*, The house of Cæsar;—*Object*; as, *Cōgitatō dīcājus rei*, A thought of something;—*Purpose*; as, *Appārātus triumphī*, Preparation for a triumph;—*A whole*; as, *Pars hōminum*, A part

of men; this is called the *partitive* genitive;—*Character* or *Quality*; as, *Adolescens summa audacia*, A youth of the greatest boldness;—*Material* or *Component Parts*; as, *Montes auri*, Mountains of gold; *Acervus scutorum*, A heap of shields;—*Time*; as, *Frumentum dierum decem*, Corn for ten days. Sall.

REM. 2. The genitive is called *subjective* or *active*, when it denotes either that to which a thing belongs, or the subject of the action, feeling, etc., implied in the noun which it limits. It is called *objective* or *passive*, when it denotes the object affected by such action, or towards which such feeling is directed; as,

*Subjective.*

*Facta virorum*, Deeds of men.  
*Dolor animi*, Grief of mind.  
*Iunonis ira*, The anger of Juno.

*Objective.*

*Odium vitii*, Hatred of vice.  
*Amor virtutis*, Love of virtue.  
*Desiderium otii*, Desire of leisure.

(a.) Whether a genitive is subjective or objective, is to be determined by the meaning of the words, and by their connector. Thus, *providentia Dei* signifies God's providence, or that exercised by him *amor Dei*, the fear of God, or that exercised towards him. The same or similar words, in different connections, may express both significations. Thus, *metus hostium*, fear of the enemy, may mean, either the fear felt by the enemy, or that felt by their opponents. So *vulnus Ulixis* (Virg. *Æn.* 2, 436.) denotes the wound which Ulysses had given; *vulnus Æneæ*, (Id. *Æn.* 12, 323.) that which Æneas had received.

(b.) The relation expressed by the English *possessive case* is subjective, while that denoted by *of* with its case is either subjective or objective.

(c.) The objective genitive is of very extensive use in Latin in the limitation of verbal nouns and adjectives, whatever may be the construction of the verbs from which such nouns and adjectives are derived, whether they take an accusative or some other case or even a preposition.

(d.) When ambiguity would arise from the use of the objective genitive, a preposition with an accusative or ablative is commonly used; as, *Amor in rempublicam*, for *reipublicæ*, Love to the state. Cic. *Odium erga Romanos*, for *Romanorum*. Nep. *Cura de salute patriæ*, for *salutis*. Cic. *Prædator ex sociis*, for *sociorum*. Sall. Sometimes both constructions are combined; as, *Révérèntia adversus homines et optimi cûjusque et reliquorum*. Cic. Off. 1, 28.

NOTE. A limiting genitive is sometimes used instead of a noun in apposition, especially with *vox*, *nomen*, *verbum*, etc.; as, *vox voluptatis*, the word pleasure; *nomen amicitia*, the word *amicitia*; *domini appellatio*. This is usual when the genus is defined by the species; as, *arbor fici*, a fig-tree; *flos violæ*, a violet; *virtus continentia*, the virtue of abstinence: and in geographical names; as, *oppidum Antiöchia*. Cf. § 204, R. 6.—Cicero frequently uses a genitive in this manner with *genus* and *causa*; as, *Unum genus est eorum, qui*, etc. *Dur sunt cause, una pudoris, altera sceleris*.—So, also, the genitive of gerunds; as, *Triste est nomen ipsum cærendi*, The very word to want is sad. Cic.

REM. 3. (a.) A substantive pronoun in the genitive, limiting the meaning of a noun, is commonly objective; as,

*Cura mei*, Care for me. Ovid. *Pars tui*, Part of thee. Id. *Vestri curam agite*. Curt. This genitive is used especially with verbal substantives in *or*, *iz* and *io*; as, *Accusator mei*. Cic. *Nimia aestimatio sui*. Id. *Rationem et sui et aliorum habere*. Id.

(b.) Instead of the *subjective* or *possessive* genitive of a substantive pronoun, the corresponding adjective pronoun is commonly used; as,

*Liber meus*, not *liber mei*, my book. *Cura mea*, My care, i. e. the care exercised by me. Cic. *Tuas literas exspecto*. Id. Yet the subjective genitive of a substantive pronoun sometimes occurs; as, *Tui animi studio*, By the zeal of yourself alone. Cic.

(c.) And not unfrequently, also, an adjective pronoun occurs instead of the *objective* genitive; as, *Mea injūria*, Injury to me. Sall. So, *Invidia tua*, Envy of thee. *Fiducia tua*, Confidence in thee. Plaut. *Spes mea*, The hope placed in me. With *causa* the adjective pronoun, and never the genitive, is used; as, *Meā causā*, For my sake. Plaut.

REM. 4. (a.) Instead, also, of the *subjective* genitive of a *noun*, a possessive adjective is often used; as, *Causa rēgia*, for *causa rēgis*. Cic. *Hērili filius*, for *hēri filius*. Id. *Evandrius ensis*, for *Evandri*. Virg. *Hercūleus labor*, for *Hercūlis*. Hor. *Civilis furor*, for *civium*. Hor. So, also, for the *objective* genitive, *Mētus hostilis*, Fear of the enemy. Sall.

(b.) The genitive of the person implied in the adjective pronoun or possessive adjective, or an adjective agreeing with such genitive, is sometimes added as an apposition; as, *Vestrā ipsōrum causā hoc fēci*. In the poets and later prose writers a participle also is found agreeing with such implied genitive; as, *Mea scripta vulgo recitāre timentia*. Hor. Cf. § 204, R. 4, and § 205, R. 13.

REM. 5. In the predicate after *sum*, and sometimes after other verbs, the dative is used like the *objective* genitive; as,

*Idem amor exilium pēcōri* (est), *pēcōrisque* māgistro. Virg. *Vitis ut arbōribus dēcōri est*, ut *vītibus āra*—*Tu dēcus omne tuis*. Virg. In this passage the dative *dēcōri* and the nominative *dēcus* are used with no difference of meaning. Cf. § 227, R. 4. *Auctor fui sēnātui*. Cic. *Murena lēgātus Lūcullō fuit*. Id. *Erit ille mihi semper deus*. Virg. *Huic causae patrōnus exstiti*. Cic. *Huic ego me bello dācem prōfiteor*. Id. *Se tertium (esse) cui fātum fōret urbis pōtiri*. Id.—*Cum P. Africāno sēnātus egit, ut lēgātus frātri prōfiscisceretur*. Id. *Cāsar tēgimenta gūleis milites ex vīnībūs faciēre jubet*. Cæs. *Trinōbantibus Cāsar impērat—frūmentum exercitui*. Id. *Quod nēque insidiā consūli prōcēdēbant*. Sall. *Quem exitum tantis malis sperārent?* Id. *Sanctus vir et ex sententia ambobus*, scil. *qui fuit*. Id. See § 227, R. 4.

NOTE. The dative in the preceding examples has been thought by some grammarians to depend on the nouns connected with it; as, *exilium*, *dēcus*, *auctor*, *lēgātus*, *deus*, *patrōnus*, etc.; by others it has been held to depend on these nouns in connection with the verbs, and not upon either separately; but the better opinion seems to be that, which makes such datives grammatically dependent upon the verbs only, though logically connected also with the nouns.

(1.) Instead, also, of the *possessive* genitive, a dative of the person may follow a verb, when its act has relation to the body or possessions of such person; as,

*Sese omnes flentes Cēsāri ad pēdes prōjēcērunt*, They all, weeping, cast themselves at the feet of Cāsar. Cæs. *Cui corpus porrigitur*, For whom the body, i. e. whose body, is extended. Virg. *Tum vērō exarsit jūvēni dōlor ossibus ingens*. Id. *Transfigitur scūtum Pulfōni*. Cæs.

REM. 6. When the limiting noun denotes a *property*, *character*, or *quality*, it has an adjective agreeing with it, and is put either in the genitive or the ablative; as,

*Vir exempli recti*, A man of correct example. Liv. *Adolescens summæ audācie*, A youth of the greatest boldness. Sall. *Fossa pēdum viginti*, A ditch of twenty feet, (i. e. in width). Cæs. *Hamilcar sēcum duxit filiū Hannibālem annōrum novem*. Nep. *Athēnienses dēlgunt Pēriclem*, spectātæ virtūtis vīrum. Just. *Quinquāginā annōrum æpērium*. Id. *Iter unius diēi*. Cic. *Pulchritūdine eximīā fēmīna*, A woman of exquisite beauty. Cic. *Maximo natu filius*, The eldest son. Nep. *L. Cātīna fuit magnā vi et animi et corpōris, sed ingēnio malo prāvōque*. Sall. *Spēlunca infimā altitūdine*. Cic.—Sometimes both constructions occur in the same proposition; as, *Lentūlum nostrum*, eximīā spe, summæ virtūtis *adōlescentem*. Cic.

(1.) A genitive sometimes supplies the place of the adjective; and the noun denoting the property, etc., is then always put in the ablative; as, *Est bos cervi figurâ*,...of the form of a stag. Cæs. *Uti specie et colore tauri*. Id. *Frutex palmi altitudine*. Plin. *Clavi digiti pollicis crassitudine*. Cæs.

(2.) All the qualities and attributes of persons and things, whether inherent or accidental, may be thus expressed by the genitive and ablative of quality, provided the substantives are immediately connected; as, *fossa quindécim pedum*; *homo antiquâ virtute*. It hence follows that such genitives and ablatives, when used to express duration of time or extent of space, are distinguished from the cases in which the accusative is required, since the latter case always follows adjectives or verbs; as, *fossa quindécim pedes lata*; *puer decem annos natus*. Cf. § 286.

(3.) Whether the genitive or the ablative of quality is preferable in particular cases, can frequently be determined only by reference to classical authority; but, in general, the genitive is used more frequently to express inherent qualities than such as are merely accidental, while the ablative is used indifferently for either purpose. In speaking of transitory qualities or conditions the ablative is always used; as, *Magno timore sum*, I am in great fear. Cic. *Bono animo sum*. Id. *Quanto fuerim dolore meministi*. Id. *Maximo honore Servius Tullius erat*. Liv. With plural substantives the genitive is rare; while in expressions of measure it is used rather than the ablative.

(4.) An accusative instead of a genitive of quality is used with *seculus* (sex), *genus* and *pondo*; as, *Libertorum captum virile seculus ad decem milia capta*, i. e. of the male sex, instead of *seculi virilis*. Liv. So *genus*, when joined with a pronoun, as *hoc, id, illud, quod*, or with *omne*, is used for *hujus, ejus, omnis*, etc., *generis*; as, *Orationes aut aliquid id genus scribere*,—of that kind. Cic. *Concedere nugas hoc genus*. Hor. So *pondo* is joined as an indeclinable word to the accusatives *libram* and *libras*; as, *Dictator coronam auream libram pondo in Cupitilio Jovi donum posuit*,...a pound in weight. Liv. Cf. § 286, R. 7.

(5.) The genitive *modi* with an adjective pronoun supplies the place of a pronoun of quality; as, *cujusmodi libri*, the same as *quales libri*, what kind of books; *hujusmodi libri*, i. e. *tales libri*, such books. So, also, *generis* is used, but less frequently.

(6.) With the genitive of measure are often connected such ablatives as *longitudine, latitudine*, etc., or *in longitudinem, etc.*; as, *fossa decem pedum latitudine*; but the genitive does not depend on these words.

(7.) *Sum* may be followed by either the genitive or the ablative of quality with an ellipsis of the word limited, which, with the genitive, is *homo, res, negotium, proprium* or *proprius*, etc., and with the ablative, *præditus, instructus, ornatus*, etc. Cf. Rem. 8, and §§ 244, and 249, I..

REM. 7. (1.) The limited noun is sometimes omitted; as, *O miseræ sortis!* scil. *homines*; O (men) of wretched fortune! Lucan. *Ad Diāna, scil. cedem*. Ter. *Hectōris Andrōmache*, scil. *uxor*. Virg. *Suspiciōnis vitanda*, scil. *causâ*. Tac. So *filius* or *filia*; as, *Hannibal Gisgonis*.

(2.) The omitted noun may sometimes be supplied from the preceding words; as, *Cujum pecus? an Mëlibæi? Non; verum Ægonis*, scil. *pecus*. Virg. An adjective is often expressed referring to the noun omitted; as, *Nullam virtutem diem mercēdem desiderat, præter hanc* (scil. *mercēdem*) *laudis*. Cic.

REM. 8. The limited noun is often wanting in the predicate of a sentence after *sum*. This usually happens,

(1.) When it has been previously expressed; as,

*Hæc domus est Cæsaris*, This house is Cæsar's. *Nomen auræ tam sæpe vocatum esse putans Nymphæ*. Ovid. *Naves onerarias, quarum minor nulla erat duum milium amphorum*, i. e. *quarum minor nulla erat quam 1 avis duum*, etc. Cic.

(2.) When it is a general word denoting a person, an animal, etc.; as,

*Thūrgōides, qui ejusdem ætatis fuit, scil. hōmo, Thucydides, who was of the same age. Nep. Multum ei detrahit, quod aliēna erat civitātis, scil. hōmo or civis. Id. Primum stipendium mēruit annōrum dēcem septemque, scil. adolescens. Id. Summi ut sint labōris efficiunt, scil. animalia. Cæs. (Claudius) somni brevissimū erat. Suet. Mirā sum alacritate. Cic. Vulgus ingēnio mobili erat. Sall. Non est juris sui, He is not his own master. Lucan. Potestatis suæ esse. Liv. Suarumque rerum erant. Id. Cf. Rem. 6, (7.)*

(3.) When it is a general word denoting *thing*, for which, in English, the words *part, property, duty, office, business, characteristic*, etc., are commonly supplied; as,

*Tēmritas est flōrentis ætatis, prudētia sēnectatis, Rashness is (the characteristic) of youth, prudence of old age. Cic. Est hoc Gallicæ consuetudinis. Cæs. So, stultitiæ est; est levitatis, etc., which are equivalent to stultitia est, levitas est. Omnia hostium erant. A paucis emi, quod multorum esset. Sall.*

(a.) This happens especially when the subject of the verb is an infinitive, or an entire clause, in which case, instead of the genitive of the personal pronouns, *mei, tui*, etc., the neuters of the possessives, *meum, tuum*, etc., are used; as, *Adolescentis est majores natu revereeri, It is (the duty) of a youth to reverence the aged. Ovid. Cujusvis hominis est errare, nullius nisi insipientis in errore perseverare. Cic. Pauperis est numerare pecus. Ovid. So especially moris est; as, Negavit moris esse Græcorum, ut in convivio virorum accumbere mulieres, the same as morem esse Græcorum. Cic. Nihil tam æquandis libertatis esse. Liv. So when the verb is omitted; Tamen officii duxi, exorare patrem, scil. esse. Suet. Non est mentiri meum. Ter. Tuum est, M. Cato, videre quid agatur.*

(b.) Instead of the genitive of a substantive, also, the neuter of a possessive adjective derived from it is sometimes used; as, *Humānum est errare, To err is human. Ter. Et facere et pati fortia Romanum est. Liv.*

(4.) The same construction sometimes occurs after *facio*, and some other verbs mentioned in § 230, *esse* being understood; as, *Asia Romanorum facta est, Asia became (a possession) of the Romans. Just. Agrum suæ dititionis fecisse. Liv.*

(5.) The limited noun is sometimes wanting, when it is a general word, though not in the predicate after *sum*; as, *Magni formica laboris, scil. animal, The ant (an animal) of great labor. Hor. So Ei venit in mentem potestatis tuæ, scil. memoria, or the like. Cic.*

NOTE. When the noun which is wanting denotes a *thing*, grammarians sometimes supply *negotium, officium, manus, opus, res, causa*, etc. It is an instance of a construction common in Latin, to omit a noun when a general idea is intended. See § 205, Rem. 7, (2.)

REM. 9. The *limiting* noun also is sometimes omitted; as,

*Tria millia, scil. passuum. In most cases of this kind, an adjective, adjective pronoun, or participle, is expressed in the genitive.*

REM. 10. Two genitives sometimes limit the same noun, one of which is commonly subjective, and the other objective; as,

*Agamemnonis belli gloria, Agamemnon's glory in war. Nep. Illius administrationis provinciae. Cic. Eorum dierum consuetudine itineris nostri exercitus peragere. Cæs. Orbis reipublicæ talium virorum. Cic. Pro veteribus Helvetiorum injuriis populi Romani. Cæs.*

REM. 11. *Opus* and *usus* are rarely limited by a genitive or accusative, but generally by an ablative, of the thing needed; as,

*Argenti opus fuit, There was need of money. Liv. Ad consilium pensandum temporis opus esse. Id. Procerum non semper usus est. Quint. Si quo operum usus est. Liv. Puero opus est cibum. Plaut. Usus est hominem asinum. Id. See § 248.*

REM. 12. The relation denoted by the genitive in Latin, is generally expressed, in English, by *of*, or by the possessive case. Cf. R. 2, (b.) The objective genitive may often be rendered by some other preposition; as,

*Rēmediū dōloris*, A remedy for pain. *Injūria patris*, Injury to a father. *Descensus Averni*, The descent to Avernus. *Ira belli*, Anger on account of the war. *Pōtestas rei*, Power in or over a thing.

NOTE. Certain limitations of nouns are made by the accusative with a preposition, and by the ablative, either with or without a preposition. Cf. § 202, 6, I. and II.

## GENITIVE AFTER PARTITIVES.

§ 212. Nouns, adjectives, adjective pronouns, and adverbs, denoting a part, are followed by a genitive denoting the whole; as,

*Pars civitātis*, A part of the state. *Nulla sōrōrum*, No one of the sisters. *Aliquis philosophōrum*, Some one of the philosophers. *Quis mortālium?* Who of mortals? *Māior jūvēnum*, The elder of the youths. *Doctissimū Rōmānōrum*, The most learned of the Romans. *Multum pecūniæ*, Much (of) money. *Satis eloquentiæ*, Enough of eloquence. *Ubtam gentium sūmus?* Where on earth are we?

NOTE. The genitive thus governed denotes either a *number*, of which the partitive designates one or more individuals; or a *whole*, of which the partitive designates a portion. In the latter sense, the genitive of common and abstract nouns commonly follows either the neuter of adjectives and adjective pronouns, or adverbs; and that of material nouns depends on substantives signifying quantity, weight or measure; as, *mēdimnum tritici*, a bushel of wheat; *libra farris*; *jūgērum agri*; *magna vis auri*.

REMARK 1. Nouns denoting a part are *pars*, *nemo*, *nihil*, etc., and also nouns denoting measure, weight, etc.; as, *mōdius*, *mēdimnum*, and *libra*; as,

*Nēmō nostrum*, No one of us. *Maxima pars hōmīnum*. *Nihil hūmānārū rerū*. Cic. *Dimidium militum*. Liv. *Mēdimnum tritici*. Cic.

REM. 2. Adjectives and adjective pronouns, denoting a part of a number, including partitives and words used partitively, comparatives, superlatives, and numerals, are followed by the genitive plural, or by the genitive singular of a collective noun.

(1.) Partitives (§104, 9.); as, *ullus, nullus, solus, alius, ūter, ūterque, ūtercumque, ūtervis, ūterlibet, neuter, alter, alterūter, aliquis, quidam, quispiam, quisque, quisque, quisquam, quicumque, unusquisque, quis? qui? quō? quōtus? quōtusque? id, aliquōt, nonnulli, plerique, multi, pauci, mediū*. Thus, *Quisquis deōrum*, Whoever of the gods. Ovid. *Consūlum alter*, One of the consuls. Liv. *Multi hōmīnum*, Many men. Plin. *Et mediū jūvēnum ibat*; i.e. between. Ovid. For the gender of adjectives used partitively, see § 205, R. 12.

(2.) Words used partitively; as, *Expēditū militum*, The light-armed (of the) soldiers. Liv. *Dēlectū equitum*. Id. *Vēlēs Rōmānōrum dūcum*. Vell. *Sūpēri deōrum*, The gods above. Hor. *Sancte deōrum*. Virg. *Dēgēnēs cānum*. Plin. *Piscium fēmīnæ*. Id.

(3.) Comparatives and superlatives; as, *Doctior jūvēnum*. *Orātōrum prætantissimū*. *Eloquētissimū Rōmānōrum*. *Optimū omnium*.

(4.) Numerals, both cardinal and ordinal; also the distributive *singūli*; as, *Equitum centum quinquāginta interfecti*, A hundred and fifty of the horsemen were killed. Curt. *Sāpientum octāvus*. Hor. *Singūlos vestrum*. Curt.

(5.) The meaning is often nearly the same, whether the partitive adjective agrees in case and number with a noun, or takes such noun after it in the genitive; as, *Doctissimus Rōmānorum*, or, *doctissimus Rōmānus*: *Alter consūlum*, or *alter consul*. But the genitive cannot be used, when the adjective includes the same number of things as that of which the whole consists; as, *Vēniamus ad civos*, qui duo *sūpersunt*; not *quōrum duo*, since these are all, though we say in English, 'of whom two survive.'

NOTE 1. (a.) The comparative with the genitive denotes one of two individuals or classes; the superlative denotes a part of a number greater than two; as, *Māior frātrum*, The elder of two brothers. *Māximus frātrum*, The eldest of three or more.

(b.) In like manner, *ūter*, *alter*, and *neuter*, generally refer to two; *quis*, *ālius*, and *nullus*, to a whole consisting of more than two; as, *Uter nostrum*? Which of us (two)? *Quis vestrum*? Which of you (three or more)?

NOTE 2. *Nostrum* and *vestrum* are used as partitive genitives, in preference to *nostri* and *vestri*, and are always joined with *omnium* even when the genitive is a subjective one; as, *Patria, quæ commūnis est omnium nostrum pārens*. Cic. But *vestrum* sometimes occurs in other connections also without a partitive meaning; as, *Quis ērit tam cupidus vestrum*. Cic.

NOTE 3. The partitive word is sometimes omitted; as, *Fies nobīlium tu quōque fontium*, scil. *ūnus*. Hor. *Centies sestertium*, scil. *centēna millia*.

NOTE 4. The noun denoting the whole, after a partitive word, is often put in the ablative, with the prepositions *de*, *e*, *ex*, or *in*, or in the accusative, with *apud* or *inter*; as, *Nemo de iis*. *Alter ex censoribus*. Liv. *Unus ex multis*. Cic. *Acerrimus ex sensibus*. Id. *Thales, qui sapientissimus in septem fuit*. Id. *Primus inter omnes*. Virg. *Cræsus inter rēges opulētissimus*. Sen. *Apud Helvētios nobilissimus*.

NOTE 5. The whole and its parts are frequently placed in apposition, distributively; as, *Interfectōres, pars in fōrum, pars Syracūsas pergunt*. Liv. See § 204, R. 10.

NOTE 6. *Cuncti* and *omnes*, like partitives, are sometimes followed by a genitive plural; as, *Attālus Mācēdōnum fere omnibus persuāsit*, Attālus persuaded almost all the Macedonians. Liv. *Cunctos hōmīnum*. Ovid. *Cunctas prōvinciarum*. Plin.

NOTE 7. In the following passage, the genitive singular seems to be used like that of a collective noun: *Tōtius autem injustitiæ nulla captatiō est*, etc. Cic. Off. 1, 18. The phrase *Rem nullo mōdo probābilem omnium* (Cic. Nat. Deor. 1, 27,) seems to be used for *Rem nullo omnium mōdorum probāblem*.

REM. 3. The genitive denoting a whole, may depend on a neuter adjective or adjective pronoun. With these the genitive singular is commonly used; as,

*Plus eloquentiæ*, More (of) eloquence. *Tantum fidei*, So much fidelity. *Id temporis*, That time. *Ad hoc alātis*. Sometimes the genitive plural; as, *Id miseriārum*. Ter. *Armōrum quantum*. Cæsar.

NOTE 1. (a.) Most neuter adjectives used partitively denote quantity; as, *tantum*, *quantum*, *aliquantum*, *plūs*, *minus*, *minimū*, *dimidū*, *multum*, *nintum*, *paulum*, *plūrtimū*, *rēliquū*; with the compounds and diminutives, *tantūlum*, *tantūdem*, *quantūlum*, *quantūlumcumque*, etc.; to which add *mediū*, *summū*, *ultimū*, *aliud*, etc. The pronouns thus used are *hoc*, *id*, *illud*, *istud*, *ulem*, *quod*, and *quid*, with their compounds, *aliquid*, *quidquid*, *quippiam*, *quidquam*, *quodcumque*.

(b.) Most of these adjectives and pronouns may either agree with their nouns, or take a genitive; but the latter is more common. *Tantum*, *quantum*, *aliquantum*, and *plūs*, when they denote quantity, are used with a genitive only, as are also *quid* and its compounds, when they denote a part, sort, etc., and *quod* in the sense of *quantum*. Thus, *Quantum crevit Nilus*, *tantum spei in annum est*. Sen. *Quid mulieris uxorē habes*? What kind of a woman... Ter.

*Aliquid formæ.* Cic. *Quid hoc rei est?* What does this mean? Ter. *Quod auri, quod argenti, quod ornamentorum fuit, id Verres abstulit.*

NOTE 2. Neuter adjectives and pronouns, when followed by a genitive, are to be accounted substantives, and in this construction are found only in the nominative and accusative.

NOTE 3. Sometimes the genitive after these adjectives and pronouns is a neuter adjective, of the second declension, without a noun; as, *Tantum boni*, So much good. *Si quid habes novi*, If you have any thing new. Cic. *Quid reliquum est?* Ter. *Nihil* is also used with such a genitive; as, *Nihil sinceri*, No sincerity. Cic. This construction occurs very rarely with neuter adjectives in *ē* of the third declension, and only in connection with neuters of the second declension; as, *Si quidquam non dico civilis sed humani esset*. Liv.

NOTE 4. In the poets and in the prose writers later than Cicero, neuter adjectives in the plural number are sometimes followed by a genitive, either singular or plural, with a partitive signification; as, *Extrema imperii*, The frontiers of the empire. Tac. *Pontes et viarum angusta*, The bridges and the narrow parts of the roads. Id. *Opaca locorum*. Virg. *Antiqua fœderum*. Liv. *Cuncta camporum*. Tac. *Exercant colles, atque horum asperissima pascunt*. Virg. Cf. § 205, R. 9.

REM. 4. The adverbs *sāt*, *sātis*, *pārum*, *nīmis*, *ābunde*, *largiter*, *affātum*, and *partim*, used partitively, are often followed by a genitive; as,

*Sat ratiōnis*, Enough of reason. Virg. *Sātis eloquentiæ, pārum sapientiæ*, Enough of eloquence, (yet) but little wisdom. Sall. *Nimis insidiarum*. Cic. *Terroris et fraudis ābunde est*. Virg. *Auri et argenti largiter*. Plaut. *Cōpiarum affātum*. Liv. *Quum partim illorum mihi fāniliārissimi essent*. Cic.

NOTE 1. The above words, though generally adverbs, seem, in this use, rather to be nouns or adjectives.

NOTE 2. (a.) The genitives *gentium*, *terrārum*, *loci*, and *locorum*, with certain adverbs of place, strengthen their meaning; as, *Usquam terrarum*. Just. *Usquam gentium*, Any where whatever. Plaut. *Ubi terrarum sumus?* Where in the world are we? Cic. *Abire quo terrarum possent*. Liv. *Ubi sit loci*. Plin. *Eo loci*, equivalent to *eo loco*, In that place. Tac. *Eodem loci res est*. Cic. *Nescire quo loci esset*. Id. But the last three examples might perhaps more properly be referred to Rem. 3.

(b.) The adverbs of place thus used are *ubi*, *ubique*, *ubiqueque*, *ubique*, *ubique*, *unde*, *usquam*, *usquam*, *quo*, *quocumque*, *quovis*, *quodquo*, *aliquo*, *hic*, *huc*, *eo*, *eodem*. *Loci* also occurs after *ibi* and *ibidem*; *gentium* after *longe*; as, *Ibi loci*, In that place. Plin. *Abes longe gentium*. Cic. So, *minime gentium*, By no means. Ter. *Vicinia* in the genitive is used by the comic writers after *hic* and *huc*; as, *Hic proximæ vicinæ*. Plaut. *Huc vicinæ*. Ter. Cf. § 221, R. 3, (4.)

NOTE 3. *Huc*, *eo*, *quo*, when used figuratively to express a degree, are joined also with other genitives; as, *Eo insolentia furorisque processit*, He advanced to such a degree of insolence and madness. Plin. *Huc enim malorum ventum est*. Curt. *Hucne rerum venimus?* Have we come to this? Pers. *Eo miseria-rum venire*, To such a pitch of misery. Sall. *Quo amentia progressi sitis*. Liv.

NOTE 4. The genitives *loci*, *locorum*, and *temporis*, appear to be redundant after the adverbs *adhuc*, *inde*, *interea*, *postea*, *tum*, and *tunc*, in expressions denoting time; as, *Adhuc locorum*, Till now. Plaut. *Inde loci*, After that. Lucr. *Interea loci*, In the mean time. Ter. *Postea loci*, Afterwards. Sall. *Tum temporis*, and *tunc temporis*, At that time. Just. *Locorum* also occurs after *id*, denoting time; as, *Ad id locorum*, Up to that time. Sall. Cf. R. 3.

NOTE 5. When the genitive *ejus* occurs after *quoad*, in such connections as the following: *Quoad ejus facere poteris*. Cic.; or passively, *Quoad ejus fieri possit*, As far as may be. Cic.; the *ejus* refers to the preceding clause; literally as much of it as possible.



NOTE 6. *Prædie* and *postridie*, though reckoned adverbs, are followed by a genitive, depending on the noun *die*s contained in them; as, *Prædie ejus diēi*, lit. On the day before that day, i. e. The day before. Cic. *Prædie insidiarum*, The day before the ambush. Tac. *Postridie ejus diēi*, The next day. Cæs. When they are followed by an accusative, *ante* or *post* is understood. Cf. § 238 1, (6.)

NOTE 7. Adverbs in the superlative degree, like their adjectives, are followed by a genitive; as, *Optime omnium*, Best of all. Cic.

## GENITIVE AFTER ADJECTIVES.

§ 213. A noun, limiting the meaning of an adjective, is put in the objective genitive, to denote the relation expressed in English by *of*, *in*, or *in respect to*; as,

<i>Avidus laudis</i> , Desirous of praise.	<i>Plēna timōris</i> , Full of fear.
<i>Appētens glōriæ</i> , Eager for glory.	<i>Egēnus aquæ</i> , Destitute of water.
<i>Mēmor virtutis</i> , Mindful of virtue.	<i>Doctus fandi</i> , Skilful in speaking.

So, *Nescia mens fātī*, The mind ignorant in regard to fate. Virg. *Impōtens iræ*, lit. Powerless in respect to anger, i. e. unable to control it. Liv. *Hōmīnes expertes veritātis*, Men destitute of truth. Cic. *Lactis abundans*, Abounding in milk. Virg. *Terra fēraz arbōrum*, Land productive of trees. Plin. *Tēnaz propōstiti viri*, A man tenacious of his purpose. Hor. *Eger animi*, Sick in mind. Liv. *Locus mēdius jūguli summitque læcerti*, i. e. between. Ovid. *Morum diversus*. Tac. *Opērum solūtus*. Hor. *Liber lābōrum*. Id. *Intēger vitæ scēlērisque parus*, Upright in life, and free from wickedness. Hor. *Vini pollens Liber*. Plaut.

From the above examples, it will be seen that the genitive after an adjective is sometimes translated by other words besides *of*, *in*, or *in respect to*, though the relation which it denotes remains the same. Cf. 211, R. 12.

REMARK 1. The following classes of adjectives, which, as denoting a relation to a thing, are called *relative adjectives* (§ 104, 18), are frequently limited by a genitive; viz. (1.) *Verbals* in *as*; as, *capax*, *edax*, *fēraz*, *fūgaz*, *peritōraz*, *tēnaz*, etc.—(2.) *Participials* in *ns*, and a few in *us*, with their compounds; as, *amans*, *appētens*, *cūpiens*, *efficiens*, *pātiens*, *impātiens*, *sitiens*;—*consulens*, *doctus*, *solūtus*.—(3.) Adjectives denoting *desire* or *aversion*; as, *avidus*, *avidus*, *cūpidus*, *stūdiōsus*; *fastidiōsus*:—*participation*; as, *particeps*, *affinis*, *consors*, *exsors*, *expers*, *inops*:—*knowledge*, *experience*, *capacity*, and their contraries; as, *callidus*, *compos*, *consciūs*, *gnārus*, *ignārus*, *pēritus*, *impēritus*, *impos*, *pōtens*, *impōtens*, *prūdēns*, *imprūdēns*, *expertus*, *inexpertus*, *consciūs*, *insciūs*, *nesciūs*, *insolēns*, *insolūtus*, *insuētus*, *rūcis*, *sollers*:—*memory* and *forgetfulness*; as, *mēmor*, *immēmor*, etc.:—*certainly* and *doubt*; as, *certus*, *incertus*, *ambiguus*, *dūbius*, *suspensius*:—*care* and *negligence*; as, *anxiūs*, *solicitus*, *prōvidūs*, *imprōvidūs*, *sēcūrus*:—*fear* and *confidence*; as, *pavidus*, *timidus*, *trēpidus*, *impavidus*, *fidens*, *interritus*:—*guilt* and *innocence*; as, *noxius*, *reus*, *suspectus*, *compertus*, *mānifestus*, *innocius*, *innōcens*, *insons*:—*plenty* and *want*; as, *abundans*, *plēnus*, *dives*, *sātus*, *largus*, *inops*, *egēnus*, *inānis*, *pauper*, *parcus*, *solūtus*, *vācūus*.

(a.) In the poets and later prose writers, many other adjectives, particularly those which express mental emotions, are in like manner limited by a genitive, especially by *animi*, *ingēni*, *mentis*, *iræ*, *militiæ*, *belli*, *lābōris*, *rērum*, *evi*, *fūārū*, *mōrum*, and *fidei*.

REM. 2. The limiting genitive, by a Greek construction, sometimes denotes a *cause* or *source*, especially in the poets; as, *Lassus mārīs*, *et viārū*, *militiæque*. Hor. *Fessus viæ*. Stat. *Fessus mārīs*. Hor. *Attonitus serpentis*. Sil. *Mens interrīta lēti*. Ovid.

REM. 3. Participles in *ns*, when used as such, take after them the same case as the verbs from which they are derived; as, *Se amans*, Loving himself. Cic. *Mare terram appētens*. Id.

REM. 4. Instead of the genitive, denoting *of*, *in*, or *in respect to*, a different construction is sometimes used after many of these adjectives; as,

(1.) An infinitive or a subjunctive clause; as, *Certus ire*, Determined to go Ovid. *Cantare peritū*. Virg. *Felicior unguere tela*. Id. *Anxius quid factū opus sit*. Sall. *Vive mēmor quam sis ævi brevis*. Hor.—So *aliēnus, avidus, callidus, cupidus, firmus, frēquens, gnārus, impōtens, inops, latus, largus, liber, pollens, mēmor, dubius*, etc.

(2.) An accusative with a preposition; as, *Ad rem avidior*. Ter. *Avidus in direptiones*. Liv. *Animus capax ad praecepta*. Ovid. *Ad casum fortunamque felix*. Cic. *Ad fraudem callidus*. Id. *Diligens ad custodiendum*. Id. *Negligentior in patrem*. Just. *Vir ad disciplinam peritus*. Cic. *Ad bella ruidis*. Liv. *Potens in res bellicas*. Id. *Alacer ad maledicia*. Cic. *Inter bellum et pacem nihil mediū est*. Id.—So with *ad*, *fertilis, firmus, infirmus, potens, sterilis*, etc.—with *in*, *cupidus, parvus, potens, prodigus*, etc.

(3.) An accusative without a preposition, chiefly in the poets; as, *Nudus membra*, Bare as to his limbs. Virg. *Os, humerosque deo similis*. Id. *Cetera fulvus*. Hor. *Cuncta pollens*. Sen. Ag. See § 234, II.

(4.) An ablative with a preposition; as, *Avidus in pecuniis*, Eager in regard to money. Cic. *Anxius de fama*. Quint. *Ruidis in jure civili*. Cic. *Peritus de agricultura*. Varr. *Prudens in jure civili*. Cic. *Reus de vi*. Id. *Purus ab cultu humano*. Liv. *Certior factus de re*. Cic. *Sollicitus de re*. Id. *Super scelere suspectus*. Sall. *Inops ab amicis*. Cic. *Pauper in ære*. Hor. *Modericus in cultu*. Plin. *Ab æquis sterilis*. Apul. *Copiosus a frumento*. Cic. *Ab equitatu firmus*. Id. So with *in*, *immodicus, parvus, uber* :—with *ab*, *alienus, beatus, exhorris, immānis, inops, liber, nudus, orbis, vacuus*.

(5.) An ablative without a preposition; as, *Arte ruidis*, Rude in art. Ovid. *Regni crimine insons*. Liv. *Compos mente*. Virg. *Prudens consilio*. Just. *Ager pedibus*. Sall. *Præstans ingenio*. Cic. *Modericus severitate*. Tac. *Nihil insidiis vacuum*. Cic. *Amor et melle et felle est fecundissimus*. Plaut. *Medius Pollice et Castore*. Ovid. Cf. Rem. 5.

In many instances, the signification of the accusative and ablative after adjectives differs, in a greater or less degree, from that of the genitive.

REM. 5. As many of the adjectives, which are followed by a genitive, admit of other constructions, the most common use of each, with particular nouns, can, in general, be determined only by recourse to the dictionary, or to the classics. Some have,

(1.) The genitive only; as, *benignus, capax, exsors, impos, impotens, insatiables, irritus, liberalis, modicus, munificus, prolargus*, and many others.

(2.) The genitive more frequently; as, *compos, consors, egenus, exheres, expers, fertilis, indigus, inops, parvus, particeps, pauper, prodigus, prosper, sterilis*.

(3.) The genitive or ablative indifferently; as, *dives, fecundus, ferax, immānis, inanis, immodicus, jejūnus, largus, nimius, opulentus, peritus, plenus, potens, purus, refertus, satur, uber, vacuus*.

(4.) The ablative more frequently; as, *abundans, alienus, cassus, copiosus, exhorris, firmus, fetus, frequens, gravidus, gravis, infirmus, liber, locuples, latus, mactus, nudus, onustus, orbis, pollens, satiat, truncus, validus, vituosus*.

(5.) The ablative only; as, *beatus, creber, densus, multus, timidus, turgidus*.

For the ablative after many of the preceding adjectives, see § 250.

REM. 6. Some adjectives usually limited by a dative, sometimes take a genitive instead of the dative; as, *similis, dissimilis*, etc. See § 222, R. 2.

REM. 7. Many adjectives in addition to the genitive or ablative denoting *of* or *in respect to*, take also another case to express a different relation; as, *Mens alicui conscia recti*. Cf. § 222, R. 2. *Conscius* has also sometimes the dative instead of the genitive of the thing; as, *conscius huic facinori*. Cic.

## GENITIVE AFTER VERBS

§ 214. *Sum*, and verbs of *valuing*, are followed by a genitive, denoting *degree of estimation*; as,

*A me argentum, quanti est, sūmito*, Take of me so much money as (he) is worth. Ter. *Magni aestimābat pecūniam*, He valued money greatly. Cic. *Ager nunc plūris est, quam tunc fuit*. Id. *Tanti est*, It is worth so much; and, absolutely, *It is worth while*. Cic. *Hūjus non fācio*, I don't care *that* for it.

REMARK 1. (a.) Verbs of valuing are joined with the genitive, when the value is expressed in a *general or indefinite* manner by:—

(1.) A neuter adjective of quantity; as, *tanti, quanti, plūris, minōris, magni, permagni, plūrimi, maximī, minimi, parvi, tantidem, quancūque, quantivis, quantilibet*, but only very rarely *multi* and *mājōris*.

(2.) The nouns *assis, flocci, nauci, nihili, plī, tērucii*, and also *pensi* and *hūjus*.

(b.) But if the price or value of a thing is a *definite* sum, or is expressed by a *substantive*, other than *assis, flocci*, etc., it is put in the ablative. Cf. § 252.

REM. 2. The verbs of valuing are *aestimo, existimo, dūco, fācio, fio, habeo, pendo, pūto, depūto, taxo*. Thus, *Ut quanti quisque se ipse fāciat, tanti fiat ab amicis*, That as much as each one values himself, so much he should be valued by his friends. Cic. *Sed quia parvi id dūceret*. Id. *Hōndres si magni non pūtemus*. Id. *Non assis fācis*? Catull. *Nēque quod dixi, flocci existimat*. Plaut.

NOTE 1. (a.) The phrase *aequi bōni*, or *aequi bōntique fācio*, or *consūlo*, I take a thing in good part, am satisfied with it, may be classed with genitives of value; as, *Nos aequi bōntique fācimus*. Liv. So, *Bōni consūliuit Plin.*—(b.) A genitive of price is joined also to *ceno, habito, doceo*, etc.; as, *quanti hābitas?* what rent do you pay for your house or lodging? *quanti docet?* what are his terms in teaching?

NOTE 2. After *aestimo*, the ablatives *magno, permagno, parvo, nihilo*, are sometimes used instead of the genitive; as, *Dūta magno aestimas, accepta parvo*. Sen. *Pro nihilo*, also, occurs after *dūco, habeo*, and *pūto*; and *nihil* with *aestimo* and *mōror*. Cf. § 231, R. 5.

NOTE 3. The neuter adjectives above enumerated, and *hūjus*, may be referred to a noun understood, as *prētiī, aris, ponderis, mōmenti*; and may be considered as limiting a preceding noun, also understood, and denoting some person or thing; as, *Aestimo te magni*, i. e. *hōmīnem magni prētiī*. *Scio ejus ordinis auctōritatem semper apud te magni fuisse*, i. e. *rem magni mōmenti*. The words *assis*, etc., may also be considered as depending on an omitted noun; as, *prētiō, rem*, etc.

REM. 3. Statements of *price*, also, when *general or indefinite*, are put in the genitive after verbs of *buying, selling, letting, and hiring*; as,

*Mercātōres non tantidem vendunt, quanti emērunt*. Cic. *Nulla pestis hūmāno gēnēri plūris stētiit, quam ira*. Sen.

NOTE 1. Verbs of buying, selling, etc., are *emo, vēndo*, the neutral passive, *vēneo, consto, prōsto*, and *liceo*, to be exposed for sale.

NOTE 2. With verbs of buying, selling, etc., the ablatives *magno, permagno, plūrimo, parvo, minimo*, and *nihilo* are often used instead of the genitive; as, *Non pōtest parvo res magna constāre*. Sen. *Quanti emēre possum minimo?* What is the lowest price I can buy at? Plaut. Sometimes also the adverbs *cāre, bēne*, and *māle* take the place of the genitive or ablative of price.

§ 215. (1.) *Misereor, miseresco*, and the impersonals *misēret, pœnitet, pūdet, tædet*, and *piget*, are followed by a genitive of the object in respect to which the feeling is exercised; as,

*Misērēnti sociōrum*, Pity the allies. Cic. *Misērescite rēgis*, Pity the king. Virg. *Mea māter, tui me misēret, mei piget*, I pity you, and am dissatisfied with myself. Acc. *Eos ineptiarum pœnitet*. Cic. *Frātris me pūdet pigetque*. Ter. *Me civitatis mōrum piget tædetque*. Sall. So the compound *distædet*; *Haud quod tui me, nēque dōmi distædeat*. Plaut.; and the passive; *Numquam suscepti nēgōti eum pertæsum est*. Nep. *Lentitudinis eōrum pertæsa*. Tac. *Misēritum est me tuarum fortunarum*. Ter. *Cave te frātrum misēreātur*. Cic. *Pūdet (me) deōrum hōminumque*, I am filled with shame in reference both to gods and men. Liv.

NOTE 1. *Misērescit* is sometimes used in the same manner as *misēret*; as, *Nunc te misērescat mei*. Ter. *Misēreo*, as a personal verb, also, occurs with a genitive; as, *Ipse sui misēret*. Lucr.

REMARK. The genitive after the above impersonals seems to depend on some general word constituting the grammatical subject of such verbs, and signifying, *matter, business, fact, case, circumstances, conduct, character, etc.*, cf. § 211, R. 8, (8); and § 209, R. 3, (4). Instead of the genitive with its omitted noun, an infinitive or clause with *quod* or with an interrogative particle is sometimes used as a subject; as, *Non me hoc jam dicere pūdebit*. Cic. *Non pœnitet me quantum profēcērim*, I am not dissatisfied with my progress. Id. These verbs have also sometimes a nominative; as, *Me quidem hæc conditio non pœnitet*. Plant. *Non te hæc pudent?* Ter.

NOTE 2. *Misēret* occurs with an accusative of the object, instead of a genitive; as, *Mendēmi vicem misēret me*. Ter. So, also, *Pertæsus ignāviam suam*. Suet.

NOTE 3. (a.) These impersonals, as active verbs, take also an accusative of the person exercising the feeling which they express. See § 229, R. 6.—(b.) And sometimes also the accusative of the *neuter pronouns* and of *nihil*, denoting to what degree the feelings are exercised; as, *Sēquitur ut nihil (sapien-tem,) pœniteat*. Cic. Cf. § 232, (3.)

(2.) *Sātāgo* is sometimes followed by a genitive denoting in what respect; as,

*Is sātāgit rērum suarum*, He is busily occupied with his own affairs. Ter. This compound is often written separately, and in either case the genitive seems to depend upon *sat*. See § 212, R. 4. *Agito*, with *sāt*, in like manner, is followed by a genitive; as, *Nunc agitas sat tāte tuarum rērum*. Plaut.

§ 216. *Rēcorder, mēmīni, rēminiscor*, and *obliscor*, are followed by a genitive or accusative of the object remembered or forgotten; as,

*Flāgitiorum suorum rēcorderābitur*. Cic. *Omnes gradus atātis rēcorder tuam*, I call to mind all the periods of your life. Id. *Mēmīni vivōrum*, I am mindful of the living. Id. *Nūmeros mēmīni*, I remember the measure. Virg. *Rēminisci vītēris fāmæ*. Nep. *Dulces mōriens rēminiscitur* Argos. Virg. *Rēminisci amicos*. Ovid. *Oblitus sui*. Virg. *Injūriarum obliscitur*. Nep. *Obliscor injūrias*. Cic. *Obliscere Graios*. Virg.

REMARK 1. (a.) When the thing remembered or forgotten is expressed by a neuter pronoun or adjective, it is always put in the accusative. An accusative of the person with these verbs is unusual, except that *mēmīni*, when referring to a contemporary, always takes an accusative of the person; as, *Cinnam mēmīni*. Cic.

(b.) An infinitive or a dependent clause sometimes follows these verbs; as, *Memento mihi supplicias ferre*. Plaut. *Esse quoque in fatis remittiscitur, affore tempus, quo nutre*, etc. Ovid. *Oblii quid deceat*. Hor. *Memini te scribere*. Cic. *Quas sum passura recordor*. Ovid.

REM. 2. *Récor* and *mémni*, to remember, are sometimes followed by an ablative with *de*; as, *Pétimus ut de suis libéris récor dentur*. Cic. *De pallá memento*. Plaut.

REM. 3. *Mémni*, signifying to make mention of, has a genitive, or an ablative with *de*; as, *Néque hujus rei mémnit*. poeta. Quint. *Mémnisti de exsiliis*. Cic. With *venit mihi in mentem*, the person or thing may be made the subject of *venit*; as, *Miserá ubi venit in mentem mortis metus*. Plaut. *Venit hoc mihi in mentem*; or an infinitive or subjunctive clause may supply the place of the subject:—for the genitive with this phrase, as in *Solet mihi in mentem venire illius temporis*, see § 211, R. 8, (5.) The genitive with *recordor* is very rare.

§ 217. Verbs of *accusing, convicting, condemning, and acquitting*, with the accusative of the person, are followed by a genitive denoting the *crime*; as,

*Arguit me furti*, He charges me with theft. *Alterum accusat probri*, He accuses another of villany. *Meipsum Inertiae condemno*. Cic.

REMARK 1. (a.) To this rule belong the verbs of

*Accusing*; *accuso*, *ágo*, *arcesso*, *arguo*, *cto*, *déféro*, *incrêpo*, *incuso*, *instimulo*, *postulo*, and more rarely *alligo*, *anquiro*, *astringo*, *capto*, *incrêpito*, *urgeo*, *interrogo*, *reum ágo* or *facio*, *alicui diem dico*, *cum aliquo ágo*.—*Convicting*; *convincio*, *coarguo*, *prehendo*, *téneor*, *obstringor*, *obligor*.—*Condemning*; *damno*, *condemno*, *infámo*, and more rarely *judico*, *nóto*, *plector*.—*Acquitting*; *absolvo*, *libéro*, *purgo*, and rarely *solco*. To the verbs of accusing, etc., may be added the adjectives denoting *guilt* and *innocence*, which likewise take a genitive. Cf. § 213, R. 1, (3.)

(b.) The genitives which follow these verbs are, *audácia*, *dcartia*, *codis*, *falsi*, *furti*, *ignavia*, *impietatis*, *injuriarum*, *leítatis*, *majestátis*, *máleficii*, *mendacii*, *parricidii*, *peccati*, *pécúlatús*, *probrí*, *próditionis*, *rei capitális*, *repétundarum*, *scélérís*, *stultitiæ*, *téméritátis*, *timóris*, *vánitátis*, *venéficii*, etc.

REM. 2. (a.) Instead of the genitive, an ablative with *de* is often used after *accuso*, *déféro*, *anquiro*, *arguo*, *postulo*, *damno*, *condemno*, *absolvo*, and *purgo*; as, *Accusare de negligentia*. Cic. *De vi condemnati sunt*. Id. *De repétundis est postulatus*. Id. Sometimes with *in*, after *accuso*, *coarguo*, *convincio*, *téneor*, and *déprehendor*; as, *In quo te accuso* (Cic.); and after *libéro*, with *a* or *ab*; as, *A scélere liberati sumus*. Cic. *Accuso* and *damno* with *inter* occur in the phrases *inter sicários accusare*, etc., to charge with assassination.

(b.) With some of the above verbs, an ablative without a preposition is often used; as, *Libérare culpá*. Cic. *Crimen quo argui posset*. Nep. *Proconsulem postuláverat repétundis*. Tac. This happens especially with general words denoting crime; as, *scélus*, *máleficiu*, *peccátum*, etc.; as, *Me peccato solvo*. Liv. The ablatives *crimine* and *nómine*, without a preposition, are often inserted before the genitive; as, *Arcessere aliquem crimine ambitus*. Liv. *Nómine scélérís conjurationisque damnati*. Cic.; and when not so inserted they are to be understood.

(c.) Sometimes a clause takes the place of the genitive; as, *Eum accusabant quod societatem fecisset*. Nep. So the infinitive with the accusative. *Quid? quod me—arguit serum accessisse?* Ovid.

REM. 3. (a.) The *punishment* is commonly expressed by the genitive; as, *capitis*, *mortis*, *multæ*, *pécuniæ*, *quadrupli*, *octupli*; but sometimes by the ablative; as, *capite*, *morte*, *multa*, *pécuniá*; and always by this case when a definite sum is mentioned; as, *quindécim millibus aris*: or the accusative with *ad* or *in*,

as, *ad pœnam, ad bestias, ad mētalla, in mētallum, in expensas*;—sometimes, though rarely, in the poets, by the dative; as, *Damnātus morti*. Lucr.—(b.) *Vōti* or *vōtōrum*, and less frequently *vōto* or *vōtis damnāri*, signifies ‘to be condemned to fulfil one’s vow,’ and is consequently equivalent to ‘to obtain what one wishes.’ So also in the active voice, *Damnābis tu quōque vōtis*. Virg. *Perdo* is used by Plautus as a verb of accusing, with *cāptis*; *Quem ego cāptis perdam*, will charge with a capital offence. So *cāpte* or *cāptis pērceltāri*, Plaut., signifies ‘to be in peril of one’s life.’ With *plecto* and *plector*, *cāput* is used in the ablative only.—(c.) *Damni infecti* is put in the genitive (depending upon *nōmine* understood) after *sātisdo*, *prōmitto*, *stipulāri*, *rēprōmitto*, and *cāveo*; as, *Si quis in pāriete dēmoliendo damni infecti prōmiserit*. Cic.

REM. 4. *Accūsō, incūsō, and instimūlo*, instead of the genitive, sometimes take the accusative, especially of a neuter pronoun; as, *Si id me non accūsas*. Plaut. *Quæ me incūsāveras*. Ter. *Sic me instimulāre falsum faciūsus*. Plaut. See § 231, Rem. 5.

REM. 5. (a.) The following verbs of accusing, etc., are not followed by a genitive of the crime, but, as active verbs, by an accusative:—*cālumniar, carpo, corripio, crimīnor, culpo, excūsō, multo, pūnio, rēprēhendo, sūgillo, tazo, tradūco, vitāpēro*; as, *Culpāre infēcunditātem agrōrum*. Colum. *Excūsāre errōrem et adōlescentiam*. Liv.

(b.) This construction also sometimes occurs with *accūsō, incūsō, arguo*, and *marquo*; as, *Ejus dēartitiam perfidiāque accūsārat*. Nep. *Culpam arguo*. Liv. With *multo*, the punishment is put in the ablative only, without a preposition; as, *Exsiliis, morte mulantur*. Cic.

§ 218. Verbs of admonishing, with the accusative of the person, are followed by a genitive of the person or thing respecting which the admonition is given; as,

*Multes temporis mōnet*, He admonishes the soldiers of the occasion. Tac. *Admōnebāt aliūm egestātis, aliūm cupiditātis suæ*. Sall.

NOTE. The verbs of admonishing are *mōneo, admōneo, commōneo*, and *commōnēfacio*.

REMARK 1. Instead of the genitive, verbs of admonishing sometimes have an ablative with *de*; as, *De sede Tellūris me admōnes*. Cic.—sometimes an accusative of a pronoun or adjective in the neuter gender; as, *Eos hoc mōneo*. Cic. *Illud me admōneo*. Id.; and in the passive, *Multa admōnēmur*. Id.—rarely also a noun in the accusative; as, *Eam rem nos locus admōnuīt*. Sall.

REM. 2. Instead of the genitive, verbs of admonishing are also often followed by an infinitive or clause; as, *Sōror alma mōnet succēdere Lauso Turnum*, His sister admonishes Turnus to take the place of Lausus. Virg. *Mōnet, ut suspiciōnes vitet*. Cæs. *Sed eos hoc mōneo, dēsīnant fūrēre*. Cic. *Mōnet ratiōnem frūmenti esse hābendam*. Hirt. *Immortalia ne spēs mōnet annus*. Hor. *Discipulos id unum mōneo, ut, etc.* Quint. *Mōneo quid facto opus sit*. Ter. See § 273, 2.

§ 219. *Rēfert* and *intērest* are followed by a genitive of the person or thing whose concern or interest they denote; as,

*Hāmānitātis rēfert*, It concerns human nature. Plin. *Rēfert omnium antīmadverti in malos*. Tac. *Intērest omnium recte faciēre*, It concerns all to do right. Cic.

REMARK 1. Instead of the genitive of the substantive pronouns, the adjective pronouns *mea, tua, sua, nostra*, and *vestra*, are used; as,

*Mea nihil rēfert*, It does not concern me. Ter. *Illud mea magni intērest*, That greatly concerns me. Cic. *Tua et mea maxime intērest, te valēre*. Cic. *Māgis reipūblicæ intērest quam mea*. Id. *Magni intērest Cicerōnis, vel mea pōtius, vel meherculē utriusque, me intēvenire dicenti*. Id.

**NOTE.** *Rēfert* rarely occurs with the genitive, but often with the pronouns *mea, tua, etc.*, and most frequently without either such pronoun or a genitive; as, *quid rēfert? magni* or *magnopere rēfert*.

**REM. 2.** In regard to the case of these adjective pronouns, grammarians differ. Some suppose that they are in the accusative plural neuter, agreeing with *commōda* or the like understood; as, *Intērest mea*, i. e. *est inter mea*, It is among my concerns. *Rēfert tua*, i. e. *rēfert se ad tua*, It refers itself to your concerns. Others think that they are in the ablative singular feminine, agreeing with *re, causā, etc.*, understood, or in the dative. The better opinion seems to be, that they are in the accusative feminine for *meam, tuam, suam, etc.*, that *rēfert* was originally *rem fert*, and that hence the *e* of *rēfert* is long.

**REM. 3.** Instead of the genitive, an accusative with *ad* is sometimes used; as, *Ad hōnōrem meum intērest quam primum urbem me vēnīre*. Cic. *Quid id ad me aut ad meam rem rēfert*. Plaut.—sometimes, though rarely, an accusative without a preposition; as, *Quid te igitur rētūlit?* Plaut—or a dative; as, *Dic quid rēferat intra nātūras fines viventi*. Hor.

**REM. 4.** The subject of these verbs, or the thing which is of interest or importance, is sometimes expressed by a neuter pronoun; as, *Id mea minime rēfert*. Ter. *Hoc vēmēnter intērest reipūblica*. Cic.; and sometimes by an infinitive with its accusative, or *ut*, or an interrogative particle with a subjunctive clause; as, *multum mea intērest te esse diligētem*, or *ut diligens sis*, or *utrum diligens sis nec ne*. When the infinitive alone is used with *rēfert* or *intērest*, the preceding subject is understood; as, *omnium intērest recte fāere*, scil. *se*.

**REM. 5.** The degree of interest or importance is expressed by adverbs or by neuter adjectives, etc., in the accusative or genitive; as, *magis, magnopere, vēmēnter, parum, minime, etc.*; *multum, plus, plurimum, nihil, aliquid, etc.*; *tanti, quanti, magni, permagni, pluris*. But *minimo* *discrimine rēfert* is found in Juv. 5, 123.

**§ 220.** Many verbs which are usually otherwise construed, are sometimes followed by a genitive. This rule includes

1. Certain verbs denoting an affection of the mind; *ango, discrucior, exscrucio, fallo, pendeo*, which are followed by *animi*; *dēcipior, dēstipio, fallor, fastidiō, invidio, miror, vērēor*; as, *Absurde fācis, qui angas te animi*. Plaut. *Me animi fallit*. Lucr. *Dēcipitur lābōrum*. Hor. *Dēstipiebam mentis*. Plaut. *Iustitiāne prius mirer belline lābōrum*. Virg.

2. The following, in imitation of the Greek idiom; *abstīneo, dēstīno, purgo*. Hor.; *dēsisto*. Virg.; *laudo, prōhibeo*. Sil.; *lēvo, partīcipō*. Plaut.; *libēro*. Liv.; *dissolvō*. Tibull.: compare *liber lābōrum; opērum vācuus; pūrus scēlōris*. § 213.

3. Some verbs denoting to fill, to abound, to want or need, to free, which are commonly followed by an ablative. Such are *abundo, cāreo, compleo, expleo, impleo, ēgeo, indigeo, satiāro, obsatiāro, scāteo*; as, *Adolescentem suā tēmēritātis implet*, He fills the youth with his own rashness. Liv. *Animum explessē flammā*. Virg. *Egeo consilii*. Cic. *Non tam artis indigēt quam lābōris*. Id. See §§ 249 and 250, (2.)

4. *Pōtior*, which also is usually followed by an ablative; as, *Urbis pōtīri*, To make oneself master of the city. Sall. *Pōtīri regni* (Cic.), *hostium* (Sall.), *verum*, To make oneself master of the world. Cic. *Pōtio* (active) occurs in Plautus; as, *Eum nunc pōtīvī servitūtis*, He has made him partaker of slavery. In the same writer, *pōtītus est hostium* signifies, 'he fell into the hands of the enemy.' So, also, *Aliquem compōtīre prædæ* or *vōti*. App. So, *Rērum adēptus est*. Tac. *Dōminātiōnis gpiisci*. Id. *Regnāvī pōptilōrum*. Hor.

## GENITIVE OF PLACE.

§ 221. 1. The name of a town in which any thing is said to be, or to be done, if of the first or second declension and singular number, is put in the genitive; as,

*Habitat Miletī*, He lives at Miletus. Ter. *Quid Rōmæ faciā?* What can I do at Rome? Juv. *Hercūles Tyri maxime cōlitur*. Cic.

NOTE. For the construction of nouns of the third declension or plural number, see § 254. The following appears to be the best explanation that has been given of this diversity of construction, depending solely on the number or declension of the noun. The name of the town 'where' or 'in which' is probably neither in the genitive nor the ablative, but always, as in Greek, in the dative. Since the genitive and dative are alike in the singular of the first declension and the dative and ablative plural are the same in all declensions, such examples as *Rōmæ* and *Athēnis* present no difficulty. In the third declension the dative and ablative singular were anciently alike, and in such ablatives as *Anzūri*, *Carthāgini*, *Lacedæmōni*, the old form remains, see § 82, Exc. 5, (c.) In the second declension there was an old dative in *o*, as in Greek, which was commonly changed to *o*, but sometimes to *i*: and the latter is still found in *nulli*, *uni*, etc., see § 107, and in the adjective pronouns; as, *illi*, etc.

REMARK 1. Names of islands and countries are sometimes put in the genitive, like names of towns; as, *Ithacæ vitēre*, To live in Ithaca. Cic. *Corcyra fuit*. Id. *Cōnon plūrimū Cypri vixit*, *Tīmōtheus Lesbī*. Nep. *Quum Miltiades dōmum Chersonēsī habuit*. Id. *Crētā jussit considere Apollo*. Virg. *Rōmæ Nūmidæque factūra ejus mēmbrat*. Sall.

REM. 2. (a.) Instead of the genitive, the ablative of names of towns of the first and second declension and singular number, is sometimes, though rarely, used; as, *Rez Tyro dēcēdit*, The king dies at Tyre. Just. *Et Cōrintho et Athēnis et Lacedæmōne nunciata est victōria*. Id. *Pons quem ille Abydō fēcerat*. Id. *Hujus exemplar Rōmā nullum habēmus*. Vitruv. *Non Libyæ, non ante Tyro*. Virg. For the explanation of this apparent anomaly, see the preceding note; in accordance with which it may be remarked, that the adverbs of place, *ibi*, *ibidem*, *alibi*, *alibi*, *hic*, *illic*, *istic*, etc., appear from their form to be ancient datives.—(b.) When the noun is qualified by an adjective, it is put, not in the genitive, but in the ablative with *in*; as, *In ipsā Alexandriā*. Cic. And poetically without *in*, *Gēnus Longæ nostrum dōminābitur Albā*. Virg.—(c.) When *urbis*, *oppidum*, *locus*, etc., follow the genitive of place as appositions, they are put in the ablative either with, or, more rarely, without, *in*; as, *Archias Antiōchiæ nātus est, cēlebrī quondam urbe*. Cic. *Cives Rōmānos Neāpōli*, in cēleberrimo oppido *sæpe vidimus*. Id. But when *in urbe*, etc., precede the name of a town, the latter also is put in the ablative; as, *In oppido Citio*. Nep.; and but very rarely in the genitive; as, Cassius *in oppido Antiōchiæ est*,—in the town of Antioch. Cic., where the genitive depends on *oppido*.

REM. 3. The genitives *dōmi*, *militiæ*, *belli*, and *hūmi*, are construed like names of towns; as,

*Tenuit se dōmi*, He staid at home. Cic. *Vir dōmi clārus*. Liv. *Spargit hūmi jussos dentes*,—on the ground. Ovid. *Militiæ* and *belli* are thus used, especially when opposed to *dōmi*; as, *Una semper militiæ et dōmi fuit*,—both at home and in the camp. Ter. *So Dōmi militiæque*. Cic. *Et dōmi et militiæ*. Id. *Militiæ dōnique*. Liv. *Militiæ et dōmi*. Ter. *Belli dōnique*, in war and in peace. Hor.

(1.) *Dōmi* is thus used with the possessives *mea*, *tua*, *sua*, *nostra*, *vestra*, and *aliēna*; as, *Dōmi nostræ vixit*, He lived at my house. Cic. *Apud eum sic fui tamquam meæ dōmi*. Id. *Sacrificium, quod aliēnæ dōmi fieret invisere*. Id. But with other adjectives, an ablative, generally with a preposition, is used; as, *In viduā dōmo*. Ovid. *Paternā dōmo*. Id. Sometimes also with the possessives; as, *Meā in dōmo*. Hor. *In dōmo suā*. Nep. So, instead of *hūmi*, 'upon the ground,'



*hūmo* is sometimes used; with or without a preposition; as, *In hūmo drēnded*. Ovid. *Sēdere hūmo nūdā*. Id.

(2.) When a genitive denoting the possessor follows, either *dōmi* or *in dōmo* is used; as, *Dēprēhensus dōmi Cēsāris*. Cic. *Dōmi illius fuisti*. Id. *In dōmo Cēsāris*. Id. *In dōmo ejus*. Nep.

(3.) The ablative *dōmo* for *dōmi* also occurs, but not in Cicero; as, *Ego id nunc expōior dōmo*. Plaut. *Dōmo se tēnere*. Nep. *Dōmo abditus*. Suet. *Bello for bellī* is found in Livy—*Dōmi belloque*. So, also, *hūmo for hūmī*; *Strātus hūmo*. Stat. *Figit hūmo plantas*. Virg.: and *in hūmo lūmen figit*. Ovid.

(4.) *Terrā* is sometimes used like *hūmī*; as, *Sacrā terrā cēlāvimus*. Liv. *Proiectus terrā*. Virg. *Ignes terrā condit*. Luc. So, also, *drēnā*; *Truncum reliquit ārēnā*. Virg.: and *vicinā*; *Proximā vicināe hābitat*. Plaut.

(5.) The genitive of names of towns, *dōmī*, *militiā*, etc., is supposed by some to depend on a noun understood; as, *urbē*, *oppidō*, *adibus*, *sōlo*, *lōco*, *tempōre*, etc., but see a different explanation above in Note.

### GENITIVE AFTER PARTICLES.

II. Certain adverbs are followed by the genitive. See § 212, R. 4.

III. The genitive plural sometimes depends on the preposition *tēnus*; as,

*Cūmārum tēnus*, As far as Cumæ. Coel. *Crūrū tēnus*. Virg. *Littērū tēnus*. Id. *Urbium Orcyrus tēnus*. Liv.—For the ablative after *tēnus*, and for the place of the preposition, see § 241, and R. 1.

### DATIVE.

§ 222. 1. The dative is the case of reference, as it denotes the object with reference to which the subject acts, or in reference to which it possesses any specified quality; or, in other words, the object for which, to the benefit or loss of which, any thing is or is done. Hence, in distinction from the dative of the end (§ 227) the dative of reference is called *dativus commōdi et incommōdi*, the dative of advantage and disadvantage; as,

*Scribo vōbis hunc librum*, I write this book for you. *Prōsum tibi*, or *Tibi utilis sum*, I am useful to you.

2. Hence the dative of advantage and disadvantage may be used  
(a) with adjectives and particles whose meaning is incomplete unless the object is mentioned in reference to which the quality exists.  
(b) With verbs both transitive and intransitive. If transitive they take an accusative of the nearer and a dative of the remoter object, if intransitive they take a dative only. (c) With certain verbs compounded with prepositions, after which the dative is used instead of the case which the preposition, if separate, would govern. (d) After a few verbal substantives derived from verbs which govern a dative.

### DATIVE AFTER ADJECTIVES.

3. A noun limiting the meaning of an adjective, is put in the dative, to denote the object to which the quality is directed; as,

*Utilis agris*, Useful to the fields Juv. *Jucundus amicis*, Agreeable to his friends. Mart. *Inimicus quieti*, Unfriendly to rest. Id. *Charta inutilis scribendo*, Paper not useful for writing. Plin.

NOTE. The dative is commonly translated by the prepositions *to* or *for*; but sometimes by other prepositions, or without a preposition.

REMARK 1. Adjectives signifying *useful, pleasant, friendly, fit, like, inclined, ready, easy, clear, equal*, and their opposites, also those signifying *near*, many compounded with *con*, and verbals in *tilis*, are followed by the dative; as,

*Felix tuis*, Propitious to your friends. Virg. *Oratio ingrata Gallis*, A speech displeasing to the Gauls. Cæs. *Amicus tyrannidi*, Friendly to tyranny. Nep. *Labori inhabilis*, Unsuitable to labor. Colum. *Patri similis*, Like his father. Cic. *Nihil tam est Lysiae diversum, quam Isocrates. Aptum tempori*. Id. *Malo promus*. Sen. *Promptus seditioni*. Tac. *Cuivis facile est*. Ter. *Mihi certum est*. Cic. *Par fratri tuo*. Id. *Falsa veris finitima sunt*. Id. *Oculi concordes corpori*. Colum. *Multis bonis felix*. Hor. *Mors est terribilis iis, quorum, etc.* Cic.

(a.) The following are some of the adjectives included in Rem. 1, viz. *gratus, acceptus, dulcis, jucundus, letus, suavis; ingratus, insuavis, injucundus, molestus, gravis, acerbus, odiosus, tristis;—utilis, inutilis, bonus, saluber, salutaris, fructuosus; calamitosus, damnosus, funestus, noxius, pestifer, perniciosus, exitiosus;—amicus, benevolus, carus, familiaris, æquus, fidus, fidelis, propitius, secundus; inimicus, adversus, amulus, alienus, contrarius, infestus, infidus, iniquus, tratus;—aptus, accommodatus, appositus, habilis, idoneus, opportunus; ineptus, inhabilis, importunus, inconveniens;—æqualis, par, impar, dispar, similis, dissimilis, absterilis, discolor;—pronus, proclivis, propensus, promptus, paratus;—facilis, difficilis;—apertus, conspicuus, manifestus, perspicuus, obcurus, certus, compertus, notus, ambiguus, dubius, ignotus, incertus, insolitus;—vicinus, finitimus, confinis, contempnus, propior, proximus, cognatus, concolor, concors, congruus, consanguineus, consensuineus, consonus, conveniens, contiguus, continuus, continens.*

(b.) Many adjectives of other significations, including some compounds of *ob, sub*, and *super*, as *obnoxius, obvius, subjectus, supplex*, and *superstes*, are also followed by a dative of the object.

(c.) After verbals in *tilis*, the dative is usually rendered by the preposition *by*; as, *Tibi credibilis sermo*, A speech credible to you, i. e. worthy to be believed by you. Ovid.

(d.) The expression *dicto audiens*, signifying obedient, is followed by the dative; as, *Syracusani nobis dicto audientes sunt*. Cic. *Audiens dicto fuit jussis magistratum*. Nep. In this phrase, *dicto* is a dative limiting *audiens*, and the words *dicto audiens* seem to form a compound equivalent to *obediens*, and, like that, followed by a dative; thus, *Nec plebs nobis dicto audiens atque obediens sit*. Liv. So *dicto obediens*; as, *Patria es dicto obediens, annon, patri?* Plaut.

REM. 2. (a.) The adjectives *æqualis, affinis, alienus, cognominis, communis, contrarius, fidus, insuetus, par, dispar, peculiâris, proprius, propinquus, sacer, similis, assimilis, consimilis, dissimilis, socius, vicinus, superstes, supplex*, and some others, instead of a dative of the object, are sometimes followed by a genitive; as, *Par hujus*, Equal to him. Lucan. *Proprium est oratoris ornate dicere*. Cic. But most of these words, when thus used, seem rather to be taken substantively; as, *Æqualis ejus*, His contemporary. Cic.

(b.) *Similis, assimilis, consimilis, dissimilis, par* and *dispar*, take the genitive, when an internal resemblance, or a resemblance in character or disposition, is to be expressed, and hence we always find *mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri, similis*; as, *Plures reges Romuli quam Numa similes*. Liv.

(c.) *Amicus, inimicus*, and *familiaris*, owing to their character as substantives, take a genitive even in the superlative; as, *Homo amicissimus nostrorum hominum*,—very friendly to our countrymen. Cic. On the other hand, *hostis*, though a substantive, is sometimes used like an adjective, being modified by

an adverb, and taking an object in the dative; as, *Expectantibus omnibus quoniam esset tam impius, tam dēmens, tam diis hominibusque hostis, qui*, etc. Cf. § 277, R. 1.

REM. 3. Some adjectives with the dative are followed by another case denoting a different relation; as, *Mens sibi conscia recti*, A mind conscious to itself of rectitude. Virg. See § 218, R. 7.

REM. 4. Many adjectives, instead of the dative of the object, are often followed by an accusative with a preposition.

(1.) Adjectives signifying useful, fit, and the opposite, take an accusative of the thing with *ad*, but only a dative of the person; as, *Homo ad nullam rem utilis*. Cic. *Locus aptus ad insidias*. Id.

(2.) Adjectives denoting motion or tendency, take an accusative with *ad* more frequently than a dative; as, *Piger ad poenas, ad præmia velox*, Ovid; *Ad aliquem morbum præclivior*, Cic.; *Ad omne facinus paratus*, Id.; *Pronus ad fidem*, Liv.;—sometimes with *in*; as, *Celer in pugnam*. Sil.

(3.) Many adjectives, signifying an affection of the mind, may have an accusative of the object with *in*, *erga*, or *adversus*, instead of the dative; as, *Fidelis in filios*. Just. *Mater acerba in suos partus*. Ovid. *Gratus erga me*. Cic. *Gratum adversus te*. Id. So *Disimilis in dōminum*. Tac.

(4.) Adjectives signifying like, equal, common, etc., when plural, are often followed by the accusative with *inter*; as, *Inter se similes*. Cic. *Hæc sunt inter eos cōmūnia*. Id. *Inter se diversi*. Id.

REM. 5. *Præpior* and *proximus*, instead of the dative, have sometimes, like their primitive *prope*, an accusative; as, *Quod vitium præpius virtutem erat*. Sall. *P. Crassus proximus mære Oceānum hiemarat*. Cæs. *Ager, qui proximus finem Mēgālōpōlitārum est*. Liv. Cf. § 238, 1.

REM. 6. (a.) Some adjectives, instead of the dative, have at times an ablative with a preposition. Thus, *par*, *commūnis*, *consentāneus*, *discors*, with *cum*; as, *Quem pærem cum libris fecisti*. Sall. *Consentāneum cum iis literis*. Cic. *Civitas secum discors*. Liv. So *aliēnus* and *diversus* with *a* or *ab*; as, *Aliēnus a me*, Ter.; *A ratiōne diversus*, Cic.; or without a preposition; as, *Aliēnum nostrā amicitia*. Id.—(b.) *Frētus*, which regularly takes the ablative, is in Livy construed with the dative; as, *fortūnæ frētus*; *nulli rei frētus*, etc. Cf. § 244.—(c.) The participial adjectives *junctus* and *conjunctus*, instead of the dative, take sometimes the ablative either with or without *cum*.

REM. 7. *Idem* is sometimes followed by the dative, chiefly in the poets; as *Jupiter omnibus idem*. Virg. *Invitum qui servat, idem facit* occidenti. Hor. In the first example, *omnibus* is a dative of the object; in the second, the dative follows *idem*, in imitation of the Greek construction with *αὐτός*, and is equivalent to *quod occidens*, or *quod facit is, qui occidit*. *Similis* is construed in the same manner in Hor. Sat. 1, 3, 122. *Idem* is generally followed not by a case, but by *qui*, *ac*, *atque*, *ut*, *quasi*, or *quam*; sometimes by the preposition *cum*. Cf. § 207, R. 27, (d.). *Similis* and *par* are sometimes, like *idem*, followed by *ac* and *atque*.

REM. 8. Some verbal substantives are followed by the dative, when derived from verbs governing the dative; as, *Justitia est cōtemperatio scriptis lēgibus institutisque populōrum*. Cic. *Trāditio dīcūjus rei altēri*. Id. *Exprobratio cuiquam veltēris fortūnæ*. Liv.

NOTE. A dative of the object often follows *esse* and other verbs, in connection with a predicate nominative or accusative, but such dative is dependent, not on the noun, but on the verb. Cf. § 227, R. 4.

## DATIVE AFTER VERBS.

§ 223. A noun limiting the meaning of a verb, is put in the dative, to denote the *object to* or *for* which any thing is, or is done; as,

*Mea dñmus tibi pñtet*, My house is open to you. Cic. *Pars optñre lñcum tecto*, A part choose a site for a building. Virg. *Tibi sñris, tibi mñlis*, You sow for yourself, you reap for yourself. Plaut. *(Licet nñmini contra patriam dñcere exercitum)*, It is not lawful for any one to lead an army against his country. Cic. *Hoc tibi prñmitto*, I promise you this. Id. *Hæret lñteri lñtñlis arundo*. Virg. *Surdo fñbñlam narras*. Hor. *Mihi responsum dñdit*. Virg. *Sic vos non vñbis fertis arñtra, bñves*. Id. *Omnñbus bñnis expñdit salvam esse repñblicam*. Cic. *Aplai hñbendo enseme*. Virg.

NOTE. The dative is thus used after all verbs, whether transitive or intransitive, personal or impersonal, and in both voices, provided their signification admits a reference to a remoter object, for whom or to whose benefit or injury any thing is done. In the passive voice, from their nature, neuter verbs can only be so construed impersonally. Cf. § 142, 1, and § 222, 2.

REMARK 1. The dative after many verbs is rendered not by *to* or *for*, but by other prepositions, or without a preposition. Many intransitive Latin verbs are translated into English by verbs transitive, and the dative after them is usually rendered like the object of a transitive verb.—Most verbs after which the signs *to* and *for* are not used with the dative, are enumerated in this and the following sections.

REM. 2. Many verbs signifying to favor, please, trust, assist, and their contraries, also to command, obey, serve, resist, threaten, and be angry, take a dative of the object.

NOTE. The neuter verbs comprehended in this rule generally express in the verbal form the meaning of those adjectives, which are followed by the dative, (cf. § 222, R. 1.) Thus, (a.) *Illa tibi fñvet*, She favors you, or is favorable to you. Ovid. *Mihi plñcebat Pompñnius, minñme dispñcebat*. Cic. *Qui sibi fidit*. Hor. *Non licet sui commñdi causñ nocere altñri*. Cic. *Non invideñtur illi etñti sed etñam fñvetur*. Id. *Despñrat salñti sui*. Id. *Nñque mñhi vestra decreta auxiliantur*. Sall. *Impñrat aut servit collecta pecñnia cuique*. Hor. *Obedire et parere volñntñti*. Cic. *Quñnam factiñni inimicñrum resistere nñquivñrit*. Sall. *Mñhi minñbñtur*. Cic. *Irasci inimicis*. Cæs.

(b.) So *Adalor, assentior, blandior, commñdo, fñveo, gratñficor, grñtor, grñtñlor*, and its verbal *grñtñlñbundus, ignosco, indulgeo, lenñctor, palpor, parco, plaudo, respondeo, stñdeo, suppñrñssitor; amñlor, incommñdo, invideo, nñceo, obsum, officio; arrñdeo, plñceo; dispñtceo; crñdo, fñdo, confido; despñro, diffido; admñnicñlor, auxiliñtor, mñdeor, mñdicor, opñtñlor, patrñctor, prñsum, subvñnio, succurro; dñsum, insidior; impñro, mando, mñdñror, prñcipio, tempñro; ausculto, morigñror, obedio, obsñcundo, obseqñor, obtempñro, pareo, dicto audiens sum; ancillor, famñlor, ministror, servio, inservio, prñstñlor; adversor, refrñgor, obsto, obrecto, relñctor, renñtor, repñgno, resisto, and, chiefly in the poets, bello, certo, luctor, pugno; minñor, commñnor, interminñor; irascor, succenseo, stñmñchor*.—To these may be added *æquo, dñæquo, convñctor, dñgññro, excello, nñbo, suppñdñto, prævñricor, rñcipio* (to promise), *renñuncio, suadeo, persuadeo, dissuadeo, supplico, vñco, videor*, and sometimes *misceo* and *lñteo*:—also the impersonals *accidit, convñnit, conducit, contingit, dñcet, dñlet, expñdit, licet, libet, or libet, liquet, placet*, etc.—(c.) Intransitive verbs governing a dative are often used impersonally in the passive with the same case; as, *mñhi invideñtur*, I am envied. *Mñhi mñlñdñtur*, I am reviled. *Mñhi parñtur*, I am spared. Hor. *Hoc persuadñtur mñhi*, I am persuaded of this.

(1.) (a.) Many of the above verbs, which, as intransitive, take the dative, sometimes become transitive and are followed by an accusative; as, *adñlor, ausculto, blandior, dñgññro, despñro, indulgeo, lñteo, mñdeor, mñdicor, mñdñror, obrecto, prñstñlor, prñvideo*, etc.; as, *Adulñri ñlñquem*. Cic. *Hanc cñve dñgññres*. Ovid. *Indulgeo me*. Ter. *Hujus adventum prñstñlans*. Cæs. *Prñvidere rem frñmentñrñam*. Id.—Sometimes also by a preposition and the ablative or accusative; as, *A stñlñcis dñgññrñvit Pñnatius*. Cic. *De repñblicñ despñrñre*. Id. *Obrectñrunt inter se*. Nep.—or by a dependent clause; as, *Quñ despñrat tractñtta nñtescere posse, relñquit*. Hor.

(b.) Others, as transitive verbs, have, with the dative, an accusative, expressed or understood; as, *impéro, mando, ministro, mitor, comminor, interminor, precipio, récipio, rénuccio*, etc.; as, *Equites imperat civitatibus*; where *cogendas* is perhaps to be supplied, He enjoins upon the states the providing of cavalry. Cæs. See § 274, R. 5. *Ministrare victum dūcui*. Varr. *Deflagrationem urbi et Italia toti minabatur*. Cic.

(c.) *Æquo* and *adæquo* are construed with the accusative and either the dative or *cum* with the ablative.—*Invideo* takes either a single dative of the person or thing, a dative of the person and an accusative of the thing; as, *Honorem mihi invident*. Hor.; or, when *invidere* is used in the sense of *privare*, a dative of the person and an ablative of the thing; as, *Non inviderunt laude sua mulieribus*. Liv. In Horace, by a Greek construction, the genitive is once used instead of the accusative or ablative of the thing; as, *Næque ille sèpòsiti cicëris nec longos invidet ævæna*.

(d.) *Cedo*, used transitively, takes a dative of the person and an accusative of the thing; but sometimes the thing is expressed by the ablative; as, *cedere dūcui possessione hortorum*. So, also, *concedo tibi locum*, or *concedo tibi loco*.

(2.) Many verbs which, from their significations, might be included in the above classes, are, as transitive verbs, only followed by an accusative; as, *dēlecto, jūvo, adjūvo, adjūto, lædo, offendo*, etc.—*Jūbeo* is followed by the accusative with an infinitive, and sometimes by the accusative alone, or the dative with the infinitive or subjunctive; as, *Jūbeo te bene sperare*. Cic. *Læx jūbet ea quæ faciendæ sunt*. Id. *Ubi Britannico jussit exurgere*. Tac. *Quibus jussérat, ut instantibus résisterent*. Id.—*Fido* and *confido* are often followed by the ablative, with or without a preposition; as, *Fidere cursu*. Ovid. Cf. § 245.

§ 224. Many verbs compounded with these eleven prepositions, *ad, antè, cōn, in, intèr, ob, post, præ, prò, sub, and supèr*, are followed by the dative; as,

*Annue cœptis*, Be favorable to our undertakings. Virg. *Rōmānis equitibus lītēre affèruntur*, Letters are brought to the Roman knights. Cic. *Antècellere omnibus*, To excel all. Id. *Antètūlū iræ religiōnem*. Nep. *Audetque viris concurrere virgo*. Virg. *Exercitum exercitui, dūces dūcibus compārare*. Liv. *Imminet his arx*. Ovid. *Pecōri signum impressit*. Virg. *Nox prælio intèrvēnit*. Liv. *Interdixit histriōnibus scēnam*. Suet. *Meis commōdis officis et obstat*. Cic. *Cum se hostium tēlis objēcissent*. Id. *Posthūbui mea sēria lūdo*. Virg. *Certāmini præsidit*. Suet. *Hibernis Labiēnum præposuit*. Cæs. *Gēnibus præcumbere*. Ovid. *Misēris succurrere disco*. Virg. *Iis substidia submittēbat*. Cæs. *Timidis supèrvēnit Ægle*. Virg.

NOTE 1. This rule implies that the compound retains the meaning of the preposition; and the dative following such compound is then used instead of the case governed by the preposition. When such compounds are transitive they have with the dative an accusative also, like other transitive verbs.

1. *Accedo, accresco, accumbo, acquiesco, adæquito, adhæreo, adjaceo, aīno, aīnāto, adsto, adstipulor, adsum, adversor, afflugeo, allabor, allādo, annuo, appāreo, applaudo, appropinquo, arripō, arrideo, aspīro, assentior, assideo, assisto, assuesco, assurgo;—addo, adhūbeo, adjicio, adjungo, admōveo, adverto, advolvo, affèro, affigo, alligo, appōno, applico, aspergo.*

2. *Antècedo, antècello, anteco, antesto, antèvénio, antèverto;—antèfèro, antèhūbeo, antèpōno.*

3. *Cōhæreo, collādo, concīno, congruo, consentio, consōno, consuesco, contīvo, and, chiefly in the poets, cōto, concumbo, concuro, contendo;—confèro, conjungo, compāro, compōno.*

4. *Incido, incūdo, incumbo, indormio, ingēmisco, inhæreo, inlūto, innascor, insulor, insūleo, insisto, insūdo, insulto, invādo, invigilo, illacrimo, illādo, innīneo, innodior, innōdor, impendeo, insum;—immisceo, impertio, impōno, imprīmo, incido, inclādo, induo, infèro, ingēro, injicio, insēro, inspergo, insuesco, insūro.*

5. *Intercēdo, intercedo, interclādo, interjaceo, intermīco, intersum, intervénio;—interdico, interficio, interpōno*

6. *Obavetūlo, oborro, obdequito, obductor, obmurmuro, obrepe, obeto, obesto, obestrepo, obsum, obtracto, obvenio, obversor, occumbo, occurro, occurso, officio;—obūco, obijcio, offēro, offundo, oppōno.*

7. *Postfēro, posthabeo, postpōno, postpūto, postscribo.*

8. *Præcēto, præcurro, præeo, præluco, præmineo, præmitto, præstideo, præsum, prævaldeo, prævertor;—præfēro, præfacio, præpōno.*

9. *Præcumbo, præficio, præpugno, prospicio, prævideo.*

10. *Sucrēdo, succresco, succumbo, succurro, sufficio, suffragor, subdeleo, subjūceo, subrepto, subsum, subvenio;—subdo, subjicio, subjūgo, submitto, suppono, substerno.*

11. *Supercurro, supersto, supersum, supervenio, superveio.*

NOTE 2. In some verbs compounded with prepositions the meaning of the preposition is lost. Such compounds are either not followed by a dative, or the case depends, not on the preposition, but on the signification of the verb, according to § 223.

REMARK 1. (a.) Some verbs, compounded with *ab, de, ex, circum,* and *contra,* are occasionally followed by the dative; as, *absūm, dēsūm, delābor, despēro, excido, circūdo, circūfundo, circūmjāceo, circūmjicio, contrādico, contrāeo;* as, *Serta capiti delapsa,* The garlands having fallen from his head. Virg. *Numquid nunquam exciderunt tibi?* Plaut. *Tigris urbi circumfunditur.* Plin. *Sibi desperans.* Cæs.—(b.) *Circūdo* and *circūfundo* take either an accusative of the thing with a dative of the person, or an ablative of the thing with an accusative of the person; as, *circūdo alicui custōdias,* or *circūdo alicquem custōdiis.* *Aspergo, inspergo, dōno, impertio, exuo,* and *induo,* are construed in the same manner. Cf. § 251, R. 2.

REM. 2. Some verbs of repelling and taking away (most of which are compounds of *ab, de,* or *ex*), are sometimes followed by the dative, though more commonly by the ablative; as, *abigo, abrogo, abscondo, aufēro, adimo, arceo, defendo, dēmo, depello, derogo, destrāho, ērtipio, ēruo, excutio, extimo, extorqueo, extrāho, exuo, prohibeo, surripio.* Thus, *Nec mihi te ērtipient,* Nor shall they take you from me. Ovid. *Solstitium pecōri defendite.* Virg. *Hunc arcēbis pecōri.* Id. So rarely *abrumpo, aliēno, fūror,* and *rūpio.*

REM. 3. Some verbs of differing (compounds of *dis* or *dis*) likewise occur with the dative, instead of the ablative with the preposition *ab,* or poetically with the ablative alone; as, *diffēro, discrēpo, discordo, dissēntio, dissideo, disto;* as, *Quantum simplex hilarisque nepoti discrepet, et quantum discordet, parvus livaro.* Hor. *Distābi infido scurræ amicus.* Hor. *Græcis Tuscānicæ statua diffērent.* Quint. *Comædia differt sermōni.* Hor. So likewise *misceo;* as, *Mista modestiæ gravitas.* Cic.

REM. 4. Many verbs compounded with prepositions, especially with *ad, con,* and *in,* instead of the dative, either constantly or occasionally take the case of the preposition, which is frequently repeated. Sometimes, also, a preposition of similar signification is used; as, *Ad primam vocem timidas advertitis aures.* Ovid. *Nemo eum antecessit.* Nep. *Saxa rides solā coalescere calce.* Lucr. *Infērent omnia in ignem.* Cæs. *Silex incumbēbat ad amnem.* Virg. *Innixus mōdērāmine nātis.* Ovid. *In Pansam frātre innixus.* Plin. *Conferre hanc pārem cum illo bello.* Cic. In this substitution of one preposition for another, *ad* is used for *in,* and *in* for *ad;* *ab* for *ex;* *ad,* *antē,* *contrā,* and *in,* for *ob;* *ad* and *antē,* for *pro.*

REM. 5. Neuter verbs of motion or of rest in a place, when compounded with the prepositions, *ad, antē, cōn, in,* etc., either take the dative, or, acquiring an active signification, are followed by the accusative; as, *Helvētii reliquos Gallos virtute præcedunt,* The Helvetii surpass the other Gauls in valor. Cæs. *Uterque, Isocrātem atque præcurrit.* Cic. So *præeo, præsto, prævertō, procello.* See § 223, (3.)

§ 225. I. Verbs compounded with *satis, bene,* and *male,* are followed by the dative; as,

*Et nātūræ et lēgibus sātisfēcit*, He satisfied both nature and the laws. Cic. *Tibi dī bēnēfāciunt omnes*, May all the gods bless you. Plaut. But also, *Amīcum erga bēne fēcī*. Id. *Mālēdicit utrique*. Hor. So *sātisdo*, *bēnēdico*, *mālēfācio*.

NOTE. These compounds are often written separately; and the dative always depends not on *sātis*, *bēne*, and *male*, but on the simple verb. So, also, *bēne* and *male altici vōlo*; as, *Tibi bēne ex animo vōlo*. Ter. *Illi ego ex omnibus optime vōlo*. Plaut. *Non sibi malē vult*. Petron. In like manner *vālēre dico*, and *vāle dico*; as, *Augustus discēdens (e cūria) sēdentibus singulis vālēre dicebat*. Suet. *Tibi vālēdicere non licet grātis*. Sen.—In late writers *bēnēdico* and *mālēdico* sometimes take the accusative.

II. Verbs in the passive voice are sometimes followed by a dative of the agent, chiefly in the poets and the later prose writers; as, *Quiddid in hac causā mihi susceptum est*. Cic. *Nēque cernitur ulli*, Nor is he seen by any one. Virg. *Nulla tuarum audita mihi nēque visa sorōrum*. Id. *Barbārus hic ego sum, quia non intelligor ulli*. Ovid. But the agent after passives is usually in the ablative with *a* or *ab*. See § 248, I.

III. The participle in *dus* is followed by a dative of the agent; as,

*Unda omnibus enaviganda*, The wave over which (we) all must pass. Hor. *Nōbis, cum sēmel occidit brēvis lux, Nox est perpētua ūna dormienda*. Catull. *Adhibenda est nōbis diligētia*, We must use diligence. Cic. *Vestigia summōrum hōminum sibi tuenda esse dicit*. Id. *Si vis me flere, dolendum est primum ipsi tibi*. Hor. *Fāciendum mihi putāvi, ut responderem*. Id.

REMARK 1. The dative is sometimes wanting when the agent is indefinite; as, *Orandum est, ut sit mens sāna in corpore sāno*. Juv. *Hic vincendum aut moriendum, milites, est*. Liv. In such examples, *tibi*, *vōbis*, *nōbis*, *hōminibus*, etc., may be supplied. Cf. § 141, R. 2.

REM. 2. The participle in *dus* sometimes, though rarely, has, instead of the dative of the agent, an ablative with *ā* or *ab*; as, *Non eos in deōrum immortalium nūmēro vērērandos a vōbis et cōlendos putātos?* Cic. *Hæc a me in dicendo præstereunda non sunt*. Id.—The dative after participles in *dus* is by some referred to § 226.

IV. Verbs signifying motion or tendency are followed by an accusative with *ad* or *in*; as,

*Ad templum Pallādīs ibant*. Virg. *Ad prætōrem hōminem traxit*. Cic. *Vergit ad septemtriones*. Cæs. In conspectum venīre. Nep.

So *curro*, *dūco*, *fēro*, *festino*, *fūgio*, *inclino*, *lēgo*, *mitto*, *pergo*, *porto*, *præcipito*, *prōpēro*, *tendo*, *tollo*, *vādo*, *verto*.

REMARK 1. So likewise verbs of calling, exciting, etc.; as, *Evum ad se vocat*. Virg. *Prōvocasse ad pugnam*. Cic. So *animō*, *hortor*, *incito*, *invito*, *lācesso*, *stimulo*, *suscito*; to which may be added *attineo*, *conformo*, *pertineo*, and *specto*.

REM. 2. But the dative is sometimes used after these verbs; as, *Clāmōr ī cœlo*. Virg. *Dum tibi lītēræ meæ veniant*. Cic. *Grēgem vītīdī compellēre hībisco*. Virg. *Sēdibus hunc rēfer ante suis*. Id. After *venio* both constructions are used at the same time; as, *Venit mihi in mentem*. Cic. *Venit mihi in suspiciōnem*. Nep. *Eum venisse Germānis in amicitiam cognōverat*. Cæs. *Prōpinquo* (to approach) takes the dative only.

REM. 3. Sometimes also verbs signifying motion are followed by an accusative of place without a preposition, a supine in *um*, an infinitive, or an adverb of place; as, *Rōmam prōfectus est*. *Ite dōmum*. *Rus ibam*. *Lāvīnia venit hītōrē*. Virg. *Nēque ego te dērisum venio*. Plaut. *Non nos Libycos pōpūlāre pēnates venimus*. Virg. *Huc venit*. Plaut. See §§ 237, 276, II. 271, N. 2.

REM. 4. After *do*, *scribo*, or *mitto lītērās*, the person for whom they are written or to whom they are sent, is put either in the dative or in the accusative with *ad*; as, *Ex eo loco tibi lītērās ante dēdrāmus*. Cic. *Vulturcius lītērās sibi*

ad Catillinam *dātus esse, dicebat*. Id. *Cæsar scribit* Labiēno *cum*, etc. Cæs. Ad me *Cælius de te scripsit*. Cic. But to give one a letter to deliver is also expressed by *dāre lītēras ālicui*, and also the delivery of the letter by the bearer.

§ 226. *Est* is followed by a dative denoting a *possessor*;—the thing possessed being the subject of the verb.

*Est* thus used may generally be translated by the verb *to have* with the dative as its subject; as, *Est mihi dōmī pāter*, I have a father at home. Virg. *Sunt nobis mīlia pōma*, We have mellow apples. Id. *Grātīa nobis ōpus est tuā*, We have need of your favor. Cic. *Innocentiæ plus pēriculī quam hōnōris est*. Sall. *An nescis longas rēgibus esse mānus*? Ovid. So with an infinitive as the subject, *Nec tibi sī dūros ācuisse in prœlia dentes*. Tib. 4, 3, 3. The first and second persons of *sum* are not thus construed.

REMARK 1. Hence *mihi est nōmen* signifies, I have the name, my name is, or I am called. The proper name is put either in the nominative, the dative, or the genitive. See § 204, R. 8. So also *cognōmen*, *cognōmentum*, and, in Tacitus, *vocabulum*, *est mihi*.—Sometimes, also, a possessive adjective agreeing with *nōmen*, etc., supplies the place of the proper name; as, *Est mihi nōmen Tarquinius*. Gell. *Mercūriale impōsuere mihi cognōmen*. Hor.

REM. 2. The dative is used with a similar signification after *fōre*, *suppedit*, *ādest*, *deest*, and *dēfit*; as, *Pauper enim non est, cui rērum suppedit usus*. Hor. *Sī mihi cauda fōret, cercopithēcus eram*. Mart. *Dēfuit ars vōbis*. Ovid. *Non dēfōre Arsacidis virtutem*. Tac. *Lac mihi non dēfit*. Virg. *Hoc unum illi abfuit*. Cic.

REM. 3. With the dative of the person after *est* Sallust and Tacitus sometimes join, by a Greek idiom, *vōlens*, *cūpiens*, and *inuitus*; as, *Quia nēque plēbī mīlitia vōlenti (esse) putābatur*, Because the common people were not thought to like the war. Sall. *Ut quibusque bellum inuitis aut cūpientibus erat*, According as each liked or disliked the war. Tac.

#### DATIVE OF THE END OR PURPOSE.

§ 227. *Sum*, and several other verbs, are followed by two datives, one of which denotes the *object to which*, the other the *end for which*, any thing is, or is done; as,

*Mihi maxīmæ est cūræ*, It is a very great care to me. Cic. *Spēro nobis hanc conjunctionem vōluptātī fōre*, I hope this union will afford us pleasure. Id. *Mātri puellam dōno dedit*. Ter. *Fābio laudi dātum est*. Cic. *Vitio id tibi vertunt*. Plaut. *Id tibi hōnōri habētur*. Cic. *Mātūravit collēgæ vēnīre auxilio*. Liv. *Cui bōno fuit*? To whom was it an advantage? Cic.

REMARK 1. The verbs after which two datives occur, are *sum*, *fōre*, *fio*, *do*, *dōno*, *dāco*, *hābeo*, *rēlinquo*, *tribuo*, *verto*; also *curro*, *eo*, *mitto*, *prōficiscor*, *venio*, *appōno*, *asigno*, *cēdo*, *compāro*, *pāteo*, *suppedito*, *ēmo*, and some others.

REM. 2. The dative of the *end* or *purpose* is often used after these verbs, without the dative of the object; as,

*Exemplo est formica*, The ant (serves for) an example. Hor. *Absentium bōna divisui fūere*. Liv. *Rēliquit pignōri putāmina*. Plaut. *Quæ ēsui et pōtui sunt*. Gell. *Esse dērisui*, To be a subject of ridicule. Tac. *Rēceptui cānere*, To sound a retreat. Cæs. *Aliquid dōti dicāre*, To set out as dowry. Cic.

REM. 3. (a.) The verb *sum*, with a dative of the end, may be variously rendered; as by the words *brings*, *affords*, *serves*, *does*, etc. The sign *for* is often omitted with this dative, especially after *sum*; instead of it, *as*, or some other particle, may at times be used; as,



*Ignavia erit tibi magno dēdēcōri*, Cowardice will bring great disgrace to you. Cic. *Ille res est argūto*, This thing is an argument, or serves as an argument. Id. *Hoc vitio mihi dant*, This they set down as a fault in me. *Universos cūræ habuit*. Suet. *Una res erat magno ūsui*. .... was of great use. Lucil. *Quod tibi magnopere gordi est, mihi vehēmenter displicet*, What is a great pleasure, an object of peculiar interest to you, etc. Id.

(b.) Sometimes the words *fit*, *able*, *ready*, etc., must be supplied, especially before a gerund or a gerundive; as, *Quum solvendo ciuitates non essent*, .... not able to pay. Cic. *Divites, qui onēri fērendo essent*. Liv. *Quæ restinguendo igni fōrent*. Liv. *Rādix ejus est vescendo*. Plin.

REM. 4. Instead of the dative of the end, a predicate nominative or accusative is sometimes used; as, *Nātūrā tu illi pater es*, By nature you are his father. *Amor est exitium pecōri*: or the purpose is expressed by the accusative with *ad* or *in*; as, *Alīcui cōmes est ad bellum*. Cic. *Se Rēmis in clientelam dīcābant*. Cæs.: or by the ablative with *pro*; as, *Innocentia pro mālivolentiā duci capīt*. Sall. *Alcibus sunt arbōres pro cūbillibus*. Cæs.

REM. 5. Instead, also, of the dative of the end or purpose, *quo?* to what end? for what purpose? why? sometimes occurs, with an accusative, which generally depends on a verb understood, or with an infinitive or a clause; as, *Quo mihi fortunam, si non conceditur ūti?* Hor. *Quo tibi, Pasiphae, pretiosas sūnēre vestes?* Ovid.

REM. 6. After *do* and other similar active verbs an accusative of the purpose is found in apposition; as, *Lātini cōrōnam auream Jovī dōnum in Cāpitlūm mittunt*. Liv. *Alīcui cōmitem esse dātum*. Cic. Cf. § 204, R. 1; and § 230, R. 2.

NOTE. The dative, instead of the accusative, is sometimes used after the infinitive, when a dative precedes, and the subject of the infinitive is omitted; as, *Vōbis necesse est fortibus esse viris*. Liv. *Maximo tibi et civi et dūci evādere contigit*. Val. Max. See §§ 205, R. 6, and 239, R. 1.

## DATIVE AFTER PARTICLES.

§ 228. Some particles are followed by the dative of the object; as,

1. Some adverbs derived from adjectives; as,

*Prōpius Tibēri quam Thermōpylis*. Nep. *Proxime castris*, Very near to the camp. Cæs. *Prōpius stābūlis armenta tēnērent*. Virg. *Congruenter nātūræ, convēnienterque vivēre*, Agreeably to nature. Cic. *Epicūrus quam sibi constanter convēnienterque dīcat, non laborat*. Id. *Nēmīni nīnium bēne est*. Afran. *Mihi numquam in vilā fuit mēlius*. Hor. *Vivēre vitæ hōmīnum amice*. Cic. *Bēne mihi, bēne vōbis*. Plaut. So, *Mihi obviam vēnistī*. Cic. *In certāmina sævo comminus ire viro*. Sil. *Quæstōres prōvinciæ mihi præsto fuērunt*. Cic. *Sāmos est exalversum Milēto*. App.

REMARK. *Prōpius* and *proxime*, like their primitive *prōpe*, are sometimes construed with *a* and the ablative; as, *Prōpe a meis ædibus*. Cic. *Stellæ errantes prōpius a terris*. Id. *A Surā proxime est Philiscum, oppidum Parthōrum*. Plin.

2. Certain prepositions, especially in comic writers; as, *Mihi clam est*, It is unknown to me. Plaut. *Contra nobis*. Id. But in such instances they seem rather to be used like adjectives.

3. Certain interjections; as, *Hei mihi!* Ah me! Virg. *Væ mihi!* Wo is me! Ter. *Væ victis esse!* Liv. *Væ misero mihi*. Plaut. *Hem tibi*. Id. *Ecce tibi*. Cic.

NOTE. (a.) The dative of the substantive pronouns seems sometimes nearly redundant, but it always conveys the expression of a lively feeling, and is therefore termed *dātivus sctivus*; as,

*Fur mihi es*, .... in my opinion. Plant. *An ille mihi liber, cui mulier imperat?* Cic. *Tongilium mihi eduxit.* Id. *Ubi nunc nobis deus ille magister?* Virg. *Ecce tibi Sēbōsus!* Cic. *Item tibi talentum argenti!* Philippicum est. Plant. *Sibi* is sometimes subjoined quite pleonastically to *suis*; as, *Suo sibi gladio hunc jūgulo.* Plant. *Ignorans suo sibi servit patri.* Id. *Sibi suo tempore.*

(b.) The following phrases also occur with *volo* and a reflexive pronoun: *quid tibi vis?* what do you want? *quid sibi iste vult?* what does he want? *quid vult sibi hæc oratio?* what does this speech mean? *quid hæc sibi dōna volunt?* what is the meaning of these presents? or, what is their object?

## ACCUSATIVE.

### ACCUSATIVE AFTER VERBS.

§ 229. The object of a transitive verb is put in the accusative; as,

*Lēgātos mittunt*, They send ambassadors. Cæs. *Animus movet corpus*, The mind moves the body. Cic. *Da veniam hanc*, Grant this favor. Ter. *Eum imitāti sunt*, They imitated him. Cic. *Piscem Sŷri vērērantur.* Id.

REMARK 1. A transitive verb, with the accusative, often takes a genitive, dative, or ablative, to express some additional relation; as,

*Te convinco amentię*, I convict you of madness. Cic. *Da locum meliōribus*, Give place to your betters. Ter. *Solcit se Teucra luctu*, Troy frees herself from grief. Virg. See those cases respectively.

REM. 2. Such is the difference of idiom between the Latin and English languages, that many verbs considered transitive in one, are used as intransitive in the other. Hence, in translating transitive Latin verbs, a preposition must often be supplied in English; as, *Ut me caveret*, That he should beware of me. Cic. On the other hand, many verbs, which in Latin are intransitive, and do not take an accusative, are rendered into English by transitive verbs; as, *Ille mihi favet*, He favors me: and many verbs originally intransitive acquire a transitive signification.

REM. 3. The verb is sometimes omitted:—

1. To avoid its repetition; as, *Eventum sēnātus, quem (scil. dāre) vidēbūtur, dābit.* Liv.

2. The interrogative interjection *quid?* what? depends on *ais* or *censes*. So also *quid vērō?* *quid igitur?* *quid ergo?* *quid enim?* which are always followed by another question, and both questions may be united into one proposition, the first serving merely to introduce the interrogation. With *quid postea?* *quid tum?* supply *sequitur*. With *quid quod*, occurring in transitions, *dicam de eo* is omitted, but it may be rendered 'nay,' 'nay even,' 'but now,' 'moreover,' etc., without an interrogation.—*Dicam* is also to be supplied with *quid multa?* *quid plāra?* *ne multa;* *ne multis;* *ne plūra*. The infinitive *dicere* is also sometimes omitted; as, *Nimis multa videor de me.* Cic. *Perge reliqua.* Id.

REM. 4. The accusative is often omitted:—

1. When it is a reflexive pronoun; as, *Nox præcipitat, scil. se.* Virg. *Tum prōra avertit.* Id. *Eo lavātum, scil. me.* Hor.

The reflexives are usually wanting after *aboleo*, *abstīneo*, *accingo*, *adæquo*, *æquo*, *agglomerō*, *augeo*, *cēlō*, *congemino*, *continuo*, *dēclino*, *dēclino*, *dēclino*, *dēsino*, *diffēro*, *dūro*, *erumpo*, *flecto*, *dēflecto*, *facesso*, *incipio*, *inclino*, *instīnuo*, *irumpo*, *jungo*, *lavo*, *lazo*, *lēnio*, *mātāro*, *mollio*, *mōtro*, *māto*, *pōno*, *præcipitō*, *prōrumpto*, *quātio*, *rēmīto*, *retracto*, *sēdo*, *sisto*, *stabulo*, *suppedito*, *tardo*, *tēneo*, *tendo*, *trājicio*, *transmitto*, *turbo*, *vario*, *vergo*, *verto*, *dēverto*, *rēverto*, *vestio*, *vibro*; and more rarely after many others.

2. When it is something indefinite, has been previously expressed in any case, or is easily supplied; as, *Ego, ad quos scribam, nescio, scil. literas.* Cic. *De quo et tecum ēgi diligenter, et scripsi ad te.* Id. *Bēne fecit Silius.* Id. *Dūcūt in hostem, scil. exercitum.* Liv.

REM. 5. An infinitive, or one or more substantive clauses, may supply the place of the accusative after an active verb; as,

*Da mihi fallere.* Hor. *Reddes dulce loqui, reddes ridere decorem.* Id. *Cupio me esse clementem.* Cic. *Athenienses statuērunt ut naves conscenderent.* Id. *Vereor ne a doctis reprehendar.* Id. *Euæ, Bacche, sonat.* Ovid. Sometimes both constructions are united; as, *Di Iram miserantur inānem amborum, et tantos mortaliūbus esse labores.* Virg.—Respecting the infinitive with and without a subject-accusative after an active verb, see § 270–273; and for the subjunctive after such verbs, see § 273.

(a.) In such constructions, the *subject* of the dependent clause is sometimes put in the accusative as the *object* of the leading verb; as, *Nosti Marcellum, quam tardus sit, for Nosti quam tardus sit Marcellus.* Cic. *Illum, ut vivat, optant.* Ter. *At te ego faciam, ut minus valeas.* Plant.

(b.) An ablative with *de* may also supply the place of the accusative, by the ellipsis of some general word denoting *things, facts, etc.*, modified by such ablative; as, *De republicā vestrā paucis accipe.* Sall. Compare a similar omission of a *subject* modified by *de* and the ablative, § 209, R. 3, (2.)

REM. 6. The impersonal verbs of feeling, *miseret, pœnitet, pudet, tædet, piget, miserescit, miseretur*, and *pertæsum est*, are followed by an accusative of the person exercising the feeling, and a genitive of the object in respect to which it is exercised. Cf. § 215, (1.); as,

*Eorum nos miseret,* We pity them. Cic. The impersonal *Vertum est* also occurs with such an accusative; *Quos non est vertum pœnere*, etc. Cic.

REM. 7. *Juvat, delectat, fallit, fugit, præterit, and decet*, with their compounds, take an accusative of the person; as,

*Te hilari animo esse valde me juvat,* That you are in good spirits greatly delights me. Cic. *Fugit me ad te scribere.* Cic. *Illud alterum quam sit difficile, te non fugit.* Id. *Nec vero Cæsarem fefellerit.* Cæs. *Facis, ut te decet.* Ter. So also when used personally; as, *Parvum parva decet.* Hor.; but *decet* often takes the accusative of the person with the infinitive; as, *Hanc maculam nos decet effugere.* Ter.; and in comic writers a dative; as, *Vobis decet.* Ter.

For *mea, tua, sua, nostra, vestra*, after *refert* and *interest*, see § 219, R. 1: and for the accusative by attraction, instead of the nominative, see § 208, (6.) (b.)

§ 230. Verbs signifying to name or call; to choose, render or constitute; to esteem or reckon, which in the passive voice have two nominatives, are followed in the active voice by two accusatives, one of the *object* and the other of the *predicate*. Cf. § 210, R. 3, (3.); as,

*Urbem ex Antiōchi patris nōmine Antiōchiam vocavit,* He called the city Antioch, etc. Just. *Ludos facis me,* You make game of me. Plant. *Me consulem fecistis.* Cic. *Iram bene Ennius initium dixit insaniæ.* Id. *Ancum Marcium regem populum creavit.* Liv. *Sulpiciū accusatorem suum numerabat,* non compertitorem. Cic. *Quum vos testes habeam.* Nep.

NOTE 1. The following are among the verbs included in this rule, viz. *appello, dico, nōmino, nuncupo, perhibeo, sūto, scribo and inscribo, voco; capio, constituo, creō, dēclaro, dēligo, dēsigno, dico, eligo, facio, efficio, insituo, lēgo, prōdo, reddo, rēnuncio; dūco, dignor, existimo, habeo, iudico, nūmero, pūto, rēperio, intelligo, inveniō, se præbere or præsūbere, etc.*

NOTE 2. An ablative with *ex* occurs, though rarely, instead of the accusative of the object; as, *Fortūna me, qui liber fuēram, servum fecit, e summo infitum.* Plant. Cf. *Qui recta prava faciunt.* Ter.

NOTE 3. An infinitive may supply the place of the objective accusative; as, *Si simulassem vocat crimen.* Ovid.:—and sometimes of the predicate accusative

also; as, *Si rep̄r̄re v̄cas amittere certius; aut si scire ubi sit rep̄r̄re v̄cas.* Id. So also an adjective may supply the place of the predicate accusative; as, *Præbuit se dignum suis m̄joribus.* Cic. *Cædrem certiorẽ faciunt.* Cæs.

REMARK 1. After verbs signifying to esteem or reckon, one of the accusatives is often the subject, and the other the predicate, of *esse* expressed or understood; as,

*Eum av̄rum possũmus existim̄re.* Cic. *Talem se imp̄ratorem præbuit.* Nep. *Præsta te eum, qui mihi es cognitus.* Cic. *Mercũrium omnium inventorem artium f̄runt;* hunc vid̄rum atque itin̄rum dũcem arbitrantur. Cæs.; or an adjective supplies the place of the predicate accusative; as, *Ne me existim̄ris ad manendum esse propensiorẽ.* Cic.

NOTE 4. Instead of the predicate accusative, (1) *pro* with the ablative sometimes follows *p̄t̄o*, *d̄ico*, and *habeo*, but denotes only an approximation; as, *Aliquid pro certo habere* or *p̄t̄are.* *Ea pro falsis d̄icit.* Sall. *Aliquem pro hoste habere.* Cæs.—So also *in* with the ablative; as, *Nihil præter virtutem in bonis habere.* Cic. *Aliquem in nũmero hostium dũcere.* Cic.—and the ablative without *in*; as, *Uti vos affinium loco dũcerem.* Sall.—So also *e* or *ex* with the ablative; as, *(Ut) faceret quod e rep̄blicã fideque suã dũceret.* Liv.—Sometimes (2) the genitive; as, *Officii d̄uxit exor̄re filia patrem.* Suet. (See § 211, R. 8, § 5.) So with a genitive or an ablative of price or value; as, *P̄t̄are aliquem nihilo.* Cic. *Non habeo nauci Marsum auḡrem.* Enn.—and sometimes (3) a dative; as, *Quando tu me habes despiciatui.* Plaut.—or an adverb; as, *Egre habuit, filium id pro p̄fente ausum.* Liv. And (4) *ad* or *in* with the accusative; as, *Loca ad hibernacũla leḡre.* Liv. *Aliquem in Patres leḡre.* Id.: or (5) the genitive depending on the ablative of cause, manner, etc.; as, *Qui servitutem deditiõnis nãm̄ne appellant.* Cæs.

REM. 2. Many other verbs, besides their proper accusative, take a second, denoting a purpose, time, character, etc.

Such are *do*, *tribuo*, *simo*, *p̄to*, *p̄no*, *adjungo*, *ascribo*, *cognosco*, *accio*, *fingo*, *significo*, etc.; as,

*Quare ejus fuḡas cõmitem me adjunḡrem.* Cic. *Hõm̄num opinio socium me ascribit tuis laudibus.* Id. *Quos ego sim toties jam d̄designata maritos.* Virg. *Hunc igitur regem agnosceamus, qui Philippum d̄designatur patrem?* Curt. *Filiam tuam mihi uxorem posco.* Plaut. *P̄t̄i hanc Saturnia m̄nus.* Ovid. Such constructions may often be referred to apposition, or to an ellipsis of *esse*.

§ 231. Verbs of asking, demanding, and teaching, and *c̄lo* (to conceal), are followed by two accusatives, one of the person, the other of the thing; as,

*Hoc te v̄hẽmenter r̄go.* Cic. *Illud te d̄ro, ut;* etc. Id. *R̄go te numinos, I ask you for money.* Mart. *Posce deos v̄niam,* Ask favor of the gods. Virg. *Quum legent quis musicam docuerit Ep̄aminondam,* When they shall read who taught Epaminondas music. Nep. *Antigonũs iter omnes c̄lat,* Antigonũs conceals his route from all. Id. *D̄p̄recari deos mala.* Sen. *Quũdã Cæsar Eduos frumentum fl̄gũdare.* Cæs. *Multa deos d̄rans.* Virg.

REMARK 1. This rule includes the verbs of asking and demanding, *fl̄gũto*, *effl̄gũto*, *obsecro*, *d̄ro*, *ex̄oro*, *contendo*, *percontor*, *posco*, *reposco*, *constũlo*, *p̄cor*, *d̄p̄recor*, *r̄go*, and *int̄r̄r̄go*, which, with the accusative of the person, take the accusative of the neuter pronouns *hoc*, *id*, *illud*, *quod*, *quid*, more frequently than that of a substantive; of teaching, *d̄ceo*, *ed̄ceo*, *d̄d̄ceo*, and *tr̄d̄io*, which last has two accusatives only in the poets. *Adm̄neo* and *consũlo* are rarely found with two accusatives; as, *Consũlam hanc rem amicos.* Plaut. *Eam rem nos locũs adm̄nuit.* Sall.

REM. 2. Instead of the accusative of the person, verbs of asking and demanding often take the ablative with *ab* or *ex*; as, *Non d̄debam abs te has lit̄ras poscere.* Cic. *V̄niam d̄remus ab ipso.* Virg. *Istud v̄lẽbam ex te percontari.* Plaut.

REM. 3. (a.) Instead of the accusative of the thing, the ablative with *de* is sometimes used; as, *Sic ego te eisdem de rebus interrōgem.* Cic. *De itinere hostium senātum edōcet.* Sall. *Basus noster me de hoc libro celāvit.* Cic. Cf. § 229, R. 5, (b.).—(b.) Sometimes also instead of the accusative of the thing an infinitive, or an infinitive or subjunctive clause is used; as, *Deos precāri debētis*, ut urbem defendant. Cic. *Ut doceam Rullum posthac tacēre.* Id. *Dūcui id non fieri posse.* Id. *Docēant eum qui vir Sex. Roscius fuērūt.* Id.—(c.) With verbs of teaching, the instrument by means of which the art is practised is put in the ablative; as, *Aliquem fidibus docēre.* Cic. *Docēre aliquem armis.* Liv. *Litērae* may be used either in the accusative or in the ablative; as, *Te litēras doceo.* Cic. *Doctus Græcis litēris.* Id.

REM. 4. Some verbs of asking, demanding, and teaching, are not followed by two accusatives; as, *exīgo, pēto, postūlo, quæro, scitor, sciscitor*, which, with the accusative of the thing, take an ablative of the person with the preposition *ab*, *de*, or *ex*; *imbuo, instituo, instruo*, etc., which are sometimes used with the ablative of the thing, generally without a preposition, and are sometimes otherwise construed; as, *Instituēre aliquem ad dicendū.* Cic.

REM. 5. (a.) Many active verbs with the accusative of the person, take also an accusative denoting in what respect or to what degree the action of the verb is exerted.

(b.) The accusative of degree, etc., is commonly *nihil*, a neuter pronoun, or a neuter adjective of quantity; as, *Non quo me aliquid iuvāre posses.* Cic. *Pauca pro tempore milites hortātus.* Sall. *Id adjūta me.* Ter. *Nēque est te fallere quidquam.* Virg. Cf. § 232, (8.)

REM. 6. By a similar construction, *gēnus* and *sēcus*, 'sex,' are sometimes used in the accusative, instead of the genitive of quality; as, *Nullas hoc gēnus vigiliās vigilarunt.* Gell. So, *Omnes muliebres sēcus.* Suet. Cf. 211, R. 6, (4.)

§ 232. (1.) Some neuter verbs are followed by an accusative of kindred signification to their own; as,

*Vitam jucundam vitāre*, To live a pleasant life. Plaut. *Mirum somniavi somnium*, I have dreamed a wonderful dream. Id. *Fūrere hunc fūrōrem.* Virg. *Istam pugnam pugnabo.* Plaut. *Pugnare dicenda Mūsīs prœlia.* Hor. *Lūsum insolentem ludere.* Id. *Si non servitūtem servial.* Plaut. *Quorū haud faciles questus.* Stat. *Juravi verissimum iusjurandum.* Cic. *Ignōtas jubet ire vias.* Val. Flacc. So, also, *Ire exsēquias*, To go to a funeral. Ter. *Ire suppētiās*, To go to one's assistance. *Ire infitias*, To deny. This expression is equivalent to *infitor*, and may like that take an accusative; as, *Si hoc unum adjunxēro*, quod nemo eat *infitias*. Nep.: or the accusative with the infinitive; as, *Nēque infitias imus Siciliam nostram provinciam esse.* Liv. *Ut suum gaudium gauderēmus.* Coel. ad Cic. *Proficisci magnum iter.* Cic. *Pollux iūque reditque viam.* Virg. This accusative is usually qualified by an adjective.

(2.) Verbs commonly neuter are sometimes used transitively, and are then followed by an accusative.

Accusatives are thus used with *oleo* and *sāpio*, and their compounds, *reddoleo, respio*; as, *Olet unguenta*, He smells of perfumes. Ter. *Olere peregrynū*, To have a foreign smell. Cic. *Orationes reddolentes antiquitatem.* Id. *Mella herbam eam sapiunt*, The honey tastes of that herb. Plin. *Uva picem respiens.* Id. So, *Sitio honores.* Cic. *Carnem pluit.* Liv. *Claudius aleam studiosissime luit.* Suet. *Erumpere diu coercitam iram in hostes.* Liv. *Libros evigilare.* Ovid. *Præire verba.* Liv. *Nec vox hominem sonat.* Virg. *Sulcare mella.* Id. *Morientem nomine clamat.* Id. *Quis post vina gravem militiam aut pauperiem crepat?* Hor. *Omnes una manet nox.* Id. *Ingrati animi crimen horreo.* Cic. *Ego meas quorū fortunās.* Plaut. *Vivere Bacchanalia.* Juv. *Pastorem saltaret uti Cyclops, rogabat.* Hor. So the passive; *Nunc agrestem Cyclopsa movetur.* Id. *Xerxes quum mare ambularisset, terram navigasset.* Cic. *Qui stadium currit.* Id. *Omnia iura migrare.* Id. *Te volo colluqui.* Plaut. *Ea nascerē mella.* Cic.

*Cirjdon ardebat Alexin. Virg. Stygias juravimus undas. Ovid. Navigat æquor. Virg. Currimus æquor. Id. Pascuntur sylvas. Id.*

NOTE 1. Accusatives are found in like manner after *ambulo, calleo, dõleo, equito, fleo, gaudeo, gemo, gloriõr, horreo, lætor, lætro, nãto, palleo, pãveo, pẽreo, depẽreo, pĩcẽdo, quẽror, rĩdeo, sũleo, sũblo, tãceo, trẽmo, trẽpido, vãdo, vẽnio, etc.*

(3.) Neuter verbs and sometimes adjectives also may be followed by an accusative denoting *in what respect*, or *to what degree*, the feeling, condition, etc., is manifested; as,

*Nihil lãboro. Cic. Num id lacrimat virgo?* Does the maid weep on that account? *Ter. Multa ãlia peccat. Cic. Quicquid dẽtrant rẽges, plectuntur Activi. Hor. Nec tu id indignãri posses. Liv. Illud mihi lætandum video. Cic. Illud valde tibi assentior. Id. Idem gloriãri. Id. Hęc glõrians. Liv. Hoc studeat unum. Hor.—So, Id opẽram do, I strive for this. Ter. Consilium pẽtis, quid tibi sim auctor. Cic. Quod quidam auctores sunt, Which is attested by some authors. Liv. Nil nostri misẽrẽre? Virg.—Nihil Rõmãne plẽbis similis. Liv. Sẽnatus nihil sãne intentus. Sall. These limiting accusatives have commonly the force of adverbs, particularly *nihil*, which is used like an emphatic *non* in the sense of 'in no way,' 'in no respect.' *So non nihil*, 'to some extent,' 'in some measure.'*

NOTE 2. In the above and similar examples, the prepositions *ob, propter, per, ad, etc.*, may often be supplied. This construction of neuter verbs is most common with the neuter accusatives *id, quid, quidquam, aliquid, quicquid, quod, nihil, nonnihil, idem, illud, tantum, quantum, unum, multa, pauca, ãlia, cẽtera, omnia, etc.* Cf. § 256, R. 16, N.

§ 233. Many verbs are followed by an accusative depending upon a preposition with which they are compounded.

(1.) Active verbs compounded with *trans, ad, and circum*, have sometimes two accusatives, one depending upon the verb, the other upon the preposition; as,

*Omẽnem equitãtũm pontem transducit, He leads all the cavalry over the bridge. Cæs. Agẽsĩlãus Hellsontum cõpias trãjẽcit. Nep. Petrẽius jusjurandum adigit Afrãnium. Cæs. Roscillum Pompẽius omnia sua præsidia circumduxit. Id. So, Pontus scõpũlos supẽrjẽcit undam. Virg. So, also, adverto and induco with animum; as, Id animum advertit. Cæs. Id quod animum induzẽrat paulisper non tẽnuĩt. Cic. So, also, injicio in Plautus—Ego te mãmum injiciam.*

(2.) Some other active verbs take an accusative in the passive voice depending upon their prepositions; as,

*Mãgicas accingier artes, To prepare oneself for magic arts. Virg. In prose writers the ad is in such cases repeated; as, accingi ad consũlatũm. Liv. Classis circumvẽhitur arcem. Id. Quod anguis dõmĩ vectem circumjectus fuisset. Cic. Lõcum prætẽrvectus sum. Id.*

(3.) Many neuter verbs, especially verbs of motion, or of rest in a place, when compounded with prepositions which govern an accusative, become transitive, and accordingly take an accusative; as,

*Gentes quas mãre illud adjãcent, The nations which border upon that sea. Nep. Obẽquĩtãre agmen. Curt. Incẽdunt mæstos lõcos. Tac. Transilui flammã. Ovid. Succẽdere tecta. Cic. Lũdrũm diẽbus, qui cognitiõnem intervẽnerant. Tac. Adire provinciã. Suet. Cõveat ne prõelium ineat. Cic. Ingrẽdi lter pẽdibus. Cic. Epicũri horti quos mõdo prætẽribãmus. Id.*

NOTE. To this rule belong many of the compounds of *ambulo, cẽdo, curro, eo, equito, fleo, grãdiõr, labor, no and nãto, rẽpo, sũlio, scando, vãdo, vẽhor, vẽnio, võlo;—cũbo, fãceo, sũdeo, sisto, sto, etc.*, with the prepositions included in § 224, and with *in*.

REMARK 1. Some neuter verbs compounded with prepositions which govern an ablative, in like manner become transitive, and are followed by an accusative; as,

Nēmīnem convēni, I met with no one. Cic. *Qui societatem coiēris*. Id. *Aversari* hōnōres. Ovid. *Ursi arborem aversi dērepunt*. Plin. *Edormi* crāpulam. Cic. *Egressus* exsiliū. Tac. *Evaditque celer* ripam. Virg. *Excēdere* nūmērum. Tac. *Exire* limen. Ter. *Tibur aquas fertile præsumunt*. Hor.

REM. 2. After verbs both active and neuter, compounded with prepositions which take an accusative, the preposition is often repeated, or one of similar signification is used; as,

*Cæsar se ad nēmīnem adjuncit*. Cic. *Multitudinem* trans Rhēnum in Galliam transducere. Cæs.—In Galliam invāsit Antōnius. Cic. *Ad me dāre quosdam mēmīni*. Id. *Orātor peragrat* per ānimos hōmīnum. Id. *Ne in senātum accēderem*. Id. *Rēgina ad templum incessit*. Virg. *Juxta gēntiōrem adstat Lāvīnia*. Id. *Fines extra quos egrēdi non possim*. Cic. A dative instead of the accusative often follows such compounds, according to § 224. *Circum* is not repeated.

NOTE. Some verbal nouns and verbal adjectives in *bundus* are followed by an accusative, like the transitive verbs from which they are derived; as,

*Quid tibi huc rēceptio ad te est meum virum?* Wherefore do you receive my husband hither to you? Plaut. *Quid tibi, mālum, me, aut quid ego āgam, curātio* 'st? Id. *Quid tibi hanc additio est?* Id. *Quid tibi hanc nōtio est, inquam, amīcam meam?* *Quid tibi hanc digito tactio* 'st? Id. *Hanno vitābundus castra hostium consulesque*. Liv. *Mithridātes Rōmānum mēditābundus bellum*. Just. *Mirābundū vānam spēcīem*. Liv. *Pōpūlābundus agros*. Sisenn. *Carnificem imāgnābundus*. App.

§ 234. A verb in the passive voice has the same government as in the active, except that the accusative of the active voice becomes the nominative of the passive.

NOTE 1. The accusative of the person with the infinitive, after verbs of *saying* and *commanding*, may become the subject of the passive voice; as, Active, *Dico rēgem esse justum*;—Passive, *Rex dicitur justus esse*. Act. *Jūbeo te rēdire*;—Pass. *Jūberis rēdire*: the construction in the passive being the same as though *rēgem* and *te* had depended immediately upon *dico* and *jūbeo*.—So, also, when the accusative of the person is the object of the verb and the infinitive stands as the accusative of the thing. Cf. § 270, N.

I. When a verb, which in the active voice takes an accusative both of the person and of the thing, is changed to the passive form, the accusative of the person becomes the nominative, and the accusative of the thing is retained; as,

*Rōgātus est* sententiam, He was asked his opinion. Liv. *Interrōgātus* causam. Tac. *Sēgētes ālimentāque debīta dives poscēbātur* hūmus. Ovid. *Mōtus docēri* gaudet īdōctos mātūra virgo. Hor. *Omnes bellī artes edoctus*. Liv. *Nosne hoc cēlātos tam diu?* Ter. *Multa in extis mōnēmur*. Cic.

NOTE 2. The accusative of the thing after *doctus* and *ēdoctus* is rare; and after *cēlāri* it is generally a neuter pronoun; as *hoc* or *id cēlābar*; of this I was kept in ignorance; but it is found also with the person in the dative; as, *Id Alcibiādī diūtius cēlāri non pōtuit*. Nep. Alcib. 5. *Cēlo*, and especially its passive, generally takes *de* with the ablative.

REMARK 1. (a.) *Induo* and *exuo*, though they do not take two accusatives in the active voice, are sometimes followed by an accusative of the thing in

the passive; as, *Induitur ātras vestes*, She puts on sable garments. Ovid. *Thōrāca indūtus*. Virg. *Ecūta est Rōma sēnectam*. Mart. So *indūcor* and *cingor*; as, *Ferrum cingitur*. Virg. So *recingitur* anguem. Ovid.

(b.) When two accusatives follow an active verb compounded with *trans*, the passive retains that which depends upon the preposition; as, *Belgæ Rhēnum antiquitus transducti*. Cæs.

REM. 2. The future passive participle in the neuter gender with *est*, is sometimes, though rarely, followed by an accusative; as, *Multa nōvis rēbus quum sit āgendum*. Lucr. *Quam (viam) nōbis ingrēdiendum est*. Cic.

II. Adjectives, verbs, and perfect participles, are sometimes followed by an accusative denoting the *part* to which their signification relates; as,

*Nūdus membra*, Bare as to his limbs. Virg. *Os hūmērosque deo similis*. Id. *Clārī gēnus*. Tac. *Tribūni suam vicem anxi*. Liv. *Trēmīt artus*. Virg. *Cētera parce puer bello*. Id. *Sibila colla tūmentem*. Id. *Explēri mentem nēquit*. Id. *Grīneus ēruītur oculōs*. Ovid. *Picti scūta Lābici*. Virg. *Collis frōntem lēnter iustigātus*. Cæs. *Animum incensus*. Liv. *Oblitus faciēm suo crudēre*. Tac.

REMARK 1. In this construction an ablative is often joined with the perfect participle; as, *Miles fractus membra lābore*. Hor. *Dextērū gēnū lāpide ictus*. Suet. *Adversum fēmur trāgūlā grāviter ictus*. Liv.

REM. 2. This is a Greek construction, and is usually called the *limiting* or *Greek accusative*. It is used instead of an ablative of limitation, (§ 250,) and occurs most frequently in poetry.

REM. 3. A limiting accusative instead of the ablative is found also in a few ordinary expressions, as in *partim* (for *partem*), *vicem*, *magnum* and *maximam partem*, instead of *magnum* or *maximam ex parte*, or the adverb *fere*; as, *Maximam partem lacte vivunt*. Cæs. *Magnum partem ex iambis nostra constat oratio*. Cic. Livy has *magna pars*, viz. *Nūmidæ*, *magna pars agrestes*.—So *cētera* and *rēliqua* are joined to adjectives in the sense of *cēteris*, 'for the rest,' 'in other respects'; as, *Proximum regnum, cētera ēgrēgium, ab unā parte haud sātis prospērū fuit*. Liv. So *cētera similis*, *cētera bonus*. *A te bis terve summum lūtras accēpi*. Cic.—So, also, in the expressions *id temporis*; *id, hoc* or *idem ætātis*, *illud hōra*, for *eo tempore*, *eā ætate*, etc.; *id gēnus*, *omne gēnus*, *quod gēnus*.

III. Some neuter verbs which are followed by an accusative, are used in the passive voice, the accusative becoming the subject, according to the general rule of active verbs; as,

*Tertia vicitur ætas*. Ovid. *Bellum militābitur*. Hor. *Dormitur hiems*. Mart. *Nulla peccatur*. Cic. *Aditur Gnossius Minos*. Sen. *Ne ab omnibus circumsitur*. Cæs. *Hostes invādi posse*. Sall. *Campus obitur aquā*. Ovid. *Plures inveniunt gratias*. Cic. *Ea res silētur*. Id.

## ACCUSATIVE AFTER PREPOSITIONS.

§ 235. (1.) Twenty-six prepositions are followed by the accusative.

These are *ad*, *adversus* or *adversum*, *antē*, *apūd*, *circā* or *circum*, *circiter*, *cis* or *citra*, *contrā*, *ergā*, *extrā*, *infrā*, *intēr*, *intrā*, *iuxtiā*, *ob*, *pēnēs*, *pēr*, *post*, *pōnē*, *præter*, *prōpē*, *propter*, *secundum*, *suprā*, *trans*, *ultrā*; as,

*Ad templum non æquos Pallādīs ibant*,—to the temple. Virg. *Adversus hostes*, Against the enemy. Liv. *Germāni qui cis Rhēnum incolunt*,—this side the Rhine. Cæs. *Quum tantum rēsideat intra mūros mālī*. Cic. *Principio rerum impērium pēnes rēges erat*. Just. *Templum pōnam propter aquam*. Virg. *Inter āgendum*. Id. *Ante dōmandum*. Id. Respecting the signification of some of the preceding prepositions see § 195, B. 5, etc.



REMARK 1. *Cis* is generally used with names of places; *citra* with other words also; as, *Cis Taurum*. Cic. *Cis Padum*. Liv. *Paucos cis menses*. Plant. *Citra Viliam*. Cic. *Citra satiētatem*, Not to satiety. Col. *Citra fātigationem*. Cels. *Citra Trojāna tempora*. Ovid.

REM. 2. *Inter*, signifying *between*, applies to two accusatives jointly, and sometimes to a single plural accusative; as, *Inter me et Scipionem*. Cic. *Inter nātus et parentes*. Id. *Inter nos*, Among ourselves. Id. *Inter fulcarios*, Among the scythe-makers. Cic. When it denotes time it signifies *during*, and more rarely *at*; as, *Inter ipsum pugnae tempus*. Liv. *Inter cenam*. Cic.

REM. 3. *Ante* and *post* are commonly joined with concrete official titles, when used to indicate time, rather than with the corresponding abstract nouns; as, *ante* or *post Cicéronem consulem*, rather than *ante* or *post consulatū Cicéronis*.

(2.) *In* and *sub*, denoting *motion* or *tendency*, are followed by the accusative; denoting *situation*, they are followed by the ablative; as,

*Via dūcit in urbem*, The way conducts into the city. Virg. *Noster in te amor*. Cic. *Callimachi ēpigramma in Cleombrōtum est*—on or concerning Cleombrōtus. Id. *Exercitus sub jūgum missus est*, The army was sent under the yoke. Cæs. *Magna mei sub terras ibi imāgo*. Virg. *Mediā in urbe*, In the midst of the city. Ovid. *In his fuit Ariovistus*. Cæs. *Bella sub Iliacis mœnibus gēre*, To wage war under the Trojan walls. Ovid. *Sub nocte silenti*. Virg.

REM. 4. The most common significations of *in*, with the accusative, are, *into*, *to*, *towards*, *until*, *for*, *against*, *about*, *concerning*,—with the ablative, *in*, *on*, *upon*, *among*. In some instances, *in* and *sub*, denoting tendency, are followed by the ablative, and, denoting situation, by the accusative; as, *In conspectu meo audet venire*. Phæd. *Nationes quæ in amicitiam populi Rōmāni, ditionemque essent*. Id. *Sub jūgo dictātor hostes misit*. Liv. *Hostes sub montem consēnisse*. Cæs.

REM. 5. *In* and *sub*, in different significations, denoting neither tendency nor situation, are followed sometimes by the accusative, and sometimes by the ablative; as, *Amor crescit in horas*. Ovid. *Hostilem in modum*. Cic. *Quod in bōno servo dici posset*. Id. *Sub eā conditione*. Ter. *Sub pœnā mortis*. Suet.

REM. 6. In expressions relating to time, *sub*, denoting *at* or *in*, usually takes the ablative; as, *Sub adventu Rōmānōrum*. Liv. *Sub luce*. Ovid. *Sub tempore*. Lucan. Denoting *near*, *about*, *just before* or *just after*, it takes the accusative; as, *Sub lucem*. Virg. *Sub lūmina prima*. Hor. *Sub hoc hērus inquit*. Id.

REM. 7. *In* is used with neuter adjectives in the accusative in forming adverbial phrases; as, *In universum*, In general. *In totum*, Wholly. So, *in plēnum*; *in incertum*; *in tantum*; *in quantum*; *in majus*; *in melius*; *in omnia*, in all respects, etc.

(3.) *Sūper*, when denoting place or time, is followed by the accusative, and sometimes poetically by the ablative; but when it signifies *on*, *about*, or *concerning*, it takes the ablative. With the accusative *sūper* signifies *over*, *above*, *besides* or *in addition to*; with numerals, *more than*; as,

*Sūper labentem culmīna tecti*, Gliding over the top of the house. Virg. *Sūper tres mōdios*. Liv. *Sūper morbum etiam fāmes affecit exercitum*. Id. *Sūper lenēro prosternit gramine corpus*, He stretches his body on the tender grass. Virg. *Multa sūper Priāmo rōgitans sūper Hectōre multa*, .... concerning Priam, etc. Id.

REM. 8. The compound *dēsūper* is found with the accusative, and *insūper* with the accusative and the ablative.

(4.) *Subter* generally takes the accusative, but sometimes, in poetry, the ablative; as,

*Subter terras*, Under the earth. Liv. *Subter densā testūdine*. Virg.

(5.) *Clam* is followed by either the accusative or the ablative; as,

*Clam* vos, Without your knowledge. Cic. *Clam* patrem. Ter. *Clam* matrem suam. Plaut. *Clam* vobis. Cæs. *Neque potest clam* me esse. Plaut. *Clam* uxore meâ. Id. Its diminutive *clanculum* is once followed by the accusative, *clanculum* patres. Ter.

REM. 9. The adverbs *versus* or *versum* and *usque* are sometimes annexed to an accusative, principally of place, which depends on *ad* or *in*, and sometimes the preposition is omitted; as, *Ad Oceanum versus proficisci*. Cæs. *Fugam ad se versum*. Sall. *In Galliam versus castra movere*. Id.—*Usque ad Numantiam*. Cic. *Usque in Pamphyliam*. Id. *Ad noctem usque*. Plaut.—*Brundisium versus*. Cic. *Terminos usque Libyæ*. Just. *Usque Ennam profecti*. Cic. *Versus* is always placed after the accusative.—*Usque* occurs more rarely with *sub* and *trans* with the accusative; as, *Trans Alpes usque transfertur*. Cic. *Usque sub extremum brumæ imbrem*.—*Versus* also rarely follows *ab*, and *usque* either *ab* or *ex* with the ablative; as, *Ab septemtrione versus*. Varr. *A fundamento usque movisti mare*. Plaut. *Usque ex ultimâ Syriâ*. Cic. *Usque a puertitiâ*. Ter. *Urque a Rômulo*. Cic. *Usque a mane ad vespërum*. Plaut.

REM. 10. Prepositions are often used without a noun depending upon them, but such noun may usually be supplied by the mind; as, *Multis post annis*, i. e. *post id tempus*. Cic. *Circum Concordiæ*, scil. *ædem*. Sall.

REM. 11. The accusative, in many constructions, is supposed to depend on a preposition understood; as, *Quid opus est plura?* i. e. *propter quid?* why? i. q. *cur?* or *quare?* Cic. So, *Quid me ostentem?* Id. But it is not easy, in every case, to say what preposition should be supplied. For the accusative without a preposition after neuter verbs, see § 232. For the accusative of limitation, see § 234, II.

## ACCUSATIVE OF TIME AND SPACE.

§ 236. Nouns denoting duration of time, or extent of space, are put, after adjectives and verbs, in the accusative, and sometimes after verbs in the ablative; as,

ACC. *Appius cæcus multos annos fuit*, Appius was blind many years. Cic. *Biduum Læditiæ fuit*. Id. *Dies totos de virtute disserunt*. Id. *Te jam annum audientem Cratippum*. Id.—*Decrevêrunt intercalarium quinque et quadraginta dies longum*. Id.—*Quam abessem ab Amâno iter unius diæ*. Id. *Tres pæteat cæli spatium non amplius ulnas*. Virg. (Cf. § 256, R. 6.) *A portu stadia centum et viginti processimus*. Cic.—*Duas fossas quindécim pèdes lûtas pèduxit*,—two ditches fifteen feet broad. Cæs. *Fossas quinos pèdes altas*. Id. *Foramina longa pèdes tres sëmîs*. Cato. *Orbem olearium crassum digitos sex facito*. Id.—  
ABL. *Vixit annis undétriginta*. Suet. *Quatuordécim annis exsilium toleravit*. Tac. *Triginta annis vixit Parætius*. Cic.—*Exercitus Rômânus tridui itinere abfuit ab amne Tânai*. Tac. *Æsculâpii templum quinque millibus passuum distans*. Liv.

NOTE 1. The ablative denoting extent of time and space is rarely used by Cicero, and less frequently than the accusative by other writers.

NOTE 2. The accusative denoting extent of space sometimes follows the adverbs *longe*, *allic*, etc.; as, *Campestris locus allic duos pèdes et sëmîssem infodiendus est*. Colum. *Vercingëtôrîz locum castris deligit ab Avarico longe millia passuum sedécim*. Cæs.

NOTE 3. (a.) *Old*, in reference to the time which a person has lived, is expressed in Latin by *natus*, with an accusative of the time; as, *Decessit Alexander mensem unum, annos tres et triginta natus*. Just. (b.) A person's age may also be expressed without *natus* by a genitive of the time closely connected with his name, according to § 211, R. 6; as, *Alexander annorum trium et triginta decessit*. (c.) *Older* or *younger* than a certain age is expressed by prefixing to the accusative or genitive of the definite age the ad-

verbs *plus* or *minus*, or the adjectives *major* or *minor*, either with or without *quam*. See § 256, R. 6 and 7.—Sometimes, also, the ablative depends on the comparative; as, *Minor viginti quinque annis natus*. Nep. *Minor triginta annis natu*. Cic. *Biennio quam nos major*. Id. Cf. § 256, R. 16. (1.)

REMARK 1. Nouns denoting time or space, used to limit other nouns, are put in the genitive or ablative. See § 211, R. 6.

REM. 2. A term of time not yet completed may be expressed by an ordinal number; as, *Nos vicēsimū jam diem patimur hēscere aetate hōrum auctōritatis*. Cic. *Pūico bello duodēcimum annum Itālia urēbatur*. Liv. Hence in the passive, *Nunc tertia virtutis aetas*. Ovid.

REM. 3. The accusative or ablative of space is sometimes omitted, while a genitive depending on it remains; as, *Castra quae abstant bidui*, scil. *spātium* or *spatio*. Cic.

REM. 4. To denote a place by its distance from another, the ablative is commonly used; as, *Millibus passuum sex a Cēsaris castris consēdit*. Cæs.; but sometimes the accusative; as, *Tria passuum millia ab ipsa urbe castra posuit*. Liv. The only words used for this purpose in the ablative alone are *spatio* and *intervallo*; as, *Quindēcim ferme millium spatio castra ab Tarento posuit*. Id.

NOTE 4. For *abhinc* and a cardinal number, with the accusative or ablative of past time, see § 253, R. 2. For the ablative denoting difference of time or space, see § 256, R. 16.

REM. 5. A preposition is sometimes expressed before an accusative of time or space, but it generally modifies the meaning; as, *Quem per decem annos dudum*, .... during ten years. Cic.

REM. 6. When the place from which the distance is reckoned is not mentioned, *ab* is sometimes placed before the ablative of distance, as if this depended on the preposition; as, *A millibus passuum duobus castra posuerunt*, Two miles from the place, or, Two miles off. Cæs.

REM. 7. An accusative of weight also occurs when expressed by *libram* or *libras* in connection with *pondo*. Cf. § 211, R. 6. (4.)

## ACCUSATIVE OF PLACE.

§ 237. After verbs expressing or implying motion, the name of the town in which the motion ends is put in the accusative without a preposition; as,

*Rēgulus Carthāginem rediit*, Regulus returned to Carthage. Cic. *Capuam flectit iter*, He turns his course to Capua. Liv. *Calpurnius Rōmam proficiscitur*. Sall. *Rōmam erat nunciatum*. Cic.

REMARK 1. The accusative, in like manner, is used after *iter* with *sum*, *habeo*, etc.; as, *Iter est mihi Lanūvium*. Cic. *Cēsarem iter habere Capuam*. Id. And even after *sum* alone; as, *Omnia illa municipia, quae sunt a Vibōne Brundisium*. Cic. So with a verbal noun; as, *Adventus Rōmam*. Liv. *Reditus Rōmam*. Cic.

REM. 2. (a.) The preposition to be supplied is *in*, denoting to or into, which is sometimes expressed; as, *In Ephesum abiit*. Plaut. *Ad*, before the name of a town, denotes direction towards it; as, *Iter dirigere ad Mutinam*. Cic.; and also its vicinity; as, *Adolescentulus miles profectus sum ad Capuam*; i. e. *in castra ad Capuam*. Id. So, *Laelius cum classe ad Brundisium venit*. Cæs. *Cassar ad Gēnevā pervēnit*. Id. *Quum ego ad Herāclēam accēderem*. Cic.

(b.) When *urbs*, *opplidum*, *locus*, etc., follow the names of towns as appositions, they generally take a preposition; as, *Dēmārātus se contulit Targuinius, in urbem Etrūscā flōrentissimam*. Cic. *Ad Cirtam opplidum iter constituunt*. Sall.—So also when the name of the town is qualified by an adjective; as, *Magnum*

iter ad doctas *præficiſci cōgor* Athēnas. Prop. But the poets and later prose writers sometimes omit the preposition; as, Ovid, Her. 2, 83.

REM. 3. Instead of the accusative, a dative is sometimes, though rarely, used; as, Carthagini *nuncios mittam*. Hor. Cf. § 225, IV. and R. 2.

REM. 4. *Dōmus* in both numbers, and *rus* in the singular, are put in the accusative, like names of towns; as,

*He dōmum*, Go home. Virg. *Galli dōmos abierant*,—had gone home. Liv. *Rus ibo*, I will go into the country. Ter.

NOTE. (a.) When *dōmus* is limited by a genitive or a possessive adjective pronoun, it sometimes takes a preposition: with other adjectives, the preposition is generally expressed; as, *Non introeo* in nostram dōmum. Plaut. *Vēnisse* in dōmum Leccæ. Cic. *Ad eam dōmum præfecti sunt*. Id. *In dōmos supēras scandere cūra fuit*. Ovid. Rarely, also, when not limited; as, *Sōeritēs philōsophiam* in dōmos intrōdūxit. Cic. So, *lārem suum*. 'App., or *ad lārem suum*. Cic. *Cāricas* in Albense *rus inferre*. Plin. *Quum* in sua rūra *vēnerunt*. Cic. With the possessor's name in the genitive, either *dōmum* or *in dōmum* is used; as, *Pompōniū dōmum vēnisse*. Cic. *In dōmum Mælii tēla infērentur*. Liv.

(b.) *Dōmus* is sometimes used in the accusative after a verbal noun; as, *Dōmum rēditiōnis spe sublātā*. Cæs. So, *Itio dōmum*. Cic. *Concursus dōmum*. Cæs. Cf. R. 1.

REM. 5. (a.) Before the names of countries and of all other places in which the motion ends, except those of towns, and *dōmus* and *rus*, the preposition is commonly used; as, *Ex Asiā transis* in Eurōpam. Curt. *Te* in Epirum *vēnisse gaudeo*. Cic. But it is sometimes omitted; as, *Dēveniunt spēluncam*. Virg. *Dēvenire lōcos*. Id. *Tūmulum antiquæ Cētrīs sēdemque sacrātam vēnimus*. Id. *Ibis Cēcropsios portus*. Ovid. So, also, before names of countries, especially those ending in *us*; as, *Ægyptus*, *Bospōrus*, *Chersōnēsus*, *Epirus*, *Pēlōponnēsus*, etc. So, also, *Illyricum præfectus*. Cæs. *Macedōniam pervēnit*. Liv. *Africam transitārus*. Id. So, Tacitus construes even names of nations, when used, as they often are, for those of countries; as, *Ductus inde Cangos exercitus*. *Ibēros ad patrium regnum pervādūt*. So, Virgil, *Nos ibimus Afros*.—Pliny has, *Insūlas Rubri Māris nāvigant*.

(b.) Before the names of small islands the preposition is frequently omitted; as, *Pausāniam cum classe Cyprum misērunt*. Nep.: but rarely before the names of the larger islands; as, *Sardīnia*, *Britannia*, *Crēta*, *Eubœa*, *Sicilia*.

(c.) Before accusatives of any words denoting locality after verbs of motion, the poets omit the preposition; as, *Itāliam—Lāviniāque vēnit* Itōra. Virg.—The old accusative *fōras* is used, like names of towns, to denote the place *whither*, while *fōris* denotes the place *where*; as, *Vāde fōras*. Mart. *Exi fōras*. Plaut.

## ACCUSATIVE AFTER ADJECTIVES, ADVERBS, AND INTERJECTIONS.

§ 238. 1. (a.) The adjectives *prōpior* and *proximus*, with their adverbs *prōpius* and *proxime*, like their primitive *prōpe*, are often joined with the accusative; as,

*Ipsē prōpior montem suos collōcat*. Sall. *Crassus proximus māre Oceānum hiēmārat*. Cæs.—*Libyes prōpius māre Africū agītābant*. Sall. *Proxime Hispaniā Māuri sunt*. Id.

(b.) The adverbs *prīdie* and *postrīdie* are also often followed by the accusative; as, *Prīdie eum diem*. Cic. *Prīdie idus*. Id. *Postrīdie ludos*. Id.—(c.) An accusative sometimes follows *intus* and *cōminus*; as, *Intus dōmum*. Plaut. *Agrestes cōminus: e suis*, scil. in. Prop.

REMARK 1. The accusative with *pridie* and *postridie* is by some referred to *ante* and *post* understood. For the genitive after these words, see § 212, R. 4, N. 6.—Respecting *versus*, *usque*, *exadversus* (-um) and *secus* with the accusative, see § 195, R. 3: and § 235, R. 3.

REM. 2. The adverb *bene*, by the elipsis of *valere jubeo*, is sometimes followed by the accusative in forms of drinking health; as, *Bene vos, bene nos, bene te, bene me, bene nostram etiam Stêphanium!* Plaut. *Bene Messalam, a health to Messala.* Tibull. It is also construed with the dative. See § 228, 1.

2. In exclamations, the noun or pronoun which marks the *object of the feeling* is put in the accusative either with or without the interjections, *O! ah! heu! eheu! ecce! en! hem! pro! or vae! as,*

*En quâtuor aras! ecce duas tibi Daphni!* Behold four altars! lo, two for thee, Daphnis! Virg. *Eccum! eccos! eccillum!* for *ecce eum! ecce eos! ecce illum!* Plaut. *O proclârûm custodem!* Cic. *Heu me infêlicem!* Ter. *Pro Deûm hominûmque fidem!* Cic. *Ah me, me!* Catull. *Eheu me miserum!* Ter. *Hem astâtias!* Id. *Vas te!* Plaut. *Vas me!* Sen. *Miseram me!* Ter. *Hominem gravem et civem egrêgium!* Cic. Cf. § 228, 3.

NOTE. The accusative after interjections is supposed to depend on some verb of emotion to be supplied.

## SUBJECT-ACCUSATIVE.

§ 239. The subject of the infinitive mood is put in the accusative; as,

*Môleste Pompeium id ferre constâbat,* That Pompey took that ill, was evident. Cic. *Eos hoc nômîne appellâri fas est.* Id. *Miror te ad me nihil scribere,* I wonder that you do not write to me. Cn. Mag. in Cic. *Campos jubet esse pântes.* Virg.

NOTE 1. In historical writing the present infinitive has sometimes its subject in the nominative. Cf. § 209, R. 5.

REMARK 1. The subject of the infinitive is omitted when it precedes in the genitive or dative case; as, *Est adôlescentis majôres natu vèreri,* scil. *eum.* Cic. *Expêdit bonas esse vobis,* scil. *vos.* Ter.; and rarely when it precedes in the accusative; as, *En pópulus latâri et merto dicere fieri;* and also when its place is supplied by a possessive pronoun expressed or understood; as, *Non fuit consiliûm (meum)—servilibus officiis intentum atâtem agere* (scil. *me*). Sall.

REM. 2. A substantive pronoun is also sometimes omitted before the infinitive, when it is the subject of the preceding verb; as, *Pollicitus sum susceptûrum (esse),* scil. *me,* I promised (that I) would undertake. Ter. *Sed reddere posse negâbat,* scil. *se.* Virg.

REM. 3. The subject of the infinitive is often omitted, when it is a general word for person or thing; as, *Est aliud iracundum esse, aliud iratum,* scil. *hominem.* Cic. See § 269, R. 1.

REM. 4. The subject-accusative, like the nominative, is often wanting. See § 209, R. 3. The subject of the infinitive may be an infinitive or a clause. See § 269, R. 3.

NOTE 2. For the verbs after which the subject-accusative with the infinitive is used, see § 272. For the accusative in the predicate after infinitives neuter and passive, see § 210.

## VOCATIVE.

§ 240. The vocative is used, either with or without an interjection, in addressing a person or thing.

REMARK 1. The interjections *O*, *heu*, and *pro* (*proh*), also *ah*, *au* (*hau*), *ehem*, *eho*, *ehodum*, *eia* (*heia*), *hem*, *heus*, *hui*, *io*, and *ohe*, are followed by the vocative; as,

*O formōse puer!* O beautiful boy! Virg. *Heu virgo!* Id. *Pro sancte Jūpiter!* Cic. *Ah stulte!* Ter. *Heus Sýre!* Id. *Ohe ūbelle!* Mart. *Ehodum bōne vir.* Ter.—*Ūrbem*, mi Rūfē, cōle. Cic. *Quinctili Vare, lēgionēs redde.* Suet. *Quo mōritūre ruis?* Hor. *Macte virtūte esto.* Cic.

REM. 2. The vocative is sometimes omitted, while a genitive depending upon it remains; as, *O miserā sortis!* scil. *hōmīnes.* Lucan.

NOTE. The vocative forms no part of a proposition, but serves to designate the person to whom the proposition is addressed.

## ABLATIVE.

The ablative denotes certain relations of nouns and pronouns, all of which are expressed in English by means of prepositions. In Latin this case is sometimes accompanied by a preposition, and sometimes stands alone. Cf. § 37, 6.

## ABLATIVE AFTER PREPOSITIONS.

§ 241. Eleven prepositions are followed by the ablative.

These are *ā*, (or *āb*, *abs*), *absquē*, *dē*; *cōram*, *pālam*, *cum*, *ex*, (*ē*); *sīnē*, *tēnūs*, *prō*, and *præ*; as,

*Ab illo tempore*, From that time. Liv. *A scribendo*, From writing. Cic. *Cum exercitu*, With the army. Sall. *Certis de causis*, For certain reasons. Cic. *Ex fugā*, From flight. Id. *Pālam pōpulo*. Liv. *Sine lābore*. Cic. *Ōpulo tēnus*. Virg. *Cantābit vācuus cōram lātrōne viātor*. Juv. cf. § 195, 6.

NOTE. Of the prepositions followed by the ablative, five signify removal or separation, viz. *ā* (*āb* or *abs*), *dē*, *ē* (or *ex*), *absquē* and *sīnē*.

REMARK 1. *Tēnus* is always placed after its case. It sometimes takes the genitive plural. See § 221, III.—*Cum* is always appended to the ablative of the personal pronouns *me*, *te*, *se*, *nōbis*, and *vōbis*, and commonly to the ablatives of the relative pronoun, *quo*, *quā*, *quibus*, and *quī*. Cf. § 133, 4, and § 136, R. 1.

REM. 2. The adverbs *prōcul* and *simul* are sometimes used with an ablative, which depends on the prepositions *a* or *ab*, and *cum* understood; as, *Prōcul mārī*, Far from the sea. Liv. *Simul nōbis hābitat*. Ovid. *Prōcul dūbio*. Suet. The prepositions are frequently expressed; as, *Prōcul a terrā*. Cic. *Prōcul a patriā*. Virg. *Tēcum simul*. Plaut. *Vōbiscum simul*. Cic.—So, rarely, *æque*. *Qui me in terrā æque fortunātus erit*. Plaut. Cf. *Nōci æque omnia tēcum*. Id.

REM. 3. Some of the above prepositions, like those followed by the accusative, are occasionally used without a noun expressed; as, *Quum cōram simus*. Cic. *Cum frātre an sine*. Id. Cf. § 235, R. 10.

REM. 4. The ablative follows also the prepositions *in* and *sub*, when they answer to the question 'where?' *sūper*, when it signifies 'on' or 'concerning'; and sometimes *clam* and *subter*. Cf. § 235, (2.)—(6.)

REM. 5. *In* is generally joined with the ablative after verbs of placing, as, *pōno*, *lōco*, *collōco*, *stātuo*, *constituo*, and *consido*; as, *Et sile tābentes artius in hōre pōnunt*. Virg.—So, also, after verbs signifying to have, hold, or regard.

as, *habeo, dico, nūmero*, etc.—After verbs of *assembling, concealing, and including*, *in* is followed by either the accusative or the ablative.—After *dēfigo, inscribo, insculpo, incido*, and *inséro*, *in* is usually joined with the ablative.

✕ § 242. Many verbs compounded with *ab, de, ex*, and *sūper*, are followed by an ablative depending upon the preposition; as,

*Abesse urbe*, To be absent from the city. Cic. *Abire sēdibus*, To depart from their habitations. Tac. *Ut se maledictis non abstineant*. Cic. *Dētrūdunt nāves scōpulo*, They push the ships from the rock. Virg. *Nāvi ēgressus est*. Nep. *Excidere finibus*. Liv. *Cæsar praelio supersedere statuit*. Cæs. *Tributo ac dēlectu supersessum est*. Cic. So the adjective *extorris*; as, *Extorris patriā, dōmo*. Sall. And so the verbal *eruptio*, as, *Mutinā eruptio*. Cic.

REMARK 1. The preposition is often repeated, or one of similar signification is used; as, *Dētrāhere de tuā famā numquam cōgltāvi*. Cic. *Ex oculis abierunt*. Liv. *Exire a patriā*. Cic. *Exire de viā*. Id. Cf. § 224, R. 4.

REM. 2. These compound verbs are often used without a noun; but, in many cases, it may be supplied by the mind; as, *Equites dēgressi ad pēdes*, scil. *equis*. Liv. *Abire ad Deos*, scil. *vitā*. Cic.

REM. 3. Some verbs compounded with *ab, de*, and *ex*, instead of the ablative, are sometimes followed by the dative. See § 224, R. 1 and 2. Some compounds, also, of neuter verbs, occur with the accusative. See § 233, R. 1.

#### ABLATIVE AFTER CERTAIN NOUNS, ADJECTIVES, AND VERBS.

✕ § 243. *Opus* and *ūsus*, signifying *need*, usually take the ablative of the thing needed; as,

*Auctoritate tuā nobis opus est*, We need your authority, Cic. *Nunc ānīmīs opus, nunc pectōre firmo*. Virg. *Nāves, quibus consiliū ūsus non esset*, Ships, for which the consul had no occasion. Liv. *Nunc viribus ūsus, nunc mānibus rēptis*. Virg.

REMARK 1. (a.) *Opus* and *ūsus* are sometimes followed by the ablative of a perfect participle; as, *Mātūrato opus est*, There is need of haste. Liv. *Ūsus facto est mihi*. Ter. *Ubi summus impērator non ādest ad exercitum, citius, quod non facto est ūsus, fit, quam quod facto est opus*. Plaut. After *opus*, a noun is sometimes expressed with the participle; as, *Opus fuit Hirtio convento*,—of meeting, or, to meet, § 274, R. 5. Cic. *Opus sibi esse dōmīno ējus invento*. Liv.—or a supine is used; as, *Ita dictu opus est*, It is necessary to say, I must say. Ter.—Instead of the ablative with *opus est*, an infinitive, either alone or with a subject accusative, or *ut* with a subjunctive clause, sometimes occurs; as, *Opus est te dñimo vālere*. Cic. *Mihi opus est, ut lāvem*. Id.

(b.) *Opus* and *ūsus*, though nouns, are seldom limited by the genitive. In a few passages they are construed with the accusative. See § 211, R. 11.

REM. 2. *Opus* is sometimes the subject and sometimes the predicate of *est*; *ūsus*, which seldom occurs except in ante-classic poets, is, with only rare exceptions, the subject only. The person to whom the thing is needful is put in the dative; (§ 226.) With *opus* the thing needed may either be the subject of the verb in the nominative or accusative, or follow it in the ablative; as, *Dux nobis opus est*. Cic. *Verrēs multa sibi opus esse aiēbat*. Id.; or, *Dūce nobis opus est*. The former construction is most common with neuter adjectives and pronouns; as, *Quod non opus est, asse cārum est*. Cato apud Sen.—In the predicate *opus* and *ūsus* are commonly translated 'needful' or 'necessary.' Cf. § 210, R. 5.

NOTA. For the ablative of character, quality, etc., limiting a noun, see § 211, R. 6.

§ 244. *Dignus, indignus, contentus, præditus, and frētus*, are followed by the ablative of the object; as,

*Dignus laude*, Worthy of praise. Hor. *Vox populi majestāte indigna*, A speech unbecoming the dignity of the people. Cæs. *Bestia eo contenta non querunt amplius*. Cic. *Homo scēlere præditus*. Id. *Plerique ingēno frētī*. Id.—So, *Æquum est me atque illo*. Plaut.

REMARK 1. The adverb *digne*, in one passage, takes the ablative; *Peccat ūter nostrum cruce dignus*. Hor.—*Dignor*, also, both as the passive of the obsolete *digno*, and as a deponent verb, is followed by an ablative of the thing. As a deponent it takes also an accusative of the person; as, *Haud equidem tāli me hōnōre dignor*. Virg.—Pass. *Qui tāli hōnōre dignātī sunt*. Cic. *Conjūgio, Anchisa, Veneris dignāte superbo*. Virg.—Sometimes as a deponent, instead of the ablative of the thing, it is followed by an infinitive clause; as, *Non ego grammaticas ambire tribus et pulpita dignor*. Hor. And both *dignor* and *dēdignor* are followed by two accusatives, one of the object the other of the predicate. See § 230, R. 2.

REM. 2. (a.) *Dignus* and *indignus* are sometimes followed by the genitive; as, *Suscipe cōglutinationem dignissimam tuæ virtutis*. Cic. *Indignus avōrum*. Virg.; and *dignus* sometimes takes a neuter pronoun or adjective in the accusative; as, *Non me censes scire quid dignus siem?* Plaut. *Frētus* is in Livy construed with the dative. Cf. § 222, R. 6, (b.)

(b.) Instead of an ablative, *dignus* and *indignus* often take an infinitive, especially in the passive; as, *Erāt dignus amari*. Virg.; or a subjunctive clause, with *qui* or *ut*; as, *Dignus qui impēret*. Cic. *Non sum dignus, ut figam pālum in pariētem*. Plaut.; or the supine in *u*; as, *Digna atque indigna relātū vociferans*. Virg. *Contentus* is likewise joined with the infinitive; as, *Non hæc artes contenta paternas edidicisse fuit*. Ovid.—So, *Naves pontum irrumpere frētæ*. Stat.

§ 245. *I. Utor, fruor, fungor, pōtior, vescor*, and their compounds, are followed by the ablative; as,

*Ad quem tum Jūno supplex* his vōcibus ūsa est,—addressed these words. Virg. *Fruī voluptātē*, To enjoy pleasure. Cic. *Fungitur officio*, He performs his duty. Id. *Oppido pōtiti sunt*. Liv. *Vescitur aurā*. Virg. *His rebus perfruor*. Cic. *Lēgibus abūtī*. Id. *Dēfuncti impērio*. Liv. *Grāvi opēre perfungimur*. Cic. *O tandem magnis pelāgi dēfunctæ periculis*. Virg.

The compounds are *abūtor, deūtor, perfruor, dēfungor*, and *perfungor*.

NOTE. *Utor* may take a second ablative, as an apposition or a predicate, like the predicate accusative, (§ 230, R. 2), and may then be translated by the verb *to have*; as, *Ille faciēs me ūtetur patre*, He shall have in me an indulgent father. Ter.

REMARK. In early writers these verbs sometimes take an accusative; as, *Quam rem mēdici ūtuntur*. Varr. *Ingēnium fruī*. Ter. *Datāmes militāre mētus fungens*. Nep. *Gentem aliquam urbem nostram pōtūtāram pūtem*. Cic. *Sacras lauros vescar*. Tibull. *In prolōgis scribendis opēram abūtūtur*. Ter.—*Pōtior* is, also, found with the genitive. See § 220, 4.

II. 1. *Nitor, innitor, fido* and *confido*, may be followed by the ablative without a preposition; as, *Hastā innitus*. Liv. *Fidēre cursu*. Ovid. *Naturā vici confidēbani*. Cæs.

2. *Misceo* with its compounds takes, with the accusative of the object, the ablative of the thing mingled with; as, *Miscere pābula sālē*. Coll. *Aquas necitare*. Ovid. *Aër multo cālōre admixtus*. Cic.

3. *Assuesco, assuefacio, consuesco, insuesco*, and sometimes *acquiesco*, take either the dative or the ablative of the thing; as, *Aves sanguine et prædā assuefactæ*. Hor. *Nullo officio aut disciplinā assuefactus*. Cæs. Cf. § 224.



4. *Vitæ* and *epulor*, 'to live or feast upon,' are followed by the ablative; as, *Dāpibus epulāmur opimis*. Virg. *Lacte atque pecōre vivunt*. Cæs.

5. *Sto* signifying 'to be filled or covered with,' and also when signifying 'to cost,' is followed by the ablative without a preposition; when signifying 'to persevere in, stick to, abide by,' 'to rest or be fixed on,' it is followed by the ablative either with or without *in*; as, *Jam pulvère cælum stare vident*. Virg. — *Multo sanguine ac vulneribus ea Pēnis victōria stetit*. Liv. *Stare conditionibus*. Cic. *Omnis in Ascānio stat cūra parentis*. Virg. — *Consto*, 'to consist of' or 'to rest upon,' is followed by the ablative either alone or with *ex*, *de*, or *in*; as *Constat mātēries sōlido corpore*. Lucr. *Homo ex ānimo constat et corpore*. Cic.

REMARK 1. *Fido*, *confido*, *misceo*, *admisceo*, *permisceo*, and *assuesco* often take the dative.

REM. 2. When a preposition is expressed after the above verbs, *sto*, *fido*, *confido*, *nitor*, *innitor*, and *assuesco* take *in* or *ad*; *acquiesco*, *in*; and *misceo* with its compounds, *cum*.

§ 246. Perfect participles denoting *origin* are often followed by the ablative of the *source*, without a preposition.

Such are *nātus*, *prōgnātus*, *sātus*, *creātus*, *crētus*, *ēditus*, *gēnātus*, *gēnērātus*, *ortus*; to which may be added *oriundus*, descended from.

Thus, *Nāte deā*! O son of a goddess! Virg. *Tantālo prōgnātus*, Descended from Tantalus. Cic. *Sātus Nēreide*, Sprung from a Nereid. Ovid. *Crētus rēge*. Id. *Alcāndre crēti*. Virg. *Edite rēgibus*. Hor. *Dūs gēnīte*. Virg. *Argōlīco gēnērātus Alēmōne*. Ovid. *Ortus nullis mājōribus*. Hor. *Celestī sēmīne oriundū*. Lucr.

REMARK 1. The preposition is also rarely omitted after the verbs *creo*, *gēnero*, and *nascor*; as, *Ū patre certo nascērēre*. Cic. *Fortes creantur fortibus*. Hor.

REM. 2. After participles denoting origin, the preposition *ex* or *de* is usually joined to the name of the mother; and in a few passages *ex* or *ab* is joined to the name of the father; as, *Prōgnātī ab Dite patre*. Cæs. In speaking of one's ancestors *ab* is frequently used; as, *Plērosque Belyas esse ortos a Germānis*. Id.

REM. 3. Origin from a place or country is generally expressed by a patrial adjective; as, *Thrāsībūlus Athēniensis*, Thrasybulus of Athens. Livy often uses *ab*; as, *Turnus Herdōnius ab Ariciā*. Cæsar prefers the ablative alone; as, *On. Magius Crēmōnā*; and in this manner is expressed the tribe to which a person belongs; as, *Q. Verres Rōmiliā*,—of the Romilian tribe.

## ABLATIVE OF CAUSE, ETC.

§ 247. Nouns denoting the *cause*, *manner*, *means*, and *instrument*, after adjectives and verbs, are put in the ablative without a preposition.

NOTE. The English prepositions with the ablative of cause, manner, means, and instrument are *by*, *with*, *in*, etc.

1. The *cause*. (1.) Adjectives which have a passive signification, as denoting a state or condition produced by some external cause, may take such cause in the ablative; as,

*Campāni fuerunt superbi bōnitātē agrōrum*. Cic. *Animal pābulo letum*. Sen. *Prælio fessi lassique*, Weary and faint with the battle. Sall. *Hōmīnes agrī grāvi morbo*. Cic.

(2.) Neuter verbs expressing an action, state or feeling of the subject originating in some external cause, may take that cause in the ablative; as,

*Intēriū fāme, He perished with hunger. Laude āliēnā dōlet. Cic. Lator suā dignitāte. Id. Gaude tuo bōno. Id. Suā victōriā gloriārī. Cæs. Aquilonibus labōrant quercēta. Hor.—So with bene est and the dative; as, Mihi bene erat non piscibus urbe pētīlis, sed pullo atque hædo. Hor. Ubi illi bene sit ligno, aquā cālida, cibo, vestimentis, etc. Plaut.*

NOTE 1. After such adjectives and neuter verbs, a preposition with its case often supplies the place of the simple ablative.

NOTE 2. In exclamations of encouragement or approbation, the defective adjective *macte, macti*, either with or without the imperative of *esse (esto, este, estote)*, is joined with an ablative of cause, especially with *virtute*.

NOTE 3. After neuter verbs and adjectives denoting emotions, especially those of *care, grief, and sorrow*, the accusative *vicem*, with a genitive or a possessive pronoun, is used, instead of the ablative *vice*, to signify 'for' or 'on account of'; as, *Rēmīttimus hoc tibi, ne nostram vicem irascāris*, That you may not be angry on our account. Liv. *Tuam vicem saepe dōleo, quod, etc. Cic. Suam vicem māgis anxius, quam ejus, cui auxilium ab se pētēbātur. Liv.*

REMARK 1. When the cause is a voluntary agent, it is put in the accusative with the preposition *ob, propter, or per*; as, *Non est æquum me propter vos decipi. Ter.* These prepositions, and *a, or ab, de, e or ex, and præ*, are also sometimes used when the cause is not a voluntary agent; as, *Ob adultērium cæsi. Virg. Nec loqui præ mœrōre pōtuit. Cic.*

REM. 2. (a.) After active verbs, the cause, unless expressed by an ablative in *u* from substantives having no other case; as, *Jussu, rogātū and admōnitū*, is seldom expressed by the simple ablative, but either by a preposition, or by *causā, gratiā, ergo, etc.*, with a genitive; as, *Lēgitur propter mētum paret. Cic. Ne ob eam rem ipsos despiceret. Id. Dōnari virtutis ergo. Id. Si hoc hōnōris mei causā suscipēris. Id.* But with *causā, etc.*, the adjective pronoun is commonly used for the corresponding substantive pronoun; as, *Te abesse meā causā, mōleste fero. Cic. Cf. § 211, R. 3, (b.)*

(b.) When the cause is a state of feeling, a circumlocution is often used with a perfect participle of some verb signifying 'to induce'; as, *Cupiditātē ductus, inductus, incitātus, incensus, inflammātus, impulsus, mōtus, captus, etc. Mihi bene-volentiā ductus tribuēbat omnia. Cic.* Livy frequently uses *ab* in this sense; as, *Ab ira, a spe, ab odio, from anger, hope, hate.*

2. The manner. *Cum* is regularly joined with the ablative of manner, when expressed simply by a noun, not modified by any other word; and also when an adjective is joined with the noun, provided an additional circumstance, and not merely an essential character of the action, is to be expressed. Thus:

*Cum voluptātē aliquem audire. Verres Lampadum vēnit cum magnā cālmitātē civitātis. Cic.* Hence also when the connection between the subject and the noun denoting the attribute is only external; as, *Procedere cum veste purpureā*; in distinction from *Nūdis pēdibus incēdere*; *Aperto capite sedere, etc.*, which express circumstances or attributes essential to the subject.

But *mōdus, rātiō, mos, ritus, etc.*, signifying manner, never take *cum*, and it is omitted in some expressions with other substantives; as, *Hoc mōdo scripsi; Constituērunt quā rātiōne agerētur; Mōre bestiārum vagāri; Latrōnum ritu vivere; Equo animo fero; Maximā fide amicitias colui. Summā æquitatē res constitui; Viam incredibili celeritatē confēcū; Librum magnā cūrā diligentique scripsit*; the action of the verb being intimately connected with the circumstance expressed by the ablative. So in some expressions with substantives alone; as, *Silentio præterire or facere aliquid; Lēge agere; Jure and injuriā facere; Magistrātus vitio creatus; Recte et ordine fit.*

REM. 3. The manner is also sometimes denoted by *de* or *ex* with the ablative; as, *De or ex industria, On purpose. Liv. Ex integro, Anew. Quint.*

3. The *means* and *instrument*. An ablative is joined with verbs of every kind, and also with adjectives of a passive signification, to express the means or instrument; as,

*Amicos observantiā, rem parsimōniā retinuit*. He retained his friends by attention, his property by frugality. Cic. *Auro ostrōque decōri*. Virg. *Ægrescit mēdendo*. Id. *Cornibus tauri, apri dentibus, morsu leōnes se tātantur*. Cic. *Causus est virgis*. Id. *Trabs saucia sēcūri*. Ovid. For the ablative of the means after verbs of *filling*, etc., see § 249, I.

REM. 4. When the means is a person, it is seldom expressed by the simple ablative, but either by *per*, or by the ablative *opēra* with a genitive or a possessive pronoun; as, *meā, tuā, suā, opēra*, which are equivalent to *per me, per te, per se*, and denote both good and bad services. *Bēnēficio meo*, etc., is used of good results only; as, *Bēnēficio meo patres sunt*. Sall. But persons are sometimes considered as involuntary agents, and as such expressed by the ablative without a preposition; as, *Servos, quibus silvas publicas depopulatus erat*. Cic.—When *per* is used to express the means, it is connected with external concurring circumstances, rather than with the real means or instrument. Hence we always say *vi oppidum cepit*, but *per vim ei dona eripuit*.

REM. 5. The material instrument is always expressed by the ablative without a preposition; as, *Conficere cervum edigitis; gladio aliquem vulnerare; trahere pectus ferro*.

§ 248. The ablative is used with passive verbs to denote the *means* or *agent* by which any thing is effected, and which in the active voice is expressed by the nominative. This ablative is used either with *ab* or without it, according as it is a person or a thing.

I. The *voluntary agent* of a verb in the passive voice is put in the ablative with *a* or *ab*; as,

(In the active voice,) *Clōdus me diligit*, Clodius loves me (Cic.); (in the passive,) *A Clōdio diligor*, I am loved by Clodius. *Laudatur ab his, culpatur ab illis*. Hor.

REMARK 1. (1.) The general word for persons, after verbs in the passive voice, is often understood; as, *Prōbitas laudatur*, scil. *ab hominibus*. Juv. So after the passive of neuter verbs; as, *Discurritur*. Virg. *Tōto certatum est corpore regni*. Id. Cf. § 141, R. 2.

(2.) The agent is likewise often understood, when it is the same as the subject of the verb, and the expression is then equivalent to the active voice with a reflexive pronoun, or to the middle voice in Greek; as, *Quum omnes in omni genere scelerum voluntur*, scil. *a se*. Cic.

REM. 2. Neuter verbs, also, are sometimes followed by an ablative of the voluntary agent with *a* or *ab*; as,

*M. Marcellus perit* ab Annibale, M. Marcellus was killed by Hannibal. Plin. *Ne vir ab hoste cadat*. Ovid.

REM. 3. The preposition is sometimes omitted; as, *Nec conjūge captus*. Ovid. *Cōlitur linigērā turbā*. Id. *Pereat meis excisus Argivis*. Hor.

For the dative of the agent after verbs in the passive voice, and participles in *du*, see § 226, II. and III.

II. The *involuntary agent* of a verb in the passive voice, or of a neuter verb, is put in the ablative without a preposition, as the cause, means, or instrument; as, *Maximo dolore conficior*. Cic. *Frangi cupiditate*. Id. *Æcides tēlo jacet Hector*. Virg.

**NOTE.** The involuntary agent is sometimes personified, and takes *a* or *ab*; as, *A voluptatibus deseri.* Cic. *A naturâ datum homini vivendi curriculum.* Id. *Vinci a voluptate.* Id. *Victus a labore.* Id.

§ 249. I. A noun denoting the means, by which the action of a verb is performed, is put in the ablative after verbs signifying to affect in any way, to fill, furnish, load, array, equip, endow, adorn, reward, enrich, and many others.

**REMARK 1.** This rule includes such verbs as *afficio*, *aspergo*, *conspargo*, *inspergo*, *repergo*, *compleo*, *expleo*, *impleo*, *oppleo*, *repleo*, *cumulo*, *farcio*, *refercio*, *satio*, *exsatio*, *satio*, *sitpo*, *constipo*, *obruo*, *onero*, *augeo*, *induo*, *vestio*, *armo*, *orno*, *circundo*, *circumfundo*, *maio*, *locupletio*, *instruo*, *imbuo*, *dono*, *impertio*, *remuneror*, *honesto*, *honoro*, etc.; as,

*Terröre implëtur Africa*, Africa is filled with terror. Sil. *Instruere epulis mensas*, They furnished the tables with food. Ovid. *Ut ejus animum his opinionibus imbuas*, That you should imbue his mind with these sentiments. Cic. *Naves onerant auro*, They load the ships with gold. Virg. *Cumulat altaria donis* He heaps the altars with gifts. Id. *Terra se gramine vestit*, The earth clothes itself with grass. Id. *Mollibus ornabat cornua sertis*. Id. *Multo cibo et potione completi*. Cic. *Libros puerilibus fabulis refecire*. Id. *Satiari delectatione non possum*. Id. *Homines satirati honoribus*. Id. *Senectus stipata studiis juvenitatis*. Id. *Me tanto honore honestas*. Plant. *Equis Africam locupletavit*. Colum. *Stadium tuum nullâ me novâ voluptate affecit*. Cic. *Terram nox obruit umbris*. Lucr.

**REM. 2.** Several verbs denoting to fill, instead of the ablative, sometimes take a genitive. See § 220, 3.

**REM. 3.** The active verbs *induo*, *dono*, *impertio*, *aspergo*, *inspergo*, *circundo*, and *circumfundo*, instead of the ablative of the thing with the accusative of the person, sometimes take an accusative of the thing, and a dative of the person; as, *Cui quum Deiantra tunicam induisset*. Cic. *Donare munera civibus*. In the earliest writers *dono*, like *condono*, has sometimes two accusatives or an accusative of the person with the infinitive.

II. A noun denoting that in accordance with which any thing is, or is done, is often put in the ablative without a preposition; as,

*Nostro more*, According to our custom. Cic. *Instituto suo Cæsar copias suas educit*, According to his practice. Cæs. *Id factum consilio meo*,—by my advice. Ter. *Pacem fecit his conditionibus*,—on these conditions. Nep.

**NOTE.** The prepositions *de*, *ex*, *pro*, and *secundum* are often expressed with such nouns; as, *Næque est facturus quidquam nisi de meo consilio*. Cic. *Ex consuetudine aliquid facere*. Plin. Ep. *Decet quidquid agas, agere pro viribus*. Cic. *Secundum naturam vivere*. Id.

III. The ablative denoting accompaniment, is usually joined with *cum*; as,

*Vagâmur egentes cum conjugibus et liberis*, Needy, we wander with our wives and children. Cic. *Sæpe admirari soleo cum hoc C. Lælio*. Id. *Julium cum his ad te litteris misi*. Id. *Ingressus est cum gladio*. Id. *Romam veni cum febris*. *Cum occâsu solis copias educere*,—as soon as the sun set.

**REMARK.** But *cum* is sometimes omitted before words denoting military and naval forces, when limited by an adjective; as, *Ad castra Cæsaris omnibus copiis contenderunt*. Cæs. *Inde toto exercitu profectus*. Liv. *Eodem decem navibus C. Furius venit*. Liv. And sometimes in military language *cum* is omitted, when accompanying circumstances are mentioned, and not persons; as, *Castra clamore invadunt*.

§ 250. 1. A noun, adjective, or verb, may be followed by the ablative, denoting in *what respect* their signification is taken ; as,

*Petite filius, consiliis parens*, In affection a son, in counsel a parent. Cic. *Rēges nōmine māgis quam impērio*, Kings in name rather than in authority. Nep. *Oppidum nōmine Bibrax*. Cæs.—*Jure pēritus*, Skilled in law. Cic. *Anxius animo*, Anxious in mind. Tac. *Pēdibus æger*, Lame in his feet. Sall. *Crine rāber, niger ōre*. Mart. *Fronte latus*. Tac. *Māior nātū*. Cic. *Prudentiā non infērior, usū vērō etiā supērior*. Id. *Maximus nātū*. Liv.—*Animo angī*, To be troubled in mind. Cic. *Contrēmisco tōtā mentē et omnibūs artībūs*, I am agitated in my whole mind and in every limb. Id. *Captus mente*, Affected in mind, i. e. deprived of reason. Id. *Altēro oculo cāpitur*. Liv. *Ingēni laudē flōruit*. Cic. *Pollēre nobilitātē*. Tac. *Animōque et corpōre torpet*. Hor.

REMARK. This may be called the *ablative of limitation*, and denotes the relation expressed in English by 'in respect of,' 'in regard to,' 'as to,' or 'in.'—Respecting the genitive of limitation after adjectives, see § 213;—after verbs, § 220, 1: and respecting the accusative of limitation, see § 231, R. 5; § 232, (3.); and § 234, II.

2. (1.) Adjectives of plenty or want are sometimes limited by the ablative ; as,

*Dōmus plēna servis*, A house full of servants. Juv. *Dives agris*, Rich in land. Hor. *Fēraz sæculū bonis artībūs*. Plin.—*Inops verbis*, Deficient in words. Cic. *Orba frātribus*, Destitute of brothers. Ovid. *Viduum arbōribus solum*. Colum. *Nūdus agris*. Hor. For the genitive after adjectives of plenty and want, see § 213, R. 3-5.

(2.) Verbs signifying to abound, and to be destitute, are followed by the ablative ; as,

*Scātentem belluis pontum*, The sea abounding in monsters. Hor. *Urbs rēdundat militibus*, The city is full of soldiers. Auct. ad Her. *Villa abundat porco, hædo, agno, gallinā, lacte, cæseo, melle*. Cic.—*Virum qui pecūniā eget*, A man who is in want of money. Id. *Cārere culpā*, To be free from fault. Id. *Mea adolēcentia indiget illōrum bonā existimatiōe*. Id. *Abundat audaciā, consilio et ratiōne deficitur*. Id.

REMARK 1. To this rule belong *abundo*, *exubēro*, *rēdundo*, *scāteo*, *affluo*, *circumfluo*, *diffluo*, *superfluo*, *suppedito*, *valeo*, *vigeo*;—*cāreo*, *egeo*, *indigeo*, *vāco*, *deficio*, *destitutor*, etc.

REM. 2. The *genitive*, instead of the ablative, sometimes follows certain verbs signifying to abound or to want. See § 220, 3.

REM. 3. To do any thing with a person or thing, is expressed in Latin by *fācere* with *de*; as, *Quid de Tulliolā meā fiet?* Cic; and more frequently by the simple ablative, or the dative; as, *Quid hoc hōmīne or huic hōmīni faciātis?* What can you do with this man? Cic. *Nescit quid faciāt auro*,—what he shall do with the gold. Plaut. *Quid me fiat parvi pendis*, You care little what becomes of me. Ter.—*Sum* is occasionally used in the same manner; as, *Mētum cēperunt quidā se futurū esset*,—what would become of them. Liv.

§ 251. A noun denoting that of which any thing is deprived, or from which it is freed, removed, or separated, is often put in the ablative without a preposition.

This construction occurs after verbs signifying to *deprive*, *free*, *debar*, *drive away*, *remove*, *depart*, and others which imply *separation*.

**NOTE.** The principal verbs of this class are *arceo*, *pello*, *dépello*, *expello*, *ab-äico*, *interdico*, *défendo*, *déturbo*, *dējicio*, *ējicio*, *absterreo*, *déterreo*, *móreo*, *amóreo*, *dēmóreo*, *rēmóreo*, *sécerno*, *próhibeo*, *sépáro*, *exclúdo*, *interclúdo*, *äbeo*, *ezeo*, *cëdo*, *décëdo*, *discedo*, *désisto*, *évado*, *abstíneo*, *spólio*, *prívo*, *orbo*, *libéro*, *expédio*, *lazo*, *nüdo*, *solvó*, *exsolvó*, *exónëro*, *lëvo*, *purgo*, to which may be added the adjectives *liber*, *immünis*, *pürus*, *vácuus*, and *äliénus*; as,

*Nüdantur arbóres föliis*. The trees are stripped of leaves. Plin. *Hoc me libéra méto*, Free me from this fear. Ter. *Tüne eam philósophiam séquere, quæ spóliat nos júdicio, privat approbátione, orbat sensibus*? Cic. *Solvi se Teucríä luctu*. Virg. *Te illis sädibus arcébit*. Cic. Q. *Varium pellere possessiönibus cönatus est*. Id. *Omnes tribu rëmóti*. Liv. *Lävare se xere äliëno*. Cic. *Me lëves chóri sécernunt pöpulo*. Hor. *Animus omni liber cürä et angóre*. Cic. *Utrumque hömíne äliénissimum*. Id. When *äliénus* signifies 'averse' or 'hostile to,' it takes the ablative with *ab*, or rarely the dative; as, *Id dicit, quod illi causæ maxime est äliénus*. Id. In the sense of 'unsuited,' it may also be joined with the genitive; as, *Quis äliénum pütet ejus esse dignitátis*? Id.—*Alius* too, in analogy with adjectives and verbs of separation, sometimes takes an ablative; as, *Nëve pütes älium säpíente bönöque beätum*. Hor.; but this may also be referred to the ablative after comparatives. Cf. § 256, R. 14.

**REMARK 1.** Most verbs of depriving and separating are more or less frequently followed by *ab*, *de*, or *ex*, with the ablative of the thing, and always by *ab* with the ablative of the person; as, *Tu Júpiter, hunc a tuis äris arcébis*. Cic. *Præsidium ex arce pépülërum*. Nep. *Aquam de agro pellere*. Plin. *Ex ingrätä civitatë cëdere*. Cic. *Arce[m] ab incendio libérävit*. Id. *Solvère bellum ex cäténis*. Auct. ad Her.—*Sëdes rëmótas a Germänis*. Cæs. *Se ab Etruscis sécernere*. Liv.

**REM. 2.** *Arceo*, in the poets, sometimes takes the dative, see § 224, R. 2, and sometimes an infinitive; as, *Plägámque sädere cëdendo arcébat*. Ovid.—*Próhibeo* and *défendo* take either the accusative of the person or thing to be defended, with the ablative of the thing to be warded off—or the reverse—*äliquem* or *äliquid* a *përiculo*, or *përiculum ab äliquo*. They are also sometimes construed with the dative, see § 224, R. 2, and sometimes with infinitive or subjunctive clauses. *Próhibeo* has rarely two accusatives; as, *Id te Júpiter próhibessit*. Plant.; or poetically the accusative and genitive; as, *Cryptæ próhibere Pénos äquillæ*. Sil.—*Interdico* takes the person either in the accusative or the dative, and the thing in the ablative, *äliquem* or *älicui* *äliquä re*; as, *Quibus quum aquä et igni interdixissent*. Cæs.—Instead of the ablative, a subjunctive clause with *ne*, and more rarely with *ut*, sometimes follows *interdico*.—*Absum*, in like manner, takes the ablative with *ab*, and sometimes the dative; as, *Curtæ nescio quid semper äbest rei*. Hor. Cf. § 224, R. 1.—*Abäico* takes sometimes an ablative, and sometimes an accusative of the thing renounced; as, *Abäicare se mägisträtu*. Cic. *Abäicare mägisträtum*. Sall. In Plautus, *circumdäico*, to cheat, takes the ablative of the thing. *Interclúdo*, instead of an ablative of the thing with an accusative of the person, sometimes takes an accusative of the thing and a dative of the person; as, *linërum angustias multitudine fugam interclüsérant*. Cæs.: and, instead of the ablative of the thing, a subjunctive clause with *quómínus* occurs: *Interclüdor dölöre, quómínus ad te plúra scribam*. Cic.

**REM. 3.** Verbs which signify to *distinguish*, to *differ*, and to *disagree*, are generally construed with *ab*, but sometimes, especially in the poets, with the ablative alone.

**NOTE.** Verbs signifying to distinguish, etc., are *distinguo*, *discerno*, *sécerno*, *diffëro*, *discrepo*, *disäideo*, *disto*, *dissentio*, *discordo*, *äbhorreo*, *äliëno*, and *äbäliëno*.—*Disäentio*, *disäideo*, *discrepo*, and *discordo* are construed also with *cum*.—The verbs which signify to *differ* are sometimes construed with the dative; as, *Distat infido scurræ ämicus*. Hor., and in like manner the adjective *diversus*; as, *Nihil est tam Lysias diversum, quam Isocrätës*. Quint.

## ABLATIVE OF PRICE.

§ 252. The *price* or *value* of a thing is put in the ablative, when it is a definite sum, or is expressed by a substantive; as,

*Quum te trēcentis tālentis rēgi Cotto vendidisses*, When you had sold yourself to king Cottus for three hundred talents. Cic. *Vendidit hic auro patriam*, This one sold his country for gold. Virg. *Cibus uno asse vēnālis*. Plin. *Constitit quadringentis millibus*. Varr. *Dēnis in diem assibus āntinum et corpus (militum) cōstimāri*. Tac. *Lēvi mōmento cōstimāre*. Cæs. *Istuc verbum vile est vīginti minis*. Plaut. *Asse cārū est*. Sen. Ep.

REMARK 1. The verbs which take an ablative of price or value are (1) *cōstimō, dūcō, faciō, fio, hābeo, pendo, pūto, depūto, taxo*; (2) *ēmo, mercor, vendo, do, vēneo, sto, consto, prosto, condūcō, lōcō, vāleo, luo, and liceo*.—To these must be added others, which express some act or enjoyment for which a certain price is paid; as, *Lāvor quadrante*. *Triginta millibus Caelius hābitat*. Cic. *Vix drachmis est obsonātus* decem. Ter. *Dōceo tālento*, etc. So *esse* in the sense 'to be worth'; as, *Sextante sal in Italiā erat*.

REM. 2. Respecting the genitive of price or value, when expressed in a general or indefinite manner, see § 214.

REM. 3. The price of a thing, contrary to the general rule, is often expressed indefinitely by a neuter adjective; as, *magno, permagno, parvo, tantulo, plāre, minimo, plārīmo, vili, viliōri, vilissimo, nimio*, etc.; as, *Plūre vēnit*. Cic. *Conduxit non magno dōmum*. Id. These adjectives refer to some noun understood, as *prētio, aere*, and the like, which are sometimes expressed; as, *Parvo prētio ea vendidisse*. Cic.—The adverbs *bene, pulchre, recte, male, cāre*, etc., sometimes take the place of the genitive or ablative of price; as, *Bene emēre; recte vendēre; optime vendēre*, etc.

REM. 4. Varro has used *vāleo* with the accusative; as, *Dēnārii dēcti, quod dēnos ariā vālebant*.

REM. 5. *Mūto* and its compounds, *commūto* and *permūto*, are commonly construed like verbs of selling, the thing parted with being put in the accusative, and the thing received in exchange for it, in the ablative; as, *Chāōniam glandem pingui mūtāvī aristā*. Virg. But these cases are often reversed, so that the thing received is put in the accusative and the thing given for it in the ablative; as, *Cur valle permūtem Sābinā divitiās opērosiōres?* Why should I exchange my Sabine valley for more wearisome riches? Hor.—Sometimes in this construction *cum* is joined with the ablative.

## ABLATIVE OF TIME.

§ 253. A noun denoting the *time at* or *within* which any thing is said to be, or to be done, is put in the ablative without a preposition; as,

*Die quinto decessit*, He died on the fifth day. Nep. *Hoc tempore*, At this time. Cic. *Tertiā vigiliā eruptionem fecerunt*, They made a sally at the third watch. Cæs. *U hieme nāvigēs*, That you should sail in the winter. Cic. *Proximo triennio omnes gentes subegit*. Nep. *Agamemnon cum universā Graciā vix decem annis unam cepit urbem*. Nep.

NOTE 1. The English expression 'by day' is rendered in Latin either by *interdiu* or *die*; 'by night,' by *noctu* or *nocte*; and 'in the evening,' by *vespere* or *vesperi*; see § 82, Exc. 5, (a.) *Lūdis* is used for *in tempore ludorum*; and *Sāturnalibus*, *Lātinis*, *gladiatōribus*, for *lūdis Sāturnalibus*, etc. Other nouns not properly expressing time are used in that sense in the ablative either with or without *in*, as *initio, principio, adventu* and *discessu* *alcūjus, comitiis, tumultu, bello, pace*, etc.; or in *initio*, etc. But *bello* is more common without *in*, if it is

joined with an adjective or a genitive; as, *Bello Punico secundo, bello Látinorum*; and so, also, *pugnā Cannensi*. So we say in *pueritiā*, but omit in with an adjective; as, *extrēmā pueritiā*. It is very rarely used with nouns expressing a certain space of time; as, *annus, dies, hōra*, etc., for the purpose of denoting the time of an event. In *tempore* signifies either 'in distress,' or 'in time,' i. e. 'at the right time'; but in both cases *tempore* alone is used, and *tempore* in the sense of 'early' has even become an adverb, an earlier form of which was *tempōri* or *tempēri*, whose comparative is *tempērius*.

REMARK 1. When a period is marked by its distance before or after another fixed time, it may be expressed by *ante* or *post* with either the accusative or the ablative.—(a.) The preposition is regularly placed before the accusative, but after the ablative. If an adjective is used, the preposition is often placed between the adjective and the noun. In this connection the ordinal as well as the cardinal numbers may be used. Hence the English phrase 'after three years,' or 'three years after,' may be expressed in these eight ways; *post tres annos, tribus annis post; post tertium annum, tertio anno post; tres post annos, tribus post annis; tertium post annum, tertio post anno*.

(b.) When *ante* or *post* stands last, an accusative may be added to denote the time before or after which any thing took place; as, *Multis annis post dēcemviros*. Cic. *Consul factus est annis post Rōmam conditam trēcentis duobus et nōviginta*.

NOTE 2. *Post* and *ante* sometimes precede the ablatives, as *ante annis octo; post paucis diēbus*; and also before such ablatives as are used adverbially, as *post aliquanto; ante paulo*.

NOTE 3. *Quam* and a verb are sometimes added to *post* and *ante* in all the forms above specified; e. g. *tribus annis postquam vēnērāt; post tres annos quam vēnērāt; tertio anno postquam vēnērāt; post annum tertium quam vēnērāt*, etc.; all of which expressions signify 'three years after he had come.' Sometimes *post* is omitted; as, *tertio anno quam vēnērāt*.

NOTE 4. Instead of *postquam*, 'after,' we may use *ex quo, quum*, or a relative agreeing with the preceding ablative; as, *Ipse octo diēbus, quibus has lītēras dābam, cum Lēptidī cōpias me conjungam*; i. e. in eight days after the date of this letter. Planc. in Cic. Fam. *Mors Sex. Roscii quatrīduo, quo is occisus est, Chrēsogōno nuntiātur*,—four days after he had been killed. Cic. *Quem triduo, quum has dābam lītēras, exspectābam*,—three days after the date of this letter. Planc. in Cic. In such cases *in* is sometimes joined with the ablative; as, *In diēbus paucis, quibus hæc acta sunt, moritur*. Ter.

REM. 2. The length of time before the present moment may be expressed by *abhinc* with the accusative, and, less frequently, the ablative; as, *Quæstor fuisti abhinc annos quātuordēcim*. Cic. *Cōmitiis jam abhinc triginta diēbus habitis*. Id. The same is also expressed by *ante* with the pronoun *hic*; as, *ante hos sex menses mālēdixisti mihi*,—six months ago. Phæd. *Ante* is sometimes used instead of *abhinc*: and the length of time before is sometimes expressed by the ablative joined with *hic* or *ille*; as, *Paucis his diēbus, or paucis illis diēbus*,—a few days ago.

REM. 3. The time at which any thing is done, is sometimes expressed by the neuter accusative *id*, with a genitive; as, *Venit id temporis*. Cic. So with a preposition; *Ad id diēi*. Gell. See § 212, R. 3.

REM. 4. (a.) The time at or within which any thing is done, is sometimes, with personal subjects, expressed by *de*, with the ablative; as, *De tertiā vigiliā ad hostes contendit*,—in the third watch. Cæs. *Ut iugulent homines surgunt de nocte latrones*. Hor. So, also, with *sub*; as, *Ne sub ipsā profectiōne milites optatum irrumpērent*,—at the very time of his departure. Cæs. *Sub adventu Rōmānorum*, While the Romans were arriving. Id.

(b.) The time within which any thing occurs, is also sometimes expressed by *infra* with the accusative; as, *Dimidiam partem natiōnum subēgit intra viginti dies*. Plaut. *Intra dēcimum diem, quam Phēras vēnērāt*, In less than ten days after... Liv.



REM. 5. The time within which a thing happens, is often expressed by the ablative with *in*; especially (a) in connection with numerals; as, *Bis in die editurum fieri*; *rix ter in anno nuntium audire*; and (b), as in the use of *intra*, to denote that the event happened before the time specified had fully expired.

REM. 6. Instead of *in pueritiā, adulescentiā, iuventute, senectute*, etc., in stating the age at which a person performed any action, the concretes *puer, adulescens, iuvenis, senex*, etc., are commonly joined to the verb; as, *Cn. Pompeius, adulescens se et patrem consilio servavit*.—So, also, adjectives ending in *enarius* are sometimes used in stating the number of years a person has lived; as, *Cicero sexagēnarius*.

For the ablative denoting duration of time, see § 236.

## ABLATIVE OF PLACE.

§ 254. The name of a town *in which* any thing is said to be, or to be done, if of the third declension or plural number, is put in the ablative without a preposition; as,

*Alexander Bābylōne est mortuus*, Alexander died at Babylon. Cic. *Intererit multum*—*Thēbis nūtritus an Argis*,—whether brought up at Thebes or at Argos. Hor. *Natus Tibūre vel Gābiis*. Id.

REMARK 1. 'In the country' is expressed by *rūre*, or more commonly by *rūri*, without a preposition; as, *Pater filium rūri habitare iussit*. Cic. With an adjective only *rūre* is used; as, *Interdum nūgaris rūre pāterno*. Hor. Cf. § 221, N.

REM. 2. (a.) The preposition *in* is sometimes expressed with names of towns; as, *In Philippis quidam nunciavit*. Suet.

(b.) Names of towns of the first and second declension, and singular number, and also *dōmus* and *hūmus*, are in like manner sometimes put in the ablative without *in*. See § 221, R. 2 and R. 3.—So, also, *terrā mārique*, by land and by sea. *In* is also frequently omitted with *loco* and *locis*, especially when joined with an adjective and having the meaning of 'occasion'; as, *Hoc loco, multis locis*, etc.—*Libro* joined with an adjective, as *hoc, primo*, etc., is used without *in* when the whole book is meant, and with *in* when only a portion is referred to. An ablative of place joined with *toto, totā, totis*, is generally used without *in*; as, *Urbe totā gemitus fit*. Cic. *Totā Asiā vagatur*. Id. *Toto mari*. Id. But in such cases *in* is sometimes used. So *cunctā Asiā*. Liv.

REM. 3. Before the names of countries, of nations used for those of countries, and of all other places in which any thing is said to be or to be done, except those of towns, and excepting also the phrases specified in the first and second remarks, the preposition *in* is commonly used; as, *Iphicrātes in Thrāciā vivit*, Chares in Sigēo. Nep. *Rūre ego viventem, tu dicis in urbe beatum*. Hor. *Aio hoc fieri in Græciā*. Plaut. In Bactriānis Sogdianisque urbes condidit. *Lūcus in urbe fuit*. Virg. But it is sometimes omitted by writers of every class and period; as, *Milites stātis castris habebat*. Sall. *Magnis in laudibus fuit totā Græciā*. Nep. *Pōpuli sensus maxime theātro et spectaculis perspectus est*. Cic. *Pompeius se oppido tenet*. Id. In the poets and later prose writers this omission is of very frequent occurrence not only with names of towns but with ablatives of all nouns answering to the question, where? as, *Nāvita puppe sedens*. Ovid. *Ibam forte Viā Sacrā*. Hor. *Silvisque agrisque viscera corpōra feda jacent*. Ovid. *Mēdio alveo concursus est*. Liv.—*Fōris*, out at the door, abroad, is properly an ablative of place; as, *Fōris cenat*. Cic. Cf. § 237, R. 5, (c.)

§ 255. 1. After verbs expressing or implying motion, the name of a town *whence* the motion proceeds, is put in the ablative, without a preposition; as,

Brundisio *prœfecti sumus*, We departed from Brundisium. Cic. *Dionysius tyrannus Syracûsis expulsus Cœrinthi pueros docēbat*. Id. *Dendratus Tarquinius Cœrintho fugit*. Id. *Accipi tuas lîteras dâtas Placentiâ*. Id. *Intêrim Rômâ per lîteras certior fit*; scil. *dâtas* or *missas*. Sall. J. 82. So, also, after a verbal noun; as, *Narbône rêditus*. Cic.

REMARK 1. The ablatives *dômo*, *hûmo*, and *rûre* or *rûri*, are used, like names of towns, to denote the place whence motion proceeds; as,

*Dômo prœfectus*, Having set out from home. Nep. *Surgit hûmo jûvenis*, The youth rises from the ground. Ovid. *Rûre huc advênit*. Ter. *Si rûri veniet*. Id. Virgil uses *dômo* with *unde*; as, *Qui gēnus? unde d'æo?* and Livy, instead of *dômo abesse*, has *esse ab dômo*. With an adjective, *rûre*, and not *rûri*, must be used.

REM. 2. With names of towns and *dômus* and *hûmus*, when answering the question 'whence?' *ab*, *ex*, or *de*, is sometimes used; as, *Ab Alexandriâ prœfectus*. Cic. *Ex dômo*. Id. *De vitifêrâ vênisse Viennâ*. Mart. *Ab hûmo*. Virg.

REM. 3. (a.) With other names of places whence motion proceeds, *ab*, *ex*, or *de*, is commonly expressed; as, *Me a portu prœmisit*. Plaut. *Ex Asiâ transis in Europam*. Curt. *Ex castris prœficiscuntur*. Cæs. *De Pomptino*, scil. *prædio*. Cic.—So, also, before names of nations used for those of countries; as, *Ex Mædis ad adversariôrum hibernacula pervenit*. Nep.

(b.) But the preposition is sometimes omitted; as, *Litêre Mæcêdoniâ allâtæ*. Liv. *Classis Cypro advênit*. Curt. *Cessissent loco*. Liv. *Ni cite vicis et castellis proximis subventum foret*. Id. *Ite sacris, prœperâte sacris, laurumque câpillis pônite*. Ovid. *Finibus omnes prôsiliuere suis*. Virg. *Advoleunt ingentes montibus ornos*. Id. This omission of the preposition is most common in the poets and later prose writers.

2. The place *by*, *through*, or *over* which, after verbs of motion, commonly follows *per*; but frequently also it is put in the ablative without a preposition; as,

Per Thêbas iter fêcit. Nep. *Exercitum vado transducit*. Cæs. *His pontibus pabulatum pûtēbat*. Id. *Tribuni militum portâ Collinâ urbem intrâvêre sub signis, mediâque urbe agmine in Aventinum pergunt*. Liv. *Lêgiônes Pennînis Cottianisque Alpibus, pars monte Graio, traducuntur*. Tac. *Equites viâ breviori prœmisi*. Cic.

## ABLATIVE AFTER COMPARATIVES.

§ 256. 1. When two objects are compared by means of the comparative degree, a conjunction, as *quam*, *atque*, etc., is sometimes expressed, and sometimes omitted.

2. The comparative degree, when *quam* is omitted, is followed by the ablative of that with which the comparison is made; as,

*Nihil est virtûte formôsius*, Nothing is more beautiful than virtue. Cic. *Quis C. Lælio cômior?* Who is more courteous than C. Lælius? Id.

REMARK 1. The person or thing with which the subject of a proposition is compared, is usually put in the ablative; as,

*Sidêre pulchrior ille est, tu levior cortice*. Hor. *Vilius argentum est auro, virtutibus aurum*. Id. *Tullus Hostilius fêrôrior Rômulo fuit*. Liv. *Lacrimâ nihil citius arescit*. Cic. *Quid magis est durum saxo, quid mollius undâ?* Ovid. *Hoc nemo fuit minus ineptus*. Ter. *Albanum, Mæcenas, sive Fâlernum te magis apôstolis delectat*. Hor.

REM. 2. An object with which a person or thing addressed is compared, is also put in the ablative; as, *O fons Bandusiae splendidiôr vitro!* Hor.

REM. 3. Sometimes the person or thing with which the subject of a proposition is compared, instead of following it in the ablative, is connected with it by *quam*, and it is then put in the same case as the subject, whether in the nominative or the accusative; as, *Oratio quam hâbitus fuit miserabiliôr.* Cic. *Affirmo nullam esse laudem ampliorem quam eam.* Id. So, also, when an ablative in the case absolute takes the place of the subject; as, *Eodem* (scil. *dûce*) *plura, quam grægario milite, tôlérante.* Tac.

REM. 4. If the person or thing which is compared with any object is neither the subject of the sentence nor the person addressed, *quam* is commonly used, and the object which follows it is then put in the nominative with *sum*, and sometimes in an oblique case to agree with the object with which it is compared; as, *Méliorem, quam ego sum, suppôno tibi.* Plant. *Ego hómînem calidiorem vidi nēmînem quam Phormiônem.* Ter. *Adventus hostium fuit agris, quam urbi terribiliôr.* Liv. *Omnes fontes æstâtè, quam hième, sunt gelidiôres.* Plin. *Thémistoclis nomen, quam Sôlônis, est illustrius.* Cic.—The following example illustrates both the preceding constructions:—*Ut tibi multo majôra, quam Africânus fuit, me non multo minorem quam Lælium facile et in repûblicâ et in amicitia adjunctum esse patiâre.* Cic.

REM. 5. (a.) The person or thing with which the object of an active verb is compared, though usually connected with it by *quam*, (R. 4.) is sometimes put in the ablative, especially in the poets, and frequently also even in prose, if the object is a pronoun, particularly a relative pronoun; as, *Attalo, quo graviorem inimicum non habui, sororem dedit.* He gave his sister to Attalus, than whom, etc. Curt. *Hoc nihil grâtius facere pötes.* Cic. *Causam enim suscepisti antiquiorem memoriâ tuâ.* Id. *Exegi monumentum ære perennius.* Hor. *Cur olivum sanguine viperino cautius vitat?* Id. *Quid prius dicam solitis parentis laudibus?* Id. *Majôra viribus audes.* Virg. *Nullam sacrâ vite prius severis arborem.* Hor. *Nullos his mallem ludos spectasse.* Id. § 178, 8.

(b.) The ablative instead of *quam* is never used with any other oblique case except the accusative, but *quam* is sometimes found, even where the ablative might have been used; as, *Mélior tutiorque est certa pax quam sperata victória.* Liv. After *quam*, if the verb cannot be supplied from the preceding sentence, *est, fuit, etc.*, must be added; as, *Hæc verba sunt M. Varronis, quam fuit Claudius, doctioris.* Gell. *Drusum Germanicum minorem natu, quam ipse erat, fratrem amisit.* Sen. .

REM. 6. (a.) *Minus, plus, and amplius* with numerals, and with other words denoting a certain measure or a certain portion of a thing, are used either with or without *quam*, generally as indeclinable words, without influence upon the construction, but merely to modify the number; as, *Non plus quam quatuor millia effugerunt, not effugit.* Liv. *Pictôres antiqui non sunt usi plus quam quatuor coloribus, not pluribus.* Cic.

(b.) *Quam* is frequently omitted with all cases; as, *Minus duo millia hominum ex tanto exercitu effugerunt.* Liv. *Milites Romani sæpe plus dimidiati mensi cibaria ferebant.* Cic. *Quum plus annum æger fuisset.* Liv. *Seddecim non amplius eo anno legionibus defensum imperium est.* Id.

(c.) These comparatives, as in the preceding example, are sometimes inserted between the numeral and its substantive, and sometimes, when joined with a negative, they follow both, as a sort of apposition; as, *Quinque millia armatorum, non amplius, relictum erat presidium,*—a garrison of five thousand soldiers, not more. Liv. So, also, *longius*; *Cæsar certior est factus, magnas Gallorum copias non longius millia passuum octo ab hibernis suis abfuisse.* Cæs. See § 236.

(d.) The ablative is sometimes used with these as with other comparatives; as, *Dies triginta aut plus eo in navi fui.* Ter. *Triennio amplius.* Cic. *Horâ amplius moriebantur.* Id. *Ne longius triduo ab castris absit.* Cæs. *Apud Suevos non longius anno remanere uno in loco incolendi causâ licet.* Id. *Quum initio non amplius duobus millibus habuisset.* Sall.

REM. 7. *Quam* is in like manner sometimes omitted, without a change of case, after *māior*, *mīnor*, and some other comparatives; as, *Obsides ne minōres octonum dēnum annōrum, neu māiores quīnum quādrāgēnum,....* of not less than eighteen, nor more than forty-five years of age. Liv. *Ex urbāno exercitu, qui minōres quīnque et trīginta annis erant, in nāves impositi sunt.* The genitive and ablative, in these and similar examples, are to be referred to § 211, R. 6. *Longius ab urbe mille passuum.* Liv. *Annos nātas māgis quādrāginta.* Cic.

REM. 8. When the second member of a comparison is an infinitive or a clause, *quam* is always expressed; as, *Nihil est in dicendo māius quam ut fāveat orātōri auditor.* Cic.

REM. 9. Certain nouns, participles, and adjectives,—as *opīniōne*, *spe*, *expectātiōne*, *fide*,—*dicto*, *sōlto*,—*æquo*, *crēdibili*, *necessario*, *vēro*, and *justo*,—are used in a peculiar manner in the ablative after comparatives; as, *Opīniōne cēlērīus veniūrus esse dicitur*,—sooner than is expected. Cæs. *Dicto citius tūmīda æquōra plācat*, Quicker than the word was spoken. Virg. *Injūrias grāvius æquo habēre.* Sall.

(a.) These ablatives supply the place of a clause; thus, *grāvius æquo* is equivalent to *grāvius quam quod æquum est.* They are often omitted; as, *Thēmistocles libērīus vivēbat*, scil. *æquo*. Nep. In such cases, the comparative may be translated by the positive degree, with *too*, *quite*, or *rather*, as in the above example—'He lived too freely,' or 'rather freely.' *Voluptas quum māior est atque longior, omne dñmi lūmen exstinguit*,—when it is too great, and of too long continuance. Cic. *So tristior*, scil. *sōlto*, rather sad.

(b.) The English word, 'still,' joined with comparatives, is expressed by *etiam* or *vel*, and only in later prose writers by *adhuc*; as, *Ut in corpōribus magnæ dissimilitūdīnes sunt, sic in animis existunt māiores etiam vāriētātes.* Cic.

REM. 10. (a.) With *infērior*, the dative is sometimes used, instead of the ablative; as, *Vir nullā arte cuiquam infērior.* Sall. The ablative is also found; as, *Ut hūmānos cāsus virtūte infēriōres pūtes.* Cic. But usually *infērior* is followed by *quam*; as, *Timōtheus bellī laude non infērior fuit, quam pāter.* Cic. *Gratiā non infērior, quam qui umquam fuērunt amplissimī.* Id.

(b.) *Qualis*, 'such as,' with a comparative, occurs poetically instead of the relative pronoun in the ablative; as, *Nardo pērunctum, quāle non perfectius mea lāborārint mānus*; instead of *quo*. Hor. Epod. 5, 59. *Animæ quāles nēque candīdiōres terra tūti*; for *quibus*. Id. Sat. 1, 5, 41.

REM. 11. *Quam pro* is used after comparatives, to express disproportion; as, *Prelūm atrocīus quam pro nūmēro pugnantiū, The battle was more severe than was proportionate to the number of the combatants.* Liv. *Mīnor, quam pro tūmultu, exēdes.* Tac.

REM. 12. When two adjectives or adverbs are compared with each other, both are put in the comparative; as, *Triumphus clārīor quam grātior*, A triumph more famous than acceptable. Liv. *Fortius quam fēlicius bellum gessērunt.* So, also, when the comparative is formed by means of *māgis*; as, *Māgis audacter quam pārate ad dicendum veniēbat.* Cic.—Tacitus uses the positive in one part of the proposition; as, *Spēcīem excelsæ glōriæ vehēmentius quam caute appētēbat*; or even in both; as, *Clāris mājōribus quam vētustis.*

REM. 13. (a.) *Pōtius* and *māgis* are sometimes joined pleonastically with *malle* and *præstāre*, and also with comparatives; as, *Ab omnībus se dēsertos pōtius quam ab te dēfensos esse mālunt.* Cic. *Qui māgis vērē vincēre quam dūs impērāre mālūt.* Liv. *Ut emōri pōtius quam servīre præstāret.* Cic. *Mīhi quævis fūga pōtius quam ulla prōvincia esset optātior.* Id. *Quis māgis queat esse beatior?* Virg.

(b.) So, also, the prepositions *pra*, *ante*, *præter*, and *supra*, are sometimes used with a comparative; as, *Unus præ cētēris fortior exsurgit*, Apul. *Scēlēs ante alios immānīor omnes.* Virg. They also occur with a superlative; as, *Ante alios carīssimus.* Nep. As these prepositions, when joined with the positive, denote comparison, they seem in such examples to be redundant. See § 127.

REM. 14. *Alius* is sometimes in poetry treated as a comparative, and construed with the ablative instead of *atque* with the nominative or accusative; as, *Nève putes alium sapiente bonoque beatum*. Hor. *Alius Lysippo*. Id. But compare § 251, N.

REM. 15. By the poets *ac* and *atque* are sometimes used instead of *quam* after comparatives; as, *Quanto constantior idem in citius, tanto levius miser ac prior ille, qui*, etc. Hor. *Arctius atque hederâ procera adstringitur ilex*. Id.

REM. 16. The degree of difference between objects compared is expressed by the ablative:—

(1.) Of substantives; as, *Minor uno mense*, Younger by one month. Hor. *Sesquipède quam tu longior*, Taller than you by a foot and a half. Plaut. *Hibernia dimidio minor quam Britannia*. Cæs. *Dimidio minoris constabit*, It will cost less by half. Cic. *Quam molestum est uno digito plus habere!*....to have one finger more, i. e. than we have, to have six fingers. Id.—but the expression is ambiguous, as it might mean ‘to have more than one finger.’ *Superat capite et cervicibus altis*. Virg.

(2.) Of neuter adjectives of quantity and neuter pronouns, in the singular number. Such are *tanto*, *quanto*, *quo*, *eo*, *hoc*, *multo*, *parvo*, *paulo*, *nimio*, *âtquanto*, *tantûlo*, *altéro tanto* (twice as much); as, *Multo doctior es patre*, Thou art (by) much more learned than thy father. The relative and demonstrative words, *quanto*—*tanto*, *quo*—*eo*, or *quo*—*hoc*, signifying ‘by how much—by so much,’ are often to be translated by an emphatic *the*; as, *Quanto sumus superiôres*, *tanto nos submissius geramus*, The more eminent we are, the more humbly let us conduct ourselves: lit. by how much—by so much—. Cic. *Eo gravior est dolor, quo culpa est major*. Id. But the relative word generally precedes the demonstrative; as, *Quo difficilius, hoc præclarius*. Id. Poetically, also, *quam magis*—*tam magis* are used instead of *quanto magis*—*tanto magis*. Virg. *Æn.* 7, 787: and *quam magis*—*tanto magis*. Lucr. 6, 459.—*Iter multo facilius*,—much easier. Cæs. *Parvo brevius*, A little shorter. Plin. *Eo magis*, The more. Cic. *Eo minus*. Id. *Istoc magis vixibilis*, So much the more. Plaut. *Via altéro tanto longior*,—as long again. Nep. *Multo id maximum fuit*. Liv.

(3.) The ablative of degree is joined not only with comparatives but with verbs which contain the idea of comparison; as, *mêlo, præsto, supéro, excello, antecello, antecedo*, and others compounded with *ante*; and also with *ante* and *post*, in the sense of ‘earlier’ and ‘later’; as, *Multo præstat*. Sall. *Post paulo*, A little after. Id. *Multo ante lucis adventum*, Long before—. Id. *Multis partibus* is equivalent to *multo*; as, *Número multis partibus esset inferior*. Cæs.

NOTE. The accusatives *multum*, *tantum*, *quantum*, and *dilquantum*, are sometimes used instead of the corresponding ablatives; as, *Aliquantum est ad rem æquior*. Ter. *Multum improbiôres sunt*. Plaut. *Quantum dômo inferior, tantum gloriâ superior evasit*. Val. Max. Cf. § 232, (3.)—So *longe*, ‘far,’ is frequently used for *multo*; as, *Longe melior*. Virg. *Longe et multum antecellere*. Cic. *So, pars pedis sesqui major*,—longer by one half. Id.

#### ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

§ 257. A noun and a participle are put in the ablative, called *absolute*, to denote the time, cause, means, or concomitant of an action, or the condition on which it depends; as,

*Pythâgoras, Tarquinio regnante, in Italiam venit*, Pythagoras came into Italy, in the reign of Tarquin. Cic. *Læpus, stimulante fâme, captat ovile*, Hunger inciting, the wolf seeks the fold. Ovid. *Milites, pécôre e longinquioribus vicis ædacto, extrémam fâmem sustentabant*. Cæs. *Hac oratione habita, concilium dimisit*. Id. *Galli, re cognita, obsidiônem relinquunt*. Id. *Virtute exceptâ, nihil amicitia præstabitur pûlcris*. Cic.

NOTE 1. The Latin ablative absolute may be expressed in English by a similar construction, but it is commonly better to translate it by a clause connected by *when*, *since*, *while*, *although*, *after*, *as*, etc., or by a verbal substantive; as, *Te adiuvante*, With thy assistance. *Non—nisi te adiuvante*, Only with thy assistance, or not without thy assistance. *Te non adiuvante*, Without thy assistance. Cf. § 274, R. 5, (c.)

REMARK 1. This construction is an abridged form of expression, equivalent to a dependent clause connected by *quum*, *si*, *etsi*, *quamquam*, *quamvis*, etc.

Thus, for *Tarquinio regnante*, the expression *dum Tarquinius regnabat* might be used; for *hac oratione habita*;—*quum hanc orationem habuisset*, or *quum hæc oratio habita esset*,—*concilium dimisit*. The ablative absolute may always be resolved into a proposition, by making the noun or pronoun the subject, and the participle the predicate.

REM. 2. This construction is common only with present and perfect participles. Instances of its use with participles in *rus* and *dus* are comparatively rare; as,

*Cæsare venturo, Phosphore, redde diem*. Mart. *Irrupturis tam infestis nationibus*. Liv. *Quum concio plausum, meo nomine recitando, dedisset*,—when my name was pronounced. Cic. *Quum immolandâ Iphigeniâ tristis Calchas esset*. Id. *Quis est enim, qui, nullis officii præceptis tradendis, philosophum se audeat dicere*—without propounding any rules of duty. Cic. Cf. § 274, R. 5, (c.) and R. 9.

REM. 3. (a.) A noun is put in the ablative absolute, only when it denotes a different person or thing from any in the leading clause. Cf. § 274, 3, (a.)

(b.) Yet a few examples occur of a deviation from this principle, especially with a substantive pronoun referring to some word in the leading clause; as, *Se audiente, scribit Thucydides*. Cic. *Legio ex castris Varronis, adstante et inspectante ipso, signa sustulit*. Cæs. *Me dūce, ad hunc voti finem, me milite, veni*. Ovid. So *M. Porcius Cato, vivo quodque Scipione, allatrare ejus magnitudinem solitus erat*. Liv.

NOTE 2. Two participles must not be put together in the ablative absolute agreeing with the same noun. Thus, we may say *Porcia sæpe maritum cogitantem invenerat*, but not, *Porcia marito cogitante invento*.

NOTE 3. Instead of the ablative absolute denoting a cause, an accusative with *ob* or *propter* occurs in Livy and in later writers; as, *Cinõpum condidit Spartani*, ob sepultum illic rectorem navis Cånõpum. Tac. *Decemviri libros Sibyllinos inspicere jussi sunt propter terribiles homines novis prodigiis*. Liv.

REM. 4. The ablative absolute serves to mark the time of an action, by reference to that of another action. If the present participle is used, the time of the action expressed by the participle, is the same as that of the principal verb. The perfect participle and the future in *rus*, denote respectively an action as prior or subsequent to that expressed by the principal verb.

Thus in the preceding examples—*Pythagoras*, *Tarquinio regnante*, in *Julium venit*, Pythagoras came into Italy during the reign of Tarquinius. *Galli, re cognita, obediendum relinquunt*, The Gauls, having learned the fact, abandon the siege. So, *Rex apum non nisi migraturo examine foras procedit*, The king-bee does not go abroad, except when a swarm is about to emigrate. Plin.

NOTE 4. *Non prius quam, non nisi, ut, vclut, and tamquam*, are sometimes joined with the participle; as, *Tiberius excessum Augusti non prius palam fēcit, quam Agrippā iuvene intērempto*, —not until. Suet. *Galli lēti, ut explorāta victōriā, ad castra Rōmāndrum pergunt*. Cæs. *Antiochus, tamquam non transitūris in Asiam Rōmānis*, etc. Liv.

REM. 5. (a.) The construction of the ablative absolute with the perfect passive participle, arises frequently from the want of a participle of that tense in the active voice.

Thus, for Cæsar, having sent forward the cavalry, was following with all his forces,' we find, '*Cæsar, equitātū præmisso, subsequēbātur omnibus cōpiis*.'

(b.) As the perfect participle in Latin may be used for both the perfect active and the perfect passive participles in English, its meaning can, in many instances, be determined only by the connection, since the agent with a *per* or *ab* is generally not expressed with this participle in the ablative absolute, as it is with other parts of the passive voice. Thus, *Cæsar*, his dictis, *concilium dimisit*, might be rendered, '*Cæsar, having said this, or this having been said* (by some other person), dismissed the assembly.'

(c.) As the perfect participles of deponent verbs correspond to perfect active participles in English, no such necessity exists for the use of the ablative absolute with them; as, *Cæsar, hæc locūtus, concilium dimisit*. In the following example, both constructions are united: *Itaque....agros Remōrum depōpūlati, omnibus victis, ædificiisque incensis*. Cæs.

REM. 6. The perfect participles of neuter deponent verbs, and some also of active deponents, which admit of both an active and a passive sense, are used in the ablative absolute; as, *Ortā luce*. Cæs. *Vel exstincto vel elapso animo, nullum residere sensum*. Cic. *Tam multis glōriam ejus adeptis*. Plin. *Lūtras ad exercitus, tamquam adepto principātu, misit*. Tac.

REM. 7. (a.) As the verb *sum* has no present participle, two nouns, or a noun and an adjective, which might be the subject and predicate of a dependent clause, are put in the ablative absolute without a participle; as,

*Quid, adolescētūlo dūce, efficere possent*, What they could do under the guidance of a youth. Cæs. *Me suāsore atque impulsore, hoc factum*, By my advice and instigation. Plaut. *Hannibāle vivo*, While Hannibal was living. Nep. *Invitā Minervā*, in opposition to one's genius. Cic. *Cælo sereno*, when the weather is clear. Virg. *Me ignaro*, without my knowledge. Cic. With names of office, the concrete noun is commonly used in the ablative absolute, rather than the corresponding abstract with *in* to denote the time of an event; as, *Rōmam vēnit* Mārio consule, He came to Rome in the consulship of Marius. Cic.

(b.) The nouns so used as predicates are by some grammarians considered as supplying the place of participles by expressing in themselves the action of a verb. Such are *dux, cōmes, adiutor* and *adjutrix, auctor, testis, iudex, interpres, māgister* and *māgistra, præceptor* and *præceptrix*; as, *dūce naturā*, in the sense of *dicente naturā*, under the guidance of nature; *iudice Polybo*, according to the judgment of Polybius.

REM. 8. A clause sometimes supplies the place of the noun; as, *Nondum comperto quam in regiōnem vēnisset rex*. Liv. *Audito vēnisse nunciūm*. Tac. *Vāle dicto*. Ovid. This construction, however, is confined to a few participles; as, *audito, cognito, comperto, explorāto, despērato, nunciāto, dicto, edicto*. But the place of such participle is sometimes supplied by a neuter adjective in the ablative; as, *Incerto præs tenebris quid pēterent*. Liv. Cf. R. 7, (a.) *Haud cuiquam dubio quin hostium essent*. Id. *Juxta pēriculoso verā an ficta prōmēret*. Tac.

REM. 9. (1.) The noun in the ablative, like the subject nominative, is sometimes wanting; (a) when it is contained in a preceding clause; as, *Atticus Serviliam, Brati matrem, non minus post mortem ejus, quam florēte, coluit*, scil. eo,

**I. e. Brūto.** Nep. (b) When it is the general word for person or persons followed by a descriptive relative clause; as, *Hannibal Ibērum cōpiās trājicī, præmissis, qui Alpium transitus spēcūlārentur.* Liv. (c) When the participle in the neuter singular corresponds to the impersonal construction of neuter verbs in the passive voice; as, *In annis transgressu, multum certāto, Bardesānes vicit.* Tac. *Mihi, errāto, nulla vēnia, recte facto, exigua laus prōpōnitur.* Cic. *Quum, nondum palam facto, vivi mortuique prōmiscue complōrārentur.* Liv. *Nam jam atātē eā sum, ut non siet, peccāto, mi ignosci æquum; i. e. si peccātum fuērūt.* Ter. Cf. § 274, R. 5, (b.)

(2.) So in descriptions of the weather; as, *Tranquillo, scil. mārī, the sea being tranquil.* Liv. *Sērēno, scil. cælo, the sky being clear.* Id. *Arānei sērēno tēzunt, nūbilo tēzunt,*—in clear and in cloudy weather. Plin. Substantives when used thus are to be considered as ablatives of time; as, *Cōmitiis, ludis, Circensibus.* Suetonius has used *proscriptiōne* in the sense of 'during the proscriptiōn.' So *pāce et Principe.* Tac. *Impērio pōpūli Rōmāni.* Cæs.

**REM. 10.** This ablative is sometimes connected to the preceding clause by a conjunction; as, *Cæsar, quamquam obsidiōne Massilia rētardante, brevī tāmēn omnia subēgit.* Suet. *Dēcēviri non ante, quam perlātis lēgibus, dēpōsitūros impērium esse aiēbant.* Liv.

**REM. 11.** A predicate ablative is sometimes added to passive participles of *naming, choosing, etc.* § 210, (3.); as, *Hasdrūbale impērātore suffecto.* Liv.

## CONNECTION OF TENSES.

§ 258. Tenses, in regard to their connection, are divided into two classes—*principal* and *historical*.

**A.** The principal tenses are, the *present*, the *perfect definite*, and the *two futures*.

**B.** The historical, which are likewise called the *preterite* tenses (§ 145, N. 2.), are the *imperfect*, the *historical perfect*, and the *pluperfect*.

**I.** In the connection of leading and dependent clauses, only tenses of the same class can, in general, be united with each other. Hence:—

1. A *principal* tense is followed by the *present* and *perfect definite*, and by the periphrastic form with *sim*. And:—

2. A *preterite* tense is followed by the *imperfect* and *pluperfect*, and by the periphrastic form with *essem*.

**NOTE.** The periphrastic forms in each class supply the want of subjunctive futures in the regular conjugation.

The following examples will illustrate the preceding rules:—

(a.) In the first class. *Scio quid āgas. Scio quid ēgēris. Scio quid actūrus sis.—Audiri quid āgas, I have heard what you are doing. Audiri quid ēgēris. Audiri quid actūrus sis.—Audiam quid āgas, etc.—Audivēro quid āgas, etc.*

(b.) In the second class. *Sciēbam quid āgēres. Sciēbam quid ēgēsses. Sciēbam quid actūrus esses.—Audivi quid āgēres, I heard what you were doing. Audivi quid ēgēsses. Audivi quid actūrus esses.—Audivēram quid āgēres, etc.*

The following may serve as additional examples in the first class; viz. of *principal* tenses depending on,

(1.) The **PRESENT**; as, *Non sum ita hēbes, ut istuc dicam.* Cic. *Quantum dolōrem accēpērim, tu existimāre pōtes.* Id. *Nec dubito quin rēctus ejus respōdēcas salutāris futūrus sit.* Id.



(2.) The PERFECT DEFINITE; as, *Satis prōvisum est, ut ne quid agere possint.* Id. *Quis misticis, quis huic studio literarum se dedit, quin omnem illarum artium rim comprehenderit.* Id. *Defectiones solis prædictæ sunt, quæ, quantas, quando futuræ sint.* Id.

(3.) The FUTURES; as, *Sic facillime, quanta oratorum sit, semperque fuerit paucitas, iudicabit.* Id. *Ad quos dies rediturus sim, scribam ad te.* Id. *Si scieris aspidem latere uspiam, et velle aliquem imprudentem super eam assidere, cūus mors tibi emolumentum factura sit, improbe feceris, nisi monueris, ne assideat.* Id.

The following, also, are additional examples in the second class, viz. of preterite tenses depending on,

(1.) The IMPERFECT; as, *Unum illud extimescebam, ne quid turpiter facerem, vel jam effecissem.* Cic. *Non enim dubitabam, quin eas libenter lecturus esses.* Id.

(2.) The HISTORICAL PERFECT; as, *Veni in ejus villam ut libros inde promerem.* Id. *Hæc quum essent nuntiata, Valerius classem extemplo ad ostium fluminis duxit.* Liv.

(3.) The PLUPERFECT; as, *Pavor ceperat milites, ne mortiferum esset vulnus.* Liv. *Ego ex ipso audieram, quam a te liberaliter esset tractatus.* Cic. *Non satis mihi constiterat, cum aliquāne animi mei molestia, an potius libenter te Athenis viderem.* Id.

REMARK 1. (a.) When the present is used in narration for the historical perfect, it may, like the latter, be followed by the imperfect; as, *Legatos mittunt, ut pacem impetrarent.* Cæs.

(b.) The present is also sometimes followed by the perfect subjunctive in its historical sense; as, *Pandite nunc Hælicona, decæ, cantusque mœvete, Qui bello exciti reges, quæ quemque sæcula Complèrint campos acies.* Virg.

REM. 2. The perfect definite is often followed by the imperfect, even when a present action or state is spoken of, if it is possible to conceive of it in its progress, and not merely in its conclusion or result; and especially when the agent has an intention accompanying him from the beginning to the end of the action; as, *Feci hoc, ut intelligeres, I have done this that you might understand; i. e. such was my intention from the beginning.* *Sunt philosophi et fuerunt, qui omnino nullam habere censèrent humanarum rerum procuratorem deos.* Cic.

REM. 3. (a.) The historical perfect is not regularly followed by the perfect subjunctive, as the latter is not, in general, used in reference to past action indefinite.

(b.) These tenses are, however, sometimes used in connection, in the narrative of a past event, especially in Livy and Cornelius Nepos; as, *Factum est, ut plus quam colligæ Miltiades valuërit.* Nep.

(c.) The imperfect and perfect are even found together after the historical perfect, when one action is represented as permanent or repeated, and the other simply as a fact; as, *Adeo nihil miserati sunt, ut incursiones facerent et Venos in animo habuerint oppugnare.* Liv.

(d.) The historical perfect may even be followed by the present, when a general truth is to be expressed, and not merely one which is valid for the time indicated by the leading verb; as, *Antiocho pacem petenti ad priores conditiones nihil additum, Africano prædicante, nèque Rômanis, si vincantur, animos minus, nèque, si vincant, secundis rebus insulescere.* Just.

REM. 4. (a.) As present infinitives and present participles depend for their time upon the verbs with which they are connected, they are followed by such tenses as those verbs may require; as, *Apelles pictores quodque eos peccare dicebat, qui non sentirent, quid esset satis.* Cic. *Ad te scripsi, te leviter accusans in eo, quod de me cito credidisses.* Id.

(b.) In like manner the tense of the subjunctive following the infinitive future is determined by the verb on which such infinitive depends; as, *Sol Phaëthonti filio facturum se esse dixit quicquid optasset.* Cic.

REM. 5. (a.) The perfect infinitive follows the general rule, and takes after it a principal or a preterite tense, according as it is used in the definite or in the historical sense; as, *Arbitramur nos ea præstitisse, quæ ratio et doctrina præscripsit.* Cic. *Est quod gaudeas te in ista loca venisse, ubi aliquid sapere vidêre.* Id.

(b.) But it may sometimes take a different tense, according to Rem. 2; as, *Ita mihi videor et esse Deos, et quales essent satis ostendisse.* Cic.

II. Tenses belonging to different classes may be made dependent on each other, when the sense requires it.

(a.) Hence a present or perfect definite may follow a preterite, when the result of a past action extends to the present time; as, *Ardebat autem Hortensius cupiditate dicendi sic, ut in nullo unquam flagrantius studium vidêrim;* i. e. that up to this time I have never seen. Cic. And, on the other hand, a preterite may follow a present to express a continuing action in the past; as, *Scitôtè oppidum esse in Sicilia nullum, quo in oppido non isti delecta mulier ad libidinem esset:* (*esset* here alludes to the whole period of Verres' prætorship.) Cic.

(b.) But without violating the rule which requires similar tenses to depend upon each other, the *hypothetical* imperfect subjunctive, may be followed by the present or perfect subjunctive, since the imperfect subjunctive refers to the present time; as, *Mémorâre possem quibus in locis maximas hostium còpias pòpulus Rómânus parvâ manu fuderit.* Sall. *Possem* here differs from *possum* only by the hypothetical form of the expression.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

§ 259. The indicative is used in every proposition in which the thing asserted is represented as a reality.

NOTE. Hence it is used even in the expression of conditions and suppositions with *si*, *nisi*, *etsi*, and *etiamsi*, when the writer, without intimating his own opinion, supposes a thing as actual, or, with *nisi*, makes an exception, which, only for the sake of the inference, he regards as actual; as, *Mors aut plâne negligenda est, si omnino exstinguit animum, aut etiam optanda, si aliquo eum deducit, ubi sit futurus æternus.* Cic. *Adhuc certe, nisi ego insânio, stulle omnia et incaute finiunt.* Id.—It is likewise used in interrogations.

REMARK 1. The several tenses have already been defined, and their usual significations have been given in the paradigms. They are, however, sometimes otherwise rendered, one tense being apparently used with the meaning of another, either in the same or in a different mood. Thus,

(1.) (a.) The present is often used for the historical perfect in narration, see § 145, l. 3.—(b.) It is sometimes used also for the future to denote the certainty of an event, or to indicate passionate emotion. So, also, when the leading sentence contains the present imperative, *si* is often joined with the present instead of the future; as, *défende si pòtes.*—(c.) The present is also used for the imperfect or perfect, when it is joined with *dum* 'while'; as, *Dum ego in Sicilia sum, nulla statua dejecta est.* Cic. It is even so used by Livy in transitions from one event to another; as, *Dum in Asia bellum geritur, ne in Etòlis quidem quicta res fuerant.* But the preterites are sometimes used with *dum* 'while'; and *dum* 'as long as' is regularly joined with the imperfect.

(2.) (a.) The perfect, in its proper signification, i. e. as a perfect definite, denotes an act or state terminated at the present time. Thus Horace, at the close of a work, says, *Exegi mōnumentum ære pèrennis;* and Ovid, in like circumstances, *Jamque opus exegi.* So, also, Panthus in Virgil, in order to de-

note the utter ruin of Troy, exclaims, *Fuimus Trōes, fuit Ilium*, i. e. we are no longer Trojans, Ilium is no more.—(b.) The perfect *indefinite* or *historical* perfect is used in relating past events, when no reference is to be made to the time of other events; as, *Cæsar Rubicōnem transiit*, Cæsar crossed the Rubicon. (c.) As in the epistolary style the imperfect is used instead of the present, when an incomplete action is spoken of (§ 145, II. 3), so the historical perfect is in like circumstances employed instead of the present, when speaking of a completed action. With both the imperfect and perfect, when so used, however, the adverbs *nunc* and *etiamnunc* may be used instead of *tunc* and *etiamtum*.

(d.) The historical perfect is sometimes used for the pluperfect in narration; as, *Sed postquam aspexi, illico cognōvi*, But after I (had) looked at it, I recognized it immediately. Ter.—This is the usual construction after *postquam* or *posteaquam*, *ubi*, *ubi primum*, *ut*, *ut primum*, *quum primum*, *simul*, *simul ut*, *simul ac*, or *simul atque*, all of which have the signification of 'as soon as,' and sometimes after *proutquam*. But when several conditions are to be expressed in past time, the pluperfect is retained after these particles; as, *Idem simulac se remisserat, neque causa suberat, quare animi laborem perferret, luxuriōsus repērebatur*. Nep. So, also, *postquam* is joined with the pluperfect, when a definite time intervenes between events, so that there is no connection between them; as, *Hannibal anno tertio, postquam dōmo profūgerat, cum quinque nāvibus Africam accessit*. Id.—In a very few passages the imperfect and pluperfect *subjunctive* are joined with *postquam*.

(3.) The pluperfect sometimes occurs, where in English we use the historical perfect; as, *Dixerat, et spissis noctis se condidit umbris*, She (had) said, and hid herself in the thick shades of night. Virg. Sometimes, also, it is used for the historical perfect to express the rapidity with which events succeed each other; so, also, for the imperfect, to denote what had been and still was.

(4.) The future indicative is sometimes used for the imperative; as, *Valebis*, Farewell. Cic. And:—

(5.) The future perfect for the future; as, *Alio loco de oratorum animo et injuriis vidēro*, I shall see (have seen).... Cic. This use seems to result from viewing a future action as if already done, and intimates the rapidity with which it will be completed.

REM. 2. When a future action is spoken of either in the future, or in the imperative, or the subjunctive used imperatively, and another future action is connected with it, the latter is expressed by the *future* tense, if the actions relate to the same time; as, *Naturam si sequemur dicem, numquam aberrabimus*. Cic.; but by the future perfect, if the one must be completed before the other is performed; as, *De Carthagine vereri non ante desinam, quam illam excisam esse cognovero*. Cic. In English the present is often used instead of the future perfect; as, *Faciam si potero*, I will do it, if I can. *Ut sementem feceris, ita metes*, As you sow, so you will reap. Cic.

REM. 3. In expressions denoting the propriety, practicability or advantage of an action not performed, the indicative of the preterites (§ 145, N. 2.) is used, where the English idiom would have led us to expect the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive.

(a.) This construction occurs with the verbs *oportet*, *necesse est*, *debeo*, *convenit*, *possum*, *decet*, *licet*, *reor*, *puto*; and with *par*, *fas*, *copia*, *aequum*, *justum*, *consentaneum*, *salus*, *salutius*, *aequius*, *melius*, *utilius*, *optabilis*, and *optimum—est*, *erat*, etc.

(b.) In this connection the imperfect indicative expresses things which are not, but the time for which is not yet past; the historical perfect and the pluperfect indicative, things which have not been, but the time for which is past; as, *Ad mortem te duci jam pridem oportebat*, i. e. thy execution was necessary and is still so; hence it ought to take place. Cic.—*Longe attilius fuit angustias dantis occipere*, It would have been much better to occupy the pass. Curt. *Citilina eripit e senatu triumphans gaudio, quem omnino vivum illinc exire non oportuerat*. Cic.

(c.) In both the periphrastic conjugations, also, the preterites of the indicative have frequently the meaning of the subjunctive; as, *Tum bona constanter præda tēnenda fuit*,—ought to have been kept. Ovid. This is more common in hypothetical sentences than in such as are independent.

(d.) The indicative in such connections is retained, even when a hypothetical clause with the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive is added, and it is here in particular that the indicative preterites of the periphrastic conjugations are employed; as, *Quæ si dubia aut præcul essent, tamen omnes bonos reipublicæ consilære decēbat*. Sall. *Quodsi Cn. Pompeius privatus esset hoc tempore, tamen erat mittendus*. Cic.—*Dēleri tōtus exercitus pōtuit, si fugientes persēcūti victōres essent*. Liv. *Quas nisi mōnūmisset, tormentis etiā dedendi fuērunt*. Cic. *Si te non invēnissem, pēritūrus per præcipitia fui*. Petr. But the subjunctive also is admissible in such cases in the periphrastic conjugations.

REM. 4. (1.) The preterites of the indicative are often used for the pluperfect subjunctive, in the conclusion of a conditional clause, in order to render a description more animated. They are so used,

(a.) When the inference has already partly come to pass, and would have been completely realized, if something else had or had not occurred, whence the adverb *jam* is frequently added; as, *Jam fāmes quam pestilentia tristior erat; nī annōna fōret subventum*,—would have been worse. Liv. The same is expressed by the verb *cæpi* instead of *jam*; as, *Britanni circumire terga vincen-tium cœperant, nī, etc.* Tac. And without *jam*; *Effigies Pisonis traxerant in Gēmōnias ac divellēbant* (would have entirely destroyed them) *nī, etc.* Id.

(b.) The perfect and pluperfect are likewise used in this sense, and a thing which was never accomplished is thus, in a lively manner, described as completed; as, *Et pēractum erat bellum sine sanguine, si Pompeium opprīmēre Brundisii (Cæsar) pōtuisset*. Hor.—The imperfect indicative is rarely used, also, for the imperfect subjunctive, when this tense is found in the hypothetical clause; as, *Stultum erat mōnēre, nī fieret*. Quint.—Sometimes, also, the preterites of the indicative are thus used in the condition; as, *At fuērat melius, si te puer iste tēnēbat*. Ovid. See § 261, R. 1.

(2.) 'I ought' or 'I should,' is expressed by the indicative of *dēbeo*, and *possum* is in like manner often used for *possem*; as, *Possum persēqui multa oblectā-menta rērum rusticarū, sed, etc.*, I might speak of the many pleasures of husbandry, but, etc.; and it is usual in like manner to say, *difficile est, longum est, infinitum est, e. g. narrāre, etc.*, for, 'it would be difficult,' 'it would lead too far,' 'there would be no end,' etc.

(3.) The indicative is used in like manner after many general and relative expressions, especially after the pronouns and relative adverbs which are either doubled or have the suffix *cumque*; as, *quisquis, quotquot, quicumque, utut, utcumque, etc.*, see §§ 139, 5, (3.) and 191, I. R. 1, (b.); as, *Quidquid id est, timeo Dōnaos et dōna fērentes*. Virg. *Quem sors cumque dābit, lucro appōne*. Hor. *Sed quōquo mōdo sēse illud hābet*. But however that may be. Cic.—In like manner sentences connected by *sive*—*sive* commonly have the verb in the indicative, unless there is a special reason for using the subjunctive; as, *Sive vērū est, sive falsū, mihi quīdem ita rēnūciātū est*. Later writers however use the subjunctive both with general relatives, etc., and with *sive*—*sive*.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

✱ § 260. The subjunctive mood is used to express an action or state simply as conceived by the mind.

NOTE. The subjunctive character of a proposition depends, not upon its substance, but upon its form. 'I believe,' 'I suppose,' are only conceptions, but my believing and supposing are stated as facts, and, of course, are expressed by means of the indicative. When, on the other hand, I say, 'I should be-

lieve,' 'I should suppose,' the acts of believing and supposing are represented not as facts, but as mere conceptions. Hence the verb that expresses the purpose or intention for which another act is performed, is put in the subjunctive, since it expresses only a conception; as, *Edo ut vivam*, I eat that I may live. This mood takes its name from its being commonly used in *subjoined* or dependent clauses attached to the main clause of a sentence by a subordinate connective. In some cases, however, it is found in independent clauses, or in such, at least, as have no obvious dependence.

I. The subjunctive, in some of its connections, is to be translated by the indicative, particularly in *indirect questions*, in clauses expressing a result, and after *adverbs of time*; as,

*Rogas me quid tristis sim*,—why I am sad. Tac. *Stellârum tanta est multitudo, ut numerâri non possint*,—that they cannot be counted. *Quum Cæsar esset in Galliâ*, When Cæsar was in Gaul. Cæs.

II. The subjunctive is used to express what is contingent or hypothetical, including *possibility, power, liberty, will, duty, and desire*.

REMARK 1. The tenses of the subjunctive, thus used, have the significations which have been given in the paradigms, and are, in general, not limited, in regard to time, like the corresponding tenses of the indicative. Thus,

(1.) The present may refer either to present or future time; as, *Mitâscribis et quis ignoscas vitâis teneor*, I am subject to moderate faults, and such as you may excuse. Hor. *Orat a Cæsare ut det sibi vêniam*, He begs of Cæsar that he would give him leave. Cæs.

(2.) The imperfect may relate either to past, present, or future time; as, *Si fâta fuissent ut caderem*, If it had been my fate that I should fall. Virg. *Si possem, sânior essem*, I would be wiser, if I could. Ovid. *Ceteros râperem et prosternerem*, The rest I would seize and prostrate. Ter.

(3.) The perfect subjunctive has always a reference to present time, and is equivalent to the indicative present or perfect definite; as, *Errârim fortassè*, Perhaps I may have erred. Plin.—When it has a future signification it is not to be accounted a perfect, but the subjunctive of the future perfect. See Rem 4 and 7, (1.) But compare § 258, R. 1, (b.) and R. 3, (b.)

(4.) The pluperfect subjunctive relates to past time, expressing a contingency, which is usually future with respect to some past time mentioned in connection with it; as, *Id responderunt se factûros esse, quum ille vento Aquilônâ vênisset Lemnum*.... when he should have come.... Nep.

REM. 2. The imperfects *vellem, nollem, and mallet*, in the first person, express a wish, the non-reality and impossibility of which are known; as, *vellem*, I should have wished.—In the second person, where it implies an indefinite person, and also in the third when the subject is an indefinite person, the imperfect subjunctive is used in the sense of the pluperfect, and the condition is to be supplied by the mind. This is the case especially with the verbs, *dico, puto, arbitror, crêdo*; also with *video, cerno, and discerno*; as, *Mastique (crêdêres victos) rêdeunt in castra*,—one might have thought that they were defeated. Liv. *Pecûniâ an fâmc minus parcêret, haud fâcile discernêres*. Sall. *Qui vidêret êquum Trojânûm intrôductum, urbem captam dicêret*. Cic. *Quis umquam crêdêret?* Id. *Quis putâret?* Id.—The imperfect subjunctive is frequently used, also, for the pluperfect in interrogative expressions; as, *Socrâtes quum rogârêtur cûjâtem se esse dicêret, Mundânûm, inquit*. Id. *Quod si quis deûs dicêret, numquam putârem me in Academiâ tamquam philôsophum dispûtâtûrum*, If any god had said.... I never should have supposed. Cic.

REM. 3. The subjunctive in all its tenses may denote a supposition or concession; as, *Vendat aedcs vir bonus*, Suppose an honest man is selling a house. Cic. *Dixêrit Epicûrus*, Grant that Epicurus could have said. Id. *Vêrum anceps pugna fûerat fortûna*.—Fuisse, Grant that it might have been. Virg. *Mâlus civis Cn. Curbo fuit*. Fûerit aliûs, He may have been to others. Cic.—This concessive subjunctive is equivalent to *esto ut*.

REM. 4. The present and perfect subjunctive are used in independent propositions to soften an assertion. When so used, they do not differ essentially from the present and future indicative; as, *Forſitan querātis*, You may perhaps ask. *Velim ſic exiſtīmes*, I would wiſh you to think ſo. *Nemo iſtud tibi concēdat*, or *conceſſerit*, No one will grant you that. *Hoc ſine ullā dubitātione confirmāverim*, *eloquentiam rem eſſe omnium difficillimam*, This I will unheſitatingly affirm. Cic. *Nil ego contulērim jūcundo ſānus amico*. Hor. The form which is called the perfect subjunctive, when thus uſed for the future, ſeems to be rather the subjunctive of the future perfect: ſee Rem. 7, (1.) *Volo* and its compounds are often ſo uſed in the preſent; as, *Velim obvias mihi literas crebro mittas*, I wiſh that you would frequently ſend, etc. Cic. The perfect subjunctive is alſo rarely uſed in the ſenſe of a ſoftened perfect indicative; as, *Forſitan tēmere fecerim*, I may have acted inconsiderately.

REM. 5. The subjunctive is uſed in all its tenses, in independent ſentences, to expreſs a doubtful queſtion implying a negative answer; as, *Quo eam?* Whither ſhall I go? *Quo irem?* Whither ſhould I go? *Quo ivērim?* Whither was I to have gone? *Quo iwiſſem?* Whither ſhould I have gone? The answer implied in all theſe caſes is, ‘nowhere.’ So, *Quis dubitet quin in virtute divitiis ſint?* Who can doubt that riches conſiſt in virtue? Cic. *Quisquam nūmen Jūnōnis adoret prætērea?* Virg. *Quidni, inquit, mēmīnērim?* Cic. *Quis vellet tanti nuntius eſſe mali?* Ovid.

REM. 6. The preſent subjunctive is often uſed to expreſs a wiſh, an exhortation, aſſeveration, request, command, or permiſſion; as,

*Mōriar, ſi*, etc. May I die, if, etc. Cic. *Peream, ſi non*, etc. May I periſh, if, etc. Ovid. So, *Ne ſim ſalvus*. Cic. *In mediā arma ruāmus*, Let us ruſh.... Virg. *Ne me attingas, ſcēleſte!* Do not touch me, villain! Ter. *Fāciat quod libet*, Let him do what he pleaſes. Id. The perfect is often ſo uſed; as, *Ipe vidērit*, Let him ſee to it himſelf. Cic. *Quam id recte faciā, vidērint ſapientes*. Id. *Mēmīnērimus, etiam adverſus inſtīmos juſtitiam eſſe ſervandam*. Id. *Nihil incommōdo vāletūdinis tuæ feceris*. Id. *Emas, non quod opus eſt, ſed quod nēceſſe eſt*. Sen. *Dōnis impij ne plācāre audeant deos; Plātōnem audiant*. Cic. *Nātūram expellas furca, tāmēn uſque rēcurrēt*. Hor.

(a.) The examples ſhow that the preſent subjunctive, in the firſt perſon ſingular, is uſed in aſſeverations; in the firſt perſon plural, in requests and exhortations; in the ſecond and third perſons of the preſent and ſometimes of the perfect, in commands and permiſſions, thus ſupplying the place of the imperative, eſpecially when the perſon is indefinite.

(b.) With theſe ſubjunctives, as with the imperative, the negative is uſually not *non* but *ne*; as, *ne dicas*; *ne dicat*; *ne dixeris*. So, alſo, *ne fuērit*, for *licet ne fuērit*.

(c.) The subjunctive for the imperative occurs moſt frequently in the third perſon. In the ſecond perſon it is uſed principally with *ne*; as, *ne dicas*. In the latter caſe the perfect very frequently takes the place of the preſent; as, *ne dixeris*. The subjunctive is alſo uſed in the ſecond perſon, inſtead of the imperative, when the perſon is indefinite.

(d.) In precepts relating to paſt time, the imperfect and pluperfect, alſo, are uſed for the imperative; as, *Forſitan non nemo vir fortis dixerit*, reſtiſtiſſes, *mortem pugnans oppetīſſes*,—you ſhould have reſiſted. Cic.

REM. 7. In the regular paradigms of the verb, no future subjunctive was exhibited either in the active or paſſive voice.

(1.) When the expreſſion of futurity is contained in another part of the ſentence, the future of the subjunctive is ſupplied by the other tenses of that mood, viz. the future subjunctive by the preſent and imperfect, and the future perfect by the perfect and pluperfect. Which of theſe four tenses is to be uſed depends on the leading verb and on the completeness or incompleteness of the action to be expreſſed. The perfect subjunctive appears to be alſo the subjunctive of the future perfect, and might not improperly be ſo called; as,

*Tantum moneo, hoc tempus si amisseris, te esse nullum unquam magis idoneum re-perturum*, I only warn you, that, if you should lose this opportunity, you will never find one more convenient. Cic.

(2.) If no other future is contained in the sentence, the place of the future subjunctive active is supplied by the participle in *rus*, with *sim* and *essem*; as, *Non dubitat quin brevi Troja sit peritura*, He does not doubt that Troy will soon be destroyed. Cic. In hypothetical sentences the form with *fuërim* takes the place of a pluperfect subjunctive; as, *Quis enim dubitat, quin, si Săguntinis impigre tulissemus opem, totum in Hispaniam aversuri bellum fuërimus*. Liv. The form in *fuissem* occurs also, but more rarely; as, *Apparuit, quantam excitatura molem vëra fuisset clădes, quum*, etc. See *Periphrastic Conjugation*, § 162, 14.

(3.) The future subjunctive passive is supplied, not by the participle in *dis*, but by *futurum sit* or *esset*, with *ut* and the present or imperfect of the subjunctive; as, *Non dubito quin futurum sit, ut laudetur*, I do not doubt that he will be praised.

### PROTASIS AND APODOSIS.

§ 261. In a sentence containing a *condition* and a *conclusion*, the former is called the *protasis*, the latter the *apodosis*.

1. In the *protasis* of conditional clauses with *si* and its compounds, the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive imply the *non-existence* of the action or state supposed, the imperfect, as in English, implying present time. In the *apodosis* the same tenses of the subjunctive denote what the result would be, or would have been, had the supposition in the *protasis* been a valid one; as,

*Nisi te satis incitatum esse confiderem, scriberem plura*, Did I not believe that you have been sufficiently incited, I would write more (Cic.); which implies that he *does* believe, and therefore *will not* write. *Si Neptūnus, quod Thëseo promiserat, non fecisset, Thëseus filio Hippolyto non esset orbatus*. Id.

2. The present and perfect subjunctive in the *protasis*, imply the *real or possible existence* of the action or state supposed; as,

*Si vëlit*, if he wishes, or, should wish, implying that he either does wish, or, at least, may wish. In the *apodosis* the present or perfect either of the subjunctive or of the indicative may be used.

REMARK 1. The tenses of the *indicative* may also be used in the *protasis* of a conditional sentence with *si*, etc.; as, *Si vales, bene est*. Cic. *Si quis antea mirabatur quid esset, ex hoc tempore miretur potius*.... Id.—The conjunction *si* in the *protasis* is often omitted; as, *Libet agros emi*. *Primum quero quos agros?* If you will buy lands, I will first ask, etc. But the *protasis* may be rendered without *if*, and either with or without an interrogation, as, *You will buy lands, or, Will you buy lands?* The future perfect often occurs in the *protasis* of such sentences; as, *Căsus medicusve levavit agrum ex prăcipiti, măter delira necabit*, (Hor.) Should chance or the physician have saved him, the silly mother will destroy him. *Si* is in like manner omitted with the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive, in supposing a case which is known not to be a real one; as, *Absque te esset, hodie numquam ad solem occăsum vivërem*. Plaut.

REM. 2. The present and perfect subjunctive differ but slightly from the indicative, the latter giving to a sentence the form of reality, while the subjunctive represents it as a conception, which, however, may at the same time be a reality. The second person singular of the present and perfect subjunctive often occurs in addressing an indefinite person, where, if the person were definite, the indicative would be used; as, *Mëmoria minuitur, nisi eam exerceas*. Cic. When the imperfect or pluperfect is required to denote a past action,

the indicative must be used, if its existence is uncertain, as those tenses in the subjunctive would imply its non-existence. In the *oratio obliqua*, when the leading verb is a present or a future, the same difference is observed between the tenses of the subjunctive as in hypothetical sentences; but when the leading verb is a preterite the difference between possibility and impossibility is not expressed.

REM. 3. The present and perfect subjunctive are sometimes used, both in the *protasis* and *apodosis* of a conditional sentence, in the sense of the imperfect and pluperfect; as, *Tu, si hic sis, aliter sentias*, If you were here, you would think otherwise. Ter. *Quos, ni mea cura resistat, jam flammæ tollerint*. Virg.

REM. 4. The *protasis* of a conditional sentence is frequently not expressed, but implied; as, *Magno mercentur Atrides*, i. e. *si possint*. Virg.; or is contained in a participial clause; as, *Agis, etsi a multitudine victus, gloriâ tamen omnes vicit*. Just. So, also, when the participle is in the ablative absolute; as, *Dona-rem tripodas*—divite me scilicet artium, *quas aut Parrhasius protulit, aut Scopas*. Hor. *C. Mucius Porcenam interficere, proposita sibi morte, conatus est*. Cic. It is only in later writers that the concessive conjunctions *etsi*, *quamquam*, and *quavis* are expressed with the participle, but *tamen* is often found in the *apodosis*, even in the classic period, when a participial clause precedes as a *protasis*.

REM. 5. In hypothetical sentences relating to past time, the actions seem often to be transferred in a measure to the present by using the imperfect, either in the *protasis* or the *apodosis*, instead of the pluperfect; as, *Quod certe non fecisset, si eum numerum (naviarum) naves haberent*. Cic. *Cimbri si statim infesto agmine urbem petissent, grande discrimen esset*. Flor. Sometimes the imperfect, although the actions are completed, appears both in the *protasis* and the *apodosis*.

REM. 6. *Nisi*, *nisi vero*, and *nisi forte* are joined with the indicative, when they introduce a correction. *Nisi* then signifies 'except'; as, *Nescio; nisi hoc video*. Cic. *Nisi vero*, and *nisi forte*, 'unless perhaps,' introduce an exception, and imply its improbability; as, *Nemo fere salus sobrius, nisi forte insaniit*. Cic. *Nisi forte* in the sense of 'unless you suppose,' is commonly used ironically to introduce a case which is in reality inadmissible.

## SUBJUNCTIVE AFTER PARTICLES.

### A. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES.

† § 262. A clause denoting the purpose, object, or result of a preceding proposition, takes the subjunctive after *ut*, *ne*, *quo*, *quin*, and *quominus*; as,

*Ea non, ut te instituërem, scripsi*, I did not write that in order to instruct you. Cic. *Irritant ad pugnandum, quo fiant acriores*, They stimulate them to fight, that they may become fiercer. Varr.

† REMARK 1. *Ut* or *utrum*, signifying 'that,' 'in order that,' or simply 'to' with the infinitive, relates either to a purpose or to a result. In the latter case it often refers to *sic*, *ita*, *adeo*, *tam*, *talis*, *tantus*, *is*, *ejusmodi*, etc., in the preceding clause; as,

*Id mihi sic erit gratum, ut gratus esse nihil possit*, That will be so agreeable to me, that nothing can be more so. Cic. *Non sum ita habes, ut istuc dicam*. Id. *Næque tam eramus amantes, ut explorata nobis esset victoria*. Id. *Tantum indulisit dolori, ut eum pietas vinceret*. Nep. *Ita* and *tam* are sometimes omitted; as, *Epaminondas fuit etiam disertus, ut nemo Thebanus ei par esset eloquentia*, instead of *tam disertus*. Id. *Esse oportet ut vivas, non vivere ut edas*. Auct. ad Her. *Id efficit ut omnia floreat*. Cic.



REM. 2. *Ut*, signifying 'even if' or 'although,' expresses a supposition merely as a conception, and accordingly takes the subjunctive; as,

*Ut dēsint vires, tamen est laudanda voluntas*, Though strength be wanting, yet the will is to be praised. Ovid. *Ut*, in this sense, takes the negative *non*; as, *Ezercitus si pācis nōmen audierit, ut non rēferat pēdem* (even if it does not withdraw) *insistet certe*. Cic.

REM. 3. *Ut*, with the subjunctive denoting a result, is used with impersonal verbs signifying *it happens, it remains, it follows*, etc.; as,

*Qui fit, ut nemo contentus vivat?* How does it happen that no one lives contented? Hor. *Huic contigit, ut patriam ex servitute in libertatem vindicaret*. Nep. *Sēquitur igitur, ut etiam vitia sint parca*. Cic. *Rēliquum est, ut egomet mihi consūlam*. Nep. *Restat igitur, ut motus astrorum sit voluntarius*. Cic. *Extremum illud est, ut te orem et obsecrem*. Id.

NOTE 1. To this principle may be referred the following verbs and phrases signifying 'it happens,' viz. *fit, fieri non potest, accidit, incidit, contingit, evenit, aus venit, occurrit* and *est* (it is the case, or it happens, and hence *esto*, be it that):—and the following, signifying 'it remains,' or 'it follows,' viz. *futurum, extremum, prope, proximum, and reliquum—est, relinquitur, sequitur, restat*, and *superest*; and sometimes *accedit*.

NOTE 2. *Contingit* with the dative of the person is often joined with the infinitive, instead of the subjunctive with *ut*; as, *Non cuius homini contingit adire Corinthum*. Hor. And with *esse* also and other verbs of similar meaning, the predicate (as in the case of *licet*) is often found in the dative.—*Sēquitur* and *efficitur*, 'it follows,' have sometimes the accusative with the infinitive and sometimes the subjunctive; and *nascitur*, in the same sense, the subjunctive only.

NOTE 3. *Mos* or *mōris est, consuetudo* or *consuetudinis est*, and *natura* or *consuetudo fert*, are often followed by *ut* instead of the infinitive.—*Ut* also occurs occasionally after many such phrases as *novum est, rarum, naturale, necesse, usitatum, mirum, singulare—est*, etc., and after *aquum, rectum, verum, utile, verisimile*, and *integrum—est*.

For other uses of *ut*, with the subjunctive, see § 273.

REM. 4. *Ut* is often omitted before the subjunctive, after verbs denoting willingness and permission; also after verbs of asking, advising, reminding, etc., and the imperatives *dic* and *fac*; as,

*Quid vis faciam?* What do you wish (that) I should do? Ter. *Insani fēriant sine litōra fluctus*. Virg. *Tentes dissimulare rogat*. Ovid. *Id sinas oro*. Id. *Se suadere, dixit, Pharnabazo id negotii daret*. Nep. *Accedat oportet actio varia*. Cic. *Fac cogites*. Sall. So, *Vide ex navi effērantur; quæ*, etc. Plaut

Verbs of willingness, etc., are *velo, malo, permitto, concedo, patior, sino, licet, vëto*, etc.; those of asking, etc., are *rogo, oro, quæso, moneo, admoneo, jubeo, mando, përo, precor, censo, suadeo, oportet, necesse est, postulo, hortor, curo, decerno, opto, impëro*.

REM. 5. *Nē*, 'that not,' 'in order that not,' or 'lest,' expresses a purpose negatively; as,

*Cura ne quid ei dēsit*. Take care that nothing be wanting to him. Cic. *Nemo prudens punit, ut ait Plāto, quia peccatum est, sed ne peccetur*. Id. *Ut ne* is frequently used for *ne*, especially in solemn discourse, and hence in laws; as, *Opēa dētur, ut iudicia ne fiant*. Id. *Quo ne* is used in the same manner in one passage of Horace. *Missus ad hoc—quo ne per vacuum Rōmāno incurreret hostis*.—On the other hand *ut non* is used when a simple result or consequence is to be expressed, in which case *ita, sic, tam* are either expressed or understood; as, *Tum forte agrōtābam, ut ad nuptias tuas venire non possem*. In a few cases, however, *ut non* is used for *ne*.—*Ut non* is further used, when the negation re-

fers to a particular word or to a part only of the sentence, as in similar cases *si non* must be used, and not *nisi*; as, *Confer te ad Manium, ut a me non ejectus ad diēnos, sed invitatus ad tuos isse videāris.* Cic.

REM. 6. *Nē* is often omitted after *cave*; as,

*Cave putes,* Take care not to suppose. Cic. Compare § 267, R. 8.

REM. 7. After *mētuo*, *tīmeo*, *vēreor*, and other expressions denoting fear or caution, *nē* must be rendered by *that* or *lest*, and *ut* by *that* not.

NOTE 8. To the verbs *mētuo*, *tīmeo*, and *vēreor* are to be added the substantives expressing fear, apprehension or danger, and the verbs *terreo*, *conterreo*, *dēterreo*, *caveo*, to be on one's guard, *video* and *observo* in requests (as, *vide*, *vidēte* and *videndum est*), in the sense of 'to consider'; as,

*Milo mētuebatur, ne a servis indicārētur,* Milo feared that he should be betrayed by his servants. Cic. *Vēreor, ne, dum minūre velim labōrem, augeam.* Id. *Pavor erat, ne castra hostis aggrēderētur.* Liv. *Illa duo vēreor, ut tibi possim concedere,* I fear that I cannot grant.... Cic. *Ovendum est ne assentatōribus patēficiāmus aures, neu dōlārī nos sināmus.* Cic. *Vide ne hoc tibi obsit.* *Terruit gentes, grāve ne rēdiret sēcūlum Pyrrhæ.* *Multitūdinem dēterrent, ne frumentum conferant.* Cæs. *Me miserum! ne prōna cādas.* Ovid.

NOTE 4. *Nēve* or *neu* is used as a continuative after *ut* and *ne*. It is properly equivalent to *aut ne*, but is also used for *et ne* after a preceding *ut*; as, on the other hand, *et ne* is used after a negation instead of *aut ne*; as, *Lēgem tulit, ne quis ante actūrum rerum accusārētur, nēve multārētur.* Nep. *Cæsar milites non longiore oratōne cōhortātus, quam uti suas pristinas virtutis mēmōriam retinērēt, neu perturbārēntur animo—prælii committendū signum dedit.* Cæs. *Nēque*, also, is sometimes used for *et ne* after *ut* and *ne*; as, *Ut ea prætermittam, nēque eos appellem.* Cic. *Cur non sancitis ne vicinus patricio sit plebeus, nec eodem tūnere eat.* Liv.—*Ne non* is sometimes used for *ut* after verbs of fearing; as, *Tīmeo ne non impetrem,* I fear I shall not obtain it.

REM. 8. The proposition on which the subjunctive with *ut* and *nē* depends, is sometimes omitted; as, *Ut ita dicam.* Cic. *Ne singulos nōminem.* Liv.

NOTE 5. *Nēdum*, like *ne*, takes the subjunctive; as, *Optimis temporibus clārisimū viri vim tribūnciam sustinere non potuerunt: nēdum his temporibus sine iudiciorum remediis salvi esse possimus,—still less, etc.* Cic. *Ne* is sometimes used in the sense of *nēdum*; as, *Nōvam eam potestatem (scil. tribūnorum plēbis) eripere patribus nostris, ne nunc dulcedine semel capti fērant dēsiderium.* Liv.—*Nēdum* without a verb has the meaning of an adverb, and commonly follows a negative; as, *Egre inermis tanta multitudo, nēdum armata, sustinēri pōtest.* Liv. *Ne*, also, is used in the same manner in Cic. Fam. 9, 26.

REM. 9. *Quō*, 'that,' 'in order that,' or, 'that by this means,' especially with a comparative; *non quō*, or *non quod*, 'not that,' 'not as if'; *non quin*, 'not as if not'; which are followed in the apodōsis by *sed quod*, *sed quia*, or *sed* alone; and *quomōdus*, 'that not,' after clauses denoting hinderance, take the subjunctive; as,

*Adjūta me, quo id fiat facilius,* Aid me, that that may be done more easily. Ter. *Non quo rēpūblicā sit mihi quicquam cārius, sed desperātis etiā Hippocrātes erat adhibere mēdicinam.* Cic. *Non quod sōla ornent, sed quod excellant.* Id. *Nēque recūsavit, quo minus lēgis pānam subiret.* Nep. *Ego me dūcem in civili bello nēgāvi esse, non quin rectum esset, sed quia,* etc. Cic. And instead of *non quin* we may say *non quo non*, *non quod non*, or *non quia non*; and for *non quod*, *non eo quod*, or *non ideo quod*.

REM. 10. *Quin*, after negative propositions and questions with *quis* and *quid* implying a negative, takes the subjunctive. *Quin* is used,

1. For a relative with *non*, after *nemo*, *nullus*, *nil*....*est*, *repperitur*, *invenitur* etc., *vix est*, *ægre reperitur*, etc.; as, *Messanā nemo venit*, *quin vidērit*, i. e. *qui non vidērit*, No one came to Messana who did not see. *Cic. Nēgo ullam pietatē fuisse....quin conquiescērit*, i. e. *quam non*, etc. *Id. Nihil est*, *quin male narrando possit depravari*. Ter. *Quis est*, *quin cernat*, *quanta vis sit in sensibus?* Cic.

NOTE 6. When *quin* is used for the relative it is commonly equivalent to the nominative *qui*, *quæ*, *quod*, but it is sometimes used in prose instead of the accusative, and sometimes after *dies* for *quo*, as the ablative of time; as, *Dies fere nullus est*, *quin hic Satrius domum meam ventitet*, i. e. *quo*—*non ventitet*. Cic.—*Qui non* is often used for *quin*; as, *Quis enim erat*, *qui non sciret*. *Id.*; and when *quin* stands for *qui non* or *quod non*, *is* and *id* are sometimes added for the sake of emphasis; as, *Cleanthes negat ullum cibum esse tam gravem*, *quin is die et nocte concouatur*. Cic. *Nihil est quod sensum habeat*, *quin id intēreat*. *Id.*—So, also, the place of *quin* is supplied by *ut non*; as, *Augustus numquam filios suos populo commendavit ut non adiceret* (without adding) *si mererentur*. Suet. And if no negation precedes, or if *non* belongs to a particular word, and not to the verb, *qui non* and *ut non* must of course be used and not *quin*.

2. For *ut non*, 'that not,' or 'without' with a participle, especially after *fācere non possum*, *fiēri non potest*, *nulla causa est*, *quid causæ est?* *nihil causæ est*; as, *Fācere non possum quin ad te mittam*, i. e. *ut non*, etc. Cic. *Numquam tam male est Siculis*, *quin aliquid fācēte et commode dicant*. Cic. *Numquam accēdo*, *quin abs te abeam doctior*,—without going from you wiser. Ter.

NOTE 7. *Quin* takes the subjunctive also after the negative expressions *non dubito*, *non est dubium*, *non ambigo*, I doubt not; *non adest*; *nihil*, *paulum*, *non procul*, *haud multum adest*; *non*, *vix*, *ægre abstinēo*; *tēnere me*, or *tempērare mihi non possum*; *non impēdo*, *non rēcuso*, *nihil prætērmitto*, and the like. In these cases, however, the negation in *quin* is superfluous, and it is generally translated into English by 'that,' 'but that,' or 'to' with an infinitive; as, *Non dubito quin domi sit*, that he is at home. *Non multum adest*, *quin miserrimus sim*, Not much is wanting to make me most wretched. Cic. Hence, as *quin* is not in such cases regarded as a negative, *non* is superadded when a negative sense is required; as, *In quibus non dubito quin offēnsiōnem negligentie vitare atque effugere non possum*. Cic. *Dubitandum non est quin numquam possit utilitas cum honestate contendere*. *Id.*

NOTE 8. In Nepos, *non dubito*, in the sense of 'I do not doubt,' is always followed by the infinitive with the accusative, and the same construction often occurs in later writers but not in Cicero: in the sense of to scruple or hesitate, when the verb following has the same subject, *dubito* and *non dubito* are generally followed by the infinitive; as, *Cicero non dubitabat conjuratos supplicio afficere*.—It may be added that 'I doubt whether' is expressed in Latin by *dubito sitne*, *dubito utrum*—*an*, *dubito sitne*—*an*, or *dubito num*, *numquid*, for *dubito an*, and *dubium est an* are used, like *nescio an* with an affirmative meaning.

NOTE 9. *Quin* signifies also 'why not?' being compounded of the old ablative *qui* and *nē*, i. e. *non*, and in this sense is joined with the indicative in questions implying an exhortation; as, *Quin consendimus equos?* Why not mount our horses? In this sense it is also joined with the imperative; as, *Quin dic statim*, Well, tell me: or with the first person of the subjunctive. Hence without being joined to any verb it signifies 'even' or 'rather.'

REM. 11. The principal verbs of hinderance, after which *quōminus* occurs, and after which *ne*, and, if a negative precedes, *quin* also may be used, are *dēterreo*, *impēdo*, *intercēdo*, *obisto*, *obsto*, *officio*, *prōhibeo*, *rēcuso*, and *rēpugno*. It occurs also after *stat* or *fit per me*, I am the cause, *non pugno*, *nihil moror*, *non contineo me*, etc.

NOTE. *Impēdo*, *dēterreo*, and *rēcuso* are sometimes, and *prōhibeo* frequently followed by the infinitive. Instead of *quōminus*, *quo scēius* is sometimes used.

§ 263. The particles specified in this section always introduce a sentence containing only a conception of the mind, and are hence joined with the subjunctive.

1. The subjunctive is used after particles of wishing, as *utinam*, *ut*, *O!* and *O! si*; as,

*Utinam minus vite cupidus fuissēmus!* O that we had been less attached to life! Cic. *O si solitus quicquam virtutis adesseset!* Virg.

REMARK. The present and perfect tenses, after these particles, are used in reference to those wishes which are conceived as possible; the imperfect and pluperfect are employed in expressing those wishes which are conceived as wanting in reality. Cf. § 261, 1 and 2.—'Would that not' is expressed in Latin both by *utinam ne* and *utinam non*. *Utinam* is sometimes omitted; as, *Tecum ladere sicut ipsa possem!* Catull.

## B. ADVERBIAL CLAUSES.

2. (1.) *Quamvis*, however; *licet*, although; *tamquam*, *tamquam si*, *quāsi*, *ac si*, *ut si*, *vēlut*, *vēlut si*, *vēlūti*, *sicūti*, and *ceu*, as if; *mōdo*, *dum*, and *dummōdo*, provided,—take the subjunctive; as,

*Quamvis ille felix sit, tamen*, etc. However happy he may be, still, etc. Cic. *Veritas licet nullum defensorem obtineat*, Though truth should obtain no defender. Id. *Tamquam clausa sit Asia, sic nihil perfertur ad nos*. Id. *Sed quid ego his testibus ūtor*, quāsi *res dubia aut obscura sit?* Id. *Me omnibus rebus, iuxta ac si meus frater esset, sustentavi*, He supported me in every thing, just as though he were my brother. Id. *Similiter facere eos*,—*ut si naves certarent, ūtor*, etc. Id. *Absentis Ariovisti crudelitatem, vēlut si coram adesseset, horrerent*. Cæs. *Inque sinus caros, vēlūti cognosceret, ibat*. Ovid. *Sicūti iurgio laceratus foret, in senatum venit*. Sall. *Hic vērō ingentem pugnam, ceu cētera nusquam bella forent*. Virg. *Odērint dum metuant*. Att. in Cic. *Mānent ingēnia senibus, mōdo permāneat studium et industria*. Cic. *Omnia hōnesta negligunt dummōdo potentiam consequantur*, They disregard every honorable principle, provided they can obtain power. Id.

NOTE. *Mōdo*, *dum*, and *dummōdo*, when joined with a negation, become *mōdo ne*, *dum ne*, and *dummōdo ne*.

(2.) *Quamvis* (although) is in Cicero joined with a principal tense of the subjunctive; as, *Quamvis non fuēris suāsor, approbator certe fuisti*. Cic. In later writers it is often used with the indicative; as, *Felicem Niōben, quamvis tot funera vidit*. Ovid. So also once in Cicero, *Quamvis patrem suum nunquam vidērat*. Rab. Post. 2.

(3.) *Quamvis*, as a conjunction, in the sense of 'however much,' is joined with the subjunctive. So also when its component parts are separated; as, *C. Gracchus dixit, sibi in somnis Ti. frātre visum esse dicere*, quam vellet cunctārētur, *tamen*, etc.—*Quamvis* 'however much,' as an adverb, governs no particular mood.

(4.) *Etsi*, *tāmeti*, even if, although, and *quamquam*, although, commonly introduce an indicative clause:—*Etiam si* is more frequently followed by the subjunctive. In later prose writers, and sometimes in Cicero and Sallust as well as in the poets, *quamquam* is joined with the subjunctive; as, *Quamquam præsente Lūcullō loquar*. Cic. *Vi regere patriam quamquam possis*. Sall. Jug. 8. *Filius quamquam Thētidōs mārinas Dardānas turres quāteret*. Hor.

REMARK. The imperfect subjunctive with *ac si*, etc., is used after the present, to denote that in reality the thing is not so, but in that case a hypothetical subjunctive must be supplied; as, *Egnātii rem ut tuēre aq̄ue a te p̄lo*, *ac si mea nēgōtia essent*, i. e. *ac p̄lērem, si mea nēgōtia essent*, as I would pray if, etc. Cic.

3. After *antēquam* and *priusquam*, the imperfect and pluperfect tenses are usually in the subjunctive; the present and perfect may be either in the indicative or subjunctive. The present indicative is commonly used when the action is to be represented as certain, near at hand, or already begun; the subjunctive is used when the thing is still doubtful, and also in general propositions; as,

*Ea causa ante mortua est, quam tu nātus esses*, That cause was dead before you were born. Cic. *Avertit equos, priusquam pābula gustassent Trōjæ, Xanthumque bibissent*. Virg. *Priusquam incipias, consilio opus est*, Before you begin there is need of counsel. Sall.

4. (1.) *Dum*, *dōnec*, and *quoad*, signifying *until*, are followed by the subjunctive, if they refer to the attainment of an object; as,

*Dum hic vēniret, locum relinquerē nōluit*, He was unwilling to leave the place until he (Milo) should come. Cic. *Nihil pūto tibi esse ūtilius quam oppētrī quoad scire possis, quid tibi agendum sit*. Id. *Cornu tēndit, et duxit longe, dōnec curvata colerent inter se cāpita*. Virg.—In the sense of ‘as long as,’ these particles take the indicative, but Tacitus joins *dōnec* with the subjunctive even when a simple fact is to be expressed.

(2.) *Dum*, while, is commonly used with the indicative present, whatever may be the tense of the principal sentence. Cf. § 259, R. 1, (1.), (a.)

5. *Quum* (*cum*), when it signifies a *relation of time*, takes the indicative; when it denotes a *connection of thought*, the subjunctive; as,

*Qui non defendit injūriam, nēque rēpulsat a suis, quum pōtest, injuste facit*. Cic. *Quum recte navigārī pōtērit, tum naviges*. Id. *Crēdo tum, quum Siciliā florēbat opibus et cōpiis, magna artificia fuisse in eā insulā*. Id. *Quum tot sustineas et tanta nēgōtia, peccem, si mōrer tua tempōra, Since you are burdened with so many and so important affairs, I should do wrong, if I should occupy your time*. Hor. *Quum vīta sine amīcis mētus plēna sit, rātiō ipsa mōnet amicitias cōmprārē*. Cic.

REMARK 1. (a.) The rule for the use of *quum* may be thus expressed: *Quum temporal* takes the indicative, *quum causal* the subjunctive. Hence, when *quum* is merely a particle of time, with no reference to cause and effect, and not occurring in a historical narrative (see Rem. 2), it may be joined with any tense of the indicative. But when it is employed to express the relation of cause and effect, or has the meaning of ‘though’ or ‘although,’ it is joined with the subjunctive (b.) *Quum*, relating to time, is commonly translated *when*, *while*, or *after*; referring to a train of thought, it signifies *as*, *since*, *though* or *although*, *because*; but may often be translated *when*.

REM. 2. In narration, *quum*, even when it relates to time, is joined with the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive, when a historical perfect stands in the principal clause; as,

*Gracchus, quum rem illam in religiōnem pōpulo vēnisse sentiret, ad omnium retulit*. Cic. *Alexander, quum intērēmisset Clitum, vix manus a se abstinuit*. Id.

NOTE. *Quum temporal*, when it expresses an action frequently repeated, may be joined with the pluperfect indicative, and the apodosis then contains the imperfect; as, *Quum autem vir esse cōpērat, dābat se labōri*. Cic. *Quum rōsam vidērat, tum incipēre ver arbitrābātur*. Id. Cf. § 264, 12.

REM. 3. *Quum* in the sense of ‘while’ is joined with the perfect and imperfect indicative, often with the addition of *intērea* or *intērim*, to express simultaneous occurrences; as, *Cātillus cēpit magnum suæ virtutis fructum, quum omnes prōpe unā vōce, in eo ipso vos spem hābitūros esse, dixistis*. Cic. *Credēbātur virgis*

*in medio fóro Messānos civis Rōmānus, iudices, quum intērea nulla vox alia istius misēri audiebātur, nisi hæc: civis Rōmānus sum.* Id.

REM. 4. *Quum*, for the most part preceded by an adverb, as, *jam, nondum, vix, ægre*, or joined with *rēpente* or *sūbito* is followed by the indicative, especially by the present indicative, to express the beginning of an action. In the cases mentioned in this and the preceding remark, the historians also use *quum* with the historical infinitive.

For the subjunctive after *si* and its compounds, see § 261.

### C. ADJECTIVE CLAUSES.

#### SUBJUNCTIVE AFTER QUI.

§ 264. Relatives require the subjunctive, when the clauses connected by them express merely a conception; as, for example, a consequence, an innate quality, a cause, motive, or purpose.

1. (a.) When the relative *qui*, in a clause denoting a result of the character or quality of something specified in the antecedent clause, follows a demonstrative, and is equivalent to *ut* with a personal or demonstrative pronoun, it takes the subjunctive.

NOTE. The demonstratives after which *qui* takes the subjunctive, are *is*, *ille*, *iste*, and *hic* in the sense of *tālis*; as,

*Quis est tam Lynceus, qui in tantis tēnebris nihil offendat?* i. e. *ut ille in tantis*, etc., Who is so quick-sighted, that he would not stumble, (or, as not to stumble,) in such darkness. Cic. *Tūlem te esse oportet, qui ab impiōrum civium sociētate sējungas*; i. e. *ut tu*, etc. Id. *At ea fuit lēgatio Octāviū, in quā periculū suspicio non sūbesset*, i. e. *ut in eā*. Id. *Nec tāmen ego sum ille ferreus, qui frātis carissimū mōrē non mōvear*, i. e. *ut ego non mōvear*. Id. *Non sumus ii, quibus nihil vērū esse vidēatur*, i. e. *ut nobis nihil*, etc. Id. *Nulla gens tam fēra est, cūjus mentem non imbuērīt dērum opinio*, i. e. *ut ejus mentem*, etc. Id.

(b.) Sometimes the demonstrative word is only implied; as,

*Res parva dictu, sed quæ studiis in magnum certāmen excessērīt*, i. e. *tālis quæ*...of such a kind that it issued in a violent contest. Cic. *Nunc dicis aliquid, quod ad rem pertineat*, i. e. *tāle ut id*, etc. Id. *So quis sum, for num tālis sum*; as, *Quis sum, cūjus aures lēdi nēfas sit?* Sen.—In like manner, also, a demonstrative denoting a character or quality, is implied in the examples included in the following rule:—

2. When the relative is equivalent to *quamquam* *is*, *etsi* *is*, or *dummodo* *is*, it takes the subjunctive; as,

*Laco, consilii quamvis egrēgii, quod non ipse afferret, inimicus*, Laco, an opponent of any measure, however excellent, provided he did not himself propose it. Tac. *Tu aquam a pūmice postulas, qui ipsus sitiāt*. Plaut. *Nihil molestum, quod non dēsidēres*, i. e. *dummodo id*. Cic.

3. *Quod*, in restrictive clauses, takes the subjunctive; as,

*Quod sciam, as far as I know; quod mēmīnērīm, as far as I recollect; quod ego intelligam; quod intelligi possit; quod conjectūrā prōvidērī possit; quod salvā fidē possim; quod commōdo tuo fiat*, etc.—*Quidem* is sometimes added to the relative in such sentences. *Quod sine molestiā tuā fiat*, So far as it can be done without troubling you. Cic. In the phrases *quantum possum*, *quantum ego peripicio*, on the other hand, the indicative is used.

4. A relative clause, after the comparative followed by *quam*, takes the subjunctive; as,

*Māior sum, quam cui possit fortuna nocere*, i. e. *quam ut mihi*, etc., I am too great for fortune to be able to injure me. Ovid. *Aululā voce præconis mājus gaudium fuit, quam quod universum homines caperent*, Upon the herald's voice being heard, the joy was too great for the people to contain. Liv.

REMARK 1. The clause annexed by *quam qui* implies an inherent quality, or a consequence; so that *quam qui* is equivalent to *quam ut*, which also sometimes occurs. Sometimes the subjunctive follows *quam* even without a relative pronoun; as, *In his literis longior fui, quam aut vellem, aut quam me putavi fore*:—and so frequently with the verbs *velle* and *posse*.

5. A relative clause expressing a purpose, aim, or motive, and equivalent to *ut* with a personal or demonstrative pronoun, takes the subjunctive; as,

*Lacedæmoniū legatos Athénas miserunt, qui eum absentem accūsarent*: i. e. *ut illi eum accūsarent*, The Lacedæmonians sent ambassadors to Athens to accuse him in his absence. Nep. *Cæsar equitatum omnem præmittit, qui videant, quas in partes iter faciant*. Cæs. *Sunt autem multi, qui eripiunt aliis, quod aliis largiantur*. Cic. *Assidue repellant, quas perdant, Bellides undas*. Ovid.

REM. 2. So also with relative adverbs; as, *Lampsacum ei (Thémistocli) rex dondrat, unde vinum sumeret*, i. e. *ex quā* or *ut inde*, etc. Nep. *Super tabernaculum regis, unde ab omnibus conspici posset, imago solis crystallo inclusa fulgebat*. Curt.

6. A relative clause with the subjunctive after certain indefinite general expressions, specifies the circumstances which characterize the individual or class indefinitely referred to in the leading clause; as,

*Fuerunt eā tempestate, qui dicērent*, There were at that time some who said. Sall. *Erant, quibus appetentior fāmæ, vidēretur*, There were those to whom he appeared too desirous of fame. Tac. *Sunt, qui censeant, una animum et corpus occidere*. Cic. *Erunt, qui existimari velint*. Id. *Si quis erit, qui perpetuum orationem desideret, alterā actione audiet*. Id. *Veniunt legiones, quæ neque me inultum neque te impunitum patiantur*. Tac. So after *est* followed by *quod*, in the sense of 'there is reason why'; as, *Est quod gaudeas*, You have cause to rejoice. Plaut. *Est quod visam domum*. Id. *Si est quod desit, ne beatus quidem est*. Cic.

NOTE 1. The expressions included in the rule are *est, sunt, ddest, præsto sunt, existunt, exoriuntur, inceduntur, repertiuntur*, (scil. homines); *si quis est, tempus fuit, tempus veniet*, etc.

REM. 3. The same construction occurs with relative particles used indefinitely; as, *Est unde hæc fiant. Si est culpam ut Antipho in se admisērit*, If it chance that, etc. Ter. *Est ubi id isto modo valeat*. Cic. So *est cur* and *est ut* in the sense of *est cur*; as, *Ille erat, ut odisset defensorem salutis meæ*, i. e. he had reason to hate. Cic. *Non est igitur ut mirandum sit*, There is no occasion for wondering. Id.

REM. 4. The above and similar expressions are followed by the subjunctive only when they are indefinite. Hence, after *sunt quidam, sunt nonnulli, sunt multi*, etc., when referring to definite persons, the relative takes the indicative; as, *Sunt orationes quædam, quas Menocrito dabo*. Cic.

REM. 5. The indicative is sometimes, though rarely, used after *sunt qui*, even when taken indefinitely, especially in the poets; as, *Sunt, quos iuvat*. Hor. *Sunt qui ita dicunt*. Sall.

7. A relative clause after a general negative, or an interrogative expression implying a negative, takes the subjunctive; as,

*Nemo est, qui non intelligat*, There is no one who does not understand. Cic. *Nulla res est, quæ perferre possit continuum laborem*, There is nothing which can endure perpetual labor. Quint. *Nulla pars est corporis, quæ non sit minor*. Id. *Nihil est, quod tam miseris faciat, quam impietas et scelus*. Cic. *In foro vix dicitur quisque est, qui ipse sese noscat*. Plaut. *Quis est, qui astuta fugiat?* Who is there that shuns what is useful? Cic. *Quæ latebra est, in quam non intret metus mortis?* Sen. *Quid dulcius quam habere, quicum omnia audeas sic loqui ut tecum?* Cic. (See respecting this use of the indefinite *quicum* rather than the definite *quicum*, § 136, R. 1.) *An est quisquam, qui hoc ignoret?* Is there any one who is ignorant of this? Id. *Numquid est mali, quod non dixeris?* Ter.

NOTE 2. General negatives are *nemo*, *nullus*, *nihil*, *onus non*, *alius non*, *non quisquam*, *vix ullus*, *nec ullus*, etc., with *est*; *vix* with an ordinal and *quisque*; *nego esse quemquam*, etc. Interrogative expressions implying a negative, are *quis*, *quid*; *qui*, *quæ*, *quod*; *quantus*, *uter*, *ecquis*, *numquis*, *an quisquam*, *an aliquis*, *quidus quisque*, *quidus*, etc., with *est*; *quot*, *quam multi*, etc., with *sunt*?

NOTE 3. The same construction is used after *non est*, *nihil est*, *quid est*, *numquid est*, etc., followed by *quod*, *cur*, *quære*, or *quamobrem*, and denoting 'there is no reason why,' 'what cause is there?' 'is there any reason?' as, *Quod timeas, non est*, There is no reason why you should fear. Ovid. *Nihil est, quod adventum nostrum pertimescas*. Cic. *Quid est, quod de ejus civitate dubites?* Id. *Queris a me, quid ego Catinam metuum*. Nihil, et caravi ne quis metuëret. *Quid est, cur virtus ipsa per se non efficiat beatos?* Id.—So after *non habeo*, or *nihil habeo*; as, *Non habeo, quod te accusem*. Cic. *Nil habeo, quod agam*, I have nothing to do. Hor. *Nihil habeo, quod ad te scribam*. Cic. So without a negative, *De quibus habeo ipse, quid sentiam*. Id. *Causa or*, with *quid* and *nihil*, *causa*, is sometimes added; as, *Non fuit causa, cur postulares*. Id. *Quid erat causa, cur metuëret*. Id.

NOTE 4. (a.) The relative clause takes the subjunctive after the expressions included in this and the last rule, only when it expresses the character or quality of the subject of the antecedent clause; and the relative, as in the preceding cases of the relative with the subjunctive, is equivalent to a personal or demonstrative pronoun with *ut*; as, *Nemo est, qui nesciat*, There is no one who is ignorant, i. e. no one is ignorant. Cic. So, *Sunt, qui hoc carpant*, There are some who blame this, i. e. some blame this. Vell.

(b.) If the relative clause is to be construed as a part of the logical subject it does not require the subjunctive; as, *Nihil stabile est, quod infidum est* Nothing which is faithless is firm. Cic.

8. (1.) A relative clause expressing the reason of what goes before, takes the subjunctive; as,

*Peccarisse mihi videor, qui a te discesserim*, I think I did wrong in leaving you. Cic. *Inertiam accusas adolescentium, qui istam artem non ediscant*, You blame the idleness of the young men, because they do not learn that art. Id. *O fortunâte adolescens, qui tuæ virtutis Homërum præconem inveneris*—in having found. Id. *Cæcilius fuit nûrifica vigilantia, qui suo toto consiliu somnum non viderit*,—since, etc. Id.

(2.) Sometimes, instead of *qui* alone, *ut qui*, *quippe qui*, or *utpote qui*, is used, generally with the subjunctive; as,

*Convivia cum patre non inibat, quippe qui ne in oppidum quidem nisi perraro venisset*. Cic. *Næque Antonius præcui aberrat, utpote qui magno exercitu sequeretur*. Sall. But sometimes with the indicative in Sallust and Livy; as, *Quippe qui omnia vicerat*. Sall.

9. After *dignus*, *indignus*, *aptus*, and *idoneus*, a relative clause takes the subjunctive; as,

*Videtur, qui aliquando impëret, dignus esse*, He seems to be worthy at some time to command. Cic. *Rustici nostri quum fidem alicujus bonitatemque laudant, dignum esse dicunt, quicum in tenebris micet*. Id. *Nulla videbatur aptior per-*



*sōna, quæ de ætate loqueretur.* Id. *Pompeius Idōneus non est, qui impetret.* Id. *Et rem Idōneam, de quā quæritur, et hōmīnes dignos, quibuscum dissēratur, pŕtant.* Id.

NOTE 5. If the relative clause does not express that of which the person or thing denoted by the antecedent is worthy, its construction is not influenced by this rule. Thus, *Quis servus libertate dignus fuit, cui nostra sōlus cāra non esset?* The subjunctive is here used according to No. 7 of this section.

NOTE 6. The infinitive frequently follows these adjectives in poetry, though rarely in prose; as, *Et puer ipse fuit cantāri dignus.* Virg.—and sometimes *ut*; as, *Eras dignus, ut hāberes integram mānum.* Quint.

10. A relative clause, after *ūnus, sōlus, primus, etc.*, restricting the affirmation to a particular subject, takes the subjunctive; as,

*Hæc est ūna contentio, quæ adhuc permānsērīt.* This is the only dispute which has remained till this time. Cic. *Vōluptas est sōla, quæ nos vōcet ad se, et allīceat suapte natūrā.* Pleasure is the only thing that, by its own nature, invites and allures us to itself. Id.

11. When the relative refers to a *dependent clause*, it often takes the subjunctive. See § 266.

12. The imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive are used in narration after relative pronouns and adverbs, when a repeated action is spoken of; as,

*Semper hābētī sunt fortissīmī, qui summam impērii pōtīrentur.* Those were always accounted the bravest, who obtained the supreme dominion. Nep. *Quemcumque lictor jussu consūlis prēhendisset, tribūnus mitti jubēbat.* Liv. *Ut quisque maxime labōrāret locus, aut ipse occurrēbat, aut aliquos mittēbat.* So after *si quis* or *qui*; as, *Si qui rem mālitiōsius gessisset, dedēcus existimābant.* Cic. *Quōtiens sūper tāli nēgōlio consultāret, edūā dōmūs parte utēbātur.* Tac. *Nec quisquam Pyrrhum, quā tūlisset impētum, sustinēre vāluī.*—It is sometimes found in like manner after *quum, ubi, ut, and si* when used in the sense of *quum*, when repeated actions are spoken of; as, *Id ubi dixisset, hastam in fines eōrum emittēbat.* Liv. *Sin Nūmidæ prōpius accessissent, tū vērō virtutem ostendēre.* Sall. Sometimes even the present subjunctive is so used when employed as an aorist to express things which have happened repeatedly, and still happen (see § 145, I. 2.); as, *Ubi de magnā virtute et glōriā bonōrum mēmōres, quæ sibi quisque, etc.* Sall.

NOTE 7. This is called the *indefinite subjunctive*, or *subjunctive of generality*, inasmuch as the action is not referred to a distinct, individual case. The indicative, however, is used in such cases more frequently than the subjunctive.

## SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

§ 265. Dependent clauses, containing an indirect question, take the subjunctive.

NOTE 1. A question is indirect when its substance is stated in a dependent clause without the interrogative form. Indirect questions generally depend upon those verbs and expressions which commonly take after them the accusative with the infinitive. Cf. § 272. Thus:—

*Quālis sit animus, ipse animus nescit.* The mind itself knows not what the mind is. Cic. *Crēdibile non est, quantum scribam.* It is incredible how much I write. Id. *Quis ego sim, me rōgitas?* Do you ask me who I am? Plaut. *Ad te quid scribam nescio.* Cic. *Nec quid scribam hābeo.* Nor have I any thing to write. Id. *Dōce me, ubi sint dii.* Inform me where the gods are. Id. *Incertum est, quo te lōco mors exspectet.* Sen. Ep. *Quam pridem sibi hērēditas venisset, docet.* Id. *Nunc accipe, quare dēsipiant omnes.* Hor. *Id utrum illi sentiant, an*

*vōro simlēt, tu intellīges.* Cic. *Quæro, num tu sēntiū causam tuam permittas.* Id. *Vides, ut allā stet nīve candīdum Sōracte.* Hor. *Nescit, vitāne fruatur, an sit apud mānes.* Ovid.

NOTE 2. All interrogatives whether adjectives, pronouns, or particles, may serve as connectives of clauses containing indirect questions; as,

*Quantus, quālis, quōt, quōtus, quōtuplex, ūter; quis, qui, cūjas; ūbi, quō, unde, quā, quorsum, quamdiu, quamdiūdam, quamprīdem, quōties, cur, quāre, quamobrem, quemadmodum, quōmodo, ut, quam, quātiōpēre, an, ne, num, utrum, anne, annon.*

REMARK 1. The indicative is frequently used in dependent questions, especially in Terence and Plautus and occasionally in later poets; as, *Vide arāritia quid facit.* Ter. So Virg. *Ecl.* 5, 7. In the best prose writers the indicative generally indicates that the question is direct, or that the sentence is not a question; as, *Quæramus ūbi mālēficiū est,* Let us seek there, where the crime actually is. Cic. *Nihil est admirābilius, quam quōmodo ille mortem filiū tulit.*

REM. 2. In double questions, 'whether—or,' the first may be introduced by *utrum*, or the enclitic *ne*, or without an interrogative particle. Hence there are four forms of double questions,—1. *utrum* (or *utrum ne*),—*an*. 2. *utrum*,—*an* (*anne*). 3. *ne*,—*an*. 4. *ne*,—*ne*; as, *Mulum intērest, utrum laus immīnuātur, an sālus dēsērātur.* Cic. The interrogative particle *utrum* is not used in a single question; and *num*—*an* is used only in direct questions. The English 'or not' in the second part, which is used without a verb, is expressed in Latin by *annon* or *necne*, either with or without a verb; but *necne* occurs only in indirect questions; as, *Dī utrum sint, necne sint, quæritur.* Cic.—*Ne-ne, an—an, or num—num* scarcely occur except in poetical or unclassical language.

REM. 3. *Dūbito, dūbium est, or incertum est an, dēlibēro or hæsito an*, and especially *haud scio an, nescio an*, though implying some doubt, have generally a sense almost affirmative. Compare § 198, 11, R. (e.)

REM. 4. *Nescio quis*, used nearly in the sense of *aliquis*, does not influence the mood of the following verb; as, *Sed cāsu nescio quo in ea tempōra etas nostra incidit.* Cic. *Lūcus, nescio quo cāsu, nocturno tempōre incensus est.* Nep. So, also, *nescio quōmodo*, 'somehow' or 'in some way'; as, *Sed nescio quōmodo, inhaeret in mentibus quāsi augūrium.* Cic. In like manner *mirum quam, mirum quantum, nimium quantum*, and the like, when united to express only one idea, do not affect the mood of the verb; as, *Sāles in dicendo nimium quantum valent*,—very much. Cic.

## SUBJUNCTIVE IN INSERTED CLAUSES.

§ 266. 1. When a dependent proposition containing either an accusative with the infinitive, or a verb in the subjunctive, has a clause connected with it, as an *essential part*, either by a relative, a relative adverb, or a conjunction, the verb of the latter clause is put in the subjunctive; as,

*Quid enim potest esse tam perspicuum, quam esse aliquod nūmen, quo hæc regantur?* For what can be so clear as, that there is some divinity by whom these things are governed? Cic. Here the thing which is stated to be clear is, not merely *esse aliquod nūmen*, that there is a god, but also that the world is governed by him. Hence the latter clause, *quo hæc regantur* is an essential part of the general proposition. *Illud sic fēre dēfiniri sōlet, dēcōrum id esse, quod consentāneum sit hōmīnis excellentiæ.* Id. *Audiam quid sit, quod Epicūrum non prōbes,* I shall hear why it is that you do not approve of Epicurus. Id. *Jussit ut, quæ vēnissent, naves Eubœam pēterent.* Liv.

**REMARK 1.** Hence the subjunctive is used in general sentences, in which the class of things mentioned exists only as a conception or idea, while the individual thing has a real existence; as, *Est enim ulciscendi et puniendi mōdus, atque haud scio an satis sit cum qui læcesserint injūria sua pōnēre*, i. e. each individual offender of the class.

**REM. 2.** When the principal proposition contains a subjunctive denoting a result, after *ita*, *tam*, *tālis*, etc., the inserted clause has the indicative; as, *Asia vērō tum opima est et fertilis, ut—multitudine eārum rerum, quæ exportantur, facile omnibus terris antecellat*. Cic. The same is the case in definitions; as, *Vidēre igitur oportet, quæ sint convēnientia cum ipso nēgōtio, hoc est, quæ ab re sēparāre non possunt*. Cic.—So also explanatory clauses, especially circumlocutions introduced by a relative pronoun, are sometimes found with the indicative; as, *Itaque ille Mārius item eximie L. Plōtium dilexit, cūjus ingēnio pūtabat ea, quæ gesserat, posse celebrāri*. Cic.

**NOTE.** To this rule belongs the construction of the *ōrātiō obliqua*, 'indirect discourse,' or 'reported speech,' in which the language of another is presented, not as it was conceived or expressed by him, but in the third person. Thus, Cæsar said, 'I came, I saw, I conquered,' is direct,—Cæsar said, that 'he came, saw, and conquered,' is indirect discourse.

2. In the *ōrātiō obliqua*, the main proposition is expressed by the accusative with the infinitive; and dependent clauses connected with it by relatives and particles, take the subjunctive.

Thus, Cicero and Quintilian, in quoting the language of Marcus Antonius, make use, the former of the *ōrātiō directa*, the latter of the *ōrātiō obliqua*:—*Antōnius inquit, 'Ars eārum rerum est, quæ sciuntur'*, Antonius says, 'Art belongs to those things which are known.' Cic. *Antōnius inquit, artem eārum rerum esse, quæ sciuntur*, Antonius says, that 'art belongs to those things which are known.' Quint.

So, *Sōcrātes dicere solēbat, omnes, in eo quod scirent, satis esse eloquentes*, Socrates was accustomed to say, that 'all were sufficiently eloquent in that which they understood?' Cic. *Cito mirari se aiebat, quod non rideret hāruspez, hāruspicem quum vidisset*. Id. *Negat jus esse, qui miles non sit, pugnare cum hoste*. Id. *Indignabantur tibi esse impērium, ubi non esset libertas*. Liv. *Itaque Athēnienses, quod honestum non esset, id ne utile quidem (esse) putaverunt*. Cic.

**REMARK 1.** (a.) When the subjunctive would be necessary in the *ōrātiō directa*, to denote liberty, power, etc., the same remains in the *ōrātiō obliqua*, and is not changed into the infinitive with an accusative; as, *Ad hæc Ariovistus respondit, quum vellet, congrēderetur*. To this Ariovistus replied, that 'he might meet him when he pleased.' Cæs. In the *ōrātiō directa*, this would be *congrēdiāris*.

(b.) The imperative in the *ōrātiō directa* is, in the *ōrātiō obliqua*, changed into the subjunctive; as, *hoc mihi dicite*, which in the *ōrātiō obliqua* is, *hoc sibi dicant*, or *hoc sibi dicērent*, according to the tense of the leading verb.

(c.) So also direct questions addressed to the second person, when changed from direct to indirect speech, become subjunctives. Liv. 6, 37.—But such questions when not addressed to the second person are expressed in the *ōrātiō obliqua* by the accusative with the infinitive; as when in direct speech we say, *Etiāsi vērōis cōtēmēlia obliuisci vōlim, num possum etiā recentium injūriarum mēmōriam depōnere?* The *ōrātiō obliqua* will be, *Cæsar respondit (histor. perf.)—si vērōis cōtēmēlia obliuisci vellet, num etiā recentium injūriarum—mēmōriam depōnere posse?* Cæs. Very rarely the accusative with the infinitive is found in a question of the second person, as in Liv. 6, 17: but the subjunctive in questions of the third person is less uncommon in Cæsar; as, *Quis pāti posset? for quem pāti posse? Quis hoc sibi persuāderet? for quem sibi persuāsūrum?* See § 273, 8.

**REM. 2.** A writer may state his own past words or thoughts in *ōrātiō obliqua*, either preserving the first person, or adopting the third.

REM. 3. When the inserted clause contains the words or sentiments of the subject of the leading clause, all references to him are regularly expressed by the reflexives *sui* and *suus*; as, *Hac necessitate coactus domino navis qui sit operis, multa pollicens, si se conservasset.* Nep. And this is equally true when the word to which the pronoun refers is not in reality the grammatical subject, provided it may still be conceived as such; as, *Quum ei in suspiciōnem venisset, aliquid in epistola de se esse scriptum.* Nep.; for the words, *quum ei in suspiciōnem venisset*, are equivalent to *quum suspicārētur*. See § 208, (1.)

REM. 4. The tenses to be used in changing the *oratio directa* into the *obliqua*, depend on the tense of the verb which introduces the quotation, according to the rule, § 258. But when the future perfect would be used in the direct, the pluperfect is necessary in the oblique form; but the perfect is used after the present, perfect definite, or future.

REM. 5. When the connected clause contains merely a descriptive circumstance, or expresses what is independent of the sentiment of the preceding clause, it takes the indicative; as, *Impērauit Alexander Lysippo, ut eorum equitum, qui apud Granicum ceciderant, faceret statuas*, Alexander ordered Lysippus to make statues of those horsemen who had fallen at the Granicus. Sometimes, in other cases, when it is evident from the sense, that the connected clause is an essential part of the proposition, the indicative is used, to avoid giving the appearance of contingency to the sentence.

3. A clause connected to another by a relative or causal conjunction, takes the subjunctive, (whatever be the mood of the preceding verb,) when it contains not the sentiment or allegation of the writer, but that of some other person alluded to; as,

*Socrates accusatus est, quod corrumpere iuventutem*, Socrates was accused of corrupting the youth, lit., because (as was alleged) he corrupted the youth. *Deum invocabant, cujus ad solenne venissent*, They invoked the god, to whose solemnities they had come. Liv. *Quos vicēris amicis tibi esse cave credas*, Do not believe that those whom you have conquered are your friends. Here, in the first example, the charge of corrupting the youth is not made by the writer, but by the accusers of Socrates. So, in the second example, the worshippers allege that they have come to attend upon the solemnities of the god. In the last, it is implied by the use of the subjunctive mood, that the belief spoken of is that of the person addressed:—*quos vicisti* would have been merely an addition of the speaker, by means of which he would have designated the persons whose friendship he was speaking of; and, in general, the *indicative*, in such sentences, is employed in those statements which are independent of the sentiments of the person, to whose thoughts or words allusion is made. Cf. supra, 2, R. 5.

REMARK. In the preceding cases, it is not directly said that the sentiments are those of another than the writer. In Cicero, however, the words *dico*, *puto*, *arbitror*, and the like, are often construed in a similar manner, although, properly speaking, not these verbs, but those in the clauses dependent on them, should be in the subjunctive; as, *Quum enim, Hannibalis permissu, exisset de castris, rediit paulo post, quod se oblitum nescio quod diceret*,...because (as) he said, he had forgotten something. Cic. *Ab Atheniensibus, locum sepulcræ intra urbem ut darent, impetrare non potui, quod religione se impediri dicerent.* Id.

### ·IMPERATIVE MOOD.

§ 267. The imperative mood is used to express a *command*, *wish*, *advice*, or *exhortation*; as,

*Nosce te*, Know thyself. Cic. *Æquam memento servare mentem*, Remember to preserve an unruffled mind. Hor. *Huc ades*, Come hither. Virg. *Pasce cæpellas, et potum pastas æge, et inter agendum occurrere capro caverito.* Id.

(1.) The imperative *present* denotes that an action is to be performed directly or at once; as, *lêge*, read; *môrere*, die; or that a state or condition is to continue; as, *vive*, live.

(2.) The imperative *future* denotes that something is to be done, as soon as something else has taken place; as, *Quum vâletudîni tuæ consiliuêris, tum consûlto vâcigâtioni*. Cic. *Prius audite paucis; quod quum dixero, si placuerit, facitote*. Ter. The precedent event is often to be supplied by the mind. Sometimes, especially in poetry, the imperative present is used for the imperative future, and, on the other hand, *scito* and *scitote*, from *scio*, are used instead of the imperative present, which is wanting.

(3.) Hence the imperative future is properly used in *contracts, laws, and wills*; and also in *precepts and rules of conduct*; as, *Régio império duo sunt, ñque consules appellantor, militis summum jus habentor, nêmini pãrento, illis salus populi suprema lex esto*. Cic. *Non satis est pulchra esse poemata, dulcia suntor*. Hor. *Ignoscito saepe allêri, numquam tibi*. Syr.

REMARK 1. With the imperative, *not* is expressed by *nê*, and *nor* by *pêve*; as,

*Ne tanta animis assuescite bella*. Virg. *Ne crêde còlôri*. Id. *Hominem mortuum in urbe ne sêpêlito, nêve ùrto*. Cic.

NOTE. *Non* and *nêque* occur, though rarely, with the imperative; as, *Vos quôque non cãris auris onêrâte lãpillis, nec pròdite grãves insulo vestibus auro*. Ovid. But with the subjunctive used for the imperative *non* and especially *nêque* are found more frequently. Cf. § 260, R. 6, (b.).—In Plautus and Terence *ne* is of common occurrence both with the imperative and with the present subjunctive, and with no difference of meaning; but later poets chiefly use *ne* with the present subjunctive, and *ne* with the imperative only when they speak emphatically. In classical prose writers the periphrastic *nôli* with the infinitive is preferred.

REM. 2. The present and perfect subjunctive are often used instead of both tenses of the imperative, to express a command in a milder form, an exhortation, or an entreaty; as, *Qui adipisci vëram glóriam vòlet, justitia fungatur officiis*. Cic. *Quod dubitas, ne facëris*. Plin. Ep. See § 260, II., R. 6. An imperative of the perfect passive is very rarely found; as, *At vos admôniti nostris quôque cãstibus este*. Ovid. *Jacta ãlea esto*. Cæs. in Suet. But the subjunctive is more common; as, *Jacta sit ãlea*. Sometimes also the future indicative; as, *Sed valêbis, meque nêgôtia vidêbis, meque diis juvantibus ante brumam expectãbis, instead of vãle, vide, expecta*. Cic. *Ubi sententiam meam vobis përfêgêro, tum quibus eadem placêbunt, in dextram partem tacti transibitis, instead of transilote*. Liv. With the future the negative is *non*. See § 259, R. 1, (4.).

REM. 3. Sometimes, for the simple affirmative imperative, *cûra* or *cûrãto ut, fac ut, or fac* alone is used with the subjunctive; as, *Cûra ut quam primum vênias, Come as soon as possible. Fac erudias*, Instruct, or Take care to instruct. Cic. For the negative imperative *fac ne, cãve ne* or *cãve* alone, with the present or perfect subjunctive is used; but especially *nôli* with the infinitive; as, *Nôli putãre*, Do not suppose. Cic. *Cãve existimes*, Do not think. Id. *Nôlite id velle quod non fieri pôtes, et cãvêto, ne spe præsents pãcis perpëtuum pãcem ômittãtis*. Id.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

### OF THE TENSES OF THE INFINITIVE.

§ 268. 1. The infinitive partakes of the properties of the noun and verb, just as the participle combines the properties of the adjective and verb. It expresses simply the action or state implied in the verb in an abstract manner, without specifying either person, number, or time, and thus merely indicates whether an action is in progress or completed.

2. The tenses of the infinitive denote respectively an action as present, past, or future, in reference to the time of the verbs with which they are connected; as,

*Hoc facere possum*, I am able to do this. Cic. *Vidi nostros inimicos cupere bellum*, I saw that our enemies were desiring war. Id. *Nec gemere atrid cessabit turtur ab ulno*, Nor shall the turtle dove cease to coo from the lofty elm. Virg.—*Victorem victæ succubuisse queror*, I complain that the victor has yielded to the vanquished. Ovid. *Se a senibus audisse dicabant*, They said that they had heard (it) from the old men. Cic. *Audiet cives acuisse ferrum iuventus*, The youth will hear that the citizens have whetted the sword. Hor.—*Negat esse verbum esse facturum*, He declares that he is not about to speak. Cic. *Postquam audierat non datum iri filio uxorem suo*, After he had heard that a wife would not be given to his son. Ter. *Semper existimabitis nihil horum vos visuros fore*, You will always suppose that you are to see none of these things. Cic.

REMARK 1. (a.) The present and perfect infinitives are sometimes called respectively the infinitives of *incomplete* and of *completed* action. The present infinitive, however, is sometimes used to denote a completed action. This is the usual construction with *mementi*; but in such case the speaker transfers himself to the past, and the expression denotes rather a recollection of the progress than of the completion of the action; as, *Hoc me mementi dicere*, I remember my saying this. Cic. *Teucrum mementi Sidonæ venire*, I remember Teucer's coming to Sidon. Virg. So with *mementi* *teneo*. Cic. Phil. 8, 10. *Scribit* also is construed like *mementi*; as, Cic. Off. 3, 2: and after the same analogy, and for the sake of vivid expression Cicero says, *M. Maximum accepinus facile cellare, tacere, dissimulare, etc.*, though speaking of things which he had not witnessed himself. So, also, with *recordor*;—*Recordor longe omnibus unum anteferre Demosthenem*. Cic. When the action is spoken of simply as a fact, the perfect infinitive is used with *mementi*; as, *Mementis me ita distribuisse causam*. Cic.

(b.) The passive voice having no simple form for expressing the completed state of suffering makes use of the combination of the perfect participle with *esse*; as, *amatus esse*, to have been loved. When thus combined *esse* loses its own signification of a continued state, and when this state is to be expressed, another infinitive must be chosen; as, *Constrictam jam horum conscientia tenere conjurationem tuam non vides?* Cic. Sometimes, however, when no ambiguity can arise, *esse* in the usual combination retains its original meaning; as, *Apud Platinem est, omnem morem Lacedæmoniorum inflammatum esse cupiditate vincendi*. Id. Here *inflammatum esse* expresses a continued or habitual state.—*Fuisse* with the perfect participle denotes a state completed previous to a certain past time; as, *Jubet bono animo esse; scriptum fuisse regem subito ictu*. Liv.

REM. 2. To express the result of an action rather than its progress, the perfect infinitive is sometimes used instead of the present, especially after *scitis habeo*, *scitis mihi est*, *prædet*, *contentus sum*, *melius erit*, *solo* or a verb of equivalent meaning; as, *Bacchatur cætes, magnum si pectore possit excussisse deum*. Virg. *Quum illam nemo vellet attigisse*. Plin. The poets use the infinitive perfect where we should expect a present; as, *Tendentes Pelion impetuisse Olympo*. Hor.

REM. 3. The present infinitive is also sometimes used for the future, especially when the verb has no future; as, *Desine fata deum flecti sperare*, Cease to hope that the fates of the gods will be changed. Virg. *Progeniem Trojano a sanguine dici audierat*. Id. *Cras mihi argentum dare dixit*, i. e. *se daturum esse*. Ter. *Cato affirmat se vivo illum non triumphare*. Cic.

REM. 4. (a.) The infinitive future active is formed by a combination of the participle future active with *esse*; as, *amaturus esse*; the infinitive future passive by a combination of the supine in *um* with *iri*; as, *amatum iri*. These future infinitives denote an action or state as continuing. The participle in *rus*, which properly expresses intention (see § 162, 14), takes also the infinitive *fuisse* to express a past intention; as, *Solo te scripturum fuisse*, I know that

you have had the intention to write, whence it was an easy transition to the sense, 'you would have written,' in conditional sentences, when the condition is not fulfilled. This infinitive is used especially in the apodosis of hypothetical sentences, where in direct speech the pluperfect subjunctive would be used (of. § 162, 14, R. 8.); as, *Etiam si obtemperasset auspiciis, idem eventurum fuisse puto*. Cic. In like manner the infinitive future with *esse* is used in the apodosis of hypothetical sentences instead of the imperfect subjunctive; as, *Libertus, nisi jussisset, scelus se facturum (esse) arbitrabatur*. Id.

(b.) Instead of the future infinitive, in both voices, *futurum esse* or *fore*, followed by *ut* and the subjunctive, is often used; the present and imperfect subjunctive, in such cases, denoting an unfinished, the perfect and pluperfect a finished, future action; as, *Numquam putavi fore, ut supplex ad te venirem*, I never supposed (that it would happen) that I should come a suppliant to you. Cic. *Suspicio fore; ut infringatur hominum improbitas*. Id. *Credebam fore, ut epistolam scripisses*.—So, also, in the passive for a continued state of future suffering the present and imperfect are used; as, *Crede fore, ut epistolam scribatur*, and, *Credebam fore, ut epistola scriberetur*. But to express a completed state in future time the perfect participle is employed; as, *Quos spero brevi tempore tecum copulatos fore*. Cic. *Quod videret nomine pacis bellum involutum fore*. Id. This construction is necessarily used, when the verb has either no future active participle, or no supine; as, in such case, the regular future infinitive cannot be formed; as, *Spero fore ut sapias*.—*Fore* is found in two passages pleonastically joined with the future participle active, viz. *Te ad me fore venturum*. Cic. Att. 5, 21: and *Quum senatus censeret—libenter facturos fore*. Liv. 6, 42.

REM. 5. (a.) The periphrastic infinitive formed by the future active participle with *fuisse*, denotes a future action contingent upon a condition which was not fulfilled; and, in the apodosis of a conditional sentence, corresponds to the pluperfect subjunctive; as, *An censes me tantos labores suscepturum fuisse, si isdem finibus gloriam meam quibus vitam essem terminaturus?* Do you think that I should have undertaken so great labors if, etc. Cic. *Ut perspicuum sit omnibus, nisi tanta acerbitas injuria fuisset, numquam illos in eum locum progressuros fuisse*,....that they never would have come into that place. Id.

(b.) *Futurum fuisse* with *ut* and the imperfect subjunctive passive, corresponds to the infinitive *fuisse* with the future participle active in a conditional proposition; as, *Nisi nuncii essent allati, existimabant plerique futurum fuisse, ut oppidum amitteretur*,....that the town would have been lost. Cæs.

(c.) The participle future passive cannot be used to form an infinitive future passive, since it always retains the meaning of necessity, and in this sense has three regular infinitives, *amandum esse*, *amandum fuisse*, and *amandum fore*; as, *Instare hiemem, aut sub pellibus habendos milites fore, aut differendum esse in aestatem bellum*. Liv.

REM. 6. In the apodosis of a conditional sentence, the perfect infinitive, like the past tenses of the indicative, (see § 259, R. 4.), sometimes corresponds to the pluperfect subjunctive; as, (*Dicit*) *sibi vitam filiae suae cariorem fuisse, si libera ac pudica vivere licitum fuisset*, (He said) that the life of his daughter had been dearer to him than his own, if it had been permitted.... Liv. This use of the perfect infinitive is necessary, when the verb has no future participle; as, *Equidem Platonem existimo, si genus forense dicendi tractare soluisset, gravissime et copiosissime potuisse dicere*,—would have been able to speak. Cic.

§ 269. The infinitive may be regarded either as a verb or as an abstract noun. (a.) As a verb it is used either indefinitely (§ 143, 4), or with a subject of its own, which is put in the accusative, (§ 239). But the infinitive passive of neuter and sometimes of active verbs, like the third person singular of that voice, may be used impersonally or without a subject; as, *Vides isto propèrari litore*, You see a stir is made all along the shore. Virg. See §§ 209, R. 3, (2.), and 239, R. 4. The present infinitive has sometimes, in narration, a subject in the nominative. See § 209, R. 5.

(b.) As a noun, the infinitive, either alone or with a subject-accusative, has two cases, the nominative and the accusative, and is accordingly used either as the subject or the object of a verb.

### THE INFINITIVE AS THE SUBJECT OF A VERB.

The infinitive, either with or without a subject-accusative, may be the *subject* of a verb; as,

*Ad rempublicam pertinet me conservari*, It concerns the state that I should be preserved. Cic. *Numquam est utile peccare*, To do wrong is never useful. Id. *Majus dedecus est paria amittere quam omnino non paravisse*. Sall. In the first example *conservari* with its subject accusative *me* is the subject of *pertinet*, and is equivalent to 'my preservation': in the second, *peccare* is the subject of *est utile*. See § 202, 2, and III. R. 2.

REMARK 1. A general truth may be expressed by the infinitive without a subject; as, *Factus est vincire civem Rōmānum*, To bind a Roman citizen, or, that one should bind a Roman citizen, is a crime. But in such case the verb *esse* and verbs denoting to appear, to be considered or called (§ 210, R. 3.), require the noun or adjective of the predicate to agree with the implied subject in the accusative; as, *Equum est peccatis veniam poscentem reddere rursus*. Hor. *Atticus maximum aestimavit questum, memorem gratumque cognosci*. Nep.

NOTE. The indefinite pronoun *aliquem* or *aliquos* may in such cases be supplied, and the same indefiniteness may be expressed by *te* or *nos*, cf. § 209, R. 7; but it is still more frequently expressed by the infinitive passive. Hence the sentence *Factus est vincire civem Rōmānum*, may also be expressed by *Factus est vinciri civem Rōmānum*. So, *Quum viderent de eorum virtute non desperari*. Nep.—The impersonal verbs *licet*, *décet*, *oportet*, *opus est*, and *nécesse est*, when there is no definite subject, are joined with the infinitive active alone; but when there is a subject-accusative, they are connected with the passive construction; as, a c. *licet hoc facere*; *décet spectamen capere ex hac re*; pass. *licet hoc fieri*; *décet spectamen capi*.

REM. 2. The infinitive, with or without a subject accusative, is often the subject of a proposition, when the substantive verb with a noun, a neuter adjective, or an impersonal verb forms the predicate. Of this kind are *justum*, *equum*, *verisimile*, *consentaneum*, *apertum*—*est*, *erat*, etc., *nécesse est*, *opus est*;—*apparet*, *constat*, *convénit*, *décet*, *licet*, *oportet*; *intelligitur*, *perspicitur*, etc.; as, *Cui verba dare difficile est*. Ter. *Mendacem memorem esse oportet*. Quint. *Lēgem brevem esse oportet*. Sen. *Constat profecto ad salutem civium inventas esse lēges*. Cic. *Non enim me hoc jam dicere pūdebāt*. Id. See § 209, R. 3, (5.), (a.)

REM. 3. The infinitive may itself be the subject of an infinitive; as, *Audio non licere cuiquam in nave capillos depōnere*. Ter.

REM. 4. The infinitive, with or without a subject accusative, may also be the predicate nominative; as, *Impāne qualibet facere id est rēgem esse*. Sall. In this sentence *facere* is the subject, and *rēgem esse* is the predicate; for *id*, which only represents by a kind of apposition the clause *impāne qualibet facere*, can be omitted.

REM. 5. When the infinitive *esse*, (or others of similar meaning, as, *fieri*, *vivere*, *vitam degere*, *cedere*, *abire*, etc.), with a predicate adjective (or noun), is joined with *licet*, such predicate is put in the accusative, if the subject-accusative of the infinitive is expressed, and sometimes, also, when it is omitted, but more frequently, in the latter case, the predicate adjective or noun is attracted to the dative following *licet*; as, *Ut eum liceat ante tempus consulem fieri*. Auct. ad Her. *Mēdios esse jam non licēbit*. Cic. *Si civi Rōmāno licet esse Gādītānum*. Id.—*Licuit enim esse otioso Thēmistocli*. Id. *Mihi negligentī esse non licet*. Id. *Sibi vitam filia suā caridrem fuisse, si libere ac pudice vivere licitum fuisset* (scil. ei). Liv. So also *nécesse est* with the predicate in the



**dative.** *Vobis necesse est fortibus viris esse.* Liv.—But *ſciet*, *oportet*, and *necesse est* are also joined with the subjunctive mood, and hence is derived the construction of *ſciet* as a conjunction. See § 263, 2.

### THE INFINITIVE AS THE OBJECT OF A VERB.

§ 270. The infinitive, either with or without a subject-accusative, may be the *object* of a verb; as,

*Hæc vitare cupimus*, We desire to avoid this. Cic. *Postas omnino non conor attingere*, I do not at all attempt to read the poets. Id. *Sententiam valere cupierunt*, They desired that the opinion should prevail. Id. *Spéro te valere*, I hope that you are well. Id.

**NOTE.** The infinitive as the object of a verb supplies the place of the accusative of the *thing*, and hence many active verbs besides the infinitive take in the active voice an accusative of the *person*, cf. § 231, R. 3, (b.), and in the passive retain the infinitive; as, *Consules jubentur scribere exercitum*. *Muros adire vetiti sunt*. Cf. § 234, I.

**REMARK 1.** The infinitive alone may also depend upon an adjective, and sometimes upon a noun.

(a.) It may depend upon *relative adjectives*, (see § 213, R. 1), which, by the poets, are joined with the infinitive instead of their usual construction with the genitive of the gerund, etc.; as, *Cedere nescius*. Hor. *Avidi committere pugnam*. Ovid. *Cupidus moriri*. Id. *Cantare periti Arcades*. Virg. *Callidus condere furto*. Hor. *Quidlibet impotens sperare*. Id. *Sutrinus facere inscius*. Varr. *Insuetus vera audire*. Liv. *Certa mori*. Virg. *Feliciores ungere tela*. Virg. So, *Audax omnia perpeteri*, Resolute to endure every thing. Hor. *Sollers ornare Cypassis*, Skillful to adorn. Ovid. *Segnes solvere nodum*. Hor. *Indocilis pauperem pati*. Id. *Non lenis fata recludere*. Id. See § 213, R. 4, (1.)

(b.) It may also depend upon adjectives signifying *usefulness, fitness*, etc., which are sometimes by the poets construed with the infinitive instead of the dative; as, (*Tibia*) *aspirare et adesse choris erat utilis*. Hor. *Ætas mollis et apta regi*. Ovid. *Fons etiam rivo dare nomen Idoneus*. Hor. *Fruges consumere nati*. Id. And after *dignus* and *contentus*; as, *Dignus amari*. Virg. Cf. § 244, R. 2, (b.)

(c.) Upon a noun; as, *Tempus est hujus libri facere finem*, It is time to finish this book. Nep. *Iniit consilia reges tollere*, He devised a plan to destroy the kings. Id. *Ea erat confessio caput rerum Romam esse*. Liv. *Cupido incenserat Ethiopiam invisere*. Curt. *Quibus in otio vivere copia erat*. Sall. So, *Nec mihi sunt vires inimicos pellere lectis*, instead of *pellendis inimicis*, or *ad pellendos inimicos*. Ovid.

(d.) If for the infinitives depending on nouns or adjectives other nouns were substituted, these last would be put in the genitive, dative, or ablative; and hence such infinitives may perhaps be properly regarded as exceptions to the rule, that the infinitive has but two cases, the nominative and the accusative.

**REM. 2.** (a.) The infinitive with the accusative sometimes stands unconnected, especially in exclamations and indignant interrogations, where *credibile est*? or *verumne est*? may be supplied; as, *Mene incepto desistere victam?* That I, vanquished, should desist from my undertaking? Virg. *Me miserum! te in tantis ærumnas propter me incidisse!* Cic.—But *ut*, also, with the subjunctive, either with or without an interrogative particle, may be used to express a question with indignation; as, *Ene* (scil. *patri*) *ego ut adverser?* Liv. *Tu ut unquam te corrigas?* Cic. *Judicio ut ardor decumanum perséquatur?* Id.; where *ferri potest*? may be supplied.

(b.) So, in the *oratio obliqua*, the words signifying *said, saying*, etc., are often omitted, or implied in a preceding verb or phrase; as, *Id facile effici posse*, scil. *dixit*. Nep. *Quem signum daturum fugientibus?* Curt.

REM. 8. The infinitive is sometimes to be supplied; and *esse* and *fuisse* with a predicate adjective, and also in the compound forms of the infinitive, both active and passive, are commonly omitted, especially after verbs of *saying, thinking, knowing, and perceiving*; as, *Vos cognovi fortes*. Sall. *Quem pulsum mēmōrāvi*. Tac.—So, also, with the infinitive perfect passive when depending on *volo, nolo, cupio*, and *oportet*; as, *Adolescenti morem gestum oportuit*. Ter. *Quod jam pridem factum oportuit*. Cic.—Sometimes in a relative clause an infinitive is to be supplied from the finite verb of the main proposition; as, *Quos voluit omnes interfecit*, scil. *interficere*. *Ne illam quidem consequuntur, quam putant, gratiam*; i. e. *quam se consecuturos putant*. Cic.

## THE INFINITIVE WITHOUT A SUBJECT-ACCUSATIVE.

§ 271. The infinitive, without a subject-accusative, is used after verbs denoting *ability, obligation, intention or endeavor*; after verbs signifying *to begin, continue, cease, abstain, dare, fear, hesitate, or be wont*; and after the passive of verbs of *saying, believing, reckoning, etc.*

NOTE 1. To these classes belong *possum, queo, nŕqueo, vŕleo, dŕbeo; cŕro; cŕgito, dŕcerno, stŕtuo, constŕtuo, instŕtuo, pŕro; cŕnor, nŕlor, tendo, contendo, tento, mŕturo, prŕpŕro, aggrŕdior, persŕvŕro; —cŕpi, incŕpio, pergo, dŕstno, dŕsisto, intermitto, parco, rŕcŕso; sŕleo, assuesco, consuesco, insuesco; audeo, vŕreor, mŕtuo, rŕformŕdo, itŕmeo, horreo, dŕbito; —audior, crŕdor, existŕmor, fŕror, nŕgor, nuntior, pŕhibeor, pŕtor, trŕdor, jŕbeor, videor, and cŕgor*.

NOTE 2. When the preceding verbs are joined with *esse, hŕbŕri, jŕdicŕri, vidŕri*, etc., the predicate noun or adjective is put in the nominative; as, *Sŕle tristis vidŕri; aude sapiens esse; cŕpit mŕhi mŕlestus esse; dŕbes esse diligens; potest liber esse*: and so also *mŕrŕtur, scit, dŕicit liber esse*.

NOTE 3. The poets, in imitation of the Greeks, use the infinitive after *fŕge, aufer, cŕve, parce, mŕmento; pŕveo, rŕfŕgio, quŕro, urgeo, lŕboro, ŕmo, gaudeo, fŕro, calleo, sŕmo, mitto, rŕmitto, pŕtor, jŕro, conjŕro, pugno, nŕtus*, and some other verbs, especially to denote a *wish or purpose*; as, *Introiti vidŕre*. Ter. *Non te frangere persŕquor*. Hor. *Non pŕpŕlare pŕnŕtes vŕnimus*. Virg. In this construction, the poets are sometimes imitated by the later prose writers.

REMARK 1. Many of the verbs above enumerated, instead of the infinitive, may be followed by the subjunctive with *ut, ne*, etc.; and with some of them this is the regular construction; as, *Sententiam ne dicŕret, rŕcŕsŕvit*. Cic.

REM. 2. The passives *dicor, trŕdor, fŕror, narror, rŕpŕrior, existŕmor, videor*, etc., may either be used personally, with the infinitive alone, or impersonally, followed by the accusative with the infinitive. Thus we may say, *Mŕter Pausŕnia eo tempŕre vixisse dŕictur*, or, *Dŕictur eo tempŕre mŕtrem Pausŕnia vixisse*. The mother of Pausanias is said to have been living....or, It is said that the mother of Pausanias was living.... Nep. The former construction is more common especially with *videor*, see § 272, R. 6; but the latter is frequent with *nuntŕtur*, and very common with the compound tenses, *trŕditum est, prŕditum est*, etc., and with the participle future passive; as, *crŕdendum est, intelligendum est*, etc.; as, *Quŕrum nŕntinem tŕlem fuisse crŕdendum*, etc. Cic.

REM. 3. The infinitive without a subject is used after a verb, only when it denotes an action or state of the subject of that verb.

REM. 4. The verbs to *wish or desire, volo, nŕlo, mŕlo; cupio, opto, stŕdeo*, have a twofold construction:—the infinitive without a subject-accusative is used after them; when the subject remains the same; and when followed by *esse, hŕbŕri*, etc., the predicate-noun or adjective is in the nominative;—but the accusative with the infinitive is used when the subject is changed, or when a reflexive pronoun of the same person follows. We say, therefore, *vŕlo erŕctus fieri*, and on the other hand, *vŕlo te erŕctum fieri*, and *vŕlo me erŕctum fieri*. So, *Vŕlo is esse, quem tu me esse vŕluisti*. Cic. *Cupio me esse elŕmentem, cupio—*

me non dissolutum vidēri. Id.; or, omitting the pronoun, *cāpio esse clemens nec dissolutus vidēri*.—*Omnis homines qui sese student praeſtare ceteris animabus*, etc. Sall.

NOTE 4. *Volo* is used with the present infinitive passive; as, *Me amari volo*, I wish to be beloved; *hoc velim intelligi*, I wish this to be understood; and also with the infinitive perfect passive to denote the eager desire that something should be instantly accomplished; as, *Legati quod erant appellati superbius, Corinthum patres vestri—exstinctum esse voluerunt*. Cic.; but it occurs most frequently with the omission of *esse*; as, *hoc factum volo*; *nunc illos commentos velim*: so, *patriam exstinctam cupit*.

NOTE 5. The nominative with the infinitive after verbs of saying, perceiving, etc. (§ 272), is rare even in poetry, and is an imitation of the Greek idiom, which requires the nominative with the infinitive when the same subject remains; as, *Phaeëus ille, quem videtis, hospites, ait fuisse navium celerissimus*. Catull. *Quia retulit Ajax esse Jovis nepos*, instead of *se esse Jovis nepotem*. Ovid. *Sensu medios delapsus in hostes*, instead of *se delapsum esse*. Virg.

## THE INFINITIVE WITH A SUBJECT-ACCUSATIVE.

§ 272. The infinitive with a subject-accusative follows verbs of saying, thinking, knowing, perceiving, and the like; as,

*Videbat, id non posse fieri*, He saw that that could not be done. Nep. *Sentit animus, se sua vi, non diēndū, moveri*. Cic. *Andivi te venire*. *Me in ejus potestate dixi fore*. Id. *Affirmant militum jacere animos*. Liv. *Saepe venit ad aures meas, te istud nimis crebro dicere*. Cic. *Eam pugnam ad Perusiam pugnatum (esse), quidam auctores sunt*. Liv.

NOTE 1. This rule includes all such verbs and phrases as denote the exercise of the external senses and intellectual faculties, or the communication of thought to others; as, *audio, video, sentio, animadverto, cognosco, intelligo, percipio, disco, scio, nescio, censeo, spero, despero, cogito, iudico, credo, arbitror, puto, opinor, dico, statuo, memento, recordor, oblitiscor, opinio est, spes est*, etc.;—*dico, trado, prout, scribo, refero, narro, nuntio, confirmo, nego, ostendo, indico, doceo, certiorum facio, demonstro, perhibeo, promitto, polliceor, spondeo*, etc.; but with most of these a different construction often occurs. See § 273.

NOTE 2. The propositions, whose subjects are thus put in the accusative and their verbs in the infinitive, are those which are directly dependent on the verbs of saying and perceiving. Respecting the clauses inserted in such dependent propositions, see § 266, 1.

NOTE 3. (a.) When a relative clause inserted in a proposition containing the accusative with the infinitive, has the same verb as the proposition in which it is inserted, but such verb is not repeated, the noun which is the subject of the relative clause is also put by attraction in the accusative; as, *Te suspicor eisdem rebus, quibus me ipsum, commoveri*. If the verb is expressed we must say, *eisdem rebus commoveri, quibus (ego) ipse commoveor*. So, also, in inserted relative clauses where the verb, if expressed, would be in the subjunctive, (see § 266, 2.); as, (*Verres*) *aitbat se tantidem aestimasse, quanti Sacerdotem, for quanti Sacerdos aestimasset*. Cic. *Confutetur se in ea parte fuisse quam te, quam virum omni laude dignum patrem tuum*. Id.

(b.) The same is the case with the particle *quam* after a comparative, see § 256, R. 5, (a.) But sometimes when *quam* connects a clause to a preceding proposition containing the accusative with the infinitive, the same construction follows that precedes *quam*, even when the verb of the latter clause is expressed; as, *Nonne tibi affirmavi quidvis me potius perperurum, quam ex Italia ad bellum civile me exiturum*; instead of *quam exirem* or *quam ut exirem*. Cic.

(c.) In long speeches in the *oratio obliqua*, relative clauses, having a verb of their own which should properly be in the subjunctive, are put in the accusative with the infinitive, if the relative clause is not subordinate to the one with the infinitive, and which is governed by a verb of saying or perceiving,

but is rather coördinate with it; in which case the relative is equivalent to the demonstrative with *et*; as, *Nam illorum urbem ut propugnaculum oppositum esse barbaris, apud quam jam bis classes regias fecisse naufragium*; for *et apud eam jam bis*, etc.—In Livy and Tacitus the same construction sometimes occurs even after conjunctions; as after *quum* in the sense of 'while,' see § 263, 5, R. 3; after *quamquam* on account of its absolute signification, see § 198, 4, and after *quia*.

NOTE 4. The personal pronouns, which, with the other moods, are expressed only when they are emphatic, must be always expressed in the accusative with the infinitive. The verbs 'to promise' and 'to hope' are in English usually joined with the infinitive present without a pronoun, but in Latin not only is the pronoun expressed, but the infinitive which follows is in the future; as, 'He promised to come,' is in Latin, *Præmisit se venturum* (scil. *esse*, see § 270, R. 8). But the infinitive present sometimes occurs after these verbs; as, *Pollicentur obsequia dare*, Cæs. B. G. 4, 21; and the pronoun is occasionally omitted, see § 239, R. 2 and 3.

REMARK 1. When ambiguity would arise from the subject and the object of the verb being both in the accusative, the passive infinitive is substituted for the active, by which means the subject is put in the ablative, or in the accusative with *per*; as, *Ne fando quidem audatum est, crocodilum violatum esse ab Egyptio*; instead of *Egyptium crocodilum violasse*. Cic.

REM. 2. After verbs of saying, thinking, etc., the conjunction *that* is omitted in translating from English into Latin, and the subject of the dependent clause is put in the accusative, and its verb in the infinitive.

REM. 3. The accusative with the infinitive is sometimes rendered into English by a similar form; as, *Si vis me flere, If you wish me to weep*. Hor.; but the dependent clause is more frequently connected to the verb of saying, etc., by the conjunction *that*, and the infinitive translated by the indicative or potential mood; as, *Sentimus nivem esse albam*, We perceive that snow is white. Cic. Sometimes the dependent clause is annexed to the other without the conjunction; as, *Crédunt se negligi*, They think they are neglected. Ter.

REM. 4. A present infinitive corresponds to the imperfect indicative, when with an accusative it follows a preterite tense; as, *Dixit Cæsarem venire*, He said that Cæsar was coming. Cæs. In like manner the perfect infinitive with an accusative after a preterite tense corresponds to the pluperfect indicative; as, *Dixit Cæsarem venisse*, He said that Cæsar had come. See § 268, 2.

REM. 5. The present infinitive, after verbs of sense, is often equivalent to the present participle; as, *Surgere videt lunam*, He sees the moon (to rise) rising. Virg. *Arma rutilare vident*. Id. *Vidēbis collucere faces*. Id. *Nec Zephyros audis spirare*? Do you not hear the zephyrs blowing? Id. *Sape hoc majores natu dicere audivi*. Cic. The two constructions are sometimes united; as, *Medium video discendere cælum, palantesque polo stellas*. Virg.

REM. 6. The subject-accusative after verbs of saying, showing, and believing; as, *dico, nēgo, trādo, fero, mēmoro, narro, nuntio, pērhībeo, prōdo, scribo, dēmonstro, ostendo, arguo, crēdo, pūto, existimo*, and the like, and also after *jūbeo, vōto*, and *prōhībeo*, is regarded also as the accusative of the object after these verbs; and hence such verbs are used also in the passive, the accusative of the active voice becoming, as usual, the nominative of the passive. This is especially the case when their subject is indefinite; as, *Dicunt* (they or people say) *me virum prōbum esse, or dicor vir prōbus esse*. So, *Vetāmur hoc facere*, instead of, *Nos hoc facere vētant*. Instead also of the impersonal *vidētur* (it appears) followed by the infinitive with its subject-accusative, it is common to say personally, *videor, vidēris*, etc., with the infinitive; as, *videor errasse*, it appears that I have erred.

## INFINITIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE CLAUSES..

§ 273. When the particle *that*, in English, introduces a clause denoting a *purpose*, *object*, or *result*, it is a sign of the subjunctive in Latin, and is to be expressed by *ut*, etc.; but otherwise it is usually the sign of the accusative with the infinitive. Cf. §§ 262 and 272.

1. (a.) Verbs of *endeavoring* and *resolving* take after them the infinitive and more rarely the subjunctive, when the subject remains the same; but when the subject is changed, they take the subjunctive only.

NOTE 1. Such are *stătuo*, *constătuo*, *décerno*, *tento*, *lăbro*, *păro*, *măditor*, *căro*, *nitor*, *contendo*, *consilium cāpio*, *ānimum* or *in ānimum indăco*. Cf. § 271, N. 1. After *spēram* do, I exert myself, *id*, *hoc*, or *illud* āgo, I endeavor, *nihil antiquius hădeo* or *dăco* quam, nothing is of more importance to me, and *video* for *căro*, the subjunctive is almost exclusively used.

(b.) Verbs of *effecting* are construed with *ut* or *ne* and the subjunctive.

NOTE 2. Such are *făcio*, *efficio*, *perficio*, *evinco*, *pervinco*, *impetro*, *assēquor*, *consēquor*, etc. But *făcère* 'to effect' occurs in Cic. Brut. 88, in connection with the accusative and infinitive passive.

NOTE 3. *Făcio* with *ut* is also used as a periphrasis for the indicative; as, *Invitus quidē fēcī, ut L. Flāminium e sēnătus ejicērem*, for *invitus ejeci*. Cic.—*Fac*, 'suppose' or 'granting,' and *efficere*, 'to prove,' take the accusative with the infinitive; but the passive *efficitur*, 'it follows,' takes also the subjunctive.—*Făcère*, 'to introduce' or 'represent,' is joined with a present or perfect participle; as, *Lălium et Scipionem făcimus admirantes*. Cic. In the passive the accusative also with the infinitive is found, there being no present participle; as, *Isocrătem Plătō laudări făcit a Socrăte*. Cic.

2. Verbs signifying *to request*, *to demand*, *to admonish*, *to advise*, *to encourage*, *to command*, and the like, both when the subject remains the same and when it is changed, are followed by the subjunctive with *ut* or *ne*, and only rarely by the infinitive.

NOTE 4. (a.) Such are *răgo*, *oro*, *prăcor*, *păro*; *posco*, *postŭlo*, *flagito*; *mőneo*, *admőneo*, *commőneo*, *hortor*, *cōhortor*, *exhortor*, *sŭadeo*, *persuădeo*, *insistuo*, (I instruct), *impello*, *cōgo*, *mando*, *prăscribo*, *edico*, *décerno*, *légem* do, *censeo*, *perpello*, *exclito*, *incito*, *impéro*, etc.; as, *Te non hortor solum, sed etiam oro, ut ista mente in rempublicam incumbas*. Cic.

(b.) In the poets and later prose writers the infinitive more frequently follows those verbs without any difference of meaning. The poets even use the infinitive to express a purpose; as, *Prôteus pēcus egit allos visere montes*. Hor.

(c.) *Nuntio*, *scribo*, *mitto*, and even *dico*, are followed by the subjunctive, when they imply an injunction or intention that something should be done; as, *Hăc ut făcias, scribo*. Cic.

(d.) *Jubeo* and *veto* commonly take the accusative with the infinitive, but sometimes the subjunctive with or rarely without *ut*. Sometimes, with the infinitive, the person to whom the command is given is omitted, especially when it is either obvious from the nature of the command or indefinite; as, *Căstra mūnire jūbet*, scil. *militēs*. Cæs. *Lex recte făcère jūbet*, scil. *hōmīnes*. Cic. With the subjunctive the dative of the person sometimes follows *jubeo*; as, *Britānnico jussit, exurgēret*. Tac.—*Impéro* is sometimes followed by the accusative with the infinitive passive; and so also is *censeo*, I vote, or, I ordain. The latter is often construed with the participle in *dus* with *esse* expressed or understood; as, *Carthāginem dălendā censeo*.

(e.) *Moneo* and *admoneo*, 'I remind,' and *persuadeo*, 'I convince,' take the accusative with the infinitive.

3. (a.) In the *oratio obliqua*, the construction of the accusative with the infinitive, is exchanged for that of the subjunctive, to denote possibility, liberty, duty, etc.; as,

*Virginius unum Ap. Claudium legum expertem esse aiebat: respicerent tribunal homines castellum omnium scelerum.* Liv.

(b.) On the contrary, when the subjunctive has been used after a verb of requesting, commanding, etc., the construction often passes into that of the accusative with the infinitive; the verb of saying being considered as implied in the verb of requesting, etc.; as, *Orabat ne se ut parricidam liberam Aversarentur: sibi vitam filia sua caridrem fuisse, si....* Liv. Cf. § 270, R. 2, (b.)

4. (a.) Verbs which denote *willingness, unwillingness, permission, and necessity*, commonly take the infinitive, or the accusative with the infinitive, but sometimes the subjunctive.

NOTE 5. Such are *volo, nolo, malle, opto, permitto, pascior, sino, concedo, licet, praestitueo, oportet*, and *necesse est*. Cf. § 271, R. 4. *Volo ut* is used to express a strong emphasis. *Nolo* is not construed with the subjunctive.

(b.) An infinitive passive without a subject is sometimes used with *oportet*; as, *Non oportuit relictas, scil. esse ancillas.* Ter. *Ut ut erat, mansum idem oportuit, scil. esse.* Id. *Non putabant de tali viro suspicionibus oportere iudicari.* Nep.

(c.) Some other verbs which regularly take the accusative with the infinitive after them, are occasionally followed by the subjunctive.

5. *Quod*, 'that,' commonly with the indicative, introduces a substantive clause containing the explanation or ground of the predicate or of some other word in the principal clause.

REMARK. The subjunctive follows *quod* in those cases only in which the clause expresses the view or sentiment of some other person than the writer or speaker. Cf. § 266, 3.

*Quod* is used:—

(1.) After such expressions as *bene, male, prudenter facio; bene, male fit; evenit, accidit*, and the like; *praetereo, mitto*; and generally *adde, accedit*, etc.; as, *Bene facis, quod me adjuvas.*

(2.) To introduce the explanation of a noun, pronoun, or pronominal adverb in the principal clause; as, *Magnum beneficium est natura, quod necesse est mori.*

(3.) After verbs signifying an affection of the mind, and the outward expression of such feeling; and also after verbs of praising, censuring, accusing, and thanking.

NOTE 6. Such are *gaudeo, delector, gratum, or iacundum est mihi, angor, doleo, aegre, moleste, or graviter fero, succenseo, paenitet, miror, admirror, glorior, gratulor, gratias ago, quoror, indignor*, and others of similar meaning; as, *Scipio saepe querebatur, quod omnibus in rebus homines diligentiores essent, ut, etc.* Cic. *Gaudeo quod te interpellavi.* Id. *Quod speratis, quod vocem mittitis, quod formas hominum habetis, indignantur.* Liv. *Cato mirari se aiebat, quod non rideret harsus, harspicem quum videret.* Cic.

NOTE 7. After those verbs which express the feeling of joy, grief, etc.; as, *gaudeo, doleo, miror*, the accusative with the infinitive is more commonly found, but those which denote the outward expression of such feeling are more commonly construed with *quod*; but sometimes this distinction is reversed. *Gratular* is commonly joined with *quod*.

**NOTE 8.** A purely objective proposition is expressed by *quod* only when it depends upon *addo*, (generally in the imperative *adde*), or upon *fācio* joined with an adverb; as, *Adde quod pūbes tibi crescit omnes*. *Hōr.* *Adde huc quod mercem sine fācis gestat*. *Id.* *Fēcit hūmāniter Licinius, quod ad me vespēri vēnit*. *Cic.* In all other cases the infinitive is employed in purely objective propositions.

6. By the infinitive, with or without a subject-accusative, a proposition is expressed as a *thought*, so that it resembles an abstract noun; by *quod*, with the indicative or the subjunctive, it is represented simply as a *fact*. To the latter is frequently joined *hoc*, *id*, *illud*, *istud*, or *huc*, etc.; as, *Illud quodque nobis accēdit incommōdum*, *quod M. Jānius dñest*. *Cic.* *Huc accēdebat*, *quod*, etc. *Sall.* *Quod* generally refers to past time, and hence it is preferable to say, *Grātissimum mihi est, quod ad me tua mōnu scripsisti*; but with the infinitive, *Grātissimum mihi est te bēne vālēre*.

(a.) *Quod*, with the indicative, in the sense of *as to*, or *with regard to*, is used at the beginning of a sentence, especially in letters, in repeating an expression of a person for the purpose of answering it; as, *Quod autem me Agamemnonem amulārī pūtas, fallēris*. *Nep.* *Quod scribis te velle scire, quā sit reipūblicæ stātus: summa dissensio est*. *Cic.* Sentences thus introduced by *quod* are in no grammatical connection with the verb that follows them. See § 206, (14.)

(b.) *Quod* is used in explanatory or periphrastic propositions which refer to a preceding demonstrative pronoun, as *hoc*, *id*, etc., unless such pronoun be added pleonastically, in the nominative or accusative, to verbs governing the accusative with the infinitive; as, *Mihī quidem videntur hōmīnes hac re maxime bellis prōstāre, quod loqui possunt*. *Cic.*

**NOTE 9.** The construction of the infinitive resembles, in the following particulars, that of a noun in the singular number and neuter gender:—

(a.) Like a noun, it may have an adjective or pronoun agreeing with it; as *Tōtum hoc philōsōphāri displicet*. *Cic.* *Quum vivere ipsum turpe sit nobis*. *Id.* *Me hoc ipsum nihil āgēre dēlectat*. *Id.* *Meum intelligere nullā pecuniā vendo*. *Petr.* See § 205, R. 8.

(b.) It may be followed by a limiting genitive; as, *Cūjus non dimicāre fuit vincēre*. *Val. Max.*

(c.) It may be either the subject or object of a verb. See §§ 209, R. 3, (5), and 229, R. 6. It may also be used after neuter verbs, like an accusative, depending on a preposition understood; as, *Te accēpisse meas lītēras gaudeo*. *Ter.* See §§ 232, (2), and 273, 6.

(d.) It is also used like a predicate-nominative; as, *Vidēre est perspicēre aliquid*. *Cic.* See § 210.

(e.) It may, like a genitive, limit the signification of an adjective or noun. See § 270, R. 1.

(f.) It may, like an accusative, depend on a preposition; as, *Aristo et Pyrrho inter optime vālēre et gravissime sēgrōtāre, nihil prorsus dicēbant intēresse*. *Cic.* *Quod crimen dicis prāter āmasse meum?* *Ovid.* *Inveniet nūl sibi lēgātum, prāter plōrāre*. *Hōr.*

(g.) It is used also like an ablative; as, *Aucto rēgem in Siciliā tendēre*. *Sall.*

(h.) Sometimes, also, especially in the poets, it denotes a purpose, like a participle in *dus*, (see § 274, R. 7.); as, *Lōricam dōnat hābēre viro*. *Virg.*; or like a dative of the end, (see § 227.)

## PARTICIPLES.

§ 274. 1. Participles are followed by the same cases and constructions as their verbs; as,

*Quidam*, poeta nōmīnātus, A certain one, called a poet. Cic. *Cātūlōrum oblita leena*, The lioness forgetful of her whelps. Virg. *Fāventes rūbus Carthāgīniensium*, Favoring the interests of the Carthaginians. Liv. *Tendens ad sidēra palmas*. Virg. *Accūsātus rei cāpitālīs*. Cic. *Primā dicte mīhi summā dicende Cāmēnā*. Hor. *Omīna doctus*. Stat. *Cāsus abies visūra mārīnos*. Id. *Cīritūri arbore montes*. Ovid. *Parcendum est tēnēris*. Juv. *Utendum est aetate*. Ovid. *L. Brūtus arcens rēditu tyrannum, in praelio concidit*. Cic.

2. The present, perfect, and future active participles, denote respectively an action which is present, past, or future, in reference to the time of the verb with which they are connected; as,

*Stimul hoc dicens attollit se*. Virg. *Tum ad Thrāseam in hortis āgentem missus est*. Tac. *Turnum fugientem hac terra vidēbit*? Virg. *Qui missus ab Argis Iliā cōsēderat urbe*. Id. *Lāmia mūnere cōditātis perfunctus, pētū prātāram*. Cic. *Jussus cum fide pōnas luam*. Hor. *Jūvēnis mēdīos mōritūrus in hostes irruit*. Virg. *Pēritūrus injēcit sese in agmen*. Id. *Illa tibi ventūra bella expēdiēt*. Id.

NOTE. The participle expresses the action or state of the verb, and also marks its complete or incomplete state or condition. Cf. § 144, 1-3. Except, however, in deponent verbs, the Latin language has no active participle denoting a completed action, equivalent to the English 'having written,' nor any passive participle denoting a state of suffering still going on, equivalent to the English present participle 'being loved.'

REMARK 1. The present participle, particularly that of the verb *eo*, sometimes denotes that which is about to be done; as, *Interclūsit hiems, et terruit Auster euntes*, .... as they were on the point of going. Virg. *Nec nos via fallit euntes*. Id.

REM. 2. (a.) The present participle, also, sometimes denotes a purpose; as, *Ibant, orantes vēniam*, .... to sue for favor.... Virg. *Eurypylum scitāntem brāclia Phœbi mittimus*. Id. (b.) It is also used to express a state or condition, where, in English, a substantive is employed with a preposition; as, *ignōrans*, from ignorance; *mētuens*, from fear; *cōsūlātum pētens*, in his suit for the consulship; *omne mālum nascens facile opprimitur*,—in its origin.

REM. 3. (a.) The perfect participle passive, especially in the poets, often denotes the result of a past action, and thus supplies the place of a present participle passive; as, *Nōtus ēvōlat piceā tectus cāligne*, .... covered with pitchy darkness. Ovid. Cf. Virg. *Æn.* 1, 480; 2, 277; 4, 72, 589; 5, 118, 708; 6, 335; Georg. 1, 204. It is often to be translated by a present active participle; as, *Mānu pectus percussa dēcōrum, flāventesque abscissa cōmas*, i. e. *percūtiens, abscindens*. Virg. *Tunxē pectōra palmis*. Id. So, also, *sōlitus, ausus, fīsus*, and the perfect participles of deponent verbs; as, *Longum cantu sōlāta libōrem*. Id. *Vox auditur fractos sōnitus imitāta tūbārum*. Id. *Divitiācus Cēsārem complexus, obsecrāre caput*. Cæs. *Concrētos sanguine crīmes gērens*. Virg. *Tonsis in valibus*, i. e. *quæ tondentur*. Id.

(b.) The perfect participle of a preceding verb is often used in a succeeding clause, to express the completion of an action; as, *Exercitum fundit fugatque, fūsum persequitur*. Liv. This idiom frequently occurs in Ovid.

REM. 4. *Hābeo*, with perfect participles denoting knowledge and determination; as, *cognitum, perspectum, perceptum, comprēhensum, explorātum, stātūtum, constitūtum, deliberātum, persuāsum mīhi hābeo*, etc., forms a periphrasis, like the passive verb in English, and equivalent to *cognōvi, perspexi, percēpi*, etc., instead of the verb of the participle; as, *Clōdii ārimum perspectum or cognitum hābeo*; for *perspexi*, etc., I perceive, know. *Persuāsum mīhi hābeo* and *persuāsisimū hābeo* are used only in the neuter gender and with an accusative with the infinitive in the sense of *mīhi persuāsi* or *persuāsum mīhi est*. When *hābeo* with any other participle than those above indicated is used, it expresses more than the ordinary perfect active; as, *Quod me hortāris ut absolvam*; *hābeo absolūtā suāve ēpos ad Cēsārem*; i. e. I have it ready. Cic. *Do, reddo, cāro*,



*stueo, possideo, and missum facio*, are sometimes so construed with participles; as, *Missam iram faciet*, for *mittet*. Ter. *Hostes victos dāre*, for *vincere*. Sall.

REM. 5. (a.) The passive participles may supply the place of a verbal noun in *to* or *us*, the perfect being employed to represent an action as completed, and the future when it is conceived as still incomplete; as, *Ante Rōmam conditam*, Before the building of Rome. Cic. *Consilia urbis delēndæ*, Plans for the destruction of the city. Id. See § 275, II. With the limitations about to be made in regard to the nominative, this construction is used in all the cases, and even when they are governed by the prepositions, *ad, ante, ob, post, propter*; *ab* and *ex*; as, *Has lītrās rēctitatē magnum luctum fecerunt*, The reading of this letter. Liv. *Tarentum captum*, The taking of Tarentum. *Ob receptum Hannibule*, On account of the reception of Hannibal. *Sibi quisque cæsi regis expēlebat decus*, The glory of killing, or, of having killed the king. *Propter Africam dōmītam*. Eutrop. *Ante Epāmnōndam nātum*. Nep. *Post Christum nātum*. *Ab conditā urbe ad liberatam*. Liv. The oblique cases only of participles in *dus* are used in this manner as the nominative denotes necessity, (see Rem. 8,) and even the perfect participle is not thus used in the nominative by Cicero.

(b.) The neuter of the perfect passive participle without a noun is used by Livy, as the subject of a proposition; as, *Tentatum per dictatōrem, ut ambo patrici consules crearentur, rem ad interregnum perduxit*: i. e. the attempt, or the fact of the attempt being made by the dictator. Compare a similar use of this participle in the ablative, § 257, R. 9, (1.) (c.)

(c.) The English 'without' with a verbal substantive; as, 'without writing, without having waited,' etc., is expressed in Latin by means of a negative noun, adjective or particle connected with a participle; as, *Cæsar exercitum nunquam per insidiōsa itinēra duxit, nisi perspiculātus locōrum situs*, without having examined the localities. This form occurs often with the ablative absolute; as, *Athēnienses non expectātō auxilio adversus ingentem Persarum exercitum in prælium egrēdiuntur*, without waiting for assistance. So, *nullā præstitūtā diē*, Without fixing any time. Cic. *Miserum est nihil perficientem angī*. Id.

REM. 6. (a.) The participle in *rus*, especially with verbs of motion, often denotes intention or purpose; as, *Ad Jovem Ammonem pergit consulturus de origine suā*, He goes to Jupiter Ammon, to consult respecting his origin. Just.

(b.) It is also used where in English a clause connected by *since, when, although*, etc., is employed; as, *Plāra locūtūros dāre nos jussit*, When or although we intended to say more. *Herculem Germāni, itūri in prælium cānunt*. Tac. Hence it is sometimes used, though not by Cicero, to express the inference from a hypothetical proposition; as, *Egrēditur castris Rōmānus, vallum invāsūrus, ni cōpia pugnæ fieret*. And with the repetition of the preceding verb; as, *Dedit mihi quantum maxime potuit, daturus amplius, si potuisset*, i. e. *ac dedisset amplius*. Plin. Ep.

REM. 7. (a.) The participle in *dus*, also, denotes a purpose passively, when joined with verbs signifying to *give, to deliver, to agree for, to have, to receive, to undertake*, etc. Such are *do, trādo, tribuo, attribuo, mando, mitto, permitto, concedo*, *redimo, condico, loco, habeo, accipio, suscipio, relinquo, curo, depono, rogo*; as, *Testāmentum tibi tradit lēgendum*, He delivers his will to you to read. Hor. *Attribuit nos trucidandos Cēthēgo*. Cic. *Quod utendum accēperis, reddito*. Id. *Cōnon muros dirūtōs a Lysandro rēficiendos curavit*,—ordered them to be restored. Nep.

(b.) But the same meaning may be expressed actively by means of *ad* and the gerund; as, *Cæsar oppidum ad diripiendum militibus concessit*.—The poets sometimes use the infinitive active for the same purpose; as, *Tristitiam et metus trādam prōtervis in mārē Caspiū portāre ventis*. Hor. In prose such use of the infinitive is of exceedingly rare occurrence; as, *Bibere dāre*. Cic.

REM. 8. (a.) The participle in *dus*, when agreeing with the subject of a sentence, has the signification of *necessity* or *propriety*; sometimes, though rarely, except in later writers, that of *possibility*; as,

*Is vērērandus a nobis et cōlendus est*, He should be worshipped and honored by us. Cic. *Dēlenda est Carthāgo*, Carthage must be destroyed. Cato. *Hæc spēranda fuērunt*. Virg. So with *est* used impersonally; as, *Utrum pāce nobis an bello esset utēdum*. Cic.

(b.) Sometimes, also, when not agreeing with the subject of a sentence, it has this signification; as, *Facta narrābas dissimulanda tibi*, You were relating facts which you should have concealed. Ovid. *A. L. Brūto principe hūjus maxime conservandi gēnēris et nōminis*. Cic.

REM. 9. The participle in *dus*, in its oblique cases, supplies the place of a present participle of the passive voice, to denote a continued or incomplete action; as, *Occūpātus sum in lītēris scribendis*, in writing letters; literally, in letters which are being written. See § 275, II.—So, also, in the poets both in the nominative and oblique cases; as, *Triginta magnos volvendis mensibus orbes impērio explēbit*. Virg. *Volvenda dies*. Id. Cf. *Volventibus annis*. Id.

REM. 10. After participles in *dus*, the person by whom a thing must be done, is put in the dative, but in a few passages even of Cicero it is found in the ablative with *ab*. See § 225, III.

REM. 11. The neuter of the participle in *dus*, joined with a tense of *esse* in the periphrastic conjugation (see § 184, 3,) retains the signification of *necessity*; as, *Audendum est*, We must venture. In early writers and sometimes also in the poets, an accusative of the object is joined with this neuter, if the verb is transitive; as, *Nunc pācem erandum, nunc—arma repōnendum, et bellum extiale cōvendum*. Sil. But in classical Latin such accusative is generally changed to the nominative, and the participle is made to agree with it in gender and number. Thus, instead of *virtutem laudandum est*, we usually find *virtus laudanda est*. The accusative in this connection is used by Cicero in only two passages. *Utendum est* with the ablative occurs more than once in Cicero; as, *Quum suo cuique iudicio sit utendum*.

REM. 12. In classical prose the participle in *dus* never has the signification of *possibility*, except when joined with *vix*; as, *Vix optandum nobis vidēbūtur*. Cic. *Vix erat crēdendum*, i. e. *vix crēdi pōtērat*. Later writers use it in this sense with negative particles, and at a later period it was used with still more frequency in the sense of *possibility* as well as in that of *necessity*.

3. (a.) A participle is often employed, instead of a verb, in a conditional, explanatory, adversative, relative, or other dependent clause; as,

*Cūrio, ad fōcum sēdenti* (as he was sitting) *magnum auri pondus Samnites attulērunt*. Cic. *Tridui viam progressi, rursus rēvertērunt*; for, *quum progressi essent*. Cæs. *Diōngysius tyrannus, Syracūsīs expulsus, Cōrinthi puēros docēbat*. Cic. *Diōngysius, cultros mētuens tonsōrios, candenti carbōne sibi adurēbat capillum*. Id. *Risus interdum ita repēnte erumpit, ut eum cūpiētis tēnere nēqueāmus*. Id. *Cicōnis albitrās congregantur in lōco certo*. Plin.

NOTE 1. If the participle refers to a noun not contained in the leading proposition, it is put with that noun in the ablative absolute. See § 257, R. 3.

NOTE 2. (a.) The English clauses most frequently expressed in Latin by means of participles are such as are connected by relatives or by *as*, *when*, *after*, *although*, *since*, *because*, etc.; as, *Nemo observat lānam nisi labōrantem*. Sen. *Ut dōctus, sic dōctus, se non videns, alia cernit*,—though not perceiving itself. Cic. *Servilius Aulā Spūrium Mālium, regnum appetentem, intērēmit*,—because he was aspiring to the sovereignty. Cic.—(b.) When a participle is connected with a relative or interrogative it can only be translated by a circumlocution; as, *Non sunt ea bōna dicēda, quibus abundantem licet esse miseritimum*,—which one may possess in abundance, and still be very miserable. Cic. *Senātus absurdum esse dicēbat, ignorāre rēgem, quid spērans aut pētens vērērit*,—with what hope or request he had come. Liv.

(b.) When two verbs are in English connected by *and*, and the actions denoted by them are regarded as simultaneous, one of them may be expressed in Latin by the present participle; as, He sits and holds his lute, *Ille (Arion) sedens citharam tēnet*. Ovid. *Simul hoc dicens attollit in ægrum se fēmur*. Virg. i. e. *hoc dicit et attollit*. But if one of the actions precede the other, the perfect participle must be used; as, Cæsar attacked and defeated the enemy, *Cæsar hostes aggressus fugāvit*. Submersas obrue puppes, i. e. *Submerge et obrue*. Virg.—When the English clause would be connected by *although*, the participle is often followed by *tāmen*. Later writers in such case join the particles *quamquam*, *quavis*, *etiam* and *vel* with the participle itself; as, *Cæsarem milites, quavis recūsantem ultro in Africam sunt secuti*. Suet.; and these are sometimes retained in the ablative absolute.—It is only in late Latin that participles are sometimes used in describing persons as possessing certain attributes, e. g. *adstantes, audientes*, for *ii qui adstant, audiunt*, i. e. the bystanders, hearers.

(c.) A participle is used with verbs signifying to *represent* and *perceive*, especially to *see* and *hear*, when the object is described or perceived in a particular state; as, *Apelles pinxit Alexandrum Magnum fulmen tēnentem*. Plin. In English the infinitive is often joined with verbs of seeing and hearing; as, *Audivi te cānentem*, I heard you sing. *Audiri te cānere*, would be, I heard that you sung. *Vidēmus Pōlyphēmum vastā se mōle mōventem*. Virg.

NOTE 3. In many cases, for want of a perfect participle active, and a present participle passive, this construction cannot be used. Thus, *quum amāvisset* cannot be exchanged for a participle corresponding with the English *having loved*. As the perfect participles of deponent verbs, however, have an active signification, they admit of the participial construction. The want of a perfect active participle may also be supplied by the perfect passive participle in the ablative absolute. See § 267, R. 5.

## GERUNDS AND GERUNDIVES.

**\$ 275.** I. Gerunds are governed like nouns, and are followed by the same cases as their verbs; as,

*Mētus pārendi sibi*, Fear of obeying him. Sall. *Parcendo victis*, By sparing the vanquished. Liv. *Effrōr studiō patres vestros videndi*, I am transported with a desire of seeing your fathers. Cic. *Petendi consūlātum grātiā*. Sall. *Vēni ad rēctipiendū pecūnias*. Varr.

REMARK 1. The gerund is the same in form as the oblique cases of the neuter singular of participles in *us*, but it has the meaning of the active voice. It is sometimes translated by the present participle with a preposition, and sometimes by a present infinitive active; as, *Consilium Lacedæmonem occupandi*, A design of occupying, or to occupy, Lacedæmon. Liv.

REM. 2. The gerund is sometimes, though rarely, used in a passive sense; as, *Spes restituendi nulla erat*,—of being restored. Nep. *Athenas erudiendi grātiā missus*,—for the purpose of being instructed. Just. *Ante dōmandum*. Virg. *Ades ad impērandum*. Cic.

REM. 3. The gerund is in its nature a verbal noun, having only the genitive, dative, ablative, and, after a preposition, the accusative. In its signification it corresponds with the English present participle when used as a verbal noun. Hence, in the oblique cases, it supplies the place of a declinable present infinitive active; but in the accusative there is this difference between the infinitive used as an accusative and the gerund, that the infinitive has simply the power of an abstract noun, whereas the gerund expresses a real action; as, *Multum interest inter dāre et accipere*. Sen. *Non solum ad discendū propensū sumus, sed etiam ad docendū*. Cic.

II. When the *object* of an active verb is to be expressed, the participle in *dus* is commonly used in preference to the gerund; the object taking the case in which the gerund, if used, would have been put, and the participle agreeing with it.

Thus, to express 'the design of writing a letter,' which, with the aid of the gerund, would be represented in Latin by *Consilium scribendi epistolam*, the participle in *dus* is commonly substituted for the gerund; and since, in this example, the gerund, (*scribendi*) is in the genitive, the rule requires that, in substituting the participle for the gerund, the object of the gerund (*epistolam*) should also be put in the genitive, and that the participle (*scribendus*) should agree with it in gender, number, and case. Hence with the participle the expression is, *Consilium scribendæ epistolæ*. Between the two forms of construction there is no difference of signification. So, *Consilia urbis delendæ* (Cic.), for *urbem delendâ*, Plans for destroying the city. *Rêpârândarum classium causâ* (Suet.), for *rêpârândi classes*. *Perpëtiendo lăbôri idôneus*. Colum. *Ad defendendam Rômam ab oppugnandâ Căpuâ dūces Rômānos abstrăhère*. Liv.

REMARK 1. The same construction is used with the future passive participles of *utor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *pōtor*, and rarely of *mëdeor*, as these verbs were originally followed by the accusative; as, *Ætas ad hæc ütendâ idônea*. Ter. *Justitiæ fruendæ causâ*. Cic. *In münere fungendo*. Id. *Hostes in spem pōtundörum caströrum vënerant*. Cæs. *Aquæ salubritätë mēdendisq; corpöribus nob̄iles*. Vell.

REM. 2. When a participle is thus used for a gerund, it is called a *gerundive*, and is usually translated like a gerund. The gerundive cannot be substituted for the gerund, where ambiguity would arise from the gender not being distinguishable. It should therefore not be used when the object of the gerund is a neuter pronoun or adjective; as, *Aliquid faciendâ rätio* (Cic.), not *älicujus*. *Artem et vëra et falsa djūdicandi* (Id.), not *vörörum djūdicandörum*: because it would not be known whether *älicujus* and *vörörum* were masculine or neuter. It is to be remarked, also, that the change of the gerund into the gerundive is less frequent in some writers than in others.

III. Examples of the construction of gerunds, in each of their cases, have been already given, among other nouns, under the heads *Genitive*, *Dative*, *Accusative*, and *Ab-lative*. The following remarks specify in what connections they are used: and when it is said that the gerundive is governed in any of the cases like the gerund, it will of course be understood of the noun which is limited by a gerundive.

REMARK 1. The genitive of gerunds and gerundives may follow either nouns or relative adjectives; as,

*Amor habendi*. Cic. *Patriam spes videndi*. Virg. *Nam habet nātūra, ut äliörum omnium rerum, sic vivendi mödum*. Cic. *Barbära consuetüdo hömörum immölandörum*. Id. *Postremo Cätlinä dissimüländi causâ aut sui expurgandi, in senātum vënit*. Sall. *Inta sunt consilia urbis delendæ, civium trüclandörum, nöminis Römāni exstinguendi*. Id. *Vënändi stüdiösi*. Cic. *Certus eundi*. Virg. *Insuëtus nävigandi*. Cæs. *Përitus civitätis rêgendæ*. Nep.

(1.) The nouns after which these genitives most frequently occur are *amor*, *ars*, *causa*, *consilium*, *consuetüdo*, *cöpia*, *cupiditas*, *desiderium*, *difficultas*, *finis*, *fäcultas*, *forma*, *grätia*, *illëcebra*, *libido*, *locus*, *licentia*, *mödus*, *mätëria*, *mos*, *occasio*, *örium*, *pötestas*, *rätio*, *spätium*, *spes*, *stüdiüm*, *tempus*, *usus*, *vénia*, *vis*, *völüntas*..

NOTE 1. With these and other substantives the infinitive also may be used, when with a tense of *sum* they form a periphrasis for a verb which is followed by the infinitive, or supply the place of an adjective of which the infinitive is the subject; as, *Quibus omnia hönesta atque inhönesta vendère mos erat*, With whom it was a custom, or, who were accustomed. Sall. *Tempus est läbre*, It is time, i. e. *tempestivum est*, it is proper to go.

(2.) The relative adjectives, which most frequently take after them these genitives, are such as denote *desire, knowledge, remembrance*, and their contraries; as, *avidus, cupidus, studiosus, peritus, imperitus, insuetus, certus, conscius, ignarus, rudis*, etc. See § 213, R. 1, (3.)

NOTE 2. With the relative adjectives the infinitive is also joined poetically.

(3.) Instead of an accusative after the gerund, or a genitive plural with a gerundive, a noun or pronoun in the genitive plural is sometimes joined with the gerund; as, *Exemplorum eligendi potestas*, instead of *exempla eligendi*, or, *exemplorum eligendorum*. Cic. *Earum rerum infitiandi ratio*. Id. *Fucultas agrorum conlönandi*. Cic. *Nominandi istorum erit copia*. Plaut.

(4.) The pronoun *tui* and also the plurals *vestri* and *sui*, even when feminine, are joined with the masculine or neuter form of the gerundive in *di*; as, *Quoniam tui videndi est copia*. Plaut. *Non vereor, ne quis hoc me vestri adhortandi causam magnifice loqui existimet*. Liv. *In castra venerunt sui purgandi causa*.—With the demonstrative pronouns, *ejus, hujus, illius*, the participle usually agrees, but in two passages of Terence *ejus*, though referring to a woman, has the participle in *di*, not in *dæ*; as, *Ego ejus videndi cupidus recta consequor*. Ter. *Tui* in the first example and *ejus* in the last are feminine.

(5.) By a Greek idiom the gerund and gerundive, after the verb *sum*, are sometimes found in the genitive denoting a *tendency* or *purpose*, with no noun or adjective on which they can depend; as, *Régium imperium initio conservandæ libertatis fuerat*. Sall. Sometimes *esse* in some form is to be supplied; as, *Quæ postquam gloriosa modo, neque belli patrandi cognovit*, scil. *esse*. Id. *Causæ* or *gratiæ* may sometimes be supplied. In some other cases, also, the word on which the gerund in *di* depends is not expressed, and the gerund seems to be used instead of the infinitive; as, *Maneat provinciâlibus potentiam suam iam modo ostentandi*, scil. *fucultas*. Tac. *Quum habërem in animo navigandi*, scil. *propositum*. Cic.

REM. 2. The dative of gerunds and gerundives is used after adjectives which govern a dative (§ 222), especially after those which signify *usefulness* or *fitness*; and also after certain verbs and phrases, to denote a *purpose*; as,

*Charta empiritica est nullis scribendo*. Plin. *Cæpessendæ reipublicæ habilis*. Tac. *Ut nec triumviri accipiundo, nec scribæ rëfërendo sufficerent*. Liv. *Locum oppido condendo capere*. Id. *Non fuit consilium agrum colendo aut venando intentum civitatem dëgere*. Sall. *Tiberius quasi firmandæ vâlëtitudini in Campaniam concessit*. Tac. *Quum solvendo ære aliëno respública non esset*. Liv. *Quum solvendo civitates non essent*,—were insolvent. Cic.

(1.) The verbs and phrases upon which this dative most frequently depends are, *Studere, intentum esse, tempus impendere, tempus consumere* or *insumere, operam dare, sufficere, satis esse, deesse, esse*, signifying *to serve for, to be adequate to*, and, in later writers, on verbs of motion.—The dative of the gerund after *sum* is usually supposed to depend on *idoneus* understood; but see § 227, R. 3.

(2.) The dative of the gerundive, denoting a purpose, is also used after names of office; as, *Dëcemviri lëgibus scribendis*, i. e. the ten commissioners for drawing up a code of laws. Liv. *So, Comitia creandis dëcemviris*. Id. *Triumvros agro dando creat*. Id.

(3.) A purpose is more commonly expressed by *ad* and the accusative of the gerund, or by a clause with *ut*, than by the dative; as, *Pëcus ad vescendum hominibus apta*. Cic.

REM. 3. The accusative of gerunds and gerundives follows the prepositions *ad*, *to*, or *inter*, during or amid, and sometimes *ante*, *circa*, or *ob*; as,

*Ad poenitendum prospérat, qui cito iudicat.* Pub. Syr. *Inter bibendum,* While drinking. Just. *Ad tolerandos facilius labores.* Quint. *Ad castra facienda.* Cic. *Ob absolvendum.* Id.

NOTE. The construction of the gerundive instead of the gerund almost invariably occurs here when the object of the gerund is to be expressed.

REM. 4. The ablative of gerunds and gerundives follows the prepositions *a*, (*ab*), *de*, *e*, (*ex*), or *in*; or it is used without a preposition, as the ablative of cause, manner, or means; as,

*Aristotélem non deterruit a scribendo.* Cic. *Ex assentando.* Ter. *Non videor a defendendis hominibus discédere.* Cic. *Crescit eundo.* Virg. *Rem querunt mercaturis faciendis.* Cic. *Orationem Latinam legendis nostris efficias plenior.* Id.

NOTE 1. This ablative also occurs, though rarely, after *pro* and *cum*; as, *Pro vapulando.* Plaut. *Cum loquendo.* Quint.

NOTE 2. Generally with the ablative of the means, and always with the ablative after a preposition, the gerund, when its object is to be expressed, is changed to the gerundive. In a few passages the ablative of the gerundive is differently construed; as, *Nullum officium referendâ gratiâ magis necessariû est,* instead of *relatiône grâtiæ.* § 256. Cic. *Nec jam possidendis publicis agris contentos esse.* § 244. Liv. *Is finis fuit ulciscendâ Germanici mortis,*—in avenging the death of Germanicus. Tac.; where the ablative seems to imply time. § 258.

## SUPINES.

§ 276. Supines, like gerunds, are verbal nouns, having no other cases except the accusative and ablative singular. In certain connections they supply the place of the present infinitive; the supine in *um* having an active and the supine in *a* a passive signification. As in the case of gerunds, we are to regard their construction both as verbs and as nouns. As verbs we are to notice their government, as nouns, their dependence.

I. Supines in *um* are followed by the same cases as their verbs; as,

*Non Grâtiis servitum mâtribus ibo,* I shall not go to serve Grecian matrons. Virg. *Te id admonitum venio.* Plaut.

II. Supines in *um* follow verbs of motion, and serve to denote the purpose of the motion; as,

*Cubitum discesstus.* Cic. *Ire dejectum mōnimenta régis.* Hor. *Légati venerunt questum injurias, et res repetitum.* Liv. *Quum spectatum ludos iret.* Nep. So after participles; as, *Patriam defensum revocatus.* Nep. *Spectatum admissi.* Hor.

NOTE. The construction of the supine in *um*, considered as a noun, is analogous to that of names of places in answer to the question 'whither?' (§ 237), the notion of purpose arising from its verbal character.

REMARK 1. Supines in *um* sometimes follow verbs which do not express motion; as, *Do filiam nuptum.* Ter. *Vos ultum injurias hortor.* Sall.

REM. 2. The supine in *um* with *eo* literally signifies 'I go to do a thing,' and hence 'I intend,' or, 'am going to.' Instances of this use are found in Plautus and Terence and in the prose writers later than Cicero; as, *Mea Glycérîum, quid agis? cur te is perditum?* Why are you going to destroy yourself? Plaut. *Bônorum præmia ereptum eunt.* Sall. With *eo* the supine in *um* often forms a periphrasis equivalent to the same mood and tense of the verb from which the

supine is formed; as, *Ne dōnos omnes perditum eant* (Sall.), for *perdant*. *Ereptum eunt* (Id.), for *eripiunt*. *Ultum iri* (Tac.), for *ultus est*. *Ultum ire injūrias festinat*, i. e. *ulcisci*. Sall.

REM. 3. The supine in *um* most frequently occurs with the infinitive *iri*, with which it forms the future infinitive passive; as, *Brūtum visum iri a me puto*. Cic. In this construction the accusative properly depends upon the supine, and *iri* is used impersonally; 'I suppose that I am going to see Brutus.' § 184, 2, (a.) Its notion of futurity is derived from the proper signification of the active voice, as *perditum iri*, to go to destroy, the idea of intending passing easily into that of futurity.

REM. 4. But to express a purpose Latin writers in general prefer using a gerund or gerundive in the accusative with *ad* or in the genitive with *causā* or *gratiā*, a subjunctive clause with *ut* or *qui*, a present or future active participle, and sometimes poetically an infinitive. See § 275, R. 1, 2: §§ 262, 264, 274, and 271.

III. The supine in *u* is used to limit the meaning of adjectives signifying *wonderful*, *agreeable*, *easy* or *difficult*, *worthy* or *unworthy*, *honorable* or *base*, and a few others; as,

*Mirabile dictu!* Wonderful to tell, or to be told! Virg. *Jucundum cognitu atque auditu*, Pleasant to be known and heard. Cic. *Res factu facilis*, A thing easy to be done. Ter. *Facilia inventu*. Gell. *Incredibile mēmōratu*. Sall. *Turpia dictu*. Cic. *Optimum factu*. Id.

NOTE. The principal supines in *u* in common use are *auditu*, *cognitu*, *dictu*, *factu*, *inventu*, *mēmōratu* and *nātu*, which occurs in the expressions, *grandis*, *māior*, *mīnor*, *maximus*, and *minimus nātu*. In *magno nātu*, of an advanced age, and *maximo nātu Julius*, the eldest son, *nātu* is the ablative of a verbal substantive, since neither gerunds nor supines are joined with adjectives.

REMARK 1. The principal adjectives, after which the supine in *u* occurs, are *affabilis*, *arduus*, *asper*, *bōnus*, *deformis*, *dignus*, *indignus*, *dulcis*, *durus*, *facilis*, *difficilis*, *facundus*, *grāvis*, *hōnestus*, *horrendus*, *incrēdibilis*, *jucundus*, *injucundus*,  *magnus*, *mēmōrabilis*, *mollis*, *prœcōis*, *pulcher*, *rārus*, *turpis*, and *ūtilis*.

REM. 2. The supine in *u* is used also after the nouns *fas*, *nēfas*, and *opus*; as, *Hoc fas est dictu*. Cic. *Nēfas dictu*. Ovid. *Dictu opus est*. Ter.—In the following examples it follows a verb: *Pudet dictu*. Tac. Agr. 32. *Dictu justitenda sunt*. Val. Max. 9, 13, 2.

REM. 3. As the supine in *u* is commonly translated by a passive form, it is placed under the passive voice; but, in many cases, it may with equal or greater propriety be translated actively. As a noun, its construction may be referred to the ablative of Imitation. § 250.

REM. 4. (a.) Instead of the supine in *u*, an infinitive, a gerund or gerundive with *ad*, or a verbal noun in the ablative, and sometimes in the dative or accusative, may be used; as, *Ardua imitatu, ceterum cognosci utilia*. Val. Max. *Illud autem facile ad credendum est*. Cic. *Opus proscriptiōe dignum*. Plin. *Aqua potui jucunda*. Id. *Facilior ad intellectum atque imitātiōnem*. Quint. With *opus est* the perfect passive participle is often used instead of the supine in *u*; as, *Opus est mātūrato*, There is need of haste. Cf. § 243, R. 1.

(b.) The construction with *ad* and the gerund; as, *res facilis ad intelligendum*; or with *sum* and the infinitive active; as, *facile est invenire*, is used by the best writers after *facilis*, *difficilis*, and *jucundus*. The most common construction of *dignus* is with *qui* and the subjunctive, (§ 264, 9), but the poets and later prose writers have joined it with the infinitive passive.

## ADVERBS.

§ 277. I. Adverbs modify or limit the meaning of verbs, adjectives, and sometimes of other adverbs; as,

*Bene mōnes*. You advise well. Ter. *Fortissime urgentes*. Most vigorously pressing on. Plin. *Māle narrando*. Ter. *Longe distimilis*. Cic. *Valde bene*. Id.

REMARK 1. Adverbs may also modify nouns, when they are used as adjectives or participles, and accordingly denote a quality, or when a participle is understood. They are also joined to adjective pronouns, when their adjective-character predominates; and sometimes limit the meaning of a preposition; as, *Pōpulus lāte rex*, for *lāte regnans*,—ruling far and wide. Virg. *Nihil admōdum*. Nothing at all. Cic. *Hōmo plāne noster*,—entirely ours, that is, devoted to us. Id. *Hōmērus plāne orātor*. Id. *Admōdum puella*. Liv. *Lāte tyrannus*. Hor. *Grāvibus sūperne ictibus conflictābantur*, i. e. *sūperne accidentibus*. Tac. *Multū circa civitātum*, i. e. neighboring cities. Liv.

REM. 2. (a.) Most of the modifications made by adverbs may also be made by means of the various cases of nouns and adjectives, and many modifications may be made by these, for expressing which no adverbs are in use. In general those limitations which are most common can be expressed by adverbs; as, *sāpiēter* for *cum sāpiētiā*; *hic* for *in hoc loco*; *bene* for *in bōno mōdo*; *nunc* for *hoc tempore*.—(b.) The following are examples of other parts of speech used adverbially, viz. *Nihil*, 'in no way'; *nonnihil*, 'in some measure'; *quidquam*, 'at all'; *aliquid*, 'somewhat'; *quid?* 'why?'

REM. 3. A negative adverb, modifying another negative word, destroys the negation; as,

*Non pārere nōluit*, He was not unwilling to obey. Nep. *Haud ignāra māli*. Not ignorant of evil. Virg. *Haud nihil est*. It is something. Ter. *Nec hoc ille non vidit*. And this he clearly perceived. Cic. So, *nonnulli*, some; *nonnumquam*, sometimes. *Non*, before a negative word, commonly heightens the affirmative sense, while it softens the expression; as, *Hōmo non indoctus*, i. e. *hōmo sāne doctus*. *Non semel*, i. e. *sæpius*; *non ignōro*, *non nescio*, *non sum nescius*, I know very well. *Qui mortem in malis pōnit*, *non pōtest eam non timēre*,—must needs fear it. Cic.

REM. 4. When the subject and predicate of a proposition are both modified by negative words, and also when the predicate contains two negatives, the proposition is affirmative; as,

*Nemo non videt*, Every one sees. Cic. *Nēque hæc non evēnērunt*, And this indeed took place. So, if both the antecedent and the predicate of a relative clause are negative, the proposition is affirmative; as, *Nemo est, qui nesciat*, Every body knows. Cic.

REM. 5. (a.) But in the case of *non* followed by *ne—quidem*, the two negatives do not destroy each other; as, *Non fūgio ne hos quidem mōres*: and when the negative leading proposition has subordinate subdivisions with *nēque—nēque*, *nēve—nēve*, or *non—non*, these negative particles are equivalent to *aut—aut*; as, *Non me carminibus vincet, nec Orpheus, nec Linus*. Virg. *Nēmīnem, non re, non verbo, non vultu denique offendit*. Cic. *Nullius rei nēque præs, nēque manceps factus est*. Nep.

(b.) In a few passages, however, two negatives in Latin, as in Greek, strengthen the negation, and this exception appears to have been derived from the language of common life; as, *Jūra te non nōctūrā hōmīni nēmīni*. Plant.

(c.) *Nemo*, *nullus*, *nihil*, and *numquam* have a different sense according as the *non* is placed before or after them; as, *Non nemo*, some one; *nemo non*, every one; *non nulli*, some; *nullus non*, every; *non nihil*, something; *nihil non*, every thing; *non numquam*, sometimes; *numquam non*, at all times. So, *nusquam non*, every where, but instead of *nonnusquam*, *alicubi* is used.

REM. 6. (a.) *Non* is sometimes omitted after *non mōdo* or *non solum*, when followed, in a subsequent clause, by *ne quidem*, if both clauses have the same verb, and if the verb is contained in the second clause; as,



*Mihi non mōdo irasci, sed ne dōlère quidem impūne licet*, which is equivalent to *Mihi non mōdo non irasci, sed ne dōlère quidem impūne licet*, or *Mihi non mōdo irasci, sed dōlère quidem impūne non licet*, Not only am I not permitted to be angry, but not even to grieve with impunity. Cic. *Quum sēnātus non solum jūvare rempublicam, sed ne lāgère quidem liceret*. Id.

(b.) *Non* is also rarely omitted after *non mōdo* when followed by *sed* or *vērūm* with *etiam*, and also after *vix*; as, *Qui non mōdo ea fūtūra timet, vērūm etiam fert, sustinetque præsēntia*, Who not only does not fear.... Cic. *Hæc gēnēra virtūtum non solum in mōribus nostris, sed vix jam in libris repēriuntur*, These virtues are not only not found in life, but scarcely in books. Id.

REM. 7. *Fācile*, in the sense of *undoubtedly, clearly*, is joined to superlatives, and words of similar import; as, *Vir ūnus tōtius Græciæ fācile doctissimus*. Cic. *Homo rēgiōnis illius virtūte fācile princeps*. Id.

REM. 8. Sentences are often united by means of an adverb which is repeated before each of the connected clauses; as, *mōdo—mōdo*, and *nunc—nunc*, (sometimes—sometimes); as, *Mōdo hoc, mōdo illud dicit; mōdo huc, mōdo illuc vōlat*. Instead of the second *mōdo* other particles of time are sometimes used; as, *āliquando, nonnumquam, interdum, sæpius, tum* or *deinde*.—*Partim—partim*, 'partly—partly,' is sometimes used with a genitive or the preposition *ex*, in the sense of *alii—alii*, as a nominative in all the genders; as, *Quum partim e nobis ita timidi sunt, ut, etc., partim ita repūblicā aversi, ut, etc.*—*Simul—simul*, 'as well—as,' like *nunc—nunc*, is not found in Cicero.—*Quā—quā* is equivalent to *et—et*.—*Tum—tum* is used sometimes like *mōdo—mōdo*, sometimes like *partim—partim*; as *Erumpunt sæpe vitia amicōrum tum in ipsos amicos, tum in aliēnos*. Cic. *Hæc (bēnēficia) tum in ūniversam rempublicam, tum in singulos cives confēruntur*. Id.

REM. 9. *Quum—tum* is equivalent to *et—et*, except in assigning a greater importance to the second part: hence it must be translated by 'both—and especially,' 'not only—but also,' or 'but more particularly.' Sometimes additional weight is given to the second part by means of *vērō, certē, etiam, quōque, præcipue, imprimis* or *maxime*. This use of *quum—tum* seems to have had its origin in the use of *quum* with the subjunctive and often with the indicative in the protasis, followed by *tum* in the apodosis. When *quum* followed by *tum* serves to express the opposition between single words which have the same verb, it is to be regarded as a complete adverb; as, *Fortūna quum in reliquis rēbus, tum præcipue in bello plurimum pōtest*. Sometimes the verb stands in the first part of the sentence; as, *Quum omnis arrōgāntia odiosa est, tum illa ingēniū atque eloquentiæ multo molestissima*. *Tum* is sometimes repeated in the second part of the sentence; as, *Quem pater mōriens quum tūloribus et propinquis, tum legibus, tum æquitati magistrātum, tum iudiciis vestris commendatum pūlavit*. Cic. Sometimes the gradation is, *quum—tum—tum vērō*.

REM. 10. *Non mōdo—sed etiam* (or *non solum, or non tantum—vērūm etiam*) generally expresses the transition from less important to more important things, like the English 'not only—but (also)'. The transition from greater to smaller things is expressed by *non mōdo—sed*, without the *etiam*, which we render in English by 'I will not say—but only,' and in Latin, too, we may say *non dicam or non dico—sed*; as, *Quid est enim minus non dico brātoris, sed hōminis*.

REM. 11. *Tam—quam* expresses a comparison in degree; as, *Nemo tam multa scripsit, quam multa sunt nostra*. With superlatives they are rendered into English by 'the—the' and comparatives; as, *Vetēnōsus quam plurimum bibit, tam maxime sitit*, The more he drinks, the more he thirsts. Cato. *Quam quinquæ pæstine ficit, tam maxime titus est*. Sall.—*Tam—quam quod maxime* signifies, 'as much as possible.'—*Non tam—quam* signifies, 'not so much—as,' or 'less—than'; as, *Prōvincia non tam grātiōsa et illustris, quam nēgōtiōsa ac molesta*. Cic.

REM. 12. *Non minus—quam* and *non māgis—quam* are equivalent to *æque—ac*, 'as much as,' but in *non māgis—quam* the greater weight is attached to the affirmative clause beginning with *quam*; as, *Alexander non dūcis māgis quam*

*militis munia exsequēbatur*, Alexander performed as much the service of a soldier as that of a commander. In this connection *plus* frequently supplies the place of *magna*.

(a.) *Sic* and *ita* are demonstrative adverbs corresponding to the relative *ut*. The restrictive meaning of *ita* (see § 191, R. 5.), is sometimes made more emphatic by the addition of *tamen*. *Tantus* is used in a like restrictive sense; as, *Prædii tantum est, ut ne murus quidem cingi possit*, i. e. 'only so much.' Cæs.

(b.) *Ut—ita* or *sic* places sentences on an equality. They may sometimes be translated 'although—still,' or 'indeed—but.'—The adverb *ut*, 'as,' sometimes takes the signification of the conjunction *quod*, 'because'; as, *Atque ille, ut semper fuit apertissimus, non se purgavit*. Cic.

REM. 13. In an enumeration, *primum*, *deinde*, *tum*, *dēnique* are commonly preferred to the numerals, *primum*, *secundo*, (for *secundum* is not often used), *tertium*, *quartum*, etc., unless the strict succession of the numbers is required. Sometimes *tum* is used once or twice instead of *deinde*, or the series is extended by *accedit*, *huc adde*, etc. Sometimes *dēnique* is followed by *postremo* to form the conclusion of a series, but often *dēnique* without the other adverb concludes a series, and is then equivalent to 'in short' or 'in fine.' See Cic. Cat. 1, 5.

REM. 14. *Minus* is often used for *non*; as, *Nonnumquam ea, quæ prædicta sunt, minus eveniunt*. Cic.—So, *si minus—at*, 'if not—yet;' and *sin minus*, 'but if not,' without a verb, after a preceding *si*; but with *si non* the verb is repeated. —The English 'how little' is in Latin *quam non*; and 'so little,' *ita non* or *adeo non*; as, *adeo non cūrabat, quid homines de se loquerentur*.

REM. 15. *Nunc* always expresses the time actually present, or the time to which a narrator transfers himself for the purpose of making his description livelier. Thus in speaking of the present time we may say, *Nunc primum somnia me eludunt* or *elūsērunt*; but in a narrative we must say, *Somnia tunc primum se dicebat elūsisse*. Compare the use of *hic* and *ille*. See § 207, R. 23, (c.)

REM. 16. The conjunction *dum*, 'while,' when added to negatives, becomes an adverb, signifying 'yet'; as, *nondum*, 'not yet'; *nequm*, 'and not yet'; *nul-ludum*, 'no one yet'; *nihilum*, 'nothing yet.' Hence *vixdum* signifies 'scarcely yet'; as, *Vixdum epistolam tuam lēgēram, quum ad me Curtius vēnit*. Cic.—So, also, the conjunction *nisi*, by omitting its verb or uniting it with the leading verb, acquires, after negatives and negative questions, the sense of the adverb 'except,' which is generally expressed by *præterquam* or the preposition *præter*, and must be so expressed when no negative precedes. But the expression 'except that' may be rendered either by *nisi quod* or *præterquam quod*.—After *nihil aliud* we may use either *nisi* or *quam*, *nisi* referring to *nihil* and *quam* to *aliud*. Hence *nihil aliud nisi* signifies 'nothing further,' or 'nothing more,' and *nihil aliud quam*, 'nothing else,' or 'no other thing but this.'

REM. 17. *Ut*, 'as,' in interposed clauses, such as *ut opinor*, *ut puto*, *ut censeo*, *ut credo*, is frequently omitted. *Crēdo*, used in this manner often takes an ironical sense.

## PREPOSITIONS.

II. 1. See respecting the construction of prepositions with the accusative, § 235; and with the ablative, § 241. See, also, for the different meanings of prepositions, § 195, and for their arrangement, § 279, 10.

2. Two prepositions must not be joined in Latin, as they sometimes are in English, with the same noun; as, to speak *for* and *against* a law; or, I have learned this *with*, and, to some extent, *from* him. These sentences may be thus expressed in Latin; *pro lege et contra legem dicere; hæc cum eo, partim etiam ab eo dicti*. Those dissyllabic prepositions only, which are sometimes used as adverbs, may follow another, without being joined with a case; as, *Quod aut secundum naturam esset, aut contra*. Cic. *Cis Padum ultraque*. Liv Cæsar reverses the order, *Intra extraque munitiōnes*. B. Civ. 3, 72.

3. When nouns mutually dependent upon a preposition are in apposition, when they constitute an enumeration without a connective, and when connected by copulative, disjunctive, adversative, or comparative conjunctions, the preposition is not repeated, unless such nouns are to be distinguished from each other, or are emphatic; as,

*Quid dicam de thesauro omnium rerum, memoria? Hoc apparet in bestiis, volucris, nantibus, agrestibus, ceteris, ut se ipsae diligant. Cic. Sapissime inter me et Scipionem de amicitia disserebatur. Id. Quid faceres si in aliquam domum villamve venisses? Id. Nihil per iram aut cupiditatem actum est. Id. Themistocles non minus in rebus gerendis promptus quam excogitandis erat. Nep.*

4. The monosyllabic prepositions *ab*, *ad*, *de*, *ex*, and *in* are often used before each of two nouns connected by *et*, etc., especially if the qualities denoted by such nouns are to be considered separately. If the nouns are separated by *et—et*, *nec—nec*, etc., the prepositions must be repeated; as, *Ut eorum et in bellis et in civilibus officiis vigeat industria. Cic.—Inter* is frequently repeated by Cicero after *interesse*, and other writers repeat it after other verbs also; as, *Quid intersit inter populum—civem, et inter constantem, severum et gravem. Cic. Certatum inter Ap. Claudium maxime ferunt et inter P. Decium. Liv.*

5. (a.) In poetry a preposition is occasionally omitted with the first of two nouns, and put with the second only; as, *Quas nemora, aut quos agor in specus*, (Hor.) for, in *quas nemora aut in quos specus agor*. So, Hor. Ep. 2, 1, 25.—(b.) An ellipsis of a preposition with the relative pronoun sometimes occurs, together with that of the verb belonging to the preceding demonstrative; as, *In eadem opinione fui, quam reliqui omnes*, (Cic.), properly *in quam reliqui omnes fuerunt*.

## CONJUNCTIONS.

§ 278. Copulative, disjunctive, and other coordinate conjunctions, connect similar constructions.

NOTE 1. Clauses are similarly constructed, which are mutually independent, whose subjects and verbs are in the same case and mood, and which have either no dependence or a similar dependence on another clause.

NOTE 2. (a.) Words have a similar construction, when they stand in the same relation to some other word or words in the sentence. Hence,

(b.) Conjunctions connect the same cases of nouns and pronouns, dependent, if the cases are oblique, upon the same government; the same number, case, and gender of adjectives, belonging to the same noun; the same mood of verbs, either independent, or alike dependent; adverbs qualifying the same verbs, adjectives, etc.; and prepositions on which depends the same noun or pronoun; as, *Concidunt venti, fugiuntque nubes*, The winds subside, and the clouds disperse. Hor. *Locum, quem et non coquit sol, et tangit ros*. Varr. *Ludi decem per dies, facti sunt, neque res ulla pretermissa est*. Cic. *Vides, ut alia stet nive candidum Soracte, nec jam sustineant onus silvas laborantes, geluque flumina constitlerint acuto*. Hor. *Intelligitis et animum ei praeo fuisse, nec consilium defuisse*. Cic. *Generi animantium omni est a natura tributum, ut se tueatur, declinetque ea, quas nocitura videantur*. Id. *Aut nemo, aut Cato sapiens fuit*. Id. *Pulvis et umbra sumus*. Hor. *Si tu et Tullia velitis, ego et Cicero velimus*. Cic. *Aggere jacto turribusque constitutis*. Cæs. *Clarus et honoratus vir, An illustris et honorabile man*. Id. *Cæsar Remos cohortatus, liberaliterque oratione prosecutus*. Cæs. *Pater tuus, quem colui et dilexi*. Cic. *Belgae spectant in septentrionem et orientem solem*. Cæs. *Navibus junctis, ratibusque compluribus factis*. Id. *Læge, vel tabellas redde*. Plaut. *Allobroges trans Rhodanum vicos possessionesque habebant*. Cæs. *Quum triumphum egeris, censorque fueris, et obieris legatus*. Id. *Quum ad oppidum accessisset, castrisque ibi poneret*. Cæs.

*Ades ánimo, et omitte timorem.* Cic. *Ea videre ac perspicere potestis.* Id. *Graviter et copiose dixisse dicitur.* Id. *Cum fratre an sine.* Id. Cf. § 277, II. 2. *Qui carmina cordi, númerosque intendere nervis.* Virg. *Nec census, nec clarum nomen duorum, sed probitas magnos ingeniumque facit.* Ovid. *Philosophi negant quemquam virum bonum esse, nisi sapientem.* Cic. *Gloria virtutem tamquam umbra sequitur.* Id.

REMARK 1. Copulative conjunctions may connect either single words and phrases or entire clauses; the other conjunctions, whether coördinate or subordinate, connect clauses only.

REM. 2. Words thus connected are sometimes in different cases, though in the same construction; as, *Mea et reipublicae interest.* Cic. (See § 219.) *Sive in Romae, sive in Epiro.* Id. (See §§ 221 and 254. But see also § 221, Note.) *In Metu descendat iudicis aures, et patris et nostras.* Hor. See § 211, R. 3. In like manner, *Hannibal non aliter vinci potuit, quam mora.*

REM. 3. As the subjunctive is often used for the imperative, they may be connected by coördinate conjunctions; as, *Disce nec invidias.* Pers.

REM. 4. Where the purpose of the writer requires it, coördinate conjunctions sometimes connect independent propositions, whose verbs are in different moods; as, *Stuporem hominis, vel dicam pecudis, videte.* Cic. *Nec satis scio, nec, si sciam, dicere ausim.* Liv.

REM. 5. *Et* is used after *multis* followed by another adjective, where in English 'and' is usually omitted; as, *Multa et magnus arbores.* Many large trees. In such cases *et* supplies the place of *et is*, introducing a more accurate description. See § 207, R. 26, (c.)

REM. 6. The conjunction is often omitted; as, (a.) When two single words, as comprehending the whole idea, are opposed to each other, as, *velim, nolim*, whether I would or not; *maxima minima*, the greatest as well as the least; *prima postrema*, from the first to the last; *dignos indignos adire; tre redire*, to go to and fro. *Edificiis omnibus publicis privatis, sacris profanis sic pereperit.* Cic. *Nam gloriam, honorem, imperium bonus ignavus aequo sibi exoptant.* Sall. C. 11.

(b.) *Et* is very frequently omitted between the names of two colleagues; as, *Consules declarati sunt Cn. Pompeius M. Crassus. P. Lentulo L. Triario, questoribus urbanis.* Cic. Sometimes, also, when the two persons are not colleagues. It is also occasionally omitted between two words in the oratorical style; as, *Adherent amici, propinquus.* Id.; also with verbs; as, *Adsunt, queruntur Siculi.* Id. In good prose, if three or more substantives are joined, it is usual either wholly to omit the conjunction or to insert it between each. The following may serve as an example of both cases: *Qui non modo Curiis, Catonibus, Pompeiis, antiquis illis, sed his recentibus, Mariis et Didis et Celsis commemorandis jacebant.* This is also the common practice with adjectives and verbs, and hence when *et* has not previously occurred in an enumeration of persons or things, we should not conclude the enumeration with *et alii, et reliqui, et cetera*, etc., but should make use of the adjectives alone, *alii, reliqui, cetera*, etc. But though *et, ac* and *atque* are not used alone in the third or fourth place, yet the enclitic *que* frequently occurs in this position; as, *Precor ut ea res vobis pacem, tranquillitatem, otium, concordiamque afferat.* Cic. *Et* may be supplied also when two protases introduced by *si* are joined together; where we say 'if—and if,' or 'if—and.' See an example in Cic. Off. 8, 9.

(c.) An ellipsis of *ut* is supposed when *ne* precedes and *et, atque, or que* is used to continue the sentence, those copulative conjunctions in such case obtaining the meaning of the adversative *sed*; as, *Monere capit Porum, ne ultima experiri perseveraret, dederetque se victori.* Curt.

REM. 7. Copulative conjunctions are often used, before each of two or more connected words or clauses, in order to mark the connection more forcibly; as, *Et pecunia persuadet, et gratia, et auctoritas dicentis, et dignitas, et postremo aspectus.* Quint. *Hoc est turpe, nec tamen tutum.* Cic. *Necque nata est, et aeterna est.* Id. *Et tibi et mihi voluptati fore.* Id. Before clauses the disjunctive con-

junctions are used in a similar manner; as, *Res ipsa aut inevitabil aut dehorribil-tur*. Id. So, also, *nunc...nunc, simul...simul, partim...partim, quā...quā, tum...tum, quum...tum*, are used before successive clauses.

REM. 8. To connect different names of the same person or thing, *sive* or *seu*, rather than *aut* or *vel*, is employed; as, *Mars sive Māvors*. Cf. § 198, 2, (c.)

REM. 9. Instead of *et* and *ut* with the negatives *nemo, nihil, nullus*, and *numquam, nēque* (or *nec*), and *ne* are used with the corresponding affirmative words *quisquam, ullus, unquam*, and *usquam*. But 'in order that no one' is rendered in Latin by *ne quis* and not by *ne quisquam*, see § 207, R. 31, (a.); as, *Hōra quidem cēdunt, et dies, et menses, et anni: nec prætēritum tempus umquam rēvertitur*. Cic. *Sēnātus deorēvit, dārent opēram consules, ne quid respūblica detri-menti cōpēret*. Cæs.

REM. 10. The conjunctions *igitur, vērū, vērūtamēn, sed*, and *sed tāmen*, indicate a return to the construction of the leading clause, when it has been disturbed by the insertion of another clause. These conjunctions, in such connection, are usually rendered by 'I say,' and sometimes in Latin *inquam* is so used. *Nam* also is occasionally employed in this way and very rarely *itāque*.

REM. 11. *Vēro* and *autem* are frequently omitted in adversative clauses, especially in short ones; as, *Vincere scit Hannibal, victōriā atī nescit*. Liv. This omission often occurs in describing a progress from smaller to greater things, as in Cic. Cat. 1, 1. And it is to be remarked that *non* in the second member of such adversative sentences is used without *et* or *vēro*; as, *aliēna vitia videt, sua non videt*. But in unreal suppositions or ironical sentences, where the second member contains the truth, *et non* or *ac non* must be used, where we may supply 'rather'; see § 198, 1, (c.); as, *Quāsi nunc id agātur,—ac non hoc quērā-tur*. Cic.

## INTERJECTIONS.

Respecting the construction of interjections with the nominative, see § 209; R. 13:—with the dative, § 228, 3:—with the accusative, § 238, 2:—and with the vocative, § 240.

## ARRANGEMENT.

### I. OF THE WORDS OF A PROPOSITION.

§ 279. 1. In arranging the parts of a proposition in English, after *connectives*, are placed, first, the *subject* and the words which modify or limit it; next, the *verb* and its modifiers; then, the *object* of the verb; and finally, *prepositions* and the words depending upon them. This is called the *logical* or *natural* order.

2. (a.) In Latin, either of the four principal parts of a sentence may be placed first, and there is great freedom in the arrangement of the rest, but with this general restriction in prose, that *words which are necessary for the complete expression of a thought should not be separated by the intervention of other words*. In ordinary discourse, especially in historical writing, the following general rule for the arrangement of the parts of a sentence is for the most part observed.

(b.) In a Latin sentence, after *connectives*, are placed, first, the *subject* and its modifiers; then, the *oblique cases* and other words which depend upon or modify the verb; and last of all, the *verb*.

(c.) Hence a Latin sentence regularly begins with the subject and ends with the principal verb of its predicate; as, *Dumnōrix grātiā et largitiōne apud Sequēnos plurimum pōtērat*. Cæs. But the verb is often not placed at the end of a sentence, especially if the sentence is long, or if two many verbs would be thus brought together at the end. In the familiar style, also, the verb is often placed earlier in the sentence, and in explanatory clauses it is sometimes placed at the very beginning of the proposition, in which case a conjunction is generally added.

(d.) It is also to be remarked, as a further modification of the general rule of arrangement, that, in sentences containing the expression of emotion, the word whose emphasis characterizes it as especially affecting the feelings, or as forming a contrast, is placed at the beginning; as, *Cito ārescit lacrima, prosertim in aliēnis mōlis*, Quickly dries the tear, especially when shed for others' woes. Cic. *Sua vitia insipientes et suam culpam in senectūtem confertunt*. Id.

(e.) If there be no *emotive* or *pathetic* word requiring prominence, the place at the end of the proposition is reserved for the *significant* word, that is, the word which is to be most strongly impressed upon the understanding or memory; as, *Gallia est omnis divisa in partes tres*. Cæs. *Quod ante id tempus accidērat* numquam. Id. *Quod aliud iter hāberent* nullum. Id. *Quæ virtus ex prōcedendo est appellāta* prudentia. Cic.

3. (a.) Connectives generally stand at the beginning of the clause which they introduce, and with the following this is their only position; viz. *et, ētēnim, ac, at, atque, atqui, nēque* or *nec, aut, vel, sive, sin, sed, nam, vērūm*, and the relatives *quāre, quōcirca*, and *quomobrem*.

(b.) Most other connectives generally stand in the first place, but when a particular word is peculiarly emphatic, this word with all that belongs to it stands first, and the conjunction follows it. *U*, even when there is no particular emphasis, is commonly placed after *vix, pene*, and *prope*, and also after the negatives *nullus, nemo, nihil*, and the word *tantum*. In Cicero, *itāque* stands first and *igitur* is commonly placed after the first, and sometimes after several words.

(c.) *Autem, enim*, and *vērō* (but), are placed after the first word of the clause, or after the second, when the first two belong together, or when one of them is the auxiliary verb *sum*; as, *Ille enim revocātus fēstītere cepit*. Cæs. *Ego vērō vellem, affuisses*. Cic. *Incrēdibile est enim, quā sit*, etc. Id. They rarely occur after several words; as, *Cur non de integro autem dātum*. Id. The enclitics *que, ne, ve*, are usually subjoined to the first word in a clause; but when a monosyllabic preposition stands at the beginning, they are often attached to its case; as, *Rōmam Cito dēmigrāvit*, in fōrque *esse cepit*; and this is always the case with *a, ad* and *ob*. So, also, for the sake of euphony, *Apud quosque*. Cic.

(d.) *Quidem* and *quōque*, when belonging to single words, are always subjoined to the emphatic word in a clause; as, *Verbo ille reus erat, re quidem vērō Oppianicus*. Cic. *Me scīlicet maxime, sed proxime illum quōque fēfellissem*. Id. In negative sentences, *ne* precedes, and *quidem* follows, the emphatic word; as, *Ne ad Attinē quidem prōvōcābo*. Cic.—*Quidem* is sometimes attracted from the word to which it properly belongs to a neighboring pronoun; as, *Tibi que persuāde, esse te quidem mihi carissimum, sed multo fōre cariorē, si, etc.*, instead of, *te carissimum quidem mihi esse*.—Prepositions and conjunctions belonging to the word on which the emphasis rests are placed with it between *ne* and *quidem*; as, *Ne in fānis quidem*. Cic. *Ne si dubitētur quidem*. Id. *Ne quum in Sicilia quidem fuit*. Id.; and even *Ne cūjus rei arguērētur quidem*.—So, also, in Cicero, *non nisi*, 'only,' are separated; and the negative may even be contained in a verb.

(e.) The preceding rules respecting the position of connectives are often violated by the poets, who place even the prepositive conjunctions after one or more words of a proposition; as, *Et tu, pōtes nam, etc.*. Hor. *Vivos et rēdēret*

*ungues*. Id. They even separate *et* from the word belonging to it; as, *Audire et videre pios errare per lucos*. Id. So, *Auctius atque diu melius fecere*. Id. And they sometimes append *que* and *ve* neither to the first word, nor to their proper words in other connections; as, *Messallam terrâ dum sequiturque mari*, instead of *terrâ marique*. Tib. In such arbitrary positions, however, these conjunctions are almost invariably joined to verbs only.

4. When a word is repeated in the same clause, so that one is opposed to, or distinguished from, the other, they must stand together; as, *Homines hominibus maxime utiles esse possunt*. Cic. *Equites alii alio dilapsi sunt*. Liv. *Légique virum vir*. Virg. *Manus manum lavat*. Petr. So, also, the personal and possessive pronouns; as, *Sequere quo tua te natura ducit*. Suum se negotium agere dicunt.

5. Words used antithetically are also placed near each other; as, *Dum tacent, clamant*. Cic. *Fragile corpus animus sempiternus movet*. Id.

6. *Inquam* and often *ait*, introducing a quotation, follow one or more of the words quoted; as, '*Non nosti quid pater*,' inquit, '*Chrysippus dicat*.' Hor. '*Quid*,' ait, '*tua crimina prodixi*?' Ovid. When a nominative is added to *inquit*, it usually follows this verb; as, *Mihi vero*, inquit Cotta, *videtur*. Cic.—*Dicit* and *dixit* are used like *inquit* only by the poets.

7. (a.) The adjective may be placed before or after its noun according as one or the other is emphatic, the more emphatic word being placed before the other. When any thing is dependent on the adjective, it usually follows its noun. When a noun is limited by another noun, as well as by an adjective, the adjective usually precedes both; as, *Ulla officii præcepta*. Cic. *Tuum erga dignitatem meam studium*. Id.

(b.) Demonstratives, and the adjectives *primus*, *medius*, etc., when signifying the first part, the middle part, etc., (see § 205, R. 17), usually precede their nouns; as, *Ea res*. Cæs. *His ipsis verbis*. Cic. *Media nox*. Cæs. *Reliqua Aegyptus*. Cic.

8. Monosyllables are usually prefixed to longer words with which they are connected; as, *Vir clarissimus*. Cic. *Di immortales*. *Res innumerabiles*. *Vis tempestatis*. Cæs.

9. (a.) When nouns are put in apposition, the one which explains or defines the other is generally put last, unless it is to be made emphatic; as, *Opes irritamenta malorum*. Ovid. Hence names of honors or dignities, and every thing of the nature of a title, are commonly placed after the proper name, as explanatory additions. Thus, especially, the names of changeable Roman dignities; as, *Cicerō consul*; *C. Curiōni tribūno plebis*; but also permanent appellations; as, *Ennius poëta*; *Plato philosophus*; *Diomysius tyrannus*; and such epithets as *vir honestissimus*; *homo doctissimus*. But the hereditary title *rex* is frequently placed before the name; as, *rex Deiotarus*; and so the title *Imperator* after it became permanent.

(b.) In the arrangement of the Roman names of persons, the *prænomen* stands first, next the *nomen* or name of the *gens*, third the *cognomen* or name of the *familia*, and last the *agnomen*; as, *Publius Cornelius Scipio Africanus*. The *prænomen* is usually denoted by a letter. In the imperial times the *nomen* is often either omitted or follows as something subordinate.

10. (a.) Oblique cases precede the words on which they depend, but they follow prepositions; as,

*Pöpuli Römāni laus est*. Cic. *Laudis avidi, pecuniæ liberales*. Sall. *Cunctis esto benignus, nulli blandus, paucis familiaris, omnibus æquus*. Sen. *Momentum ære perennius*. Hor. *Hanc tibi dono do*. Ter.—*Ad meridiem spectans*. Cic. *Extra periculum*. Id.

(b.) Genitives depending upon neuter adjectives are commonly placed last; as, *Incerta fortunæ*. Liv. *Nec tibi plus cordis, sed minus oris inest*. Ovid.

**REMARK.** This rule, so far especially as it relates to genitives, is in a great degree arbitrary, as the position of the governed and governing words depends on the idea to be expressed; thus, *mors patris tui*, contrasts the death with the preceding life; but, *fratris tui mors* distinguishes this case of death from others. Hence we say, *animi môtus, animi morbus, corporis partes, terræ môtus*.—An objective genitive usually follows the word on which it depends; as, *unâ significatione* literarum, by means of a single notice by letters.—When several genitives are dependent on one noun, the subjective genitive commonly precedes and the objective genitive may either precede or follow the governing noun.—The genitive dependent on *causâ* or *gratiâ*, 'on account of,' regularly precedes these ablatives; as, *gloriæ causâ mortem obire; emolumentum suæ gratiâ*.

(c.) When a noun which is governed by a preposition, is modified by other words which precede it, the preposition usually stands before the words by which the noun is modified; as, *A primâ luce ad sextam hōram*. Liv. *Ad animi mei lætitiā*. Cic. *Ad bene beatęque vivendum*. Id.

(d.) Sometimes, however, the preposition comes between its noun and an adjective or a genitive, by which the noun is modified; as, *Nullâ in re*. Cic. *Iustis de causis*. Id. *Suos inter æquales*. Id. *Hanc ob causam*. Id. *Magno cum metu*. Id. *Quâ in urbe*. Id. *Eâ in re*. Id. *Ætatis suæ cum primis*. Nep.—So, also, a conjunction may follow the preposition; as, *Post vērō Sullæ victoriā*.

(e.) *Per*, in adjurations, is often separated from its case by other words; as, *Per ego te deos oro*. Ter.—In the poets, other prepositions are sometimes separated in the same manner; as, *Vulnēra, quæ circum plurima mûros accēpit patrios*. Virg.

(f.) *Tenus* and *versus*, and sometimes other prepositions, (cf. § 241, R. 1.) follow their cases, especially when joined with *qui* or *hic*. This occurs most frequently with the prepositions *ante*, *contra*, *inter*, and *propter*; more rarely with *circa*, *circum*, *pēnes*, *ultra* and *adversus*; and with still less frequency with *post*, *per*, *ad*, and *de*; as, *quam ante, quem contra, quos inter, quem propter, quos ad, quem ultra, hunc post, quam circa*.—The preceding prepositions, and more rarely others also, sometimes, especially in the poets and later prose writers, follow nouns and personal pronouns. In such case, if the noun be modified by an adjective or a genitive, the preposition sometimes stands between them, and sometimes follows both; as, *Postes sub ipsos*. Virg. *Ripam apud Euphrātis*. Tac. *Māria omnia circum*. Virg. And more rarely other words intervene; as, *His accensa super*. Id. *Vitis nemo sine nascitur*. Hor.

11. Infinitives precede the verbs on which they depend; as,

*Jugurtha, ubi eos Africâ dēcessisse rātus est, nēque propter loci naturā Cirtam armis expugnāre possit, mania circumdat*. Sall. *Servire māgis quam impārare parāti estis*. Id.

12. A word which has the same relation to several words, either precedes or follows them all; as, *Vir grāvis et sapiens*. Cic. *Clārus et hōnorātus vir*. Id. *In scriptōribus legēdis et imitandis*, or *In legēdis imitandisque scriptōribus*; but not *In legēdis scriptōribus et imitandis*. *Quum respondēre nēque vellet nēque posset*. *Hābentur et dicuntur tyranni*. *Amicitiam nec usu nec ratiōne hābent cognitam*.

13. Relatives are commonly placed after their antecedents, and as near to them as possible; as,

*Qui sim, ex eo, quem ad te misi, cognosces*. Sall. *Litēras ad te misi, per quas grātias tibi ēgi*. Cic.

14. *Quisque* is generally placed after *se*, *suus*, *qui*, ordinals and superlatives; as, *Suos quisque debet tuērī*. Cic. *Satis superque est sibi suarum cuique rerum cura*. Id. *Sēvēritas animadversionis infimo cuique grātissima*. Id. *Maxime dicet, quod est cuiusque maxime suum*. Id. *Quisque* very rarely begins a proposition.



15. (a.) An adverb is usually placed immediately before the word which it qualifies; but if the same word is modified by the oblique case of a noun, the latter commonly follows the adverb; as, *Māle parta māle dilābuntur*. Cic. *Nihil tam aspērum nēque tam difficile esse, quod non cupidissime factūri essent*. Sall.—*Impērium facile iis artibus retinētur, quibus initio partum est*. Id. *Sed maxime adolescentium familiāritates appetēbat*. Id. *Non tam in bellis et in praeliis, quam in promissis et fide firmiorem*. Cic.—(b.) When *non* belongs to a single word of the proposition, it always stands immediately before it; as, *non te reprehendo, sed fortunam*. But if it belongs to the proposition generally, it stands before the verb, and particularly before the finite verb, if an infinitive depends on it; as, *Cur tantopere te angas, intelligere sane non possum*. Instead of *non dico, nego* is generally used; as, *negavit eum adesse*.—The negatives *non, nēque, nemo, nullus*, when joined to general negative pronouns or adverbs, such as *quisquam, ullus, umquam*, always precede them though not always immediately; as, *nemini quidquam negavit; non memini me umquam te vidisse*. § 207, R. 31.

NOTE 1. In some phrases, custom has established a certain order, which must be observed and imitated; as, *Civis Rōmānus, pōpulus Rōmānus, jus civile, as aliēnum, terrā matrīque, Pontifex maximus, māgister equitum, tribūnus militum, tribūni militum consilārī potestate, Jūpiter optimus maximus, via Appia; ne quid respūblica detrīmenti capiāt*. Cic. The ablatives *opinione, spe, iusto, solito*, (see § 256, R. 9), generally precede the comparative.

NOTE 2. Exceptions to the foregoing principles are very numerous. These may arise (a) from emphasis; (b) from poetic license; and (c) from regard to the harmony of the sentence. The following general rule sometimes modifies nearly all the preceding.

16. The emphatic word is placed before the word or words connected with it which are not emphatic.

NOTE 3. The last place is often an emphatic one, except for the verb. When the verb is neither first nor last in a proposition the word before it is emphatic. An adjective, when emphatic, commonly precedes its substantive; when not emphatic, it commonly follows it. But with the demonstrative pronouns the rule is reversed.

NOTE 4. The principal poetical variation in the arrangement of words consists in the separation of the adjective from its noun, and in putting together words from different parts of a proposition.

17. A sentence should not close like a hexameter verse, with a dactyl and spondee; as, *Esse videtur*; nor, in general, with a monosyllable.

18. *Hiatus* should be avoided; that is, a word beginning with a vowel should not follow a word ending with a vowel.

19. A concurrence of long words or long measures,—of short words or short measures,—of words beginning alike or ending alike,—should be avoided.

## II. OF THE ARRANGEMENT OF CLAUSES.

§ 280. A compound sentence, whose clauses are united as protasis and apodosis, or in which the leading clause is divided by the insertion of one or more subordinate clauses, is called a *period*.

1. (a.) In the former kind of period the protasis must precede the apodosis; as, *Quum Pausānias semianimis de templo elātus esset, confestim animam efflavit*. When Pausanias had been carried out of the temple but just alive, he immediately expired. In a period of the latter kind the verb of the principal proposition is placed at the end, and the subordinate clauses between the parts of the leading clause; as, *Pausānias, quum semianimis de templo elātus esset, confestim animam efflavit*, Pausanias, when he had been carried out of the temple but just alive, immediately expired. Nep.

(b.) A sentence, such as *Scipio exercitum in Africam trājēcit, ut Hannibālem ex Italiā deduceret*, is not periodic in its structure, but it becomes so when we

say, *Scipio, ut Hannibālem ex Itāliā dedūceret, exercitum in Africā trājēcit*. Periods in which the subordinate clause precedes with two conjunctions; as, *Quum igitur Rōmā vēnisset, statim imp̄rātōrem adiit*, are made still more strictly periodic by placing first the conjunction which belongs to the whole, and then inserting the subordinate proposition; as, *Itaque, quum Rōmā vēnisset, statim imp̄rātōrem adiit*.

2. (a.) If the verbs of the leading and dependent clauses have the same subject, or the same noun depending on them, they are commonly formed into a period; as, *Antigōnus, quum adversus Sēleucum Lysimāchumque dimicāret, in prēlio occisus est*. *Nep. Quem, ut barbāri incendium effūgisse eminus viderunt, tālis missis interfēcērunt*. *Id.*

(b.) So, also, when the noun which depends on the verb of the leading clause is the subject of the dependent clause; as, *L. Manlio, quum dictātor fuisset, M. Pompōnius, tribūnus plēbis, diem dixit*. *Cic.*

3. When obscurity would arise from separating the leading subject and verb by dependent words or clauses, they are often placed together at the beginning or end of the sentence; as, *Lātæ (sunt) deinde lēges, non solum quas regnī suspiciōne consētem absolvērent, sed quas adeo in contrārium verterent, ut poplārem etiā facerent*. *Liv.* The position of the leading verb is also often otherwise varied, from regard to emphasis, to avoid monotony, or to prevent its meeting with the verb of the last dependent clause; but clauses, when so arranged, do not constitute a period.

4. When one clause is interrupted by the introduction of another, the latter should be finished before the first is resumed.

5. Clauses expressing a cause, a condition, a time, or a comparison, usually precede the clauses to which they relate.

6. A short clause usually stands before, rather than after, a long one.

### III. OF THE CONNECTION OF CLAUSES.

(1.) In connecting propositions, relatives, whether pronouns, pronominal adjectives, or adverbs, are often employed in order to avoid the too frequent recurrence of *et, autem*, and certain other conjunctions. Every relative may be used for this purpose instead of its corresponding demonstrative with *et*; as, *qui for et is, quālis for et tālis, quo for et eo*, etc. They are used also before those conjunctions which are joined with *et* or *autem* at the beginning of a proposition; as, *si, nisi, ut, quum*, etc. (see § 206, (14.)); as, *quod quum audivissem, quod si fecissem, quod quamvis non ignorassem, for et quum hoc, et si hoc, et quamvis hoc; or quum autem hoc*, etc.; and, often, also, where in English no conjunction is used, and even before other relatives; as, *quod qui facit, eum ego impium iudico*, i. e. *et qui hoc facit, or, qui autem hoc facit*. In the ablative with comparatives the relative is often used as a connective; as, *Cato, quo nemo tum erat prudētiōr*, i. e. *Cato, who was more prudent than all others*.

(2.) In propositions consisting of two members, the relative pronoun is joined grammatically either to the apodosis or to the protasis; with the former in, *Qui, quum ex eo quærerētur, cur tam diu vellet esse in vitā, Nihil habeo, inquit, quod accūsē senectutem*. *Cic. de Sen. 6.* But is more frequent with the protasis or secondary clause; as, *A quo quum quærerētur, quid maxime expēdiret, respondit*. *Cic. Off. 2, 25.* When it is thus joined with the protasis, the nominative of the demonstrative is supplied with the apodosis from another case of the relative in the protasis, as, in the preceding passage, from the ablative. But for the sake of emphasis the demonstrative may be expressed, and frequently, also, for the sake of clearness; as, *Qui mos quum a postērioribus non esset rētentus, Arcēsilus eum revocāvit*. *Cic. de Fin. 2, 1.* The accusative is sometimes to be supplied; as, *Qui (Hērāclitus) quōniam intelligi nōluit, omittimus*. *Cic. N. D. 3, 14.* When the demonstrative precedes, and is followed by a proposition consisting of two members, the relative is attached to the prota-

sis, which is placed first, and not to the leading clause or apodosis; as, *Ex suāsi Pompeio, quibus ille si pāuisset, Cæsar tantas spes, quantas nunc habet, non habēret.* Cic. Fam. 6, 6. *Nōli aduersus eos me velle dūcere, cum quibus ne contra te arma ferrem, Iuliam reliqui.* Nep. Att. 4.

(3.) Where in English we use 'however' with the relative; as, He promised me many things, which, however, he did not perform, the Latins made use of the demonstrative with *sed* or *verum*, or the relative alone implying the aduersative conjunction; as, *multa mihi prōmisit, sed ea non præstitit*, or, *quæ non præstitit*, but not *quæ autem* or *quæ vëro*. *Qui autem* and *qui vëro* are used however in protases, where the relative retains its relative meaning, and there is a corresponding demonstrative in the apodosis; as, *Qui autem omnia bona a se ipsis pētunt, eis nihil malum videri potest, quod naturæ necessitas affērat.* Cic. de Sen. 2.

(4.) In double relative clauses, especially where the cases are different, Cicero frequently for the second relative clause substitutes the demonstrative; as, *Sed ipsius in mente insidēbat spēs pulchritudinis eximia quædam, quam intuens, in eūque dēfixus, ad, etc. for et in quā.* Cic. Orat. 2. And sometimes even when the cases are the same; as, *Quem Phlūtem vënisse fērunt, eumque cum Leone dissēruisse quædam.* Cic. Tusc. 5, 8; where *et* alone would have been sufficient.

(5.) From this tendency to connect sentences by relatives arose the use of *quod* before certain conjunctions merely as a copulative. See § 206, (14.)

(6.) *Nēque* or *nec* is much used by Latin writers instead of *et* and a negation, and may be so used in all cases except when the negative belongs to one particular word; see § 278, R. 9. *Nēque* or *nec* is added to *enim*, *vëro*, and *tāmen*, where we cannot use 'and.' To these negative expressions a second negative is often joined, in which case *nēque enim non* is equivalent to *nam*; *non vëro non*, to *aliquē vtiā*, a stronger *et*; *nec tāmen non*, to *attāmen*.

## ANALYSIS.

§ 281. I. 1. The analysis of a complex or a compound sentence consists in dividing it into its several component propositions, and pointing out their relation to each other.

2. In resolving a sentence into its component clauses, the participial constructions equivalent to clauses should be mentioned, and ellipses be supplied. See § 203, 4; § 274, 3; and § 257.

3. In a continued discourse the connection and relation of the successive sentences also should be specified.

### *Rules for the Analysis of Complex and Compound Sentences.*

(1.) State whether the sentence is complex or compound. § 201, 11, 12.

(2.) If complex, (1) specify the principal and subordinate clauses. (2) Specify the class to which the subordinate proposition belongs, (§ 201, 7), and (3), its connective, and the class to which such connective belongs, (§ 201, 8 and 9.)

(3.) If compound, specify the principal propositions, with their subordinates, if any they have, as in the case of complex sentences.

II. The analysis of a proposition or simple sentence consists in distinguishing the subject from the predicate, and, in case either of them be compound, in pointing out the simple subjects or predicates of which it is composed, and, if complex, in specifying the several modifiers, whether of the essential or subordinate parts.

*Rules for the Analysis of a Simple Sentence.*

1. Divide it into two parts—the subject and the predicate, § 201, 1—3. If these are simple, the analysis is complete, but if either is compound:—
2. Specify the simple subjects or predicates of which the compound consists.—If either is complex:—
3. Point out the grammatical subject, and the words, phrases, etc. *directly* modifying it.
4. Point out the words, phrases, etc., which modify the direct modifiers of the grammatical subject, and those which modify them, and so on successively, until the relation of each of the words composing the logical subject is specified.
5. Point out the grammatical predicate, and the words, phrases, etc., *directly* modifying it.
6. Point out the words, phrases, etc., which modify the direct modifiers of the grammatical predicate, and those which modify them, and so on successively, until the relation of each of the words composing the logical predicate is specified.

## PARSING.

III. Parsing consists in resolving a proposition into the parts of speech of which it is composed, tracing the derivation of each word, and giving the rules of formation and construction applicable to it.

*Rules for Parsing.*

1. Name the part of speech to which each word belongs, including the subdivision in which it is found.
2. If it is an inflected word:—
  - (1.) Name its root or crude form, and decline, compare, or conjugate it.
  - (2.) If it is a noun or pronoun, tell its gender, number and case:—if in the nominative or in the accusative with the infinitive, tell its verb:—if in an oblique case depending on some other word, tell the word on which its case depends.
  - (3.) If it is an adjective, adjective-pronoun, or participle, tell the word which it modifies.
  - (4.) If it is a finite verb or an infinitive with the accusative, tell its voice, mood, tense, number, person, and subject.
3. If it is a conjunction, tell its class and what it connects.
4. If it is a preposition, tell the words whose relation is expressed by it.
5. If it is an adverb, tell its class and what it qualifies.
6. Prove the correctness of each step of the process by quoting the definition or rule of formation or construction on which it depends.

**NOTE.** The words constituting a proposition are most conveniently parsed in that order in which they are arranged in analysis.

*Examples of Analysis and Parsing.*

1. *Equus currit*, The horse runs.

*Analysis.* This is a simple sentence: its subject is *equus*, its predicate is *currit*, both of which are simple. See § 201, 1-3; § 202, 2; and § 203, 2.

**Parsing.** *Equus* is a common noun, § 26, 1 and 3; of the 2d decl., § 88; masc. gender, § 28, 1; third person, § 35, 2; its root is *equ-*, § 40, 10; decline it, § 46; it is in the nominative case, singular number, § 35, 1, (b.); the subject of *currit*, § 209, (a).—*Currit* is a neuter verb, § 141, II.; of the 3d conjugation, § 149, 2, from *curro*; its principal parts are *curro*, *cūcurri*, *cursum*, *currere*, § 151, 4; it is from the first root *curr-*; give the formations of that root, § 151, 1; it is in the active voice, § 142, 1; indicative mood, § 143, 1; present tense, § 145, I.; third person, § 147; singular number, § 146; agreeing with its subject-nominative *equus*, § 209, (b.)

**NOTE.** The questions to be asked in parsing *equus* are such as these, Why is *equus* a noun? Why a common noun? Why of the second declension? Why masculine? etc.—In parsing *currit*, the questions are, Why is *currit* a verb? Why a neuter verb? Why of the third conjugation? Which are the principal parts of a verb? Of what does the first root of a verb consist? What parts of a verb are derived from the first root? etc. The answer in each case may be found by consulting the etymological rules and definitions.

2. *Sævius ventis agitatur ingens pinus*, The great pine is more violently shaken by the winds. Hor.

**Analysis.** This also is a simple sentence:—its subject is *ingens pinus*, its predicate *sævius ventis agitur*; both of which are complex, § 201, 10, § 202, 6, and § 203, 5.

The grammatical subject is *pinus*, the pine; this is modified by *ingens*, great, § 201, 2, § 202, 2, and § 202, 6, (3.)

The grammatical predicate is *agitatur*, is shaken; this is modified by two independent modifiers, *sævius*, more violently, and *ventis*, by the winds, § 203, II. 8, Rem., § 203, I. 1, (2), and (3.)

**Parsing.** *Pinus* is a common noun, § 26, 1 and 3; of the 2d and 4th declensions, § 88 and § 99; feminine gender, § 29, 2; 3d person, § 35, 2; from the root *pin-*, § 40, 10; (decline it both in the 2d and 4th declensions);—it is found in the singular number, § 35, 1, and the nominative case, the subject of *agitatur*, § 209, (a.)

*Ingens* is a qualifying adjective of quantity, § 104, 4, and § 205, N. 1; of the 3d decl., § 105, 1, and § 38; of one termination, § 108, and § 111; from the root *ingent-*, § 40, 10; (decline it like *præsens*, § 111, but with only *i* in the ablative, § 113, Exc. 3.);—it is found in the singular number, feminine gender, § 26, R. 4; and nominative case, agreeing with its noun *pinus*, § 205.

*Agitur* is an active frequentative verb, § 141, I., and § 187, II. 1; of the 1st conjugation, § 149, 2; from the first root of its primitive *ago*, § 187, II. 1, (b.); (name its principal parts in both voices, see § 151, 4; and give the conjugation of the passive voice, indicative mood, present tense, see § 156,);—it is found in the singular number, § 146; third person, § 147; agreeing with its subject-nominative *pinus*, § 209, (b.)

*Sævius* is a derivative adverb of manner, § 190, 2-4; in the comparative degree, from the positive *sæve* or *sæviter*, which is derived from the adjective *sævus*, § 194, 1 and 2, and § 192, II. 1, and Exc. 1 and 2; modifying the verb *agitatur*, by expressing its degree, § 277.

*Ventis* is a common noun, § 26, 1 and 3; of the 2d declension, § 88; masculine gender, § 46; from the root *vent-*, § 40, 10; (decline it);—it is found in the plural number, § 35, 1; ablative case, modifying *agitatur* by denoting its means or instrument, § 247.

3. *Mithridates, duarum et viginti gentium rex, totidem linguis jura dixit*, Mithridates, king of twenty-two nations, pronounced judicial decisions in as many languages. Plin.

**Analysis.** This also is a simple sentence; its subject is *Mithridates, duarum et viginti gentium rex*, its predicate is *totidem linguis jura dixit*, both of which are complex, § 201, 10, § 202, 6, and § 203, 5.

The grammatical subject is *Mithridates*; this is modified directly by *rex*, § 202, I. (1.)

*Rex* is limited by *gentium*, § 202, I. 1, (2.)

*Gentium* is limited by the compound addition *duarum* and *viginti* connected coordinately by *et*, § 202, III. 3.

The grammatical predicate is *dixit*; this is limited by *jura* and *linguis*, the former a simple, the latter a complex addition, as it is modified by *tōdem*, § 203, I. 1, (2.) and II. 1.

*Parsing.* *Mithridates* is a proper noun, § 26, 2; of the third declension, § 88; masculine gender, § 28, 1; from the root *Mithridāt-*, § 40, 10; genitive *Mithridātis*, § 78, 1; (decline it in the singular number only, § 95, (a.));—it is found in the nominative case, the subject of *dixit*, § 209, (a.)

*Rex* is a common noun—third declension, § 88; masculine gender, § 28, 1; from the root *rēg-*, § 40, 10; genitive *rēgis*, § 78, 2; (decline it);—it is found in the singular number—the nominative case, in apposition to *Mithridates*, § 204.

*Gentium* is a common noun from *gens*—third declension—feminine gender, § 62; from the root *gent-*, § 56, I, R. 1; genitive *gentis*, § 77, 2 and (2.); (decline it);—it is found in the plural number—genitive case, § 83, II. 8; limiting *rex* subjectively, § 211 and R. 2.

*Duarum* is a numeral adjective, § 104, 5; of the cardinal kind, § 117; from *duo*, *duo*, from the root *du-*; (decline it, § 118, 1.);—it is found in the plural number, § 118, 2; feminine gender, genitive case, § 26, R. 4; agreeing with its noun *gentium*, § 205.

*Et* is a copulative conjunction, § 198, 1, connecting *duarum* and *viginti*, § 278.

*Viginti* is a numeral adjective of the cardinal kind, indeclinable, § 118, 1; limiting *gentium*, § 205.

*Dixit* is an active verb, § 141, I.; of the third conjugation, § 149, 2; from *dico*, (give the principal parts in the active voice, and its first, second, and third roots, § 150, 4, and § 171, 1.); it is formed from the second root *dix-*, (give the formations of the second root);—it is found in the active voice, § 141, 1; indicative mood, § 143, 1; perfect indefinite tense, § 145, IV. and Rem.; singular number, third person, agreeing with *Mithridates*, § 209, (b.)

*Jura* is a common noun, of the third declension, from *jus*, root *jūr-*, § 56, I, R. 1, genitive *jūris*, § 76, Exc. 3; neuter gender, § 66; (decline it);—it is found in the plural number, accusative case, § 40, 8; the object of *dixit*, § 229.

*Linguis* is a common noun, of the first declension, feminine gender, from *lingua*, root *lingu-*, (decline it);—found in the plural number, ablative case, after *dixit*, § 247.

*Tōdem* is a demonstrative pronominal adjective, § 139, 5, (2.) and (3.); indeclinable, § 115, 4; it is in the ablative plural, feminine gender, limiting *linguis*, § 205.

4. *Pausānias, quum semiānīmīs de templo elātus esset, confestim ānīmā efflāvit.* Nep. Paus. 4.

*Analysis.* This is a complex sentence, § 201, 11; consisting of two members, which are so arranged as to constitute a period, § 280, 1.

The principal proposition is, *Pausānias confestim ānīmā efflāvit*, § 201, 5. The subordinate proposition is, *quum (is) semiānīmīs de templo elātus esset*, § 201, 6.

The leading proposition has a simple subject, *Pausānias*, § 202, 2, and a complex predicate, *confestim ānīmā efflāvit*, § 203, 3; in which *efflāvit* is the grammatical predicate, § 203, 2; which is modified by *confestim* and *ānīmum*, § 203, I. 1, (2.) and (3.), and II. R. 2., and also by the adverbial clause *quum semiānīmīs*, etc. § 201, 6 and 7, and § 203, I. 8.

The subordinate proposition, which is connected to the leading clause by the subordinate conjunction *quum*, § 201, 9, has a simple subject, viz. *is* understood, and a complex predicate, *semiānīmīs, de templo elātus esset*, § 203, 8.—The grammatical predicate is *elātus esset*, § 208, 2; which is modified by *semiānīmīs*, § 203, I. 1, (1.), and *de templo*, § 203, I. 2, and II. Rem. 2.

**Parsing.** *Pausanias*, a Greek proper noun, § 26, 2;—1st decl., §§ 41 and 44; masc. gender, § 28, 1; root *Pausāni-*; found in sing. num., nom. case, the subject of *efflavit*, § 209, (a.)

*Confestim*, an adv. of time § 190, 8; limiting *efflavit*, § 277.

*Animam* is a com. noun of 1st decl., fem. gender, § 41; from *anima*, root *anim-*; (decline it);—it is found in the sing. num., acc. case, the object of *efflavit*, § 229.

*Efflavit*, an act. verb, 1st conj., from *efflo*, compounded of *ex* and *flo*, § 196, 6; (give the principal parts in the act. voice and the three roots);—it is formed from the second root; (give the formations of that root); in the active voice, ind. mood, perfect indefinite tense, sing. num., 3d pers., agreeing with *Pausanias*, § 209, (b.)

*Quum* is a temporal conjunction, § 198, 10; connecting the dependent to the principal clause, § 278.

*Scindamnis* is a predicate adj., of the 3d decl., of two terminations, § 109; (decline it);—it is in the sing. num., masc. gender, nom. case, agreeing with *is* understood, § 210, R. 1, (a.)

*De* is a preposition, expressing the relation between *elātus esset* and *templo*, § 195.

*Templo* is a com. noun, 2d decl., neut. gender, from *templum*, root *templ-*; (decline it);—in the sing. num., abl. case, after *de*, § 241.

*Elātus esset* is an irregular active verb, of the third conjugation, § 179; from *effero*, compounded of *ex* and *féro*, § 196, 6; (see *féro* and compounds, § 172); (give the principal parts in both voices, and the 1st and 3d roots);—it is formed from the third root, *elāt-*, (give the formations of that root in the passive voice); in the subjunctive mood, pluperfect tense, § 145, V.; sing. num., third person, agreeing with *is* understood referring to *Pausanias*, § 209, (b.)

5. *Römāna pūbes, sēdāto tandem pāvōre, postquam ex tam turbīdo die sērēna et tranquilla lux rediit, ubi vācuam sēdem rēgiām vidit, etsi sātis crēdēbat patrībūs, qui proxīmī stētērānt, sublimem raptum prōcellā; tāmen, vēlut orbītātis mētū icta, mœstum āliquamdiu silentium obtinuit.* Liv. 1, 16.

**Analysis.** This is a complex sentence, whose clauses constitute a period, § 280. It is composed of the following members or clauses:—

1. *Römāna pūbes* [tāmen] *mœstum āliquamdiu silentium obtinuit.* This is the leading clause. The following are dependent clauses.

2. *vēlut orbītātis mētū icta,*

3. *sēdāto tandem pāvōre,*

4. *postquam ex tam turbīdo die sērēna et tranquilla lux rediit,*

5. *ubi vācuam sēdem rēgiām vidit,*

6. *etsi sātis crēdēbat patrībūs,*

7. *qui proxīmī stētērānt,*

8. *sublimem raptum prōcellā.*

NOTE 1. In the preceding clauses the predicates are printed in Italics.

NOTE 2. The connective of the 1st clause, is the adversative *tāmen*, which is inserted on account of *etsi* intervening between the principal subject and predicate. The connective of the 2d clause is *vēlut*, of the 4th *postquam*, of the 5th *ubi*, of the 6th *etsi*, followed by a clause constituting the protasis, and of the 7th *qui*. The 3d and 8th clauses have no connectives.

(1.) The grammatical subject of the leading clause is *pūbes*, which is limited by *Römāna*.—The grammatical predicate is *obtinuit*, which is limited by *āliquamdiu* and *silentium*, and also either directly or indirectly by all the dependent clauses. *Silentium* is itself modified by *mœstum*.

The second, third, fourth, fifth, and sixth clauses are used adverbially to denote the time and other circumstances modifying the principal predicate *silentium obtinuit*, § 201, 7.

(2.) The second is a participial clause, equivalent to *vélut* (*ea* scil. *pâbes*) *orbitâtis mêtû icta esset*, § 274, 3, (a.)

(3.) The third clause is also participial, and is equivalent to *quum tandem pâvor seditus esset*, § 257, R. 1; and hence *pâvôre* represents the subject, and *sedito tandem* the predicate—the former being simple, the latter complex.

(4.) The grammatical subject of the 4th clause, which is connected to the leading clause by *postquam*, § 201, 9, is *lux*, which is modified by *sérèna* and *tranquilla*.—The grammatical predicate is *rediiit*, which is modified by *postquam* and *ex tam turbido die*, § 203, I. 1, (3.), and II. 1.

(5.) The grammatical subject of the fifth clause is *ea* understood.—The grammatical predicate is *vidit*, which is modified by *ubi* and *vâcuam sêdem rêgiâ*, § 203, I. 1, (3.) and II. 1.

(6.) The grammatical subject of the sixth clause also is *ea*. Its grammatical predicate is *crêdebât*, which is modified by *sâtis* and *patribus*, § 203, I. (2.) and (3.), and by the 8th clause, II. 3.

(7.) The grammatical subject of the seventh clause is *qui*. Its grammatical predicate is *si lêlerant*, which is modified by *proximi*, § 203, I. (1.) It is an adjective clause, modifying *patribus*, § 201, 7 and 9.

(8.) The grammatical subject of the eighth clause, which has no connective, § 204, Rem., is *eum*, i. e. *Rômulum*, understood. Its grammatical predicate is *raptum* (*esse*), which is modified by *sublimem* and *prôcellâ*.

*Parsing.* *Rômâna* is a patrial adjective, § 104, 10, derived from *Rôma*, § 128, 6, (a.) and (e.); of the 1st and 2d declensions, § 105, 2; fem. gender, sing. number, nom. case, agreeing with *pûbes*, § 205.

*Pûbes*, a collective noun, § 26, 4; 3d decl., fem. gender, § 62; from the root *pûb-*, § 56, I. R. 6; genitive *pûbis*, § 73, 1; (decline it);—found in the nom. sing., the subject of *obtinuit*, § 209, (a.)

*Tâmen*, an adversative conjunction, § 198, 9, relating to *etsi* in the 6th clause.

*Mœstum*, a qualifying adj., § 205, N. 1; of the 1st and 2d declensions, neut. gender, sing. num., acc. case, agreeing with *silentium*.

*Alquamdiu*, an adverb of time, § 191, II.; compounded of *âliquis* and *diu*, § 193, 6; and limiting *obtinuit*, § 277.

*Silentium*, a com. noun, 2d decl., neut. gender, § 46; sing. number, acc. case, the object of *obtinuit*, § 229.

*Obtinuit*, an active verb, of the 2d conj., § 149, 2; from *obtinéo*, compounded of *ob* and *téneo*, see § 168; (give the principal parts in the act. voice, and the formations of the 2d root, § 157 at the end);—found in the active voice, ind. mood, perf. indef. tense, sing. num., 3d person, agreeing with *pûbes*, § 209, (b.)

*Vélut* for *vélut si*, an adverb, compounded of *vel* and *ut*, § 193, 10; modifying *icta*, and *obtinuisset* understood, (as they would have done if, etc.)

*Orbitâtis*, an abstract noun, § 26, 5; from the primitive *orbis*, § 101, 1 and 2; 3d decl., fem. gender, § 62; from the root *orbitât-*, § 56, I., and R. 1; (decline it);—found in the sing. num., subjective gen. case, limiting *mêtû*, § 211.

*Mêtû*, an abstract noun, 4th decl., masc. gen., § 87; sing. num., abl. case, § 247.

*Icta*, a perf. part. pass., from the active verb *ico*, of the 3d conj. (give the principal parts in both voices, and decline the participle);—found in the fem. gen., sing. num., nom. case, agreeing with *pûbes*, § 205.

*Sedito*, a perfect pass. part. from the active verb *sêdo*, of the 1st conj., § 149, 2; (give the principal parts in both voices, § 151, 4; and decline it, § 105, R. 2.);—found in the masc. gender, sing. num., abl. case, agreeing with *pâvôre*, § 205.

*Tandem*, an adverb of time, § 191, II.; modifying *sedito*, § 277.

*Pâvôre*, an abstract noun, § 26, 5, and § 102, 1; (from *pâveo*), 3d decl., masc. gen., § 58; root *pâvor*, § 56, II., and § 70, (decline it);—found in the sing. number, abl. case, absolute with *sedito*, § 257.

*Postquam*, an adverb of time, compounded of *post* and *quam*, § 193, 10; modifying *rediiit*, and connecting the 1st and 4th clauses, § 201, 9.

*Ex*, a preposition, § 195, R. 2.

*Tam*, an adverb of degree, § 191, R. 2; modifying *turbido*, § 277.



*Turbido*, an adjective, agreeing with *dñs*.

*Die*, a common noun, 5th decl., masc. gender, § 90, Exc. 1; sing. number, abl. case, after the prep. *ex*, § 241.

*Sérèna*, an adj., 1st and 2d decls., fem. gen., sing. num., nom. case, agreeing with *lux*, § 205.

*Et*, a copulative conjunction, § 198, 1; connecting *sérèna* and *tranquilla*, § 278.

*Tranquilla*, like *sérèna*.

*Lux*, a common noun, 3d decl., fem. gen., § 62; from the root *lao-*, § 56, I., and R. 2; genitive *lucis*, § 78, 2.

*Rédiit*, an irregular neuter verb, of the 4th conj., § 176; from *rêdeo*, compounded of *eo*, § 182, and the inseparable prep. *red-*, § 196, (b.), 3; (give its principal parts);—found in the ind. mood., perf. indef. tense, sing. num., 3d pers., agreeing with *lux*, § 209, (b.)

*Ubi*, an adverb of time, and like *postquam*, a connective, § 201, 9; and modifying *vidit*, § 277.

*Vacuum*, an adj., qualifying *sêdem*.

*Sêdem*, a common noun, 3d decl., fem. gen., § 62; from the root *sêd-*, § 56, I., R. 6; genitive *sêdis*, § 78, 1; (decline it);—found in the sing. num., acc. case, the object of the transitive verb *vidit*, § 229.

*Régium*, a denominative adj., § 128, I., 2, (a.); from the primitive *rex*, agreeing with *sêdem*.

*Vidit*, an active verb, of the 2d conj., (give its principal parts in the active voice, and the formations of the 2d root); found in the active voice, ind. mood, perf. indef. tense, sing. num., 3d pers., agreeing with *ea*, i. e. *pâbes*, understood.

*Etsi*, a concessive conjunction, § 198, 4; corresponding to the correlative adversative conj. *tâmen*, § 198, 4, R. and 9.

*Satis*, an adverb of degree, § 191, III., and R. 2; modifying *crêdêbat*, § 277.

*Crêdêbat*, an act. verb, § 141, I.; 3d conj., (give the principal parts in the active voice and the formations of the 1st root);—found in the act. voice, ind. mood, imperfect tense, sing. num., 3d person, agreeing with *ea*, scil. *pâbes*, understood.

*Patribus*, a common noun, § 28, 3; 3d decl., from the root *patr-*, § 56, II., R. 3; gen. *patris*, § 71; masc. gender, § 28, 1; plur. num., dat. case, depending on *crêdêbat*, § 228, R. 2.

*Qui*, the subject of the 7th clause, is a relative pronoun, § 136; masc. gender, plur. num., agreeing with its antecedent *patribus*, § 206, R. 19, (a.); and is nominative to *stêlêrant*, § 209, (a.)

*Proximè*, an adj. of the superlative degree, § 126, 1, (compare it); of the 1st and 2d decls., masc. gen., plur. num., nom. case, agreeing with *qui*, § 206, § 210, R. 1, (a.) and R. 8, (2.)

*Stêlêrant*, a neuter verb, 1st conj., irregular in its 2d root, § 165; (give its principal parts, and the formations of the 2d root);—found in the act. voice, ind. mood, plup. tense, § 145, V.; 3d person plural, agreeing with its subject *qui*, § 209, (b.)

*Sublimem*, an adj., of the 3d decl., and two terminations, § 139; masc. gen., sing. num., acc. case, agreeing with *eum*, (i. e. *Rômâthum*), understood, and modifying also *raptum esse*, § 206, R. 15.

*Raptum (esse)*, an act. verb, 3d conj.; (give the principal parts in both voices and the formations of the 3d root in the passive voice)—found in the pass. voice, inf. mood, perf. tense; but, following the imperfect, it has the meaning of a pluperfect, § 268, 2, and § 145, V.; depending on *crêdêbat*, § 272.

*Prôcellâ*, a com. noun, 1st decl., fem. gen., sing. num., abl. case, § 247.

## PROSODY.

§ 282. Prosody treats of the quantity of syllables, and the laws of versification.

### QUANTITY.

1. The quantity of a syllable is the relative time occupied in pronouncing it. Cf. § 13.

2. A syllable is either *short*, *long*, or *common*.

(a.) The time occupied in pronouncing a short syllable is called a *mora* or *time*.

(b.) A long syllable requires two *moræ* or double the time occupied in pronouncing a short one; as, *āmārē*.

(c.) A common syllable is one which, in poetry, may be made either long or short; as the middle syllable of *tēnēbræ*.

3. The quantity of a syllable is either *natural* or *accidental*;—*natural*, when it depends on the *nature* of its vowel; *accidental*, when it depends on its *position*.

Thus the *e* in *rēsisto* is short by nature; while in *rēsūtī* it is long by its position, since it is followed by two consonants: § 283, IV. On the contrary, the *e* in *dēdūco* is naturally long, but in *dēserro* it is made short by being placed before a vowel: § 283, I.

4. The quantity of syllables is determined either by certain established rules, or by the *authority* of the poets.

Thus it is poetic usage alone that determines the quantity of the first syllables of the following words, viz. *māter*, *frāter*, *prāvus*, *dico*, *dūco*; *pāter*, *āvus*, *cādo*, *māneo*, *grāvis*, etc.; and hence the quantity of such syllables can be ascertained by practice only or by consulting the *gradus* or *lexicon*.

5. The rules of quantity are either *general* or *special*. The former apply alike to all the syllables of a word, the latter to particular syllables.

### GENERAL RULES.

§ 283. I. (a.) A vowel before another vowel, or a diphthong, is short; as, *e* in *mēus*, *i* in *patriæ*. Thus,

*Conscia mens recti fāmæ mendācia ridet. Ovid. F. 4, 311.*  
*Ipsæ etiam extimæ laudis succensus timore. Virg. A. 7, 496.*

(b.) So also when *h* comes between the vowels, since *h* is accounted only a breathing; as, *nihil*: (see § 2, 6.) Thus,

*Dē nūllō nūl, in nūllum nil posse reverti. Pers. 4, 84.*

**Exc. 1. (a.)** *F* is long, except in *fū* and when followed by *er*; as *fiunt*, *fiēbam*. Thus,

*Omnia jam flant, fīeri quæ posse negābam.* *Ovid.* Tr. 1, 8, 7.

(b.) It is sometimes found long even before *er*; as, *fiēret*. Ter.; *fiēri*. Plaut; and, on the contrary, Prudentius has *fīō* with *i* short.

**Exc. 2. (a.)** *E* is long in the termination of the genitive and dative of the fifth declension, when preceded and followed by *i*; as, *fāciēi*. Thus,

*Non rādi sōle, nēque lūcida tēla diēi.* *Lucr.* 1, 148.

(b.) In *spe*, *re*, and *fidei*, *e* is short.

**NOTE.** In Lucretius, the *e* of *rei* is, in a few cases, long, and that of *fidei* is lengthened once in Lucretius and once in a line of Ennius.

**Exc. 3. (a.)** *A* is long in the penult of old genitives in *at* of the first declension; as, *aulāt*, *pictāt*. Cf. § 43, 1.

(b.) *A* and *e* are also long in proper names in *atus*, *etus*, or *eta*; as, *Cātus*, *Pompētus*, *Aquilētā*; and in the adjectives *Grātus* and *Vētus*. Thus,

*Æthērium sensum, atque aurātī simplicis ignem.* *Virg.* A. 6, 747.

*Accipe, Pompētī, dēductum carmen ab illo.* *Ovid.* Pont. 4, 1, 1.

*Neonon cum Vēnētis Aquilētā perfūrit armis.* *Sil.* 8, 606.

**Exc. 4. (a.)** *I* is common in genitives in *ius*; as, *unīus*, *illīus*. Thus,

*Illius et nitīdo stillent unguenta capillo.* *Tibull.* 1, 7, 51.

*Illius puro dēstillent tempōra nardo.* *Id.* 2, 2, 7.

(b.) But *i* in the genitive of *alter* is commonly short; and in that of *alius* it is always long.

**Exc. 5.** The first vowel of *ēheu* is long; that of *Dīāna*, *īo*, and *ōhe*, is common.

**Exc. 6.** Greek words retain their original quantities, and hence, in many Greek words, a vowel is long, though immediately followed by another vowel; as,

*āēr*, *Achāia*, *Achēlōas*, *dia*, *ēos*, *Lāertes*, and Greek words having in the original a long *e* or *o* (*u* or *au*). See also § 293, 3.

(1.) Words which, in Greek, are written with *ei* (*u*) before a vowel, and in Latin with a single *e* or *i*, have the *e* or *i* long; as, *Ænēas*, *Alexandria*, *Cussio-pēa*, *Clio*, *Dārius*, *ēlēgia*, *Gālātēa*, *Mēdēa*, *Mausōlēum*, *Pēnēlōpēa*, *Thālia*, *Atrides*.

Hence, most adjectives in *eus*, formed from Greek proper names, have the *e* long; as, *Cythērēus*, *Pēlōpēus*; and the *e* remains long when *et* is restored; as, *Pēlōpēta*.

**Exc.** *Acādēmia*, *chōrea*, *Mālea*, *plātēa*, and some patronymics and patrials in *ets*; as, *Nērēts*, have the penult common.

(2.) Greek genitives in *eos*, and accusatives in *ea*, from nominatives in *eus*, generally shorten the *e*; as, *Orphēos*, *Orphēa*;—but the *e* is sometimes lengthened by the Ionic dialect; as, *Cēphēos*, *Ilionēa*.

(3.) Greek words in *ais*, *ois*, *aius*, *eius*, *oius*, *aon*, and *ion*, generally lengthen the first vowel; as, *Nāis*, *Mīnōis*, *Grātus*, *Nērētus*, *Mīnōtus*, *Māchāon*, *Ixon*. But *Thēbāis*, *Sīmōis*, *Phāon*, *Deucālīon*, *Pygmālīon*, and many others, shorten the former vowel.

**NOTE 1.** Greek words in *aon* and *ion*, with *o* short in the genitive, have the penult long; but with *o* long in the genitive, they have it short; as, *Amēthāon*, *Alōnē*; *Deucālīon*, *aius*.

NOTE 2. In Greek proper names in *eus* (gen. *eos*), as *Orpheus*, the *eu* in the nominative is always a diphthong in the original, and, with very few exceptions, in the Latin poets.

II. A diphthong is long; as, *āurum*, *fāenus*, *Eubāea*, *Pompēius*, *Orphēu*. Thus,

*Inferni*que lăcus, *Ætă*que insŭla Circă. *Virg.* A. 3, 388.  
*Thēsē*uros ignōtum argenti pondus et *ŭri*. *Id.* A. 1, 359.  
*Harpyi*ăque cōlunt *ăli*ă, Phinēia postquam. *Id.* A. 3, 212.

Exc. 1. *Præ*, in composition, is short before a vowel; as, *præustus*, *præcûtus*. Thus,

Nec tōtā tāmen ille prior praevenit cūrā. Virg. A. 5, 186.

In Statius, and Sidonius Apollinaris, it is found long.

**Exc. 2.** A diphthong at the end of a word, when the next word begins with a vowel, is sometimes made short; as,

**Insulæ Iōnio in magno, quas dira Cēlseno. Virg. A. 8, 211.**

Exc. 3. The diphthongs consisting of *u* followed by a vowel are either long or short; the two vowels thus combined being subject to the same rules of quantity, as their final vowel would be if standing alone; as, *quā*, *quī*, *quōrum*, *quā*, *quibus*, *quidā*, *quēror*, *quorū*, *linguā*, *sanguis*.

**III. A syllable formed by contraction is long; as,**

*ālus* for *alūs*; *cōgo* for *cōāgo*; *nīl* for *nīhīl*; *jūnior* for *jūvénior*. Thus,

**Titjre cōge pēcus, tu post cārecta lātēbas. Virg. E. 3, 20.**

IV. A vowel naturally short, before two consonants, a double consonant, or the letter *j*, is long by position; as, *ārma, bellum, āxis, gāza, mājor*. Thus,

*Pūscāre ōportet oves dēductum dicere cāmen. Virg. E. 6, 5.  
Nēc mūrās tīncet cōrylos ; nēc laurea Phœbi. Id. E. 7, 64.  
At nobis, Pax alma, vōni, spīcamque tēnēto. Tibull. 1, 10, 67.  
Rāra jūvant: primis sic mājor grātia pōmis. Mart. 4, 29, 8.*

**NOTE 1.** A vowel (other than *i*) before *j* is in reality lengthened by forming a diphthong with it, since *i* and *j* are in fact but one letter. Thus *major* is equivalent to *maí-or*, which would be pronounced *máí-yor*. See § 2, 1.

Exc. 1. The compounds of *jūgum* have *i* short before *j*; as, *bijū-gus*, *quādrījūgus*. Thus,

**Interea bŭgis infert se Lūagus albis. Virg. A. 10, 575.**

**REMARK.** The vowel is long by position, when either one or both of the consonants is in the same word with it; but when both stand at the beginning of the following word, the vowel is either long or short; as,

Toile mōras; *semper nōcuis differre parātis. Lucan. 1, 281.*  
 Ferte citi ferrām; dāte telā; scandite mūros. *Virg. A. 9, 87.*  
 Ne tāmen ignōrēt, quae sūt sententiā scripte. *Ovid.*

**NOTE 2.** A short vowel at the end of a word, before an initial double consonant or *j* in the following word, is not lengthened.

NOTE 8. In the comic poets a vowel frequently remains short though followed by two consonants, especially if only one of them is in the same word.

**Exc. 2.** A vowel *naturally short*, before a mute followed by a liquid, is common; as, *āgrīs, phārētra, vōlūcris, pōpūles, cōchlea*. Thus,

*Et primo similis vōlūcri, mox vērā vōlūcris. Ovid. M. 13. 607.*  
*Nātum autē ora pāris, patrem qui obruncat ad aras. Virg. A. 2, 668.*  
*Nox tēnēbras prōfert, Phœbus fugat inde tēnēbras. Ovid.*

**REM. 1.** If the vowel before a mute and liquid is *naturally long*, it continues so; as, *sālūbris, ambūlacrum*.

**REM. 2.** In *compound* words, of which the former part ends with a mute, and the latter begins with a liquid, a short vowel before the mute is made long by position; as, *ābluo, obruo, sūblēvo, quāmōbrem*.

**REM. 3.** A mute and liquid at the beginning of a word seldom lengthen the short vowel of the preceding word, except in the arsis of a foot; as,

*Terrasq̄ tractusq̄e mārīs cœlumq̄e prōfundum. Virg. E. 4, 51.*

**REM. 4.** In Latin words, only the liquids *l* and *r* following a mute render the preceding short vowel common; but, in words of Greek origin, *m* and *n* after a mute have the same effect, as in *Tēcmessa, Prōcne, Cŷgnus*.

## SPECIAL RULES.

### FIRST AND MIDDLE SYLLABLES.

#### I. DERIVATIVE WORDS.

**§ 284.** Derivative words retain the quantity of their primitives; as,

by conjugation, *āmo, amat, amābat, amāvi, amātus*, etc.; by declension, *āmor, amōris, amōri, amōribus*, etc.; so, *ānimal, animātus*, from *ānima*; *gēmēbundus*, from *gēmēre*; *fāmilia*, from *fāmulus*; *māternus*, from *māter*; *prōpinquus*, from *prōpe*.

**NOTE 1.** *Lār, pār, sāl*, and *pēs* in declension shorten the vowel of the nominative; as, *sālūs, pēdis*, etc.

**NOTE 2.** The vowel of the primitive is sometimes lengthened or shortened in the derivative by the addition or removal of a consonant.

**REM. 1.** Derivatives from increasing nouns of the second or third declension agree in quantity with the increment of their primitives; as,

*puērītia*, from *puērī*; *virgīneus*, from *virgīnis*; *sālūber*, from *sālūtis*.

**REM. 2.** In verbs, the vowels of the derived tenses and of derivative words agree in quantity with the verbal root from which they are formed; as,

*mōvēbam, mōvēbo, mōveam, mōvērem, mōve, mōvēre, mōvens, mōvendus*, from *mōv*, the root of the present, with *ō* short;—*mōvēram, mōvērim, mōvissem, mōvēro, mōvisse*, from *mōv*, the root of the perfect, with *ō* long; *mōtūrus* and *mōtus*;—*mōto, mōtio, mōtor*, and *mōtus, -ūs*, from *mōt*, the root of the supine, with *ō* also long.

**REM. 3.** (*a.*) *Sōlūtum* and *vōlūtum* from *sōlvo* and *vōlvo* have the first syllable short, as if from *sōlvo, vōlvo*. So, from *gigno* come *gēnus, gēnitum*, as if from *gēno*; and *pōtūi*, from *pōtū sum* (*possum*).

(b.) The *a* in *da*, imperative of *do*, is long, though short in other parts of the verb. See § 294, 2.

(c.) The *o* in *pōsui* and *pōstūm* is short, though long in *pōno*.

Exc. 1. Perfects and supines of two syllables have the first syllable long, even when that of the present is short; as,

*vēni, vidī, fēci*, from *vēnio, video, faciō*; *cāsum, mōtum, visum*, from *cādo, mōveo, video*.

NOTE 3. Such perfects are supposed to have been formed either by the contraction of reduplicated syllables, as *vēnio*, perf. *vēvēni*, by syncope *vēēni*, by crasis *vēni*, or by the omission of a consonant, as *video*, perf. *vidai*, by syncope *vidi*, the vowel retaining the quantity which it had by position.

NOTE 4. The long vowel of dissyllabic supines probably arose in like manner from syncope and contraction; as, *video, vidsum*, by syncope *visum*; *mōveo, mōvitum*, by syncope *mōitum*, by contraction *mōtum*.

(1.) (a.) These seven perfects have the first syllable short:—*bibi, dēdi, fidi*, (from *findo*), *scīdi, stēti, stīti, tūti*. So also *percūli*, from *percello*.

(b.) The first syllable is also short before a vowel (§ 283, I.); as, *rui*.

(2.) (a.) These ten supines have the first syllable short:—*citum*, (from *cieo*), *dātum, itum, litum, quitum, rātum, rūtum, sātum, situm*, and *stātum*.

(b.) So, also, had the obsolete *fūtum*, from *fūō*, whence comes *fūturus*.

Exc. 2. (a.) Reduplicated polysyllabic perfects have the first two syllables short; as,

*cēdī, cēcini, tēgi, dēdī*, from *cādo, cāno, tango*, and *disco*.

(b.) The second syllable of reduplicated perfects is sometimes made long by position; as, *mōmōrdī, tētēndī*.—*Cēcidi* from *cādo*, and *pēpēdi* from *pēdo*, retaining the quantity of their first root also have the second syllable long.

Exc. 3. Desiderative verbs in *urio* have the *u* short, though, in the third root of the verbs from which they are formed, it is long; as, *canāturio* from *canātū*, the third root of *ceno*. So *parturio, ēsurio, nupturio*.

Exc. 4. Frequentative verbs, formed from the third root of verbs of the first conjugation, have the *i* short; as, *clāmīto, vōlīto*. See § 187, II. 1.

Exc. 5. A few other derivatives deviate from the quantity of their primitives.

1. Some have a long vowel from a short one in the primitive.

Such are,

<i>Dēni</i> , from <i>dēcem</i> .	<i>Mōbīlis</i> , from <i>mōveo</i> .	<i>Stipendium</i> , from <i>stips</i>
<i>Fōmes</i> and } from	<i>Persōna</i> , from <i>persōno</i> .	( <i>stipis</i> ).
<i>Fōmentum</i> , {	<i>Rēgūla</i> and } from	<i>Suspicio</i> , <i>ōnis</i> , from <i>sus-</i>
<i>fōveo</i> .	<i>Rex</i> ( <i>rēgis</i> ), {	<i>pīcor</i> .
<i>Hūmānus</i> , from <i>hōmo</i> .	<i>Rēgo</i> .	<i>Tēgūla</i> , from <i>tēgo</i> .
<i>Lāterna</i> , from <i>lāteo</i> ,	<i>Sēcūs</i> , from <i>sēcus</i> .	
<i>Litēra</i> from <i>līno</i> .	<i>Sēdes</i> , from <i>sēdeo</i> .	
<i>Lex</i> ( <i>lēgis</i> ), from <i>lēgo</i> .	<i>Sēmen</i> , from <i>sēro</i> .	

2. Some have a short vowel from a long one in the primitive.

Such are,

<i>Dīcax</i> , from <i>dīco</i> .	<i>Mōlestus</i> , from <i>mōles</i> .	<i>Sāgax</i> , from <i>sāgio</i> .
<i>Dux</i> ( <i>dūcis</i> ), from <i>dūco</i> .	<i>Nāto</i> , from <i>nātu. sup.</i>	<i>Sōpor</i> , from <i>sōpio</i> .
<i>Fīdes</i> , from <i>fīdo</i> .	<i>Nōto</i> , from <i>nōtu. sup.</i>	<i>Vādum</i> , from <i>vādo</i> .
<i>Lābo</i> , from <i>lābor</i> , dep. v.	<i>Ōdium</i> , from <i>ōdi</i> .	<i>Vōco</i> , from <i>vox</i> ( <i>vōcia</i> ).
<i>Lūcerna</i> , from <i>lūceo</i> .	<i>Quāsillus</i> , from <i>quālus</i> .	

**NOTE 1.** *Disertus* comes regularly (by syncope) from *dissertus*, the prefix *dis* being short, § 299, 1. Cf. *dirimo* and *diribeo*, where *s* is changed to *r*. See § 196, (b.) 2.

**NOTE 2.** Some other words might, perhaps, with propriety be added to these lists; but, in regard to the derivation of most of them, grammarians are not entirely agreed.

**REMARK 1.** Some of these irregularities seem to have arisen from the influence of syncope and crasis. Thus *mobilis* may have been *móvibilis*; *mótum*, *móvítum*, etc.

**REM. 2.** Sometimes the vowel in the derived word being naturally short, is restored to its proper quantity by removing one of the consonants which, in the primitive, made it long by position; as, *nāz*, *nācis*. So, when the vowel of the primitive is naturally long, but has been made short before another vowel, it is sometimes restored to its original quantity by the insertion of a consonant; as, *hibernus*, from *hiems*.

**REM. 3.** The first syllable in *liquidus* is supposed to be common, as coming either from *liquor* or *liqueo*; as,

*Crastique convéniant liquidis, et liquidæ crasis. Lucr. 4, 1255.*

## II. COMPOUND WORDS.

**§ 285. 1.** Compound words retain the quantity of the words which compose them; as,

*dēsēro*, of *dē* and *fēro*; *ādēro*, of *ad* and *ēro*. So *āddōrior*, *āmdōdo*, *circāmdo*, *cōmdo*, *ēnitor*, *prōdūco*, *sūbdōno*.

**2.** The change of a vowel or a diphthong in forming the compound does not alter its quantity; as,

*concido*, from *cādo*; *concido*, from *cādo*; *ērtigo*, from *rēgo*; *reclādo*, from *clādo*; *iniquus*, from *æquus*.

**Exc. 1.** A long syllable in the simple word becomes short in the following compounds:—*agnitus* and *cognitus*, from *nōtus*; *dēsēro* and *pēsēro*, from *jāro*; *hōdie*, from *hōc die*: *nihilum* and *nihil*, from *hilum*; *causādicus*, and other compounds ending in *dicus*, from *dico*.

**Exc. 2.** *Imbēcillus*, from *bēcillum*, has the second syllable long. The participle *ambitus* has the penult long from *itum*, but the nouns *ambitus* and *ambitio* follow the rule.

**Exc. 3.** *Innāba*, *prēnāba*, and *subnāba*, from *nābo*, have *u* short; but in *comnubium*, it is common.

**Exc. 4.** *O* final, in the compounds of *do* and *sto*, is common, though long in the simple verbs. § 294, (a.)

**NOTE 1.** Prepositions of one syllable, which end in a vowel, are long (§ 294, (a.); those which end in a single consonant are short (§ 299, 1.)—*Trā* from *trans* is long; as, *trādo*, *trādūco*.

**Exc. 5.** *Pro*, in the following compounds, is short:—*prōfānus*, *prōfāri*, *prōfecto*, *prōfestus*, *prōficiscor*, *prōfiteor*, *prōfūgio*, *prōfūsus*, *prōcella*, *prōfundus*, *prōnepos*, *prōneptis*, and *prōtervus*. It is common in *procūro*, *profunda*, *propāgo*, *propello*, and *propino*.—Respecting *præ* in composition before a vowel see § 283, II. Exc. 1.

**REM. 1.** The Greek preposition *pro* (before) is short; as, *prōphēta*. In *prolēgus*, *propōla*, and *propino*, it is common.

**REM. 2.** The inseparable prepositions *di* (for *dīs*) and *se* are long; as,

*diālico*, *diādro*. Respecting *disertus*, see § 284, Exc. 5, 2, N. 1.

REM. 3. (a) The inseparable preposition *re* or *red* is short; as, *rēmitto*, *rēfēro*, *rēdāmo*.

(b.) *Re* is sometimes lengthened in *religio*, *reliquia*, *reliquus*, *repērit*, *restitit*, *repūit*, *rectitū*, *reducere*, where some editors double the consonant following *re*. Cf. § 307, 2. In the impersonal verb *rēfert*, *re* is long, as coming from *res*.

REM. 4. *A* ending the former part of a compound word, is long; the other vowels are short; as,

*mālo*, *quāpropter*, *trādo*, (*trans do*); *nēfas*, *valēdico*, *hujuscēmōdi*; *biceps*, *tridens*, *omnipotens*, *significo*; *hōdie*, *quandōquidem*, *philosophus*; *ducenti*, *lucuples*, *Trōjūgēna*; *Polydorus*, *Eurypylus*, *Thrāsýbulus*.

Exc. 1. **A.** *A* is short in *quāsi*, *eādem*, when not an ablative, and in some Greek compounds; as, *cātāpulia*, *hexāmēter*.

Exc. 2. **E.** *E* is long in *crēdo*, *nēmo*, *nēquam*, *nēquāquam*, *nēquidquam*, *nēquis*, *nēquitia*; *mēmēt*, *mēcum*, *tēcum*, *sēcum*, *sēse*, *vēcors*, *vēsānus*, *vēnēficus*, and *vidēlicet*;—also in words compounded with *se* for *sez* or *sēmi*; as, *sēdēcim*, *sēmestris*, *sēmōdius*; but in *selibra* it is found short in Martial.

NOTE 2. (a.) The first *e* in *vidēlicet*, as in *vide*, is sometimes made short. See § 295, Exc. 3.

(b.) *E* is common in some verbs compounded with *fācio*; as, *liquefācio*, *pātefācio*, *rārefācio*, *tābefācio*, *tēpefācio*.

Exc. 3. **I.** (1.) *I* is long in those compounds in which the first part is declined, (§ 296;) as, *quidā*, *quivis*, *quilibet*, *quantivis*, *quancūqve*, *tantidē*, *unicūqve*, *eidem*, *reipublicæ*, *utrique*.

(2.) *I* is also long in those compounds which may be separated without altering the sense, (§ 296;) as, *lādīmāgister*, *siquis*, *agricultūra*.

(3.) *I*, ending the former part of a compound word, is sometimes made long by contraction; as, *ābīcen* for *ābīcen*, from *ābia* and *cāno*. See § 288, III.

(4.) *I* is long in *bigæ*, *quadrigæ*, *ūlce*, *scilicet*.

(5.) In *idem*, when masculine, *i* is long; but when neuter, it is short. The *i* of *ūbique* and *utrōqve*, the second in *ibidem*, and the first in *nimirum*, are long. In *ūbicumqve*, as in *ūbi*, *i* is common.

(6.) Compounds of *dies* have the final *i* of the former part long; as, *biduum*, *triduum*, *mēridies*, *quōtidie*, *quōtidianus*, *pridie*, *postridie*.

NOTE 3. In Greek words, *i*, ending the former part of a compound, is short; as, *Callimāchus*; unless it comes from the diphthong *ei* (u), or is made long or common by position.

Exc. 4. **O.** (1.) In compounds, the final *o* of *contro*, *intro*, *retro*, and *quando* (except *quandōquidem*), is long; as, *controversia*, *intrōdūco*, *retrōcedo*, *quandōqve*. *O* is long also in *āliōqvi* (—*quin*), and *utrōqve*.

(2.) *O* is long in the compounds of *quō* and *eo*; as, *quōmōdo*, *quōcumqve*, *quōnam*, *quōlibet*, *quōminus*, *quōcirca*, *quōvis*, *quōqve* (i. e. *et quo*); *eōdem*, *eōne*; but in the conjunction *quōqve*, it is short.

(3.) Greek words which are written with an *omēga* (ω) have the *o* long; as, *geōmetra*, *Mindiaurus*, *lāgōpus*.

Exc. 5. **U.** *U* is long in *Jūpiter* (*Jōvis pāter*), and *jūdico* (*jūs dico*).

### III. INCREMENT OF NOUNS.

§ 286. 1. A noun is said to *increase*, when, in any of its cases, it has more syllables than in the nominative singular; as, *pax*, *pācis*; *sermo*, *sermōnis*. The number of *increments* in any case of a noun is equal to that of its additional syllables.



2. Nouns in general have but one increment in the singular, but *iter*, *sūpellex*, compounds of *cāput* ending in *ps*, and sometimes *jēcūr*, have two increments; as,

*iter*, *i-tĕr-ĭ-ris*; *sūpellex*, *sū-pel-lec-ĭ-lis*; *anceps*, *an-cĭp-ĭ-tis*; *jēcūr*, *jĕ-cla-ĭ-ris*.

REMARK. The double increase of *iter*, etc., in the singular number arises from their coming from obsolete nominatives, containing a syllable more than those now in use; as, *itĕr*, etc.

3. The dative and ablative plural of the third declension have one increment more than the genitive singular; as,

<i>rex</i> ,	Gen. <i>rĕ-gis</i> ,	D. and Ab. <i>rĕg-ĭ-bus</i> .
<i>sermo</i> ,	<i>ser-mō-nis</i> ,	<i>ser-mōn-ĭ-bus</i> .
<i>iter</i> ,	<i>i-tĕn-ĭ-ris</i> ,	<i>it-ĭ-nĕr-ĭ-bus</i> .

4. The last syllable of a word is never considered as the increment. If a word has but one increment, it is the penult; if two, the antepenult is called the first, and the penult the second; and if three, the syllable before the antepenult is called the first, the antepenult the second, and the penult the third increment; as,

*ser-mo*, *ser-mō-nis*, *ser-mōn-ĭ-bus*; *i-ter*, *i-tĕn-ĭ-ris*, *it-ĭ-nĕr-ĭ-bus*.

5. In the third declension, the quantity of the first increment is the same in all the other cases as in the genitive singular; as,

*sermōnis*, *sermōni*, *sermōnem*, *sermōne*, *sermōnes*, *sermōnum*, *sermōnibus*. *Bōbus*, or *būbus*, from *bos*, *bōvis*, is lengthened by contraction from *bōvibus*.

NOTE. As adjectives and participles are declined like nouns, the same rules of increment apply to all of them; and so also to pronouns.

## INCREMENTS OF THE SINGULAR NUMBER.

### OF THE FIRST, FOURTH, AND FIFTH DECLENSIONS.

§ 287. 1. When nouns of the first, fourth, and fifth declensions increase in the singular number, the increment consists of a vowel before the final vowel, and its quantity is determined by the first general rule with its exceptions, § 283, I.

Thus, *aura*, gen. *aurĭi*, § 283, I. Exc. 3, (a.): *fructus*, dat. *fructūi*, § 283, I. (a.): *dies*, gen. *diēi*, § 283, I. Exc. 2, (a.)

### INCREMENTS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION.

2. The increments of the second declension in the singular number are short; as,

*gēner*, *gēnĕri*; *sātur*, *sātūri*; *tĕnĕr*, *tĕnĕri*; *vīr*, *vīri*. Thus,

*Ne, puĕri, ne tanta animis assuescĭte bella. Virg. A. 6, 883.*  
*Monstra sinunt; gēnĕros externis affĕre ab ōris. Id. A. 7, 270.*

Exc. The increment of *Iber* and *Cellāber* is long. For that of genitives in *ius*, see § 283, Exc. 4.

INCREMENTS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

3. The increments of the third declension and singular number in *a* and *o* are long; those in *e*, *i*, *u*, and *y*, are short; as,

*ānīmal, ānīmālis; audax, audācis; sermo, sermōnis; fērox, fērōcis; ōpus, ōpēris; cēler, cēlēris; mīles, mīlītis; supplex, supplicis; murmur, murmūris; dux, dūcis; chlāmys, chlāmýdis; Styx, Stýgis.* Thus,

*Prōnāque cum spectent ānīmālia cētēra terram. Ovid. M. 1, 84.*

*Hæc tum multiplici pōpūlos sermōne replēbat. Virg. A. 4, 189.*

*Incumbent gēnēris lapsi sarcire ruinas. Id. G. 4, 249.*

*Quālem virgīneo dēmēssum pōllīce flōrem. Id. A. 11, 68.*

*Adspice, ventōsi cōcidērunt marmūris aures. Id. E. 9, 68.*

Exceptions in Increments in A.

1. (a.) Masculines in *al* and *ar* (except *Car* and *Nar*) increase short; as, *Annībal, Annībālis; Amīlcar, Amīlcāris.*

(b.) *Par* and its compounds, and the following—*dnas, mas, vas (vādis), bac-car, hēpar, jūbar, lar, nectar*, and *sal*—also increase short.

2. *A*, in the increment of nouns in *s* with a consonant before it, is short; as, *daps, dūpis; Arabs, Arābis.*

3. Greek nouns in *a* and *as* (*ādīs, ānis, or ātis*) increase short; as, *lampas, lampādīs; Mēlas, Mēlānis, poēma, poēmātis.*

4. The following in *az* increase short:—*ābaz, anthrax, Arctōphylax, Atax, Atrax, climax, cōlaz, cōraz, and nycticōraz, drōpaz, fax, harpaz, pānaz, smīlaz, and stýraz.*—The increment of *Sýphaz* is doubtful.

Exceptions in Increments in O.

1. *O*, in the increment of neuter nouns, is short; as, *marmor, marmōris; corpus, corpōris; ēbur, ēbōris.* But *os* (the mouth), and the neuter of comparatives, like their masculine and feminine, increase long. The increment of *ādor* is common.

2. *O* is short in the increment of Greek nouns in *o* or *on*, which, in the oblique cases, have *omicron*, but long in those which have *omēga*; as,

*Aēdon, Aēdōnis; Agāmēmon, Agāmēmōnis:—Plāto, Plātōnis; Sīnon, Sīnōnis; Sīcyon, Sīcyōnis. Sīdon, Orion, and Ægēon*, have the increment common.

3. (a.) In the increment of gentile nouns in *o* or *on*, whether Greek or barbaric, *o* is generally short; as,

*Mācēdo, Mācēdōnis. So, Amazōnes, Aōnes, Myrmidōnes, Santōnes, Saxōnes, Sēnōnes, Teutōnes, etc.*

(b.) But the following have *o* long:—*Eburōnes, Lacōnes, Iōnes, Nasamōnes, Suessōnes* (or *-iōnes*), *Vellōnes, Burgundiōnes.* *Britones* has the *o* common.

4. Greek nouns in *or* increase short; as, *Hector, Hectōris; rhētor, rhētōris; Agēnor, Agēnōris.*

5. Compounds of *pus*, (*πῦς*), as *tripus, pōlypus, Œdīpus*, and also *arbor, mēmor, bos, compos, impos*, and *lēpus*, increase short.

6. *O*, in the increment of nouns in *s* with a consonant before it, is short; as,

*acrobis*, *acrobis*; *knops*, *knops*; *Dollipes*. But it is long in the increment of *cercope*, *Cyclops*, and *hydrops*.

7. The increment of *Allobrox*, *Cappadox*, and *præcox*, is also short.

#### Exceptions in Increments in E.

1. Nouns in *en*, *enis* (except *Hymen*), lengthen their increment; as, *Stren*, *Strēnis*. So, *Aniēnis*, *Nēriēnis*, from *Anio* and *Nerio*, or rather from the obsolete *Anien* and *Nēriēnes*.

2. *Hæres*, *lōctipes*, *mansues*, *merces*, and *quies*—also *Iber*, *ver*, *lex*, *rex*, *ālec* or *alex* (*hāl*) *narthex* and *vervex*—*plebs* and *sepe*—increase long.

3. Greek nouns in *es* and *er* (except *aër* and *æther*) increase long; as, *magnes*, *magnētis*; *crāter*, *crātēris*.

#### Exceptions in Increments in I.

1. Nouns and adjectives in *ix*, increase long; as, *victrix*, *victricis*; *fēlix*, *fēlicis*.

Exc. *Clix*, *Clix*, *coevēdix*, *flūx*, *fornix*, *hystrix*, *lārix*, *nix*, *pix*, *sālix*, *strix*, and rarely *sāndix* or *sāndyx*, increase short.

2. *Vibex* and the following nouns in *is* increase long:—*dis*, *glis*, *lis*, *vis*, *Nāsis*, *Quiris*, and *Samnis*. The increment of *Psōphis* is common.

3. Greek nouns, whose genitive is in *inis* increase long; as, *delphin*, *delphinis*; *Sālāmis*, *Sālāminis*.

#### Exceptions in Increments in U.

1. Genitives in *udis*, *uris*, and *utis*, from nominatives in *us*, have the penult long; as,

*pālus*, *pāludis*; *tellus*, *telluris*; *virtus*, *virtutis*. But *intercus*, *Ligus* and *pēcus* *pēcūdis*, increase short.

2. *Fur*, *frux*, (obs.), *lux*, and *Pollux*, increase long.

#### Exceptions in Increments in Y.

1. Greek nouns whose genitive is in *ynis*, increase long; as, *Trāchyn*, *Trāchynis*.

2. The increment of *bombyx*, *Ceçx*, *gryps*, and *mormyr*, is long; that of *Bebrux* and *sāndyx* is common.

### INCREMENTS OF THE PLURAL NUMBER.

§ 288. 1. A noun in the plural number is said to increase, when, in any case, it has more syllables than in the ablative singular.

REMARK. When the ablative singular is wanting, or its place is supplied by a form derived from a different root, an ablative may, for this purpose, be assumed, by annexing the proper termination to the root of the plural.

2. When a noun increases in the plural number, its penult is called the plural increment; as, *sa* in *māsarum*, *no* in *dōminōrum*, *ri* in *rūptum* and *rūptus*.

3. In plural increments, *a*, *e*, and *o*, are long, *i* and *u* are short; as,

*bōndrum, animābus, rērum, rēbus, gēnērōrum, ambōbus; sermōnibus, līcūbus.*  
Thus,

*Appia, longārum, tēritur, rēgina viārum. Stat. S. 2, 2, 12.*  
*Sunt lacrymæ rerum, et mentem mortalia tangunt. Virg. A. 1, 462.*  
*Atque illi, quorum comœdia prisca virorum est. Hor. S. 1, 4, 2.*  
*Portūbus ægrēdior, ventisque ferentibus ūsus. Ovid.*

#### IV. INCREMENT OF VERBS.

§ 289. 1. A verb is said to increase, when, in any of its parts, it has more syllables than in the second person singular of the present indicative active; as, *das, dā-tis; dōces, dō-cē-mus.*

2. The number of increments in any part of a verb is equal to that of its additional syllables. In verbs, as in nouns, the last syllable is never considered the increment. If a verb has but one increment, it is the penult; and this first increment, through all the variations of the verb, except in reduplicated tenses, continues equally distant from the first syllable. The remaining increments are numbered successively from the first; as,

ā-mas,	mō-nes,	au-dis,
1	1	1
* ā-mā-mus,	mō-nē-tur,	au-dī-tis,
1 2	1 2	1 2
ām-ā-bā-mus,	mōn-ē-rē-tur,	au-di-ē-bas,
1 2 3	1 2 3	1 2 3 4
ām-ā-vē-rā-mus.	mōn-ē-bīm-i-ni.	au-di-ē-bām-i-ni.

3. A verb in the active voice may have three increments; in the passive, it may have four.

4. In determining the increments of deponent verbs, an active voice, formed from the same root, may be supposed.

Thus the increments of *læ-tā-tur, læt-ā-bā-tur*, etc., are reckoned from the supposed verb *læto, lætas*.

§ 290. In the increments of verbs, *a*, *e*, and *o*, are long; *i* and *u* are short; as,

*amāre, mōnēre, faciōte, vōlūmus, rēgēbāmini.* Thus,

*Et cantāre pāres, et respondēre pārātī. Virg. E. 7, 5.*  
*Sic quidem dūcēbam animo, rēbarque futūrum. Jd. A. 6, 690.*  
*Cumque loqui pōtērit, mātrem faciōte salūtet. Ovid, M. 9, 378.*  
*Scinditur incertum stūdia in contrāria vulgus. Virg. A. 2, 39.*  
*Nos nūmērus sūmus, et fruges consūmere nātū. Hor. Ep. 1, 2, 27.*

#### (a.) Exceptions in Increments in A.

The first increment of *do* is short; as, *dāmus, dābāmus, dāret, dātūrus, circumdāre, circumdābāmus.*

(b.) *Exceptions in Increments in E.*

1. *E* before *r* is short in the *first* increment of all the present and imperfect tenses of the third conjugation, and in the *second* increment in *beris* and *bere*; as,

*régere* (infin. and imperat.), *régéris* or *régère* (pres. ind. pass.), *régérem* and *régéret* (imp. subj.); *amāberis*, *amābere*; *mōnēberis*, *mōnēbere*.

NOTE 1. In *vēlim*, *vēlis*, etc., from *volo*, (second person, regularly *vōlis*, by syncope and contraction *vis*), *i* is not an increment, but represents the root vowel *o*, and is therefore short; § 284, and § 178, 1.

2. *E* is short before *ram*, *rim*, *ro*, and the persons formed from them; as,

*amāveram*, *amāverat*, *amāverim*, *mōnuérimus*, *rexéro*, *audivéritis*.

NOTE 2. In verbs which have been shortened by syncope or otherwise, *e* before *r* retains its original quantity; as, *flēram*, for *flēvērā*.

For the short *e* before *rum*, in the perfect indicative, as, *steterunt*, see *Systole*, § 307.

(c.) *Exceptions in Increments in I.*

1. *I* before *v* or *s*, in tenses formed from the second root, is long; as,

*pētavi*, *audivi*, *quasi-vi*, *divisi*, *audivimus*, *divisimus*, *audivēram*.

2. *I* is long, after the analogy of the fourth conjugation, in the final syllable of the third root of *gaudeo*, *arcesso*, *divido*, *fācesso*, *lācesso*, *pēto*, *quæro*, *rēcenseo* and *oblīviscor*; as,

*gāvēus*, *arcessitus*, *divisus*, *fācessitus*, *lācessitus*, *pētūsus*, *quasi-sus*, *rēcensitus*, *oblītus*; *gāvisurus*, etc.

3. *I* in the first increment of the fourth conjugation, except in *imus* of the perfect indicative, is long; as,

*audire*, *audirem*, *auditus*, *auditusus*, pres. *vēntimus*, but in the perfect *vēntimus*. So in the ancient forms in *ibam*, *ibo*, of the fourth conjugation; as, *nutribat*, *lēnibunt*; and also in *ibam* and *ibo*, from *eo*.

NOTE 3. When a vowel follows, the *i* is short, by § 283; as, *audunt*, *audē-*  
*bum*.

4. *I* is long in the first and second persons plural of subjunctives in *sim*, *sis*, *sit*, (to., (§ 162, 1.)); as, *simus*, *sitis*, *vēlimus*, *vēlitis*, and their compounds; as, *possimus*, *adsimus*, *mālimus*, *nōlimus*. So also in *nōlito*, *nōlite*, *nōlūtō*, after the analogy of the fourth conjugation.

5. *I* in *ris*, *rimus* and *ritis*, in the future perfect and perfect subjunctive, is common; as,

*vidēris*, Mart., *occidēris*, Hor.; *vidēritis* (Ovid), *dēdēritis* (Id.); *fēcēritus* (Catull.), *egēritus* (Virg.)

(d.) *Exceptions in Increments in U.*

*U* is long in the increment of supines, and of participles formed from the third root of the verb; as,

*secūsus*, *solūsus*, *secūtūsus*, *solūtūsus*.

# RULES FOR THE QUANTITY OF PENULTIMATE AND ANTEPENULTIMATE SYLLABLES.

## I. PENULTS.

§ 291. 1. Words ending in *acus*, *icus*, and *icum*, shorten the penult; as,

*āmārācus*, *Ægyptiācus*, *rusticus*, *tritūcum*, *viātūcum*.

Except *Dācus*, *mērācus*, *ōpācus*; *āmicus*, *apricus*, *ficus*, *mendācus*, *picus*, *posticus*, *pūdicus*, *spicius*, *umbilicus*, *vicius*.

2. Words ending in *abrum*, *ubrum*, *acrum*, and *atrum*, lengthen the penult; -as,

*candēlabrum*, *dēlabrum*, *lāvācrum*, *vērātrum*.

3. Nouns in *ca* lengthen the penult; as,

*āpōthēca*, *cloāca*, *lactūca*, *lōrica*, *phōca*.

Except *ālica*, *brassica*, *dīca*, *fūlica*, *mantica*, *pēdica*, *peritica*, *scūtica*, *phālārica*, *tūnica*, *vōmica*; and also some nouns in *ica* derived from adjectives in *icus*; as, *fabrica*, *grammātica*, etc. So *mānicæ*.

4. Patronymics in *ades* and *ides* shorten the penult; as, *Atlantiādes*, *Priāmīdes*.

Except those in *ides* which are formed from nouns in *eus* or *ēs* (15); as, *Atrīdes*, from *Atrēs*; *Neoclīdes*, from *Neoclēs*; except, also, *Amphidraīdes*, *Bēlīdes*, *Amyclīdes*, *Lycurgīdes*.

5. Patronymics and similar words in *ais*, *eis*, and *ois*, lengthen the penult; as,

*Achāis*, *Chrījēis*, *Minōis*. Except *Phōcāis* and *Thēbāis*. The penult of *Nēreis* is common.

6. Words in *do* lengthen the penult; as,

*vādo*, *cēdo*, *dulcēdo*, *formīdo*, *rōdo*, *testūdo*. Except *cādo*, *divīdo*, *ēdo* (to eat), *comēdo*, *Macēdo*, *mōdo*, *sōlīdo*, *spādo*, *trēptōdo*. *Rudo* is common.

7. Words in *idus* shorten the penult; those in *udus* lengthen it; as,

*callīdus*, *herbīdus*, *limpīdus*, *livīdus*, *perfidus*; *crūdus*, *lūdus*, *nūdus*, *sūdus*, *ūdus*. Except *Idus*, *fidus*, *infidus*, *nīdus*, *vidus*.

8. Nouns in *ga* and *go* lengthen the penult; as,

*sāga*, *collēga*, *aurīga*, *rūga*; *īmāgo*, *cālīgo*, *arūgo*. Except *cālīga*, *ossīfrāga*, *lōgn*, *plāga*, (a region, or a net), *fūga* and its compounds, *stēga*, *ecclōga*, *ēgo*, *harpāgo*, *līgo*.

9. Words in *le*, *les*, and *lis*, lengthen the penult; as,

*crīnāle*, *mantēle*, *ancile*; *ales*, *mīles*, *prōles*; *annālis*, *crūdēlis*, *ciuilis*, *cārūlis*.—Except *māle*;—verbals in *ilis* and *bilis*; as, *āgilis*, *āmābilis*;—adjectives in *atilis*; as, *umbrātīlis*;—and also, *indōles*, *sōbōles*; *pērisclēlis*, *dapalūlis*, *grācilis*, *hāmīlis*, *pārīlis*, *simīlis*, *stērilis*, *mūgilis*, *strīgilis*.

10. Words in *elus*, *ela*, *elum*, lengthen the penult; as,

*phāsēlus*, *quērēla*, *prēlum*. Except *gēlus*, *gēlum*, *scēlus*.

11. Diminutives in *olus*, *ola*, *olum*, *ulus*, *ula*, *ulum*, also words in

*ilus*, and those in *ulus*, *ula*, and *ulum*, of more than two syllables, shorten the penult; as,

*urceolus*, *filiola*, *lectulus*, *radiuncula*, *corculum*, *pabulum*; *rutilus*, *garrulus*, *fabula*. Except *asilus*.

12. Words in *ma* lengthen the penult; as,

*fama*, *poëma*, *rîma*, *plâma*. Except *anima*, *côma*, *décûma*, *lacrima*, *victîma*, *hama*.

13. A vowel before final *men* or *mentum* is long; as,

*lêdmen*, *grâmen*, *crîmen*, *flâmen*, *jûmentum*, *âtrdmentum*. Except *tâmen*, *côlâmen*, *Hymen*, *êlémentum*, and a few verbal nouns derived from verbs of the second and third conjugations; as, *âlimentum*, *dôcûmen* or *dôcûmentum*, *êmôlûmentum*, *mônûmentum*, *régîmen*, *spêctîmen*, *tégîmen*, etc.

14. Words ending in *imus* shorten the penult; as,

*ânimus*, *dêctîmus*, *finitîmus*, *fortissîmus*, *maxîmus*. Except *bîmus*, *lîmus*, *mîmus*, *ôptîmus*, *quadrîmus*, *simus*, *trîmus*, and two superlatives, *îmus* and *prîmus*.

NOTE. When an adjective ends in *umus* for *imus*, the quantity remains the same; as, *dêctûmus*, *optûmus*, *maxûmus*, for *dêctîmus*, etc.

15. *A*, *e*, *o*, and *u*, before final *mus* and *mum*, are long; as,

*râmus*, *rêmus*, *extrêmus*, *prômus*, *dûmus*, *pômum*, *vôlênum*. Except *âtômus*, *balsânum*, *cinnânum*, *dômus*, *glômus*, *hîmus*, *postîmus*, *thalâmus*, *tômus*, *caldâmus*, *nêmus*.

16. (a.) Words in *na*, *ne*, *ni*, and *nis*, lengthen the penult; as,

*lâna*, *ârêna*, *cârîna*, *mâtrôna*, *lûna*, *mâne*, *septêni*, *octôni*, *tnânîs*, *fînis*, *immânîs*. Except *advêna*, *cottâna*, *ptîsâna*, *mîna*, *gêna*, *bêne*, *sine*, *cânîs*, *cînis*, *jûvênis*; and the following in *ina*,—*buccîna*, *dômnâna*, *fiscîna*, *fêmnâna*, *fuscîna*, *lâmnâna*, *mâchîna*, *pâgîna*, *pdâna*, *sarcîna*, *tibicîna*, *trûtîna*: and in plur. *âpinæ*, *mînæ*, *nundânæ*. So compounds of *gêno*; as, *indigêna*.

(b.) Verbs in *ino* and *inor* shorten the penult; as,

*destîno*, *fascîno*, *inquîno*, *sîno*, *criminor*. Except *festîno*, *propîno*, *sâgîno*, *ôptînor*, and the compounds of *clîno*; as, *inclîno*, etc.

17. (a.) Adjectives in *inus*, when they express time, or indicate a material or an inanimate substance, shorten the penult; as,

*crastînus*, *diûtînus*, *pristînus*, *pêrendînus*: *fâgînus*, *crôcînus*, *hyâcînthînus*, *addâmantînus*, *crystallînus*, *oléâgînus*, *bombÿcînus*. Except *mâtûtînus*, *rêpentînus*, *vespertînus*.

(b.) Other adjectives and words in *inus* and in *inum* lengthen the penult; as,

*canînus*, *bînus*, *pêregrînus*, *mârînus*, *clandestînus*, *sûpînus*: *lînum*. Except *âcînus*, *âsînus*, *coccînus*, *cômnînus*, *êmnînus*, *côphînus*, *dômnînus*, *fâcînus*, *fâlcînus*, *prôtînus*, *sînus*, *terminînus*, *gêmnînus*, *cîrcînus*, *mînus*, *vâtîcînus*, *succînum*, *fascînum*.

18. *A*, *e*, *o*, and *u*, before final *nus* and *num*, are long; as,

*urbânus*, *sêrênus*, *patrônus*, *prônus*, *mûnus*, *tribânus*, *fânus*, *vênênum*, *dônus*. Except *ânus*, an old woman, *galbânus*, *mânus*, *ocêânus*, *plâtânus*, *êbênus*, *gênus*, *lîngîgênus*, *pênus*, *tênus*, *Vênus*, *ônus*, *bônus*, *sônus*, *thrônus*; *lâgânus*, *peucêdânus*, *pôpânus*, *tympânus*, *abrôlônus*.

19. Words ending in *ba*, *bo*, *pa*, and *po*, shorten the penult; as,

*fâba*, *jûba*, *syllâba*; *bîbo*, *cûbo*, *prôbo*; *âlpâ*, *lîpa*, *scâpha*; *crêpo*, *partîcîpo*. Except *glêba*, *scribo*, *bûbo*, *glûbo*, *lûbo*, *nâbo*, *scribo*, *sîpho*, *cêpa*, *cûpa*, *pâpa*, *pûpa*, *rîpa*, *scôpa*, *stûpa*; *câpo*, *rêpo*, *stîpo*.

20. Words in *al*, *ar*, *are*, and *aris*, lengthen the penult; as,  
*tribūnāl*, *vectigāl*: *lūpānār*, *pulvinār*; *allāre*, *liqueāre*; *nāris*. Except *ānimal*,  
*cāpitāl*, *cūbital*, *lōrāl*, *jūdār*, *sālār*, *māre*, *bimāris*, *hilaris*, *canthāria*, *cappāris*,  
*lcaris*.

21. Before final *ro* or *ror*, *a* and *e* are short; *i*, *o*, and *u*, are long; as,

*āro*, *pāro*, *fēro*, *gēro*, *sēro*, *cēlēro*, *tempēro*, *quēror*; *mīror*, *spīro*, *tīro*; *auctōro*,  
*ignōro*, *ōro*; *cūro*, *dūro*, *figūro*; *lūror*. Except *declāro*, *pēro*, *spēro*; *fōro*, *mō-*  
*ror*, *sōror*, *vōro*, *fūro*, *sātūro*; and derivatives from genitives increasing short;  
as, *augūror*, *dēcōro*, *mēmōro*, *murmūro*, etc.; from *augur*, *augūris*; *dēcus*, *dēcō-*  
*ris*, etc.

22. Before final *rus*, *ra*, *rum*, *e* is short; the other vowels are long; as,

*mērum*, *mērus*, *hēdēra*, *sērum*, *cēlērum*; *cārus*, *mīrus*, *mōrus*, *mūrus*, *gīrus*;  
*āra*, *spira*, *ōra*, *nātūra*, *lōrum*.

Except, 1. *austērus*, *gālērus*, *plērus*, *prōcērus*, *sincērus*, *sērus*, *sēvērus*, *vērus*,  
*crātēra*, *cēra*, *pēra*, *panthēra*, *stātēra*.

Exc. 2. *barbārus*, *cammārus*, *cāmūrus*, *canthārus*, *chōrus*, *fōrus*, *hellēbōrus*,  
*nūrus*, *ōptipārus*, *ōvipārus*, *phosphōrus*, *pīrus*, *sātīrus*, *scārus*, *spārus*, *tartārus*,  
*lōrus*, *zēphīrus*; *amphōra*, *ancōra*, *cithāra*, *hāra*, *līra*, *mōra*, *purpōra*, *philīra*,  
*pūra*, *sātira*; *fōrum*, *gārum*, *pārum*, *suppārum*.

23. Adjectives in *osus* lengthen the penult; as,

*fūmōsus*, *vinōsus*.

24. Nouns in *etas* and *ūas* shorten the penult; as,

*pētās*, *civitas*, *bōnitas*.

25. Adverbs in *tim* lengthen the penult, those in *iter* and *itus* shorten it; as,

*stātīm*, (constantly), *trītīm*, *tribūtīm*; *acriter*, *fundītus*. Except *stātīm*, (im-  
mediately), *offātīm*.

26. (a.) Words in *ates*, *itis*, *otis*, and in *ata*, *eta*, *ota*, *uta*, lengthen the penult, as,

*vātes*, *pēnātes*, *vītis*, *mītis*, *cāryōtis*, *lcarīōtis*, *pirāta*, *mēta*, *poēta*, *ālūta*, *cicūta*.  
Except *sītis*, *pōtis*, *drāpēta*, *nōta*, *rōta*.

(b.) Nouns in *ita* shorten the penult; as,

*āmīta*, *nāvīta*, *orbīta*, *sēmīta*. Except *pīuīta*.

27. Nouns in *atum*, *itum*, *utum*, lengthen the penult; as,

*lūpātum*, *acōnītum*, *vērītum*. Except *dēfrūtum*, *pulpītum*, *pēlōritum*, *lūtum*  
(mud), *compītum*.

28. Nouns and adjectives ending in *tus* lengthen the penult; as,

*barbātus*, *grātus*, *bolētus*, *fūcētus*, *crīnītus*, *pēritus*, *agrētus*, *lōtus*, *argūtus*, *hir-*  
*sūtus*. Except *cātus*, *lātus*, (-ēris), *impētus*, *mētus*, *vēgētus*, *vētus*; *anhēlītus*, *dīgī-*  
*tus*, *grātītus*, *hālītus*, *hospītus*, *servītus*, *servītus*; *antīdōtus*, *nōtus*, *quōtus*, *lōtus*  
(so great); *arbūtus*, *pūtus*; *inclītus*; and derivatives from perfect participles  
having a short penult; as, *exercītus*, *hābītus*.

29. A penultimate vowel before *v* is long; as,

*clāva*, *ōlīva*, *dīves*, *nāvis*, *civis*, *pāpāver*, *pāvo*, *prīvo*, *ovum*, *prāvus*, *astīvus*,  
*fūgīvius*. Except *avis*, *brēvis*, *grāvis*, *lēvis*, *ovis*; *cāvo*, *grāvo*, *jāvo*, *lāvo*, *lōvo*,  
*ovo*; *āvus*, *cāvus*, *fāvus*, *nōvus*, *fāvor*, *pāvor*, *nōvem*.



30. Words ending in *dex*, *dix*, *mex*, *nix*, *lex*, *rex*, lengthen the enult; as,

*cōdex*, *jūdex*; *lōdix*, *rādix*; *cīmea*, *pūmea*; *jūnia*; *īlex*; *cārea*, *mūrea*.  
Except *cūlex*, *sīlex*, *rūmea*.

## II. ANTEPENULTS

§ 292. 1. *I* is short in diminutives in *icūlus* and *icellus* (*a*, *um*), whether nouns or adjectives; as,

*collicūlus*, *dulcicūlus*, *craticūla*, *pellicūla*, *mollicellus*. Except words in which the preceding vowel is short; as, *cūticūla*, *cānicūla*: or in which *i* is long in the primitive; as, *cornicūla*, from *cornix*, *-icis*.

2. Numerals in *ginti*, *ginta*, *ēni*, and *estmus*, lengthen the antepenult; as,

*viginti*, *quadrāginta*, *tricēni*, *quingūgēsimus*.

3. *O* and *u* before final *lentus* are short; as,

*vinōlentus*, *fraudōlentus*, *pulvērōlentus*, *trīcūlentus*.

4. A vowel before final *nea*, *neo*, *nia*, *nio*, *nus*, *nium*, is long; as,

*āranea*, *linea*, *cāneo*, *mūnia*, *pūnio*, *Fāvōnius*, *patrīmōnium*. Except *castānea*, *ānea*, *māneo*, *mīneo*, *mōneo*, *sēneo*, *tēneo*, *ignōminia*, *luscinia*, *vēnia*, *lānio*, *vēnio*, *ingēnium*, *gēnium*, *sēnio*, *sēnium*; words in *cinium*, as, *lenōcinium*; and derivatives in *onius*, when *o* in the root of the primitive is short; as, *Agāmēnōnius*, from *Agāmēnnon*, *-ōnis*.

5. Words ending in *areo*, *arius*, *arium*, *erium*, *orius*, *orium*, lengthen the antepenult; as,

*āreo*, *cibārius*, *plantārium*, *dictērīum*, *censōrius*, *tentōrium*. Except *cāreo*, *vārius*, *dēstidērīum*, *impērīum*, *māgīstērīum*, *mīnistērīum*.

6. Adjectives in *atīcus*, *atīlis*, lengthen the antepenult; as,

*āquātīcus*, *plumātīlis*. Except some Greek words in *atīcus*; as, *grammātīcus*

7. *I* before final *tūdo* is short; as,

*altītūdo*, *longītūdo*.

8. Verbals in *bilis* lengthen *a* but shorten *i* in the antepenult; as,

*amābilis*, *mīrābilis*; *crēdibilis*, *terrībilis*. In *hābilis*, *b* belongs to the root.

9. *U* before *v* is short, (except in *Jūverna*); as,

*jūvēnis*, *jūvēnālis*, *jūvēnilitas*, *flūvius*, *dilūvium*.

## III. PENULT OF PROPER NAMES.

§ 293. 1. Patrials and proper names of more than two syllables, found in the poets with the following terminations, shorten the penult:—

ba,	de,	o, <sup>6</sup>	ges;	dus, <sup>18</sup>	ena, <sup>19</sup>	arus,	atus, <sup>22</sup>
ca, <sup>1</sup>	le, <sup>4</sup>	on, <sup>7</sup>	les,	eus, <sup>14</sup>	anes,	erus, <sup>21</sup>	itus, <sup>23</sup>
la, <sup>2</sup>	pe, <sup>5</sup>	os, <sup>8</sup>	lis, <sup>10</sup>	gus, <sup>15</sup>	enes,	yrus,	otus, <sup>24</sup>
be,	re,	er, <sup>9</sup>	bus,	lus, <sup>16</sup>	aris,	asus,	
ce, <sup>3</sup>	al,	mas,	cus, <sup>11</sup>	mus, <sup>17</sup>	yris,	osus,	
che,	il,	ras,	ohus, <sup>12</sup>	phus, <sup>18</sup>	asis, <sup>20</sup>	usus,	

*Exceptions.*

<sup>1</sup>Mārtea, Nāsica. — <sup>2</sup>Erīphyla, Messāla, Philōmēla, Suādēla. — <sup>3</sup>Bērētea. — <sup>4</sup>Erīphyle, Neōbule, Pērīmēle. — <sup>5</sup>Eurōpe, Sinōpe. — <sup>6</sup>Carthāgo, Cūpāvo, Cūpido, Origo, Theiāno. — <sup>7</sup>Alēmōn, Anthēdon, Chalcēdon, Iāson, Philēmōn, Pōlypēmōn, Sarpēdon, Thermōdon. — <sup>8</sup>Cercyrōs, Pēpārēthos, Pharsālos, Scīrphos. — <sup>9</sup>Meleāger. — <sup>10</sup>Bessālis, Eumēlis, Jivēnālis, Martialis, Phāsēlis, Stymphālis. — <sup>11</sup>Bēnācus, Calcus, Grānicus, Nūmicus, Trivicus. — <sup>12</sup>Ophiūchus. — <sup>13</sup>Abydus. — <sup>14</sup>Cāphāreus, Enipeus, Prōmētheus, Phōrōneus, Salmōneus, Oileus. — <sup>15</sup>Cēthēgus. — <sup>16</sup>*Names in -clus, in -olus (except Æolus, Naubōlus), in -bulus, (except Bibulus) Eumēlus, Gætūlus, Iūlus, Massylus, Orbēlus, Pharsālus, Sardānāpālus, Stymphālus.* — <sup>17</sup>*Some in -dēmus and -phēmus; as, Acādēmus, Pōlyphēmus.* — <sup>18</sup>Seriphus. — <sup>19</sup>Alcmēna, Athēnē, Cāmēna, Fidēna, Messēna, Mūrēna, Mýcēnē. — <sup>20</sup>Amāsīs. — <sup>21</sup>Hōmērus, Ibērus. — <sup>22</sup>Arātus, Cærātus, Torquātus. — <sup>23</sup>Hērāclitus, Hērnanphrōditus. — <sup>24</sup>Būthrōtus.

2. Proper names of more than two syllables, found in the poets with the following terminations, *lengthen* the penult:—

ana, <sup>1</sup>	sa,	num, <sup>7</sup>	tas,	nus, <sup>12</sup>	urus,	etus, <sup>16</sup>
ina, <sup>2</sup>	ta, <sup>4</sup>	tum, <sup>13</sup>	des, <sup>9</sup>	pus, <sup>13</sup>	esus, <sup>15</sup>	utus,
ona, <sup>3</sup>	tæ, <sup>5</sup>	or, <sup>8</sup>	tes, <sup>10</sup>	irus,	isus,	ytus, <sup>17</sup>
yna,	ene, <sup>6</sup>	nas,	tis, <sup>11</sup>	orus, <sup>14</sup>	ysus,	vus.

*Exceptions.*

<sup>1</sup>Sēquāna. — <sup>2</sup>Mūtina, Proserpina, Ruspina, Sarsina. — <sup>3</sup>Axōna, Matrōna. — <sup>4</sup>Dalmāta, Prōchyta, Sarmāta, Lāpitha. — <sup>5</sup>Gālātæ, Jaxāmētæ, Massāgētæ, Mācētæ, Saurōmātæ. — <sup>6</sup>Clymēne, Hēlēne, Melpōmēne, Nyctimēne. — <sup>7</sup>Ariminum, Drēpanum. — <sup>8</sup>Nūmītor. — <sup>9</sup>Miltiādes, Pylādes, Sōtādes, Thūcydides; *patronymics in -des, (§ 291, 4), and plurals in -ades.* — <sup>10</sup>Antiphates, Charites, Eurybates, Ichnobates, Euergetes, Massagetes, and all names in -crates. — <sup>11</sup>Dercetis. — <sup>12</sup>Aplidānus, Apōnus, Cārānus, Chrýsogōnus, Ciminus, Clymēnus, Concanus, Dardānus, Diādūmēnus, Eārinus, Eridānus, Fūcinus, Hēlēnus, Libānus, Mōrini, Mýcōnus, Nebrōphōnus, Olēnus, Perclymēnus, Rhodānus, Santōnus, Sēquāni, Stēphānus, Telēgōnus, Terminus, and names in -gonus and -xenus. — <sup>13</sup>Cēpus. — <sup>14</sup>Pācorus, Bospōrus, and names in -chorus and -phorus; as, Stēsichorus, Phosphorus. — <sup>15</sup>Ephesus, Vogesus, Volēsus. — <sup>16</sup>Lāpētus, Tāygētus, Vēnētus. — <sup>17</sup>Æpytus, Anytus, Eurytus, Hippolytus.

3. The penultimate vowel of the following proper names, and adjectives derived from proper names, though followed by a vowel, is long. See § 283, I. Exc. 6.

Enēas, Æthion, Achēlōus, Achillēus, Alcyōnēus, Alexandria, Alōeus, Alpheus, Aminēus, Amphiarāus, Amphigēnia, Amphion, Amythāon, Arion, Anchisēus, Atlantēus, Antiōchia, Biōnēus, Cēsāirēa, Calaurēa, Calliōpēa, Cassiōpēa, Cleantēas, Cydōnēus, Cymōdōcēa, Cythērēa, Dārius (-ēus), Dēidāmia, Didymāon, Diomēdēus, Dolichāon, Echion, Elēus, Endymionēus, Enyo, Eōus, Erēbēus, Erechthēus, Gālātēa, Gigantēus, Hērāclēa (-ēus), Hippodāmia, Hypērion, Iithyia, Imāon, Iōlaus, Iphigēnia, Ixion, Lāodāmia, Lātōus, Lesbōus, Lycāon, Māchāon, Mausolēum, Mēdēa, Mēnēlaus, Methion, Myrtōus, Ophion, Orion, Orthyia, Orphēus, Pallantēum (-us), Pandion, Paphagēa, Pēnēus, Penthesillēa, Phœbēus, Poppēa, Prōtēsilaus, Pyrēnēus, Sardōus, Thalia.

NOTE. *Eus* in the termination of Greek proper names, is commonly a diphthong; as, *Alceus, Cæneus, Orpheus, Pileus, Perseus, Proteus, Theseus, Tydeus*, which are dissyllables; *Briareus, Enipeus, Macæreus, Typhoeus*, which are trisyllables, *Idomeneus*, etc. Cf. § 283, Exc. 6, Note 2. But in those which in Greek are written *εως* (*eios*), *eus* forms two syllables; as, *Alpheus*. So also in adjectives in *eus*, whether of Greek or Latin origin; as, *Erēbēus, Erechthēus, Orphēus; amētus, lignētus*.

## QUANTITY OF FINAL SYLLABLES.

## I. VOWELS.

## MONOSYLLABLES.

§ 294. (a.) All monosyllables, except enclitics, ending in a vowel, are long; as,

*ā, āh, dā, stā, ē, dē, mē, tē, sē, nē, rē, ī, fī, hī, quī, nī, sī, O* or *ōh, dō, prō, prōh, quō, siō, tū.*

## POLYSYLLABLES.

*A final.*

1. *A* final, in words declined, is short; as, *mūsā, templā, cāpītā, Tȳdēā.* Thus,

*Mūsā mīhi causas mēmōrā; quo nūmīne lasso.... Virg. A. 1, 8.*

Exc. *A* final is long in the ablative of the first declension, and in the vocative of Greek nouns in *as* and *es*; as,

*Mūsā, fundā; O Enēā, O Pallā, O Anchisā.*

2. *A* final, in words not declined, is long; as, *āmā, frustrā, antēā, ergā, intrā.* Thus,

*Extrā fortunam est quidquid donatur amicis. Mart. Epig. 5, 42, 7.*

Exc. *A* final is short in *eiā, itā, quā,* and in *pūtā*, when used adverbially, in the sense of 'for example.' It is sometimes short in the preposition *contra*, and in numerals ending in *ginta*; as, *trīginta*, etc. In *postea*, it is common.

*A* final is also short in the names of Greek letters; as, *alphā, bēlā*, etc., and in *tārantārā*, the imitated sound of the trumpet.

*E final.*

§ 295. *E* final, in words of two or more syllables, is short; as, *nātē, patrē, ipsē, currē, rēgērē, nempē, antē.* Thus,

*Incipē, parvū puer, risu cognoscere matrem. Virg. E. 4, 60.*

REMARK. The enclitics *-que, -ne, -ve, -ce, -te, -ple*, etc., as they are not used alone, have *e* short, according to the rule; as, *nēquē, hūjuscē, suaptē.* Cf. § 294, (a.)

Exc. 1. *E* final is long in nouns of the first and fifth declensions; as,

*Calliōpē, Tȳdīdē, fidē.* So also in the compounds of *rē* and *diē*; as, *quārē, hōdiē, pridē, postridiē, quātidē*, and in the ablative *fāmē*, originally of the fifth declension.

Exc. 2. *E* final is long in Greek vocatives from nouns in *-es*, of the third declension; as, *Achillē, Hippōmēnē*; and in Greek neuters plural; as, *cētē, mēlē, pēlāgē, Tempē.*

Exc. 3. In the second conjugation, *e* final is long in the second person singular of the imperative active; as, *dōcē, mōnē*;—but it is sometimes short in *cāve, vāle* and *vīde*.

Exc. 4. *E* final is long in adverbs formed from adjectives of the second declension; as,

*placide, pulchrē, valde* for *valdē, maximē*; but it is short in *benē, malē, infernē, and supernē*.

Exc. 5. *Fērē, fermē, and dhē*, have the final *e* long.

### I final.

§ 296. *I* final is long; as, *dōminī, fili, classī, dōcērī, sī*. Thus,

*Quid dōminī faciēnt, audent cum tālia fūres.* Virg. E. 8, 16.

Exc. 1. (*a*.) *I* final is common in *mīhi, tibi, sibi, ibi, and ubi*.

(*b*.) In *ūtiq̄ue* and commonly in *ibidem* it is long, but in *ūtivis* and *ūtinam* it is short.—(*c*.) In *nisi, quāsi, and cui*, when a dissyllable, *i* final is common, but usually short. In *ūtinam* and *ūtiq̄ue*, and rarely, also, in *ūti*, it is short.

Exc. 2. *I* final is short in the dative singular of Greek nouns of the third declension, which increase in the genitive; as, *Pallādī, Minōdā, Tēthijī*.

Exc. 3. *I* final is short in the vocative of Greek nouns in *-is*; as, *Alexī, Daphnī, Pārī*. But it is long in vocatives from Greek nouns in *-is, (ur) -entos*; as, *Simōī, Pýrōī*.

Exc. 4. *I* final is short in Greek datives and ablatives plural in *-si*, or, before a vowel, *-sin*; as, *Dryadī, hērōiā, Trōāsin*.

### O final.

§ 297. *O* final, in words of two or more syllables, is common; as, *virgō, āmō, quāndō*. Thus,

*Ergō mētū cāpita Scylla est inimica pāterno.* Virg. Cir. 886.

*Ergō sollicitae tu causa, pēcūnia, vitae es!* Prop. 8, 5, 1.

Exc. 1. *O* final is long in the dative and ablative singular; as, *dōminō, regnō, bonō, suō, illō, eō*.

Exc. 2. *O* final is long in ablatives used as adverbs; as, *certō, falsō, mēritō, vulgō, eō, quō*; and also in *omnīnō*, in *ergō*, 'for the sake of,' and in the interjection *itō*.

REMARK 1. The final *o* of verbs is almost always long in poets of the Augustan age.

REM. 2. In poets subsequent to the Augustan age, final *o* in verbs, in gerunds, and in the adverbs *adeo, ideo, ergo, sero, vtro, porro, retro, immo, idcirco, subito*, and *postremo*, is sometimes short.

Exc. 3. *O* final is short in *cito, illūco, prōfecto*, and the compounds of *mōdo*; as, *dummōdō, postmōdō*, etc.; and in *ēgo* and *hōmo* it is more frequently short than long.

Exc. 4. *O* final in Greek nouns written with an omēga (ω) is long; as, *Clō, Didō, Athō, and Andrōgeō*, (gen.)

### U final.

§ 298. 1. *U* final is long; as, *vultū, cornū, Panthū, dictū, diū*. Thus,

*Vultu, quo coelum tempestatesque serēnat.* Virg. A. 1, 255.

Exc. *Indū* and *nēnū*, ancient forms of *in* and *non*, have *u* short. *U* is also short in terminations in *ūs* short, when *s* is removed by elision; as, *contentū*, for *contentūs*. See § 305, 2.

### Y final.

2. *Y* final is short; as, *Mōly*, *Tīphŷ*. Thus,

*Mōly* vōcant sup̄eri: nigrā rādice tēnētur. *Ovid. M. 14, 292.*

Exc. *Y* in the dative *Tēthŷ*, being formed by contraction, is long. § 283, III.

## II. CONSONANTS.

### MONOSYLLABLES.

§ 299 1. Monosyllabic *substantives* ending in a consonant are long; all other monosyllables ending in a consonant are short; as,

*sōl*, *vīr*, *fūr*, *jūs*, *sp̄lēs*, *vēr*, *fār*, *lār*, *Nār*, *pār*, *Sēr*, *fūr*, *fās*, *mās*, *rēs*, *pēs*, *Dis*, *glīs*, *līs*, *vis*, *flōs*, *mōs*, *rōs*, *Trōs*, *ōs*, (*ōris*), *dōs*, *grūs*, *rūs*, *tūs*; —*nēc*, *in*, *ān*, *āb*, *ād*, *quid*, *quīs*, *quōt*, *ēt*; as,

*Ip̄e docet quid āgam. Fās est et āb hoste dōcēri. Ovid. M. 4, 428.*

*Vēr adeo frondi nēmōrum, vēr ūtile silvis. Virg. G. 2, 323.*

NOTE. The rules for the quantity of final syllables ending in a consonant imply that the consonant is single, and that it is preceded by a single vowel. If otherwise the syllable will be long by § 283, IV. and II.

Exc. 1. *Ōr*, *fēl*, *mēl*, *pōl*, *vīr*, *ōs* (gen. *ossis*), and probably *vas* (*vādīs*), are short.

Exc. 2. *En*, *nōn*, *quīn*, *sīn*, *crās*, *plūs*, *cūr*, and *pār*, are long: so also are particles and pronouns ending in *c*, except *nēc*, which is short, and the pronouns *hic* and *hōc*, in the nominative and accusative, which are common.

Exc. 3. Monosyllabic plural cases of pronouns and forms of verbs in *as*, *es*, and *is*, are long; as, *hās*, *quās*, *hōs*, *nōs*, *vōs*, *quōs*, *hīs*, *quīs*; —*dās*, *flēs*, *stēs*, *is*, *fīs*, *sīs*, *vīs*; except *ēs* from *sum* which is short.

Exc. 4. The abridged imperatives retain the quantity of their root; as, *dīc*, *dūc*, from *dīco*, *dūco*; *fāc*, *fēr*, from *fācio*, *fēro*.

### POLYSYLLABLES.

### D, L, N, R, T, final.

2. Final syllables ending in *d*, *l*, *n*, *r*, and *t*, are short; as, *illūd*, *consul*, *carmēn*, *pātēr*, *cāpūt*. Thus,

*Obstūpuit simul ip̄e, simul percussus Achātes. Virg. A. 1, 513.*

*Nēmēn Arlōnium Sicūlas implēvērāt urbes. Ovid. F. 2, 93.*

*Dum loquor, horrōr, habet; parsque est meminisse dōloris. Id. M. 9, 291.*

Exc. 1. *E* in *liēn* is long.

Exc. 2. In Greek nouns, nominatives in *n* (except those in *on*, written with an *omicron*), masculine or feminine accusatives in *an* or *en*, and genitives plural in *on*, lengthen the final syllable; as,

*Tūtān*, *Orlōn*, *Enlōn*, *Anchlōn*, *Calliōpēn*; *epigrammātōn*,

Exc. 3. *Ær*, *æthēr*, and nouns in *ēr* which form their genitive in *ēris*, lengthen the final syllable; as,

*cratēr*, *soțēr*. So also *Ibēr*; but the compound *Celiber* has sometimes in Martial its last syllable short.

REMARK. A final syllable ending in *t*, may be rendered long by a diphthong, by contraction, by syncopation, or by position; as, *aut*, *abit* for *abiit*, *fūmāt*, for *fumāvīt*, *amānt*. See § 283, II. III. IV., and § 162, 7, (d.)

### M final.

NOTE. Final *m* with the preceding vowel is almost always cut off, when the next word begins with a vowel. See *Ecthipsis*, § 305, 2.

3. Final syllables ending in *m*, when it is not cut off, are short; as,

*Quam laudas, plūmā? cocto nūm adest hōnor idem. Hor. S. 2, 2, 28.*

REMARK. Hence in composition the final syllables of *cum* and *circum* are short; as, *cōmēdo*, *circūmāgo*.

### C final.

4. Final syllables ending in *c* are long; as, *ālēc*, *illīc*, *istāc*, *illūc*. Thus,

*Illic indocto primum se exercebat arcu. Tib. 2, 1, 69.*

Exc. The final syllable of *dōnēc* is short; as,

*Dōnēc ēris fēlix, multos nūmērābis amīcos. Ovid. Trist. 1, 9, 5.*

### AS, ES, and OS, final.

§ 300. Final syllables in *as*, *es*, and *os*, are long; as,

*māsās*, *piētās*, *āmās*, *Enēās*, *quiēs*, *sermōnēs*, *diēs*, *Pēnēlopēs*, *dūcentiēs*, *mōnēs*, *hōnēs*, *vīrēs*, *dōminōs*. Thus,

*Hæc autem terrās, Italiq̃ue hanc litōris oram. Virg. A. 8, 396.*

*Sī mōdo dēs illis cultus, similesq̃ue parātus. Ovid. M. 6, 454.*

Exc. 1. (a.) *AS*. *As* is short in *ānds*, in Greek nouns whose genitive ends in *ādis* or *ados*; as, *Arcās*, *Pallās*; and in Greek accusatives plural of the third declension; as, *hērōās*, *lampādās*.

(b.) *As* is short also in Latin nouns in *as*, *ados*, formed like Greek patronymics; as, *Appiās*.

Exc. 2. *ES*. (a.) Final *es* is short in nouns and adjectives of the third declension which increase short in the genitive; as, *hospēs*, *linēs*, *hēbēs*; gen. *hospītis*, etc.

(b.) But it is long in *abiēs*, *ariēs*, *pāriēs*, *Cērēs*, and *pēs*, with its compounds *cornipēs*, *sompēs*, etc.

(c.) *Es*, in the present tense of *sum* and its compounds, and in the preposition *pēnēs*, is short.

(d.) *Es* is short in Greek neuters in *es*; as, *cacōthēs*, and in Greek nominatives and vocatives plural from nouns of the third declension, which increase in the genitive; as, *Arcādēs*, *Trōēs*, *Amazōnēs*; from *Arcas*, *Arcadis*, etc.

Exc. 3. *OS*. (a.) *Os* is short in *compōs*, *impōs*, and *ōs* (*ossis*), with its compound *exōs*.

(b.) *O* is short in Greek nouns and cases written in the original with *omicron*; as (1) in all neuters; as, *chaos*, *épós*, *Argós*; (2) in all nouns of the second declension; as, *Ilíds*, *Týrós*, *Délós*; except those whose genitive is in *ō*, (Greek *ω*); as, *Athós*, gen. *Athō*; (3) in genitives singular of the third declension; as, *Palládós*, *Tēthyós*, from *Pallás* and *Tēthys*.

### IS, US, and YS, final.

§ 301. Final syllables in *is*, *us*, and *ys*, are short; as,

*terris*, *militis*, *milis*, *amātis*, *amābis*, *māgis*; *pectus*, *bōnus*, *ējus*, *amāmus*, *ruretis*, *lōnis*; *Cāpys*, *litjs*. Thus,

Non *apis* inde tūlit collectos sēdūla flōres. *Ovid. M.* 13, 928.

Serius aut citius sēdem prōpēdantis ad anam. *Id. M.* 10, 33.

At *Cāpys*, et quōrum mēlior sententia menti. *Virg. A.* 2, 35.

Exc. 1. *IS*. (a.) *Is* is long in plural cases; as,

*mīsis*, *nōbis*; *omnis*, *urbis*, (for *omnēs*, *urbēs*); *quis*, (for *quēs* or *quibus*). So also in the adverbs *grātis*, *ingrātis*, and *fōris*, which are in reality datives or ablatives plural.

Et liquidī sīmūl ignis; ut *his* exordia *primis*. *Virg. A.* 6, 33.

*Quis* ante ora patrum Trōjæ sub mœnibus altis. *Id. A.* 1, 95.

Non *omnis* arbusta jūvant, hūmilesque mýricæ. *Id. E.* 4, 2.

Adde tōt *ēgrégias urbis*, *opérumque labōrem*. *Id. G.* 2, 155.

(b.) *Is* is long in the nominative of nouns whose genitive ends in *itis*, *inis*, or *entis*; as, *Sannis*, *Sālmis*, *Simois*.

(c.) *Is* is long in the second person singular of the present indicative active of the fourth conjugation; as,

*audis*, *nescis*. So also in the second persons, *fis*, *is*, *sīs*, *vis*, *vēlis*, and their compounds; as, *adsis*, *possis*, *quamvis*, *mālis*, *nōlis*, etc. Cf. § 299, 1, Exc. 3.

(d.) *Ris*, in the future perfect and perfect subjunctive, is common; as, *vidēris*.

Exc. 2. *US*. (a.) *Us* is long in nouns of the third declension which increase long, and in the genitive singular, and the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural of the fourth declension, (§ 89, Rem., and § 283, III.) ; as,

*tellus*, *virtus*, *incus*;—*fructus*. But *pālus*, with the *us* short, occurs in Horace, *Art. Poet.* 65.

(b.) *Us* is long in Greek nouns written in the original with the diphthong *ous* (*ους*) whether in the nominative or genitive; as, nom. *Amāthūs*, *Opūs*, *Cēdipūs*, *trēpūs*, *Panthūs*; gen. *Didūs*, *Scopphūs*. But compounds of *pus* (*πους*), when of the second declension, have *us* short; as, *pōphūs*.

NOTE. The last syllable of every verse, (except the anapæstic and the Ionic *a minōre*), may be either long or short at the option of the poet.

REMARK. By this is meant, that, although the measure require a long syllable, a short one may be used in its stead; and a long syllable may be used where a short one is required; as in the following verses, where the short syllable *ma* stands instead of a long one, and the long syllable *cu* instead of a short one:—

Sanguineaque mānu crēpitantia concūtit armā. *Ovid. M.* 1, 148.

Non *ēget Mauri jecūlis*, nec arcē. *Hor. Od.* 1, 22, 2.

## VERSIFICATION.

## FEET.

§ 302. A foot is a combination of two or more syllables of a certain quantity.

Feet are either simple or compound. Simple feet consist of two or three syllables; compound feet of four.

## I. SIMPLE FEET.

## 1. Of two Syllables.

<i>Spondee</i> ,.....	two long, — —; as,.....	<i>fānāni</i> .
<i>Pyrrhic</i> ,.....	two short, — —; as,.....	<i>Dēus</i> .
<i>Trochee, or choree</i> ,.....	a long and a short, — —; as,.....	<i>ārmā</i> .
<i>Iambus</i> ,.....	a short and a long, — —; as,.....	<i>ērāni</i> .

## 2. Of three Syllables.

<i>Dactyl</i> ,.....	a long and two short, — — —; as,.....	<i>cōrpōrā</i> .
<i>Anapæst</i> ,.....	two short and a long, — — —; as,.....	<i>dōmīni</i> .
<i>Tribrach</i> ,.....	three short, — — —; as,.....	<i>fācērē</i> .
<i>Molossus</i> ,.....	three long, — — —; as,.....	<i>cōntēndāni</i> .
<i>Amphibrach</i> ,.....	a short, a long, and a short, — — —; as,.....	<i>āmārē</i> .
<i>Amphimæcrus, or Cretic</i> ,.....	a long, a short, and a long, — — —; as,.....	<i>cāstītās</i> .
<i>Bacchius</i> ,.....	a short and two long, — — —; as,.....	<i>Cālōnēs</i> .
<i>Antibacchius</i> ,.....	two long and a short, — — —; as,.....	<i>Rōmānās</i> .

## II. COMPOUND FEET.

<i>Dispondee</i> ,.....	a double spondee, — — — —; as,.....	<i>cōnflīxērānt</i> .
<i>Proceleusmatic</i> ,.....	a double Pyrrhic, — — — —; as,.....	<i>hōmīnībūs</i> .
<i>Di-trochee</i> ,.....	a double trochee, — — — —; as,.....	<i>cōmprōbārīt</i> .
<i>Di-iambus</i> ,.....	a double iambus, — — — —; as,.....	<i>āmāvērānt</i> .
<i>Greater Ionic</i> ,.....	a spondee and a Pyrrhic, — — — —; as,.....	<i>cōrrēximūs</i> .
<i>Smaller Ionic</i> ,.....	a Pyrrhic and a spondee, — — — —; as,.....	<i>prōpērābānt</i> .
<i>Choriambus</i> ,.....	a choree and an iambus, — — — —; as,.....	<i>tērrificānt</i> .
<i>Antispast</i> ,.....	an iambus and a choree, — — — —; as,.....	<i>ādhesissē</i> .
<i>First epitrit</i> ,.....	an iambus and a spondee, — — — —; as,.....	<i>āmāvērānt</i> .
<i>Second epitrit</i> ,.....	a trochee and a spondee, — — — —; as,.....	<i>cōndītōrēs</i> .
<i>Third epitrit</i> ,.....	a spondee and an iambus, — — — —; as,.....	<i>discōrdīs</i> .
<i>Fourth epitrit</i> ,.....	a spondee and a trochee, — — — —; as,.....	<i>āddūzistīs</i> .
<i>First pæon</i> ,.....	a trochee and a Pyrrhic, — — — —; as,.....	<i>tēmpōribūs</i> .
<i>Second pæon</i> ,.....	an iambus and a Pyrrhic, — — — —; as,.....	<i>pōtēntiā</i> .
<i>Third pæon</i> ,.....	a Pyrrhic and a trochee, — — — —; as,.....	<i>āntmātīs</i> .
<i>Fourth pæon</i> ,.....	a Pyrrhic and an iambus, — — — —; as,.....	<i>cēlētītās</i> .

REMARK. Those feet are called *isochronous*, which consist of equal times, as the spondee, the dactyl, the anapæst, and the proceleusmatic, one long time being considered equal to two short.



## METRE.

§ 303. 1. *Metre* is an arrangement of syllables and feet according to certain rules.

2. In this general sense, it comprehends either an entire verse, a part of a verse, or any number of verses.

3. Metre is divided into *dactylic*, *anapæstic*, *iambic*, *trochaic*, *choriambic*, and *Ionic*. These names are derived from the original or fundamental foot employed in each.

4. A *metre* or *measure*, in a specific sense, is either a single foot or a combination of two feet. In the dactylic, choriambic, and Ionic metres, a measure consists of one foot; in the other metres, of two feet. Two feet constituting a measure are sometimes called a *syzygy*.

## VERSES.

§ 304. A *verse* is a certain number of feet, arranged in a regular order, and constituting a line of poetry.

1. Two verses are called a *distich*; a half verse, a *hemistich*.

2. Verses are of different kinds, denominated sometimes, like the different species of metre, from the foot which chiefly predominates in them; as, *dactylic*, *iambic*, etc.;—sometimes from the number of feet or metres which they contain; as, *sênarius*, consisting of six feet; *actônârius*, of eight feet; *mônômêter*, consisting of one measure; *dîmêter*, of two; *trimêter*, *tetramêter*, *pentamêter*, *hexamêter*;—sometimes from a celebrated author who used a particular species; as, *Sapphic*, *Anacreontic*, *Alcaic*, *Asclepiadic*, *Glyconic*, *Phalæcian*, *Sotadic*, *Archilochian*, *Alcmanian*, *Pherecratic*, *Aristophanic*, etc., from *Sappho*, *Anacreon*, *Alcæus*, *Asclepiâdes*, *Glycon*, *Phalæcus*, *Sotâdes*, *Archilôchus*, *Alcman*, *Pherecrâtes*, *Aristophânes*, etc.—and sometimes from the particular uses to which they were applied; as, the *prosodiac*, from its use in solemn processions, the *paræmiac*, from its frequent use in proverbs.

3. A verse, with respect to the metres which it contains, may be complete, deficient, or redundant.

(1.) A verse which is complete is called *acatalectic*.

(2.) A verse which is deficient, if it wants one syllable at the end, is called *catalectic*; if it wants a whole foot or half a metre, it is called *brachycatalectic*.

(3.) A verse which wants a syllable at the beginning, is called *acephalous*.

(4.) A verse which has a redundant syllable or foot, is called *hypercatalectic* or *hypermêter*.

4. Hence, the complete name of every verse consists of three terms—the first referring to the *species*, the second to the *number of metres*, and the third to the *ending*; as, the *dactylic trimeter catalectic*.

5. A verse or portion of a verse of any kind (measured from the beginning) which contains three half feet, or a foot and a half, is called a *trihēmimēris*; if it contains five half feet, or two feet and a half, it is called a *penthēmimēris*; if seven half feet, or three feet and a half, a *hepthēmimēris*; if nine half feet, or four feet and a half, an *ennehēmimēris*. A portion of a verse consisting of one whole metre and a half, is called a *hēmiōdus*, as being the half of a *trimeter*.

NOTE. The respective situation of each foot in a verse is called its *place*.

6. SCANNING is the dividing of a verse into the feet of which it is composed.

REMARK. In order to scan correctly, it is necessary to know the quantity of each syllable, and also to understand the following poetic usages, which are sometimes called

## FIGURES OF PROSODY.

### SYNALCEPHA.

§ 305. 1. *Synalcepha* is the elision of a final vowel or diphthong in scanning, when the following word begins with a vowel.

Thus, *terra antiqua* is read *terr' antiqua*; *Dardānides infensi*, *Dardānid' infensi*; *vento huc*, *vent' huc*. So,

*Quidve mōror? at omnes uno ordine hābētis Achivos.* Virg. A. 2, 102.

Which is scanned thus—

*Quidve mōror? s' omnes tū' ordin' hābētis Achivos.*

(1.) The interjections *O*, *heu*, *ah*, *proh*, *væ*, *vah*, are not elided; as,

*O et de Latiā, O et de gente Sābinā.* Ovid. M. 14, 832.

REMARK. But *O*, though not elided, is sometimes made short; as,

*Te Cōrýdon O Alexi; trāhit sua quæque vōluptas.* Virg. E. 2, 65.

(2.) Other long vowels and diphthongs sometimes remain unelided, in which case, when in the thesis of a foot, they are commonly made short; as,

*Victor apud rāpidum Sīmōnta sub Ilīō alto.* Virg. A. 5, 261.

*Anni tempore eo qui Etēsia esse fēruntur.* Lucr. 6, 717.

*Ter sunt cōditi impōnere Pelīō Ossam.* Virg. G. 1, 231.

*Glaucō et Pāndōpēæ, et Inō Mōlicertæ.* Id. G. 1, 436.

(3.) Rarely a short vowel, also, remains without elision; as,

*Et vērā Incessu pātuit dēd.* Ille ūbi mātrem.... Virg. A. 1, 405.

(4.) *Synalcepha* in a monosyllable occasionally occurs; as,

*Si ad vitūlam spectas, nihil est, quod pocula laudes.* Virg. E. 8, 48.

For *synalcepha* at the end of a line, see *Synapheia*, § 307, 3.

### ECTHLIPSIS.

2. *Ecthlipsis* is the elision of a final *m* with the preceding vowel, when the following word begins with a vowel. Thus,

*O cēras hēmīnum, O quantum est in rēbus ināne!* Pers. 1, 1.

Which is thus scanned—

O cūras hōmīn' O quant' est in rēbus ināne.

Monstram horrendam, informe, ingens, cui lūmen ādemptum. *Virg. A. 8, 658.*

- (1.) This elision was sometimes omitted by the early poets; as,  
*Corpōrū officium est quōdānā prēmēre omnia deorsum. Lucr. 1, 368.*

See § 299, 2.

- (2.) Final *s*, also, with the preceding vowel, is sometimes elided by the early poets before a vowel, and sometimes *s* alone before a consonant; as, *content' atque* (Enn.), for *contentus atque*; *omnib' rēbus. (Lucr.)* So,

*Tum lātērālī' dōlor, certissimū' nunciū' mortis. Lucil.*

REMARK. This elision took place principally in short syllables.

For ecthipsis at the end of a line, see *Synapheia*, § 307, 8.

### SYNÆRESIS.

§ 306. 1. Synæresis is the contraction into one syllable of two vowels which are usually pronounced separately. Thus,

*Aurē percussus virgā, verrumque vēnēnia. Virg. A. 7, 190.*

*Eodem habuit scum, quibus est slāta, capillos. Prop. 4, 7, 7.*

*Titire, pascentes a flūmīne reice capellas. Virg. E. 8, 96.*

REMARK 1. So *Phaethon* is pronounced *Phæthōn*; *alveo*, *alvo*; *Orphea*, *Orpha*; *deorsum*, *dorsum*.

- (1.) Synæresis is frequent in *ii*, *idem*, *iisem*, *dii*, *dīs*, *dein*, *deinceps*, *deinde*, *deest*, *deerat*, *deero*, *deirit*, *deesse*; as,

*Præcipitatur āquis, et āquis nox surgit ab idem. Ovid. M. 4, 92.*

*Sint Mæcēnātes; non deerunt, Flacce, Mārōnes. Mart. 8, 56, 5.*

REM. 2. *Cui* and *huic* are usually monosyllables.

- (2.) When two vowels in compound words are read as one syllable, the former may rather be considered as elided than as united with the latter; as, *e* in *anteambulo*, *antēre*, *antēhac*, *dehinc*, *mehercule*, etc., and *a* in *contraire*.

(3.) The syllable formed by the union of *i* or *u* followed by another vowel retains the quantity of the latter vowel, whether long or short; as, *abiēte*, *arīēte*, *abiēgnæ*, *pāriētibus*, *consiliūm*, *fortuitus*, *Nāsidienus*, *vindemiātor*, *omnia*; *gēnuū*, *tēnuis*, *pituita*, *flūviōrum*, etc. In such examples, the *i* and *u* are pronounced like initial *y* and *w*; as, *abyēte*, *pāryētibus*, *consilyum*, *fortwitus*, *Nāsidyēnus*, *omn-yā*, *tenwis*, *pitwita*, etc.; and, like consonants, they have, with another consonant, the power of lengthening a preceding short vowel, as in the above examples.

NOTE. In Statius, the word *tēnuiore* occurs as a trisyllable, in which the three vowels, *uio*, are united in pronunciation; thus, *tēn-wiō-re*.

- (4.) Sometimes, after a synalœpha or ecthipsis, two vowels suffer synæresis; as, *stellio et*, pronounced *stell-yet*: *consilium et*,—*consil-yet*.

(5.) If only one of the vowels is *written*, the contraction is called *crasis*; as, *dī*, *consili*, for *dii*, *consilii*.

### DIÆRESIS.

2. *Diæresis* is the division of one syllable into two; as,

*aulā*, *Trōia*, *silā*, *suādent*; for *aula*, *Troia* or *Troja*, *silra*, *suādent*. So, *sūtesco* for *suesco*; *rēliqūas* for *rēliquis*; *ecqūis* for *ecquis*; *milāus* for *milvus*, etc.,

*Æthereum sensum, atque cœdē simplicis ignem. Virg. A. 6, 747.*  
*Atque illos illi irrident, Veneremque suadent. Lucr. 4, 1153.*  
*Grammatici certant; et adhuc sub iudice lis est. Hor. A. P. 78.*  
*Aurarum et silvæ metu. Id. O. 1, 23, 4.*

(1.) So in Greek words originally written with a diphthong (α or η); as, *ἐλέγια* for *ἐλέγια*, *Βακχιδά* for *Βακχέα*, *Ῥητήτις* for *Ῥητεύς*, *Πλεύς* for *Πλὺς*. and also in words of Latin origin; as, *Vēūs* for *Veius*, *Aquileidā* for *Aquileid*.

REMARK. This figure is sometimes called *dialysis*.

#### SYSTOLE.

§ 307. 1. *Systōle* is the shortening of a syllable which is long by nature or by position; as,

*vidē'n* for *vidēsne*, in which *e* is naturally long; *sāt'r'n* for *sātisne*, in which *i* is long by position;—*hōdie* for *hōc die*; *multimōdis* for *multis mōdis*. So,

*Ducere multimōdis voces, et flectere cantus. Lucr. 5, 1405.*

(1.) By the omission of *j* after *ab*, *ad*, *ob*, *sub*, and *re*, in compound words, those prepositions retain their naturally short quantity, which would otherwise be made long by position; as, *abici*, *adicit*, *obicit*, etc. Thus,

*Si quid nostra tuis adicit vexatio rebus. Mart. 10, 82, 1.*

REMARK. In some compounds the short quantity of *ad* and *ob* is preserved before a consonant by the elision of the *d* or *b* of the preposition, as in *apērio*, *opērio*, *omitto*, etc.

(2.) The penult of the third person plural of certain perfects is said by some to be shortened by systole; as, *steterunt*, *tulerunt*, etc.; but others ascribe these irregularities to the errors of transcribers, or the carelessness of writers.

#### DIASTOLE.

2. *Diastōle* is the lengthening of a syllable which is naturally short.

(1.) It occurs most frequently in proper names and in compounds of *re*; as, *Priāmidēs*, *religio*, etc. Thus,

*Hanc tibi Priāmidēs mitto, Lædæa, salūtem. Ovid. H. 16, 1.*

*Religione patrum multos servata per annos. Virg. A. 2, 715.*

(2.) Some editors double the consonant after the lengthened *re*; as, *religio*.

(3.) Diastole is sometimes called *ectasis*.

#### SYNAPHEIA.

3. *Synapheia* is such a connection of two consecutive verses, that the first syllable of the latter verse has an influence on the final syllable of that which precedes, either by position, synalœpha, or ecthipsis. See §§ 283 and 305.

(1.) This figure is most frequent in anapæstic verse, and in the *Ionic a minore*.

The following lines will illustrate its effect:—

*Præcepit silvas montesque fugit  
 Citus Actæon. Sen.*

Here the *i* in the final syllable of *fugit*, which is naturally short, is made long by position before the following consonants, *tc*.

Omnia Mercurio similis, vocemque coloremque  
Et crines flavos.... *Virg. A. 4, 558.*  
Disidens plūbi nūmēro beatōrum  
Eximit virtus. *Hor. O. 2, 2, 18.*

In the former of these examples, synapheia and synalcepha are combined, *que* being elided before *et* in the following line; in the latter there is a similar combination of synapheia and ecthipsis.

(2.) By synapheia, the parts of a compound word are sometimes divided between two verses; as,

.... si non offendēret finem—  
*Quemque postārum limæ labor et mōra...* *Hor. A. P. 290*

(3.) In hexameter verse a redundant syllable at the end of a line elided before a vowel at the beginning of the next line, by causing the accent to fall on the second syllable of the concluding spondee, and connecting the two verses by synapheia, excites the expectation of something which is to follow, and often tends to magnify the object; as,

Quē sup̄er- | -ātrā sī- | -lax, jā- | -jām lāp- | -sūrā cā- | -dēnti- | -que  
Imminet assimilis. *Virg. A. 6, 602.*

REMARK. The poets often make use of other figures, also, which, however, are not peculiar to them. Such are *prosthesis*, *aphæresis*, *syncope*, *epenthesis*, *apocope*, *paragoge*, *imêsis*, *antithesis*, and *metathesis*. See § 322.

## ARSIS AND THESIS.

§ 308. (1.) *Rhythm* is the alternate elevating and depressing of the voice at regular intervals in pronouncing the syllables of verse.

(2.) The elevation of the voice is called *arsis*, its depression *thesis*. These terms designate, also, the parts of a foot on which the elevation or depression falls.

1. The natural arsis is on the long syllable of a foot; and hence, in a foot composed wholly of long, or wholly of short syllables, when considered in itself, the place of the arsis is undetermined; but when such foot is substituted for the fundamental foot of a metre, its arsis is determined by that of the latter.

REMARK. Hence, a spondee, in trochaic or dactylic metre, has the arsis on the first syllable; but in iambic or anapæstic metre, it has it on the last.

2. The arsis is either equal in duration to the thesis, or twice as long.

Thus, in the dactyl, — — —, and anapæst, — — —, it is equal; in the trochee, — —, and iambus, — —, it is twice as long. This difference in the proportionate duration of the arsis and thesis constitutes the difference of rhythm. A foot is said to have the *descending* rhythm, when its arsis is at the beginning, and the *ascending*, when the thesis is at the beginning.

3. The stress of voice which falls upon the arsis of a foot, is called the *ictus*. When a long syllable in the arsis of a foot is resolved into two short ones, the ictus falls upon the former.

NOTE 1. Some suppose that the terms *arsis* and *thesis*, as used by the ancients, denoted respectively the rising and falling of the hand in beating time, and that the place of the thesis was the syllable which received the ictus.

NOTE 2. As the ancient pronunciation of Latin is not now understood, writers differ in regard to the mode of reading verse. According to some, the accent of each word should always be preserved; while others direct that the stress of voice should be laid on the arsis of the foot, and that no regard should be paid to the accent.

It is generally supposed that the final letters elided by synalæpha and æth-lipsis, though omitted in scanning, were pronounced in reading verse.

### CÆSURA.

§ 309. *Cæsura* is the separation, by the ending of a word, of syllables rhythmically or metrically connected.

Cæsura is of three kinds:—1, of the *foot*; 2, of the *rhythm*; and 3, of the *verse*.

1. Cæsura of the foot occurs when a word ends before a foot is completed; as,

Silves- | -trem tenu- | -i Mu- | -sam medi- | -tāris a- | -vērā. *Virg. E. 1, 2.*

2. Cæsura of the rhythm is the separation of the arsis from the thesis by the ending of a word, as in the second, third, and fourth feet of the preceding verse.

REM 1. It hence appears that the cæsura of the rhythm is always a cæsura of the foot, as *e. g.* in the 2d, 3d, and 4th feet of the preceding verse; but, on the contrary, that the cæsura of the foot is not always a cæsura of the rhythm, as *e. g.* in the fifth foot of the same verse.

(1.) Cæsura of the rhythm allows a final syllable naturally short, to stand in the arsis of the foot instead of a long one, it being lengthened by the *ictus*; as,

Pæctori- | -būs inhī- | -āns spi- | -rāntiā | cōnsūlit | ēxta. *Virg. A. 4, 64.*

This occurs chiefly in hexameter verse.

REM. 2. Cæsura of the foot and of the verse do not of themselves lengthen a short syllable, but they often coincide with that of the rhythm.

3. Cæsura of the verse is such a division of a line into two parts, as affords to the voice a convenient pause or rest, without injury to the sense or harmony.

REM. 3. The cæsura of the verse is often called the *cæsural pause*. In several kinds of verse, its place is fixed; in others, it may fall in more than one place, and the choice is left to the poet. Of the former kind is the pentameter, of the latter the hexameter.

The proper place of the cæsural pause will be treated of, so far as shall be necessary, under each species of verse.

REM. 4. The effect of the cæsura is to connect the different words harmoniously together, and thus to give smoothness, grace, and sweetness, to the verse.

## DIFFERENT KINDS OF METRE.

### DACTYLIC METRE.

§ 310. I. A *hexameter* or heroic verse consists of six feet. Of these the fifth is a dactyl, the sixth a spondee, and each of the other four either a dactyl or a spondee; as,

Āt tām | tērrībī- | -lēm sōnī- | -tām prōkī | -hērē cā- | -nōrē. *Virg. A. 9, 502.*  
 Intōn- | -ai erī- | -nēs lōn- | -gā cēr- | -vies flū- | -ābant. *Tibull. 3, 4, 27.*  
 Lādērs | quē vā- | -lēm cālā- | -mō pēr- | -mīst ā- | -grāstī. *Virg. E. 1, 10.*

1. The fifth foot is sometimes a spondee, and the verse in such case is called *spondaic*; as,

Cārā dē- | -ūm sōbō- | -lēs mīg- | -nūm Jōvīs | Incrē- | -mētūm. *Virg. E. 4, 49.*

REMARK 1. In such verses, the fourth foot is commonly a dactyl, and the fifth should not close with the end of a word. Spondaic lines are thought to be especially adapted to the expression of grave and solemn subjects.

2. A light and rapid movement is produced by the frequent recurrence of dactyls; a slow and heavy one by that of spondees; as,

Quadrūpē- | -dantē pū- | -trēm sōnī- | -tā quātīt | āngulā | cāmpum. *Virg. A. 8, 596.*  
 Illī in- | -tēr sē- | -sē mīg- | -nā vī | brāchiā tollunt. *Id. A. 8, 452.*

REM. 2. Variety in the use of dactyls and spondees in successive lines, has an agreeable effect. Hexameter verse commonly ends in a word of two or three syllables, and a monosyllable at the end of a line is generally ungraceful, but sometimes produces a good effect; as,

Stērnūtūr, | exānī- | -mīsqūē, trē- | -mēns prō- | -cūmbīt hū- | -mī bōē. *Virg. A. 5, 481.*  
 Pārtīrī- | -dnt mōn- | -tēs- nēs- | -cētūr | rīdīcū- | -lās mās. *Hor. A. P. 129.*

3. The beauty and harmony of hexameter verse depend much on due attention to the *cæsura*. (See § 309.) A line in which it is neglected is destitute of poetic beauty, and can hardly be distinguished from prose; as,

Rōmē | mēnē | tērrīt | Impīgēr | Hānnībāl | ārnīs. *Een.*

4. The cæsural pause most approved in heroic poetry is that which occurs after the *penthemimēris*, i. e. after the arsis in the third foot. This is particularly distinguished as the *heroic cæsura*. Thus,

Āt dōmūs | Intēri- | -rē || rē- | -gālī | splēndīdā | lāxū. *Virg. A. 1, 637.*

5. Instead of the preceding, a cæsura in the thesis of the third foot, or after the arsis of the fourth, was also approved as heroic; as,

Infān- | -dūm rē- | -gtā || jū- | -bēs rēnō- | -vārē dō- | -lōrem. *Virg. A. 2, 8.*  
 Indē tō- | -rō pātēr | -Xnē- | -ās || sic | -ōrūs āb | -āltō. *Id. A. 2, 2.*

REM. 3. When the cæsural pause occurs, as in the latter example, after the *hepthemimēris*, i. e. after the arsis of the fourth foot, another but slighter one is often found in the second foot; as,

Prīmā tē- | -nēt, || plāū- | -sūquē vō- | -lāt || frēmī- | -tūquē sē- | -cūdo. *Virg. A. 5, 338.*

6. The cæsura after the third foot, dividing the verse into exactly equal parts, was least approved; as,

Cui nōn | dictūs Hēr- | -lās pūēr || ēt Lā- | -tēnē | Dēlos. *Virg. G. 3, 6.*

REM. 4. The cæsural pause between the fourth and fifth feet was considered as peculiarly adapted to pastoral poetry, particularly when the fourth foot was a dactyl, and was hence termed the *bucolic cæsura*; as,

Stānt vitū- | -ll ēt tēnē- | -rīs mū- | -gtībūs || āērē | cōmplēt. *Nemes.*

NOTE 1. The cæsura after the arsis is sometimes called the *masculine* or *syllabic cæsura*; that in the thesis, the *feminine* or *trochaic*, as a trochee immediately precedes. When a cæsura occurs in the fifth foot it is usually the trochaic cæsura, unless the foot is a spondee; as,

Frāxīnūs | In sil- | -vis pūl- | -chērrīmā, | pīnūs īn | hōrtīs. *Virg. E. 7, 65.*

(a.) It is to be remarked that two successive trochaic cæsuras in the *second* and *third* feet are, in general, to be avoided, but they are sometimes employed to express irregular or impetuous motion; as,

Una Eu- | -rāquē Nō- | -tāquē rā- | -ānt crē- | -bēquē prē- | -cēllis. *Virg. A. 1, 85.*

(b.) Successive trochaic cæsuras are, in like manner, to be avoided in the *third* and *fourth* feet, but are approved in the *first* and *second*, in the *fourth* and *fifth*, and in the *first, third* and *fifth*. See *Virg. A. 6, 651: 1, 94: and 6, 522.*

NOTE 2. In the principal cæsura of the verse poets frequently introduce a pause in the sense, which must be attended to in order to determine the place of the cæsural pause. For in the common place for the cæsura in the third foot there is often a cæsura of the foot; while, in the fourth foot, a still more marked division occurs. In this case, the latter is to be considered as the principal cæsura, and distinguished accordingly; as,

Bellī | ferrā- | -tōs pōs- | -tes, || pōr- | -tāquē rē- | -frēgit. *Hor. S. 1, 4, 61.*

II. The *Priapēan* is usually accounted a species of hexameter. It is so constructed as to be divisible into two portions of three feet each, having generally a trochee in the first and fourth place, but often a spondee and rarely a dactyl; in the second, usually a dactyl; and an amphimacer and more rarely a dactyl in the third; as,

Ō cō- | -lōnā | quē cūpis || pōntē | lādērē | lōngō. *Catull. 17, 1.*

It is, however, more properly considered as choriambic metre, consisting of alternate Glyconics and Pherecratics. See § 316, IV. V. Thus,

Ō cō- | -lōnā, quē || cūpis  
Pōntē | lādērē lōn- | -go.

NOTE. A regular hexameter verse is termed *Priapēan*, when it is so constructed as to be divisible into two portions of three feet each; as,

Tērtā | pārs pā- | -tā dātā || pārs dātā | tērtā | mātri. *Catull. 62, 64.*

See above, 6.

### § 311. III. A pentameter verse consists of five feet.

REMARK 1. It is generally, however, divided, in scanning, into two hemistichs, the first consisting of two feet, either dactyls or spondees, followed by a long syllable; the last, of two dactyls, also followed by a long syllable; as,

Nātū- | -rēs sēquī- | -tūr || sēmīnā | quīsquē sū- | -ss. *Prop. 3, 7, 20.*  
Cārminī- | -būs vī- | -vēs || tēmpūs īn | amnē mē- | -ls. *Ovid.*

1. According to the more ancient and correct mode of scanning pentameter verse, it consists of five feet, of which the first and second may each be a dactyl or a spondee; the third is always a spondee; and the fourth and fifth are anapæsts; as,

Nātū- | -rēs sēquī- | -tūr || sēm- | -īnā quīs- | -quē sūss.  
Cārminī- | -būs vī- | -vēs || tēm- | -pūs īn am- | -nē mēls.

2. The cæsura, in pentameter verse, always occurs after the penhemimeris, i. e. at the close of the first hemistich. It very rarely lengthens a short syllable.

3. The pentameter rarely ends with a word of three syllables. In Ovid, it usually ends with a dissyllable.

REM. 2. This species of verse is seldom used, except in connection with hexameter, a line of each recurring alternately. This combination is called *elegiac verse*. Thus,

Fisbills indignōs, Elegam, solvē cāpillōs.

Ah nimis ex vēro nūc tibi nōmēn ērit! *Ovid. Am. 2, 9, 8.*



§ 312. IV. The *tetrameter a priore*, or *Alcmanian dactylic tetrameter*, consists of the first four feet of a hexameter, of which the fourth is always a dactyl; as,

Gärrülä | pēr rä- | -mäs, kväs | öbsträpît. *Sen. Oed.* 454.

V. The *tetrameter a posteriore*, or *spondaic tetrameter*, consists of the last four feet of a hexameter; as,

Öhmäs, | Ö säcl- | -i, cöml- | -tæque. *Hor. Od.* 1, 7, 26.

REMARK. The penultimate foot in this, as in hexameter verse, may be a spondee, but in this case the preceding foot should be a dactyl; as,

Ménat- | -räm cöhl- | -bänt Ar- | -chytä. *Hor. Od.* 1, 23, 2.

VI. The *dactylic trimeter* consists of the last three feet of a hexameter; as,

Grätö | Pjrrhä süb | äntro. *Hor. Od.* 1, 5, 3.

REMARK. But this kind of verse is more properly included in choriambic metre. See § 316, V.

VII. The *trimeter catalectic Archilochian* consists of the first five half feet of a hexameter, but the first and second feet are commonly dactyls; as,

Pülvis ét | ümbrä sä- | -mus. *Hor. Od.* 4, 7, 16.

VIII. The *dactylic dimeter*, or *Adonic*, consists of two feet, a dactyl and a spondee; as,

Riät Ä- | -pöllo. *Hor. Od.* 1, 10, 12.

IX. The *Æolic pentameter* consists of four dactyls preceded by a spondee, a trochee, or an iambus. Thus

— — | — — — | — — — | — — — | — — —

X. The *Phalæcian pentameter* consists of a dactylic penthimimeris and a dactylic dimeter; as,

Visö- | -bät göll- | -däs | äidörä | brümæ. *Boëthius.*

REMARK. A trochee is sometimes found in the first place and an iambus in the first and second places.

XI. The *Tetrameter Meiurus*, or *Faliscan* consists of the last four feet of a hexameter, except that the last foot is an iambus instead of a spondee; as,

Ut növä | frägs grä- | -vis Cëräs | äat. *Boëthius.*

XII. The *Tetrameter Catalectic* consists of the tetrameter a priore wanting the latter half of the concluding dactyl; as,

Ömne höm- | -näm gönds | In tär- | -ris. *Boëthius.*

#### ANAPÆSTIC METRE.

§ 313. I. The *anapæstic monomëter* consists of two anapæsts; as,

Ulmäs- | -sä cänäs. *Sen.*

II. The *anapæstic dimeter* consists of two measures, or four anapæsts; as,

Phārētrē- | -quē grāvēs | dātē sē- | -vā fērō.... Sen.

**REMARK 1.** The first foot in each measure of anapæstic metre was very often changed to a dactyl or a spondee, and the second foot often to a spondee, and, in a few instances, to a dactyl.

**REM. 2.** Anapaestic verses are generally so constructed that each measure ends with a word, so that they may be written and read in lines of one, two, or more measures.

**LAMBIC METRE.**

§ 314. I. 1. The *iambic trimeter*, or *senarius*, consists of three iambic measures, or six iambic feet; as,

Phāsē- | -lūs ū- | -lē, | quēm | vīdē- | -tīs hōs- | -pītēs.... *Catull.* 4. 1.

2. The cæsura commonly occurs in the third but sometimes in the fourth foot.

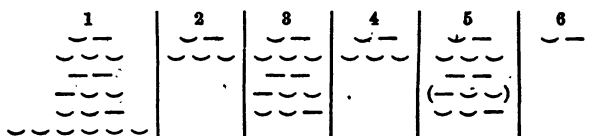
3. The pure iambic measure was seldom used by the Latin poets, but to vary the rhythm spondees were introduced into the first, third, and fifth places. In every foot, also, except the last, which was always an iambus, a long syllable was often changed into two short ones, so that an anapæst or a dactyl was used for a spondee, and a tribrach for an iambus, but the use of the dactyl in the fifth place was very rare: as.

Quō, quō | scēlēs- | -tī rūi- | -tīs? Aut | cūr dēx- | -tēris.... *Hor. Epod. 7, 1.*

Áliti- | -bũs át- | -quẽ cãni- | -bũs hõmĩ- | -cĩdam Hẽc- | -tõrẽm.... *Id.* Epod. 17, 12.

4. Sometimes, also, a proceleusmatic, or double pyrrhic, was used in the first place for a spondee. The writers of comedy, satire, and fable, admitted the spondee and its equivalents (the dactyl and anapæst) into the second and fourth places, as well as the first, third, and fifth.

**5. The following, therefore, is the scale of the Iambic Trimeter:—**



6. In the construction of the Iambic Trimeter an accent should fall on the second syllable of either the third foot or both the second and fourth feet; as,

Ibīs | Lībūr- | -nīs in- | tēr āl- | -tā nā- | -vīum | .

Utrām- | -ně jús- | -sī pēr- | -sēquē'- | -mūr ō- | -tīum. |

II. The *scazon*, or *choliambus* (lame iambic), is the iambic trimeter, with a spondee in the sixth foot, and generally an iambus in the fifth: as,

**Căr în | thăă- | -trăm, Cătō | sěvə- | -rě, vė- | -nĭstĭ?**

An Idē- | ō tām- | -tūm vēm- | -ērās, | ūt ēx- | -irēs? *Mart. Ep. 1, 1, 8.*

This species of verse is also called *Hipponactic* trimeter, from its inventor Hippônax.

III. The *iambic tetrameter* or *quadrātus*, called also from the number of its feet *octonarius*, a measure used by the comic poets, consists of four iambic measures, subject to the same variations as the iambic trimeter (I); as,

Nāne hīc | dīēs | klām | vītam āf- | -fērt, klī- | -sē mō- | -rēs pōs- | -tūlat. *Ter. A.* 1, 2, 18.

REMARK. The cæsura regularly follows the second measure.

IV. The *iambic tetrameter catalectic* or *Hipponactic*, is the iambic tetrameter, wanting the last syllable, and having always an iambus in the seventh place, but admitting in the other places the same variations as the trimeter and tetrameter; as,

Dēprēn- | -ā nā- | -vīs īn | mārī, | vēsā- | -nīēn- | -tē vōn- | -to. *Catull.* 25, 13.

V. The *iambic trimeter catalectic* or *Archilochian*, is the iambic trimeter (I), wanting the final syllable. Like the common iambic trimeter, it admits a spondee into the first and third places, but not into the fifth; as,

Vōcā- | -tīs āt- | -quē nōn | vōcā- | -tīs āt- | -dīt. *Hor. Od.* 2, 13, 40.

Trāhūnt- | -quē sīo- | -cās māch- | -īnas | cārī- | -nas. *Id. Od.* 1, 4, 2.

VI. The *iambic dimeter* consists of two iambic measures, with the same variations as the iambic trimeter (I); as,

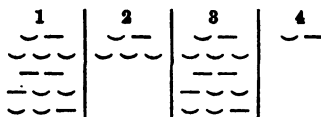
Fōrti | sēquē- | -mūr pōs- | -tōre. *Hor. Epod.* 1, 14.

Cāndī- | -ā trāc- | -tāvīt | dēpēs. *Id. Epod.* 3, 8.

Vīdē- | -rē prōpē- | -rāntēs | dōmum. *Id. Epod.* 3, 62.

REMARK. The iambic dimeter is also called the *Archilochian dimeter*.

The following is its scale:—



VII. The *iambic dimeter hypermeter*, called also *Archilochian*, is the iambic dimeter, with an additional syllable at the end; as,

Rādē- | -gīt īn | vērēs | tīmō- | -rēs. *Hor. Od.* 1, 37, 15.

REMARK. Horace always makes the third foot a spondee.

VIII. The *iambic dimeter acephalous* is the iambic dimeter, wanting the first syllable; as,

Nōn | sēbūr | nēque ēū- | -rēm.... *Hor. Od.* 2, 13, 1.

REMARK. This kind of verse is sometimes scanned as a catalectic trochaic dimeter. See § 315, IV.

IX. The *iambic dimeter catalectic*, or *Anacreontic*, is the iambic dimeter, wanting the final syllable, and having always an iambus in the third foot; as,

Ut tī- | grīs ōr- | -bā gnā- | -tīs. *Sen. Med.* 863.

X. The *Galliambus* consists of two iambic dimeters catalectic, the last of which wants the final syllable.

REMARK 1. It was so denominated from the *Gallē* or priests of Cybele, by whom it was used.

REM. 2. In the first foot of each dimeter the anapæst was generally preferred to the spondee. The catalectic syllable at the end of the first dimeter is long, and the second foot of the second dimeter is commonly a tribrach; as,

Sûpër âl- | -tâ vëo- | -tûs A- | -tj's || cëlëri | rätë mâ- | -ria. Catull, 63, 1.

REM. 3. The cæsura uniformly occurs at the end of the first dimeter.

# TROCHAIC METRE.

§ 315. 1. Trochaic verses bear a near affinity to iambics. The addition or retrenchment of a syllable at the beginning of a pure iambic verse, renders it pure trochaic, and the addition or retrenchment of a syllable at the beginning of a pure trochaic line, renders it pure iambic, with the deficiency or redundancy of a syllable in each case at the end of the verse.

I. The *trochaic tetrameter catalectic* consists of seven feet, followed by a catalectic syllable. In the first five places and very rarely in the sixth, it admits a tribrach, but in the seventh a trochee only. In the *even* places, besides the tribrach, it admits also a spondee, a dactyl, an anapæst, and sometimes a proceleusmatic; as,

Jüssüs | ßet in | ßrmis | Irë : || pürüs | Irë | jüssüs | ßet. *Auct. P. Vên.*  
Römü | lëss | Ipsä | fëcit || cüm Sâ- | -binis | nüpti- | -äs. *Id.*  
Dänâi | dëg, cö- | -të; | vësträs || hie di- | -ës quæ- | -rit mî- | -nâs. *Sen.*

The following is its scale:—

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
— — —	— — —	— — —	— — —	— — —	— — —	— — —	—
— — —	— — —	— — —	— — —	— — —	— — —	— — —	—
— — —	— — —	— — —	— — —	— — —	— — —	— — —	—
— — —	— — —	— — —	— — —	— — —	— — —	— — —	—

REMARK 1. The *pure* trochaic verse was rarely used, and the dactyl very rarely occurs in the fourth place. The cæsural pause uniformly occurs after the fourth foot, thus dividing the verse into a complete dimeter and a catalectic dimeter. The comic writers introduced the spondee and its equivalent feet into the odd places.

REM. 2. The complete trochaic tetrameter or *octonarius* properly consists of eight feet, all trochees, subject, however, to the same variations as the catalectic tetrameter; as,

Ipsë | sümms | sâxis | fixüs | äspë- | -ris, ß- | -viscë- | -rätüs. *Enn.*

II. The *Sapphic* verse, invented by the poetess Sappho, consists of five feet—the first a trochee, the second a spondee, the third a dactyl, and the fourth and fifth trochees; as,

Intë- | -gër vi- | -cæ, || scëlë- | -risquë | pürüs. *Hor. Od. 1, 22, 1.*

1. Sappho, and, after her example, Catullus, sometimes made the second foot a trochee.

2. Those Sapphics are most harmonious which have the cæsura after the fifth semi-foot.

NOTE 1. In the composition of the Sapphic stanza, a word is sometimes divided between the end of the third Sapphic, and the beginning of the Adonic which follows; as,

Läbî- | -tûr ri- | -pâ Jövé | nön prë- | -bântë ux-  
-rätüs | ännis. *Hor. Od. 1, 2, 19.*

It has been thought by some that such lines should be considered as one Sapphic verse of seven feet, the fifth foot being either a spondee or a trochee.

NOTE 2. This verse is sometimes scanned as epichoriambic, having an epitrite in the first place, a choriambus in the second, and ending with an iambic sisygy catalectic; thus,

Intēgēr vī- | -tē, scēlērīg- | -quē pūrū.

III. The *Phalæcian* verse consists of five feet—a spondee, a dactyl, and three trochees; as,

Nōn ēst | vivērē, | sēd vā- | -lērē | vitā. *Mart.*

REMARK 1. Instead of a spondee as the first foot, Catullus sometimes uses a trochee or an iambus. This writer also sometimes uses a spondee in the second place.

REM. 2. The *Phalæcian* verse is sometimes called *hendecasyllabic*, as consisting of eleven syllables; but that name does not belong to it exclusively.

IV. The *trochaic dimeter catalectic* consists of three feet, properly all trochees, and a catalectic syllable, but admitting also in the second place a spondee or a dactyl; as,

Nōn ē | -bār nē- | -que sūrē- | -um. *Hor. Od. 2, 18, 1.*

Lēnīs | -āc mōdī- | -cūm flū- | -ēns

Aurē, | -nēc vēr- | -gēns lā- | -tus. *Sen. Oed. 887.*

NOTE. This measure is the same as the acephalous iambic dimeter (see § 314, VIII.), and it is not important whether it be regarded as iambic or trochaic.

## CHORIAMBIC METRE.

§ 316. (a.) In a pure choriambic verse each metre except the last is a choriambus, and the last an iambic syzygy.

NOTE. A spondee and iambus, i. e. a third epitrite, are sometimes used in place of the iambic syzygy.

(b.) An *epichoriambic* verse is composed of one or more choriambi with some other foot, especially a ditrochee or a second epitrite, joined with it.

I. The *choriambic pentameter* consists of a spondee, three choriambi, and an iambus; as,

Tū nē | quēscērīs, | scīrē nēfās, | quēm mīhī, quēm tibi., *Hor. Od. 1, 11, 1.*

II. The *choriambic tetrameter* consists of three choriambi, or feet of equal length, and a Bacchius; as,

Omnē nēmūs | cūm flūvīe, | ōmnē cīnāt | prōfūdum. *Claud.*

2. In this verse Horace substituted a spondee for the iambus contained in the first choriambus; as,

Tē dētē ē- | -rē, Sībārīn | cūr prōpērēs | amandē. *Hor. Od. 1, 8, 2.*

3. Somescan this verse as an epichoriambic tetrameter catalectic, beginning with the second epitrite.

III. 1. The *Asclepiadic tetrameter* (invented by the poet Asclepiades) consists of a spondee, two choriambi, and an iambus; as,

Mēcē- | -nās, ātāvīs | ēdītē rēg- | -ibus. *Hor. Od. 1, 1, 1.*

2. This form is invariably observed by Horace; but other poets sometimes, though rarely, make the first foot a dactyl.

3. The cæsural pause occurs at the end of the first choriambus.

4. This measure is sometimes scanned as a dactylic pentameter catalectic. See § 311, III. Thus,

Mācōs- | -nās, ātā- | vīs | ēdītā | rēgībūs.

IV. 1. The *choriambic trimeter*, or *Glyconic* (invented by the poet Glyco), consists of a spondee, a choriambus, and an iambus; as,

Sic tē | dīvā pōtēs | Cypri... Hor. Od. 1, 3, 1.

2. The first foot is sometimes an iambus or a trochee.

3. When the first foot is a spondee, the verse might be scanned as a dactylic trimeter. Thus,

Sic tē | dīvā pō- | -tēs Cypri.

V. 1. The *choriambic trimeter catalectic*, or *Pherecratic* (so called from the poet Pherecrates), is the Glyconic deprived of its final syllable, and consists of a spondee, a choriambus, and a catalectic syllable; as,

Grātē, | Pŕrĥā, sūb ān- | -trō. Hor. Od. 1, 5, 3.

2. The first foot was sometimes a trochee or an anapest, rarely an iambus.

3. When the first foot is a spondee, this measure might be scanned as a dactylic trimeter. See § 312, VI.

4. The Pherecratic subjoined to the Glyconic produces the Priapean verse. See § 310, II.

VI. 1. The *choriambic dimeter* consists of a choriambus and a Bacchius; as,

Lŕdā dīc | pēr āmnēs. Hor. Od. 1, 8, 1.

2. This verse is by some called the choriambic dimeter catalectic. Cf. § 316, (a.)

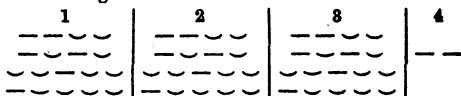
## IONIC METRE.

§ 317. I. The *Ionic a majore*, or *Sotadic*, (from the poet Sotades), consists of three greater Ionics and a spondee.

1. The Ionic feet, however, are often changed into ditrochees, and either of the two long syllables in those feet into two short ones; as,

Hās, cūm gēml- | -nā cōmpēdē, | dēdicāt cā- | -tēnās,  
Sātūrnē, tī- | -bī Zōlūs, | ānnūlōs pri- | -ōrēs. Mart.

2. Hence the following is its scale:—



NOTE. The final syllable, by § 301, note, may be short.

II. 1. The *Ionic a minore* consists generally of verses of three or four feet, which are all smaller Ionics; as,

Pūr ālās, | tibi tēlās, | ōpērōsē- | -quē Mīnērvā... Hor. Od. 3, 12, 4.

2. In this verse, as in the anapaestic, no place is assigned to the pause; because, since the metres, if rightly constructed, end with a word, the effect of a pause will be produced at the end of each metre.

## COMPOUND METRES.

§ 318. Compound metre is the union of two species of metre in the same verse.

I. The *dactylic-iambic* metre or *Elegiambus* consists of a dactylic penthemimēris (§ 312, VII.), followed by an iambic dimeter (§ 314, VI.); as,

Scribēre | vēra cō- | lās || amō- | rē pār- | cūlām | grāvi. *Hor. Epod. 11, 2.*

II. The *iambico-dactylic* metre or *Iambelegus* consists of the same members as the preceding, but in a reversed order; as,

Nivēs- | quē dē- | dūcūt || Jōvēm : || nūc mārē, | nūc silvā- | -ae. *Hor. Epod. 13, 2.*

NOTE. The members composing this and the preceding species of verse are often written in separate verses.

III. The *greater Alcaic* consists of an iambic penthemimeris, i. e. of two iambic feet and a long catalectic syllable, followed by a chor-iambus, and an iambus; as,

Vidēs | ūt āl- | tā || stēt nivē cōn- | -didum. *Hor. Od. 1, 9, 1.*

REMARK 1. The first foot is often a spondee.

REM. 2. The cæsura uniformly occurs after the catalectic syllable.

REM. 3. This verse is sometimes so scanned as to make the last two feet dactyls.

IV. The *dactylic-trochaic* or *Archilochian heptameter*, consists of the dactylic tetrameter *a prōte* (§ 312), followed by three trochees; as,

Solvitur | scris hī- | -ams grā- | tā vīcē || vēris | st fā- | -vōni. *Hor. Od. 1, 4, 1.*

REMARK. The cæsura occurs between the two members.

V. The *dactylic-trochaic tetrameter* or *lesser Alcaic*, consists of two dactyls, followed by two trochees, i. e. of a dactylic dimeter followed by a trochaic monometer; as,

Lēvā | pārsōnū- || -rē | sūxī. *Hor. Od. 1, 17, 12.*

## COMBINATION OF VERSES IN POEMS.

§ 319. 1. A poem may consist either of one kind of verse only or of a combination of two or more kinds.

2. A poem in which only one kind of verse is employed, is called *carmen monocōlon*; that which has two kinds, *dicōlon*; that which has three kinds, *tricōlon*.

3. When the poem returns, after the second line, to the same verse with which it began, it is called *distrōphon*; when after the third line, *tristrōphon*; and when after the fourth, *tetrastrōphon*.

4. The several verses which occur before the poem returns to the kind of verse with which it began, constitute a *stanza* or *strophe*.

5. A poem consisting of two kinds of verse, when the stanza contains two verses, is called *dicōlon distrōphon*, (see § 320, 3); when it contains three, *dicō-*

lon *tristrophon*, (Anson. Profess. 21); when four, *dicolon tetrastrophon*, (§ 320, 2); and when five, *dicolon pentastrophon*.

6. A poem consisting of three kinds of verse, when the stanza contains three verses, is called *tricolon tristrophon*, (§ 320, 15); when four, *tricolon tetrastrophon*, (§ 320, 1).

# HORATIAN METRES.

§ 320. The different species of metre used by Horace in his lyric compositions are twenty. The various forms in which he has employed them, either separate or in conjunction, are nineteen, arranged, according to the order of preference given to them by the poet, in the following

## SYNOPSIS.

1. Two greater Alcaics (§ 318, III.), one Archilochian iambic dimeter hypermeter (§ 314, VII.), and one lesser Alcaic (§ 318, v.); as,

Vidēs, ut alia stēt nive candidum  
Socrātē, nec jam sustinēant onūs  
Silvæ laborantē, gelūque  
Flumina constitērint acuto. (Lib. 1, 9.)

REMARK. This is called the Horatian stanza, because it seems to have been a favorite with Horace, being used in thirty-seven of his odes.

2. Three Sapphics (§ 315, II.) and one Adonic (§ 312, VIII.); as,

Jam satīs terris nivis atquē diræ  
Grandinis misit pater, et, rubentē  
Dextērā sacræ Jactilātis arces,  
Terruit urbem. (Lib. 1, 2.)

3. One Glyconic (§ 316, IV.) and one Asclepiadic (§ 316, III.); as,

Sic tē Divæ potēns Cypri,  
Sic fratrēs Hēlēnæ, lucida sidēra.... (Lib. 1, 3.)

4. One iambic trimeter (§ 314, I.) and one iambic dimeter (§ 314, VI.); as,

Ibis Liburnis inter alia navium,  
Amicos, propugnacula. (Epod. 1.)

5. Three Asclepiadics (§ 316, III.) and one Glyconic (§ 316, IV.); as,

Scriberis Vario fortis, et hostium  
Victor, Mæonii carminis aliti,  
Quam rem cumquē ferōx navibus aut æque  
Miles, tē ducēs, gesserit. (Lib. 1, 6.)

6. Two Asclepiadics (§ 316, III.), one Pherecratic (§ 316, v.), and one Glyconic (§ 316, IV.); as,

Dianam, teneræ, dicite virgines:  
Intonsam, pueri, dicite Cynthium,  
Latōnamquē supremo  
Dilectam penitās Jovi. (Lib. 1, 21.)

7. The Asclepiadic (§ 316, III.) alone; as,

Mæonias ætævis edite regibus. (Lib. 1, 1.)



8. One dactylic hexameter (§ 310, I.) and one dactylic tetrameter *a posteriori* (§ 312, V.); as,

Laudabunt illi claram Rhodōn, aut Mitylēnen,  
Aut Ephesum, bimariorē Corinthi... (Lib. 1, 7.)

9. The choriambic pentameter (§ 316, I.) alone; as,  
Tu nē quēseris, scire nēfās, quē mīhi, quē tibi... (Lib. 1, 11.)

10. One dactylic hexameter (§ 310, I.) and one iambic dimeter (§ 314, VI.); as,

Nōx erat, et cōlō fulgēbat lūnā serēno  
Inter minora sidēra. (Epid. 15.)

11. The iambic trimeter (§ 314, I.) containing spondees; as,  
Jām, jam efficiā dō mēnūs sciētias. (Epid. 17.)

12. One choriambic dimeter (§ 316, VI.) and one choriambic tetrameter (§ 316, II.) with a variation; as,

Lydia, dic, pēr omnes  
Tē dēus orō, Sybārīn eūr prōpēriā amādo... (Lib. 1, 8.)

13. One dactylic hexameter (§ 310, I.) and one iambic trimeter without spondees (§ 314, I.); as,

Altēra jām tēritur bellis civilibus aetas;  
Sua et ipsa Rōmā viribus ruit. (Epid. 16.)

14. One dactylic hexameter (§ 310, I.) and one dactylic penthemimeris (§ 312, VII.); as,

Diffugere nives: redēunt jam graminē campi,  
Arboribusque comas. (Lib. 4, 7.)

15. One iambic trimeter (§ 314, I.), one dactylic trimeter catalectic (§ 312, VII.), and one iambic dimeter (§ 314, VI.); as,

Patti, nihil mē, sicūt antea, juvat  
Scribere versiculos,  
Amorē periculosum gravi. (Epid. 11.)

NOTE. The second and third lines are often written as one verse. See § 318, 1.

16. One dactylic hexameter (§ 310, I.), one iambic dimeter (§ 314, VI.), and one dactylic penthemimeris (§ 312, VII.); as,

Horridā tēpētās cōlūm contrāxit; et imbres  
Nivesque deducunt Jovem:  
Nunc mare, nunc silvæ... (Epid. 18.)

NOTE. The second and third lines of this stanza, also, are often written as one verse. See § 318, II.

17. One Archilochian heptameter (§ 318, IV.) and one iambic trimeter catalectic (§ 314, V.); as,

Solvitur aeris hiems grata vici vicia et Favōnī,  
Trahūntque siccas machinās carinas. (Lib. 1, 4.)

18. One iambic dimeter acephalous (§ 314, VIII.) and one iambic trimeter catalectic (§ 314, V.); as,

Nōn ebur neque aurum  
Mē rēndēt in domo lacunar. (Lib. 2, 18.)

19. The Ionic *a minore* (§ 317, II.) alone; as,  
Miserarum est neque amoris dāre lūdum, neque dācti... (Lib. 3, 12.)

## § 321. A METRICAL KEY TO THE ODES OF HORACE.

*Containing, in alphabetic order, the first words of each, with a reference to the numbers in the preceding Synopsis, where the metre is explained.*

Æli, vetusto.....	No. 1	Mollis inertia.....	No. 10
Æquam memento.....	1	Montium custos.....	2
Albi, ne doleas.....	5	Motum ex Metello.....	1
Altèra jam teritur.....	13	Musis amicus.....	1
Augustam, amice.....	1	Natis in usum.....	1
At, O deorum.....	4	Ne forte credas.....	1
Audivère, Lyce.....	6	Ne sit ancillæ.....	2
Bacchum in remòtis.....	1	Nolis longa feræ.....	5
Beatus ille.....	4	Nondum subacta.....	1
Cælo supinas.....	1	Non ebur neque aureum.....	12
Cælo tonantem.....	1	Non semper imbres.....	1
Cur me querèlis.....	1	Non usitatâ.....	1
Delicta majorum.....	1	Non vides, quanto.....	2
Descende cælo.....	1	Nox erat.....	10
Diânam, tenèræ.....	6	Nullam, Vare, sacrâ.....	9
Diffugère nives.....	14	Nullus argento.....	2
Dive, quem proles.....	2	Nunc est bibendum.....	1
Divis orte bonis.....	5	O crudelis adhuc.....	9
Donârem patêras.....	7	O diva, gratum.....	1
Donec gratus eram tibi.....	3	O fons Bandusiæ.....	6
Eheu! fugâces.....	1	O matre pulchrâ.....	1
Est mihi nonum.....	2	O nata mecum.....	1
Et ture et fidibus.....	3	O navis, refèrent.....	6
Exëgi monumentum.....	7	O sæpe mecum.....	1
Extremum Tanaim.....	5	O Venus, regina.....	2
Faune, nympharum.....	2	Odi profanum.....	1
Festo quid potius die.....	3	Otium Divos.....	2
Herculis ritu.....	2	Parcius junctas.....	2
Horrida tempestas.....	16	Parcus Deorum.....	1
Ibis Liburnis.....	4	Parentis olim.....	4
Icci, beâtis.....	1	Pastor quum traheret.....	5
Ille et nefasto.....	1	Percleos odi, puer.....	2
Impios parræ.....	2	Petti, nihil me.....	15
Inclûsam Danæen.....	5	Phœbe, silvarumque.....	2
Intactis opulentior.....	3	Phœbus volentem.....	1
Intèger vitæ.....	2	Pindarum quisquis.....	2
Intermissa, Venus, diu.....	3	Poscimus: si quid.....	2
Jam jam effîcaci.....	11	Quæ cura Patrum.....	1
Jam pauca aratro.....	1	Qualem ministrum.....	1
Jam satis terris.....	2	Quando repostum.....	4
Jam veris comites.....	5	Quantum distet ab Inâcho.....	3
Justum et tenacem.....	1	Quem tu, Melpomène.....	3
Laudabunt alii.....	3	Quem virum aut herôa.....	2
Lupis et agnis.....	4	Quid bellicôsus.....	1
Lydia, dic, per omnes.....	12	Quid dedicatum.....	1
Mæcenas atavis.....	7	Quid fles, Asterie.....	6
Malâ solûta.....	4	Quid immerentes.....	4
Martii cælebs.....	2	Quid obseratis.....	11
Mater sæva Cupidinum.....	3	Quid tibi vis.....	3
Mercûri, facunde.....	2	Quis desiderio.....	5
Mercûri, nam te.....	2	Quis multa gracilis.....	6
Miserarum est.....	19	Quo me, Bacche.....	3

Quo, quo, scelesti ruitis.....No. 4	Tu ne quassieris.....No. 9
Quum tu, Lydia..... 8	Tyrrhæna regum..... 1
Rectius vives..... 2	Ulla si juris..... 2
Rogare longo..... 4	Uxor pauperis Ibÿci..... 3
Scriberis Vario..... 5	Velox amœnum..... 1
Septimi, Gades..... 2	Vides, ut altâ..... 1
Sic te Diva potens..... 3	Vile potâbis..... 2
Solvitur acris hiems.....17	Vitas hinnuleo..... 6
Te maris et terræ..... 8	Vixi puellis..... 1

The following are the single metres used by Horace in his lyric compositions, viz :—

- |  |                              |
|--|------------------------------|
| 1. Dactylic Hexameter.                       | 11. Choriambic Pentameter.   |
| 2. Dactylic Tetrameter <i>a posteriori</i> . | 12. Choriambic Tetrameter.   |
| 3. Dactylic Trimeter Catalectic.             | 13. Asclepiadic Tetrameter.  |
| 4. Adonic.                                   | 14. Glycœnic.                |
| 5. Trimeter Iambic.                          | 15. Phœreocratic.            |
| 6. Iambic Trimeter Catalectic.               | 16. Choriambic Dimeter.      |
| 7. Iambic Dimeter.                           | 17. Ionic <i>a minore</i> .  |
| 8. Archilochian Iambic Dimeter Hypermeter.   | 18. Greater Alcaic.          |
| 9. Iambic Dimeter Acephalous.                | 19. Archilochian Heptameter. |
| 10. Sapphic.                                 | 20. Lesser Alcaic.           |

## APPENDIX.

## GRAMMATICAL FIGURES.

§ 322. Certain deviations from the regular form and construction of words, are called *grammatical figures*. These may relate either to Orthography and Etymology, or to Syntax.

## I. FIGURES OF ORTHOGRAPHY AND ETYMOLOGY.

These are distinguished by the general name of *metaplasms*.

1. *Prosthesis* is the prefixing of a letter or syllable to a word; as, *gnātus*, for *nātus*; *tētūli*, for *tūli*. These, however, are rather the ancient customary forms, from which those now in use were formed by *aphæresis*.

2. *Aphæresis* is the taking of a letter or syllable from the beginning of a word; as, *'st*, for *est*; *rābōnem*, for *arrābōnem*.

3. *Epenthesis* is the insertion of a letter or syllable in the middle of a word; as, *ālītūum*, for *ālītum*; *Māvors*, for *Mars*.

4. *Syncope* is the omission of a letter or syllable in the middle of a word; as, *delm*, for *deōrum*; *meām factūm*, for *meōrum factōrum*; *sæcla*, for *sæcula*; *flesti*, for *flevisti*; *rēpostus*, for *rēpōstus*; *aspris*, for *aspēris*.

5. *Crasis* is the contraction of two vowels into one; as, *cōgo*, for *cōāgo*; *nīl*, for *nihil*.

6. *Paragoge* is the addition of a letter or syllable to the end of a word; as, *med*, for *me*; *claudier*, for *claudi*.

7. *Apocope* is the omission of the final letter or syllable of a word; as, *mēn'*, for *mēne*; *Antōni*, for *Antōnii*.

8. *Antithesis* is the substitution of one letter for another; as, *ollī*, for *illī*; *optūmus*, for *optimū*; *afficio*, for *adfficio*. *O* is often thus used for *u*, especially after *e*; as, *voltus*, for *vultus*; *servom*, for *servum*. So after *qu*; as, *æquom*, for *æquum*.

9. *Metathesis* is the changing of the order of letters in a word; as, *pistris*, for *pristis*.

## II. FIGURES OF SYNTAX.

323. The figures of Syntax are *ellipsis*, *pleonasm*, *enallage*, and *hyperbāton*.

1. (a.) *Ellipsis* is the omission of some word or words in a sentence; as,

*Aiunt*, scil. *hōmīnes*. *Dārius Hystaspis*, scil. *filius*. *Cāno*, scil. *ēgo*. *Quid multa*! scil. *dicam*. *Ex quo*, scil. *tempore*. *Fērina*, scil. *caro*.

(b.) *Ellipsis* includes *asyndeton*, *zeugma*, *syllipsis*, and *prolepsis*.

(1.) *Asyndeton* is the omission of the copulative conjunction; as, *abūt*, *excessit*, *evācūt*, *erūpūt* scil. *et*. *Cic*. This is called in pure Latin *dissolutio*.

(2.) (a.) *Zeugma* is the uniting of two nouns or two infinitives to a verb, which, as to its meaning, is applicable to only one of them; as, *Pācem an bellum gērens*: (Sall.) where *gērens* is applicable to *bellum* only, while *pācem* requires *dgēre*. *Semperne in sanguine, ferro, fūgā versābimur?* (Id.) where the verb does not properly apply to *ferro*.

(b.) *Nēgo* is often thus used with two propositions, one of which is affirmative; as, *Nēgant Cēsārem mansūrum, postulātāque interpōsita esse, for dicuntque postūlātā...* Cic. See § 209, Note 4.

(c.) When an adjective or verb, referring to two or more nouns, agrees with one, and is understood with the rest, the construction is also sometimes called *zeugma*, but more commonly *syllipsis*; as, *Et gēnus, et virtus, nisi cum re, vilior algā est*. Hor. *Cāper tibi salvus et hōdī*. Virg. *Quamvis ille niger, quamvis tu candida esses*. Id.

(3.) *Syllipsis* is when an adjective or verb, belonging to two or more nouns of different genders, persons, or numbers, agrees with one rather than another; as, *Attōnlī nōtītātē pāvent* Baucis, *amīdusque* Philemon. Ovid. *Prōcumbit uterque prōnus hāmi*, i. e. *Deucālion et Pyrrha*. Id. *Sustulimus mānus et ego et Balbus*. Cic. So, *Ipse cum frātre ddesse jussi sūmus*. Id. *Prōfectisque dñicūlo et lūtris*. Curt. See §§ 205, R. 2, and 209, R. 12, (3.) and (7.)

(4.) *Prōlepsis* is when the parts, differing in number or person from the whole, are placed after it, the verb or adjective not being repeated; as, *Principes utrinque pugnam ciebant, ab Sābinis* Mettius Curtius, *ab Rōmānis* Hostus Hostilius. Liv. *Bōni quōniam convenimus ambo, tu cālamus inflāre, ego dicere versus*. Virg.

2. (a.) *Pleonasm* is using a greater number of words than is necessary to express the meaning; as,

*Sic ore locūta est*. Virg. *Qui mās vēre vincēre quam dū impērāre mālīt*. Liv. *Nemo unūs*. Cic. *Forte fortunā*. Id. *Prūdēns sciēns*. Ter.

(b.) Under *pleonasm* are included *parelcon*, *polysyndeton*, *hendiadys*, and *periphrasis*.

(1.) *Pārelcon* is the addition of an unnecessary syllable or particle to pronouns, verbs, or adverbs; as, *ēgōmet, agēdum, fortassean*. Such additions, however, usually modify the meaning in some degree.

(2.) *Pōlysyndeton* is a redundancy of conjunctions; as, *Una Eurusque Nōtusque ruunt creberque prōcellis Africus*. Virg.

(3.) *Hendiadys* is the expression of an idea by two nouns connected by *et*, *-que*, or *atque*, instead of a noun and a limiting adjective or genitive; as, *Pātēris libāmus et auro, for aureis pātēris*. Virg. *Libro et silvestri sūbere clausam, for libro sūberis*. Id. *Cristis et auro*. Ovid. Met. 8, 32.

(4.) *Pēriphrasis* or *circumlōcūtiō* is a circuitous mode of expression; as, *Tēnēri fētus ovium*, i. e. *agnī*. Virg.

3. (a.) *Enallāge* is a change of words, or a substitution of one gender, number, case, person, tense, mood, or voice of the same word for another.

(b.) *Enallāge* includes *antimeria*, *heterōsis*, *antiptōsis*, *synēsis*, and *anacoluthon*.

(1.) *Antimēria* is the use of one part of speech for another, or the abstract for the concrete; as, *Nostrum istud vīvēre triste*, for *nostra vita*. Pers. *Aliud cras*. Id. *Conjūgium vidēbit?* for *conjūgem*. Virg.

(2.) *Heterōsis* is the use of one form of noun, pronoun, verb, etc., for another; as, *Ego quōque una pereō, quod mihi est cārius*, for *qui mihi sum cārior*. Ter.

*Rōmānus praelio victor*, for *Rōmāni victōres*. Liv. Many words are used by the poets in the plural instead of the singular; as, *colla, corda, ōra*, etc. See § 98. *Me truncus illapsus cērebro sustūlerat*, for *sustūlisset*. Hor. See § 259, R. 4.

(3.) *Antiphrasis* is the use of one case for another; as, *Cui nunc cognōmen Iūlo*, for *Iūlus*. Virg. § 204, R. 8. *Uxor invicti Jōvis esse nescis*, for *te esse uxōrem*. Hor. § 210, R. 6.

(4.) *Synēsis*, or *synthesis*, is adapting the construction to the sense of a word, rather than to its gender or number; as, *Sūbeunt Tēgœa jūventus auxilio tardī*. Stat. *Concursus pōpuli mirantium quid rei est*. Liv. *Pars in crūcem acti*. Sall. *Ubi illic est scēlus, qui me perdidit?* Ter. *Id mea minime rēfert, qui sum nātū maximus*. Id. See § 205, R. 3, (1.) and (3.), and § 206, (12.)

(5.) *Anacolūthōn* is a disagreement in construction between the latter and former part of a sentence; as, *Nam nos omnes, quibus est dūcunde dūquis objectus lūbos, omne quod est intērea tempus, priusquam id rescitum est, lucro est*. Ter. In this example, the writer began as if he intended to say *lucro habēmus*, and ended as if he had said *nōbis omnibus*, leaving *nos omnes* without its verb.

4. (a.) *Hypērbatōn* is a transgression of the usual order of words or clauses.

(b.) *Hypērbatōn* includes *ānastrōphe*, *hystēron prōtēron*, *hypoallage*, *synchysis*, *imēsis*, and *pārenthēsis*.

(1.) *Anastrōphe* is an inversion of the order of two words; as, *Transtra per et rēmos, for per transtra*. Virg. *Collo dare brāchia circum, for circumdāre*. Id. *Nox erit āna sūper, for sūpērērit*. Ovid. *Et fūcit āre, for ārēfūcit*. Lucr.

(2.) *Hystēron prōtēron* is reversing the natural order of the sense; as, *Mōriāmur, et in mēdia arma ruāmus*. Virg. *Vālet atque vivit*. Ter.

(3.) *Hypoallage* is an interchange of constructions; as, *In nōva fert dñimus mūtātās dicēre formas corpōra, for corpōra mūtātā in nōvas formas*. Ovid. *Dāre classibus Austros, for dāre classes Austris*. Virg.

(4.) *Synchysis* is a confused position of words; as, *Saxa vōcant lūli, mēdiis quæ in fluctibus, āras, for quæ saxa in mēdiis fluctibus, lūli vōcant āras*. Virg.

(5.) *Imēsis* or *diacope* is the separation of the parts of a compound word; as, *Septem subjecta trōni gens, for septentrīoni*. Virg. *Quæ me cumque vōcant terræ*. Id. *Per mihi, per, inquam, grātum fēcēris*. Cic.

(6.) *Pārenthēsis* or *dialysis* is the insertion of a word or words in a sentence interrupting the natural connection; as, *Titjre dum rēdeo, (brēvis est via,) pascē cōpellas*. Virg.

REMARK. To the above may be added *archaism* and *Hellenism*, which belong both to the figures of etymology and to those of syntax.

(1.) *Archaism* is the use of ancient forms or constructions; as, *aulæ, for aulæ; sēnāti, for sēnātūs; fūat, for sit; prōhibesso, for prōhibuēro; impetrassēre, for impetrātūrum esse; fārter, for fāri; nēnu, for non; endo, for in;—Opēram abūttur, for opēra*. Ter. *Quid tibi hanc cūrātio est rem?* Plaut.

(2.) *Hellenism* is the use of Greek forms or constructions; as, *Hēlēne, for Hēlēna; Antiphon, for Antīpho; aurās (gen.), for auræ; Pallādos, Pallāda, for Pallādis, Pallādē; Trōāsīn, Trōādās, for Trōādibus, Trōādēs;—Abstīnēto trārum*. Hor. *Tempus dēsistēre pugnæ*. Virg.

§ 324. (1.) To the grammatical figures may not improperly be subjoined certain others, which are often referred to in philological works, and which are called

## TROPES AND FIGURES OF RHETORIC.

(2.) A rhetorical figure is a mode of expression different from the direct and simple way of expressing the same sense. The turning of a word from its original and customary meaning, is called a trope.

1. (a.) A *metaphor* is the transferring of a word from the object to which it properly belongs, and applying it to another, to which that object has some analogy; as, *Ridet ager*, The field smiles. Virg. *Ætas aurea*, The golden age. Ovid. *Naufragia fortune*, The wreck of fortune. Cic. *Mentis oculi*, The eyes of the mind. Id. *Virtus intum gloriæ stimulis concitat*. The harshness of a metaphor is often softened by means of *quasi*, *tamquam*, *quidam*, or *ut ita dicam*; as, *In una philosophia quasi tabernaculum vite sue collocarunt*. Id. *Opimum quoddam et tamquam adpâtæ dictionis genus*. Id.

(b.) *Citachresis* or *abúsio* is a bold or harsh metaphor; as, *Vir grægis ipse ciper*. Virg. *Eurus per Scûlas equitavit undas*. Hor.

2. *Metonymy* is substituting the name of an object for that of another to which it has a certain relation; as the cause for the effect, the container for what is contained, the property for the substance, the sign for the thing signified, and their contraries; the parts of the body for certain affections; the possessor for the thing possessed; place and time for the persons or things which they comprise, etc.; as, *Mortales*, for *hómînes*. Virg. *Amor duri Martis*, i. e. *belli*. Id. *Fruges Cérèrem appellamus, vinum autem Libèrum*. Cic. *Cipio vigiliam meam tibi trãdere*, i. e. *meam cãram*. Id. *Pallida mors*. Hor. *Hausit patèram*, i. e. *vinum*. Virg. *Vina cõrõnant*, i. e. *patèram*. Id. *Necte ternos cõlõres*, i. e. *tria fila diversi cõlõris*. Id. *Cedant arma tõgæ*, i. e. *bellum paci*. Cic. *Sæcula mitescent*, i. e. *hómînes in sæculis*. Virg. *Vivat Pãcius vel Nestõra tõtum*. Juv. *Doctrinã Græcia nos supèrãbat*, for *Græci supèrãbant*. Cic. *Pãgicentum Suevõrum ad ripas Rhênî consedèrant*, for *pãgõrum incõlæ*. Cæs. *Tempora amicõrum, for res adversæ*. Cic. *Claudius lège prædiatõriã venãlis pependit*, for *Claudii prædium*. Suet. *Vici ad Jãnum mediũ sedentes*, for *Jãni vicum*. Cic.

3. *Synecdõche* is putting a whole for a part, a genus for a species, a singular for a plural, and their contraries; also the material for the thing made of it; a definite for an indefinite number, etc.; as, *Fontem fèrèbant*. Id. *Tectum*, for *dõmus*. Id. *Armãto milite complent*, for *armãtis militibus*. Id. *Ferrum*, for *glãdius*. Id. *Qui Cõrinthiis õpèribus abundant*, i. e. *vãsis*. Cic. *Urbem, urbem, mi Rãfè, cõle*, i. e. *Rõmam*. Cic. *Centum puer artium*, i. e. *multãrum*.

4. *Irony* is the intentional use of words which express a sense contrary to that which the writer or speaker means to convey; as, *Salve bone vir, curasti prõbe*. Ter. *Egrègiam vèro laudem, et apõlia ampla refertis, tũque, puerque tuus*. Virg.

5. *Hypèrbõle* is the magnifying or diminishing of a thing beyond the truth; as, *Ipse arduus, altãque pulsat sidèra*. Virg. *Ociõs Euro*. Id.

6. *Métãlepsis* is the including of several tropes in one word; as, *Post illquõ aristas*. Virg. Here *aristas* is put for *messes*, and this for *annos*.

7. (a.) *Allegory* is a consistent series of metaphors, designed to illustrate one subject by another; as, *O nãvis, refèrent in mãre te nõvi fluctus*. Hor.

(b.) An obscure allegory or riddle is called an *enigma*; as, *Dic, quibus in terris tres pãteat celi spãtium non ampliũ ulnas*. Virg.

8. *Antõnõmãsia* is using a proper noun for a common one, and the contrary; as, *Irus et est subito, qui mõdo Cræsus erat, for pauper and dives*. Ovid. So, by periphrasis, *põtor Rhõdãni*, for *Gallus*. Hor. *Eversor Carthãginis, for Scipio*. Quint. *Elõquentia princeps*, for *Cicero*. Id. *Tyðides*, for *Diõmèdes*. Virg.

9. *Litõtes* is a mode of expressing something by denying the contrary; as, *Non laudo, I blame*. Ter. *Non innocia verba*. Virg.

10. *Antiphrãsis* is using a word in a sense opposite to its proper meaning; as, *Auri sacra fãmes*. Virg.

11. *Euphemism* is the use of softened language to express what is offensive or distressing; as, *Si quid accidisset Cæsãri*, i. e. *si mortuus esset*. Veil.

12. *Antãnãclãsis* or *punning* is the use of the same word in different senses; as, *Quis neget Enèã natũm de stirpe Nèrõnem? Sustulit hãc mãtrem, sustulit ille patrem*. Epigr. *Amãri jucundũ est, si curètũr ne quid insit amãri*. Cic.

13. *Anaphōra* or *ēpanāphōra* is the repetition of a word at the beginning of successive clauses; as, *Nihilne te nocturnum præsidium pālātii, nihil urbis vigiliae, nihil timor populi*, etc. Cic. *Te, dulcis conjux, te, solum in litore secum, te, veniente die, te, decedente, cānebat*. Virg.

14. *Epistrophe* is the repetition of a word at the end of successive clauses; as, *Pænos populus Rōmānus iustitiā vicit, armis vicit, liberālitāte vicit*. Cic. In pure Latin this figure is called *conversio*.

15. *Symplōce* is the repetition of a word at the beginning, and of another at the end, of successive clauses, and hence it includes the anaphōra and the epistrophe; as, *Quis legem tulit?* Rullus: *Quis maiorem populi partem suffragiis privavit?* Rullus: *Quis comitiis præfuit?* Idem Rullus. Cic.

16. *Epāndlepsis* is a repetition of the same word or sentence after intervening words or clauses. See Virg. *Geor.* II. 4—7.

17. *Anādiplosis* is the use of the same word at the end of one clause, and the beginning of another; as, *Sequitur pulcherrimus Astur, Astur equo fidens*. Virg. *A.* 10, 180. *Nunc etiam audes in hōrum conspectum venire, venire audes in hōrum conspectum?* Cic. This is sometimes called *ēpanastrōphe*.

18. *Epāndiplosis* is the use of the same word both at the beginning and end of a sentence; as, *Crescit amor nummi, quantum ipsa pecūnia crescit*. Juv.

19. *Epāndosis* or *rēgressio* is the repetition of the same words in an inverted order; as, *Crūdēlis mātēr magis, an puer imprōbus ille? Imprōbus ille puer, crūdēlis tu quōque, mātēr*. Virg.

20. *Epizeuxis* is a repetition of the same word for the sake of emphasis; as, *Excitāte, excitāte eum ab infēris*. Cic. *Ah Cōrydon, Cōrydon, quæ te dementia cēpit?* Virg. *Ibitus, ibitus, utcumque præcēdes*. Hor.

21. *Climax* is a gradual amplification by means of a continued anadiplosis, each successive clause beginning with the conclusion of that which precedes it; as, *Quæ reliqua spes manet libertātis, si illis et quod libet, licet; et quod licet, possunt; et quod possunt, audent; et quod audent, vobis molestum non est?* Cic. This, in pure Latin, is called *gradatio*.

22. *Incēmentum* is an amplification without a strict climax; as, *Factus est, vinciri civem Rōmānum; scelus, verbērari; prope parricidium, necari; quid dicam in crucem tolli?* Cic.

23. *Polyptōton* is the repetition of a word in different cases, genders, numbers, tenses, etc.; as, *Jam clipeus clipeis, umbōne repellitur umbo; ense minax ensis, pede pes, et cuspide cuspis*. Stat.

24. *Paregmēnon* is the use of several words of the same origin, in one sentence; as, *Abesse non potest, quin ejusdem hominis sit, qui imprōbos probet, probos imprōbare*. Cic. *Istam pugnam pugnābo*. Plaut.

25. *Pārōnōmāsia* is the use of words which resemble each other in sound; as, *Amor et melle et felle est fecundissimus*. Plaut. *Civem bonarum artium, bonarum partium*. Cic. *Amantes sunt amantes*. Ter. This figure is sometimes called *agnōminatio*.

26. *Hōmōtophrōn* or *alliteration* is the use in the same sentence of several words beginning with the same letter; as, *O Tite, tūte Tūti, tibi tanta, tyranne, tulisti*. Enn. *Neu patria vālidās in viscēra veritē vires*. Virg.

27. *Antithēsis* is the placing of different or opposite words or sentiments in contrast; as, *Hujus orationis difficilior est exitum quam principium invenire*. Cic. *Cæsar beneficiis ac munificentia magnus habebatur; integritate vitæ*. Cato. Sall.

28. *Oxymōron* unites words of contrary significations, thus producing a seeming contradiction; as, *Concordia discors*. Hor. *Quum tacent, clamant*. Cic.

29. *Synōnymia* is the use of different words or expressions having the same import; as, *Non feram, non patiar, non sinam*. Cic. *Prōmisso, recipio, spondeo*. Id.



30. *Parábola* or *Simile* is the comparison of one thing with another; as, *Répente te, tamquam serpens e laticulis, oculis eminentibus, inflato collo, tumidis cervicibus, intulisti.* Cic.

31. *Erôtêsis* is an earnest question, and often implies a strong affirmation of the contrary; as, *Créditis avectos hostes?* Virg. *Heu! quæ me aquora possunt accipere?* Id.

32. *Epánorthôsis* or *Correctio* is the recalling of a word, in order to place a stronger or more significant one in its stead; as, *Filium unicum adolescentulum habeo: ah! quid dixi? me habere? Imo habui.* Ter.

33. *Apôsiôpêsis*, *Réticentia*, or *Interruptio*, is leaving a sentence unfinished in consequence of some emotion of the mind; as, *Quos ego—sed môtos præstat componere fluctus.* Virg.

34. *Prôspôpœia* or *personification* represents inanimate things as acting or speaking, and persons dead or absent as alive and present; as, *Quos (patris) tecum, Cætilina, sic agit.* Cic. *Virtus sumit aut ponit secures.* Hor.

35. *Apostrôphe* is a turning off from the regular course of the subject, to address some person or thing; as, *Vi pôitur; quid non mortalia pectora cõgis, auri sacra fames!* Virg.

36. *Párdleipsis* is a pretended omission of something, in order to render it more observed. See Cic. Cat. 1, 6, 14.

37. *Epiphônêma* or *Acclâmatio* is an exclamation or grave reflection on something said before; as, *Tantos môtis erat Rômanam condere gentem.* Virg.

38. *Ecphônêsis* or *Exclâmatio* shows some violent emotion of the mind; as, *O tempôra! O môtres!*

39. *Apôria*, *Diápôrêsis*, or *Dubitatio*, expresses a doubt in regard to what is to be said or done; as, *Quos accedam, aut quos appellem?* Sall.

40. *Prôlepsis* is the anticipation of an objection before it is made, or of an event before it occurs; as, *Vêrum anceps pugna fûerat fortuna. Fûisset: Quem metui mörîtura?* Virg.

§ 325. To the figures of rhetoric may be subjoined the following terms, used to designate defects or blemishes in style:—

1. *Barbarism* is either the use of a foreign word, or a violation of the rules of orthography, etymology, or prosody; as, *rigôrôus*, for *rigidus* or *sévêrus*; *domînus*, for *dôminus*; *davi*, for *dédi*.

2. *Solecism* is a violation of the rules of syntax; as, *Vênus pulcher; vos invt-jémus.*

3. *Neoterism* is the use of words or phrases introduced by authors living subsequently to the best ages of Latinity; as, *murdrum*, a murder; *constabularius*, a constable.

4. *Tautology* is a repetition of the same meaning in different words; as, *Jam vos acciem, et prælia, et hostem poscitis.* Sil.

5. *Amphibolia* is the use of equivocal words or constructions; as, *Gallus*, a Gaul, or a cock. *Aio te, Ædacta, Rômanos vincere posse.* Quint.

6. *Idiotism* is a construction peculiar to one or more languages: thus, the ablative after comparatives is a Latinism. When a peculiarity of one language is imitated in another, this is also called *idiotism*. Thus, *Mitte mihi verbum*, instead of *Fac me certiorem*, is an Anglicism.

## ROMAN MODE OF RECKONING.

### L OF TIME.

#### 1. *The Roman Day.*

§ 326. (1.) With the Romans, as with us, the day was either *civil* or *natural*. Their civil day, like ours, extended from midnight to midnight. The natural day continued from sunrise to sunset, as, on the other hand, the night extended from sunset to sunrise. The natural day and night were each divided into twelve equal parts or *hours*, which were consequently of different length, according to the varying length of the days and nights in the successive seasons of the year. It was only at the equinox that the diurnal and nocturnal hours of the Romans were equal to each other, as each was then equal to the twenty-fourth part of the civil day.

(2.) In the Roman camp the night was further divided into four watches (*vigiliæ*), consisting each of three Roman hours, the second and fourth watches ending respectively at midnight and at sunrise.

#### 2. *The Roman Month and Year.*

(1.) The calendar of the Romans, as rectified by Julius Cæsar, agreed with our own in the number of months, and of the days in each, according to the following table:—

Jānuārius . 31 days.	Maius . . 31 days.	September 30 days.
Februārius 28 or 29.	Jūnius . 30 “	Octōber . . 31 “
Martius . . 31 days.	Quintilis 31 “	Nōvember 30 “
Aprilis . . . 30 “	Sextilis . 31 “	Dēcember 31 “

In early times the Roman year began with March, and the names *Quintilis*, *Sextilis*, *September*, etc., indicated the distance of those months from the commencement of the year. *Quintilis* and *Sextilis* were afterwards called *Julius* and *Augustus* in honor of the first two emperors. The Romans, instead of reckoning in an uninterrupted series from the first to the last day of a month, had in each month three points or periods from which their days were counted—the *Calends*, the *Nones*, and the *Ides*. The *Calends* (*Cālendæ*), were always the *first* day of the month. The *Nones* (*Nōnæ*), were the *fifth*, and the *Ides* (*Idus*), the *thirteenth*; except in March, May, July, and October, when the *Nones* occurred on the *seventh* day, and the *Ides* on the *fifteenth*.

(2.) They always counted forward, from the day whose date was to be determined, to the next *Calends*, *Nones*, or *Ides*, and designated the day by its distance before such point. After the first day of the month, therefore, they began to reckon so many days before the *Nones*; after the *Nones*, so many days before the *Ides*; and after the *Ides*, so many before the *Calends*, of the next month.

Thus, the second of January was denoted by *quarto Nōnas Jānuārius*, or *Jānuārii*, scil. *die ante*: the third, *tertio Nōnas*; the fourth, *pridie Nōnas*; and the fifth, *Nōnis*. The sixth was denoted by *octavo Idus*; the seventh,

*septimo Idus*; and so on to the thirteenth, on which the Ides fell. The fourteenth was denoted by *undevigésimo Calendas Februarias*, or *Februarii*; and so on to the end of the month.

(3.) The day preceding the Calends, Nones, and Ides, was termed *pridie Calendas*, etc., scil. *ante*: in designating the other days, both the day of the Calends, etc., and that whose date was to be determined, were reckoned; hence the second day before the Calends, etc., was called *tertio*, the third *quarto*, etc.

(4.) To reduce the Roman calendar to our own, therefore, when the day is between the Calends and the Nones or between the Nones and the Ides, it is necessary to take one from the number denoting the distance of the given day from the Nones or the Ides, and to subtract the remainder from the number of the day on which the Nones or Ides fell in the given month.

Thus, to determine the day equivalent to *IV. Nonas Januarias*, we take 1 from 4, and subtract the remainder, 3, from 5, the day on which the Nones of January fell (i. e.  $4-1=3$ , and  $5-3=2$ ): this gives 2, or the second of January, for the day in question. So *VI. Idus Aprilis*: the Ides of April falling upon the 18th, we take ( $6-1$ , i. e.) 5 from 18, which leaves 8 (i. e.  $6-1=5$ , and  $18-5=8$ ): the expression, therefore, denotes the 8th of April.

(a.) In reckoning the days before the Calends, as they are not the last day of the current month, but the first of the following, it is necessary to subtract two from the number denoting the distance of the given day from the Calends of the following month, and to take the remainder from the number of days in the month.

Thus, *XV. Cal. Quintiles* is  $15-2=13$ , and  $30-13=17$ , i. e. the Roman date *XV. Cal. Quint.* is equivalent to the 17th of June.

(b.) To reduce our calendar to the Roman, the preceding method is to be reversed. Thus when the given day is between the Calends and the Nones or between the Nones and the Ides, (unless it be the day before the Nones or the Ides), we are to *add* one to the number denoting the day of the month, according to our reckoning, on which the Nones or Ides fell. But if the day is after the Ides, (unless it be the last day of the month), we must add *two* to the number of days in the month, and then subtract the number denoting the day of the month as expressed in our reckoning. The remainder will be the day before the Nones, Ides or Calends.

Thus to find the Roman date corresponding to the third of April, we have  $5+1-3=3$ ; the required date, therefore, is *III. Non. Apr.*—To find the proper Roman expression for our tenth of December we have  $13+1-10=4$ ; the date, therefore, is *IV. Id. Dec.*—The Roman expression for the 22d of August, in pursuance of the above rule, is found thus,  $31+2-22=11$ , and the date is *XI. Cal. Sept.*

(5.) In leap year, both the 24th and 25th of February were called the sixth before the Calends of March. The 24th was called *dies bisextus*, and the year itself *annus bisextus*, bissextile or leap year.

(a.) The day after the Calends, etc., was sometimes called *postridie calendas*, etc.

(b.) The names of the months are properly adjectives, though often used as nouns, *mensis* being understood.

(6.) The correspondence of our calendar with that of the Romans is exhibited in the following

TABLE.

<i>Days of our months.</i>	MAR. JUL. MAL. OCT.	JAN. AUG. DEC.	APR. JUN. SEPT. NOV.	FEBR.
1	Calendæ.	Calendæ.	Calendæ.	Calendæ.
2	VI. Nonas.	IV. Nonas.	IV. Nonas.	IV. Nonas.
3	V. "	III. "	III. "	III. "
4	IV. "	Pridie "	Pridie "	Pridie "
5	III. "	Nonæ.	Nonæ.	Nonæ.
6	Pridie Non.	VIII. Idus.	VIII. Idus.	VIII. Idus.
7	Nonæ.	VII. "	VII. "	VII. "
8	VIII. Idus.	VI. "	VI. "	VI. "
9	VII. "	V. "	V. "	V. "
10	VI. "	IV. "	IV. "	IV. "
11	V. "	III. "	III. "	III. "
12	IV. "	Pridie "	Pridie "	Pridie "
13	III. "	Idus.	Idus.	Idus.
14	Pridie Id.	XIX. Cal.	XVIII. Cal.	XVI. Cal.
15	Idus.	XVIII. "	XVII. "	XV. "
16	XVII. Cal.	XVII. "	XVI. "	XIV. "
17	XVI. "	XVI. "	XV. "	XIII. "
18	XV. "	XV. "	XIV. "	XII. "
19	XIV. "	XIV. "	XIII. "	XI. "
20	XIII. "	XIII. "	XII. "	X. "
21	XII. "	XII. "	XI. "	IX. "
22	XI. "	XI. "	X. "	VIII. "
23	X. "	X. "	IX. "	VII. "
24	IX. "	IX. "	VIII. "	VI. "
25	VIII. "	VIII. "	VII. "	V. "
26	VII. "	VII. "	VI. "	IV. "
27	VI. "	VI. "	V. "	III. "
28	V. "	V. "	IV. "	Pridie " Mar
29	IV. "	IV. "	III. "	
30	III. "	III. "	Pridie Cal.	
31	Pridie Cal.	Pridie Cal.		

(7.) In leap-year the last seven days of February were reckoned thus:—

23. VII. <i>Calendas Martias.</i>	27. IV. <i>Cal. Mart.</i>
24. <i>bisexto Cal. Mart.</i>	28. III. " "
25. VI. <i>Cal. Mart.</i>	29. <i>pridie Cal. Mart.</i>
26. V. " "	

(a.) Hence in reducing a date of February in leap-year to the Roman date, for the first 23 days we proceed according to the preceding rule in 4, (b.), as if the month had only 28 days. The 24th is marked as *bisexto Cal. Mart.*, and to obtain the proper expression for the remaining five days we regard the month as having 29 days. Thus the 27th of February in leap-year is  $29+2-27=4$ , and the proper Roman expression is *IV. Cal. Mart.*

(b.) On the other hand, to reduce a Roman date of February in leap-year to our date we reverse the above process, and during the Nones and Ides and until the *VII. Calendas Martias* we reckon the month to have only 28 days:—*bisexto Cal. Mart.* is set down as the 24th, and for the remaining days designated as *VI. V. IV. III.* and *pridie Cal. Mart.* we reckon the month to have 29 days. Thus *III. Cal. Mart.* is  $3-2=1$ , and  $29-1=28$ , and the given day is equivalent to the 28th of February.

(8.) The Latins not only said *tertio*, *pridie*, etc., *Clendas*, etc., but also *ante diem tertium*, etc., *Clendas*, etc.; and the latter form in Cicero and Livy is far more common than the former, and is usually written thus, *a. d. III. Cal.*, etc.

(9.) The expression *ante diem* was used as an indeclinable noun, and is joined with *in* and *ex*; as, *Consul Látinas férias in ante diem tertium Idus Sextilis edixit*. The consul appointed the Latin festival for the third day before the Ides of August. Liv. *Supplicatio indicta est ex ante diem quintum Idus Octóbres*. Id. So, *Ad pridie Nónas Maías*. Cic.

(10.) The week of seven days (*hebdómas*), was not in use among the Romans under the republic, but was introduced under the emperors. The days of the week were then named from the planets; *dies Sólis*, Sunday; *dies Lúnae*, Monday; *dies Martis*, Tuesday; *dies Mercúrii*, Wednesday; *dies Jovis*, Thursday; *dies Vénérís*, Friday; *dies Sáturni*, Saturday.

(11.) The term *nundinas* (from *nóvem—dies*) denotes the regular market day at Rome when the country people came into the city; but it is not used for the purpose of denoting the period of eight days intervening between two successive market days.

(12.) The year at Rome was designated by the names of the consuls for that year. Thus Virgil was born, *M. Licinio Crasso et Cn. Pompeio Magno consulibus*, i. e. in the year of the consulship of Crassus and Pompey. But in Roman authors events are often dated from the year in which Rome was founded, which, according to Varro, was in the 753d year before the birth of Christ. This period was designated as *anno urbis condita*, and by abbreviation; *a. u. c.*, or simply *u. c.*, and sometimes by *a.* alone, before the numerals.

Thus the birth of Virgil was *a. u. c.* 684. To reduce such dates to our reckoning, if the given number is less than 754, we subtract it from the latter number, and the difference is the required year before Christ. The birth of Virgil therefore is  $754 - 684 = 70$  before Christ.—But if the number of the Roman year exceeds 753, we deduct 753 from the given number, and the remainder is the year after Christ. For example, the emperor Augustus died *a. u. c.* 767, and the corresponding year of our era is  $767 - 753 = 14$ .

## II. TABLES OF MONEY, WEIGHT, AND MEASURE.

OF THE *AS*.

§ 327. The Romans used this word (*As*) to denote, I. The copper coin, whose value (in the time of Cicero) was about one cent and a half of our money. II. The unit of weight (libra), or of measure (*jūgērūm*). III. Any unit or integer considered as divisible; as, of inheritances, interest, houses, etc.; whence *ex asse hères*, one who inherits the whole. The multiples of the *As* are, *Dipondius* (*duo pondo*; for the *As* originally weighed a pound), i. e. 2 Asses; *Sestertius* (*sesqui tertius*), i. e. 2½ Asses; *Tressis*, i. e. 3 Asses; *Quatrussis*, i. e. 4 Asses; and so on to *Centussis*, i. e. 100 Asses. The *As*, whatever unit it represented, was divided into twelve parts or *uncia*, and the different fractions received different names, as follows:

	Uncia.		Uncia
As.....	12	Quincunx .....	5
Deunx.....	11	Triens.....	4
Dextans.....	10	Quādrans, or Tērucius.....	3
Dodrans.....	9	Sextans.....	2
Bes.....	8	Uncia.....	1
Septunx.....	7		
Sēmis.....	6	Sescuncia.....	1½

The *Uncia* was divided in the following manner:—

1 <i>Uncia</i> contained	2 <i>Sēmunciae</i> .
"	" 3 <i>Duellæ</i> .
"	" 4 <i>Sicilici</i> .
"	" 6 <i>Sextulæ</i> .
"	" 8 <i>Drachmæ</i> .
"	" 24 <i>Scrupula</i> .
"	" 48 <i>Oboli</i> .

#### ROMAN COINS.

These were the *Tēruncius*, *Sembella*, and *As* or *Libella*, of copper; the *Sestertius*, *Quinārius* (or *Victōriātus*), and *Dēnārius*, of silver; and the *Aureus*, of gold.

		\$	Cts.	M.
The <i>Tēruncius</i> .....		0	0	8.9
2 <i>Tēruncii</i> make 1 <i>Sembella</i> .....		0	0	7.8
2 <i>Sembellæ</i> " 1 <i>As</i> or <i>Libella</i> .....		0	1	5.6
2½ <i>Asses</i> * " 1 <i>Sestertius</i> .....		0	3	9
2 <i>Sestertii</i> " 1 <i>Quinārius</i> .....		0	7	8
2 <i>Quinārii</i> " 1 <i>Dēnārius</i> .....		0	15	6
25 <i>Dēnārii</i> " 1 <i>Aureus</i> .....		8	90	0

\* Sometimes also (in copper) the *triens*, *sextans*, *uncia*, *sextula*, and *dūpondius*.

#### ROMAN COMPUTATION OF MONEY.

##### *Sestertii Nummi.*

	\$	Cts.	M.
<i>Sestertius</i> (or <i>nummus</i> ).....	0	3	9
<i>Dēcem sestertii</i> .....	0	39	0
<i>Centum sestertii</i> .....	3	90	0
<i>Mille sestertii</i> (equal to a <i>sestertium</i> ).....	39	0	0

##### *Sestertia.*

<i>Sestertium</i> (equal to <i>mille sestertii</i> ).....	39	0	0
<i>Dēcem sestertia</i> .....	390	0	0
<i>Centum, centum sestertia</i> , or <i>centum millia sestertium</i> .....	3900	0	0
<i>Dēcies sestertium</i> , or <i>dēcies centēna millia nummum</i> .....	39000	0	0
<i>Centies</i> , or <i>centies H. s.</i> .....	390000	0	0
<i>Millies H. s.</i> .....	3900000	0	0
<i>Millies centies H. s.</i> .....	4290000	0	0

N. B.—The marks denoting a *Sestertius nummus* are *IIS.*, *LLS.*, *HS.*, which are properly abbreviations for 2 1-2 *asses*. Observe, also, that when a line is placed over the numbers, *centēna millia* is understood, as in the case of the numeral adverbs; thus, *H. S.* *MC.* is *millies centies HS.*; whereas *HS. MC.* is only 1100 *Sestertii*.

#### ROMAN CALCULATION OF INTEREST.

The Romans received interest on their loans monthly, their highest rate being one per cent. (*centesima*), a month, i. e. 12 per cent a year. As this was the highest rate, it was reckoned as the *as* or unit in reference to the lower rates, which were denominated, according to the usual division of the *as*, *sēmises*, *triētes*, *quadrantes*, etc., i. e. the half, third, fourth, etc., of the *as* or of 12 per cent. according to the following table:—

	Per cent. a year.
Asses ūsūræ or centēsīmæ.....	12
Sēmīsses ūsūræ.....	6
Trientes ūsūræ.....	4
Quadrantes ūsūræ.....	3
Sextantes ūsūræ.....	2
Unciæ ūsūræ.....	1
Quincunces ūsūræ.....	6
Septunces ūsūræ.....	7
Besses ūsūræ.....	8
Dodrantes ūsūræ.....	9
Dextantes ūsūræ.....	10
Deunces ūsūræ.....	11

## ROMAN WEIGHTS.

		Oz.	Dwt.	Gr.
Siliqua.....		0	0	3.086
3 Siliquæ make 1 Obolus.....		0	0	9.107
2 Oboli " 1 Scrupulum....		0	0	18.214
3 Scrupula " 1 Drachma.....		0	2	6.643
1½ Drachma " 1 Sextula.....		0	3	0.857
1½ Sextula " 1 Sicilicus.....		0	4	13.286
1½ Sicilicus " 1 Duella.....		0	6	1.714
3 Duellæ " 1 Uncia.....		0	18	5.143
12 Unciæ " 1 Libra* (As)....		10	18	13.714

\*The *Libra* was also divided, according to the fractions of the *As*, into *Deunx*, etc.

## ROMAN MEASURES FOR THINGS DRY.

				<i>English Corn Measures.</i>			
				Peck.	Gal.	Pint.	Sol. in.
	Ligula.....			0	0	0 1-48	0.01
4	Ligulæ make	1	Cyathus.....	0	0	0 1-12	0.04
1½	Cyathus “	1	Acetabulum...	0	0	0 1-8	0.06
4	Acetabula “	1	Hemina.....	0	0	0 1-2	0.24
2	Heminæ “	1	Sextarius.....	0	0	1	0.48
16	Sextarii “	1	Modius.....	1	0	0	7.68

## ROMAN MEASURES FOR THINGS LIQUID.

			English Wine Measures.	
		Galls.	Pints.	Sol. in.
Ligula.....		0	0 1-48	0.117
4 Ligulæ make 1 Cyathus.....		0	0 1-12	0.469
1½ Cyathus " 1 Acetabulum.....		0	0 1-8	0.704
2 Acetabula " 1 Quartarius.....		0	0 1-4	1.409
2 Quartarii " 1 Hemina.....		0	0 1-2	2.876
2 Heminæ " 1 Sextarius*.....		0	1	5.836
6 Sextarii " 1 Congius.....		0	7	4.942
4 Congii " 1 Urna.....		3	4 1-2	5.33
2 Urnæ " 1 Amphora (or Quadrantal).		7	1	10.66
20 Amphoræ " 1 Culeus.....		143	3	11.095

\*The *Sextarius* was also divided into twelve equal parts, called *cyathi*, and therefore the *calices* were denominated *sextantes*, *quadrantes*, *trientes*, according to the number of *cyathi* which they contained.

N. B.—*Cadus*, *congiarius*, and *dolium*, are the names of certain vessels, not measures, of capacity.

ROMAN MEASURES OF LENGTH.

			English paces.	Feet.	Inch. Dec.
	Digitus transversus .....		0	0	0.725 1-4
1 1-5	Digitus make 1 Uncia .....		0	0	0.967
8	Unciæ " 1 Palmus minor .....		0	0	2.901
4	Palmi minores " 1 Pes .....		0	0	11.604
1 1-4	Pes " 1 Palmipes .....		0	1	2.505
1 1-5	Palmipes " 1 Cūbitus .....		0	1	5.408
1 2-3	Cūbitus " 1 Grādus .....		0	2	5.01
2	Grādus " 1 Passus .....		0	4	10.02
125	Passus " 1 Stādium .....	120	4	4	4.5
8	Stādia " 1 Milliārium .....	967	0	0	0

ROMAN SQUARE MEASURES.

	Roman sq. feet.	English rods.	Sq. pls.	Sq. feet.
Jūgērūm (As) .....	28,800	2	18	250.05
Deunx. ....	26,400	2	10	183.85
Dextans. ....	24,000	2	02	117.64
Dodrāns. ....	21,600	1	84	51.42
Bes. ....	19,200	1	25	257.46
Septunx. ....	16,800	1	17	191.25
Sēmis. ....	14,400	1	09	125.03
Quincunx. ....	12,000	1	01	58.82
Triens. ....	9,600	0	32	264.85
Quādrans. ....	7,200	0	24	198.64
Sextans. ....	4,800	0	16	182.43
Uncia. ....	2,400	0	08	66.21

REMARK 1. The Romans reckoned their copper money by *asses*, their silver money by *sestertii*, and their gold money by *aurei* and sometimes by Attic *talents*.

REM. 2. The *as*, as the unit of money, was originally a pound of copper, but its weight was gradually diminished, until, in the later days of the republic, it amounted to only 1-24th of a pound.

REM. 3. (a.) The *dēnārius* was a silver coin, originally equal in value to ten *asses*, whence its name; but, after the weight of the *as* was reduced, the *dēnārius* was equal to eighteen *asses*.

(b.) The *sestertius*, or sesterce, was one fourth of the *dēnārius*, or two *asses* and a half (*sēmistertius*). The *sestertius* was called emphatically *nummus*, as in it all large sums were reckoned after the coining of silver money.

(c.) The *aureus* (a gold coin), in the time of the emperors, was equal to 25 *dēnārii*, or 100 sesterces.

REM. 4. In reckoning money, the Romans called any sum under 2000 sesterces so many *sestertii*; as, *decem sestertii*, ten sesterces; *centum sestertii*, a hundred sesterces.

REM. 5. Sums from 2000 sesterces (inclusive) to 1,000,000, they denoted either by *mille*, *millia*, with *sestertiūm* (gen. plur.), or by the plural of the neuter noun *sestertium*, which itself signified a thousand sesterces. Thus they said *quadraginta millia sestertiūm*, or *quadraginta sestertia*, to denote 40,000 sesterces. With the genitive *sestertiūm*, *millia* was sometimes omitted; as, *sestertiūm centum*, soil. *millia*, 100,000 sesterces.

REM. 6. To denote a million, or more, they used a combination; thus, *décies centēna millia sestertiūm*, 1,000,000 sesterces. The words *centēna millia*, however, were generally omitted; thus, *décies sestertiūm*, and sometimes merely *décies*. See § 118, 5. So, *centies*, 10 millions; *millies*, 100 millions.



REK. 7. Some suppose that *sestertium*, when thus joined with the numeral adverbs, is always the neuter noun in the nominative or accusative singular. The genitive and ablative of that noun are thus used; as, *Decies sestertii dote*, With a dowry of 1,000,000 sesterces. Tac. *Quinquagies sestertio*, 5,000,000 sesterces. Id. But this usage does not occur in Cicero.

## ABBREVIATIONS.

§ 328. The following are the most common abbreviations of Latin words:—

A., <i>Aulus</i> .	M. T. C., <i>Marcus Tullius</i>	Q., or Qu., <i>Quintus</i> .
C., <i>Caius</i> , or <i>Gaius</i> .	Cicero.	Ser., <i>Servius</i> .
Cn., <i>Cneius</i> .	M., <i>Manius</i> .	S., or Sex., <i>Sextus</i> .
D., <i>Decimus</i> .	Mam., <i>Mamercus</i> .	Sp., <i>Spurius</i> .
L., <i>Lucius</i> .	N., <i>Numerius</i> .	T., <i>Titus</i> .
M., <i>Marcus</i> .	P., <i>Publius</i> .	Ti., or Tib., <i>Tiberius</i> .

---

A. d., <i>ante diem</i> .	F., <i>Filius</i> ; as, M. F., <i>Marcus filius</i> .	Pont. Max., <i>pontifex maximus</i> .
A. U. C., <i>anno urbis condita</i> .	Ictus, <i>iurisconsultus</i> .	Pr., <i>prator</i> .
Cal., or Kal., <i>Calendas</i> .	Id., <i>Idus</i> .	Proc., <i>præconsul</i> .
Cos., <i>Consul</i> .	Imp., <i>impërator</i> .	Resp., <i>respublica</i> .
Coss., <i>Consules</i> .	J. O. M., <i>Jovi, optimo maximo</i> .	S., <i>sacrum, or senatus</i> .
D., <i>Divus</i> .	N., <i>nepos</i> .	S. D. P., <i>senatûs disceptatim</i> .
D. D., <i>dono dedit</i> .	Non., <i>Nones</i> .	S. P. Q. R., <i>Senatus populusque Romanus</i> .
D. D. D., <i>dat, dicat, dedicat, or dono dicat, dedicat</i> .	P. C., <i>patres conscripti</i> .	S. C., <i>senatus consultum</i> .
Des., <i>designatus</i> .	Pl., <i>plebis</i> .	Tr., <i>tribunus</i> .
D. M., <i>dis manibus</i> .	Pop., <i>populus</i> .	
Eq. Rom., <i>eques Romanus</i> .	P. R., <i>populus Romanus</i> .	

To these may be added terms of reference; as, c., *caput*, chapter; cf., *confer*, compare; l. c., *loco citato*; l. l., *loco laudato*, in the place quoted; v., *versus*, verse.

## DIFFERENT AGES OF ROMAN LITERATURE.

§ 329. 1. Of the Roman literature for the first five centuries after the foundation of the city, but few vestiges remain. The writers of the succeeding centuries have been arranged in four ages, in reference to the purity of the language in the period in which they flourished. These are called the *golden*, *silver*, *brazen*, and *iron* ages.

2. The golden age is reckoned from the time of Livius Andronicus, about A. U. C. 514, to the death of Augustus, A. U. C. 767, or A. D. 14, a period of a little more than 250 years. The writers of the early part of this age are valued rather on account of their antiquity, and in connection with the history of the language, than as models of style. It was not till the age of Cicero, that Roman literature reached its highest elevation. The era comprehending the generation immediately preceding, and that immediately succeeding, that of Cicero, as well as his own, is the period in which the most distinguished writers of Rome flourished; and their works are the standard of purity in the Latin language.

3. The silver age extended from the death of Augustus to the death of Trajan, A. D. 118, a period of 104 years. The writers of this age were inferior to those who had preceded them; yet several of them are worthy of commendation.

4. The brazen age comprised the interval from the death of Trajan to the time when Rome was taken by the Goths, A. D. 410. From the latter epoch commenced the iron age, during which the Latin language was much adulterated with foreign words, and its style and spirit essentially injured.

5. The body of Latin writings has been otherwise arranged by Dr. Freund, so as to be comprised in three main periods,—the *Ante-classical*, *Classical*, and *Post-classical*. The ante-classical extends from the oldest fragments of the language to Lucretius and Varro; the classical from Cicero and Cæsar to Tacitus, Suetonius, and the younger Pliny inclusive; the post-classical from that time to the fifth century of our era. The classical Latinity is subdivided into (a.) *Ciceronian*, (b.) *Augustan*, (c.) *post-Augustan*, and to the language of the fourth and fifth centuries he has given the title of *late Latin*.

## LATIN WRITERS IN THE DIFFERENT AGES.

(From the *Lexicon* of Facciolatus.)

### WRITERS OF THE GOLDEN AGE.

Livius Andronicus.	L. Cornelius Sisenna.	Q. Novius.
Lævius.	P. Nigidius Figulus.	C. Q. Atta.
C. Nævius.	C. Decius Laberius.	L. Cassius Hemina.
Statius Cæcilius.	M. Verrius Flaccus.	Fenestella.
Q. Ennius.	Varro Attacinus.	Q. Claud. Quadrigarius.
M. Pacuvius.	Titinius.	Coelius Antipater.
L. Accius.	L. Pomponius.	Fabius Pictor.
C. Lucilius.	C. Sempronius Asellio.	Cn. Gellius.
Sex. Turpilius.	Cn. Matius.	L. Piso, and others.
L. Afranius.		

Of the works of the preceding writers, only a few fragments remain.

M. Porcius Cato.	Sex. Aurelius Propertius.	P. Ovidius Naso.
M. Accius Plautus.	C. Sallustius Crispus.	Q. Horatius Flaccus.
M. Terentius Afer.	M. Terentius Varro.	C. Pedo Albinovānus.
T. Lucretius Carus.	Albius Tibullus.	Gratius Faliscus.
C. Valerius Catullus.	P. Virgilius Maro.	Phædrus.
P. Syrus.	T. Livius.	C. Cornificius.
C. Julius Cæsar.	M. Manilius.	A. Hurtius, or Oppius.
C. Cornelius Nepos.	M. Vitruvius.	P. Cornelius Severus.
M. Tullius Cicero.		

To these may be added the following names of lawyers, whose opinions are found in the digests:—

Q. Mutius Scævola.	M. Antistius Labeo.	Masurius Sabinus.
Alfenus Varus.		

Of the writers of the golden age, the most distinguished are Terence, Catullus, Cæsar, Nepos, Cicero, Virgil, Horace, Ovid, T. Livy, and Sallust.

## WRITERS OF THE SILVER AGE.

A. Cornelius Celsus.	M. Annæus Lucānus.	M. Fabius Quintiliānus.
P. Velleius Paternūlus.	T. Petronius Arbiter.	Sex. Julius Frontinus.
L. Junius Moderātus	C. Plinius Secundus.	C. Cornelius Tacitus.
Columella.	C. Silius Italicus.	C. Plinius Cæcilius Se-
Pomponius Mela.	C. Valerius Flaccus.	cundus.
A. Persius Flaccus.	C. Julius Solinus.	L. Annæus Florus.
Q. Asconius Pedianus.	D. Junius Juvenālis.	C. Suetonius Tranquil-
M. Annæus Seneca.	P. Papinius Statius.	lus.
L. Annæus Seneca.	M. Valerius Martialis.	

The age to which the following writers should be assigned is somewhat uncertain:—

Q. Curtius Rufus.	Scribonius Largus.	L. Fenestella.
Valerius Probus.	Sulpitia.	Atteius Capito.

Of the writers of the silver age, the most distinguished are Celsus, Velleius, Columella, the Senecas, the Plinies, Juvenal, Quintilian, Tacitus, Suetonius, and Curtius.

## WRITERS OF THE BRAZEN AGE.

A. Gellius.	Vulcatius Gallicanus.	Ammianus Marcel-
L. Apuleius.	Trebellius Pollio.	linus.
Q. Septimius Tertullia-	Flavius Vopiscus.	Vegetius Renatus.
nus.	Cælius Aurelianus.	Aurel. Theodorus Macro-
Q. Serenus Sammonius.	Flavius Eutropius.	bius.
Censorinus.	Rhemnius Fannius.	Q. Aurelius Symmachus.
Thascius Cæcilius	Arnobius Afer.	D. Magnus Anonius.
Cyprianus.	L. Cælius Lactantius.	Paulinus Nolanus.
T. Julius Calpurnius.	Ælius Donatus.	Sex. Aurelius Victor.
M. Aurelius Nemesianus.	C. Vettus Juvenus.	Aurel. Prudentius Clæ-
Ælius Spartianus.	Julius Firmicus.	mens.
Julius Capitolinus.	Fab. Marius Victorinus.	Cl. Claudianus.
Ælius Lampridius.	Sex. Rufus, or Rufus	Marcellus Empiricus.
	Festus.	Falconia Proba.

*Of an Age not entirely certain.*

Valerius Maximus.	Terentianus Maurus.	Sosipater Charisius.
Justinus.	Minutius Felix.	Flavius Avianus.

The opinions of the following lawyers are found in the digests:—

Licinius Proculus.	Herennius Modestinus.	Julius Paulus.
Neratius Priscus.	Salvius Julianus.	Sex. Pomponius.
P. Juventius Celsus.	Caius.	Venuleius Saturninus.
Priscus Jabolenus.	Callistratus.	Ælius Marciānus.
Domitius Ulpianus.	Æmilius Papinianus.	Ælius Gallus, and others.

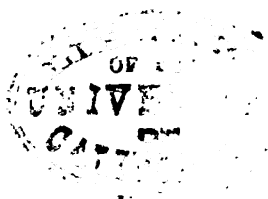
Of the writers of the brazen age, Justin, Terentianus, Victor, Lactantius, and Claudian, are most distinguished.

The age to which the following writers belong is uncertain. The style of some of them would entitle them to be ranked with the writers of the preceding ages, while that of others would place them even below those of the iron age.

Palladius Rutillius Taurus Emiliānus.	Auctōres Priapeiōrum.	Interpres Darētia Phrygii, et Dictyos Cretensis.
Emilius Mācer.	Catalecta Virgillii et Ovidii.	Scholiastæ Vetēres.
Messāla Corvinus.	Auctor oratiōnis Sallustii in Cic. et Cicerōnis in Sall.; item illius <i>Antiquam iret in exsilium</i> .	Grammatici Antiqui.
Vibius Sequester.	Auctor Epistolæ ad Octavium.	Rhetōres Antiqui.
Julius Obséquens.	Auctor Panegyrici ad Pisōnem.	Medici Antiqui.
L. Ampelius.	Declamatiōnes quæ tribuntur Quintiliāno, Porcio Latroni, Calpurnio Flacco.	Catalecta Petroniāna.
Apicius Celsius.		Pervigilium Venēris.
Sex. Pompeius Festus.		Poemata et Epigrammata vetēra a Pithæo collecta.
Prōbus (auctor Notarum.)		Monumentum Ancyranum.
Fulgentius Planciādes.		Fasti Consulāres.
Hyginus.		Inscriptiōnes Vetēres.
C. Cæsar Germanicus.		
P. Victor.		
P. Vegetius.		

## WRITERS OF THE IRON AGE.

Cl. Rutillius Numatiānus.	Latinus Pacātus.	Ruf. Festus Aviānus.
Servius Honorātus.	Claudius Mamertinus, et alii, quorum sunt Panegyrici vetēres.	Arātor.
D. Hieronȳmus.	Alcimus Avitus.	M. Aurelius Cassidōrus.
D. Augustinus.	Manl. Severinus Boethius.	Fl. Cresconius Corippus.
Sulpicius Sevērus.	Prisciānus.	Venantius Fortunātus.
Paulus Orosius.	Nonius Marcellus.	Isidōrus Hispalensis.
Cœlius Sedulius.	Justiniāni Institutiōnes et Codex.	Anonȳmus Ravennas.
Codex Theodosiānus.		Aldhelmus or Althelmus.
Martiānus Capella.		Paulus Diaconus.
Claudiānus Mamertus.		
Sidonius Apollināris.		



# INDEX.

The figures in the following Index designate the *Sections* and their divisions: *x.* stands for remark, *n.* for note, *e.* for exception, *w.* for with, and *pr.* for prosody.

*A.* sound of, 7 and 8; nouns in, of 1st decl., 41; gender of, 41; of 3d decl. gender of, 66; genitive of, 68, 2; in acc. sing. of masc. and fem. Greek nouns, 79 and 80; in nom. acc. and voc. plur. of all neuter nouns, adjectives and participles, 40, 8; 83, 1; 85; 87; 105, 2; verbals in, 102, 6, (c.); change of in compd. verbs, 189; increment in, 3d decl., 287, 3; in plur., 288; of verbs, 290; ending the first part of compds., 286, *x.* 4; final, quantity of, 294.

*A.* *ab, abs.* how used, 196, *x.* 2, and 10; in composition, 196, 1, 1; before the abl. of distance, 236, *x.* 6; *ab, de, or ex*, with abl. of depriving, etc., 251, *x.* 1.

Abbreviations, 328.

*Abdico*, constr. of, 251, *x.* 2.

*Abest mihi*, 226, *x.* 2; *non multum abest quin*, 262, *n.* 7.

*Abhinc*, 253, *x.* 2.

Ablative, 37; sing. 3d decl., 82; of adjs. of 3d decl., 113; plur. 1st decl., 40, *x.* 6, and 43; 2d decl., 40, *x.* 6; 3d decl., 84; 4th decl., 48, 5; used adverbially, 192, 1, *ii.*; of character, quality, etc., 211, *x.* 6; after prepositions, 241; after compd. verbs, 242; after *opus* and *usus*, 243; after *dignus*, etc. 244; after *utor*, etc., 245, 1; after *nitor*, etc., 245, *ii.*; after parts. denoting *origin*, 246; of cause, etc., 247; of means and agent, 248; of means, 249, 1; of accordance, 249, *ii.*; of accompaniment, 249, *iii.*; denoting in what respect, 250; after adjectives of plenty or want, 250, 2, (1.); after verbs of abounding, etc., 250, 2, (2.); after *facio* and *sum*, 250, *x.* 3; after verbs of depriving, etc., 251; of price, 252; of time when, 253; of place where, 254; of place whence, 255, 1; of place by or through which, 256, 2; after comparatives, 256; of degree of difference, 256, *x.* 16; abl. absolute, 257; how translated, 257, *n.* 1; equivalent to what, 257, *x.* 1; only with pres. and perf. parts., 257, *x.* 2; without a participle, 257, *x.* 7; with a clause, 257, *x.* 8; how it marks the time of an action, 256, *x.* 4; noun wanting, 256, *x.* 9.

Abounding and wanting, verbs of, with abl. 250; with gen. 220, (3.)

"About to do," how expressed, 162, 14; "about to be done," how expressed, 162, 14, *x.* 4.

*Abstineo*, *w.* abl., 251, *x.*; *vix* or *egre abstineo*, *quin*, 262, *n.* 7.

Abstract nouns, 26; formation from adjs. 101; their terminations, 101, 1 and 2, (3.); from verbs, 102.

*Abundo*, 250, (2.) *x.* 1.

*-abus*, dat. and abl. plur. in, 43.

*Ac* or *atque*, 188, 1, *x.* (b.) and 2, *x.*; instead of *quam*, 256, *x.* 15; *ac si* with subj., 263, 2, and *x.*

Acatalectic verse, 304, 3, (1.)

Accent in English, 16; place of secondary accent, 16, 1 and 2; in Latin, 14 and 15; of dissyllables, 14, 4; of polysyllables, 14, 4, and 15—written accents, 5, 2, and 14, 2.

Accentuation, 14—16.

Accidents of nouns, 26, 7; of verbs, 141.

*Accipio*, *w.* part. in *dus*, 274, *x.* 7.

Accompaniment, abl. of, 249, *iii.*

Accordance, abl. of, 249, *ii.*

*Achivom* for *Achivorum*, 53.

*-actis*, genitives in, 78, 2, (1.)

Accusative, 37; sing., terminal letter of in masculines and feminines, 40, 2; plural, terminal letter of in do., 40, 7; of 3d decl., 79; of Greek nouns, 80; plur. 3d decl., 85; do. of adjs. of 3d decl., 114; neuter in all declensions, sing. and plur., 40, 8; in *em* and *im*, 79; of Greek nouns in *im*, *in*, or *a*, 79, (b.) and 80; in *idem*, 80, *x.* 1; in *ym* or *yn*, 80, *ii.*; in *ea*, 80, *iii.*; in *eternum*, *eternum*, or *en*, 80, *iv.*; neuter used adverbially, 192, *ii.*, 4, and 206, *x.* 10; acc. after verbs, 229—234; omitted, 229, *x.* 4; inf. or a clause instead of, 229, *x.* 5; of a person after *miseret*, etc., 229, *x.* 6; after *jurat*, etc., 229, *x.* 7; after neuter verbs, 232; after compound verbs, 233; after verbal nouns and verbal adjs., 233, *n.*; of part affected, 234, *ii.*; a limiting acc. instead of the abl. in *partim*, *vicem*, *cetera*, etc., 234, *ii.*, *x.* 3; after prepositions, 235; of time and space, 236; of place, 237; after adverbs and interjections, 238; acc. as subject, 239; acc. of the thing supplied by the inf., 270, *x.*, acc. *w.* inf., 272; do. exchanged for the subjunctive.

278, 8.—two accusatives after certain verbs, 230 and 231; acc. of thing retained in passive voice, 234; places supplied by infinitives, 229, n. 2; pred. acc. how supplied, *ib.* n. 4.

Accusing and acquitting, verbs of, constr., 217, and n. 4.

*Accuso*, constr., 217, and n. 2—6.

Acephalous verse, 304, 3, (8.)

*Acer*, declined, 108, 1.

*Achilles*, declined, 86.

*Acquiesco*, 245, n., 8.

Acute accent, 5, 2, and 14, 2; when used, 14, 8.

Active voice, 141.

Active verb, 141; used impersonally, 184, 2; object of act. verb, 229; two cases after, 229, n. 1; verb omitted, 229, n. 3.

*Ad*, how used, 195, n. 5; in composition, 196, n. 2; construction of verbs compounded with, 224; *ad* used for *in*, 224, n. 4.

*Adde quod*, 278, n. 8.

Additions to simple subject, 202, 6, etc.; to simple predicate, 203, 5, etc.

*Adco*, adv., 191, n. 5; *adeo non*, 277, n. 14.—verb, constr., 233, 3, and n.

*-ades*, patronymics in, 100, 1, (a.)

*Adest*, qui, with subj., 264, 6.

*Adhuc locorum*, 212, n. 4, n. 4.

*Adipiscor*, w. gen., 220, 4 *fin.*

Adjectives, 104—131; classes of, 104, 1—15; declension of, 105; of 1st and 2d decls. 105—107; of 3d declension, 108—114; of three terminations, 108; of two terminations, 109, 110; of one termination, 111; their gen. sing., 112; their abl. sing. 113; their nom., acc., and gen. plur., 114; irregular, 115—116; defective, 115; redundant, 116; numeral, 117—121; cardinal, 117, 118; ordinal, 119, 120; multiplicative, 121, 1; proportional, 121, 2; temporal, 121, 3; interrogative, 121, 6; comparison of, 122—127; irregular comparison, 125; defective comparison, 126; derivation of, 128—130; composition of, 131; amplificative, 128, 4; patial, 128, 6; verbal, 129; participial, 130; composition of 131;—how modified, 202, n., 1, (2.); agreement of, 205; qualifying and limiting, 205, n. 1; modifiers or predicates, 205, n. 2; with two or more nouns, 205, n. 2; with a collective noun, 205, n. 3; sing. with a plur. noun, 205, n. 4; dat. of. for acc. in the predicate of acc. with the inf., 205, n. 6; without a noun, 205, n. 7; with infinitive, a clause, etc., 205, n. 8; in the neuter with gen. of their noun, 205, n. 9, and 212, n. 8; neuter adjs. used adverbially, 205, n. 10; gender of, when used participatively, 205, n. 12; in genitive with possessive adj. or pronoun, 205, n. 13; agreeing with the governing noun instead of the genitive, 205, n. 14; two or more with one noun, 205, n. 16; instead of an adverb, 205, n. 15; first, last, etc. part expressed by the adj. alone, 205, n. 17; agreeing with relative instead of its antecedent, 205, (7.); with gen. 213; w. gen. or abl., 213, n. 5; w. dat., 222; w. gen. or dat., 213, n. 6, and 223, n. 2; of

plenty or want with abl., 250; w. inf., 270, n. 1; place of, 279, 7.

Adjective pronouns, 134—139; nature of, 132, 5; classes, 134; agreement, 205.

Adjective clauses, 201, 7; how connected, 201, 9.

Adjective pronoun, 135, n. 1.

*Adjuvo* and *adjuto*, constr., 223, n. 2, (2.)

Admonishing, verbs of, w. gen. 218; other constructions, 218, n. 1 and 2; 273, n. 4.

*Adolescent*, its gender, 80; as adj. how compared, 126, 4.

Adorning, verbs of, w. abl., 249.

Adonic verse, 812.

*Adulari*, constr., 223, n. 2, (b), and (1), (a.)

Adverbial correlatives, 191, n. 1;—clauses, 201, 7, 9.

Adverbs, 190, 2—194; primitive, 191; of place and order, 191, 1; correlative, 191, n. 1; of time, 191, n.; of manner, quality, degree, 191, n.; division of, 191, n. 2;—derivation of, 192; numeral, 192, n., 3, and 119; diminutive, 192, n.; composition of, 193; signification of some adverbs of time and manner, 193;—comparison of, 194;—how modified, 277, 1; used as adjectives, 205, n. 11; w. gen., 212, n. 4; w. dat., 228, (1.); w. acc., 238; use of, 277; two negatives, force of, 277, n. 3—5; equivalent to phrases, 277, n. 8; of likeness, as connectives, 278, n. 1; place of, 279, 15.

Adversative conjunctions, 198, 9.

*Adversus*, how used, 195, n. 7.

*Æ*, how pronounced, 9.

*Æqualis*, construction of, 222, n. 2.

*Æque* with abl., 241, n. 2; *æque* acc., 198, 8, n.

*Æqui boni facio* or *consulo*, 214, n. 1.

*Æquo* and *adæquo*, construction of, 214; *æquo*, adj. w. comparatives, 256, n. 9.

*Ær*, acc. of, 80, n.; pr. 299, n. 3.

*Æolic* pentameter, 812, ix.

*Æs*, gender of, 61, 2; gen. of, 73, n. 2.

*Æstimo*, constr., 214.

*Æther*, acc., 80, n.; pr. 299, n. 8.

*-eus*, adjs. in, 128, 6, (A.)

*Æquum est*, ut, 262, n. 3, n. 2; *æquum erat*, indic. instead of subj., 259, n. 8;

*æquum est*, with inf. as subject, 269, n. 2.

*Ætiam*, w. genitive, 212, n. 4.

*Æfluo*, constr., 250, 2, n. 1.

*Æfficio*, constr., 249, n. 1.

*Æffinis*, constr., 222, n. 2, (a.)

*Ager*, declined, 46.

Agent, verbal nouns denoting, 102, 6; dative of, 225, n., 1; 243, n. 1; abl. of, 243.

Agas of Roman literature, 329.

*Agnitus*, pr. 285, 1, n. 1.

*Agnominatio*, 324, 25.

*Ago* w. gen. of the crime, 217, n. 1;—*age* w. plur. subject, 183, 10;—*id agere* ut, 273, n. 1.

Agreement defined, 203, n., 6; of adjs., etc., 205; of relatives, 206.

*ai*, how pronounced, 9, 1.—*ai*, old gen. in, 43; quantity of the *a* in do., 283, n. 3.

*Aio*, conjugated, 183, 4; *ain* for *aisne*; *ait*, elipsis of, 209, n. 4; its place in a sentence, 279, 6.

- al, abl. of nouns in, 82; increment of, 287, n. (A.) 1.  
 Alcaic verse, 804, 2;—greater, 818, III.; lesser, 818, IV.  
 Alcmanian verse, 804, 2;—dactylic tetrameter, 812.  
 Alec, gender of, 66; genitive, 70.  
 Ales, gender of, 80 and 61, 2; genitive sing., 78, 2; gen. plur., 83, II., n. 2.  
 Alex, gender of, 65, 2.  
 Alieno, and abalieno, constr., 251, n. 3, and n.  
 Alienus, constr., 222, n. 1 and 6.  
 Aliquanto, 127, 2; 256, n. 16, (2).  
 Aliquantum, 256, n. 16, n.  
 Aliquis, declined, 138; how used, 138, 2; 207, n. 30.  
 Aliquo, w. gen., 212, n. 4, n. 2.  
 Aliquot, indeclinable, 115, 4; correlative, 121, 5.  
 Aliquoties, correlative of quoties, 121, 5.  
 -alis, adjs. in, 128, 2; how compared, 128, 4; alis, old adj., for alius, 192, II., 2.  
 Alter, from alis for alius, 192, II., 2.  
 Alius, how declined, 107; how used, 207, n. 32; alius—alium, with plur. verb, 209, n. 11, 4; refers to more than two, 212, n. 2, n. 1, (b.); w. abl., 256, n. 14; pr. 288, 1, n. 4.  
 Allegory, 324, 7.  
 Alliteration, 324, 26.  
 Alphabet, 2, 1.  
 Alter, how declined, 105, 8; 107, and n. 2; gen. alterius, quantity of 288, I., n. 4, (b.); used for secundus, 120, 1; answers to iter, 189, 5, (1.), (b.)—altero tanto, w. comparatives, 256, n. 16.  
 Alteruter, 107; 139, 5, (1.), (b.)—alteruterge, 107.  
 Altus and alto, w. acc. of space, 236, and n. 2.  
 Ambi, amb, am, or an, 197, (b.).  
 Ambio, how conjugated, 182, n. 8.—ambitus, pr. 285, 2, n. 2.  
 Ambo, how declined, 118, n. 1.  
 Amicus, constr., 222, n. 2, (c).  
 Amo, conjugated, 155, 156.  
 Amphibolia, 325, 5.  
 Amplificatives, nouns, 100, 4, (a.); adjectives, 104, 12; 128, 4.  
 Amplius, with or without quam, 256, n. 6.  
 An, 198, 11; use of, 198, 11, n. (d.), (e.); 265, n. 2 and 3; an—an, 285, n. 2.  
 Anabasis, 324, 22.  
 Anacoluthon, 323, 8, (5).  
 Anacreontic verse, 804, 2;—iambic dimeter, 814, IX.  
 Anadiplotis, 324, 17.  
 Analysis of sentences, 281.  
 Anapaestic metre, 813; 803;—monometer, 813, I.;—dimeter, 813.  
 Anaphora, 324, 13.  
 Anastrophe, 324, 4, (1).  
 Anas, gen. of, 72, n. 1; pr. 800, n. 1.  
 Anceps, gen. of, 112, 2; abl. of, 113, n. 8.  
 Ancle, 93, 2.  
 Androgeus, declined, 54, 1.  
 -aneus, adjs. in, 128, 8.  
 Angor, constr., 273, 6, n. 6.  
 Animal, declined, 87.  
 Animans, gender of, 64.  
 Animo, 250.—animi for animo., 220, 1; 213, n. 1, (a.).  
 Anio, genitive of, 69, n. 2.  
 Anne, in double questions, 235, n. 2;—annon, ib.  
 Annus, compds. of, 121, 8.  
 Antanaciasis, 324, 12.  
 Ante, w. superlatives, 127, 6; in composition, 193, I., 3; construction of verbs compounded with, 224; with titles, 235, n. 8; with comparatives, 256, n. 13, (b.);—ante and post w. acc. and abl. of time, 253, n. 1; w. quam and a verb, 253, n. 3; fur abhinc, 253, n. 2.  
 Antecedent, 193; ellipsis of, 206, (8.), (4.), its place supplied by a demonstrative, 206, 3, (a.); in the case of the relative, 206, (8.), (b.); implied in a possessive pronoun, 206, (12); may be a proposition, 206, (13).  
 Antecedo and antecello, constr., 256, n. 16, (8.).  
 Antepenult, 13; quantity of, 292.  
 Antequam, constr., 263, 3.  
 Antimeria, 323, 8, (1.).  
 Antiphrasis, 324, 10.  
 Antiptosis, 323, 8, (3.).  
 Antithesis, 322; 324, 27.  
 Antonomasia, 324, 8.  
 -anus, adjs. in, 128, 6.  
 Aorist tense, 145, IV., n.  
 Apage, 183, 10.  
 Apertum est, w. inf. as subject, 269, n. 2.  
 Aphæresis, 322.  
 Apiscor and adipiscor, w. gen., 220.  
 Aplustre, nom. plur. of, 88 and 94, 4.  
 Apocope, 322.—Apodosis, 261.  
 Apollo, gen. of, 69, n. 2.  
 Apostrophe, 324, 33.  
 Apostrophe, 324, 35.  
 Apparet, w. inf. as subject, 269, n. 2.  
 Appellative nouns, 26, 8.  
 Appello, constr., 230, n. 1.  
 Appetens, w. gen., 213, n. 1, (2).  
 Appendix, 322—329.  
 Apposition, 204; to two or more nouns, 204, n. 5; to nouns connected by cum, 204, n. 5, (1.); to proper names of different genders, 204, n. 5, (2.); genitive instead of, 204, n. 6; 211, n. 2, n.; abl. with gen., 204, n. 7; of a proper name with nomen, etc., 204, n. 8; of a clause, 204, n. 9; of parts with a whole, 204, n. 10; 212, n. 2, n. 5; place of nouns in apposition, 279, 9.  
 Apprime, 127, 2; 193.  
 Aptotes, 94.  
 Aptus, constr., 222, n. 1 and 4, (1.); aptus qui, w. subj., 264, 9; w. gerund, 275, n. 2 and 3.  
 Apud, 195, n. 6.  
 -ar, nouns in, gender of, 66, 67; genitive of, 70, 71; abl. of, 82; increment of, 287, n. (A.) 1.  
 Arbitror, in imperf. subj., 260, n. 2.  
 Arbor (-os), gender of, 61.  
 Arceo, w. abl., 251, n. 2.  
 Arcesso, constr., 217, n. 1.  
 Archaism, 323, n., (1.).  
 Archilochian verse, 804, 2;—penthemimeris, 812;—iambic trimeter, 814, v.; do.

**dimeter**, 314, vii.;—**heptameter**, 318, iv.  
**Arenæ**, as gen. of place, 221, n. 3, (4.)  
**Argo**, genitive of, 69, n. 3.  
**Argos** (-gi), 92, 4.  
**Arguo**, constr., 217, n. 1.  
**Aristophanic verse**, 304, 2.  
**-arium** and **-arius**, nouns and adjs. in, 100, 8; 128, 3; 121, 4.  
**Arrangement of words**, 279; **poetical**, 279, n. 4; of clauses, 290.  
**Ars**, declined, 57.  
**Arsis** and **thesis**, 308.  
**Article**, wanting in Latin, 41, n.  
**-as**, genitives in, 43; nouns in of 8d decl., gender of, 62; genitive of, 72; gen. plur. of, 83, ii., 4; in acc. plur. of Greek nouns of 8d decl., 86, n. 2.—**-as** and **-anus**, adjs. in, 128, 6; **-as** final, quantity of, 300.  
**As**, value of, 327; how divided, 327;—gender of, 62, n. 1; 72, n. 1; gender of parts ending in **as**, 64, 2; **assis non habere**, 214, n. 1.  
**Asclepiadic verse**, 304, 2;—**tetrameter**, 316, iii.  
**Asking**, verbs of, with two accs., 281; constr. in the pass., 234, i.  
**Aspergo**, 249, i. and n. 1 and 3.  
**Aspirate**, 3, i.  
**Assequor**, ut, 278, n. 2.  
**-asso** for **-avero**, 162, 9.  
**assuesco** and **assuefacio**, w. abl., 245, ii.; w. dat., 245, ii., n. 1.  
**Asyndeton**, 323, 1, (1.)  
**-at**, roots of nouns in, 56, ii., n. 5.  
**At**, conj., 198, 3; **at enim**, **atque**, 198, 9, (b.)  
**-atim**, adverbs in, 192, i., 1.  
**Atque**, composition and meaning, 198, 1, n. (b.) See **ac**.  
**Attraction**, 206, (6.); 209, n. 6 and n. 8; 210, n. 6; 272, n. 3.  
**Attribuo**, w. participle in **dus**, 274, n. 7.  
**-atus**, adjs. in, 128, 7.  
**Au**, how pronounced, 9, 2 and n. 2.  
**Audeo**, how conjugated, 142, n. 2.  
**Audio**, conjugated, 160; used like **appello**, 210, n. 2; constr., 272, n. 1; **audeo** for **audies**, 188, n. 3;—**audiens**, constr., 222, n. 1.  
**-aus**, nouns in, gender of, 62; genitive of, 76, n. 4.  
**Ausculto**, constr., 222, n. 2, (b.), and (1.), (a.)  
**Ausim**, 183, n. 1.  
**Aut** and **vel**, 198, 2, n. (a.); **aut** and **et**, 198, 2, n. (d.); **aut—aut**, 198, 2, n. (e.); **aut** with the singular, 209, n. 12, (5.)  
**Autem**, 198, 9; its position, 279, 3, (c.); ellipsis of, 278, n. 11.  
**Authority**, in prosody, 282, 4.  
**Auxiliary verb**, 153.  
**-at** and **-atu** in the 2d and 3d roots of verbs 164.  
**Avarus**, with gen., 213, n. 1.  
**Ave**, 183, 8.  
**Avidus**, with gen. 213, n. 1; w. gen. of gerund, 275, (2.); w. inf. poetically, 270, n. 1.  
**-ax**, nouns in, gen. of, 78, 2, (1.); adjs. in, 128, 6; verbals in with gen., 213, n. 1.

## B.

**B**, roots of nouns ending in, 56, i.; changed to **p**, 171, 2.  
**Balneum**, plur. **-ea** or **-æ**, 92, 6.  
**Barbarism**, 325, 1.  
**Barbiton**, declined, 54, 1.  
**Belle**, **bellissime**, 192, iv. n.  
**Belli**, construed like names of towns, 221, n. 3; **bello**, 253.  
**Bene**, derivation, 192, ii., 1; constr. of its compounds, 225, i.; **bene est**, w. dat., 228, 1; **bene**, w. acc., 239, n. 2; with verbs of price, 252, n. 3.  
**-ber**, names of months in, how declined, 71 and 108.  
**Bex**, gen. of, 73, n. 2.  
**Bibi**, pr., 234, n., (1.)  
**Bicorpor**, abl. of, 113, n. 2; 115, 1, (a.)  
**Biduum**, **triduum**, etc., **biennium**, etc., 121, 2.  
**-bilis**, adjs. in, 129, 4; how compared, 126, 4; with dative, 222, n. 1.  
**Bimestris**, 113, n. 1.  
**Bipes**, genitive of, 112, 1; abl. of, 113, n. 2; 115, 1, (a.)  
**Bonus**, declined, 105, 2; compared, 125, 5; **boni consulo**, 214, n. 1.  
**Bos**, dat. and abl. plur. of, 84, n. 1; 286, 5; gender of, 30; genitive of, 75, n. 1; gen. plur., 83, ii., n. 1.  
**-br**, roots of nouns in, 56, ii., n. 8.  
**Brachycatalectic verse**, 304, 3, (2.)  
**Brazen age** of Roman literature, 329, 4.  
**-brum**, verbals in, 102, 5.  
**Bucolic cæsura**, 310, 6, n. 4.  
**-bulum**, verbals in, 102, 5.  
**-bundus**, adjs. in, 129, 1; comparison of, 126, 5; with acc., 233, n.

## C.

**C**, sound of, 10; before **s** in roots of nouns, 56, i., n. 2; in roots of verbs, 171, 1; gender of nouns in, 66; genitive of, 70; c final, quantity of, 299, 4; **C** for **Caius**, i. q. **Gaius**, 328.  
**Cælebs**, 112, 2; in abl. sing., 113, n. 2; 115, 1, (a.)  
**Cæsura**, 309; kinds of, 309; in hexameter verse, 310, 3; cæsural pause, 309, 3; in hexameter verse, 4—6; in pentameter verse, 311, 2; in iambic verse, 314, i. and x.; in trochaic verse, 315, 1; in choriambic verse, 316, iii.  
**Calco**, change of **a** to **u** in its compds., 189, n. 3.  
**Calendar**, Roman, 326, 6.  
**Calends**, 326.  
**Callidus**, 270, n. 1; 213, n. 1.  
**Canalis**, abl. of, 82, 5, (c.)  
**Cano receptui**, 227, n. 2.  
**Capaz**, w. genitive, 213, n. 1, (1.), and n. 5, (1.)  
**Capio**, conjugated, 159; adjs. compounded of, 112, 2.  
**Capital letters**, how used by the Romans, 2, 2; as numerals, 118, 7.  
**Caput** declined, 57; **capitis** and **capite**, **damnare**, **accusare**, etc., 217, n. 3.



- Carbasus*, plur. -i and -a, 92, 8.  
 Cardinal numbers, 117 and 118.  
*Caveo*, 250, 2, n. 1.  
*Curmen*, declined, 57.  
*Caro*, gender of, 59, 8; gen. of, 69, n. 2;  
 gen. plur., 83, n., 5.  
*Carthagini*, in abl. of the place where, 82,  
 n. 5, (c.)  
 Case-endings, table of, 89.  
 Cases of nouns, 36 and 37.  
*Casus recti and obliqui*, 37, n.  
*Causa, gratia*, etc. with *mez*, etc., 247,  
 n. 2; their place with genitive, 279, n.  
 Causal conjunctions, 198, 7.  
 Cause, abl. of, 247; after active verbs,  
 247, n. 2; acc. of with prepositions, 247,  
 n. 1.  
*Causo*, change of *au* in its compounds,  
 189, n. 3.  
*Cave* or *cave ne*, w. subj., 267, n. 3; 262,  
 n. 8.  
 -ce and -cine, enclitic, 134, n. 4.  
*Cedo*, constr., 223, n. 2, (1), (d.)  
*Cedo*, imperative, 183, 11.  
*Celer*, how declined, 108; gen. plur., 114,  
 n. 2.  
*Celo*, with two accs., 231; w. *de*, 231, n. 3.  
*Censeo*, 278, n. 4.  
*Centena millia*, ellipsis of, 118, 5.  
 -cents, nouns in, gen. of, 77, n.; ads. in,  
 gender of, 112, 2; abl. of, 113, n. 2, and n. 3.  
*Ceres*, genitive of, 73, n. 2.  
*Certe* and *certo*, 192, n. 1.  
*Certus*, 213, n. 1; 275, n., (2.); 270, n. 1.  
*Cetera* and *religua* for *ceteris*, 234, n., n. 3.  
*Ceterum*, 198, 5, n., (b.)  
*Ceu*, w. subj., 263, 2.  
*Ch*, sound of, 10, 1; when silent, 12, n.;  
 in syllabication, 18, 2.  
 Character or quality, gen. of, 211, n. 6.  
*Chaos*, 61, n. 3.  
*Chelys*, declined, 86.  
*Choliambus*, 314, n.  
 Choriambic metre, 316; 303;—pentame-  
 ter, 316, i.;—tetrameter, 316, n.;—trime-  
 ter, 316, iv.;—trimeter catalectic, 316, v.;—  
 dimeter, 316, vi.  
*Cicur*, gen. plur. of, 114, n. 2.  
*Circum*, in composition, 196, 4.  
*Circumdo* and *circumfundo*, 249, n. 3.  
*Circumflex* accent, 15, 2, and 14; how  
 used, 14, 3.  
*Cis* and *citra*, constr., 235, n. 1.  
*Citior*, compared, 128, 1.  
*Citum*, pr., 284, n. 1, (2.)  
*Clam*, constr., 235, (5.)  
*Clanculum*, 192, iv., n.; 235, (5.); 126, 1.  
*Claudo*, its compounds, 189, n. 3.  
 Clause, 201, 13; as the subject of a pro-  
 position, 202, n., n. 2; as an addition to  
 the predicate, 203, n., 3; its gender, 84, 4;  
 as the object of a verb, 229, n. 5; in abl.  
 absolute, 256, n. 8; connection of clauses,  
 193, i. and n.; 278, n. 1; 280, n.; arrange-  
 ment of, 280; similar clauses, 278, n. 1.  
*Climax*, 324, 21.  
 Clothing, verbs of, 249, i.  
*Calestis*, abl. of, 113, n. 1; gen. plur. of,  
 114, n. 3.  
*Calum*, plur. *cali*, 92, 4.  
*Ceno*, w. gen. of price, 214, n. 1, (b.)  
*Cepi* and *captus sum*, 183, 2.  
 Cognate object, 282;—subject, 234, n.  
*Cognitus*, pr., 285, 2, n. 1.  
*Cognomen* follows the gentile name, 279,  
 9, (b.)  
*Cognominis*, abl. of, 113, n. 1.  
*Cogo*, 273, n. 4.  
 -cola, compounds in, gen. plur. of, 43, 2.  
 Collective nouns, 26, 4; number of their  
 verbs, 209, n. 11.  
*Com* for *cum* in composition, 196, 5;  
 197, 5.  
*Comitiis*, as abl. of time, 253, n. 1.  
 Common, nouns, 26, 8;—gender, 30;—  
 syllables, 282, 2; 283, iv., n. 2.  
*Commoneo* and *commonefacio*, constr.,  
 218; 273, n. 4.  
*Communis*, constr., 222, n. 2, (a.) and n.  
 6, (a.)  
*Commuto*, constr., 252, n. 5.  
*Compar.*, gen. plur. of, 114, n. 2.  
*Comparo*, constr., 224, n. 1, 3.  
 Comparative conjunctions, 198, 3.  
 Comparative degree, 122, 5; uses of, 122,  
 n. 1, 2, 3; formation of, 124; by *magis*,  
 127, 1;—comparatives declined, 110; abl.  
 sing. of, 113, 2; w. gen., 212, n. 2; denotes  
 one of two, 212, n. 2, n. 1; w. abl., 256;  
 used pleonastically, 256, n. 12, 13.  
 Comparison, 25; of ads., 122—127; de-  
 grees of, 122, 3; terminal, 124;—irregular,  
 125; defective, 126; by *magis* and *maxime*,  
 127;—of adverbs, 194.  
 Complex subject, 202, 1, 3, 6; complex  
 predicate, 203, 1, 3, 5; complex sentence,  
 201, 11.  
*Complures*, how declined, 110.  
*Compono*, constr., 224, n. 1, 3, and n. 4.  
*Compos* and *impos*, gen. of, 112, 2; abl.  
 of, 113, n. 2; 115, 1, (a.); pr. 300, n. 3.  
 Composition of nouns, 103;—of ads.,  
 131;—of verbs, 183;—of adverbs, 193.  
 Compound verbs, how conjugated, 163,  
 4;—subject, 202, 4;—predicate, 203, 4;—  
 sentence, 201, 12;—metres, 318;—words, in  
 syllabication, 28;—nouns, declension of,  
 91; how formed, 103; quantity of compd.  
 words, 235.  
*Con*, ads. compd. with, w. dat., 222, n. 1;  
 verbs compd. with, w. dat., 224; w. *cum*,  
 224, n. 4.  
*Concedo*, constr., 273, n. 5; 274, n. 7.  
 Concessive conjunctions, 198, 4.  
*Concors*, and *discors*, gen. of, 112, 2; abl.  
 of, 113, n. 2.  
 Concrete, nouns, 26, n. 2;—ads., 101,  
 n.; used for abstracts, in expressions of  
 time, 253, n. 6.  
*Constitutio*, in abl., 249, n.  
 Conditional conjunctions, 198, 5.  
*Conduco*, with part. in *dus*, 274, n. 7.  
 Condemning, verbs of, w. gen., 217.  
*Confero*, w. dat., 224, n. 1, 3.  
*Confido*, w. abl., 245, n.; w. dat., 245, n. 1.  
*Confit*, 183, 12; 180, n.  
*Confinis*, 222, n. 1.  
*Congruo*, 224, n. 1, 3, and n. 4.  
 Conjugation, 25; 149; first, 155, 156;  
 second, 157; third, 158, 159; fourth, 160;

of deponent verbs, 161; periphrastic, 162; general rules of, 163; of irregular verbs, 178—182; of defective verbs, 183; of impersonal verbs, 184; regular and irregular verbs in the four conjugations, 164—177.—conjugations, how characterized, 149; remarks on, 162.

Conjunctions, 198; classes of, 198; coördinate, 198, i.; subordinate, 198, ii.; enclitics, 198, n. 1; copulative and disjunctive, their use, 278; use of coördinate and subordinate conj., 198, n. 1; repeated, 278, n. 7; when omitted between adjs., 205, n. 16;—between words opposed, 278, n. 6.

*Conjungo*, 224, n. 1, 3, and n. 4.

*Conjunctus*, 222, n. 6.

*Conjuz*, gender of, 30; gen. of, 78, 2, (5.)

Connecting vowel, 150, 5; omitted in 2d root, 163, 2; in verbal nouns, 102, 5, (b.); in verbal adjs., 129, 1 and 4, (b.); in compd. nouns and adjs., 108, n. 1.; 131, n.

Connection of tenses, 258;—of words by conjunctions, 278;—of clauses by do., 278, n. 8.

Connectives, 201, 8, 9; place of, 279, 3.

*Conor*, 271, n. 1.

*Consciis*, 213, n. 1; 275, III., (2.)

*Consentaneus*, w. dat., 222, n. 1, w. abl., 222, n. 6; *consentaneum erat*, the indic. instead of the subj., 259, n. 8, (a.); with inf. as subject, 269, n. 2.

*Consentio*, w. dat., 224, n. 1, 3.

*Consequor*, ut, 273, n. 2.

*Consido*, 241, n. 6.

Consonants, 8, 1; division of, ib.; double, 8, 1, 2; sounds of, 10—12.

*Consort*, 213, n. 1.

*Constat*, w. inf. as subject, 269, n. 2.

*Constituo*, 272, n. 1.

*Consto*, w. abl., 245, II., 5.

*Consuetudo est*, constr., 262, n. 8, n. 2.

*Consuesco*, 245, II., 3.

*Contendo*, 273, n. 1.

*Contentus*, w. abl., 244; w. perf. inf., 268, n. 2.

*Conterminus*, w. dat., 222, n. 1, (a.)

*Continens*, abl. of, 82, n. 4, (a.)

Continental pronunciation of Latin, 6.

*Contingit*, conjugation, 184; w. *ut*, 262, n. 8; w. dat. and inf., 262, n. 8, n. 1.

*Continuo*, 198, II., 1.

*Contra*, how used, 195, n. 7.

Contracted syllables, quantity of, 283, III.

Contractions in 2d root of verbs, 162, 7.

*Convenio*, 223, n.

*Convenit*, the indic. for the subj., 259, n. 8; w. inf., 269, n. 2.

*Convinco*, 217, n. 1.

*Copia est*, w. inf., 270, n. 1, (c.)

*Copula*, 140, 4.

Copulative conj., 198, 1; repeated, 198, n. (c.)

*Cor*, gender of, 61; genitive of, 71, n. 2; compds. of, 112, 2.

Correlative adjs., 139, (2.), (3.); 104, 14;—adverbs, 191, n. 1.

*Cornu*, declined, 87.

*Crasis*, 306, (5.) and 322.

*Crater*, genitive of, 71.

*Credo*, 272, and n. 6;—*credere*, in the

sense of a pluperfect, 260, II., n. 2;—*credendum est*, 271, n. 2.

*Creo, nascor*, etc., 246, n. 1.

Crime, in genitive after verbs, 217.

*Crimine*, without a preposition, 217, n. 2, (b.)

Crude form or root, 40, 10.

—*crum*, verbals in, 102, 5.

*Ct*, initial, 12, 3.

*Cui* and *huic*, how pronounced, 9, 5; pr. 306, n. 2.

*Cujas*, how declined, 139, 4, (b.)

*Cujus*, how declined, 137, 5; *cujusmodi*, etc., 134, n. 5.

—*culum*, verbals in, 102, 5; contracted to —*clum*, 102, 5, (b.)

—*culus*, a, um, diminutives in, 100, 3, and n., 1, 2; 128, 5.

*Cum*, prep., affixed to abl., 241, n. 1; 138, n. 4; 136, n. 1; how used, 195, n. 11; w. abl. of manner, 247, 2; in composition, 196, 5.

*Cum* or *quum*, mood of the verb following it, 263, 5.

*Cum*, 'while,' 263, 5, n. 4.

—*cumque*, used to form general indefinites, 191, n. 1, (b.); 139, 5, n.; composition and meaning, 139, 5, n. 1; sometimes separated from *qui*, etc., 323, 4, (5.)

*Cumprimis*, its meaning, 193, II., 2.

*Cuncti* and *omnes*, w. gen. plur. 212, n. 2, n. 6.

—*cundus*, adjs. in, 129, 1.

*Cupido*, gender of, 59, n. 2.

*Cupidus*, constr., 213, n. 1; 275, (2.); 270, n. 1.

*Cupio*, 271, n. 4; *cupiens*, 213, n. 1, (2.)

*Curo*, 273, n. 1; 274, n. 7; *cura ut*, 267, n. 8.

*Curritur*, conjugated, 184, 2, (b.)

*Custos*, gender of, 30; 61, 3; genitive, 75, n. 1.

## D.

*D* final in prosody, 239, 2; before *s* in roots of nouns, 66, n. 1; in roots of verbs, 171, 3, and n. 6.

*Da*, pr., 284, n. 2, (b.)

Dactylic metre, 310 and 303;—trimeter, 312, vi.;—dimeter, 312, vii.;—hexameter, 310, i. Dactylo-iambic meter, 318, i.; dactylo-trochaeic heptameter, 318, iv.;—tetrameter, 318, v.

*Dama*, gender of, 42, 2.

*Damni infecti satisdo*, etc., 217, n. 3.

Dative, 37; sing. of 3d decl., 79; plur. always like abl., 40, 6; exceptions in do. 1st decl., 43; of 3d decl., 84; of 4th decl., 89, 5; used for predicate nom., 210, n. 8; for gen., 211, n. 6; *commodi et incommodi*, 222, 1 and 2; dative of the end, 227; dat. of the object, after adjs., 222; different constructions instead of, 222, n. 4 and 6; after *idem*, 222, n. 7; after verbs, 223—227; after verbs compounded with *ad*, *ante*, etc., 224; with *ab*, *ex*, *de*, *circum* and *contra*, 224, n. 1 and 2; with *dis*, 224, n. 8; with *satis*, *bene* and *male*, 225, i.; dat. of the agent, 225, II.

- and *in*; of the possessor after *est*, 226; after particles, 228; dat. with the acc., 228, (1.); two datives after *sum*, etc., 227; wanting, 225, III., *r.*; *dativus ethicus*, 228, *n.*  
*Datum*, *pr.*, 234, *n.* 1, (2.)  
*De*, 195, *n.* 12; with abl. instead of acc., 229, *n.* 5, (b.); 231, *n.* 8.  
*Dra*, dat. and abl. plur. of, 43.  
*Debat*, indic. instead of subj., 259, *n.* 8.  
*Decedo*, *w.* abl., 251.  
*Decerno*, 273, *n.* 1 and 4.  
*Decet*, conjugated, 184; its construction, 229, *n.* 7; 223, *n.* 2, (b.); indic. for subj., 259, *n.* 8.  
 Declarative sentences, 200, 8.  
*Declaro*, 230, *n.* 1.  
 Declension, 38; parts of speech declined, 25, 3; of nouns, 38—40; rules of, 40; first, 41—46; exceptions in do., 43; paradigms of, 41;—second, 46—54; paradigms of, 46; exceptions in do., 52; third, 55—86; paradigms of, 57; exceptions in do., 68—86; fourth, 87—89; paradigms of, 87; exceptions in do., 89; formed by contraction, 89; fifth, 90; paradigms, 90; exceptions in, 90;—of adjs., 1st and 2d, 105—107; third, 108—111;—declensions, how distinguished, 88; tabular view of, 89.  
*Dei*, *pr.*, 284, 2, *n.* 1.  
*Deest mihi*, 226, *n.* 2; *pr.*, 306, 1, *n.* 1, (1.)  
 Defective nouns, 94—96;—adjs., 116;—verbs, 183.  
*Defendo*, 251, *n.* 2.  
*Defero*, *w.* gen. of the crime, 217, *n.* 1.  
*Deficior*, *w.* abl., 250, 2, *n.* 1.  
*Defuit*, 183, 18, and 180, *n.*; 226, *n.* 2.  
*Deflecto*, 229, *n.* 4.  
*Defungor*, 245, *i.*  
 Degree, acc. of, 231, *n.* 5; 232, (3.)  
 Degrees of comparison, 122 and 123; inferior degrees, 123, 1; equal degrees, 123, 3; a small degree, 123, 2; superior degrees variously expressed, 127, 2, 3, 4.  
*Dejero*, 189, *n.* 3; *pr.*, 285, 2, *n.* 1.  
*Dein*, *deinceps*, *deinde*, *pr.*, 306, 1, *n.* 1, (1.)  
*Delectat*, conjugated, 184; its construction, 229, *n.* 7; 223, *n.* 2.  
*Delector*, *w.* quod, 273, *n.* 6.  
*Deligo*, *w.* two accs., 230, *n.* 1.  
*-dem*, enclitic, 184, *n.* 6.  
 Demonstrative adjs., 104, 15; 189, 5, *n.*;—pronouns, 184; constr. of, 207; in apposition to a clause, 207, *n.* 22; 206, (3.); used when the reference is not to the subject, 208, (6.); place of, 279, 7; ellipsis of demonstratives before their relatives, 206, (3.), (a.); constr. of dem. adjs., 206, (16.); dem. advs. for dem. pronouns, 206, (20.); dem. pronouns *is*, etc., used for the oblique cases *him*, *her*, etc., 207, *n.* 20; redundant, 207, *n.* 21; dem. prons. and advs. announcing a proposition, 207, *n.* 22.  
*Demoveo*, *w.* abl., 251, *n.*  
*Denarius*, value of, 327, *n.* 3; divisions of, *ib.*  
*Denique*, its use, 277, *i.*, *n.* 18.  
 Denominatives, adjs., 128;—verbs, 187, *i.*  
*Dens*, gender of, 64, 1; compds. of, 64, 1.  
*Depello*, *w.* abl., 251, *n.*  
 Dependence, defined, 203, III., 3; of tenses, 258.  
 Dependent or subordinate propositions, 201, 6.  
 Deponent verbs, 142, *n.* 4; conjugated, 161; participles of, 162, 17; lists of in 1st conj., 166; 2d conj., 170; 3d conj., 174; 4th conj., 177; increment of, 289, 8.  
*Deposco*, 274, *n.* 7.  
 Depriving, verbs of, *w.* abl., 251.  
 Definition of nouns, 100;—of adjs., 123;—of verbs, 187;—of advs., 192.  
 Derivative words, quantity of, 284.  
*Deses*, gen. of, 112, 1; abl. of, 113, *n.* 2; defective, 115, 2; compared, 126, 4.  
 Desiderative verbs, 187, II., 3; 176, *n.*; quantity of the *w.* in, 284, *n.* 3.  
*Designo*, with two accs., 230, *n.* 1.  
*Despero*, constr., 280, *n.* 1.  
*Desuper* and *insuper*, 235, *n.* 5.  
*Deterior*, compared, 126, 1.  
*Deterreo*, *quin*, *ne*, or *quominus*, 263, *n.* 11; *w.* inf. *ib.*, *n.*  
*Deturbo*, *w.* abl., 251, *n.*  
*Dexter*, how declined, 106; how compared, 125, 4.  
*Deus*, declined, 53; *deum* for *deorum*, 53.  
*Di* or *dii*, 53; ellipsis of, 205, *n.* 7.  
*-di* or *-dis*, see *-dis*.  
 Diacresis, 306, 2; mark of, 5, 2.  
 Dialysis, 306, *n.*  
*Diana*, *pr.*, 282, *i.*, *n.* 5.  
 Diastole, 307, 2.  
*Dico*, *w.* two accs., 230, *n.* 1; ellipsis of, 229, *n.* 3, 2; 209, *n.* 4; 270, *n.* 2, (b.); *w.* inf. and acc., 272, *n.* 1; *w.* ut, 273, 2, (c.); *dicunt*, 'they say', 209, *n.* 2, (2.); *dicor*, *w.* predicate nominative, 210, *n.* 3, (3.), (a.) and *n.* 1, cf. 271, *n.* 2; 272, *n.* 6; *dic*, imperative, 162, 4.  
 Discoln, 319, 2.  
*Dicto audiens*, *w.* dat., 222, *n.* 1; *dicto*, *w.* comparative, 256, *n.* 9.  
*-dius*, words ending in, *pr.*, 284, 2, *n.* 1.  
*Dido*, declined, 86; genitive of, 69, *n.* 8.  
*Dies*, declined, 90; its gender, 90, *n.* 1; compds. of with numerals, 121, 8; quantity of, 285, *n.* 4, *n.* 3, (6.)  
 Difference, degree of, how expressed, 256, *n.* 10.  
*Differo*, constr., 251, *n.* 3, *n.*; 229, *n.* 4, 1.  
 Differing, verbs of, 251, *n.* 3.  
*Difficile est*, the indic. for the subj., 259, *n.* 4, (2.); with an inf. as subject, 269, *n.* 2; with supine in *u*, 276, III., *n.* 1; *w.* *ad* and a gerund, 276, III., *n.* 4.  
*Digne*, *w.* abl., 244, *n.* 1.  
*Dignor*, *w.* abl., 244, *n.* 1; *w.* acc. of the person, *ib.*; *w.* inf., *ib.*; *w.* two accs., *ib.*  
*Dignus*, *w.* abl. of the thing, 244; *w.* gen., 244, *n.* 2, (a.); *w.* acc. of neut. pron. or adj., 244, *n.* 2, (a.); *w.* inf. or a subj. clause, 244, *n.* 2, (b.); with relative and subj., 264, 9; *w.* supine in *u*, 276, III., *n.* 1.  
 Dimeter, 304, 2.  
 Diminutive nouns, 100, 3;—adjs., 104, 11; 128, 5;—verbs, 187, II., 4;—adverbs, 192, *n.*  
 Diphthongs, 4; sounds of, 9; quantity of, 13, 4; 233, II.  
 Diptotes, 94.

*Dē* for *dis*, 196, (b.), 2.  
*Dis* or *di*, inseparable prep., 196, (b.), 2;  
 construction of some verbs compounded  
 with, 251, r. 3, n.; pr., 285, 2, r. 2.  
*-dis*, genitives in, 77, r. 1; *dis*, adj., gen.  
 plur. of, 114, r. 3.  
*Discerno*, 251, r. 3, n.; in imperf. subj.  
 for pluperf., 260, n., r. 2.  
*Discolor*, abl. of, 118, r. 2.  
*Discordo* and *discrepo*, 251, r. 3, and n.  
*Disertus*, pr., 284, r. 5, 2, n. 1.  
 Disjunctive conj., 198, 2.  
*Dissideo*, constr., 251, r. 3, and n.  
*Dissimilis*, 222, r. 1, and r. 2.  
*Distich*, 304.  
*Distinguo* and *disto*, 251, r. 3, and n.  
 Distributive numbers, 119, 120; gen. plur.  
 of, 105, r. 4; used for cardinal numbers,  
 120, 4;—for multiplicatives, 120, 4, (b.)  
*Distrophon*, 319, 3.  
*Diū*, compared, 104, 6.  
*Dives*, gen. sing., 112, 1; gen. plur., 114,  
 r. 2; 115, 1, (a.)  
 Division of words into syllables, 17—23.  
*Do*, 149, r.; w. perf. participles, 274,  
 r. 4; w. participles in *dus*, 274, r. 7; incre-  
 ment of, 290, r.; 284, r. 4.  
*-do*, nouns in, gender of, 59, 2; genitive  
 of, 69, r. 1.  
*Docceo*, 231, r. 1; w. gen. of price, 214, n. 1.  
*Doleo*, w. *quod*, etc., 278, n. 7.  
*Dominus*, declined, 46.  
*Domus*, declined, 89; different use of  
*domus* and *domi*, 89, (a.); constr. of gen.,  
 221, r. 3; of acc., 237, r. 4; of abl., 255,  
 r. 1; 254, r. 2.  
*Donec*, w. subj., 263, 4; pr., 299, 4, r.  
*Dono*, w. abl., 249, 1, r. 1; w. two da-  
 tives, 227, r. 1.  
*Dos*, gen. of, 61, 3; *doti dicare*, 227, r. 2.  
 Double consonants, 3, 1.  
 Doubtful gender, 80.  
*Dubito* and *non dubito*, 262, n. 7 and 8;  
*dubito* in, 198, 11, (e.); *dubito sit ne*, etc.,  
 262, n. 8.  
*Duco*, constr., 214; 227, r. 1; 230, n. 1;  
*in numero*, or *in loco*, 230, n. 4; *duc*, im-  
 perat., 162, 4.  
*Dudum* and *jamdudum*, 191, r. 6.  
*Duim*, *duis*, etc., 162, 1.  
*Dum*, w. subj., 263, 4; *dum ne* and *dum-*  
*modo ne*, 263, 2, n.; *'dum*, *'until*, 263, 4,  
 (1.);—*'while*, 263, 4, (2.)—compounded  
 with a negative, 277, r. 16.  
*Duntaxat*, 193, n., 3.  
*Duo*, declined, 118; *duum* for *duorum*,  
 118, r. 1.  
*-dus*, participle in, how declined, 103,  
 r. 2; of neuter deponent verbs, 161; with  
*sum*, 162, 15; neuter in *-dum* with *est*, 274,  
 r. 11; w. dat. of person, 162, 15, r. 5; 225,  
 n.; of dep. verbs, 162, 17, (b.); w. acc.,  
 234, r. 2; its signification, 274, 2, r. 7 and  
 8; used for a gerund, 275, 11.

## E.

*E*, sound of, 7 and 8; *ē* changed to *ē* or *ī*,  
 56, r. 4 and 5; nom. in *ē* in 3d decl., 56, 1,  
 r. 1, 7; gender of nouns in *ē* of 3d decl.,

66; genitive of, 68; abl. of, 82; old dat. in,  
 79; acc. plur. in, 54, 5; nom. plur. in, 83,  
 1, 1; voc. in, 81, r.; in gen. and dat. sing.  
 5th decl., 90, r. 2; cf. 40, 11; advs. in, 132,  
 11; syncope of in imperf. of 4th conj., 162,  
 2; increment in *ē* of 3d decl., 287, 3; plur.,  
 288; of verbs, 290; *ē* ending the first part  
 of a compound word, 285, r. 4; *ē* final,  
 quantity of, 295.—*ē* or *cz*, prep., see *cz*.  
*-ea*, Greek acc. sing. ending in, 54, 5, and  
 80, n.  
*Eapsee*, etc., 135, r. 3.  
*Ecce*, compounded with demonstrative  
 pronouns, 134, r. 2; w. nom., 209, r. 13;  
 w. acc., 238, 2.  
*Eccum*, *eccillum*, *eccistam*, etc., 134, r. 2;  
 238, 2.  
*-ecis*, gen. in, 78, (2.)  
*Ecquis* and *ecqui*, how declined, 137, 3,  
 and r. 3; *ecquē* and *ecqua*, 137, 3, r. 4;  
*ecquis est qui*, 264, 7, n. 2; *ecquid*, interrog.  
 particle, 198, 11, and r. 2, a and b.  
*Ecquisnam*, 137, 4.  
*Ectasis*, 307, 2, (3.)  
*Ecthlipsis*, 305, 2.  
*Edepol*, 199, r. 3.  
*Edico*, 273, n. 4.  
*Edim*, *edix*, etc., 162, 1.  
*-edis*, gen. in, 73, r. 1 and 112, 1.  
*Editus*, w. abl., 246.  
*Edo*, *'to eat*, conjugated, 181; compds.  
 of, 181, n.  
*-edo*, abstracts in, 101, 1.  
*Edoceo*, w. two accs., 231, r. 1.  
*Efficio*, 273, n. 2;—*efficiens*, w. gen., 218,  
 r. 1, (2.);—*efficitur*, w. *ut*, or the acc. with  
 the inf., 262, r. 3, n. 1.  
*Effugio*, w. acc., 233, r. 1.  
*Ego* and *indigeo*, 250, 2, r. 1; 220, 3.  
*-egis*, genitives in, 78, 2.  
*Ego*, declined, 133.  
*Eheu*, pr., 233, 1, r. 5.  
*Ei*, how pronounced, 9, 1, and r. 1; gen-  
 itive in, 73, r.; pr., 233, 1, r. 6, (1.)  
*-eis*, fem. patronymics in, 100, 1, (b.)—  
 acc. plur. in, 85, r. 1, and 114, 2.  
*-eius*, pr., 233, 1, r. 6, (3.)  
*Ejus*, use of, 208, (6.)  
*Ejusmodi* and *ejusdemmodi*, 139, 5, n. 2.  
*-ela*, verbals in, 102, 3.  
*Elegiac* verse, 311, r. 2.  
*Ellipsis*, 323; of pronoun in case of appo-  
 sition, 204, r. 4; of the noun of an adj.,  
 205, r. 7; 252, r. 8; of the antecedent, 206,  
 (3.) and (4.); of *meus*, etc., 207, r. 33; of  
 nom., 209, r. 2 and 3; of verb, 209, r. 4;  
 229, r. 3; of a noun limited by a genitive,  
 211, r. 8; of gen., 211, r. 9; of a participle,  
 212, r. 1, n. 3; of subject acc., 239; 269,  
 r. 1; of acc. after transitive verb, 229, r. 4;  
 of prep., 232, (2.); 235, r. 5; 241, r. 4; 248,  
 r. 3; of voc., 240; of *quam*, 256; of partic-  
 ple, in abl. absol., 257, r. 7; of *ut* w. subj.,  
 262, r. 4; of *ne* after *cave*, 262, r. 6; of *non*  
 after *non modo*, etc., 277, r. 6; of conjunc-  
 tions, 278, r. 6; of *j* in composition, 307;  
 of *centena millia*, 327, r. 6.  
*-ellus*, *a*, *um*, diminutives in, 100, 3,  
 a. 8.

-em and -en, accs. in 45, 1; 80, iv.; -em in acc. sing. 3d decl., 79, 80.

Eno, 262, r. 1.

Emphatic word, its place in a sentence, 279, 2 and 16.

En, interrogative particle, 198, 11, and r. (a.); 137, r. 3; en, interjection, 199; w. nom., 209, r. 13; w. acc. 238, 2; -en, acc. in 45, 1; 80, iv.

Enallage, 323, 8.

Enclitics, in accentuation, 15, 8;—conjunctions, 198, n. 1.

Endeavoring, verbs of, 273, 1, (a.)

-endus and -endus, 163, 20.

English pronunciation of Latin, 6.

Enim and nam, 198, 7, and r.; 279, 3, (a.) and (c.)

Enimvero, 198, 9, r. (a.)

Enehemimeris, 304, 5.

Ens, participle, 154, r. 1.

-ensis, adjs. in 128, 6, (a.)

-entissimus, superlatives in 126, 3

-enus, adjs. in 128, 1, (c.)

Eo, conjugated, 182; compds. of, 182, r. 3; w. supine in um, 276, 11, r. 2; w. two datives, 227, r. 1.

-eo, verbs in of 1st conj., 165, r. 3.

Eo, pron. w. comparatives, 256, r. 16. As adverb of place, w. gen., 212, r. 4, n. 2, (b.)—of degree, w. gen., 212, r. 4, n. 3. As an illative conj., 198, 6.

Eodem, w. gen., 212, r. 4, n. 3.

-eos, Greek gen. in, 76, r. 7; 54, 5; pr., 238, 1, r. 6, (2.)

Epanadiplosis, 324, 18.

Epanados, 324, 19.

Epanalepsis, 324, 16.

Epanaphora, 324, 13.

Epanastrophe, 324, 17.

Epanorthosis, 324, 32.

Epenthesis, 322, 3.

Epitene nouns, 33.

Epistrophe, 324, 14.

Epitexis, 324, 20.

Epulor, with abl., 245, 11, 4.

Epulum, 92, 6.

Equality, how denoted, 123, 3.

Eques, gender of, 31, 2; used collectively, 209, r. 11, (1.), (b.)

Equidem, its composition and use, 191, r. 4.

-er, nouns in, of 2d decl., 46—syncopated, 48, 1; of 3d decl., gender of, 58 and 60; genitive of, 70 and 71; syncopated, 71;—adjectives in, superlative of, 125; annexed to pres. infin. pass., 162, 6.

Erga, how used, 195, r. 7.

-ere, in 3d pers. plur. of perf. indie. active, 162, 8.

-eris, genitives in, 76; 73, r. 2; 74, r. 1; and 112, 1 and 2.

Ergo, w. gen., 147, r. 2, (a.)

Erotosis, 324, 31.

-errimus, superlatives in, 125, 1.

-es, proper names in, 44, 1; -es and -e in Greek nouns changed to a, 45, 3; nouns in of 3d decl. increasing in genitive, gender of, 58; 61; genitive of, 73; genitive of adjs. in, 112; not increasing, gender of, 62; genitive of, 73; in nom., acc., and voc. plur. of

masc. and fem. nouns of 3d decl., 83, 1; 85; final, sound of, 8, r. 2; quantity of, 800.

Escit, 154, r. 4.

Esse and fuisse, ellipsis of, 270, r. 8.

-esso, -isso or -so, intensives in, 187, 11, 5.

Est, w. dat. of a possessor, 226; est, qui, with subj., 264, 6; so est, unde, ubi, cur, or ut, 264, 6, r. 3.

Et and que, 198, 1, r. (a.); et ipse, 207, r. 27, (b.); ellipsis of et, 298, r. 6, (b.); et is, et id, et is quidem, 207, r. 23, (c.); et—et, et—que, et—neque or nec, 198, 1, r. (c.); et non, 198, 1, (c.)

Etenim, 198, 7, r. (a.)

Etiā, 198, 1, r. (d.); with comparatives, 256, r. 9, (b.); 127, 8; etiamnum, etiam tum, 191, r. 7.

-etis, genitive in, 73; 112, 1.

Etsi and etiamst, constr., 271, r. 2.

-etum, derivative nouns in, 100, 7.

Etymology, 24—199.

Eu, the diphthong, 10, 8; when not a diphthong, 10, 8, r. 3; in voc. sing. of Greek nouns in eus, 81.

Euphemism, 324, 11.

Eus, nouns in of 2d decl., 54, 5;—adjs. in, 123, 1 and 2; Greek proper names in, 238, n. 2; gen. of, 76, r. 7; acc. of, 180, 111. -ev and -eu, in 2d and 3d roots of verbs, 167.

Evado, constr., 251, n.

Evenit, conjugated, 184; evenit ut, 262, r. 8.

Ex and e, prep., how used, 195, r. 2 and 13;—used with participles instead of the genitive, 212, n. 4; sometimes omitted, 251, and r. 1; ex quo, scil. tempore, 253, n. 4.

-ez, gender of nouns in, 65, 2.

Exadversus, w. acc., 195, r. 3.

Excedo, w. acc., 233, (8.), n.

Excello, constr., 256, r. 16, (8.)

Excito, w. ut, 273, n. 4.

Excludo, constr., 251, n.

Exeo, constr., 251, n.

Existimo, w. gen., 214; w. two accs., 230, n. 1; existimor, constr., 271, r. 2.

Exlez, 112, 2; 196, 1, 6.

Exos, genitive of, 112, 2.

Exosus, 183, 1, n.

Exsistunt qui, w. subj., 264, 6.

Exter, 106, 3, and n.; comparison of, 125, 4.

Expedito, 251, n.; expedit, w. dat., 223, r. 2, (b.)

Exterior si, 198, 11, (c.)

Expera, w. gen., 213, r. 1, (3.), and r. 5, (2.)

Exemplo, 198, 11, 1.

Extera, how compared, 125, 4; extremus, how used, 205, r. 17; extremum est, ut, 262, r. 3.

Exuo, constr., 225, r. 2; exuor, 234, 1, r. 1.

## F.

Fabula, ellipsis of, 29, 2

Fac, imperative, 162, 4; fac ut or ne, 267, r. 8; fac, 'suppose or granting,' w. acc. and inf., 273, n. 3; pr., 296, r. 4.

- Pacile*, adv., 192, 4, (b.); w. superlatives, etc., 277, n. 7.
- Pacilis*, constr., 276, III., n. 4; 222, n. 1, (a.)
- Pacio* and compds., passive of 180 and n.; changes of in the compds., 189, n. 1; w. gen. of value, 214, n. 2; w. two accs., 230, n. 1; w. abl., 250, n. 8; w. ut and subj., 273, 1, n. 2 and 3; w. participle, 273, 1; w. de, etc., 250, n. 3; *facere non possum* quin, 262, 2; *facere quod*, 273, n. 8; ellipsis of, 209, n. 4; *facere certiorum*, 230, n. 8.
- Faliscan* verse, 812, xi.
- Fallit me*, 229, n. 7.
- Familia* with *pater*, etc., gen. of, 43, 2.
- Familiaris*, w. dat., 222, n. 1, (a.); with gen., 222, n. 1, (c.)
- Far*, its root, 56, II., n. 6; gen. of, 71, n. 2; abl., 82, n. 1, (b.); 94 and 96.
- Fas*, gender of, 62, n. 2; 94; *fas erat*, the indic. instead of the subj., 259, n. 3; *fas est*, w. supine in *u*, 276, III., n. 2.
- Fazo*, *fazim* and *fazem*, 162, 9, and 183, n. 1.
- Faux*, genitive of, 73, 2, (5.); but cf. 94, p. 50; gen. plur., 83, II., 3.
- Faveatur*, conjugated, 184, 2, (b.) constr., 223.
- Fearing, verbs of, w. *ut* and *ne*, 262, n. 7.
- Febris*, ellipsis of, 205, n. 7, (1.)
- Fecundus*, w. gen. or abl., 213, n. 5, (8.)
- Feet, in poetry, 302; isochronous, 302, n.
- Fel*, its root, 56, II., n. 6; its genitive, 70, n.; 94.
- Felix*, declined, 111; 213, n. 4, (1.)
- Femina*, added to epicene nouns, 133, n.
- Feminine nouns, of 1st decl., 41; of 2d decl., 49—51; of 3d decl., 62; exceptions in, 62—65.
- Femur*, genitive of, 71, 3.
- Fer*, 162, 4; quantity of, 299, n. 4.
- Fero*, conjugated, 179; its compds., 173, (p. 134); *ferur*, constr. of, 271, n. 2.
- ficus*, comparison of adjs. in, 125, 3, (a.)
- Fido*, how conjugated, 142, n. 2; w. abl., 245, II.; w. dat., 245, II., n. 1; 223, n. 2.
- Fido*, (from *findo*), pr., 264, n. 1, (1.)
- Figures of prosody, 306—307; of orthography and etymology, 322; of syntax, 323; of rhetoric, 324.
- Filia*, dat. and abl. plur., 43.
- Filius*, voc. sing., 52.
- Filling, verbs of, w. abl., 249, 1; w. gen., 220, 8.
- Final syllables, quantity of, 294—301;—conjunctions, 196, 8.
- Finitimus*, w. dat., 222, n. 1, (a.)
- Fio*, conjugated, 180; w. gen. of value, 214, n. 2; w. two datives, 227, n. 1; *fit* and *feri non potest ut*, 262, n. 3; *fit per me*, 262, n. 11; quantity of *i* in *fit*, 233, n. 1.
- Flagito*, w. two accs., 231, n. 1; w. *ut*, 273, n. 4.
- Flecto*, used reflexively, 223, n. 4, 1.
- Flocci habere*, etc., 214, n. 1.
- Fluo* and *struo*, 2d and 3d roots of, 171, n.
- Follow, in what sense used, 203, 9.
- Fons*, gender of, 64, 1.
- Foras* and *foris*, 237, n. 5, (c.)
- Forem*, *fore*, etc., 154, n. 3; 162, 12, (1.); w. two datives, 227, n. 1.
- Fractional expressions, 121, 6.
- Freeing, verbs of, 251.
- Frenum*, plur. *frenti* and *frena*, 92, 5.
- Frequens*, w. gen. or abl., 213, n. 3, (8.); cf. n. 4, (1.)
- Frequentative verbs, 187, II., 1; quantity of *i* in, 284, n. 4.
- Fretus*, w. abl., 244; w. dat., 222, n. 6; w. inf., 244, n. 2, (b.)
- Fructus*, declined, 87.
- Frugi*, 115, 4; comparison of, 125, 5.
- Fruor*, w. abl., 245, 1; w. acc., 245, 1, n.
- Frux*, genitive of, 73, 2, (5.); 94.
- Fugio*, constr., 225, IV.; 210, n. 3, (2.); *fuge*, poetically, w. inf., 271, n. 8; *fugit me*, 229, n. 7.
- Fui*, etc., in compound tenses, 162, 12, (1.); *fuisse*, w. perf. pass. participles, 268, n. 1, (b.)
- Fungor*, w. abl., 245, 1; w. acc., 245, n.; 275, II., n. 1.
- Fuo*, root of *fui*, 154, n. 2 and 3; *fatum*, pr., 284, n. 1, (2.)
- Furo*, 188, n. 2.
- Furor*, w. dat. or abl., 224, n. 2.
- Future tense, 145, III.; how supplied in the subj., 260, n. 7; future perfect tense, 145, VI.; old form in *so*, 162, 9 and 10; future indic. for imperative, 267, n. 2; 259, n. 1, (4.); fut. imperative, 267, (2.), (3.); future pass. part. w. acc., 234, 1, n. 2; fut. perf. for fut., 259, n. 1, (5.)
- Futurum esse* or *fore*, w. subj., 268, n. 4, (b.); *futurum fuisse*, *ut*, 268, n. 5.
- G.
- G, sound of, 10; before *s* in roots of nouns, 56, n. 2; in roots of verbs, 171, 1, and n. 5.
- Galliambus, 814, x.
- Gaudeo*, how conjugated, 142, n. 2; with abl., 247, 1, (2.); w. acc., 232, n. 1; with *quod*, etc., 273, n. 6.
- Gemo*, w. acc., 232, n. 1.
- Gems, gender of names of, 29.
- gena*, compounds in, 43, 2.
- Gener*, declined, 46.
- General relatives, 139, 5, n.; how used, 207, n. 29.
- General indefinites, 139, 5, n.
- Gender, 26, 7 and 27; its divisions, 27; general rules of, 27—34; natural and grammatical, 27; masc. from signification, 28; fem. from do., 29; common and doubtful, 30; epicene, 33; neuter appellatives of persons, 32, 2; of Greek nouns, 34, n. 1; neuter, 34; of 1st decl., 41; excs. in 1st decl., 42; of 2d decl., 46; excs. in 2d decl., 49; of 3d decl., 58, 62, and 66; excs. in 3d decl., 59—67; of 4th decl., 87; excs. in 4th decl., 88; of 5th decl., 90; excs. in 5th decl., 90, gender of adjs., 206.
- Genero*, w. abl., 246, n. 1; *generatus*, w. abl., 246.
- Genitive, 37; sing., 1st decl., excs. in, 43; of 3d decl., 63; of adjectives, 3d decl., 112; plur., 1st decl., contracted, 43; 2d decl., do., 53; 3d decl., 83; terminal letters in all the declensions, 40, 5; of adjectives, 3d

decl., 112 and 114; after nouns, 211; its place, 279, n.; what relations it denotes, 211, n. 1; subjective and objective, 211, n. 2; of substantive pronouns objective, 211, n. 3; possessive adjective used for, 211, n. 4; dative used for, 211, n. 5; of character or quality, 211, n. 6; of measure, 211, n. 6, and (3.) and (6.); noun limited by, omitted, 211, n. 7; wanting in the predicate after *sum*, 211, n. 8; in other cases, 211, n. 8, (4.); omitted, 211, n. 9; two genitives, 211, n. 10; gen. after *opus* and *usus*, 211, n. 11; how translated, 211, n. 12; after participles, 212; after a neuter adjective or adj. pronoun, 212, n. 8; its place, 279, 10; after adverbs, 212, n. 4; after adjectives, 213; of *cause* or *source*, 213, n. 2; different constructions instead of, 213, n. 4; after *dignus* and *indignus*, 244, n. 2; after verbs, 214–220; after *sum*, and verbs of valuing, 214; of crime, 217; after verbs of admonishing, 218; after verbs denoting an affection of the mind, 220; instead of abl. after verbs of abounding, etc., 220, 3; instead of predicate acc., 230, n. 4; of place, 221; after particles, 221, n., iii.; of gerunds, 275, iii., n. 1; plur. depending on a gerund, 275, n. 1, (3.); place of, after neuter adjectives, 279, 10.

Genitives, two, limiting the same noun, 211, n. 10.

*Genitus*, w. abl., 246.

*Genius*, voc. sing., 52.

*Gentium*, 212, n. 4, n. 2.

*Genus*, in acc. instead of the gen. or abl., *as id genus, omne genus*, etc., 234, ii., n. 2, fin.; 209, n. 7, (4.); 231, n. 6; used with the genit. instead of an apposition, 211, n. 2, n.

*Georgicon*, 54, 4.

*Gero* and *fero*, compounds of, in nouns of 2d decl., 47; in adjs. of 1st and 2d decls., 105, 3; not compared, 127, 7.

Gerundives, defined, 275, n. 2; how used, 275, n.

Gerunds, 25, and 148, 2; by what cases followed, 274; and gerundives, genitive of, 275, iii., n. 1; nouns which they follow, ib. (1.); adjectives, ib. (2.); after *sum* denoting tendency, 275, (5.); instead of a noun in apposition, 211, n. 2, n.; dat. of, 275, n. 2; acc. of, 275, n. 3; abl. of, 275, n. 4; infin. for, after adj., 270, n. 1, (a.)

*Gigno*, pr., 284, n. 8.

*Gl, il, and thl*, in syllabication, 18, 8.

*Glorior*, with abl., 247, 1, (2.); w. acc., 232, n. 1, and (3.)

Glyconic verse, 304, 2; 316, iv.

*Gn*, initial, 12, n.

*Gnarus*, w. gen., 213, n. 1; cf. n. 4, (1.)  
-go, nouns in, gender of, 59, 2; genitive of, 69, n. 1.

Golden age, of Roman literature, 329, 2.

Government defined, 203, 7.

Grammatical subject, 202, 2; cases of, 202, n. 4; predicate, 203, 2; figures, 322.

*Gratia*, w. gen., 247, n. 2; its place, 279, n.; *gratias ago*, constr., 273, n. 6.

*Gratum mihi est, quod*, 273, n. 6.

*Gratulor*, constr., 273, n. 7.

Grave accent, 5, 2, and 14, 2; 15, n. 8.

*Gravidus* and *gravis*, w. gen. or abl., 213, n. 5, (3.)

Greek nouns, gender of, 34, n. 1; terminations of in 1st decl., 44; in 2d decl., 54; terminations of in 3d decl., 56, n.; acc. of in 3d decl., 80; declension of, in do., 86

Greek or limiting acc., 234, n. 2.

*Grex*, gender of, 65, 2; genitive of, 78, 2, (2.)

*Grus*, gender of, 80; genitive of, 79, n. 8  
Guilt and innocence, adjectives of, with gen., 217, n. 1.

## H.

*H*, its nature, 2, 6; its place in syllabication, 13, 1; before *s* in verbal roots, 171, 1; in prosody, 233, i., (b.)

*Habeo*, with two accs., 230, n. 1; *habere in numero* or *in loco*, 230, n. 4; w. gen. of value, 214, n. 2; w. abl. of price, 252, n. 1; w. two datives, 227, n. 1; w. participle perf. pass., 274, n. 4; w. participle in *dus*, 274, n. 7, (a.); *habeo, non habeo*, or *nihil habeo, quod*, w. subj., 264, n. 3; *haberi*, w. predicate nom., 219, n. 3, (8.), (c.); 271, n. 2, and n. 4.

*Habito*, w. gen. of price, 214, n. 1; w. abl. of, price, 252, n. 1.

*Hac* in answer to *qua*? 191, n. 1, (c.)

*Hactenus*, adv. of place and time, 191, n. 1, (g.)

*Hadria*, gender of, 42, 2.

*Hæc*, for *hæ*, 134, n. 1.

*Haud*, signification and use, 191, n. 3; *haud multum abest quin*, 262, n. 7; *haud scio an*, 198, 11, n. (c.)

*Hebes*, gen. of, 112, 1; abl. of, 113, n. 3; defective, 115, 2.

*Hei mihi*, 223, 3.

Hellenism, 323, n. (2.)

*Hem*, w. dat., 228, 3; w. acc., 238, 2; w. voc., 240, n. 1.

Hemistich, 304.

Hemilius, 304, 5.

Hendiadys, 323, 2, (8.)

*Hepar*, genit. of, 71; abl. of, 82, n. 1, (b.)

Hepthemimeris, 304, 5.

*Heres*, gender of, 31, 2; genitive, 78, n. 1.

Heroic caesura, 310, 4 and 5.

*Heros*, genitive, 76, 2; acc., 80, n.; dat. plur., 84; acc. plur., 85, n. 2; declined, 86.

Heteroclit nouns, 93.

Heterogeneous nouns, 34, n. 2; 92.

Heterosis, 323, 3, (2.)

Hexameter verse, 310; Priapean, 310, ii.

Hiatus, 279, 13.

*Hibernus*, pr., 284, n. 5, n. 2.

*Hic*, pron., declined, 134; distinguished from *ille*, 207, n. 23; *hic—hic*, for *hic—ille*, 207, n. 23, (b.); related in time like *nunc* and *tunc*.

*Hic*, adv. of place, *hic, hinc, huc*, etc., referring to the place of the speaker, 191, n. 1, (c.); w. gen., 212, n. 4, n. 2, (b.); adv. of time, 191, n. 1, (g.)

*Him*, her, etc., how expressed in Latin, 207, n. 20.

Hipponastic trimeter, 314, II.; tetrameter, 314, IV.

Historical present, 145, I., 3; perfect, 145, IV., 2; for the pluperfect, 259, R. 1, (d.); infinitive, 209, R. 5; tenses, 258.

*Hoc*, pleonastic, 207, R. 21 and 22; *hoc* w. partitive gen., 212, R. 3, N. 1; *hōc* with comparatives, 256, R. 16.

*Hodie*, pr., 285, 2, R. 1.

*Homo*, gender of, 31, 2; genitive, 69, R. 2; *homo*, *homines*, ellipsis of, 209, R. 2, (2.); 205, R. 7, (1.); 229, R. 4.

Homoeopropheron, 324, 26.

*Honor*, (-os), declined, 57.

Horace, key to the odes of, 321.

Horatian metres, 320.

*Horreo*, w. inf., 271, N. 1.

*Horior*, w. ad., 225, R. 1; w. *ut*, *ne*, etc., 278, 2; without *ut*, 232, R. 4.

*Hospes*, gender of, 30; formation of nom. sing., 56, I., R. 3; genitive, 73, 2; abl., 113, R. 2; as an adj., 129, 8.

*Hostis*, w. gen. or dat., 223, R. 2, (c.)

'However' w. a relative, how expressed in Latin, 280, III., (3.)

*Huc*, w. genitive, 212, R. 4, N. 3, (b.); *hucine rerum*, 212, R. 4, N. 3.

*Humi*, constr., 221, R. 3; *humo*, 254, R. 2; 255, R. 1.

*Huic*, pronunciation of, 9, 5; pr., 306, R. 2.

*Hujus non facio*, 214, R. 1.

*Hujusmodi*, 184, R. 5; w. *qui* and the subj., 264, I, N.

Hypallage, 323, 4, (8.)

Hyperbaton, 323, 4.

Hyperbole, 324, 5.

Hypercatalectic or hypermeter verse, 304, 3, (4.)

Hypothetical sentences, 259, R. 3, (c.), (d.), and R. 4; 260, II.; in the inf., 263, R. 4 — R. 6.

Hysteron proteron, 323, 4, (2.)

## I.

*I*, its sound, 7 and 8; *i* and *j* but one character, 2, 3; *i* for *ii* in gen. of 2d decl., 52; *i* changed to *e* in forming certain nouns, 56, I., R. 3; nouns in *i*, gender of, 66; genitive of, 68; genitive of Greek nouns in, 73, R.; dat. of 3d decl. in, 79; abl. sing. in, 82; 113; in gen. and dat. sing. of 5th decl., 90, R. 2; *i* ending the former part of a compound noun or adj., 103, R. 1; 131, R.; *i* in dat. sing. of nine adjs. in *us* and *er*, 107; in 1st person sing. of the perf. act., 147, 3; *i*, the characteristic vowel of the 4th conj., 149, 2; cf. 150, 5; *i* or *e* for the Greek *u*, 233, R. 6, (1.); increment in, 3d decl., 237, 8; plur., 238; of verbs, 290; *i* final, quantity of, 235, R. 4.; 236.

-*ia*, abstracts in, 101, 3; in nom., acc. and voc. plur., 83; 85.

-*iacus*, adjs. in, 123, I, (d.)

Iambic metre, 314; 303; tetrameter, 314, III.; trimeter, 314, I.; catalectic, 314, IV.; dimeter, 314, VI.; hypermeter, 314, VII.; accephalous, 314, VIII.; catalectic, 314, IX.; iambico-dactylic metre, 313, N.

-*ianus*, adjs. in, 123, 6, (f.)

-*ias*, fem. patronymics in, 100, I, (b.)

*Ibi*, ellipsis of before *ubi*, 203, (3.), (a.)

-*icis*, genitives in, 73, 2, (2.) and (3.) 74, R. 2.

-*icius*, adjs. in, 123, 2; -*icius* or -*itius*. verbal adjs. in, 129, 5.

Ictus, 308, 8.

-*iculus*, a, um, diminutives in, 100, 3, R. 1.

-*icus*, adjs. in, 123, 1, (d.), and 2, (a.), and 6, (i.)

*Id*, before a relative pron., 206, (13.); w. gen., 212, R. 3; *id temporis*, *atatis*, *id genus*, etc., 234, II., R. 3; 253, R. 3; *id ago*, constr., 273, N. 1; 207, R. 22; *id quod* instead of *quod*, 206, (13.), (b.); as acc. of degree, etc., 232, (3.)

*Idem*, declined, 134, R. 6; how used, 207, R. 27; w. gen., 242, R. 3; w. dat., 222, R. 7; 207, R. 27, (d.); supplying the place of *item*, *etiam*, or *tamen*, 207, R. 27; *idem qui*, *ac*, *atque*, *ut*, *cum*, etc., 207, R. 27, (a.); 222, R. 7; *idem—idem*, 'at once,' 207, R. 27, (c.); as acc. of degree, 232, (3.)

Ides, 323, 2.

-*ides*, and -*iades*, patronymics in, 100, I, (a.); pr., 291, 4.

Idiotism, 325, 6.

-*idis*, genitives in, 73, R. 1; 74, R. 2.

*Idoneus*, *qui*, 264, 9; 270, R. 1.

-*idus*, adjs. in, 129, 2.

-*ei*, in 5th decl., quantity of the *e*, 233, I., R. 2.

-*ies*, advs. in, 192, II., 8.

*Igitur*, 193, 6; its place, 279, 3, (b.); equivalent to 'I say,' 278, R. 10.

*Ignarus*, w. genitive, 213, R. 1; 275, III., R. 1, (2.)

-*ii* in genitive contracted, 52; how accented, 14, R.

-*ile*, derivative nouns in, 100, 9.

-*ilis*, adjs. in, 129, 4; 123, 4.

*Ille*, in answer to *qua*? 191, R. 1, (d.)

*Ilacrimo*, w. dat., 224, N. 1, 4.

Illative conjunctions, 193, 6.

*Ille*, declined, 134; its uses, 207, R. 20—26; w. *quidem*, redundant, 207, R. 21; its relation to time, 207, R. 23, (c.); as a pron. of the 3d pers., 207, R. 20; relation of *hic* and *ille*, 207, R. 23; *ille*, *qui*, w. subj., 264, I, N.

*Illic*, pron., how declined, 134, R. 3; *illic*, *illuc*, *illinc*, advs., their reference, 191, R. 1, (c.)

-*illimus*, superlatives in, 125, 2.

*Illiusmodi*, 134, 5.

-*illo*, verbs in, 187, II., 4.

*Ilud*, w. genitive, 212, R. 3, N. 1, (a.); pleonastic, 207, R. 22; as acc. of degree, 232, (3.)

*Iludo*, w. dat., 224, 4.

-*illus*, a, um, diminutives in, 100, 3, R. 3.

-*im*, in acc. sing. 3d decl., 79; 80; *im* for *eum*, 184, R. 1; -*im*, *is*, etc., in pres. subj., 162, 1; adverbs in, 192, I and II.

*Imbecillus*, pr., 234, 2, R. 2.

*Imbuo*, constr., 231, R. 4.

Imitative verbs, 187, 3.

*Immemor*, gen. of, 112, 2; abl., 113, R. 3; gen. plur., 114, R. 2.



*Immo*, 191, n. 3.  
*Immodicus*, w. gen. or abl., 213, n. 5, (3.)  
*Immunis*, w. gen. or abl., 213, n. 5, (3.)  
 cf. 251, n.  
*-imonium*, deriv. nouns in, 100, 6;—and  
*-imonia*, verbals in, 102, 3.  
*Impatiens*, w. genit., 213, n. 1, (2.)  
*Impavidus*, w. genit., 213, n. 1, (3.)  
*Impedio*, w. quin., 262, n. 7; w. *quomius*, 262, n. 11; w. inf., 262, n. 11, n.  
*Impello*, 273, n. 4.  
 Imperative, 143, 3; its tenses, 145, n. 3; how used, 267, (1.), (2.); irregular, 162, 4 and 5; subj. for imperative 267, n. 2; sing. for plur., 269, n. 2; used as a noun, 205, n. 8.  
 Imperfect tense, 145, n.; w. *oportet*, etc., 259, n. 3; the imperf. indic. for plup. subj., 259, n. 4.  
*Imperitus*, w. genit., 213, n. 1, (3.); of gerund, 275, III., n. 1, (2.)  
*Impero*, constr., 273, n. 4; 262, n. 4; w. dat. and acc., 223, n. 2, (1.)  
 Impersonal verbs, 184; subject of, 184, 2; list of in 2d conj., 189; 184, n. 1; in 1st, 3d, and 4th conj., 184, n. 1; constr. w. gen., 215, 1; 219; w. dat., 223, n. 2, n. (b.); w. acc., 229, n. 6 and 7.  
*Impertito*, 249, n., and n. 3; 225, n. 1, (b.)  
*Impetro*, ut, 273, n. 2.  
*Impleo*, 249, n. 1; 220, 3.  
*Impono*, 241, n. 5.  
*Impos* and *impotens*, w. genit., 213, n. 1, (3.)  
*Imprimis*, 198, II., 2.  
*Imprudens*, *improvidus*, w. genit., 213, n. 1.  
*Impubes*, genitive, 112, 1; abl., 113, n. 2; 115, 1, (a.)  
*Impulsus*, w. abl. of cause, 247, n. 2, (b.)  
 -in, roots of nouns in, 56, II., n. 1 and 2; in acc. sing., 79.  
*In*, prep., constr., 235, (2.); signification and use, 196, n. 14; in composition, 195, 7; in with abl. instead of predicate acc., 230, n. 4; constr. of verbs compd. with, 224; w. abl. after verbs of placing, holding, regarding, assembling, etc., 241, n. 5; ellipsis of with some ablatives of place, 254 and 255; with ablatives of time, 253, n. 1, and n. 5; with names of towns, 254, n. 2 and n. 3.  
*Inanis*, w. genit. or abl., 213, n. 5, (3.)  
*Incasum*, 198, II., 4.  
*Incedo*, 233, (3.), n.; 210, n. 3, (2.)  
 Inceptive verbs, 187, II., 2; list of, 173.  
*Incertus*, w. genit., 213, n. 1; *incertum est an*, 198, 11, n. (c.); 265, n. 3.  
 Inchoatives, see inceptive verbs.  
*Incidit ut*, 262, n. 3.  
*Incio*, constr., 225, n. 1; *incitatus*, w. abl. of cause, 247, n. 2, (b.)  
*Incipio*, w. inf., 271, n. 1.  
*Inclino*, constr., 229, n. 4, 1; 225, IV.  
*Incommodo*, w. dat., 223, n. 2, n. (b.)  
 Increment of nouns, 236; sing. num., 287; plur. num., 288; of verbs, 289.  
*Incrementum*, 324, 22.  
*Increpo* and *increp'o*, w. gen., 217, n. 1.  
*Incumbo*, w. dat., 224, 4; w. ad, 224, n. 4.  
*Incuso*, w. genit., 217, n. 1.

*Inde*, ellipsis of before *unde*, 206, (3.), (a.); *inde loci*, 212, n. 4, n. 4.  
 Indeclinable nouns, 34; 94;—adjectives, 115, 4.  
 Indefinite adjectives, 104; 139, 5, n.;—pronouns, 133;—adverbs, 191, n. 4.  
 Indicative mood, 143, 1; its tenses, 145; how used, 259; tenses used one for another, 259, n. 1—4; indic. of the preterites with *oportet*, etc., 259, n. 3; in inserted clauses, 266, 2, n. 3 and 5; 266, 1, n. 1.  
*Indico*, w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 1.  
*Indigeo*, w. abl., 250, 2, (2.); w. genit., 220, 3.  
*Indignor*, constr., 273, 5, n. 6.  
*Indignus*, w. abl., 244; w. genit., 244, n. 2; *indignus qui*, w. subj., 264, 9; w. supine in *u*, 276, III., n. 1.  
*Indigus*, w. genit. or abl., 213, n. 5, (2.)  
 Indirect questions, subj. in, 265;—indirect reference, 266, 3;—indirect discourse, 266, 1, n. and 2.  
*Induco*, *id animum inducere*, 233, (1.); pass. w. acc., 234, n. 1; *inductus*, w. abl. of cause, 247, n. 2, (b.)  
*Indugeo*, constr., 223, (1.), (a.)  
*Induo*, w. dat. and acc., 224, 4; w. abl. and acc., 249, n., n. 1; cf. 224, n. 1, (b.); *induo* and *exuo*, constr. in pass., 234, n. 1.  
 -ine or -ione, fem. patronymics in, 100, 1, (b.)  
*Inco*, 183, n. 3; *inire consilia*, w. inf., 270, n. 1, (c); 134, III.  
 • *Iners*, abl. of, 113, n. 3, and n. 1.  
*Incertus*, w. genit., 213, n. 1.  
*Infamo*, w. genit. of crime, 217, n. 1.  
*Infero*, 224, 4, and n. 4.  
*Inferus*, comparison of, 125, 4;—*inferior* w. dat., abl., or *quam*, 256, n. 10; *infimus* and *imus*, 205, 17.  
 Infinitive, 143, 4; as a noun, 26, n.; 269; its gender, 34, 4; 205, n. 8; its cases, 269, (b.); as an acc., 229, n. 5; 270; as a verb, 269, (a.); its tenses, 145, n. 4; old inf. pres. pass. in -er, 162, 6;—inf. as logical subj., 202, n. 2; 269; how modified, 203, II., 5; with subject nom., 209, n. 5; for the genitive, 213, n. 4; its subject, 239; w. dat. instead of acc., 227, n.; construction and meaning of its tenses, 268; inf. as subject of inf., 269, n. 3; as predicate nom., 269, n. 4; *esse*, etc., with *licet* and a predicate noun or adj., case of such predicate, 269, n. 5; poetically after what verbs, 271, n. 3; depending on a verb, 270; 229, n. 5; on an adj. or noun, 270, n. 1; 275, II., n. 1, n. 1; absolute, 270, n. 2; ellipsis of, 270, n. 3; inf. without a subject after what verbs used, 271; with a subject, after what verbs, 272; 273; how translated, 272, n. 3; used like a noun, 273, n. 9; its place, 279, 11; inf. pres. for inf. perfect, 268, n. 1; inf. perf. for present, 268, n. 2; pres. for future, 268, n. 3; poet. to denote a purpose, 274, n. 7, (b.)  
*Infinitum est*, the indic. for the subj., 259, n. 4, (2.)  
*Infirmus*, w. genit. or abl., 213, n. 5, (3.)  
*Infit*, 183, 14; 180, n.  
 Inflection, 25; parts of speech inflected, 24, 4.

- Eugenius*, abl. of, 113, r. 3.  
*Inimicus*, w. dat., 222, r. 1; w. genit., 222, r. 2, (c.)  
*-inis*, genitives in, 69, r. 1 and 2.  
*Initio*, "at first," 253, n.  
*Innitor*, 224, r. 4. See also *nitor*.  
*Innocens* and *innocens*, w. genit., 213, r. 1.  
*Insatiabilis*, w. genit., 213, r. 5, (1.)  
*Inscius*, w. genit., 213, r. 1, (3.)  
*Inscribo*, *insculpo*, and *insero*, constr., 241, r. 5.  
*Insimulo*, w. genit., 217, r. 1.  
*Insolens* and *insolitus*, w. genit., 213, r. 1.  
*Inops*, abl. of, 113, r. 3; 115, 1, (a.); w. genit., 213, r. 1; cf. r. 4, (1.); w. abl., 250, 2, (1.)  
*Inquam*, 183, 5; ellipsis of, 209, r. 4; its position, 279, 6.  
 Inserted clauses, 266.  
*Insinuo*, constr., 229, r. 4, 1.  
*Insons*, genit. plur. of, 114, r. 3; 115, 1, (a.); w. genit., 213, r. 1.  
*Inspingo*, 249, 1, r. 1 and r. 3.  
*Instar*, a diphthote, 94.  
*Instituto*, 273, r. 4; 230, n. 1; 231, r. 4; w. inf., 271, n. 1.  
*Instrument*, abl. of, 247, and r. 5; w. verbs of teaching, 231, r. 3, (c.)  
*Instruo*, 231, r. 4.  
*Insumere tempus*, 275, r. 2.  
*Insuesco*, w. dat. or abl. of the thing, 245, r. 3; w. inf., 271, n. 1.  
*Insuetus*, 213, r. 1, (3.); 222, r. 2, (a.); 275, III., (2.); 270, r. 1; 275, III., r. 1, (2.)  
*Insuper*, w. acc. or abl., 235, r. 8.  
*Integer*, w. genit., 213; *integrum est ut*, 252, r. 3, n. 3.  
*Intelligo*, w. two accs., 230, n. 1; w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 1; *intelligitur*, w. inf. as subject, 269, r. 2.  
 Intention denoted by participle in *rus* with *sum*, 162, 14; 274, r. 6.  
*Intentus*, w. acc. *nihil*, 232, (3.); *intantum esse*, w. dat. of gerund, 275, III., r. 2, (1.)  
*Inter*, use of, 235, 1, r. 2; in composition, 196, 1, 8;—w. *se* or *ipse*, 208, (5.); w. gerunds, 275, III., r. 3; instead of partitive gen., 212, r. 3, n. 4; construction of its compds., 224; repeated by Cicero after *interesse*, 277, II., 4.  
*Intercedo*, w. *quin*, *ne*, or *quominus*, 262, r. 11.  
*Intercludo* and *interdico*, 251, n. and r. 2.  
*Interdico*, w. abl., 251, n.  
*Interdium* or *die*, 253, n. 1.  
*Interea loci*, 212, r. 4, n. 4.  
*Interest*, Roman computation of, 327.  
*Interest*, w. genit., 219; w. *mea*, etc., 219, r. 1; subject of, 219, r. 4; degree of interest how expressed, 219, r. 5.  
*Interior*, comparison of, 126, 1; *intimus*, 205, r. 17.  
*Interjections*, 199; w. nom., 209, r. 13; w. dat., 223, (3.); w. acc., 233, 2; w. voc., 240; *O*, *heu*, etc., not elided, 306.  
*Intermitto*, w. inf., 271, n. 1.  
*Interpres*, gender of, 30; 61, 2; genit. of, 73, 8.  
*Interitus*, w. genit., 213, r. 1 and 2.  
 Interrogative particles, 198, 11;—adjs., 104, 14; 121, 5; 139, 5, 3;—pronouns, 137; in indirect questions, 137, n.; 255, n. 2;—sentences, 200, 3.  
*Interrogo*, w. two accs., 231, r. 1; constr. in pass., 234, 1; w. genit. of the crime, 217, r. 1.  
*Intersum*, w. dat., 224, 5.  
*Intrus*, w. acc., 333, 1, (b.)  
*Intra*, how used, 195, r. 3; 253, r. 4, (b.)  
 Intransitive verb, 141, II.; used impersonally in pass. w. dat., 223, n. 1, (c.)  
*-inus*, adjs. in, 123, 1, 2, and 6.  
*Invado*, 233, (3.), n.  
 Invariable adjs., 122; specified, 127, 7.  
*Invento*, w. two accs., 230, n. 1; *invenitur*, *qui*, w. subj., 264, 6.  
*Invideo*, constr., 223, (1.), (c.); 220, 1; *invidetur mihi*, 223, r. 2, n. (c.)  
*Invitus*, w. dat. of the person, 226, r. 3; *invita Minerva*, 257, r. 7.  
 Involuntary agent of pass. verb, 248, II., and n.  
*-io*, nouns in, gender of, 59, 1; personal appellatives in, 100, 4, (b.); verbals in, 102, 7; verbs in of 3d conj., 159.  
 Ionic metre, 317; 303;—a *maiore*, 317, 1;—a *minore*, 317, II.  
*-ior*, *-ius*, in terminational comparatives, 124, 1.  
*Ipse*, declined, 135; how used, 135, r. 1; 207, r. 28; used reflexively, 208, (4.); 207, r. 28, (c.); w. *inter*, 208, (5.); *et ipse*, 207, r. 27, (b.); *ipse*, with the inf., 273, n. 9, (a.); *nunc ipsum* and *tum ipsum*, 191, r. 7.  
*Ipsus* and *ipsissimus*, 135, r. 2.  
*Irascor*, w. dat., 223, r. 2, n., (b.)  
*Iri*, w. supine in *um*, 276, II., r. 3.  
 Iron age of Roman literature, 323, 4.  
 Irony, 324, 4.  
 Irregular nouns, 92;—adjs., 115;—verbs, 178—182.  
*-is*, nouns in, gender of, 62; 63; genitive of, 74;—*-is* or *-eis* instead of *-es* in acc. plur. of 3d decl., 85, r. 1; abl. of adjs. in *is* used as nouns, 82, r. 4;—used as proper names, 82, r. 4, (b.);—*-is* for *-us* in genitive of 4th decl., 89, 2; fem. patronymics in, 100, 1, (b.); ellipsis of in 2d root of verbs, 162, 7, (c.)  
*Is*, pron., declined, 134; how used, 207, r. 26; referring to a clause, 206, (13.); *is* and *ille* with *quidem* used pleonastically, 207, r. 21; *is* for *talis*, 207, r. 26, (b.); 264, 1, n.; *et is*, *atque is*, *isque*, *et is quidem*, 207, r. 26, (c.); ellipsis of *is*, 207, r. 26, (d.); *is-qui*, 264, 1, n.  
 Islands, gender of, 29; constr. of names of, 237, r. 5, (b.)  
*-issimus*, a, *um*, the terminational superlative, 124, 2.  
*-isso*, verbs in, 187, II., 5.  
*Iste*, how declined, 134; how used, 207, r. 23, 25; *iste qui*, w. subj., 264, 1, n.  
*Istic*, pron., declined, 134, r. 3.  
*Istic*, adv., *istinc*, *istuc*, their reference, 191, r. 1, (c.)  
*Istiusmodi*, 134, r. 5.  
*-it*, roots of nouns in, 56, II., r. 5; in 3d root of 4th conj., 175; of certain verbs of 3d conj., 171, r. 7.

*Isa*, 191, n. 5; 277, n. 12, (a.); *its non*, 277, n. 14.

*Itaque*, its meaning, 198, 6, n.; its place, 279, 8, (b.)

*Iter*, declined, 57; 71, 2; with *sum* and acc. of place, 287, n. 1; increments of, 286, 2.

*-iter* and *-ter*, advs. in, 192, II. and IV.  
*-itas*, *-ia*, *-itia*, *-ities*, *-itudo*, and *-itus*, abstracts in, 101, 1.

*-itis*, genitive in, 78; 78, 1; 112, 1.

*-ito*, frequentatives in, 187, II., 1.

*-itius* or *-icius*, adjs. in, 129, 5.

*Itum*, sup., in prosody, 284, n. 1, (2.)

*-itus*, advs. in, 192, I. and II.; adjs. in, 128, 7.

*-ium*, verbals in, 102, 2; *-ium* or *-itium*, nouns in, 100, 5.

*-ius*, genitives in, place of English accent, 15; in what adjs., 107; quantity of the i, 283, I., n. 4;—adjs. in, 128, 1, 2, and 5; voc. sing. of patris and possessives in, 52.

*-is*, in 2d roots of verbs, 175; 171, n. 8.  
*-ivus*, adjs. in, 129, 7.

## J.

*J*, vowel before, in prosody, 283, IV., n. 1.  
*Jaceo*, 210, n. 3, (2.); 283, (3.), n.

*Jam*, with a negative, 191, n. 6; *jamdu-*  
*sum*, ib.

*Jecur*, genitive of, 71, 3; increments of, 286, 2.

*Jejunus*, w. gen. or abl., 213, n. 5, (3.)

*Jesus*, decl. of, 58.

*Jocus*, plur. *joci* and *joca*, 92, 2.

*Jubar*, abl. of, 82, n. 1, (b.)

*Jubeo*, constr., 228, (2.); 273, 2, (d.); 272, n. 6; 262, n. 4; ellipsis of *jubeo valere*, 238, n. 2; *jubeor*, w. inf., 271, n. 1.

*Jucundus*, constr., 276, III., n. 1 and 4;  
*jucundum est*, w. *quod*, 278, 5, n. 6.

*Judico*, w. two accs., 230, n. 1; w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 1; in pass., 210, n. 3, (3.), (c.); *judicari* w. predicate nominative, 271, n. 2.

*Jugerum*, 93, 1; 94.

*Jugum*, quantity of its compds., 283, IV., n. 1.

*Jungo*, constr., 229, n. 4, 1.

*Junctus* and *conjunctus*, constr., 222, n. 6, (c.)

*Jupiter*, genitive of, 71; declined, 85.

*Jure* aliquid *facere*, without *cum*, 247, 2.

*Jure*, its compds., 189, n. 3;—*juratus*, with *o*-tive meaning, 163, 16;—*juro*, post. w. inf., 271, n. 8.

*Jusjurandum*, declined, 91.

*Justum erat*, indic. for subj., 259, n. 3;  
*justum est* with inf. as subject, 269, n. 2;

*justo* after comparatives, 256, n. 9; its place, 279, n. 1.

*Jurat*, w. acc., 229, n. 7.

*Juvenalis*, abl. of, 82, n. 4, (b.)

*Juvenis*, abl. of, 82, n. 4, (b.); 113, n. 2; comparison of, 126, 4; 115, 1, (a.); for its *juvenute*, 253, n. 6.

*Juxta* as an adv., 195, n. 4; *juxta* as cor-  
*atque*, 198, 3, n.

## K.

*K*, its use, 2, 4.

Key to the Odes of Horace, 321.

Knowing, verbs of, their construction, 272.

## L.

*L*, roots of nouns in, 56, II.; gender of nouns in, 66; genitive of, 70;—final, quantity of, 299, 2.

*Labore*, constr., 273, n. 1; post. w. inf., 271, n. 8.

Labials, 8, 1.

*Lac*, gender of, 66, n.; genitive of, 70.

*Lacesso*, constr., 225, n. 1.

*Lator*, w. abl., 247, 1, (2.); acc., 232, (3.)

*Latus*, w. abl. or gen., 213, n. 5, (4.); cf. n. 4, (1.)

*Lampas*, declined, 86.

*Lapis*, declined, 57.

*Lar*, pr., 284, n. 1.

*Largus*, w. gen. or abl., 213, n. 5, (3.); cf. n. 4, (1.)

*Lars*, genitive of, 71.

*Lassus*, w. genit., 213, n. 2.

*Lateo*, w. dat. or acc., 223, n. 2, n., (b.), and (1.), (a.)

Latin grammar, its divisions, 1.

*Latinis*, for *ludis Latinis*, 258, n. 1.

*Latus*, *altus*, and *longus*, w. acc. of space, 236.

*Lavo* and *lazo*, scil. *se*, 229, n. 4, 1; *lavo*, w. abl. of price, 252, n. 1.

*Lazo*, w. abl., 251, n.

Leading clause, subject, and verb, 201, 13.

*Lego* (*ere*), its form in the compds., 189, n. 2; constr., 230, n. 1.

*Lenio*, constr., 229, n. 4, 1.

*-lentus*, adjs. in, 123, 4.

Letters, 2; division of, 3; sounds of, 7; numeral, 118, 7; capital, 2, 2; silent, 12, n.; terminal in 3d decl., 55.

*Levo*, w. abl., 251, n.; w. gen. post., 220, 2.

*Lex*, gender, 65, 2; genitive, 78, 2, (2.);—*legem dare*, constr., 273, 2, n. 4;—*lege*, abl. of manner, 247, 2.

*Liber*, w. abl. or gen., 213, n. 5, (4.); cf. 220, 2; and 251, n.; w. genit., 213, n. 5, (4.); cf. n. 4, (1.)

*Libero*, w. abl., 251, n.; poetically, w. genit., 220, 2.

*Liberalis*, w. genit., 213, n. 5, (1.)

*Libram* and *libras*, 236, n. 7.

*Libro*, abl. w. adj. without prep., 254, n. 2.

*Licentia*, w. genit. of gerund, 275, III., n. 1, (1.)

*Liceo*, w. genit. of price, 214, n. 8; w. abl., 252, n. 1.

*Licet*, w. dat., 223, n. 2; w. subj., the acc. with the inf. or the inf. alone, 273, 4; 262, n. 4; w. inf. as subject, 269, n. 2;—case of the predicate after *licet esse*, etc., 269, n. 5; w. indicative instead of subj., 269, n. 3, (a.);—*licet*, conj. w. subj., 263, 2.

Limiting acc., 234, n.;—abl., 250 and n.

*-ivus*, superlatives in, 125, 2.

Language and liquids, 8, 1.

*Liquidus*, pr., 284, x. 5., r. 3.  
*-is*, adjs. in. comparison, 125, 2.  
*Literas dare, scribere* or *mittere*, 225, iii.,  
 n. 4.; ellipsis of, 229, n. 4. 2: *litteras* or *litteris*, after verbs of teaching, 231, n. 3, (c.)  
*Litotes*, 324, 9.  
*Litum*, pr., 284, x. 1, (2.)  
 Loading, verbs of, w. abl., 249, i.  
*Locuples*, genitive of, 112, 1.; abl., 113,  
 n. 2.; gen. plur., 114, x. 3.; 115, 1, (2.); w.  
 abl. or gen., 213, n. 5, (4.)  
*Locus*, plur. *loci* and *loca*, 92, i., 2; *loco*  
 and *locis*, abl. of place without a preposi-  
 tion, 254, n. 2; *loco*, w. gen. for predicate  
 nom., 210, n. 3; for predicate acc., 230, n.  
 4; *loci* and *locorum*, 212, r. 4, n. 2 and n.  
 4; *locus* in apposition to names of towns,  
 237, n. 2; *loco*, w. gen. of price, 241, n. 5;  
 w. abl. of price, 252, n. 1.; w. participles in  
*dis*, 274, n. 7; w. genitive of gerunds, 275,  
 iii., n. 1, (1.)  
 Logical subject, 202, 3;—predicate, 203, 3.  
 Long syllable, 282, 2.  
*Longe*, w. comparatives and superlatives,  
 127, 3; 256, n.; w. acc. of space, 236, n. 1;  
*longe gentium*, 212, r. 4, n. 2, (b.); *longius*  
 without *quam*, 256, n. 6.  
*Longitudine*, w. genit. of measure, 211,  
 n. 6, (6.)  
*Longus*, w. acc. of space, 236; *longum*  
*est*, the indicative instead of the subjunc-  
 tive, 259, n. 4, (2.)  
*-is*, genitive of nouns in, 77, 2, (2.)  
*Ludis*, for *in tempore ludorum*, 253, n. 1;  
 257, n. 9, (2.)  
*Luo*, w. abl., 252, n. 1.

M.

*M*, roots of nouns ending in, 56, i.; be-  
 fore *d* changed to *n*, 134, n. 1; dropped in  
 the 3d root of certain verbs, 171, x. 6; final,  
 quantity of, 299, 3; elided, 305, 2.  
*-ma*, Greek nouns in, genitive plur. of,  
 84, x. 2.  
*Macrus*, 115, 5; *macte*, w. abl., 247, 1,  
 n. 2; w. genit., 213, n. 5, (4.)  
*Magis* and *maxime*, use of in forming  
 comparatives and superlatives, 127, 1; pleo-  
 nastic with *mallo*, etc., 256, n. 13.  
*Magis*, compared, 125, 5; w. supine in  
*u*, 276, iii., r. 1; *magnam partem*, 224, ii.,  
 n. 3; *magni, parvi*, etc., w. verbs of valu-  
 ing, 214, n. 1; *magno, parvo*, etc., w. verbs  
 of buying, etc., 252, n. 3.  
*Male*, constr. of its compounds *malefacio*,  
*maledico*, etc., 225, i.; *male*, instead of abl.  
 of price, 252, n. 3; *male, bene, or prudenter*  
*facio*; *male* or *bene fit*, w. *quod*, 273, 5, (1.)  
*Malo*, conjugated, 173, 3; constr., 273, 4;  
 262, n. 4; *mallem*, meaning of, 230, ii., n. 2;  
 constr. w. abl. like a comparative, 256, n.  
 16, (8.)  
*Malus*, compared, 125, 5.  
*Mando*, constr., 223, n. 2. and (1.), (b.);  
 273, n. 4; 274, n. 7, (a.); 262, n. 4.  
*Mane*, 94; 192, 8.  
*Maneo*, 210, n. 3, (2.); compds. of, 233,  
 (5.), n.  
*Manifestus*, w. genit., 213, n. 1.

Manner, advs. of, 191, iii., abl. of, 247;  
 with *cum*, 247, 2; w. *de* or *ex*, 247, n. 3.  
*Manus*, gender of, 88; ellipsis of, 205, n.  
 7; *manum injicere*, 233, (1.)  
*Mare*, abl. of, 82, x. 1, (b.); ellipsis of,  
 205, r. 7.  
*Mas*, gender of, 62, x. 1; genitive, 72,  
 x. 1; genit. plur., 83, ii., n. 3, n.; used to  
 distinguish the sex of epicenes, 83, n.  
 Masculine nouns of 3d decl., 53; excep-  
 tions in, 59—61;—masculine cæsura, 310,  
 n. 1.  
*Materfamilias*, declined, 91.  
*Materia*, w. genit. of gerunds, 275, iii.,  
 n. 1., (1.)  
 Material nouns, 26, 6;—adjs., 104, 8.  
*Maturo*, scil. *se*, 229, n. 4, 1; w. inf., 271,  
 n. 1.  
*Me* and *mi* for *mihi*, 133, n. 1.  
*Mea, tua*, etc., w. *refert* and *interest*, 219,  
 n. 1 and 2.  
*Means*, abl. of, 247; when a person, 247,  
 n. 4; w. passive verbs, 248.  
 Measure or metre, 303; Roman measures  
 of length, etc., 327.  
*Medeor*, w. dat., 223, n. (b.); its gerun-  
 dive, 275, ii., r. 1.  
*Medicor*, constr., 223, (1.), (a.)  
*Meditor*, constr., 273, n. 1.  
*Medius*, how translated, 205, n. 17; w.  
 genit., 213; w. *inter*, 212, r. 4, (2.); w. abl.,  
 213, n. 4, (5.); its place, 279, 7, (b.)  
*Mel*, genitive of, 70, n.; 56, ii., n. 6; abl.,  
 82, x. 5, (b.); 94.  
*Melas*, genitive of, 72, x. 2.  
*Melius fuit* and *erat* instead of subj., 259,  
 n. 3; *melius est*, w. dat., 223, 1; *melius*  
*erit*, w. perf. inf., 268, n. 2.  
*Melos*, nom. plur. of, 83, 1; 94.  
*Meme* and *mepte*, intensive, 133, n. 2.  
*Memini*, 183, 3; constr., 216; w. present  
 inf., 268, n. 1; w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 1;  
*memento*, poet. w. inf., 271, n. 3.  
*Memor*, w. genit., 213, n. 1, (3.); w. subj.,  
 213, n. 4.  
*Memoro*, constr., 272, n. 6.  
*-men*, nouns in, gender of, 61, 4, and 66;  
 genitive, 71, 1; *-men* or *-mentum*, verbals  
 in, 102, 4.  
*Mens*; *in mentem venit*, constr., 216,  
 n. 3.  
*Mercor*, w. abl. of price, 252, n.  
*-met*, enclitic, 133, n. 2; 139, n. 1.  
*Metalepsis*, 324, 6.  
*Metaphor*, 324, 1.  
*Metaplasma*, 322, 1.  
*Metathesis*, 322, 9.  
*Meto*, 171, r. 2.  
*Metonymy*, 324, 2.  
*Metre*, 303; how divided, 303, 8; different  
 kinds, 310—317.  
*Metres*, compound, 318; Horatian, 320.  
*-metros*, Greek nouns in, 49, 2.  
*Metuo*, w. *ut* or *ne*, 262, n. 7; w. inf., 271,  
 n. 1.  
*Meus*, voc. sing. masc., 105, n. 3; 139, 1;  
 used reflexively, 139, n. 2; how declined,  
 139; *meum est*, 211, n. 3, (3.), (a.)  
*Mi*, for *mihi*, 133, n. 1.  
 Middle voice in Greek, 243, n. 1, (2)

**Mile, Roman, 327.**  
**Miles, declined, 57; gender, 30; 61, 2; genitive, 73, 2; used collectively, 209, n. 1; (1.), (b.); ellipsis of, 205, n. 7.**  
**Military expressions without cum, 249, III., n.**  
**Militia, construed like names of towns, 221, n. 3.**  
**Mille, how used, 118, 6; ellipsis of, 327, n. 5.**  
**Million, how expressed, 118, 5, (a.); a million sesterces, 327, n. 6.**  
**Min' for mikine, 133, n. 1.**  
**-mino, in old imperatives, 162, 5.**  
**Minor and compds, w. acc. and dat., 223, (1.) (b.)**  
**Ministra, w. dat., 223, n. 2; and (1.), (b.)**  
**Minus and minimum, w. genit., 212, n. 3, n. 1; minus, for non, 277, I., n. 14; minus without quam, 256, n. 6.**  
**Mirror, conjugated, 161; w. genit. poet., 220, 1; constr., 273, n. 6.**  
**Mirum est ut, 262, n. 3, n. 3; mirum quam, quantum, etc., 264, n. 4.**  
**Misceo, how construed, 245, II., 2, and n. 1; 224, n. 3.**  
**Misereor, miseresco, miseret, miseritum est, and miserescit, w. gen. of the thing, 215; miseret, etc., w. acc. of the person, 215, n. 3; 229, n. 6; and w. acc. of the thing, 215, n. 2; w. acc. of degree, 215, n. 3.**  
**Mittis, declined, 109.**  
**Mitto, w. ad or in, 225; w. two dat., 227; 273, 2, (c.); w. participle in dus, 274, n. 7; w. inf., 271, n. 8; w. quod, 273; missum facio, 274, n. 4.**  
**Mn, initial, 12, 2, n.**  
**Mobilis, pr., 234, n. 5, n. 1.**  
**Moderor, constr., 223, (1.), (a.)**  
**Modi annexed to pronouns, 184, n. 5; its use, 211, n. 6, (5.)**  
**Modicus, w. genit., 213, n. 5, (1.)**  
**Modified subject, 202, 6; itself modified, 202, III., n. 1;—predicate, 203, 5.**  
**Modify or limit, in what sense used, 202, 4, n.**  
**Modo as abl. of manner, 247, 2.**  
**Modo, conditional conj., 198, 5; w. subj., 263, 2; modo, adv., 193, II., 3; modo ne, 263, 2, n. 1; modo—modo, 277, n. 8.**  
**Modus, w. genit. of gerunds, 275, III., n. 1, (1.)**  
**Mollis, 229, n. 4, 1.**  
**Molest, agere or graviter fero, w. quod, 273, n. 6.**  
**Monco, conjugated, 157; constr., 218, and n. 1, 2; 273, n. 4; without ut, 262, n. 4; w. acc. and inf., 273, n. 4, (c.); in pass., 234, I.**  
**Money, Roman, 327, pp. 370—372.**  
**Monocolon, 319, 2.**  
**Monometer, 304, 2; 313, I.**  
**Monoptotes, 94.**  
**Monosyllables, quantity of, 294, (a.); 299, 1; their place, 279, 8.**  
**Mons, gender of, 64, 1.**  
**Months, Roman, 323, 2; names of, 326; division of, 323, 1; gender of names of, 23; 115, 3; abl. of names in er and is, 32, n. 2, (a.)**

**Moods, 143.**  
**Mora, in prosody, 232, 2.**  
**Mos or moris est, constr., 262, n. 2; w. genit. of gerunds, 275, III., n. 1, (1.); more as abl. of manner without cum, 247, 2.**  
**Motion or tendency, verbs of, constr., 225, IV.; 237, n. 3.**  
**Motum, pr., 234, n. 5, n. 1.**  
**Mountains, gender of names of, 23, 3.**  
**Morbo, constr., 229, n. 4, 1; 251, n.; motus, w. abl. of cause, 247, n. 2, (b.)**  
**-ms, nouns in, genitive of, 77, 2, (1.)**  
**Multiplicatives, 121, 1.**  
**Multo, (are), constr., 217, n. 5.**  
**Multus, compared, 125, 5; multi et, how used, 278, n. 5; multo, w. comparatives, etc., 127, 8; 256, n. 16; so multum, ib., n.; multum, w. genitive, 212, n. 3, n. 1; as acc. of degree, 212, (2.); multus instead of an adverb, 206, n. 15.**  
**Mus, gender of, 30; 67, 4; genitive, 76, n. 3; genit. plur., 83, II., 3.**  
**Munificus, w. genit., 213, n. 5, (1.)**  
**Mutes, division of, 3, 1; a mute and a liquid in prosody, 233, IV., n. 2.**  
**Mutius, w. abl., 213, n. 5, (5.)**  
**Muto, constr., 252, n. 5; 229, n. 4, 1.**

## N.

**N, roots of nouns in, 56, II.; nouns in, gender of, 58; 61; genitive of, 70; 71; final. quantity of, 239, n.; dropped in the 3d root of certain verbs, 171, n. 6.**  
**-nactis, genitive of Greek names in, 73, 2, (1.)**  
**Nam and enim, 193, 7, n., (a.); place of, 279, 3, (a.) and (c.)**  
**Names of persons, their order, 279, 9, (b.); of nations instead of those of countries, 256, n. 3; 237, n. 5.**  
**Narro, w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 1, and n. 6; narror, constr., 271, n. 2.**  
**Nascor, w. abl., 246, n. 1; nascitur, w. subj., 262, n. 3, n. 2.**  
**Nato, 232, (2.), n. 1; constr. of compds., 233, (3.), n.**  
**Natura fert, constr., 262, n. 3, n. 2.**  
**Naturale est, w. ut and the subj., 262, n. 3, n. 3.**  
**Natus, w. abl., 246; natus, 'old,' w. acc., 233, n. 3; poet. w. inf., 271, n. 3.**  
**Natu, 94; 250, 1; 123, 4.**  
**Nauci habere, 214, n. 1.**  
**-ne, enclitic conjunction, 193, 11; quantity of, 296, n.; as an interrogative particle, 193, 11, n., (c.); its place, 279, 3, (c.)**  
**Ne, adv., the primitive negative particle, 191, III., n. 3, p. 158; w. quidem, ib.; 279, 3, (d.); w. subjunctives used as imperatives, ib.; in wishes, asseverations and concessions, ib.; 260, n. 6, (b.) with the imperative, 264, n. 1; ne multa, ne plura, etc., 229, n. 3, 2;—in intentional clauses, 262, n. 5; ne non, for ut, 262, n. 4; ellipsis of, 262, n. 6; ne, for nedum, 262, n. 6.**  
**Nec or neque, 193, 1; nec non or neque non, ib.; nec—nec, with the singular, 209, n. 12, (5.), (a.); neque, for et ne, after ut and ne, 262, n. 6, n. 4;—nec ipse, 207, n. 27,**

(b.); *nec te*, 207, n. 26, (c.); *necne* or *annon*, 265, n. 2; *necdum*, 277, i., n. 16; its place, 279, 8, (a.)

*Necesse*, defective adj., 115, 5; *necesse est ut*, etc., 262, n. 3, n. 2; without *ut*, 262, n. 4; *necesse fuit*, the indic. for the subj., 269, n. 3; w. inf. as subject, 269, n. 2; w. predicate dat., 269, n. 5; 273, 4.

*Necessity*, how expressed, 162, 15.

*Necessario*, after comparatives, 256, n. 9.

*Nedum*, w. subj., 262, n. 5; without a verb, ib.

*Nefas*, gender of, 62, n. 2: 94; w. supine in *u*, 276, iii., n. 2.

Negatives, two, their force, 277, n. 3-5; negative joined to the conjunction, as, *nec quisquam*, *nec ullus*, etc., instead of *et nemo*, *et nullus*, etc., 278, n. 9.

*Negligens*, constr., 213, n. 4, (2.)

*Nego*, instead of *non dico*, 279, 15, (b.); w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 1, and n. 6; *negor*, w. inf., 271, n. 1.

*Negotium*, ellipsis of, 211, n. 8, n.

*Nemo*, 94 and 96; for *nullus*, 207, n. 81; *nemo est qui*, 264, 7, n. 2; *nemo non*, 'every one,' 277, n. 5, (c.)

*Nempe*, 191, n. 4; 198, 7, n., (a.)

*Neoterism*, 325, 8.

*Negua* and *neque*, 188, 2.

*Nequam*, indeclinable, 115, 4; compared, 125, 5.

*Neque*, see *nec*; for *et non*, 198, 1, (c.); *neque-neque*, or *nec-nec*, *neque-nec*, *nec-neque*, 198, 1, (c.); *neque-et*, ib.; *neque* w. general negatives, 279, 15, (b.); *neque non*, 277, n. 3; *neque quisquam*, *ullus*, *umquam*, etc., 278, n. 9.

*Nequeo*, how conjugated, 182, n.; w. inf., 271, n. 4.

*Ne quis* or *nequis*, how declined, 188, 2; *ne quis*, instead of *ne quisquam*, 207, n. 81; 278, n. 9.

*Nerio*, genitive of, 69, n. 2.

*Nescio an*, 198, 11, n., (c.); 265, n. 8; *nescio quis*, 265, n. 4; *nescio quomodo*, ib.; w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 1.

*Nescius*, w. genit., 213, n. 1, (3.)

*-neus* and *-nus*, adjs. in 123, 1, (b.)

Neuter, nouns, 84; not found in 1st and 5th decls., 40, 9; of 2d decl., 46; 54; of 3d decl., 66; excs. in 66; 67; adjs. used adverbally, 205, n. 10, adjs. and adj. prons, w. genit., 212, n. 3; acc. of denoting degree w. another acc. after transitive verbs, 281, n. 5; verbs, 141; form of 142, 1; neuter passives, 142, 2; neuter verbs with cognate, etc., subjects, 234, iii.; w. cognate acc., 232, (1.); w. acc. of degree, etc., 232, (3.); w. abl. of agent, 248, n. 2; used impersonally, 184, 2; in the passive voice, 142, n. 2; participles of, 162, 18; neuters of possessive pronouns and adjs. instead of the genitive of their personal pronouns, or of a corresponding noun, 211, n. 8, (3.), (a.) and (b.)

Neutral passive verbs, 142, 3.

*Neve* or *neu*, 198, 8; after *ut* and *ne*, 262, n. 4.

*Ni* or *nisi*, 198, 5, n., (b.); *nisi*, 'except,' 261, n. 6; 277, n. 16; *nisi quod*, ib.; *nisi vero*, and *nisi forte*, 'unless perhaps,' ib.

*Nihil*, *nihilum*, 94; w. genitive, 212, n. 1; instead of *non*, 277, n. 2, (b.); 232, (3.); *nihil aliud quam* or *nisi*, 277, n. 16; *nihil*, acc. w. *castimo* and *moror*, 214, n. 2 *nihilum* w. *facio*, 214; as acc. of degree, 215, n. 8: 232, (8.); *nihil est quod*, etc., 264, 7, n. 2; *nihil abest*, *quin*, 262, n. 7; *nihil antiquius habeo* or *duco quam*, w. subj., 273, n. 1; *nihilum*, 277, i., n. 16.

*Nimius*, w. genit. or abl., 213, n. 5, (3.)

*Nimio*, w. comparatives, 256, n. 16; as abl. of price, 252, n. 3.

*-nis*, nouns in, gender of, 63, 1.

*Nitor*, w. abl., 245, ii.; w. *in* or *ad*, 245, ii., n. 2; w. inf. or subj., 273, 1, n. 1.

*Nix*, 56, n. 2; genit. sing., 78, (3.); genit. plur., 88, ii., 8.

*No*, constr. of compds. of, 233, (3.), n.

*Noctu* or *nocte*, 258, n. 1.

*Nolo*, conjugated, 178, 2; constr., 278, 4; *noli* w. inf., paraphrasing the imperative, 267, n. and n. 8; *nollem*, meaning of, 269, ii., n. 2.

*Nomen est*, constr., 226, n. 1; 211, n. 2, n.; *nomine*, without a prep. before the genitive following verbs of accusing, 217, n. 2, (b.); its place, 279, 9, (b.)

Nominative, 87; construction of, 209; 210; ellipsis of, 209, n. 1 and 2; wanting, 209, n. 3; w. inf., 209, n. 5; after interjections, 209, n. 18; formation in 3d decl. from the root, 56; plural, 3d decl., 83; of adjs. of 3d decl., 114. See Subject-nominative and Predicate-nominative.

*Nomino*, 280; pass., 210, n. 3, (3.)

*Non*, 191, n. 3; ellipsis of, after *non modo*, etc., followed by *ne quidem*, 277, n. 6; *non quo*, *non quod*, *non quin*, 262, n. 9; *non est quod*, *cur*, *quare*, or *quamobrem*, w. subj., 264, 7, n. 8; *non* before a negative word, 277, n. 3;—before *ne quidem*, 277, n. 6; position of, 279, 15, (b.); *non*, rare with the imperative, 267, n. 1; difference between *non* and *haud*, 191, n. 8; *non nemo*, *non nulli*, *non nihil*, *non numquam*, different from *nemo non*, etc., 277, n. 5, (c.); *non nihil*, to some extent, 232, (3.); *nonne*, 198, 11, n., (c.); *non modo—sed etiam*, and *non modo—sed*, equivalent to *non dicam—sed*, 277, n. 10; *non dubito*, *non est dubium*, *non ambigo*, *non procul*, *non abest*, *quin*, 262, 2, n. 7; *non quo non*, *non quod non*, or *non quia non*, instead of *non quin*; *non eo quod*, *non ideo quod*, for *non quod*, 262, n. 9; *non priusquam*, *non nisi*, w. abl. absolute, 257, n. 4; *nondum*, 277, i., n. 16; *non* in the second member of adversative sentences without *et* or *vero*, 278, n. 11; *non nisi*, separated, 279, 3, (d.)

*Nonne*, 'the Nones,' 232, 2.

*Nonnullus*, pronominal adj., 139, 5, (1.)

*Nos*, for *ego*, n. 7.

*Nosco*, 171, n. 6.

*Noster*, how declined, 139, 3.

*Nostras*, how declined, 139, 4, (b.)

*Nostrum*, how formed, 138, 3; different use of *nostrum* and *nostri*, 212, n. 2, n. 2.

'Not' and 'nor,' how expressed with the imperative, 267, n. 1; with subj., 280, n. 6, (b.)

**Nouns**, 26–108; proper, common, abstract, collective, and material, 26; gender of, 27–34; number of, 35; cases of, 36, 37; declension of, 38–40; nouns of 3d decl., mode of declining, 55; compound, declension of, 91; irregular, 92; variable, 92; defective, in case, 94; in number, 95, 96; sing. and plur. having different meanings, 97; redundant, 99; verbal, 102; derivation of, 100–102; composition of, 103; how modified, 201, III., R. 1; used as adjs., 205, R. 11; extent given to the term noun, 24, R.

*Novum est ut*, 262, R. 3, N. 2.

*Nox*, declined, 57; genitive of, 78, 2, (4.); genit. plur., 83, II., 8.

*Noxius*, w. genit. of the crime, 213, R. 1, (3.); 217, R. 1, (a.); w. dat., 222, R. 1, (a.) —as, participles in, abl. of, 113, 2; when used as nouns, 82, R. 4; nouns in, genit. plur. of, 83, II., 4; genit. sing. of, 77, 2, (2.) and R. 1; participials and participles in, construction of, 213, R. 1 and 3.

*Nubilo*, scil. *calo*, 257, 9, (1.)

*Nubo*, w. dat., 223; quantity of *u* in compds. of, 285, 2, R. 3.

*Nudo*, w. abl., 251, N.

*Nudus*, w. abl. or genit., 218, R. 5, (4.); 250, R. 1, (1.); w. acc., 213, R. 4, (3.)

*Nullus*, how declined, 107; a pronominal adj., 189, 5, (1.); for *non*, 205, R. 15; refers to more than two, 212, R. 2, N., (b.) *nullus est*, *qui*, w. subj., 284, 7, N. 2; *nullus non*, 277, R. 5, (c.); *nullius* and *nullo*, instead of *neminis* and *nemine*, 207, R. 31, (c.); *nullusdum*, 277, I., R. 16.

*Num*, with its compounds, meaning of, 198, 11, R. 1, (b.); *num—an*, used only in direct questions, 255, R. 2.

**Number**, 26, 7; of nouns, 85; of verbs, 146; of the verb when belonging to two or more subjects, 209, R. 12; when belonging to a collective noun, 209, R. 11.

**Numbers**, cardinal, 117, 118; ordinal, 119, 120; distributive, 119, 120; w. genit. plur., 212, R. 2, (4.)

**Numerals**, adjs., 104, 106; classes of, 117; placed in the relative clause, 206, (7.), (b.); w. genit. plur., 212, R. 2, (4.); letters, 118, 7; adverbs, 119, 192, 3; multiplicative, 121; proportional, temporal, and interrogative, 121.

*Nummus*, 827, R. 3, (b.)

*Numquam non*, and *non numquam*, 277, R. 4, (c.)

*Numquis*, *num quis*, or *numqui*, etc., how declined, 187, 8; *numquis est qui*, 264, 7, N. 2; *numqua* and *numqua*, 187, R. 4; *numquid*, as an interrogative particle, 198, 11.

*Numquismam*, 187, 4.

*Nunc*, use of, 277, R. 15; *nunc—nunc*, 277, R. 8; *nunc* and *etiamnunc*, w. imperfect and perfect, 259, R. 1, (b.)

*Nuncupo*, w. two accs., 230, R. 1; *nuncupo*, 210, R. 3, (8.)

*Nundina*, 326, 2, (11.)

*Nuntio*, 273, 2, c.; 272, N. 1; pass. w. inf., 271, N. 1; *nuntiatur*, constr., 271, R. 2.

*Nuper*, *modo* and *mox*, 191, R. 6.

*Nusquam*, w. genit., 212, R. 4, N. 2, (b.)

*Nux*, pr., 284, 8, 5, R. 2.

*-nx*, nouns in, genitive of, 65, 6, 7.

## O.

**O**, sound of, 7, 8; changed to *u* in forming certain nominatives from the root, 56, I., R. 4, and II., R. 4; nouns in, gender of, 58, 59; genitive of, 69; Greek nouns in, gender of, 59, R. 3; genitive of, 69, R. 3; amplifications in, 100, 4, (a.); verbals in, 102, 6, (c.); adverbs in, 192; increment in, of 3d decl., 287, 3; of plur., 238; of verbs, 290; final, quantity of, 286, R. 4; 297; sometimes used for *u* after *v*, 322, 8; 53; 178, 1, N.

*O*, interj. w. nom., 209, R. 15; w. acc., 238, 2; w. voc., 240, R. 1; *O si*, w. subj., 263, 1.

*Ob*, government of, 196, 4; 275, III., R. 3; in composition, 196, I., 9; construction of verbs compounded with, 224; of adjs., 222, R. 1, (b.)

*Obedio*, how formed, 189, N. 3.

*Obequo*, constr., 233, (3.)

*Obeo*, constr., 233, (3.), N.; pass., 234, III. Object, of an active verb, 223; the dative of the remote object, 223, N.

Objective genitive, 211, R. 2; after adjs., 218; dat. for objective genitive, 211, R. 5; —propositions after what, 273, N. 8.

Oblique cases, 37; their place, 279, 10 and 2.

*Obliviscor*, w. genitive or acc., 216; w. acc. and inf., 272, N. 1.

*Obnoxius*, w. dat., 222, R. 1, (b.)

*Obryo*, w. abl., 249, I., R. 1.

*Obsecro*, w. two accs., 231, R. 1.

*Obsequor*, *obtempero*, and *obtreco*, w. dat., 223, R. 2.

*Obseruo*, w. *ut* or *ne*, 262, N. 3.

*Obse*, gender of, 80; genitive of, 73, R. 1.

*Obsonor*, w. abl. of price, 252, R. 1.

*Obsto*, and *obstisto*, *quominus*, etc., 262, R. 11.

*Obtemperatio*, w. dat., 222, R. 8.

*Obtreco*, constr., 223, (1.), (a.)

*Obtrius*, w. dat., 222, R. 1, (b.)

*Obviarn*, w. dat., 223, 1.

*Occasio*, w. genit. of gerunds, 275, III., R. 1, (1.)

*Occumbo*, w. dat., 224; w. acc., 224, R. 5.

*Occurro*, w. dat., 224; w. acc., 233, (3.); *occurrit ut*, 262, R. 3, N. 1.

*Octor*, comparison of, 126, 1.

*-ois*, genitive in, 78, (4.); 112, 2.

*Octonarius*, 804, 2; —iambic, 314, III.

*Odi*, 183, 1.

*-odis*, genitives in, 76, R. 5; 75, R. 1.

*-odus*, Greek nouns in, 49, 2.

*OE*, how pronounced, 9; in nom. plur. 2d decl., 54, 2.

*Oedipus*, genitive of, 76, R. 5.

*Era*, gender of, 42.

*Officio*, w. *quominus*, etc., 262, R. 11.

*Ohe*, pr., 283, I., R. 5; 295, R. 5.

*Oi*, how pronounced, 9, 1.

*-ois*, genitives in, 75, R. 2; words in, pr., 283, I., R. 6, (3.)

Old, how expressed in Latin, 236, n. 3.  
*Oleo* and *redoleo*, w. acc., 232, (2.)  
*Olius*, for *ille*, whence *olii*, masc. plur. for *illi*, 134, n. 1.  
*-olus*, a, um, diminutives in, 100, 8, A. 2.  
*-om*, for *-um*, 53.  
Omission of a letter or syllable, see syncope—of a word, see ellipsis.  
*Omnes*, w. genitive plur., 212, n. 2, n. 6;  
*omnium*, w. superlatives, 127, 4, n. 2;  
*omnia*, acc. of degree, 232, (3.)  
*-on*, Greek nouns in, 54, 1; *-on* for *-orum*, 54, 4; *-on*, roots in, of 3d decl., 56, II., n. 1;  
nouns in, of 8d decl., 58 and 61, 5; genit. plur. in, of Greek nouns, 83, II., 6; *-os* and *-on*, nouns in, of 2d decl., changed to *-us* and *-um*, 54, 1.  
*Onustus*, w. abl. or genit., 213, n. 5, (4.)  
*Operam dare*, w. ut, 273, n. 1; w. dat. of gerund, 275, III., n. 2, (1.); w. acc. id., 232, (3.); *-operā meā*, equivalent to *per me*, 247, n. 4.  
*Opinio est*, w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 1;  
*opinions* after comparatives, 256, n. 9; its place, 279, n. 1.  
*Opior*, w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 1.  
*Oportet*, w. inf. as its subject, 269, n. 2;  
w. inf. acc. with the inf., or the subj., 273, n. 5; without ut, 262, n. 4.  
*Oportebat*, *oportuit*, the indic. instead of the subj., 269, n. 3, (a.)  
*Oppido*, w. adjs., 127, 2.  
*Oppidum*, in apposition to names of towns, 237, n. 2, (b.)  
*Oppeo*, w. abl., 249, I., n. 1.  
*Opitabūsus erat*, the indic. instead of the subj., 259, n. 3.  
*Optime*, instead of abl. of price, 252, n. 3.  
*Opto*, 271, n. 4; 273, 4; *opto*, w. subj., without ut, 262, n. 4.  
*Opulentus* w. genit. or abl., 213, n. 5, (3.)  
*Opus*, work, declined, 57; *opus*, need, w. genit. and acc., 211, n. 11; w. abl. of the thing, 243; as subject or predicate of *est*, 243, n. 2; 210, n. 5; w. perfect participle, 243, n. 1; w. supine in *u*, 276, III., n. 2; *opus est*, w. inf. as subject, 269, n. 2.  
*-or*, nouns in, gender of, 58; 61; genit. of, 70; 71; verbals in, 102, 1; 102, 6.  
*Oratio obliqua*, 266, I, n., and 2; 278, 3; tenses in, 266, n. 4.  
*Orbo*, w. abl., 251, n.  
*Orbus*, w. abl., 250, 2, (1.); or genit., 213, n. 5, (4.)  
Order, advs. of, 191, 1.  
Ordinal numbers, 119, 120; in expressions of time, 236, n. 2.  
Origin, participles denoting, w. abl., 246; from a country expressed by a patial, 246, n. 3.  
*-oris*, genitives in, 76; 112, 2; *-oris*, genit. in, 75.  
*-orium*, verbals in, 102, 8.  
*Oriundus*, constr., 246.  
*Oro*, w. two accs., 231, n. 1; w. ut, *ne*, or inf., 273, 2, n. 4; without ut, 262, n. 4.  
Orthoëpy, 6—23.  
Orthography, 2—5; figures of, 322.  
*Ortus*, w. abl., 246.  
*-os*, nouns in, of 2d decl., 54, 1; of 8d

decl., gender of, 58 and 61, 3; genit. of, 75;  
Greek genitives in, 63, 1; final in plural accs., sound of, 8, n. 3; quantity of, 300.  
*Os*, (*oris*), gender of, 61, 3; genit. of, 75;  
wants genit. plur., 94.  
*Os*, (*ossis*), gender of, 61, 3; genit. of, 75, n. 1.  
*Ossa*, gender of, 42, 1.  
*Ostendo*, w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 1.  
*-osus*, adjs. in, 123, 4.  
*-otus*, genit. in, 75; 112, 2.  
‘Ought’ or ‘should,’ expressed by indic of *debeo*, 259, n. 4, (2.)  
*-oz*, nouns in, genit. of, 73, 2, (4.)  
Oxymoron, 324, 26.

P.

P, roots of nouns ending in, 56, I.; when inserted after *m* in 2d and 3d roots of verbs, 171, 8.  
*Pace* or *in pace*, 258, n. 1; 257, n. 9, (2.)  
*Palatalis*, 3, 1.  
*Palleo*, w. acc., 232, n. 1.  
*Pan*, acc. of, 80, n.  
*Panithus*, voc. of, 54, 5.  
*Par*, abl. of, 82, n. 1, (b.); 113, n. 3; superlative of, 126, 2; w. dat. or genit., 222, n. 2, (a.); w. *cum* and the abl., 222, n. 6;  
*par erat*, indic. instead of subj., 269, n. 3, (a.); pr., 234, n. 1; *par ac*, 198, 3.  
*Parabola*, 324, 30.  
Paradigms, of nouns, 1st decl., 41; 2d decl., 46; 3d decl., 57; 4th decl., 87; 5th decl., 90;—of adjs. of 1st and 2d decl., 105—107; 3d decl., 108—111;—of verbs, *sum*, 153; 1st conj., 155, 156; 2d conj., 157; 3d conj., 158, 159; 4th conj., 160; deponent, 161; periphrastic, conj., 162; defective, 183; impersonal, 184.  
*Paragoge*, 322, 6.  
*Paratus*, constr., 222, n. 4, (2.)  
*Parco*, w. dat., 223, n. 2, n., (a.); *parcitur mihi*, ib., (c.); w. inf., 271, n. 8.  
*Parcus*, w. genit. or abl., 213, n. 5, (2.); w. in, 213, n. 4, (2.)  
*Paragmenon*, 324, 24.  
*Paraleon*, 323, 2, (1.)  
*Parenthesis*, 324, 4, (6.)  
*Pariter ac*, 198, 3.  
*Paro*, constr., 273, n. 1; w. inf., 271, n. 1.  
*Paronomiac verse*, 304, 2.  
*Paronomasia*, 324, 25.  
*Pario*, compds. of, 163, n. 4.  
*Parsing*, 281, III.  
*Pars*, acc. of, 79, 4; abl. of, 82, n. 5, (a.); ellipsis of, 205, n. 7; its use in fractional expressions, 121, 6; *magnam* and *maximam partem*, 234, II., n. 3; *multis partibus*, 256, n. 16, (3.)  
*Part*, acc. of, 234, II.  
*Particeps*, genit. of, 112, 2; genit. plur. of, 114, n. 2; 115, 1, (a.)—w. genit., 213, n. 1, (3.)  
Participial adjs., 130;—of perfect tense, meaning of, with tenses of *sum*, 162, 12, (2.); w. genit., 213, n. 1, (2.)  
Participles, 25 and 148, 1; in *us*, how declined, 105, n. 2; in *us* do., 111; abl. sing. of, 113, 2; participles of active verbs, 145,



1, (3.); of neuter verbs, 143, 1, (3.); 162, 16; of deponent verbs, 162, 17; of neuter passive verbs, 162, 18; in *-rus*, genit. plur. of, 162, 19; pres. and perf. compounded with *in*, 162, 21; when they become adjs. or nouns, 162, 22; cases of in compd. tenses, 162, 12, 13; sometimes with *esse* indeclinable, 162, 13, (1.); in *-rus* with *sem.* force of, 162, 14; how modified, 202, II., (3.); agreement of, 206; agreement with a predicate nom. instead of the subject, 206, n. 5; gender when used impersonally, 206, n. 18; perfect denoting origin, with *abl.*, 246; in *abl.* absolute, 256;—passive of naming, etc., with predicate *abl.*, 257, n. 11; their government, 274; their time how determined, 274, 2, and 3; perfect in circumlocution, for *abl.* of cause, 247, 1, n. 2, (b.); with *habere*, etc., 274, 2, n. 4; for a verbal noun, 274, 2, n. 5; for clauses, 274, 3.

*Participo*, poetically, w. genit., 220, 2.

*Particula*, 190, 1.

*Partim*, 79, 4; *partim*, w. genit., 212, n. 4; *partim—partim*, w. genit. or *ex*, 277, n. 8.

Partitive nouns, 212, n. 1;—adjs., 104, 9;—partitives with plur. verbs, 209, n. 11; 211, n. 1; w. genit. plur., 212; ellipsis of, 212, n. 2, n. 8; w. acc. or *abl.*, 212, n. 2, n. 4; genit. sing. after neuter adjs., and pronouns, 212, n. 8.

Parts of speech, 24, 2 and 3.

*Parum*, its meaning, 191, III.; compared, 194, 4; w. genit., 212, n. 4.

*Parumper*, its meaning, 191, II.

*Parvus*, compared, 126, 5; *parvi*, w. verbs of valuing, 214, n. 1, (a.), (1.); *parvo*, with comparatives, 256, n. 16; after *estimo*, 214, n. 2, n. 2; as *abl.* of price, 252, n. 3.

*Passo*, 171, n. 6.

Passive voice, 141, 2; construction of, 234; passive voice with a reflexive pronoun understood as the agent equivalent to the middle voice in Greek, 248, n. 1, (2.); with acc. of the thing, 234, 1.

*Pateo*, w. two dat., 227, n. 1.

*Pater*, declined, 57.

*Pater-familias*, etc., how declined, 43, 2.

Pathetic or emotive word, 279, 2, (c.)

*Patio*, 278, 4; 262, n. 4; *patiens*, w. gen., 213, n. 1, (2.); w. inf., 271, n. 3.

Patrial nouns, 100, 2; in *o*, genitive of, 69, n.;—adjs., 104, 10; 123, 6, (a.); ellipsis of their substantive, 205, n. 7; pronouns, 139, 4.

*Patrocinor*, w. dat., 223, n. 2.

Patronymics, 100, 1; in *-es*, genit. plur. in *um* instead of *-arum*, 43, 2; in *as* and *is* used as adjs., 205, n. 11; quantity of their penult, 291, 4 and 5.

*Pauca*, acc. of degree, 232, (3.)

*Paulisper*, its meaning, 191, II.

*Paulo*, w. comparatives, 256, n. 16; *paulum abest quin*, 272, n. 7.

*Pauper*, *abl.* of, 113, n. 2; defective, 115, 1, (a.); w. genit. or *abl.*, 213, n. 5, (2.)

*Pavidus*, w. genit., 213, n. 1.

*Pavor est ne*, etc., 202, n. 3.

*Pecus*, (*-udis*), genit. of, 67, n. 3.

*Pesskariis*, 222, n. 2, (a.)

*Pedes*, gender of, 31, 2; genit. of, 73, 2; for *pedites*, 209, n. 11, (1.), (b.)

*Pejero*, pr., 235, 2, n. 1.

*Pelagus*, gender of, 51; acc. plur. of, 54, 5; 94.

*Pello*, 171, n. 1, (b.); 251, n.

*Pendo*, w. genit. of value, 214; w. *abl.* of price, 252, n. 1.

*Pensi* and *pili habere*, 214, n. 1.

Pentameter verse, 304, 2; 311; 312, IX., x.

Penthemimeris, 304, 5.

Penult, 13; quantity of, 291; of proper names, 236.

*Per*, its uses, 195, n. 9; 247, 1, n. 1; w. the means when a person, 247, 3, n. 4; in adjectives, 279, 10, (c.); in composition, 196, I., 10; per compounded with adjectives strengthens their meaning, 127, 2.

Perceiving, verbs of, their construction, 272.

*Percipio*, w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 1; *perceptum habeo*, instead of *percepi*, 274, n. 4.

*Percitor*, w. two accs., 231, n. 1.

*Perennis*, *abl.* of, 113, n. 1.

*Perdo*, w. *capitis*, 217, n. 3; *perditum ire*, for *perdere*, 276, II., n. 2.

*Perdum*, for *perdam*, 162, 1.

Perfect tense, 145, IV.; definite and indefinite, 145, IV., n.; old form in *sim*, 162, 9; quantity of dissyllabic perfects, 234, n. 1. perfect participles translated actively, 162, 16; both actively and passively, 162, 17, (a.);—of neuter verbs, 162, 13; of impersonal verbs, 184, n. 2; the perf. subj., 260, II., n. 1, (3.); in the connection of tenses, 253; signification of perf. definite, 259, n. 1, (2.), (a.); of perf. indefinite, *ib.*—(d.)—perf. subj., signification of, 260, II., n. 1, (3.), and n. 4 and 6; in the protasis, 261, 2 and n. 2 and 3; 263, n.; perf. subj. for imperative, 267, n. 2; perf. inf., how used, 263, n. 1, (a.); perf. participle, 274, 2 and n.; supplies the place of a pres. pass. participle, 274, n. 3, (a.); perf. part. of a preceding verb used to express the completion of an action, *ib.*, (b.); w. *habeo*, 274, n. 4; w. *do*, *reddo*, *curo*, etc., *ib.*; supplies the place of a verbal noun, 274, n. 5; used in circumlocution for *abl.* of cause, 247, 2, (b.); neuter perf. pass. participle used as the subject of a verb, 274, n. 5, (b.)

*Perficio ut*, 273, n. 2.

*Pergo*, constr., 225, IV.; w. inf., 271, n. 1.

*Perhibeo*, 230, n. 1; 272, n. 1, and n. 6;

*perhibeor*, 210, n. 3, (3.); w. inf., 271, n. 1.

*Pericitor*, *capitis* or *capite*, 217, n. 3.

Period, 280.

*Perinde*, 191, III.;—*ac* or *atque*, 198, 3, n.

Periphrasis, 323, 2, (4.)

Periphrastic conjugations, 162, 14 and 15.

*Peritus*, 213, n. 1, and n. 4; 275, (2.);

270, n. 1; w. *ad*, 213, n. 4, (2.); 225, III.,

n. 1, (2.)

*Permisceo*, 245, II., 2, and n. 1 and 2.

*Permuto*, 73, 4; w. part. fut. pass., 274,

n. 7; w. subj. without *ut*, 262, n. 4.

*Permuto*, 252, n. 5.

*Pernox*, genit. of, 112, 2.

*Perosus*, 138, 1, n.

- Perpello*, 273, n. 4.  
*Perpes*, in genit. sing., 112, 1; 115, 2.  
*Persecero*, w. inf., 271, n. 1.  
 Personal pronouns, 132, 4; ellipsis of as subject-nominatives, 209, n. 1; expressed with infinitive, 272, n. 4;—personal terminations of verbs, 147, 3.  
 Personification, 324, 34.  
 Person of a noun or pronoun, 35, 2; 132, 4; of a verb, 147; used in the imperative, 147, 2; 1st and 2d persons used indefinitely, 209, n. 7; of verbs with nominatives of different persons, 209, n. 12.  
*Perspectum habeo*, instead of *perspezi*, 274, n. 4.  
*Persuadeo*, w. dat., 223, n., (b.); *hoc persuadetur mihi*, 223, n., (c.);—*persuasum mihi habeo*, 274, n. 4.  
*Pertasum est*, constr., 229, n. 6; 215, (1.) and n. 2.  
*Pertineo*, ellipsis of, 209, n. 4.  
*Peto*, constr., 230, n. 2; 231, n. 4; *peto ut*, 273, n. 4; 262, n. 4.  
*Pes* and compds., genit. of, 73, n. 1; 112, 1; abl. of, 113, n. 2; pr., 284, n. 1; 300, n. 2, (b.).  
*Ph*, in syllabication, 18, 2; when silent, 12, n.  
*Phalecian verse*, 304, 2; pentameter, 312, x.  
*Piger*, declined, 106; constr., 222, n. 4, (2.).  
*Piget*, w. genit., 215; w. acc., 229, n. 6; participle and gerund of, 184, n. 3.  
*Pili habere*, etc., 214, n. 1.  
*Place*, advs. of, 191, i.; 192, iii.; genit. of, 221; acc. of, 237; dat. of, 237, n. 3; place where, abl. of, 254;—whence, abl. of, 255; through which, 255, 2; place of a foot in verse, 309, n.  
*Planta*, gender of their names, 29.  
*Plaudo*, change of *au* in its compds., 189, n. 3.  
 Plenty or want, adjs. of, w. abl., 250.  
*Plenus*, w. genit. or abl., 213, n. 5, (3.); 250, 2, (1.).  
*Pleonasm*, 323, 2.  
*plex*, adjs. in, abl. of, 113, n. 3; how declined, 121, 1.  
*Plerique*, w. genit. plur., 212, n. 2, (1.).  
 Pluperfect tense, 145, v.; old form in *sem*, 162, 9; for the historical perfect, 259, n. 1, (3.).  
 Plural number, 35, 1; when wanting, 95; nouns only plur., 96; plur. of Greek nouns of 1st decl., 45, 2; do. of 2d decl., 54, 2;—nouns used for singular, 98; *nos* for *ego*, 209, n. 7, (b.); of verbs with collective nouns, 209, n. 11; the plur. of abstract nouns, 96, n.; plur. nouns in apposition to two or more nouns in the singular, 204, n. 5.  
*Plurimum*, w. genit., 212, n. 3; *plurimi* and *plurimo* after verbs of buying, etc., 214, n. 1, (1.), and n. 3, n. 2; *plurimo*, abl. of price, 252, n. 3.  
*Plus*, declined, 110; w. genit., 212, n. 3, n. 1, (a.); with numerals, etc., with or without *quam*, 256, n. 6; *plus* for *magis*, 277, n. 12; *plure*, abl. of price, 252, n. 3.  
*Potma*, declined, 57.  
*Potma*, gender of names of, 29.  
*Pozmitet*, w. genit., 215; w. subj., 215, n.; w. acc., 229, n. 6; participles of, 184, n. 3; w. *quod*, 273, n. 6.  
*Poisis*, declined, 86.  
 Poetical arrangement of words, 279, 3, (c.); 16, n. 4.  
*-politani*, adjs. in, 128, 6, (g.).  
*Pollens*, w. genit. or abl., 213, n. 5, (4.); cf. n. 4, (1.).  
*Polliceor*, w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 1.  
 Polypoton, 324, 23.  
 Polysyndeton, 323, 2, (2.).  
*Pondo*, indeclinable, 94; *pondo libram* or *libras*, 211, n. 6, (4.); 236, n. 7.  
*Pono*, 171, n. 2; 230, n. 2; 241, n. 5; pr., 284, n. 2, (c.); 229, n. 4, 1.  
*Posco*, w. two accs., 231; 230, n. 2; w. *ut*, etc., 273, n. 4; in pass., 234, i.  
 Position in prosody, 283, iv.  
 Positive degree, 122, 4.  
 Possessive, adjs., 104; pronouns, 139; to what equivalent, 122, 6; how used, 207, n. 36; 211, n. 3; ellipsis of when reflexive, 207, n. 36; used for subjective and possessive genit., 211, n. 3, (b.), and n. 3, (3.), (a.); for objective genit., 211, n. 3, (c.); so possessive adjectives, 211, n. 4, and n. 3, (3.), (b.); *mea*, *tua*, etc., after *refer* and *interest*, 219, n. 1.  
*Possideo*, w. perf. pass. part., 274, n. 4.  
*Possum*, conjugated, 154, n. 7; with superlatives, 127, 4; w. inf., 271, n. 1; *poterat*, the indic. for the subj., 259, n. 3; *possum* for *possem*, 259, n. 4, (2.).  
*Post*, *postquam*, etc., how pronounced, 8, n. 4; *post*, its case, 195, 4; *post* in composition, 196, 11; 197, 14; constr. of verbs compounded with, 224; with concrete official titles, 233, n. 3; w. acc. and abl. of time, 233, n. 1; ellipsis of, 235, n. 8; w. abl. like a comparative, 256, n. 16, (3.).  
*Postea loci*, 212, n. 4, n. 4.  
*Postera*, defective, 115, 5; compared, 125, 4; derivation, 130, v.  
*Posterior* and *postremus*, instead of *posterius* and *postremum*, 205, n. 15.  
*Postquam* and *posteaquam*, w. historical perfect instead of pluperfect, 259, n. 1, (2.), (d.).  
*Postulo*, w. two accs., 231, n. 1; w. acc. and genit., 217, n. 1; w. *de* or the simple abl., 217, n. 2; w. subj., without *ut*, 262, n. 4.  
*Potens*, w. genit., 212, n. 1, (3.); w. *in* or *ad* and acc., 212, n. 4, (2.).  
*Potior*, w. abl., 245, i.; w. acc., 245, i., n.; w. genit., 220, (4.); *potiusdus*, 162, 20; 273, ii., n. 1.  
*Potius*, defective, 115, 5.  
*Potius*, compared, 194, 4; used pleonastically, 256, n. 13.  
*Potus*, translated actively, 162, 16.  
*Præ*, in composition w. adjs., 127, 2; w. verbs, 197; before adjs., 127, 6; constr. of verbs compounded with, 224; *præ*, with comparatives, 127, 6; 256, n. 13, (b.).  
*Præbeo*, w. two accs., 230, n. 1.  
*Præcedo*, constr., 233, (3.), and n.; 224, n. 5.  
*Præcello*, *præco*, etc., 224, 3, and n. 5.

- Præcepta*, abl. of, 113, n. 2, and n. 1.  
*Præcipio*, constr., 223, (1.), (b.).  
*Præcipio*, 229, n. 4, 1.  
*Præcipue*, *præsertim*, etc., 193, II., 2.  
*Præcuro*, constr., 224, 8, and n. 5.  
*Prædium*, ellipsis of, 255, n. 3.  
*Præditus*, w. abl., 244.  
*Prænestr*, gender of, 66, n., and 29, n.  
*Prænomina*, its place, 279, 9, (b.).  
*Præpes*, genit. sing. of, 112, 1; genit. plur., 114, n. 2.  
*Præscribo*, w. *ut*, etc., 273, 2, n. 4.  
*Præsens*, declined, 111; abl. of, 113, n. 2.  
*Præses*, gender of, 30; 61, 2; genit. of, 73, n. 1.  
*Præsto*, 233, (8.), and n.; 230, n. 1; 224, 8, and n. 5; 256, n. 16, (8.);—*præsto*, adv., w. dat., 223, 1;—*præsto sunt*, *qui*, w. subj., 264, 6, n. 1.  
*Præstolor*, w. dat., 223, n. 2, n.; w. acc., 223, (1.), (a.).  
*Præter*, w. adjs., 127, 6; w. comparatives, 266, n. 13, (b.); as an adverb, 191, III.  
*Præterio*, w. *quod*, 273, 5, (1.).  
*Præterit*, constr. of, 229, n. 7.  
*Præterquam quod*, 277, n. 16.  
*Prætervoho*, 233, (2.).  
*Prævertor*, w. dat., 224, 8 and n. 5.  
*Præcor*, w. two accs., 231; w. *ut*, 273, n. 4; *ut* omitted, 262, n. 4.  
 Predicate, 201; 203;—predicate-nominative, 210; differing in number from the subject-nominative, 210, n. 2; instead of dat. of the end, 227, n. 4; after what verbs, 210, n. 3 and 4; pred. adjs., 210, n. 1; after *esse*, *haberi*, *judicari*, *videri*, etc., 271, n. 2;—predicate-accusative, 210, (b.); dative, 210, (c.); abl., 210, (d.); 257, n. 11.  
 Prepositions, 195–197; in composition, 196; with nouns, 103; with adjs., 131, 11–13; with verbs, 196; change of in composition, 103, n. 2; 131, n.; 196, (a.); inseparable, 196, (b.); w. acc., 195, 4; 235; w. abl., 195, 5; 241; w. acc. and abl., 195, 6; 235, (2.)–(5.); used as adverbs, 195, n. 4; how modified, 202, II., n. 2; verbs compounded with, w. dat., 224; w. acc., 233; w. abl., 242; compds. of *ad*, *con*, and *in*, with acc., 224, n. 4; repeated after compds., 224, n. 4; 233, n. 2; how interchanged, lb.; compds. of *ad*, *ante*, etc., with neuter verbs of motion, 224, n. 5; 233, n. 1; repetition of prepositions, 233, n. 2; 277, II., 8 and 4; prepositions of one syllable, pr., 285, 2, n. 1, and n. 5; ellipsis of, 232, (2.); 235, n. 11; ellipsis of their case, 235, n. 10; their place, 279, 10; quantity of *di*, *se* and *red*, 285, n. 2 and 3; put after their case, 279, 10, n.; (*f*); repeated, 277, II., 4.  
 Present tense, 145, I.; a principal tense, 253, n. 4; indicative pres. for historical perf., 259, n. 1, (a.); for the fut., 259, n. 1, (b.); for imperf. or perf. w. *dum*, 259, n. 1, (c.); subj. pres., use of, 260, II., n. 1, (1.); used to soften an assertion, 260, II., n. 4; to express a wish, command, etc., 260, n. 6; 267, n. 2; imperative pres., how used, 145, n. 3; 267, (1.); infinitive pres., how used, 268, n. 1, (a.), and n. 3; 272, n. 4 and 5; participle pres., how declined, 111, n.; what it denotes, 274, 2 and n.; denoting something about to be done, 274, n. 1; also a purpose, 274, n. 2, (a.); and a state or condition, 274, n. 2, (b.); present pass. participle, how supplied, 274, n. 9.  
 Preterites, 145, n. 2; 258, n.; preterites of the indicative used for the pluperfect subjunctive, 259, n. 4, (1.).  
 Preteritive verbs, 183, 1.  
*Pretti* and *pretio*, 214, n. 2, n. 3; ellipsis of, 252, n. 3.  
 Priapean verse, 310, II.  
 Price, ablative of, 252; genitive of *tanti*, etc., 214, n. 1.  
*Pridie*, w. genit., 212, n. 4, n. 6; w. acc., 238, 1.  
*Primus*, *medius*, etc., how translated, 205, n. 17; their place, 279, 7; *prior*, *primus*, for *prius*, *primum*, 205, n. 15.  
*Princeps*, genit. of, 112, 2; abl. of, 113, n. 2; 115, 1, (a.); used instead of an adverb of time, 205, n. 15.  
 Principal parts of a verb, 151, 4;—propositions, 201, 5;—parts of a proposition, 202, 5; tenses, 256, A.  
*Principio*, abl. of time, 253, n.  
*Prisquam*, with what mood, 263, 8.  
*Privo*, w. abl., 251, n.  
*Pro*, constr. of verbs compounded with, 224; w. abl. for predicate nom., 210, n. 3; for predicate acc., 230, n. 4; in composition, quantity of, 285, n. 5, and n. 7; *pro nihilo duco*, etc., 214, n. 2, n. 2; *pro eo* and *proinde ac*, 198, 3, n.  
*Prociivis*, 222, n. 4, (2.); 276, III., n. 1.  
*Procul*, w. abl., 195, n. 3; 241, n. 2.  
*Prodigus*, w. genit. or abl., 213, n. 5, (2.); w. *in*, 213, n. 4, (2.).  
*Prodo*, w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 1, and n. 6.  
*Proditur*, constr., 271, n. 2.  
*Proficiscor*, w. two datives, 227, n. 1.  
*Prohibeo*, 251, n. 2; w. *quominus*, 262, n. 11; 273, 4; w. genit., 220, 2; w. abl., 251, n.; w. dat. or abl., 224, n. 2; w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 6.  
*Proinde*, adv., 191, III.; *proinde ac*, 198, 3, n.  
 Prolepsis, 323, 1, (b.) and (4.).  
*Promitto*, constr., 272, n. 4; 217, n. 3, (c.).  
 Pronouns, 132–139; simple, 132, 2; neuter w. genit., 212, n. 3, n. 1.  
 Pronominal adjs., 139, 5.  
 Pronunciation of Latin, 6.  
*Pronus*, constr., 222, n. 4, (2.).  
*Prope est*, w. *ut* and the subj., 262, n. 3, n. 1.  
 Proper nouns, 26, 2; found only in 1st, 2d, and 3d decls., 40, 9.  
*Proprio*, w. inf., 271, n. 1.  
*Propinquo*, 225, n. 2.  
*Propinquus*, w. the dat. or genit., 222, n. 2, (a.).  
*Propior*, how compared, 126, 1; *propior* and *proximus* w. dat., 222, n. 1; w. acc., 222, n. 5; 238, 1; instead of *propius*, *proxime*, 205, n. 15; *proximum est*, w. *ut* and the subj., 262, n. 3, n. 1.  
*Propius* and *proxime*, constr., 223, 1, and n.

Proportional, *adjs.*, 121, 2.  
 Proposition, 201, 1; analysis of, 281.  
*Proprius*, constr., 222, n. 2, (a.)  
*Prorumpo*, constr., 228, n. 4, 1.  
*Prorodiac* verse, 304, 2.  
*Prosody*, 282—321; figures of, 305—307.  
*Prosopopeia*, 324, 3A.  
*Prosper* and *prosperus*, 105, n.; w. *genit.* or *abl.*, 213, n. 5, (2.)  
*Prosthesis*, 322, 1.  
*Prosto*, w. *abl.* of price, 252, n. 1.  
*Prosum*, 154, n. 6.  
*Provideo*, constr., 223, (1.), (a.)  
 Protasis and apodosis, 261; import of the different tenses in the protasis and apodosis, 261, 1 and 2.  
*Providus*, w. *genit.*, 213, n. 1, (3.)  
*Prudens*, w. *genit.*, 223, n. 1, (3.)  
*Ps*, initial, 12, n.; —*ps*, nouns in *genit.* of, 77, 2, (1.)  
*-pse*, enclitic, 135, n. 3.  
*Pt*, initial, 12, n.  
*-pte*, enclitic, 133, n. 2; 139.  
*Pubes* and *impubes*, *genit.* of, 112, 1; *abl.* of, 113, n. 2; 115, 1, (a.)  
*Pudet*, w. *genit.*, 215; w. *inf.*, 215; w. *acc.*, 229, n. 6; w. *perf. inf.*, 268, n. 2; w. *sup.* in *u*, 276, III., n. 2; participle in *dus*, and *gerund* of, 184, n. 3.  
*Puer*, instead of *in pueritia*, 258, n. 6.  
*Pueritia*, how used in the *abl.*, 253, n. 1.  
*Pugna*, for *in pugna*, 253, n. 1; *pugnam* *pugnare*, 232, (1.)  
*Pugnatur*, conjugated, 184, 2, (b.)  
*Pulchre*, instead of *abl.* of price, 252, n. 3.  
 Punctuation, 5.  
*Punio*, constr., 217, n. 5.  
 Punishment, constr. of words denoting, 217, n. 3.  
*Purgo*, w. *genit.*, 217, n. 1; 220, 2; w. *abl.*, 251, n.  
 Purpose, denoted by *ut*, etc., with the subj., 262; by participles, 274, 2, n. 2, 6 and 7; by *inf.*, 271; 278, n. 4, (b.); by *gerund.*, 276, III., n. 2, and (1.), (2.); by *supine* in *-um*, 276, II.  
*Purus*, w. *genit.* or *abl.*, 213, n. 5, (3.); cf. 251, n.  
*-pus*, Greek nouns in, *genit.* of, 76, n. 5.  
*Puto*, w. *genit.* of value, 214; w. *abl.* of price, 252, n. 1; w. two *accs.*, 230, n. 1, and n. 4; w. *acc.* and *inf.*, 272, n. 1; *putare*, 240, II., n. 2; *putor*, 210, n. 3, (3.), (c.); w. *inf.*, 271, n. 1.

## Q.

*Qu* before *s* in verbal roots, 171, 1  
*Quā*, adverbial correlative, 191, n. 1.  
*Quā—quā*, for *et—et*, 277, n. 8.  
*Quaro*, constr., 231, n. 4; poet. w. *inf.*, 271, n. 3.  
*Quæso*, 133, 7; constr., 262, n. 4.  
*Qualis*, 139, 5, (3.); w. comparatives, 256, n. 10, (b.)  
*Qualisqualis* or *qualiscumque*, 139, 5; 207, n. 29.  
*Qualis—talis*, 206, (16.)  
*Quam*, w. comparatives, 256; w. the superlative, with or without *possum*, 127, 4;

ellipsis of after *plus*, *minus*, *amplius*, etc., 256, n. 6 and 7; *quam qui* and superlative after *iam*, 206, (21.); *quam pro*, w. comparatives, 256, n. 11; *quam non*, 277, n. 14; *quam* and a verb after *ante* and *post*, 253, n. 1, n. 3; *quam qui*, w. comparatives and the subjunctive, 264, 4.

*Quamquam*, peculiar use of, 198, 4, n.; constr., 263, 2, (4.); used to connect an *abl.* absolute, 257, n. 10.

*Quamvis*, constr., 263, 2, and (2.), (3.)

*Quando, quandoquidem*, 198, 7, n., (b.)

Quantity, *adjs.* of, 104, 4; w. *genit.*, 212, n. 3, n. 1; after *sum* and verbs of valuing, 214; adverbs of, w. *genit.*, 212, n. 4.

Quantity, in *prosody*, 13, 1; marks of, 5, 1; general rules of, 13; 233; special rules of, 284; of penults, 291; of antepenults, 292; of penults of proper names, 293; of final syllables, 294—301; of final vowels, 294—298; of final consonants, 299; of derivative words, 284; of compound words, 285; of increments, 286—290; of Greek words, 283, n. 6.

*Quantus*, pronom. *adj.*, 139, 5, (3.); *quantus* for *quam*, with *posse* and superlatives, 127, n. 1; constr., 206, (16.); *quanto*, w. comparatives, 256, n. 16; *quantum*, w. *genit.*, 212, n. 3, n. 1; in *acc.* of degree, 231, n. 5; 232, (3.); 256, n. 16, n.; *quantum possum*, w. indicative, 264, 3 *fin.*; *quantus—tantus*, 206, (16.)

*Quantuscumque, quantusquantus, quantuluscumque*, 139, 5, (3.); w. indicative, 259, n. 4, (3.); *quantiscumque*, 207, n. 29.

*Quasi*, w. subj., 263, 2.

*Quatio*, constr., 229, n. 4, 1; how changed in its compds., 139, n. 3.

*-que*, its use, 198, 1, n.; *que—et, et—que, que—que*, 198, n., (a.); its place, 279, 3, (c.)

*Queis* and *quis*, for *quibus*, 136, n. 2.

*Queo*, how conjugated, 182, n.; w. *inf.*, 271, n. 3.

*Queror*, w. *acc.*, 232, n. 1; w. *quod*, 273, n. 6.

*Qui*, declined, 136; *qui* in *abl.*, 136, n. 1; 137, n. 2; interrogative, 137; difference between *qui* and *quis*, 137, 1; person of *qui*, 209, n. 6; w. subj., 264; when translated like a demonstrative, 206, (17.); with *sum* instead of *pro*, 206, (18.); *-quicum*, when used, 138, n. 1 *fin.*; *quis vero, qui autem*, 280, III., (3.); *ex quo, for postquam*, 253, n. 4.

*Quia, quod*, and *quoniam*, 198, 7, n., (b.)

*Quicque* and *quicquam*, 138, 3, (a.)

*Quicquid*, 138, n. 4; *acc.* of degree, 232, (3.)

*Quicumque*, how declined, 136, 3; how used, 207, n. 29; w. *indic.*, 259, n. 4, (3.); for *omnis, quiveis, or quilibet*, 207, n. 29.

*Quid*, 137; w. *genit.*, 212, n. 3, n. 1, (a.); *acc.* of degree, 231, n. 5, (a.); 232, (3.); *quid?* why? 235, n. 11; *quid sibi vult?* 228, n., (b.); *quid est quod?* w. subj., 261, 7, n. 2; *quid est cur?* etc., 264, 7, n. 3; *quid aliud quam?* 209, n. 4; *quid? quid vero?* *quid igitur? quid ergo? quid enim? quid multa? quid plura?* 229, n. 3, 2.

*Quidam*, how declined, 133, 5; how used, 207, n. 33.  
*Quidem*, its meaning, 191, n. 4; its place, 279, 3, (d.)  
*Quilibet*, how declined, 133, 5; how used, 207, n. 34.  
*Quis* and compds., gender, 61, 1; genit., 73, 4; 96.  
*Quis*, 198, 8; w. subj., 262, n. 10; for a relative with *non*, ib., 1 and n. 6; for *ut non*, ib., 2; after *non dubito*, etc., *quis*? why not? w. indic., ib., n. 9.  
*Quippe*, 198, 7, n., (b.); *quippe qui*, w. subj., 264, 8, (2.)  
*Quippiam*, 133, 3, (a.)  
*Quisui*, 136, n. 4.  
*Quis*, genit. sing., 74, n. 4; genit. plur., 83, n., 5.  
*Quis*, declined, 137; difference of *quis* and *qui*, 137, 1; between *quis* and *uter*, 212, n. 2, n. 1; *quis est qui*? w. subj., 264, 8, (2.); between *quis* and *aliquis*, 207, n. 30, (b.)  
*Quisquam*, *quisnam*, how declined, 137, 2.  
*Quispiam*, how declined, 133, 3; how used, 207, n. 30; *quippiam*, w. genit., 212, n. 3, n. 1.  
*Quisquam*, how declined, 133, 3; how used, 207, n. 31; *quicquam* and *quidquam*, w. genit., 212, n. 3; acc. of degree, 231, n. 5, (a.); 232, (3.)  
*Quisque*, how declined, 133, 3; how used, 207, n. 35; with plur. verb, 209, n. 11, (4.); its place, 279, 14; w. a superlative, 207, n. 35, (b.); in apposition, 204, n. 10.  
*Quisquis*, declined, 136, 4; its use, 207, n. 29; difference between *quisquis* and *quicumque*, 207, n. 29; w. indic., 259, n. 4, (8.)  
*Quivis*, how declined, 133, 5; how used, 207, n. 34.  
*Quo*, the correlative adv., 191, n. 1; *quo*, w. a comparative, 256, n. 16, (2.); for *ut eo*, w. subj., 262, n. 9; as adv. of place, w. genitive, 212, n. 4, n. 2, (b.); *quo mihi hanc rem*, 209, n. 4; 228, n. 5; *quo scius*, 262, n. 11, n.; *quo ne*, 262, n. 5.  
*Quoad*, w. subj., 263, 4; w. *ejus*, 212, n. 4, n. 5.  
*Quocum*, *quacum*, etc., instead of *cum* *quo*, etc., 241, n. 1.  
*Quod*, causal conj., 198, 7; construction of, 273, 5; refers to past time, 273, (6.); w. subj. of *dico*, *puto*, etc., 266, 3, n.; *quod sciam*, etc., 264, 3; *quod*, referring to a preceding statement, 206, (14); 273, 6, (a.); w. genit., 212, n. 3; before *si*, *nisi*, etc., 206, (14); as acc. of degree, 232, (3.)  
*Quojus* and *quoi*, for *cujus* and *cui*, 136, n. 2.  
*Quoque* and *etiam*, difference between, 196, 1, n., (d.); place of *quoque*, 279, 3, (d.)  
*Quot*, indecl., 115, 4; interrogative, 121, 5; 139, 5, (8.); constr., 206, (16); *quot sunt*, *qui*? 264, 7, n. 2; *quotquot*, w. indic., 259, n. 4, (8.)  
*Quoteni* and *quotus*, interrogative, 121, 5.  
*Quoties*, interrog. adv., 121, 5.  
*Quotus-quisque*, its meaning, 207, n. 35, (a.)  
*Quum*, correlative of *tum*, 191, n. 7; instead of *postquam*, 253, n. 4; — conj., 198, 10; constr., 263, 5, and n. 1—4.

## R.

*R*, before *s* in roots of nouns, 56, n. 1; nouns in *r*, genitive of, 70, 71; changed to *s* before *s* and *t*, 171, 3; *r* final, quantity of, 299, 2.  
*Rapio*, w. dat. or abl., 224, n. 2.  
*Rarum*, *est*, 262, n. 3, n. 3.  
*Rastrum*, plur. *rastri* or *rastra*, 92, 5.  
*Ratio*, w. genit. of gerunds, 225, iii., n. 1, (1.); *rationes*, as abl. of manner, without *cum*, 247, 2.  
*Ratum*, *est*, 262, n. 3, n. 2; *ratum*, pr., 234, n. 1, (2.)  
 — *rs* in 2d person sing. of passive voice, 162, 3.  
*Re* or *red*, inseparable prep., 196, (b.); 197, 13; quantity of, 235, n. 3, (a.)  
*Reape*, 135, n. 3.  
*Recens*, abl. of, 113, n. 3 and n. 1; also adverb, 192, 4, (b.)  
*Receptio*, constr., 233, n. 2, n.  
*Recingar*, w. acc., 234, n. 1.  
*Recordor*, w. genit. or acc., 216; w. pres. inf., 268, n. 1; w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 1.  
*Recte*, instead of abl. of price, 252, n. 3.  
*Reckoning*, Roman mode of, 326, 327.  
*Rectum*, *est*, ut, 262, n. 3, n. 3.  
*Recuso* *quin*, and *quominus*, 262, n. 7 and n. 11; w. *ne*, 271, n. 1; w. inf., ib., n., and 271, n. 1.  
*Redd*, two accs., 230, n. 1; pass. 210, n. 3, (3), (b.); w. perf. pass. part., 274, n. 4.  
*Redoleo*, w. acc., 232, (2.)  
*Redundant nouns*, 99; adjs., 116; 109, n.; 111, n.; verbs, 185.  
*Redundo*, w. abl., 250, 2, (2.)  
*Reduplication*, 163, n.; of compound verbs, 163, n. 1; of verbs of 1st conj., 165, n. 2; of 2d conj., 168, n. 2; of 3d conj., 171, n. 1, (b.); quantity of, 234, n. 2.  
*Refero*, w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 1.  
*Refero* and *interest*, w. genit., 214; 219; w. the adj. pronouns *mea*, etc., 219, n. 1; w. *ad*, etc., 219, n. 3; *refert*, pr., 235, n. 3.  
*Refertus*, w. genit. or abl., 213, n. 5, (8.)  
*Reflexive pronouns*, 132, 4; 139, n. 2; how used, 208; for demonstratives, 208, (6.); ellipsis of, 229, n. 4; in oratio obliqua, 266, n. 3.  
*Reformido*, w. inf., 271, n. 1.  
*Regno*, w. genit., 220, 4.  
*Regnum*, declined, 46.  
*Rego*, conjugated, 158.  
*Relative adjs.*, 104, 13; 189, n.; government of, 218, n. 1; 222, 3; adverbs. w. subj., expressing a purpose, 264, 5, n. 2; used indefinitely, w. subj., 264, n. 3.  
*Relative pronouns*, 136; agreement of, 206, n. 19; ellipsis of, 206, (5.); in the case of the antecedent, 206, (6.), (a.); referring to nouns of different genders, 206, (9.); — to a proposition, 206, (13.); agreeing with a noun implied, 206, (11); number and gender of, when referring to two or more nouns, 206, (15); — relative clauses used as circumlocutions and to express the English 'so called,' 206, (19); relative adverbs for relative pronouns, 206, (20); the relative adjs. *quot*, *quantus*, etc., construction of,

206, (16); *qui* with *sum*, instead of *pro*, 206, (18); person of, 209, r. 6; 206, r. 19;—w. subj., 264; their place, 279, 18; 280, III., (2.); relatives as connectives, 280, III., (1.); 198, II.

Resolving, verbs of, 273, 1, (a.)

*Relinquo*, w. two datives, 227, r. 1; w. part. in *dus*, 274, r. 7; *relinquitur*, w. ut and the subj., 262, r. 8, n. 1.

*Reliqua*, acc., 234, II., r. 8; *reliquum est* ut, 262, r. 8.

*Reminiscor*, constr., 216.

*Remitto*, 229, r. 4, 1.

Removing, verbs of, w. abl., 251.

*Remuneror*, w. abl., 249, r., r. 1.

*Renuncio*, w. two accs., 230, n. 1; pass., 210, n. 3, (3.), (b.).

Repeated words, their place, 279, 4.

*Repens*, abl. of, 113, r. 8.

*Reperio*, w. two accs., 230, n. 1;—*reperi-*or, 210, n. 3, (3.), (c.); 271, r. 2;—*reperi-*untur, *qui*, w. subj., 264, 6.

*Repo*, constr. of compds. of, 233, (3.), n.

*Repono*, 241, r. 5.

*Reposco*, w. two accs., 231, r. 1.

*Repugno*, with *quominus* or *ne*, 263, r. 11.

*Res*, declined, 90; use of, 206, r. 7, (2.), n. 1.

*Reses*, genit. sing. of, 112, 1; defective, 115, 2.

*Resipio*, w. acc., 232, (2.)

Responsives, case of, 204, r. 11.

*Respublica*, declined, 91.

*Restat*, ut, 262, r. 3, n. 1.

*Re-te*, abl. of, 82, r. 1, (b.).

*Retracto*, constr., 229, r. 4, 1.

*Reus*, w. genit., 213, r. 1, (3.); *reum agere* or *facere*, w. genit., 217, r. 1.

Rhetoric, figures of, 324.

*Rhus*, genit. of, 70, r. 3; acc. of, 80, II.

Rhythm, 308, (1.)

*Rideo*, w. acc., 232, n. 1.

*-rimus*, *-ritis*, quantity of, 290, r., (1.), 4.

*-rimus*, superlatives in, 125, 1.

*Ritu*, as abl. of manner without *cum*, 247, 2.

Rivers, gender of names of, 28.

*-rix*, verbals in, 102, 6, (a.) See *tor* and *trix*.

*Rogo*, w. two accs., 231, r. 1; w. ut, 278, r. 4; 274, r. 7; without ut, 262, r. 4; constr. in pass., 234, r.

Roman day, 326, 1;—hour, lb.;—month, 326, 2;—names of the months, 326, 2, (1);—calendar, table of, 326, 2, (6), p. 369;—week, 326, 2, (10); names of the days of the week, lb.;—year, how designated, 326, 2, (11);—money, weights and measures, 327;—tables of weights, etc., 327, pp. 370—373;—coins, 327, p. 371;—interest, how computed, lb.

Root or crude form of words inflected, what and how found, 40, 10; formation of nominative sing. from in 3d decl., 56, r. and II.

Roots of verbs, 150; general, 150, 1; special, 150, 2; second and third, how formed, 150, 8 and 4; third, how determined when there is no supine, 151, n.; first, its derivatives, 151, 1; irregularities in

tenses formed from, 162, 1—6; second, do., 151, 2; irregularities in tenses formed from, 162, 7—10; third, do., 151, 3; second and third, formation of, 1st conj., 164—168; 2d conj., 167—170; 3d conj., 171—174; 4th conj., 175—177; second and third irregular, 1st conj., 165; 2d conj., 168; 4th conj., 176.

*-rs*, nouns in, genitive sing. of, 77, 2, (2.); genit. plur. of, 83, II., 4.

*Rudis*, 213, r. 1, and r. 4, (2.); 275, III., r. 1, (2.)

*Rupes*, declined, 57.

*Rus*, construed like names of towns, in acc., 237, r. 4; in abl., 254; 255; cf. 82, r. 5, (b.); *rure*, not *ruri* with an adj., 255, r. 1.

*-rus*, participle in, how declined, 105, r. 2; its signification, 162, 14; 274, 2, r. 6; with *sim* and *essem* serving as future subjunctives, 162, r. 3; with *esse* and *fuisse*, 162, 14, r. 8; 268, r. 4; genitive plur. of, 162, 19; denotes intention, 274, r. 6; used for an English clause connected by 'since, when,' etc., lb.; as an apodosis, lb.

*Rutum*, pr., 284, r. 1, (2.)

## S.

*S*, sound of, 11; added to some roots of nouns of 3d decl., 56, r.; added to roots of verbs ending in a consonant, 171; used instead of *t* in the 3d root of some verbs, 171, r. 5; inserted in some verbals, 102, 5, (b.); *s* preceded by a consonant, nouns in, gender of, 62; 64; genit. of, 77; final, elided, 305, 2.

*Sacer*, w. genit. or dat., 222, r. 2, (a.)

*Sacerdos*, gender of, 80; 61, 8.

*Sceps*, comparison of, 194, 5.

*Sal*, 62, r. 1, (b.), and 66, r.; 96, 9; pr., 284, n. 1.

*Salio*, constr. of compds. of, 233, (3.), n.

*Saltem*, 198, II., 8.

*Saluto*, w. two accs., 230, n. 1; *salutor*, w. two nominatives, 210, n. 3, (3.)

*Salve*, 183, 9.

*Sammis*, genit. sing., 74, r. 4; genit. plur., 88, II., 5.

*Sapio*, w. acc., 232, (2.)

Sapphic verse, 304, 2; 315, II.

*Sat*, indecl., 115, 4; *satis*, w. genit., 212, r. 4; *satis esse*, w. dat. of gerund, 275, III., r. 2, (1); *satis habeo*, and *satis mihi est*, w. perf. infin., 268, r. 2; *satis erat*, indie. instead of subj., 269, r. 8; degrees of comparison, 126, 4.

*Satago*, w. genit., 215, (2.)

*Satelles*, gender of, 80; 61, 2.

*Sattarus*, w. abl. or genit., 213, r. 5, (8.)

*Satisdo*, w. *damni infecti*, 217, r. 3, (c.);

w. dat., 225, r.

*Satisfacio*, w. dat., 225, r.

*Satum*, pr., 284, r. 1, 2.

*Saturnalibus*, for *ludis Saturnalibus*, 258, n. 1.

*Satur*, how declined, 105, r. 1; w. genit. or abl., 213, r. 5, (3.)

*Saturo*, w. abl., 249, r., r. 1; w. genit. poet., 220, 8

- Satus*, w. abl., 246.  
 Saying, verbs of, constr., 272; ellipsis of, 270, n. 2. (b.) and 3; implied, 273, 8, (b.); used in the passive, 272, n. 6.  
*Scando*, compds. of, 233, (3.), n.  
*Scanning*, 304, 6.  
*Scato*, w. abl., 250, 2, (2.), n. 1; with genit. poet., 220, 3.  
*Season*, 314, 11.  
*Scidi*, pr., 234, n. 1, (1.)  
*Scilicet*, 198, 7, n., (a.)  
*Scio*, w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 1; *scito*, 162, 4.  
*Scitor* and *sciscitor*, constr., 231, n. 4.  
*-sco*, verbs in, 187, 11., 2; drop *sc* in 2d and 3d root before *t*, 171, n. 6.  
*Scribo*, 273, 2, (c.); w. two accs., 230, n. 1; w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 1, and n. 6; in pass. w. predicate nominative, 210, n. 3, (3); *scribit*, w. pres. inf. instead of perf., 268, n. 1, (a.)  
*Sc*, inseparable prep., 196, (b.)  
*Se*, w. inter, 208, 5. See *sui*.  
*Secerno*, 251, n., and n. 2, n.  
*Secus*, for *secus*, 88, 1; 94; 211, n. 6, (4.); 230, n. 6; adv., 191, 111.; w. acc., 195, n. 3.  
*Sed*, 198, 9, n., (a.); its place, 279, 3, (a.); *sed*, *sed quod*, *sed quia*, 262, n. 9; *sed*, *sed tamen*, 278, n. 10; *sed et*, 198, 1, (d.)  
*Sedeo*, 210, n. 3, (2.); compds. of, 233, (8), n.  
*Sedile*, declined, 57.  
*Sedo*, constr., 229, n. 4, 1.  
*-sem*, old termination of plup. indie. active, 162, 9.  
 Semi-deponent verbs, 142, 2.  
*Senarius*, 304, 2; Iambic, 314.  
*Senex*, its degrees of comparison, 126, 4; gender of, 65, 2; genitive of, 78, 2, (2); abl. of, 113, n. 2; 115, 1; for in *senectute*, 258, n. 6.  
*Sentences*, 200; analysis of, 231.  
*Sentiments* of another, in dependent clauses, 266, 3.  
*Sentio*, w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 1.  
 Separating, verbs of, w. abl., 251.  
*Separo*, w. abl., 251, n.  
*Sequitur*, constr. 262, n. 3, n. 1.  
*-sere*, future infin. in, 162, 10.  
*Sereno*, scil. *calo*, 257, n. 9, (2.)  
*Sermo*, declined, 57.  
*Serpens*, gender of, 64, 3.  
*Sese*, intensive, 133, n. 2.  
*Servitutum servire*, 232, (1.)  
*Sextertius*, its value, 327, n. 2, (b.); how denoted, ib.; mode of reckoning, ib.; *sextertium*, ib., n. 5-7.  
*Seu*, or *sive*, 198, 2, n., (c.)  
 Ships, gender of their names, 29.  
 Short syllable, 282, 2.  
 Showing, verbs of, constr., 272, n. 6.  
*Si*, how pronounced, 11, n. 1.  
*-si* or *-sin*, Greek datives in, 84.  
*Si*, conj., 198, 5; *si* for *num*, 198, 11, n., (e.); *si minus*, *sin minus* or *sin aliter*, 198, 5, n., (b.); 277, n. 14; ellipsis of in the protasis, 261, n. 1; *si* with the imperfect subj., instead of the pluperfect, 261, n. 5; *si nihil aliud*, 209, n. 4; *si quisquam* and *si ullus*, 207, n. 30, (b.); *si non*, 262, n. 5.  
*Sibi suo*, 223, n., (a.)  
*Sic*, 191, n. 5; 277, n. 12, (a.); pleonastically, 207, n. 22.  
*Sicuti*, w. subj., 263, 2, (1.)  
 Significant word, in a proposition, 276, 2, (c.)  
*Siem*, *sies*, etc., 154, n. 4.  
*Silentio praterire* or *facere aliquid*, without *cum*, 247, 2.  
*Sileo*, w. acc., 232, n. 1; pres., 234, 111.  
 Silver age of Roman literature, 329, 3.  
*-sim*, old termination of perfect indie. active, 162, 9.  
 Similar constructions, 278, n. 1 and 2.  
*Simile*, 324, 30.  
*Similis*, w. genit. or dat., 222, n. 2, (a.); w. dat. in imitation of the Greek, 222, n. 7;  
*similes*, w. inter., 222, n. 4, (4.); w. *ac* and *atque*, 222, n. 7, *fin*.  
 Simple, subject, 202, 2;—predicate, 208, 2;—sentences, 201, 10.  
*Simul*, w. abl., 195, n. 3; 241, n. 2; *simul-simul*, 277, n. 8.  
*Sin*, 198, 5; its place, 279, 3, (a.); *sin minus*, 277, n. 14.  
 Singular number, 35, 1; sing. for plur., 209, n. 11, 1, (b.)  
*Singulare est ut*, 262, n. 8, n. 3.  
*Singuli*, 119.  
*Sino*, 273, 4; 262, n. 4.  
*Siquidem*, 198, 7, n., (b.)  
*Siquis*, how declined, 133, 2; *siquis* and *siquid*, how used, 133, 2, (a.) and (b.); 207, n. 29; *si quis est*, *qui*, w. subj., 264, 6.  
*Sis* for *si vis*, 153, n. 3.  
*Sisto*, constr., 229, n. 4, 1.  
*Situm*, pr., 234, n. 1, (2.)  
*Sive* or *seu*, 198, 2, n.; 273, n. 8; its place, 279, 3, (a.); *sive-sive*, w. verb in the indie., 259, n. 4, (3.)  
*-so*, *-sim*, *-sem*, old verbal terminations, 162, 9.  
*Socius*, w. genit. or dat., 222, n. 2, (a.)  
*Sodes*, for *si audes*, 188, n. 3.  
*Solecism*, 325, 2.  
*Soleo*, how conjugated, 142, n. 2; w. inf., 271, n. 1.  
*Solitus*, 274, n. 3; *solito*, after comparatives, 256, n. 9; its place, 279, n. 1.  
*Solum*, *solummodo*, 193, 11., 3.  
*Solus*, how declined, 107; w. relative and subj., 264, 10; for *solum*, 205, n. 15.  
*Solutus*, w. genit., 213; w. abl., 251, n.; *solutum*, pr., 234, n. 3.  
*Solve*, w. abl., 251, n.  
*Sons*, genit. plur. of, 114, n. 3; 115, 1, (a.)  
*Sospes*, genit. of, 112, 1; abl. of, 113, n. 2; 115, 1, (a.); 126, 5, (b.)  
 Sotadic verse, 304, 2; 317, 1.  
 Sounds of the letters, 7-12; of the vowels, 7 and 8; of the diphthongs, 9; of the consonants, 10-12.  
 Space, acc. and abl. of, 236; ellipsis of, 236, n. 3.  
*Spatium*, w. genit. of gerund, 275, 111., n. 1, (1); *spatio* as abl. of space, 236, n. 4.  
*Specto*, constr., 225, n. 1.  
*Specus*, 88, 1.  
*Spero*, w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 1.  
*Spes est*, w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 1;

- spes*, w. genit. of gerunds, 275, II., n. 1, (1.); *spe*, after comparatives, 256, n. 9; its place, 279, n. 1.  
*Spolio*, w. abl., 261, n.  
*Spondaic verse*, 810; tetrameter, 812.  
*Spondeo*, 163, R.; w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 1.  
*Stanza*, 819, 4.  
*Statim*, 193, II., 1.  
*Statuo*, 241, R. 5; 278, n. 1; 271, n. 3; 272, n. 1; *statutum habeo*, 274, n. 4.  
*Statum*, pr., 234, R. 1, (2).  
*Sterilis*, w. genit. or abl., 218, R. 5, (2); w. ad., 213, R. 4, (2).  
*Steti* and *steti*, pr., 234, R. 1, (1).  
 'Still,' w. comparatives, how expressed in Latin, 256, R. 9, (b).  
*Stipulo*, 217, R. 3, (c).  
*Sto*, 163, R.; w. genit. of price, 214, n. 3; w. pred. nom., 210, n. 3, (2.); w. abl., 245, II., 5, and R. 2; *stat per me*, construction of, 262, n. 11; compds. of, 233, (3.), n.  
*Strophe*, 819, 4.  
*Studeo*, w. dat., 228, n. 2; with gerund, 275, III., R. 2, (1.); with the inf. with or without an accusative, 271, n. 4; w. ut, 273, 4, (a.); w. acc. id., 232, (3.).  
*Studiosus*, w. genit., 213, n. 1; 275, III., R. 1, (2).  
*Studium*, w. genit. of gerunds, 275, II., R. 1, (1).  
*Styz*, gender of, 28, R.  
*Suadeo*, constr., 273, n. 4; 262, R. 4.  
*Sub*, in composition, force of, 122; government of, 235, (2); constr. of verbs compounded with, 224; of adjs., 222, R. 1, (b).  
 Subject of a verb, 140; of a proposition, 201; 202; simple, complex, and compound, 202; its place in a sentence, 279, 2; subject of a dependent clause made the object of the leading verb, 229, n. 5, (a).  
 Subject-nominative, 209; ellipsis of, 209, R. 1 and 2; when wanting, 209, n. 3; w. inf., 209, n. 5; 239, n. 1; two or more in the singular with a plural verb, 209, n. 12; (2).  
 Subject-accusative, 239; ellipsis of, 239, n. 1—3; considered also as the accusative of the object after verbs of saying, showing, and believing, 272, R. 6.  
 Subjective genitive, 211, R. 2; possessive pronoun used instead of, 211, R. 3.  
*Subjectus*, w. dat., 222, n. 1, (b).  
 Subjunctive, 148, 2; its tenses, 145, n. 2; how used, 260—266, and 273; various use of its tenses, 260; how translated, 260, I. and II., R. 1; for imperative, 260, n. 6; in impersonal verbs, 184, n. 2; in conditional clauses, 261; after particles, 262 and 263; after *qui*, 264; after relative advs., 264, n. 2; indefinite subj., 264, 12 and n.; in indirect questions, 265; in inserted clauses, 266; in oratio obliqua, 266, 1 and 2; after what verbs used, 273; after adjectives, 213, R. 4; exchanged for acc. w. inf., 273, 3, (b); subjunctive in doubtful questions, 260, n. 5; in repeated actions after relative pronouns and adverbs, 264, 12.  
*Subito*, 193, II., 1.  
 Subordinate conjunctions, 198, II.;—propositions, 201, 6 and 7.  
 Substantive, 26—103; substantive pronouns, 132, 133; their gender, 132, 8; declined, 133; as subject nominative, ellipsis of, 209, n. 1; dat. of, redundant, 228, n.; substantive verb, 153; substantive clauses, 201, 7 and 8; 229, n. 5; 231, R. 2, (b); substantive clause instead of the abl. after *opus est*, 243, R. 1; and after *dignus* and *indignus*, 244, n. 2, (b).  
*Subter*, constr., 235, (4).  
 Subtractive expressions in numerals, 118, 4; 120, 2, 3, and 5.  
*Succenseo*, 223, R. 2; w. *quod*, 273, n. 6.  
*Sufficio*, w. dat. of gerund, 275, III., R. 2, (1).  
*Sui*, signification of, 132, 4; declined., 133; use of, 208; 266, R. 3; 275, II., R. 1, (4).  
*Sultis* for *si vultis*, 183, R. 3.  
*Sum*, why called an auxiliary, 153; why substantive, ib.; why the copula, 140, 4; conjugated, 153; compds. of, 154, R. 5—R. 7; w. a genit. of quality, 211, n. 6, (7); in expressions denoting part, property, duty, etc., 211, n. 3, (3); 275, R. 1, (5); denoting degree of estimation, 214; w. dat., 226; with two datives, 227; how translated, 227, R. 3; w. abl. denoting in regard to, 250, R. 3; w. an abl. of place, manner, etc., in the predicate, 210, R. 3, (1); w. dat. of gerund, 275, n. 2, (1); w. abl. of price, 252, R. 1; w. genit. of value, 214; *sunt qui*, w. subj., 264, 6; *sunt quidam*, *nonnulli*, etc., 264, 6, n. 4; ellipsis of as copula, 209, n. 4 fin.; of *esse* and *fuisse*, 270, n. 3; *sum* w. predicate nom., etc., 210, n. 3, (1); *esse* w. predicate nom., 271, n. 2, and R. 4.  
*Sumo*, w. two accs., 230, R. 2; poet. w. inf., 271, n. 3.  
*Supellez*, genitive of, 78, 2, (2); abl. of, 82, R. 5, (a).  
*Super*, constr., 235, (3); of verbs compounded with, 224; of adjs., 222, R. 1, (b).  
*Superfluo*, w. abl., 250, 2, (2), a. 1.  
*Superjacio*, constr., 233, (1).  
 Superlative degree, 122, 6; particular use of, 122, n. 4; formation of, 124; by *maxime*, 127, 1; superlative with *quisque*, 207, n. 35; w. partitive genit., 212, R. 2, and R. 4, n. 7; place of, 296, (7), (b).  
*Supero*, w. abl., 256, R. 16, (3).  
*Supersedeo*, w. abl., 242.  
*Superstes*, genit. of, 112, 2; abl. of, 113, n. 2; 115, 1, (a); 126, 5, (b); w. genit. or dat., 222, R. 2, (a).  
*Supersum*, w. dat., 224, 11; *superest* ut, etc., 262, R. 3, n. 1.  
*Superius*, its degrees of comparison, 125, 4; *supremus* or *summus*, 205, R. 17; *summum* used adverbially, 205, n. 10; 234, II., R. 3.  
 Supines, 25 and 143, 3; few in number, 162, 11; in *um*, by what cases followed, 276, 1; on what verbs dependent, 276, II., w. *eo*, 276, II., R. 2 and 3; supines in *u*, after what adjs., 276, III., and R. 1; after *fax*, *nefas*, and *opus*, 276, III., R. 2; of two syllables, quantity of, 284, R. 1.



*Supra*, w. acc., 196, 4; w. adjs., 127, 6; 266, n. 13, (b.)  
*Suppedito*, w. two dat., 227, n. 1; 229, n. 4, 1; w. abl., 250, 2, n. 1.  
*Supplex*, genit. plur. of, 114, n. 2; 115, 1, (a.); w. dat., 222, n. 1, (b.)  
 Supposition or concession denoted by the tenses of the subj., 260, n. 3.  
*Surripio*, w. dat. or abl., 224, n. 2.  
*Sus*, gender of, 80; 87, n. 4; genit. of, 76, n. 3; dat. and abl. plur., 84, n. 1.  
*Suscipio*, w. participle in *dus*, 274, n. 7.  
*Suspensus* and *suspectus*, w. genit., 213, n. 1.  
*Susus*, use of, 139, n. 2; 208; referring to a word in the predicate, 208, (7); for *hujus* when a noun is omitted, 208, (7.); when two nouns are united by *cum*, 208, (7), (c.); denoting fit, etc., 206, (8.)  
*Syllabic caesura*, 310, n. 1.  
*Syllabication*, 17—23.  
 Syllables, number of, in Latin words, 17; pure and impure, 80; quantity of first and middle, 284; of penultimate, 291; of antepenultimate, 292; of final, 294.  
*Syllepsis*, 323, 1, (b.) and (3.)  
*Symploce*, 324, 15.  
*Synacresis*, 306, 1.  
*Synalepha*, 305, 1.  
*Synapheia*, 307, 3.  
*Synchysis*, 324, 4.  
*Syncope*, 322, 4; in genit. plur. of 1st decl., 43, 2; of 2d decl., 53; in cases of *bas* and *sus*, 83, n. 1 and 84, n. 1; of *e* in oblique cases of nouns in *er* of 2d decl., 43; of 3d decl., 71, n. 1; in perfect, etc., of verbs, 162, 7; see *Omission*.  
*Synecdoche*, 224, 11.; 323, 1, (5.); 324, 8.  
*Synesis* or *synthesis*, 323, 3, (4.)  
*Synonymia*, 324, 29.  
*Synopsis* of Horatian metres, 320.  
*Syntax*, 1: 200—231.  
*Systole*, 307, 1.  
*Syzygy*, 303, 4.

## T.

*T*, sound of, 12; before *s* in roots of nouns, 56, n. 1; in roots of verbs, 171, 3, and n. 5; nouns in gender of, 66; genit. of, 78; final, quantity of, 239, 2.  
*Taceo*, w. acc., 232, n. 1.  
*Tacet*, w. genit., 215; w. acc., 229, n. 6.  
*Tactio* w. acc., 233, n. 2, n.  
*Talma*, gender of, 42, 2.  
*Talis*, demonstr. adj., 139, 5, (3.); *talis* followed by *qui* and the subj., 264, 1, n.; ellipsis of, 264, 1, (b.); 206, (3), (a.); and (16); *talis* ac, 198, 3, n.; *talis*—*qualis*, 206, (16.)  
*Tam*, 191, n. 5; *tam*—*quam*, 277, n. 11; *tam* with an adj. before *qui* and the subj., 264, 1, n.  
*Tamen*, how used, 198, 4, n.  
*Tametsi*, 198, 4; constr., 263, 2, (4.)  
*Tamquam*, w. subj., 263, 2; used like *quidam*, 207, n. 83, (b.) *fin.*; w. abl. absolute, 257, n. 4.  
*Tandem*, 191, n. 6.

*Tantum*, adv., 198, 11, 8.  
*Tantus*, demonstrative, 139, 5, (3.); followed by *qui* and the subj., 264, 1, n.; ellipsis of, 264, 1, (b.); 206, (3), (a.); and 6; *tantus*—*quantus*, 206, (16); *tanti*, *quantum*, etc., w. verbs of valuing, 214, n. 1, (1.); *tantum*, w. genit. plur. and plur. verb, 209, n. 11, (3.); *tantum*, w. genit., 212, n. 3, n. 1; *tanti* after *referi* and *interest*, 219, n. 5; *tantum*, acc. of degree, 231, n. 5; 232, (3.); 256, n. 16, n.; *tanto*, w. comparatives, 256, n. 16, (2.)  
*Tantopere*, 191, n. 5.  
*Tardo*, 223, n. 4, 1.  
*Tautology*, 325, 4.  
*Tazo*, constr., 217, n. 5; w. abl. of price, 252, n. 1.  
*-e*, enclitic, 133, n. 2.  
*Tempe*, 83, 1, and 94.  
*Tempero*, 223, n. 2, and (1), (a.); *temperare mihi non possum*, *quin*, 262, n. 7.  
 Temporal adjs., 104, 6; classes of, 121, 3;—conjunctions, 198, 10.  
*Tempus*, ellipsis of, 205, n. 7; *tempus est*, w. inf., 270, n. 1; *tempus impendere*, 275, 111., n. 2; *tempus consumere*, ib.; *temporis* after *tum* and *tunc*, 212, n. 4, n. 4; w. *id*, *hoc*, or *idem*, 234, n., n. 3; *tempore* or *in tempore*, 253, n. 1; w. genit. of gerunds, 275, 111., n. 1, (1.)  
*Tenax*, w. genitive, 213, n. 1, (1.)  
*Tendo*, constr., 225, 11.; 229, n. 4, 1; w. inf., 271, n. 1.  
*Teneo*, w. perf. pass. participle, 274, n. 4 *fin.*; *teneri*, perf. pass. part., 263, n. 1, (b.)  
 Tenses, 144; division of, 144, 2 and 3; of the subj., 145, n. 2; of the imperative, 145, n. 3; of the infinitive, 145, n. 4; connection of, 258; principal and historical, 258, A. and B.; of indic. mood, used one for another, 259; future for imperative, 259, n. 1, (4); the preterites of the indic. for the pluperfect subj. in the apodosis of a conditional clause, 259, n. 4; of subj. mood, their use, 260, 1., n. 1, and 11., n. 1; in protasis and apodosis, 261; of inf. mood, use of, 268; tenses used in epistolary style, 145, 11., 3; 259, n. 1, (2.), (c.)  
*Tento*, constr., 273, n. 1; w. inf., 271, n. 1.  
*Tenus*, w. genit., 221, 11.; w. abl., 241, n. 1; place of, 279, 10; 241, n. 1.  
*-ter*, nouns in, 48, 1; 71.  
*Teres*, in genit. sing., 112, 1; defective, 115, 2; its degrees, 126, 4.  
 Terminational comparative, and superlative, 124; adjs. without such comparison, 126, 5.  
 Terminations of inflected words, 40; of nouns, table of, 39; of 1st decl., 41 and 44; of 2d decl., 46; of 3d decl., 55; of 4th decl., 87; of 5th decl., 90; masculine and feminine affixed to the same root, 32, 8; of degrees of comparison in, adjs., 124, 125; in adverbs, 194, 2; personal, of verbs, 147, 3; verbal, 150; table of verbal, 152.  
*Terra*, as genit. of place, 221, n. 3, (4); *terra marique*, 254, n. 2; *terrarum*, 212, n. 4, n. 2.  
*Terreo*, w. *ut* or *ne*, 262, n. 8.

*Terenci*, 327, p. 371; *terenci* habere, 214, r. 1.  
*Tete*, intensive, 133, r. 2.  
*Tetrameter*, 804, 2; *a priore*, 312, iv.; *a posteriore*, 312, v.; *meturus*, 312, xi.; catalectic, 312, xi.  
*Tetrapototes*, 94.  
*Tetrapotrophon*, 319, 3.  
*Th*, in syllabication, 18, 2.  
*That*, sign of what moods, 273; instead of a repeated subst., how expressed in Latin, 207, r. 26, (c.)  
*Thesis*, in prosody, 308.  
*Thinking*, verbs of, their constr., 272.  
*Thousands*, how expressed in Latin, 118, 5, (a.)  
*Th*, how pronounced, 12.  
*Tiaras*, 45, 3.  
*Tibi*, its pronunciation, 7, r. 1; 19, r.  
*Tigris*, genit. of, 76, 2; acc. of, 80, r. 2; abl. of, 82, r. 2, (b.)  
*Time*, advs. of, 191, ii.; conjs., 198, 10; acc. of, 238; abl. of, 253; with *de* or *sub*, 253, r. 4; with *intra*, ib.; with *in*, 253, r. 6; expressed by *id* with a genit., 253, r. 3; by the abl. absolute, 257; the concrete noun instead of the abstract title, 257, r. 7; mode of reckoning, 326; table of, 326, 6.  
*Timeo*, 223, r. 2, (1.); w. *ut* or *ne*, 262, r. 7; w. inf., 271, n. 1.  
*Timidus*, w. genit., 213, r. 1.  
*Tiryns*, genit. of, 77, r. 2.  
*-tis*, genit. in, 77, 2; 71, 2.  
*Titles*, place of, 279, 9, (a.)  
*'Too'* or *'rather'*, how expressed in Latin, 122, r. 3; 256, r. 9.  
*-tor* and *-trix*, verbals in, 102, 6; used as adjs., 129, 8.  
*Tot*, indecl., 115, 4; correlative of *quot*, 121, 5; 206, (16); syncope of, before *quot*, 206, (16.)  
*Totidem*, indecl., 115, 4.  
*Toties*, correlative of *quoties*, 121, 5.  
*Totus*, how declined, 107; *toto*, *totâ*, abl. without in, 254, r. 2; *totus*, instead of an adverb, 206, r. 15.  
*Towns*, gender of names of, 29, 2; constr.; see Place.  
*-tr*, roots of nouns in, 56, ii., r. 3.  
*Tradio*, w. dat., 223, r. 8.  
*Trado*, w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 1, and r. 6; w. part. fut. pass., 274, r. 7, (a.); *traditur*, constr., 271, r. 2; *trador*, constr., 271, r. 2.  
*Tranquillo*, scil. *mari*, 257, r. 9, (1.)  
*Trans*, constr. of verbs compounded with, 233, 1; in passive, 234, r. 1, (b.)  
*Trajicio*, constr., 229, r. 4, 1; 233, (1.)  
*Transitive* verbs, 141; w. acc., 229, ellipsis of, 229, r. 2.  
*Trees*, gender of names of, 29  
*Tres*, how declined, 108.  
*Trepidus*, w. genit., 213, r. 1.  
*Tribuo*, w. two datives, 227, r. 1; w. two accs., 230, r. 2; w. part. perf. pass., 274, r. 7, (a.)  
*Tricolon*, 319, 2; tricolon tristrophon and tetrapotrophon, 319, 6.  
*Tricorper*, abl. of, 113, r. 2; 115, 1.  
*Tricuspis*, abl. of, 113, r. 2.

*Trihemimeris*, 804, 5.  
*Trimeter*, 804, 2; catalectic, 312, vii.  
*Tripes*, genit. of, 112, 1; abl. of, 113, r. 2.  
*Triptotes*, 94.  
*Tristrophon*, 319, 3.  
*Trochae* or feminine caesura, 310, n. 1;—metre, 315 and 303; *tetrameter* catalectic, 315, 1; *dimeter* catalectic, 315, iv.; *trochaic pentameter* or *Phalocian*, 315, iii.  
*Tropes*, 324.  
*-trum*, verbals in, 102, 5.  
*Truncus*, w. abl. or genit., 213, r. 5, (4.)  
*Tu*, declined, 123; in nom. with adj. in voc., 205, r. 15, (c.); used indefinitely, 209, r. 7; when expressed, 209, r. 1; *tui*, feminine, with masc. or neuter gerundive, 275, iii., r. 1, (4.)  
*Tum* and *quum*, 191, r. 7; *tum—tum*, 277, r. 8; *tum* and *tunc*, difference between, ib.; *tum maxime*, ib.; *tum temporis*, 212, r. 4, n. 4.  
*Tumultu*, as abl. of time, 253, n. 1.  
*Tunc* and *nunc*, 191, r. 7; *tunc temporis*, 212, r. 4, n. 4.  
*Tumidus* and *turgidus*, w. abl., 213, r. 5, (b.)  
*Turris*, declined, 57.  
*-tus*, adjs. in, 123, 7; nouns in, of 3d decl., 76, r. 2; 102, 7.  
*Tuus*, how declined, 139; used reflexively, 139 r. 1; *tua* after *refert* and *interest*, 219, r. 1. ●  

U.

*U*, sound of, 7 and 8; *u* and *v*, 2, 3; *u* in genit. and voc. of Greek nouns, 54; roots of nouns of 3d decl. ending in, 56, i.; dat. in, 89; neuters of 4th decl. in, 87; dat. in of 4th decl., 89, 3; in 2d root of verbs, 167, and 171, r. 2; increment in, 3d decl., 237, 8; plur., 238; of verbs, 230; final, quantity of, 238; 235, r. 4; *u* and *itu* in 3d roots of verbs, 167.  
*Ua*, *ue*, etc., pronunciation of, 9, 4 and 5; quantity of, 238, ii., r. 3.  
*Uber*, w. genit. or abl., 213, r. 5, (3.)  
*-ubus*, in dat. and abl. plur., 89, 5.  
*Ubi*, genit., 212, r. 4, n. 2; w. indie. perf. instead of pluperf., 259, r. 1, (d.); *ubiubi*, 191, r. 1.  
*-ucis*, genitives in, 78, (5); 112, 2.  
*-udis*, genitives in, 76, r. 1.  
*-uis*, genitives in, 76, r. 3.  
*-uleus*, *a*, *um*, diminutives in, 100, 3, c. 1.  
*Ullus*, pronom. adj., 139, 5, (1), (a.); how declined, 107; how used, 207, r. 31.  
*Uterior*, its degrees, 126, ii.; *ultimus* for *ultimum*, 205, r. 15; how translated, 205, r. 17.  
*Ultrix*, gender of, 125, 1, (b.)  
*Ultra*, prep., 136, 4; adv., 191, i.  
*Ultum ire* for *ulcisci*, 276, ii., r. 2.  
*-ulum*, verbals in, 102, 5.  
*-ulus*, *a*, *um*, diminutives in, 100, 3; 128, 5.  
*-um*, genit. plur. in instead of *arum*, 43; instead of *orum*, 53; nouns ending in, 46;

in genit. plur. 3d decl., 88; 114;—adv. in, 192, II., 4. (b.)

*Uncia*, 827, p. 872.

*-undus*, participles in, 162, 20.

*Unde domo*, 265, n. 1.

*Umqum*, 191, II.; *usquam*, *usque*, *uspiam*, 191, n. 6.

*-untis*, in genit. of Greek nouns, 76, n. 6.  
*Unus*, declined, 107; when used in plur., 118, n. 2; added to superlatives, 127, n. 2; *unus et alter*, with verbs singular, 209, n. 12; w. relative and subj., 264, 10; for *solum*, *tantum*, etc., 206, n. 15. (b.); *unum*, as acc. of degree, 232, (3.)

*Unusquisque*, how declined, 188, 4.

*-ur*, nouns in, gender of, 66, 67; genit. of, 70, 71.

*-ura*, verbals in, 102, 7, n. 2.

*Urbs*, in apposition to names of towns, 287, n. 2, (b.)

*-urio*, verbs in, 187, II., 8.

*-uris*, genitives in, 76, n. 8.

*-us*, nouns in, of 2d decl., 46; exceptions in, 49—51; voc. sing. of, 46, n. and 52; of 3d decl., gender of, 66; 67; genitive of, 76; Greek genit. in, 69, n. 8; nouns in of 4th decl., 87—89; participles in, how declined, 105, n. 2; verbals in, 102, 7; final, quantity of, 301.

*Usitatum est*, ut, 262, n. 3, n. 8.

*Uspiam*, *usquam*, *usque*, 191, n. 6; *usquam*, w. genit., 212, n. 4, n. 2; *usque*, w. acc., 195, n. 8; 235, n. 9.

*Usus*, w. abl., 243; *usus venit*, ut, 262, n. 3, n. 1; w. genit. of gerunds, 275, III., n. 1, (1.)

*Ut* or *uti*, a conj., 198, 8; *ut non* and *ut ne*, ib.; w. subj., 262; its correlatives, 262, n. 1; ellipsis of, 262, n. 4; its meaning after *metuo*, etc., 262, n. 7; *ut non*, 262, n. 5, and n. 6, 2; *ut—ita* or *sic*, 277, n. 12, (b.); *ut*, 'as', ellipsis of, 277, n. 17; *ut*, 'even if', and *ut non*, w. subj., 262, n. 2; *ut* with certain impersonal verbs and subj., 262, n. 8; in questions expressing indignation, 270, n. 2, (a.); *ut*, *ut primum*, etc., with the historical perf., indic., instead of the pluperf., 259, n. 1, (d.); its place, 279, 3, (b.); *ut* after *est* with a predicate adj., 262, n. 3, n. 4; *ut credo*, *ut puto*, etc., in interposed clauses, 277, I., n. 17; *ut*, 'because', 277, I., n. 12, (b.); *ut qui*, 264, n. 2; *ut si*, w. subj., 263, 2; *ut ita dicam*, 207, n. 83, (b.) *fin.*; *ut*, 'as if', w. abl. absolute, 257, n. 4; *utut*, w. indic., 259, n. 4, (3); ellipsis of *ut* when *ne* precedes and *et*, etc., follow, 278, n. 6, (c.)

*Utrumque*, w. indic., 259, n. 4, (3.)

*Uter*, how declined, 107; w. dual genit., 212, n. 2, n. 1.

*Utrumque*, how declined, 107.

*Uterlibet*, *utroque*, and *utrovis*, their meaning and declension, 107; 189, 5, (1), (b.); *utroque*, use of, 207, n. 32; *utroque*, w. plur. verb, 209, n. 11, (4.)

*Utilis*, w. dat., 222, n. 1; 275, III., n. 2; w. acc., 222, n. 4, (1.); *utile est ut*, 262, n. 3, n. 8; *utilis*, w. inf. poetically, 270, n. 1, (b.); 275, n. 2; *utikus fuit*, indic. instead of subj., 259, n. 8; w. supine in *u*, 278, III., n. 1.

*Utinam* and *uti*, w. subj., 268, 1.

*-utis*, genitives in, 76, n. 2; 112, 2.

*Utor*, w. abl., 245; w. acc., 245, I., n.; w. two ablatives, 245, n.; *utor*, *frutor*, etc., their gerundives, 275, II., n. 1.

*Utpote qui*, w. subj., 264, 8, (2.)

*Utrique*, how used, 107, n. 32, (c.)

*Utrum* and *utrumne*, 198, 11.

*-utus*, adjectives in, 128, 7.

*-uus*, adjectives in, 129, 8.

*-ux*, nouns in, genit. of, 78, 2, (5.)

*Uxor*, ellipsis of, 211, n. 7.

## V.

V. changed to u, 163, 2; sometimes dropped in forming the 2d root of verbs of the 3d conj., 171, n. 4.

*Vaco*, 250, 2, n. 1.

*Vacius*, w. genit. or abl., 213, n. 5, (3.); cf. 251, n.

*Vado*, constr., 225, IV.; 232, n. 1; 233, (3), n. 1.

*Vae*, w. dat., 228, 3; w. acc., 238, 2.

*Valde*, 127, 2.

*Valro*, w. abl., 250, 2, n. 1; 252; w. acc., 252, n. 4; *valere* or *valē dico*, w. dat., 225, I., n.; w. inf., 271, n. 1.

*Validus*, 213, n. 5, (4.)

Valuing, verbs of, 214, n. 2; w. genit., 214; w. abl., 252, n. 1.

*Vapulo*, 142, n. 3.

Variable nouns, 92; adjs., 122.

*Vas*, genit. of, 72, n. 1; gender of, 62, n. 1, and n. 2; 98, 2.

*-ve*, 198, 2, and n. 1, p. 76; place of, 279, 3, (c.)

*Vehor*, compds of, 233, (3.), n.

*Vel*, 198, 2; difference between *vel* and *aut*, 198, n.; *vel* w. superlative degree, 127, 4; w. comparatives, 256, n. 9, (b.)

*Velim*, w. subj. without *ut*, 260, n. 4; 262, n. 4.

*Vellem*, how used, 260, n. 2.

*Velox*, constr., 222, n. 4, (2.)

*Velut*, *velut n.*, *veluti*, w. subj., 263, 2; *velut*, 'as if', w. abl. absolute, 257, n. 4.

*Venalis*, w. abl. of price, 252.

*Vendo*, w. abl., 252; w. genit., 214, n. 8, n. 1.

*Veneo*, 142, n. 3; 252; 214, n. 3, n. 1.

*Venio*, w. two datives, 227, n. 1; *v. ad* or *in*, 225, IV.; w. dat., 225, n. 2; *venit mihi in mentem*, constr., 211, n. 8, (5); 216, n. 8.

*Venitux*, conjugated, 184, 2, (b.)

Verbal terminations, 152; nouns, 102; w. acc., 238, n. 2, n.; of place, 237, n. 1; w. dat., 222, n. 8; w. abl. of place, 255; w. genit. of personal pronouns, 211, n. 3, (a.); verbal adjs., 129.

Verbs, 140—189; subject of, 140, 1; active or transitive, 141, I.; neuter or intransitive, 141, II.; neuter passive, 142, 2; neutral passive, 142, 3; deponent, 142, 4; common, 142, 4, (b.); principal parts of, 151, 4; neuter, participles of, 162, 16; inceptive, 173; desiderative, 187, II., 8; 176, n.; irregular, 178—182; defective, 188; re-

- dundant, 185; verbs spelled alike, or having the same perfect or supine, 186; derivation of, 187; imitative, 187, 8; frequentative, 187, II., 1; inceptive, 187, II., 2; desiderative, 187, II., 3; diminutive, 187, II., 4; intensive, 187, II., 5; 187, II., 1; (c.); composition of, 188; changes in composition, 189; compounds from simples not in use, 189, n. 4; agreement of, 209, (b.); ellipsis of, 209, n. 4; person of with *qui*, 209, n. 6; agreeing with predicate nominative, 209, n. 9; with collective nouns, 209, n. 11; plural with two or more nominatives, 209, n. 12; after *uterque*, etc., 209, n. 11, (4); after a nominative with *cum* and the abl., 209, n. 12, (6); after nominatives connected by *aut*, 209, n. 12, (5); their place in a sentence, 279, 2; in a period, 280.
- Vere* and *cero*, 192, 4, n. 1.
- Vereor*, w. genit. post., 220, 1; w. *ut* or *ne*, 262, n. 7; w. inf., 271, n. 1.
- Verisimile est ut*, 262, n. 8, n. 8; w. inf. as subject, 269, n. 2.
- Veritum est*, w. acc., 229, n. 6.
- Vero*, use of in answers, 192, 4, n. 1; 198, 9, n. (a.); ellipsis of, 278, n. 11; its place, 279, 3, (c.)
- Verses*, 304; combinations of in poems, 319.
- Versification*, 302.
- Versus*, w. acc., 195, n. 8; 235, n. 9; place of, 279, 10, (f.)
- Verto*, constr., 225, iv.; w. two datives, 227, n. 1; 229, n. 4, 1.
- Verum est, ut*, 262, n. 8, n. 3; w. inf. as subject, 269, n. 2; *verum*, conj., 192, 9; its place, 279, 8; *verum* and *verum-tamen*, 'I say,' 278, n. 10; *verum enimvero*, 198, 9, n. (a.); *vero* after comparatives, 256, n. 9.
- Vescor*, with abl., 245, i.; with acc., 245, i., n.
- Vespere*, or *-ri*, 258, n. 1.
- Vester*, how declined, 189, 1; *vestrum*, 183, 8; used after participles, 212, n. 2, n. 2.
- Vestio*, 229, n. 4, 1.
- Veto*, 273, 2, (d.); 262, n. 4; w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 6.
- Vetus*, declension of, 112, 2; its superlative, 125, 1; 126, 8.
- Via*, abl. of place without *in*, 254, n. 8.
- Vicem* for *vice*, 247, 1, n. 8.
- Vicinia*, genit. of place, 221, n. 8, (4); 212, n. 4, n. 2, (b.)
- Vicinus*, w. dat. or genit., 222, n. 2, (a.)
- Victrix*, 115, 1, (b.); how declined as an adj., 129, 8.
- Videlicet* and *scilicet*, 198, 7, n. (a.); pr., 235, n. 2, n. 2.
- Video*, w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 1; w. *ut* or *ne*, 262, n. 8; *videres*, 280, n. 2; *video* for *curo*, w. *ut*, 278, n. 1; *videor*, constr., 271, n. 2; 272, n. 6.
- Viduus*, constr., 213, n. 5, (4); 250, 2, (1.)
- Vigeo*, w. abl., 250, 2, n. 1.
- Vigil*, abl. of, 113, n. 8; genit. plur. of, 114, n. 2; 115, 1, (a.)
- Vigilia*, 326, 1, (2.)
- Vigilias, vigilare*, 232.
- Vilis*, w. abl. of price, 253.
- Vir*, how declined, 48, 2.
- Virgilius*, voc. of 52; accent of, 14, n.
- Virgo*, declined, 57.
- Virus*, gender of, 51.
- Vis*, declined, 85; acc. sing. of, 79, 2; abl. sing., 82, n. 2; genit. plur., 83, II., 8; 94; *vi* and *per vim*, difference between, 247, 8, n. 4; w. genit. of gerunds, 275, III., n. 1, (1.)
- Vitabundus*, w. acc., 233, n. 2, n.
- Vitam vivere*, 232, (1.)
- Vitio creati magistratus*, 247, 2.
- Vitro*, w. abl., 245, II., 4; w. pred. nom., 210, n. 3, (2); *tertia vicinior aetas*, 234, III.
- Vix*, with part. fut. pass., 274, n. 12; *vixitum*, 277, i., n. 16.
- Vocative*, 37; sing., its form, 40, 8; plur., 40, 4; ellipsis of, 240, n. 2.
- Voco*, constr., 225, n. 1; 230, n. 1; pass., 210, n. 3, (3.)
- Voices*, 141.
- Volucer*, in genit. plur., 108, n. 2.
- Volo*, (are), compds. of, 233, (3), n.
- Volo*, conjugated, 178, 1; w. perf. inf., 268, n. 2; w. perf. part., and ellipsis of *esse*, 269, n. 8; its construction, 271, n. 4, and n. 4; 278, 4; 262, n. 4; *volens*, w. dat. of person, 226, n. 3; *volo bene* and *male alicui*, 225, i., n.; *volo*, w. reflexive pron., 228, n., (b.)
- Voluntary agent of pass. verbs*, 248, i.; ellipsis of, 141, n. 2; 248, i., n. 1; when expressed by *per* and acc., 247, n. 4; of neuter verbs, 248, n. 2; dative of voluntary agent, 225, II. and III.
- Volutum*, pr., 284, n. 3.
- Vos*, see *tu*, 133.
- Voti* and *votorum damnati*, 217, n. 8.
- Vowels*, 3, 1; sounds of, 7 and 8; vowel, before a mute and liquid, its quantity, 13, 6, and 233, iv., n. 2; before another vowel, quantity of, 13, 8, and 233, i.; in Greek words, 233, n. 6; before two consonants, 13, 5, and 233, iv.; ending first part of a compound, quantity of, 235, n. 4.
- Vulgus*, gender of, 51; 95.
- Vultus*, gender of, 67.

## W.

- W*, not used in Latin, 2, 4.
- Weight*, acc. of, 236, n. 7; weights, Roman, 327.
- Willingness*, verbs of, constr., 278, 4.
- Winds*, gender of names of, 23.
- Wishing*, verbs of, constr., 271, n. 4.
- Words*, division of, 17-23; arrangement of, 279; gender of as mere words, 34, 8.
- Writers* in different ages, 329.

## X

- X*, sound of, 12; its equivalents, 8, 2; 56, n. 2; 171, 1; in syllabication, 13, 4; nouns in, gender of, 32 and 65; genitive of, 78, 2.

## Y.

Y, found only in Greek words, 2, 5; sound of, 7, n. 2; 8, n. 5; nouns in, gender of, 62; genitive of, 69; increment in, 8d decl., 287, 8; final, quantity of, 298; 295, n. 4.

-ychis, in genitive, 78, 2, (6.)

-ycis, genitives in, 78, 2, (6.)

-ydis, genitives in, 77, 1.

Yi, how pronounced, 9, 1; abl. in, 82, n. 6.

-ygis, genitives in, 178, 2, (6.)

-ynos, Greek, genitive in, 71, 2.

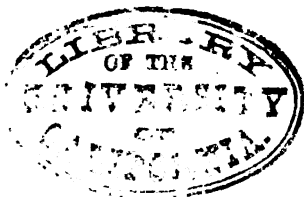
-ys, nouns in, gender of, 62, 63, n.; genitive of, 77; acc. of, 80, n.; abl. of, 82, n. 6; final, quantity of, 301.

-yz, nouns in, gender of, 65, 6.

## Z.

Z, found only in words derived from the Greek, 2, 5; its equivalents, 3, 2.

Zeugma, 323, 1, (b.) and (2.)

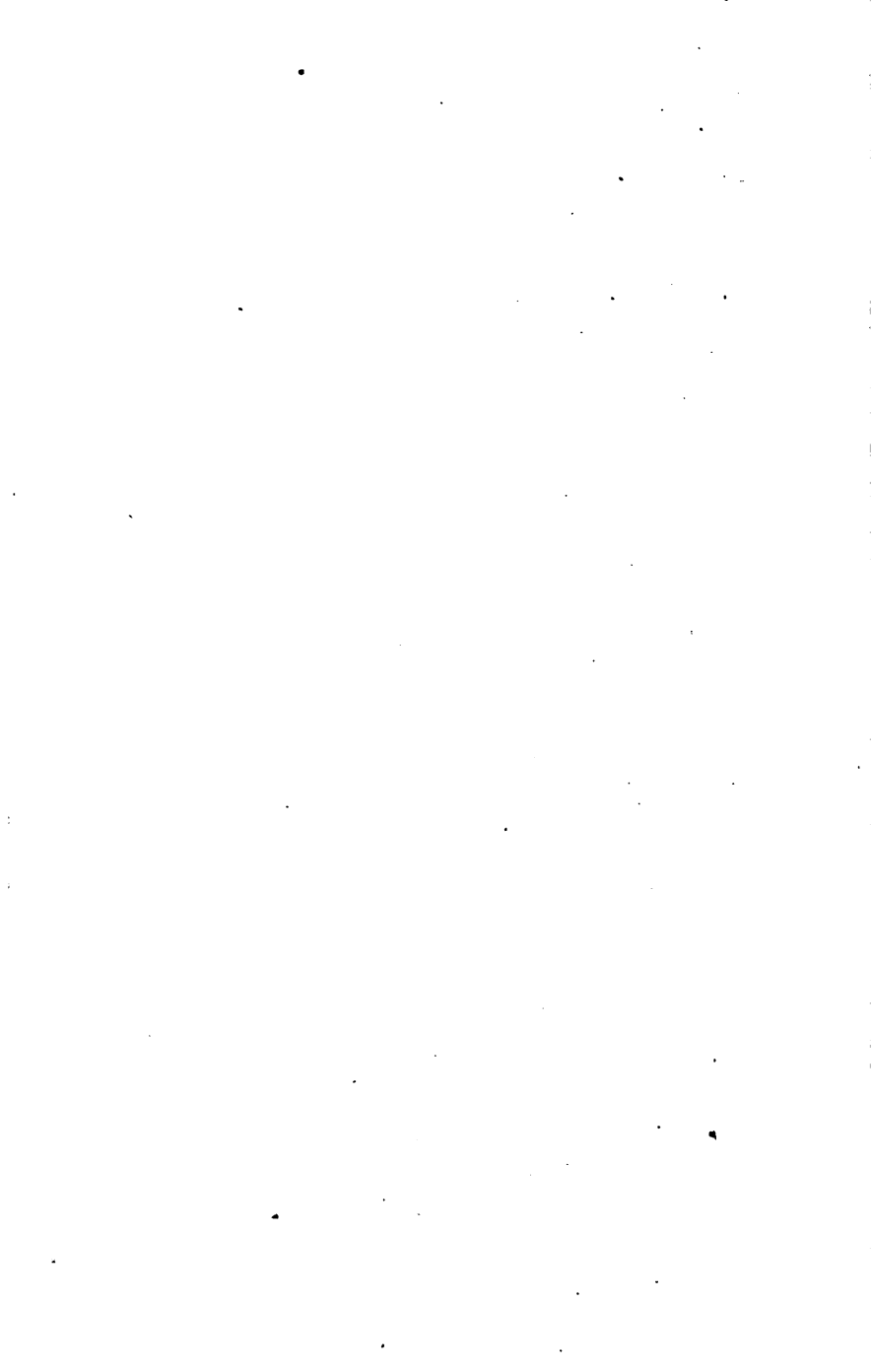














RETURN TO the circulation desk of any  
University of California Library  
or to the

NORTHERN REGIONAL LIBRARY FACILITY  
Bldg. 400, Richmond Field Station  
University of California  
Richmond, CA 94804-4698

---

ALL BOOKS MAY BE RECALLED AFTER 7 DAYS

2-month loans may be renewed by calling

(415) 642-6233

1-year loans may be recharged by bringing books  
to NRLF

Renewals and recharges may be made 4 days  
prior to due date

---

DUE AS STAMPED BELOW

---

LIBRARY USE OCT 31 '86

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

U. C. BERKELEY LIBRARIES



C045920222

59456

